

CONTENTS

SECTION FIRST : PRATHAMA KHAṆḌAM 1-62

DRUGS GROUPS

1. Dravya Gaṇa-varga-Miśraka-gaṇa 3-8
2. Concept and Basis 9-11
3. Audbhida Gaṇāḥ-Groups of Vegetable Drugs 11-13
4. Groups of Morphological, Quantitative and Pharmacological Similarities 13-28
5. Carakokta Dravya gaṇa-daśemāni 28-33
Suśrutokta Dravyagaṇa 33-35
6. Gaṇa Guṇa-Karma-Prayoga 35-40
7. Śaḍrasaskandha-groups of Six tastes 40-43
8. Drava-Anna Dravya 43-44
Āhāra Dravya 44
9. Agrya Dravya Varga 44-47
Pravara-Praśasta Dravya 47-49
10. Anya Pramukha Gaṇa 49-57
11. Rasāśāstreṣu Dravyagaṇāḥ 45-59
12. Nighaṇṭūkta Dravyavarga 59-62

SECTION SECOND : DVITĪYA KHAṆḌAM 63-894

DRUGS : AUṢADHA DRAYA (A-J) 65-894

Drugs : औषध द्रव्य

- Āḍhakī आढकी 65-67
Agastya अगस्त्य 67-72
Agnimantha आग्निमंथ 72-76
Ahiphena अहिफेन 76-81
Ajagandhā अजगंधा 81-84
Ajamoda अजमोदा 84-87
Ākarakarabha आकरकरभ 87-90
Ākhukarnī आखुकर्णी 90-93
Akṣoṭa अक्षोट 93-96

Alābū अलाबू	96-102
Āmalakī आमलकी	102-112
Amarvallī अमरवल्ली	112-114
Amlavetasa अम्लवेतस	114-119
Amlikā अम्लिका	119-128
Āmra आम्र	128-140
Āmragandhiharidra आम्रगन्धिहरिद्रा	140-143
Aranyaharidrā अरण्यहरिद्रा	143-146
Añkoṭa अङ्कोट	146-153
Apāmārga अपामार्ग	154-161
Aparājitā अपराजिता	161-167
Āragvadha आरग्वध	167-176
Aranyajīraka अरण्यजीरक	176-179
Ādraka-śuṅṭhī आर्द्रक-शुण्ठी	179-191
Ariṣṭaka अरिष्टक	191-196
Arjuna अर्जुन	196-203
Arka अर्क	203-218
Arkaparṇī अर्कपर्णी	218-222
Āruka आरुक	223-226
Asana असन	226-229
Aśoka अशोक	229-234
Aṣṭavarga अष्टवर्ग	234-238
Asthisaṁhāraka अस्थिसंहारक	239-243
Aśvagandhā अश्वगंधा	243-251
Aśvakarṇa-Garjana अश्वकर्ण-गर्जन	251-254
Aśvattha अश्वत्थ	255-261
Atasī अतसी	261-263
Atibalā अतिबला	268-272
Ativiṣā अतिविषा	272-279
Āvartakī आवर्तकी	279-283
Āvartanī आवर्तनी	284-286
Babbūla बब्बूल	286-294
Badara बदर	294-302
Bākucī बाकुची	302-343

Bakula बकुल	313-319
Balā बला	319-330
Bālaka-Hrivera बालक-हीवेर	330-333
Bandāka बन्दाक	334-336
Bhaṅgā भङ्गा	336-343
Bhallātaka भल्लातक	343-355
Bhāraṅgī भारङ्गी	355-360
Bhavya भव्य	361-363
Bheṇḍā भेण्डा	363-366
Bibhītaka बिभीतक	366-375
Bhr̥ṅgarāja भृङ्गराज	375-385
Bhūmyāmalakī भूम्यामलकी	386-391
Bhūrja भूर्ज	391-395
Bījaka बीजक	395-400
Bijapūraka बीजपूरक	400-411
Bilva बिल्व	411-424
Bimbī बिम्बी	424-429
Bola बोल	429-432
Brāhmī ब्राह्मी	432-440
Bṛhatī बृहती	441-446
Cakramarda चक्रमर्द	446-453
Cakṣuṣyā चेक्षुष्या	453-456
Campaka चम्पक	456-460
Caṇaka चणक	461-465
Cañcu चञ्चु	465-469
Candana (dvaya) चन्दन (द्वय)	469-475
A. Candana चन्दन	469-473
B. Raktacandana रक्तचन्दन	473-476
Candraśūra चन्द्रशूर	485-488
Cāṅgerī चाङ्गेरी	488-492
Carmakaṣā (Carmavṛkṣa) चर्मकषा (चर्मवृक्ष)	493-495
Cavya चव्य	495-498
Chatraka छत्रक	498-500

Chikkikā छिक्किका	500-504
Ciciṇḍa चिचिण्ड	504-506
Cilhaka चिल्हक	506-508
Cirbhita चिर्भिट	508-510
Cirabilva चिरबिल्व	510-512
Citraka चित्रक	512-520
Coraka चोरक	520-521
Caṇḍā चण्डा	521-523
Coraka=Caṇḍā चोरक-चण्डा	523-525
Cukra चुक्र	525-529
Dāḍima दाडिम	529-540
Damanaka दमनक	540-543
Dantī दन्ती	543-551
Dāruharidrā दारुहरिद्रा	552-559
Devadāru देवदारु	559-565
Dhāmārgava धामार्गव	566-570
Dhanvana धन्वन	570-574
Dhanvayāsa धन्वयास	574-579
Dhānyaka धान्यक	579-586
Dhātakī धातकी	586-593
Dhattūra धत्तूर	591-597
Dhava धव	597-601
Ḍiṇḍīśa ङिण्डिश	601-602
Drākṣā द्राक्षा	602-610
Droṇapuṣpī द्रोणपुष्पी	610-613
Dugdhaphenī दुग्धफेनी	614-616
Dugdhikā दुग्धिक	616-621
Dūrvā दूर्वा	621-626
Dvipāntaravacā द्वीपान्तरवचा	626-630
Elādvaya एलाद्वय	630-638
A. Elā-Sūkṣmailā एला-सूक्ष्मैला	630-632
B. Bṛhadelā बृहदेला	632-634
Eraṇḍa एरण्ड	638-653

Eraṇḍa karkaṭi एरण्ड कर्कटी	654-659
Ervāru-karkaṭi एर्वारु-कर्कटी	659-663
Gambhāri गम्भारी	663-671
Gāṅgeruki गाङ्गेरुकी	671-674
Garjara गर्जर	674-677
Godhūma गोधूम	677-682
Gohjivā गोजिवा	682-685
Gokṣura गोक्षुर	685-694
Guḍayogaphalā गुडयोगफला	694-697
Guḍūci गुडूची	697-710
Guggulu गुग्गुलु	710-722
Guñjā गुञ्जा	722-728
Haimavatīvacā हैमवतीवचा	728-730
Haṁsapadī हंसपदी	730-733
Hapuṣā हपुषा	733-737
Haridrā हरिद्रा	737-746
Haridru हरिद्रु	746-749
Harītaki हरीतकी	749-766
Hijjla हिज्जल	766-770
A. Himsrā हिंस्रा	770-772
B. Vyaghranakhī व्याघ्रनखी	772-773
Hiṅgu हिङ्गु	773-779
Ikṣu इक्षु	779-788
Ikṣvāku इक्ष्वाकु	788-791
Indravāruṇi इन्द्रवारुणी	794-801
Ingudī इङ्गुदी	801-805
Irimesa इरिमेद	805-809
Iṣadgola ईषद्गोल	809-812
Īśvarī ईश्वरी	842-815
Jalakumbhī-Haṭhaḥ जलकुम्भी-हठः	815-818
Jalapippali जलपिप्पली	818-820
Jambīra जम्बीर	820-823
Jambū जम्बू	823-831

Japā जपा	831-834
Jaṭāmānsī जटामांसी	835-841
Jātī जाती	841-847
Jātūphala जातीफल	847-853
Jayantī जयन्ती	853-858
Jayapāla जयपाल	858-863
Jhaṇḍū-Sahasrasuma झण्डू-सहस्रसुम	863-865
Jīmūtika जीमूतक	865-872
Jiṅgiṇī जिङ्गिणी	872-875
A. Jīraka जीरक	875-878
B. Kṛṣṇajīraka-kāravī कृष्णजीरक-कारवी	878-883
Jivantī जीवन्ती	883-888
Jyotiṣmatī ज्योतिष्मती	888-894

APPENDIX

Pharmacological Action of Drugs	895-897
Therapeutic Indication of Drugs	898-904
Technical-Medical Terminology	905-929

BIBLIOGRAPHY

930-933

INDEX

Classical Names	935-937
Botanical Names	937-943



DRUGS GROUPS

Dravya Gaṇa-Varga-Miśraka-Gaṇa

1. Triphalā

Harītakī	: Terminalia chebula Retz.
Bibhītaka	: Terminalia bellirica (Gaertn.) Rexb.
Āmalakī	: Emblica officinalis Gaertn.

2. Trikaṭu

Śuṅṭhī	: Zingiber Officinale Rose.
Marica	: Piper nigrum Linn.
Pippalī	: Piper Longum Linn.

3. Pañcakola

Pippalī	: Piper longum Linn.
Pippalīmūla	: Piper longum Linn.
Cavya	: Piper Chava Hunter.
Citraka	: Plumbago zeylanica Linn.
Śuṅṭhī	: Zingiber officinale Rose.

4. Sadūṣaṇa

Marica	: Piper nigrum Linn.
Pippalī	: Piper longum Linn.
Pippalīmūla	: Piper longum Linn.
Cavya	: Piper chava Hunter.
Citraka	: Pulmbago zeylamica Linn.
Śuṅṭhī	: Zingiber officinale Rose.

5. Caturūṣaṇa

Pippalīmūla	: Piper longum Linn.
Śuṅṭhī	: Zingiber officinale Rose.
Marica	: Piper nigrum Linn.
Pippalī	: Piper Longum Linn.

6. Trijātaka

Tvak	: Cinnamomum zeylanicum Blume.
Elā	: Elettaria cardamomum Maton.
Patraka	: Cinnamomum tamala N. & E.

7. Caturjātaka

Nāgakeśar	: Mesuea ferrea Linn.
Tvak	: Cinnamomum zeylanica Blume.
Elā	: Elettaria cardamomum Maton.
Patraka	: Cianamomum tamala B. & E.

8. Daśamūla

Bilva	: Aegle marmelos Corr.
Agnimantha	: Clerodendrum phlomidis Linn. f.
Śyonāka	: Oroxyllum indicum Vent.
Kāśmarī	: Gmelina arborea Linn.
Pāṭalā	: Stereospermum suaveolens DC.
Śāliparṇī	: Desmodium gangeticum (L.) DC.
Prṣṇiparṇī	: Uraria picta Desv.
Kaṇṭakārī	: Solanum xanthocarpum S. & W.
Bṛhatī	: Solanum indicum Linn.
Gokṣura	: Tribulus terrestris Linn.

9. Bṛhatpañcamūla

Bilva	: Aegle marmelos Corr.
Agnimantha	: Clerodendrum phlomidis Linn. f.
Śyonāka	: Oroxyllum indicum Vent.
Kāśmarī	: Gmelina arborea Linn.
Pāṭalā	: Stereopsermum suavelolens DC.

10. Laghupañcamūla

Śāliparṇī	: Desmodium gangeticum (L.) DC.
Prṣṇiparṇī	: Uraria Picta Desv.
Kaṇṭakārī	: Solanum xanthocarpum S. & E.
Bṛhatī	: Solanum indicum Linn.
Gokṣura	: Tribulus terrestris Linn.

11. Tṛṇapañcamūla

Kuśa	: Desmostachya bipinnata Stapf.
Kāśa	: Saccharum spontaneum Linn.
Śara	: Saccharum munja Roxb.
Darbha	: Kusa.
Ikṣu	: Saccharum officinarum Linn.

12. (A) Vallīpañcamūla

Vidārī	:	<i>Puereria tuberosa</i> DC.
Ajaśrṅgī	:	<i>Mesarsngi</i> .
Sārivā-Śveta	:	<i>Hemidesum indicas</i> (L.) R.Br.
Rajanī	:	<i>Syamalatā</i>
Sārivā-kṛṣṇa	:	<i>Ichnocarpus frutescens</i> R.Br.

13. (B) Vallīpañcamūla

Vidārī	:	<i>Puereria tuberosa</i> DC.
Ajaśrṅgī	:	<i>Mesarsngi</i>
Rajanī	:	<i>Rajani</i>
Sārivā	:	<i>Hemidesmus indicus</i> (L.) R.Br.
Guḍūcī	:	<i>Tinospora cordifolia</i> Miers.

14. Kantakapañcamūla

Karamarda	:	<i>Carissa Caranda</i> Linn.
Svadañṣṭrā	:	<i>Tribulus terrestris</i> Linn.
Hīnsrā	:	<i>Capparis sepiaria</i> Linn.
Jhiṅṭī	:	<i>Barleria prionitis</i> Linn.
Śatāvārī	:	<i>Asparagus racemosus</i> willd.

15. Aṣṭavarga

Jivaka	:	<i>Microstylis wallichii</i> Lindl.
Rṣabhaka	:	<i>Microstylis muscifera</i> Ridley.
Kākolī	:	<i>Fritillaria roylei</i> Hook.
Kṣīrakākolī	:	<i>Linium polyphllum</i> Dom.
Medā	:	<i>Polygonatum cirrifolium</i> Royle.
Mahāmedā	:	<i>Polygonatum verticillatum</i> Allioni.
Rddhi	:	<i>habenaria edgeworthii</i> Hook f.
Vṛddhi	:	<i>Habenaria latiabris</i> Hook f.

16. Jivaniyagaṇa

Jivanti	:	<i>Desmostrichum fimbriatum</i> Bl.
Mudgaparṇī	:	<i>Phaseolus trilobus</i> Ait.
Māṣaparṇī	:	<i>Teramnus labialis</i> Spreng.
Aṣṭavarga	:	<i>Astavarga</i> .

17. Pañcavalkala

Nygrodhā	:	<i>Ficus beghalensis</i> Linn.
Udumbara	:	<i>Ficus glomerata</i> Roxb.

Āśvattha	: Ficus religiosa Linn.
Pārīsa	: Thepesia populnea Sol.
Plakṣa	: Ficus lacor Buch-Ham.

18. Kṣīratraya

Ravi	: Calotropis procera (Ait.) R.Br.
Vaṭa	: Ficus benghalensis Linn.
Snuhī	: Euphorbia nerifolia Linn.

19. Trimada

Vidaṅga	: Embelia ribes Burm.f.
Mustaka	: Cyperus rotundus Linn.
Citraka	: Plumbago zeylanica linn.

20. Pañcatikta

Guḍūcī	: Tinospora cordifolia Miers.
Nimba	: Azadirachta indica A. Juss.
Vāsā	: Adhatoda vasica Nees.
Nidigdihkā	: Solanum xanthocarpum S. & E.
Paṭola	: Trichosanthes dioica Roxb.

21. Madhyamaṇcamūla

Balā	: Sida cordifolia Linn.
Punarnavā	: Boerhaavia difusa Linn.
Eraṇḍa	: Ricinus communis Linn.
Mudgaparṇī	: Phaseolous trilobus Ait.
Māsaparṇī	: Teramnus labialis Spreng.

22. Jīvanapañcamūla

Abhīru	: Abhiru
Vīrā	: Virā
Jīvantī	: Desmostrichum fimbriatum Bl.
Rṣabhaka	: Microstylis muscifera Ridley.
Jīvaka	: Microstylis wallichii Lindl.

23. Trkaṅtaka

Br̥hātī	: Solanum indicum Linn.
Kaṅtakārī	: Solanum xanthocarpum S. & W.
Dhanvayāsa	: Fagonica cretica Linn.

24. Pañcapallava

Āmra	: Mangifera indica Linn.
------	--------------------------

Jambu	: Syzygium Cumini (Linn.) Skeels.
Bijapūra	: Citrus medica Linn.
Bilva	: Aegle marmelos Corr.

25. Ādyapuṣpa

Caṇdana	: Santalum album Linn.
Kuṅkuma	: Crocus sativus Linn.
Hrivera	: Pavonia odorata Willd.

26. Svalpatriphalā

Kāsmarī	: Gmelina arborea Linn.
Kharjūra	: Phoenix Sylvestris Roxb.
Parūṣaka	: Grewia asiatica Linn.

27. Madhuratriphalā

Kāsmarī	: Gmelina arborea Linn.
Kharjura	: Phoenix sylvestris Roxb.
Drākṣā	: Vitis vinifera Linn.

28. Sugandhitriphalā

Jātūphala	: Myristica fragrans Houtt.
Lavaṅga	: Syzygium aromaticum (L.) Merr & Perry.
Pūgaphala	: Areca catechu Linn.

29. Pañcakṣirī

Vaṭa	: Ficus benghalensis Linn.
Udumbara	: Ficus glomerata Roxb.
Plakṣa	: Ficus lacor Buch-Ham.
Pāriśa	: Thespesia populnea Bl.
Aśvattha	: Ficus religiosa Linn.

30. Caturbija

Methikā	: Trigonella foenum-graceum Linn.
Candraśūra	: Lepidium sativum Linn.
Kālājājī	: Nigella sativa Linn.
Yavanikā	: Carum copticum Benth.

31. Tr̥karsika

Śuṅṭhī	: Zingiber officinale Rose.
Ativiṣā	: Aconitum heterophyllum Wall.
Mustaka	: Cyperus rotundus Linn.

32. Cāturbhadra

Śuṅṭhī	: Zingiber officinals Rose.
Ativiṣā	: Aconitum heterophyllum-wall.
Mustaka	: Cyperus rotundus Linn.
Guḍūcī	: Tinospora cordifolia (Willd) Miers.

33. Ksāradaśaka

Śigru	: Moringa oliefera Lamk.
Mūlaka	: Raphanus Sativus Linn.
Palāśa	: butea monosperma Taub.
Cukrikā	: Cukrikā
Citraka	: Plumbago zeylanica Linn.
Ārdraka	: Zingiber officinale Rose.
Nimba	: Azadirachta indica A. Juss.
Ikṣu	: Saccharum officinarum Linn.
Apāmārga	: Achyranthes aspera Linn.
Kadali	: Musa paradisiaca Linn.

34. Upaviṣa

Arkakṣīra	: Calotropis Procera Ait.
Snuhikṣīra	: Euphorbia neriifolia Linn.
Lāṅgalī	: Gloriosa superba Linn.
Karavīra	: Nerium indicum Mill.
Guñjā	: Abrus precatorius Linn.
Ahiphena	: Papaver somniferum Linn.
Dhattūra	: Datura metel Linn.

35. Amlapañcaka

Amlavetasa	: Garcinia pedunculatum Roxn.
Jambīra	: Citrus limon (L.) Burm. f.
Mātuluṅga	: Citrus medica Linn.
Nimbūka	: Citrus acida Linn.
Nāraṅga	: Citrus reticulata blanco.



Dravya Gaṇa-Varga

Drugs Groups

द्रव्यगण-वर्ग

Concept and Basis

संबोधाधारश्च

- क. 'एकोऽपिह्यनेकां संज्ञा लभते कार्यान्तराणि कुर्वन्;
(अ) 'तद्यथा-पुरुषो बहूनां कर्मणां करणे समर्थो भवति; स यद्यत् कर्म करोति तस्य तस्य कर्मणः कर्तृकरण कार्यसंप्रयुक्तं तत्तद् गौणनाम-विशेषं प्राप्नोति, तद्वदौषधद्रव्यमपि द्रष्टव्यम्।'
(ब) यदि चैकमेव किञ्चिद् द्रव्यमासादयामस्तथागुणयुक्तं यत्सर्वकर्मणां करणे समर्थं स्यात्; कस्ततोऽन्यदिच्छेदुपधारयितुमुपदेष्टुं या शिष्येभ्य इति ।
Caraka Samhitā, Sūtra. 4.23.
- ख. एतावन्तो ह्यलमल्पबुद्धीनां व्यवहराय, बुद्धिमतां च स्वालक्षण्यानुमानयुक्ति-कुशलानामनुक्तार्थज्ञानायेति ।
Caraka Samhitā Sūtra. 4.20.
- ग. मन्दानां व्यवहाराय बुधानां बुद्धिवृद्धये ।
पञ्चाशत्को ह्येयं वर्गः कषायाणामुदाहृतः ॥
Caraka Samhitā, Sūtra. 4-20.
- घ. समासेन सप्तत्रिंशद् द्रव्यगणा भवन्तितद्यथा— ।
Suśruta Samhitā, Sūtra. 38.
- ङ. अत्रवर्गशब्देन प्रकरणात् समानक्रियाणां समूहोच्यते...समानकार्या वर्गाः ।
Cakrapāṇi, Caraka Samhitā.
- च. व्याधिप्रशमनादौ कार्ये येषां भेषजानां क्षमत्वं तानि वर्गीकृत्यभिधातुं द्रव्यसंग्रहणीयोऽभिधीयते ।
Cakrapāṇi, Caraka Samhitā.
- छ. समीक्ष्य दोषभेदाँश्च गणान् भिन्नान् प्रयोजयेत् ।
पृथङ्मिश्रान् समस्तान वा गणं वा व्यस्तसंहतम् ॥
Suśruta Samhitā, Sūtra. 38.
- ज. समस्त वर्गमर्थं वा यथालाभमथापि वा ।

प्रयुञ्जीत भिषक् प्राज्ञो यथोद्दिष्टेषु कर्मसु ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā Sūtra. 37.

झ. गणोक्तमपि यद्द्रव्यं भवेद् व्याधायौगिकम् ।
तदुद्धरेद्योगिकं तु प्रक्षिपेदप्यकीर्तितम् ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā Cikitsā. 1.

ट. त्रयस्त्रिंशदिति प्रोक्ता वर्गास्तेषु त्वलाभतः ।
युञ्ज्यात्तद्विधमन्यच्च द्रव्यं जह्यादयोगिकम् ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Sūtra. 15.

ठ. भिषग्बुद्धिमान् परिसंख्यातमपि यद्यद्द्रव्यमयोगिकं मन्येत् तत्तदपकर्षयेत्,
यद्यच्चानुक्तमपि यौगिकं मन्येत तत्तद्विदध्यात् । वर्गमपि वर्गेणोपसंसृजेदेक-
मेके नानेकेन वा युक्तिप्रमाणीकृत्य ।

Caraka Saṁhitā, Vimāna. 8.

त. अनेन निदर्शनेन नानौषधीभूतं जगति किञ्चित् द्रव्यमस्ति ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā Sūtra. 41.

अनेनोपदेशेन नानौषधिभूतं जगति किञ्चिद्, द्रव्यमुपलभ्यते तां तां युक्तिमर्थं
च तं तमभिप्रेत्य ।

Caraka Saṁhitā Sūtra. 26.

...जगत्येवमनौषधम् ।

न किञ्चिद्विद्यते द्रव्यं वशान्नार्थयोगयोः ।

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Sūtra. 9.

थ. अत्रौषधानां मिश्रीकृत्यगणरूपतथाऽभिधानादस्य मिश्रकसंज्ञा । गण्यन्त इति
गणाः समूहा ।

Cakrapāṇi, Dalhana.

द. इति पञ्चकषाय शतान्यभिसमस्य पञ्चाशन्महाकषाया महतां च कषायाणां
लक्षणोदाहरणार्थं व्याख्याता भवन्ति ।

Caraka Saṁhitā Sūtra. 4.8.

पञ्चाशन्महाकषायाः इति यदुक्तो तदनु व्याख्यास्यामः तद्यथा..... ।

Caraka Saṁhitā Sūtra. 4-8.

तेषामेकैकस्मिन् महाकषाये दश दशावयविकान् कषायाननुव्याख्यास्यामः,
तान्येव पञ्च कषायशतानि भवन्ति ।

Caraka Saṁhitā Sūtra. 4-8.

ध. अग्न्याणांशतमुद्दिष्टं यद्द्विपञ्चाशदुत्तरम् ।

अलमेतकिराणां विधातायोपदिश्यते ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā Sūtra. 25.

अग्न्याणां शतमुद्दिष्टं पञ्चपञ्चाशदुत्तरम् ।

अलमेतद्विजातीयाद्विताहित विनिश्चये ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha, Sūtra. 1.

अपरिसंख्येय विकल्पः, द्रव्यसंयोगकरणबाहुल्यात् ।

Caraka Saṁhitā Sūtra. 25-36.

तद्यथा...प्रकृत्यैव हितसमानामाहारविकाराणां प्राधान्यतो द्रव्याणि व्याख्यातानि भवन्ति ।

Caraka Saṁhitā Sūtra. 25-38.

अग्र्यामाणामित्यादौ अग्र्यशब्दः श्रेष्ठवचनः ।

Cakrapāṇi, Caraka Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 25-44.

Audbhida Gaṇāh

औद्भिद गणाः

Group of Vegetable Drugs

Trikatu

त्रिकटु

- क. पिप्पली मरिचं शुण्ठी त्रयमेताद्विमिश्रितम् ।
त्रिकटु त्र्यूषणं व्योषं कटुत्रिकमत्रोच्यते ॥
- ख. दीपनं रुचिदं वातश्लेष्ममन्दाग्निशूलनुत् ।

Triphalā

त्रिफला

- क. एकाहरीतकी योज्या द्वौ च योज्यौ बिभीतकौ ।
चत्वामलिकान्येव त्रिफलैषा प्रकीर्तिता ॥
- ख. त्रिफला शोथमेहघ्नी नाशयेद्विषमज्वरान् ।
दीपनीश्लेष्मपित्तघ्नीकुष्ठहन्त्री रसायनी ॥
सर्पिमर्धुभ्यां संयुक्ता सैव नेत्रामयाञ्जयेत् ।

Pañcakola

पञ्चकोल

- क. पिप्पलीपिप्पलीमूलचव्यचित्रकनागरैः ।
एकत्र मिश्रितैरेभिः पञ्चकोलमुच्यते ॥
- ख. पञ्चकोलं त्रिदोषघ्नं रुच्यं दीपनपाचनम् ।
स्वरभेदोहरञ्चैव गुल्मशूलार्तिनाशनम् ॥

Sadūṣana

षडूषण

- क. पञ्चकोलं समरिचं षडूषणमुदीर्यते ।

ख. पञ्चकोलगुणं तत्तु विशेषाद्बहिदीपनम् ॥

Caturūṣana

चतुरूषण

क. त्र्यूषणं ग्रन्थिकयुतं जायते चतुरूषणम् ।

ख. चतुरूषणमाख्यातं गुणैस्त्र्यूषणवद् बुधैः ।

कफाग्निमांघ्रविष्टम्भमारुचिपीनसकासहत् ॥

Trijātaka-caturjātaka

त्रिजातक-चतुर्जातक

क. त्वगौला पत्रकेस्तुल्यै स्त्रिसुगन्धि त्रिजातकम् ।

नागकेशर संयुक्तं चातुर्जातकमुच्यते ॥

ख. स्वरभेद श्वासकासमुखदोष विनाशनम् ।

वृष्यं बल्यं च योगार्हं चातुर्जात रसायनम् ॥

Daśamūla

दशमूल

क. बिल्वोऽग्निमन्थः श्योनाकः काश्मरी पाटला तथा ।

शालिपर्णी पृश्निपर्णी बृहतीद्वयगोक्षुरम् ॥

दशमूलमिदमाख्यातम् ।

ख. दशमूलमिदं श्वाससन्निपातज्वरापहम् ।

Laghupañcamūla

लघुपञ्चमूल

क. शालिपर्णी पृश्निपर्णी बृहती कण्टकारिका ।

तथा गोक्षुरसंयुक्तं पञ्चमूलमिदं लघु ॥

Mahatpañcamūla

महत्पञ्चमूल

क. बिल्वोऽग्निमन्थः श्योनाकः काश्मरी चाथ पाटला ।

ज्ञेयं महत्पञ्चमूलं दशमूलमुग्रे बुधे युते ॥

Pañcamūladvaya

पञ्चमूलद्वय

पञ्चमूलं त्रिदोषघ्नं वातघ्नं दशमूलकम् ।

ज्वरकासश्वासशूलमन्दाग्र्यरुचिनाशनम् ॥

Trīṇapañcamūla

तृणपञ्चमूल

कुशः काशः शरो दर्भ इक्षुरश्चैव तृणोद्भवम् ।

पञ्चतृणमिदं ख्यातं तृणजं पञ्चमूलकम् ॥

Vallīpañcamūla

वल्लीपञ्चमूल

विदारि चाजशृङ्गी च रजनीं सारिवाद्वयम् ।

वल्लीजं पञ्चमूलञ्च कथितं मुनिपुङ्गवैः ॥

Kaṅṭaka Pañcamūla

कण्टकपञ्चमूल

करमर्दः श्वदंष्ट्रा च हिंसा झिण्टी शतावरी ।
कण्टकाख्यं पञ्चमूलं निर्दिष्टं सूक्ष्मबुद्धिभिः ॥

Aṣṭavarga

अष्टवर्ग

ऋद्धिवृद्धिश्च मेदे द्वे तथार्थभकजीवकौ ।
काकोलीक्षीरकाकोलीत्यष्टवर्गः प्रकीर्तितः ॥

Jīvanīyagana

जीवनीयगण

अष्टवर्गः सयष्टीको जीवन्ती मुद्गपर्णिका ।
माषपर्णी गणोऽनन्तु जीवनीय इति स्मृतः ॥

सन्दर्भः

चक्रदत्तः	Cakradatta,
प्रथम परिशिष्टम्	Prathama pariśiṣṭam,
परिभाषा वर्णनम्	Paribhāṣā Varṇanam.

Miśraka Gaṇa

मिश्रक गण

अत्रौषधानां मिश्रीकृत्य गणरूपतथाऽभिधानादस्यमिश्रक संज्ञा ।

Cakrapāṇidatta.

गण्वन्त इति गणाः समूहाः ।

Dalhana, Suśruta Saṁhitā.

समासेन सप्तत्रिंशद् द्रव्यगणा भवन्ति ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 38.

I. GROUPS OF MORPHOLOGICAL SIMILARITY

ĀKRTIGATA SĀDHARMYA

आकृति साधर्म्य

A. Mūla

Roots

क. मूल

Bṛhatpañcamūla

बृहत्पञ्चमूल

बिल्वाग्निमन्थदुण्डुक पाटलाः काश्मर्यञ्चोति महत् ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā.

श्रीफलः सर्वतोभद्रा पाटला गणिकारिका ।

श्योनाकः पञ्चभिश्चैतैः पञ्चमूलं महन्मतम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Guḍūcyādi varga.

सत्तिकं कफवातघ्नं पाकेलग्निदीपनम् ।

मधुरानुरसञ्चैव पञ्चमूलं महत् स्मृतम् ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 38.

पञ्चमूल महातिकं कषायं कफवातनुत् ।

मधुरं श्वासघ्नमुष्णं लघ्वग्निदीपनम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Guḍūcyadi varga.

ऋद्धिर्वृद्धिश्च मेदे द्वे तथार्षभकजीवकौ ।

काकोलीक्षीरकाकोलीत्यष्टवर्गः प्रकीर्तितः ॥

Jīvanīyagaṇa

जीवनीयगण

अष्टवर्गः सयष्टीको जीवन्ती मुद्गपर्णिका ।

माषपर्णी गणोऽनन्तु जीवनीय इति स्मृतः ॥

सन्दर्भः

चक्रदत्तः

Cakradatta,

प्रथम परिशिष्टम्

Prathama Pariśiṣṭam,

परिभाषा वर्णनम्

Paribhāṣā, Varanṇam.

Mīśraka Gaṇa

मिश्रक गण

अत्रौषधानां मिश्रीकृत्य गणरूपतथाऽभिधानादस्यश्रिमक संज्ञा ।

Cakrapāṇidatta.

गण्वन्त इति गणाः समूहाः ।

Dalhaṇa Suśruta Saṁhitā.

समासेन सप्तत्रिंशद् द्रव्यगणा भवन्ति ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra, 38.

I. GROUPS OF MORPHOLOGICAL SIMILARITY

ĀKṚTIGATA SADHARMYA

आकृति गतसाधर्म्यं

A. Mūla

Roots

क. मूल

Bṛhatpañcamūla

बृहत्पञ्चमूल

बिल्वाग्रिमन्थदुण्डुक पाटलाः काशमर्यश्चेति महत् ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā.

श्रीफलः सर्वतोभद्रा पाटला गणिकारिका ।

श्योनाकः पञ्चभिश्चैतेः पञ्चमूलं महन्मतम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Guḍūcyadi varga.

सतिकं कफवातघ्नं पाकेलघ्वग्निदीपनम् ।

मधुरानुरसञ्चैव पञ्चमूलं महत् स्मृतम् ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 38.

पञ्चमूल महातिक्तं कषायं कफवातनुत् ।

मधुरं श्वासघ्नमुष्णं लघ्वग्निदीपनम् ॥

Bhāvaṅprakāśa, Guḍūcyādi varga.

Laghupañcamūla

लघुपञ्चमूल

त्रिकण्टकबृहतीद्वयपृथक्पण्योविदारिगन्धा चेति कनीयः ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 38.

शालपर्णी पृश्निपर्णी वार्त्ताकी कण्टकारिका ।

गोक्षुरः पञ्चभिश्चैतः कनिष्ठं पञ्चमूलकम् ॥

Bhāvaṅprakāśa, Guḍūcyādi varga.

कषायतिक्तमधुरं कनीयः पञ्चमूलकम् ।

वातघ्नं पित्तशमनं बृंहणं बलवर्धनम् ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā.

पञ्चमूलं लघु स्वादु बल्यं पित्तानिलापहम् ।

नात्युष्णं बृंहणं ग्राहि ज्वरश्वासाश्मरीप्रणुत् ॥

Bhāvaṅprakāśa, Guḍūcyādi varga.

Daśamūla

दशमूल

उभाभ्यां पञ्चमूलाभ्यां दशमूलमुदाहृतम् ।

Bhāvaṅprakāśa, Guḍūcyādi varga.

गणः श्वासहरो ह्येष कफपित्तानिलापहः ।

आमस्य पाचनश्चैव सर्वज्वर विनाशनः ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra, 38.

एषां वातहरावाधौः ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 38.

दशमूलं त्रिदोषघ्नं श्वासकासशिरोरुजः ।

तन्द्राशोथज्वरानाह पार्श्व पीडारुचीहरित् ॥

Bhāvaṅprakāśa, Guḍūcyādi varga.

Kaṅtakapañcamūla

कण्टकपञ्चमूल

करमर्दत्रिकण्टकसैरीयकशतावरीगृध्नख्यइति कण्टकसंज्ञः ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 38.

Vallīpañcamūla

वल्लीपञ्चमूल

विदारीसारिवारजनीगुडूच्योऽजशृङ्गी चेति वल्लीसंज्ञः ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 38.

रक्तपित्तहरौ ह्येतौ शोफत्रयविनाशनौ ।

सर्वमेहहरौ चैव शुक्रदोष विनाशनौ ॥ ७४ ॥

पञ्चकौश्लेषम शमनावित्तौ परिकीर्तितौ ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 38.

Trṇapañcamūla

तृणपञ्चमूल

कुशकाशनलदर्भकाण्डेक्षुका इति तृणसंज्ञकः ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 38.

कुशः काशः शरोदर्भ इक्षुश्चेति तृणोद्भवनम् ।

Bhāvaprakāśa, Guḍūcyādi varga.

मूत्रदोषविकारं च रक्तपित्तं तथैव च ।

अन्त्यः प्रयुक्तः क्षीरेण शीघ्रमेव विनाशयेत् ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 38.

Madhyamapañcamūla

मध्यमपञ्चमूल

बलापुनर्नवैरशूर्पपर्णीद्वयेन तु ।

मध्यमं कफवातघ्नं नातिपित्तकरं स्मृतम् ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Sūtra. 6.

Jivanañcamūla

जीवनपञ्चमूल

अभीरुवीरा जीवन्ती जीवकर्षभकैः स्मृतम् ।

जीवनाख्यं तु चक्षुष्यं वृष्यं पित्तनिलापहम् ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Sūtra. 6.

Mūlinī

मूलिनी

हस्तिदन्ती हैमवती श्यामा त्रिवृदधोगुडा ।

ससला श्वेतनामा च प्रत्यक्श्रेणी गवाक्ष्यपि ॥

ज्योतिष्मती च बिम्बी च शणपुष्पी विषाणिका ।

अजगंधा द्रवन्ती च क्षीरिणी चात्र षोडशी ॥

शणपुष्पी च बिम्बी च च्छर्दने हैमवत्यपि ।

श्वेता ज्योतिष्मती चैव योज्या शीर्षेविरेचने ॥

एकादशावशिष्टा याः प्रयोज्यस्ता विरेचने ।

इत्युक्ता नामकर्मभ्यां मूलिन्यः ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Sūtra. 1.

G. Pallava
Pañcapallava

Leaves

छ. पल्लव
पञ्चपल्लव

आम्रजम्बूकपित्थानां बीजपूरकबिल्वयोः ।
गन्धकर्माणि सर्वत्र पत्राणि पञ्चपल्लवम् ॥

K. Puṣpa
Ādyapuṣpa

Flowers

ज. पुष्प
आद्यपुष्प

चन्दनं कुङ्कुमं वारि त्रयमेतद्वरार्थकम् ।
त्रिभागकुङ्कुमोपेतं तदुक्तं चाद्यपुष्पकम् ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu.

L. Phala

Fruits

झ. फल

क. शंखिन्यश्च विडङ्गानि त्रपुषं मदनानि च ।
धामार्गवमथेक्ष्वाकु जीमूतं कृतवेधनम् ॥
आनूपं स्थलजं चैव क्लीतकं द्विविधं स्मृतम् ।
प्रकीर्या चोदकीर्या च प्रत्यक्पुष्पी विधीयते ॥
अन्तःकोटरपुष्पी च हस्तिपर्ण्याश्च शारदम् ।
कम्पिल्लकारग्वधयोः फलं यत् कुटजस्य च ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Sūtra. 1.

ख. धामार्गवमथेक्ष्वाकु जीमूतं कृतवेधनम् ।
मदनं कुटजं चैव त्रपुषं हस्तिपर्णिनी ॥
एतानि वमने चैव योज्यान्यास्थापनेषु च ।
नस्तः प्रच्छर्दने चैव प्रत्यक्पुष्पी तथाभया ॥
दश यान्यवशिष्टानि तान्युक्तानि विरेचने ।
नामकर्मभिरुक्तानि फलान्येकानेविंशतिः ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Sūtra. 1.

Triphalā

त्रिफला

हरीतक्यामलकबिभीतकानि त्रिफला ।

Suśruta Samhitā, Sūtra. 38.

पथ्याविभीतकधात्रीणां फलैः स्यात्त्रिजला समैः ।

फलत्रिकं च त्रिफला सा परा च प्रकीर्त्तिता ।

Bhāvaprakāśa, Harītakṛyādi, varga.

एषा हरीतकी योज्या द्वौ योज्यौ च विभीतकौ ।

त्रिफला कफपित्तघ्नी मेदकुष्ठ हरा सरा ।

चक्षुष्या दीपनी रुच्या विषमज्वरनाशिनी ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Harītakṛyādi varga.

Svalpatriphalā

स्वल्पत्रिफला

स्वल्पा काश्मर्य खर्जूरपरुषकफलैर्भवेत् ।

Madhuratriphalā

मधुरत्रिफला

मधुरत्रिफला ज्ञेया मधुरादि फलत्रयम् ॥

Sugandhi Triphalā

सुगन्धित्रिफला

जातीफलं पूगफलं लवङ्गकलिका फलम् ।

सुगन्धित्रिफला ज्ञेया सुरभि त्रिफला च सा ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu.

B. Kanda

Tubers/Rhizomes

ख. कन्द

Pañcaśūraṇa

पञ्चशूरण

अत्यम्लपर्णीकाण्डीरमालाकन्द शूरणैः ।

प्रोक्तो भवति योगोऽयं पञ्चशूरण संज्ञकः ॥

C. Valli

Twinnings/Climbers

ग. वल्ली

Vallipañcamūla

वल्लीपञ्चमूल

विदारीसारिकारजनीगुडूच्योऽजश्रुङ्गी चेतिवल्ली संज्ञः ।

कूष्माण्डं प्रवरं वदान्त भिषजो वल्लीफलानां पुनः ।

Rāja Nighaṇṭu.

D. Kaṇṭaka

Thorns/Spines

घ. कण्टक

Kaṇṭakapañcamūla

कण्टकपञ्चमूल

करमर्द त्रिकण्टक सैरीयकशतावरीगृध्रनखस्य इति कण्टक संज्ञः ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 38.

Trikaṇṭaka

त्रिकण्टक

बृहतीचाग्निदमनी दुःस्पर्शा चेति तु त्रयम् ।

कण्टकारीत्रयं प्रोक्तं त्रिकण्टं कण्टकत्रयम् ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu.

E. Tvak

Bark

ड त्वक्

Pañcavalkala

पञ्चवल्कल

न्यग्रोधोदुम्बराश्वत्थ प्रत्यम्लवेतसवल्कलैः ।
सर्वैरेकत्रमिलितैः पञ्चवेतसमुच्यते ।

Rāja Nighaṅṭu.

न्यग्रोधोदुम्बराश्वत्थपारीषप्लक्षपादपः ।
पञ्चते क्षीरिणो वृक्षास्तेषां त्वक् पञ्चवल्कलम् ॥

Trivalkala

त्रिवल्कल

इमाँस्त्रीनपरावृक्षानाहुर्येषा हितास्त्वचः ।
पूतीकः कृष्णगंधा च तित्वकश्च तथा तरुः ॥
विरेचनेः प्रयोक्तव्यः पूतीकस्तित्वकस्तथा ।
कृष्णगंधा सरीसृपे शोथेष्वर्शःसु चोच्यते ॥
दद्रु विद्रधिगण्डेषु कुष्ठेष्वप्यलजीषु च ।

Caraka Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 1.

F. Kṣīra

Latex/Milky Juice

च. क्षीर

Kṣīrivrkṣa

क्षीरिवृक्ष

Kṣīratraya

क्षीरत्रय

रविक्षीरं वटक्षीरं स्नुहीक्षीरं तथैव च ।
क्षीरत्रयमिति ख्यातं मारणादौ प्रशस्यते ॥

Rasa Tarāṅginī, 2.

षड्वृक्षान् शोधनानेतानपि विद्याद्विकक्षणः ।

Caraka Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 1.

Kṣīravarga

क्षीरवर्ग

(Miśravarga-Praṇija Evam Audbhida)

दुर्गधकोदुम्बरश्चार्को न्यग्रोधोऽश्वत्थतित्वकौ ।
एषां दुग्धैः समाख्यातो दुग्धवर्गः समासतः ॥

Rasatarāṅginī, 2.

वमनेऽश्मन्तकं विद्यात्स्नुहीक्षीरं विरेचने ।
क्षीरमर्कस्य विज्ञेयं वमने सविरेचने ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 1.

Kaṭucāturjātaka

कटुचातुर्जातक

एलात्वक्पत्रकैस्तुल्यैर्मरिचेन समन्वितैः ।

कटुपूर्वमिदं चान्यश्चातुर्जातकमुच्यते ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu.

Pañcakola-Pañcoṣaṇa

पञ्चकोल-पञ्चोषण

पिप्पलीपिप्पलीमूलचव्यचित्रकनागरैः ।

पञ्चाभिः कोलमात्रं यत्पञ्चकोलं तदुच्यते ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Harītakṛyādi varga.

पञ्चकोलं रसेपाके कटुकं रुचिकृन्मतम् ।

तीक्ष्णोष्णं पाचनं श्रेष्ठं दीपनं कफवातनुत् ॥

गुल्मप्लीहोदरानाह शूलघ्नं पित्तकोपनम् ।

Bhāvaprakāśa, Harītakṛyādi varga.

Caturūṣaṇa

चतुरूषण

सपिप्पलीमूलं त्रिकटु चतुरूषणमुच्यते ।

Saḍūṣaṇa

षडूषण

पञ्चकोलं समरिचं षडूषणमुदाहृतम् ।

पञ्चकोल गुणं तत्तु रूक्षमुष्णं विषापहम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Harītakṛyādi varga,

Pañcatikta

पञ्चतिक्त

गुडूची निम्बमूलत्वक् भिषड्माता निदिग्धिका ।

पटोलपत्रमित्येतत् पञ्चतिक्तं प्रकीर्तितम् ॥

Rasatarāṅgiṇī, 2.

Amlavarga

अम्लवर्ग

फलपञ्चाम्ल-अम्लपञ्चक

अम्लवेतसजम्बीरलुङ्गनारङ्गनिम्बुकैः ।

फलं पञ्चाम्लकं ख्यातं कीर्तितञ्चाम्लपञ्चकम् ॥

Rasatarāṅgiṇī, 2.

कोलदाडिमवृक्षाम्लं चुल्लकी साम्लवेतसाः ।

फल पञ्चाम्लमुद्दिष्टं मम्लपञ्चफलं स्मृतम् ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu.

पञ्चाम्लकद्वयम्

चाङ्गेरी लिक्चाम्लवेतसयुतं जम्बीरकं पूरकं नारङ्गं फलण्ड-
वस्तित्ववति तु पिण्डाम्लञ्च बीजाम्लकम् ।

अम्बुष्ठा सहितं द्विरेतदुदितं पञ्चाम्लकमं तद्द्वयं, विज्ञेय करमर्द
निम्बूक युतं स्यादम्लवर्गाह्वयम् ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu.

अम्लवर्गः

जम्बीरं निम्बुकं चैव खम्लवेतसमम्लिका ।
नारङ्ग दाडिमं चैव वृक्षाम्लं बीजपूरकम् ॥
चाङ्गेरी चणकाम्लं च कर्कन्धुः करमर्दकः ।
चुक्रिका चेति सामान्यदम्लवर्गः प्रकीर्तितः ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu.

अम्लवर्गेषु निम्बूकं श्रेष्ठत्वम्

सर्वेषाम्लजातीनां निम्बूकं गुणवत्तमम् ।
अम्लवेतसकं वापि त्वम्लिका वा गुणाधिका ॥

Rāsatarāṅginī, 2.

(एक-द्वि-त्रि-चतुः-पञ्चलवणः-सिन्धु सौवर्चल चैव विडं सामुद्रकं
गडम् । एकद्वित्रिचतुः पञ्चलवणानि क्रमाद् विदुः ॥)

E. Gandha

Smell/Odour/Aroma

डः गन्ध

Trijātaka

त्रिजातक

‘त्वगेला पत्रकैस्तुल्यैस्त्रिसुगन्धि त्रिजातकम् ।’

Caturjātaka

चतुर्जातक

‘नागकेशर संयुक्तं चतुर्जातकमुच्यते ।’

Bhāvaprakāśa, Karṣṇūrādi varga.

तद्द्वयं रोचनं रूक्षं तीक्ष्णोष्णं मुखगन्धहत् ।

लघुपित्ताग्निद्वर्ण्यं कफवात विषापहम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Karṣṇūrādi varga.

Pañcasugandhika

पञ्चसुगन्धिक

कर्पूरकङ्कोललवङ्गपुष्पगुवाकजातीफलपञ्चकेन ।

समांश भागेन च योजितेन मनोहरं पञ्चसुगन्धिकं स्यात् ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu.

Sarvaūśadhigana

सर्वौषधिगण

कुष्ठमांसीहरिद्राभिर्वचाशैलेयचन्दनैः ।

मुराकचूरमुस्ताभिः सर्वौषधमुदाहृतम् ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu.

Sugandhāmālaka

सुगन्धामलक

सर्वोषधिसमायुक्तः शुष्काश्चामलकसचः ।
यदातदायं योगः स्यात् सुगंधामलकाभिधः ॥

Sarvagandha

सर्वगन्ध

चातुर्जातककपूरकङ्कोलागुरुसिंहकम् ।
लवङ्गसहितं चैव सर्वगन्धं विनिर्दिशेत् ॥

F. Saṅkhyā

Number

संख्या

Aṣṭavarga

अष्टवर्ग

अ. जीवकर्षभकौ मेदे काकोल्यौ ऋद्धिवृद्धके ।
अष्टवर्गोऽष्टभिर्द्रव्यैः कथितश्चरकादिभिः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Harītakhyādi varga.

ब. अष्टवर्गोहिमः स्वादुर्बृहणः शुक्रलोगुरुः ।
भग्नसंधानकृत् कामबलासबलवर्धनः ॥
वातपित्तास्रतृड्दाहज्वर मेहक्षयापहः ।

Bhāvaprakāśa, Harītakhyādi varga.

G. Shape/Size/Measurement

परिमाण

Pañcakola पञ्चकोल
Samatritaya समत्रितय
हरीतकी नागरं च गुडश्चेतित्रयं समम् ।
समत्रितयमित्युक्तं निरुक्तं समत्रयम् ॥

Trikarṣika

त्रिकर्षिक

‘नागरातिविषामुस्तात्रयमेतत् त्रिकर्षिकम् ।’

Rāja Nighaṇṭu.

Pitavarga

पीतवर्ग

पीतवर्गमतः श्रणु ।
कुसुम्भं किंशुकं रात्री पतंगो मदयन्तिका ।

Rāsārṇava.

Kṛṣṇavarga

कृष्णवर्ग

कदली कारवेल्ली च त्रिफला नीतिका नलः ।
पङ्कः कासीस बालाम्रं.....कृष्णवर्गं उदाहृतः ॥

Rasendra Cūḍāmaṇi.

इत्येता चत्वारः वर्गोः सूतस्य जारणमारणश्च कर्मोपयोगिताम्—

रक्तवर्गादिवर्गैश्च द्रव्यं यज्जारणात्मकम् ।

भावनीयं प्रयत्नेन ताडग्रागासये खलु ॥

Rasendra Cūḍāmaṇi.

Devakardama

देवकर्दम

श्रीखण्डागुरुकपूरकाश्मीरैस्तु समांशकैः ।

मृगांकमुकुटाहोऽयं मिलितैर्देवकर्दमः ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu.

Yakṣakardama

यक्षकर्दम

कपूरागुरुकस्तूरीकङ्कोलैर्यक्षधूपकः ।

एकीकृतमिदं सर्वं यक्षकर्दम इष्यते ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu.

कुङ्कुमागुरुकुरङ्गनामिका चन्द्रचन्दनसमांशसमृतम् ।

त्र्यक्षपूजनपैरकगोचरं यक्षकर्दममिमं प्रचक्षते ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu.

D. Rasa

Taste

घ. रस

Madhura varga

मधुरवर्ग

स्याज्जीवकर्षभकयुग्मयुग्मद्विमेदा-काकोलिकाद्वययुत्द्विक् शूर्पण्यौ ।

Rāja Nighaṇṭu.

अ. अष्टवर्गः सयष्टीको जीवन्ती मुद्गपर्णिका ।

माषपर्णी गणोऽयं तु जीवनीय इति स्मृतः ॥

ब. गुरुर्गर्भप्रदा स्तन्यकफकृत् पित्तरक्तहृत् ।

तृष्णां शोथं ज्वरं दाहं रक्तपित्त व्यपोपहति ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Harītakyaḍi varga.

Trikaṭu

त्रिकटु

अ. विश्वोपकुल्या मरिचं त्रयं त्रिकटु कथ्यते ।

कटुत्रिकं तु त्रिकटु त्र्यूषणं व्योषमुच्यते ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Harītakyaḍi varga.

ब. त्र्यूषणं दीपनं हन्ति श्वासकासत्वगामयान् ।

गुल्ममेहकफस्थौल्यमेदः श्लीपदपीनसान् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Harītakyaḍi varga.

M. Bija

Seeds

ज. बीज

Caturbija

चतुर्बीज

मेथिका चन्द्रशूरश्च कालाजाजी यवानिका ।

एतच्चतुष्टयं युक्तं चतुर्बीजमिति स्मृतम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Harītakṛyādi varga.

तच्चूर्णं भक्षितं नित्यं निहन्ति पवनामयम् ।

अजीर्णशूलाध्मानं पार्श्वशूलं कटिव्यथाम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Harītakṛyādi varga.

II. GROUPS OF QUALITATIVE SIMILARITY

Guṇasādharmya

गुणसाधर्म्यं

A. Śabda

क. शब्द

Kakarādigaṇa

ककरादिगण

- अ. कूष्माण्डं कमठः कलिङ्गकफलं कोलं कुलत्थास्तथा ।
कर्कोटी कतकं कपित्थकफलं वै काञ्चीनीयं सुभम् ॥
कङ्गुः काञ्जिककारवेल्लकफलं कर्कोटकः कर्कटी ।
कौसुम्भश्च कपोतकः खलु गणः प्रोक्तः ककरादिकः ॥
- ब. ककरादिगणोक्तानि भेषजानि कदाचन ।
रसायनफलाकांक्षी रससेवी न भक्षयेत् ॥

Rasatarāṅginī, 7.

Kakarāṣṭaka

ककराष्टक

- अ. कलिङ्गं कारवेल्लं च कदली काकमाचिका ।
कुसुम्भिका च कर्कोटी कूष्माण्डं कर्कटी तथा ॥
- ब. ककराष्टकमेतद्धि प्रोक्तं रसविशारदैः ।
वर्जयेद्रससेवी च नित्यमेतत्प्रयत्नतः ॥

Rasatarāṅginī, 7.

B. Sparsā

ख. स्पर्श

(Mahāsneha- महास्नेह 'सर्पिस्तैलं वसा मज्जास्नेहो दृष्टश्चतुर्विधः ।')

Caraka Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 1.)

C. Rūpa

ग. रूप

(Śuklavarga— शुक्लवर्गः 'सुधाकूर्म शंख शक्ति वराटिका ।')

Rasārṇava)

Raktavarga

रक्तवर्ग

‘मञ्जिष्ठा कुङ्कुमं लाक्षा खदिरश्चासनस्तथा । रक्तवर्गस्तु देवेशि !’

Rasārṇava.

दाडिमं किंशकुं लाक्षा बन्धूकं च निशाह्वयम् ।
कुसुम्भ पुष्पं मञ्जिष्ठा इत्येते रक्तवर्णकः ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu.

III. GROUPS OF PHARMACOLOGICAL SIMILARITY

A. Karmasādharmya

कर्मसाधर्म्यं

Trimada

त्रिमद

‘विडङ्गमुस्तचित्रैश्च त्रिमदः समुदाहृतः ।’

(क्षारद्वयः ‘स्वर्जिका यावशूकश्च क्षारद्वयमुदाहृतम्’—‘क्षारत्रयः टङ्कणेन युतं तत्तु क्षारत्रयमुदीरितम्’ Rāja Nighaṇṭu.)

Kṣārapañcaka

क्षारपञ्चक

यवमुष्ककसर्जानां पलाशतिलयोस्तथा ।
क्षारैस्तु पञ्चाभिः प्रोक्तः पञ्चक्षारभिधोगणः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa.

Kṣāraṣaṭka

क्षारषट्क

धवापामार्गकुटजलाङ्गली तिलमुष्कजैः ।
क्षारैरेतैस्तु मिलितैः क्षारषट्कमुदाहृतम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa.

Kṣāradāśaka

क्षारदशक

अ. शिग्रुमूलकपलाशचुक्रिकाचित्रकार्द्रकसनिम्बसंभवैः ।
इक्षुशिखरिकमोचिकोद्भवैः क्षारपूर्वदशकं प्रकीर्तितम् ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu.

ब. ‘क्षार एतेऽग्निना तुल्या गुल्मशूलहराभृशम् ।’

Bhāvaprakāśa, Harītakayādi varga.

Mahāpañcaviṣa

महापञ्चविष

शृङ्गिकः कालकूटश्च मुस्तको वत्सनाभकः ।
सक्तुकश्चेति योगोऽयं महापञ्चविषाभिद्यः ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu.

Upaviṣa

उपविष

अर्कक्षीरस्तुहीक्षीरं लांगली करवीरकौ ।
गुञ्जाऽहिफेनो धत्तूरः सप्तोपविषजातयः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Gudūcyādi varga.

B. Jātisādharmya

ख. जातिसाधर्म्यं

त्रिशर्कराः 'गुडोत्पन्ना हिमोत्पन्ना मधुजातेमिश्रितम् ।
त्रिशर्करा च त्रिसिता सितात्रय सितात्रिके ॥'

Rāja Nighaṅṭu.

C. Kāryasādharmya

ग. कार्यसाधर्म्यं

Kṣārayoni

क्षारयोनि

अ. 'महान्तमसितमुष्ककमधिवास्या.....अथानेनैव विधानेन कुटज पलाशाश्व-
कर्णपारिभ्रदकबिभीतकारवधतिल्वकार्कस्तुह्यपास्फोताश्वमारक सप्तच्छदा-
ग्रिमन्थ-गुंजाश्वतस्त्रश्चकोशातकी. समूलफलपत्रशाखा दहेत् ।'

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra.

ब. 'गण्डीर फलाशकुटजबिल्वार्क स्तुह्यपामार्ग पाटलापारिभ्रदकनादेयी कृष्ण-
गंधानीपनिम्बनिर्दहन्यटरूषक नक्तमालकंपूतिकबृहतीकण्टकारिका
भल्लातकेंद्रुदीवैजयन्तीकदली वर्षाभूहीवेरक्षुर वारुणीश्वेतमोक्षकाशोका
इत्येवं वर्गं समूलपत्रशाखम्...विपचेत् ।'

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Cikitsā. 4.

Snehayoni

स्नेहयोनि

(द्वय स्नेहयोन्याः— स्थावर जङ्गमांश्वः 'स्नेहानां द्विविधा सौम्य योनिः
स्थावर जंगमा ।')

Sthāvarayoni

स्थावर योनि

'तिलप्रियालभिषुकौ विभीतकश्चित्राभयौरण्डमधूकसर्षपाः । कुसुम्भ-
बिल्वारुकमूलकातसी निकोचकाक्षोटककरञ्जशिगुकाः ।'

Caraka Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 13.

'तिल्वकैरण्डकोशाप्रदन्तीसप्तलाशंखिनीपलाशविषाणिकागवाक्षी कम्पिल्ल-
कशम्पाकनीलिनीस्नेहा विरेचयन्ति ।'

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Cikitsā. 31.

स्थावरयोनिषु तिलतैलं श्रेष्ठत्वम्—

'सर्वेषां तैलजातानां तिलतैलं विशिष्यते ।'

Caraka Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 13.

Kṛṣṇīkaraṇa

कृष्णीकरण

‘बिभीतकभल्लातकपिण्डीतकस्नेहः कृष्णीकरणे ।’

Pāṇḍūkaraṇa

पाण्डूकरण

‘श्रवणकंगुकटुण्टुकस्नेहाः पाण्डूकरणे ।’

Āsavayoni

आसवयोनि

नवाश्रयभेदेन—

Dhānya	धान्य
Phala	फल
Mūla	मूल
Sāra	सार
Puṣpa	पुष्प
Kāṇḍa	काण्ड
Patra	पत्र
Tvak	त्वक्
Śarkarā	शर्करा

नवसमूहाश्रयान्तर्गत द्रव्ययोग-८४

‘प्रवरासवानामशीतिरुक्ता चतुरुत्तरैषा ।’

Caraka Saṁhitā, Sūtra, 4-50.

कर्मप्रयोगभेदेन (सुश्रुतोक्त) स्थावरं (औद्भिद) स्नेहयोन्यन्तर्गत (स्रोत) द्रव्यापि—

क. तिल्वकैरण्डकोशाम्रदन्तीद्रवन्तीसप्तलाशंखिनीपलाशविषाणिका गवाक्षी कम्पिलकशम्पाकनीलिनीस्नेहा विरेचयन्ति ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 31.

ख. जीमूतककुटजकृतवेधनेक्ष्वाकुवापामार्गवमदनस्नेहा वामयन्ति ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 31.

ग. विडङ्गखरमञ्जरीमधुशियुसूर्यवल्लीपीलुसिद्धार्थक ज्योतिष्मतीस्नेहाः शिरो विरेचयन्ति ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 31.

घ. करञ्जपूतिकृतमालमातुलुङ्गैर्मंगुदीकिरातातिककस्नेहाः दुष्टव्रणेषूपयुज्यन्ते ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 31.

ङ. तुवरककपित्थकम्पिलकभल्लातकपटोलस्नेहाः महाव्याधिषु ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 31.

च. त्रपुषैर्वारुककर्कारुकतुम्बीकूष्माण्डस्नेहाः मूत्रसंगेषु ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 31.

- छ. कपोतवंकावल्गुजहरीतकीस्नेहाः शर्कराशमरीषु ।
Suśruta Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 31.
- ज. कुसुम्भसर्षपातसीपिचुमर्दातिमुक्तकभाण्डीकटुतुम्बीकटभीस्नेहाः प्रमेहेषु ।
Suśruta Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 31.
- झ. शिंशपागुरुसारस्नेहाः दद्रुकुष्ठकिटिभेषु । *Suśruta Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 31.*
- आमयिक क्रिया भैषजीयोपयोगानुसारेण समूहनामानि स्नेहद्रव्य—

Virecana	विरेचन
Vamana	वमन
Śirovirecana	शिरोविरेचन
Duṣṭavraṇaśodhana	दुष्टव्रणशोधन
Kuṣṭhaghna	कुष्ठघ्न
Mūtrajanana	मूत्रजनन
Aśmarighna	अश्मरीघ्न
Pramehaghna	प्रमेहघ्न

Caraka Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 25.

Pañcāśanmahākāṣāya

पञ्चाशन्महाकषाय

Carakokta Dravya Gaṇa-Deśemāni

चरकोक्त द्रव्य गण-दशेमानि

Jīvaniya

जीवनीय

‘जीवकर्षभकौ मेदा महामेदा काकोली क्षीरकाकोली मुद्गपर्णी माषपर्ण्यौ
 जीवन्ती मधुकमिति दशेमानि जीवनीयानि भवन्ति ।’

Bṛihāṇīya

बृंहणीय

‘क्षीरिणीराजक्षवकाश्वगंधाकाकोली वाट्यायनी भद्रौदनीभारद्वाजी
 पयस्यष्व- गंधा इति दशेमानि बृंहणीयानि भवन्ति ।’

Lekhāṇīya

लेखनीय

मुस्तकुष्ठहरिद्रादारुहरिद्रावचातिविषाकटुरोहिणीचित्रकचिरबिल्वहैमव-
 त्य इति दशेमानि लेखनीयानि भवन्ति ।’

Bhedāṇīya

भेदनीय

‘सुबहाकौरुबूकाशिगुचित्राचित्रकचिरबिल्वशंखिनीशकुलादनीस्वर्ण-
 क्षीरिण्य इति दशेमानि भेदनीयानि भवन्ति ।’

Sandhāṇīya

सन्धानीय

‘मधुकमधुपर्णीपृश्निपर्ण्यम्बष्ठकीसमंगामोचरसधातकीलोध्रप्रियङ्गुकट्-
फलानीति दशेमानि सन्धानीयानि भवन्ति ।’

Dipaniya

दीपनीय

‘पिप्पलीपिप्पलीमूलचव्यचित्रकशुण्ठीअम्लवेतसमरिचअजमोदाभ्र्जात-
कोस्थिहिङ्गुनिर्यासा इति दशेमानि दीपनीयानि भवन्ति ।’

Balya

बल्य

‘ऐन्द्रत्र्यृषभ्यतिसर्ण्यप्रोक्ता पयस्याश्वगन्धास्थिरारोहिणी बलातिबला इति
दशेमानिन बल्यानि भवन्ति ।’

Varnya

वर्ण्य

‘चन्दनतुंगपद्मकोशीरमधुकर्मजिष्ठासारिवापयस्यासितलता इति दशेमानि
वर्ण्यानि भवन्ति ।’

Kanṭhya

कण्ठ्य

‘सारिवेक्षुमूलमधुकपिप्पलीद्राक्षाविदारीकैडर्यहंसपादीबृहतीकण्ट-कारिका
इति दशेमानि कण्ठयानि भवन्ति ।’

Hrdya

हृद्य

‘आम्राप्रातकलकुचकरमर्दवृक्षाम्लवेतसकुवलबदरदाडिममातुलुङ्गानीति
दशेमानि हृद्यानि भवन्ति ।’

Trptighna

तृप्तिघ्न

‘नागरचव्यचित्रकविडंगमूर्वागुडूचीवचामुस्तपिप्पलीपटोलानीति दशेमानि
तृप्तिघ्नानि भवन्ति ।’

Arsoghna

अर्शोघ्न

‘कटुजबिल्वचित्रकनागरतिविषाभायाधन्वयास दारुहरिद्रा वचाचव्यानीति
दशेमान्यर्शोघ्नानि भवन्ति ।’

Kuṣṭhaghna

कुष्ठघ्न

‘खदिराभयामलकहरिद्रारुष्करसप्तपर्णारग्वधाकरवीरविडंगानातीप्रवाला
इति दशेमानि कुष्ठघ्नानि भवन्ति ।’

Kaṇḍūghna

कण्डूघ्न

‘चन्दननलदकृतमालनक्तमालनिम्बकुटजसर्षर्षमधुकदारुहरिद्रामुस्तानीति
दशेमानि कण्डूघ्नानि भवन्ति ।’

Kṛmighna

कृमिघ्न

‘अक्षीवमरिचगण्डीरकेवुकविडंगनिर्गुण्डीकिणिहीश्वदंष्ट्रावृषपर्णिकाखु-

पर्णिका इति दशेमानि क्रिमिघ्नानि भवन्ति ।'

Viṣaghna

विषघ्न

'हरिद्रामञ्जिष्ठासुवहासूक्ष्मैलापलिन्दीचन्दनकतकशिरीषसिन्धुवार श्लेष्मा-
तका इति दशेमानि विषघ्नानि भवन्ति ।'

Stanyajanana

स्तन्यजनन

'वीरण शालिषाष्टिकेक्षुवालिकादर्भकुशकाशगुन्देत्कटकतृणमूलानीतिदशे-
मानि स्तन्यजननानि भवन्ति ।'

Sukrajanana

शुक्रजनन

'जीवकर्षभककाकोलीक्षीरकाकोलीमुद्गपर्णीमाषपर्णीमेदावृक्षरुहाजटिला-
कुलिगा इति दशेमानि शुक्रजनानि भवन्ति ।'

Sukraśodhana

शुक्रशोधन

'कुष्ठेवालुककटफलसमुद्रफेनकदम्बनिर्यासेक्षुकाण्डेशुरकवसुको शीराणीति
दशेमानि शुक्रशोधनानि भवन्ति ।'

Snehopaga

स्नेहोपग

'मृद्वीकामधुमधुपर्णीमेदोविदारीकाकोलीक्षीरकाकोलीजीवकजीवन्तीशाल-
पर्ण्य इति दशेमानि स्नेहोपगानि भवन्ति ।'

Svedopaga

स्वेदोपग

'शोभाञ्जनकैरण्डार्कवृश्चीर पुनर्नवा यवतिलकुलत्थमाषबदरणीति दशेमानि
स्वेदोपगानि भवन्ति ।'

Vamanopaga

वमनोपग

'मधुमधुककोविदारकर्बुदारनीपबिदुलबिम्बीशणपुष्पीसदापुष्पी प्रत्यक्
पुष्य इति दशेमानि वमनोपगानि भवन्ति ।'

Virecanopaga

विरेचनोपग

'द्राक्षाकाशमर्यपरूषकाभयामलकविभीतककुवलबदरकर्कन्धुपीलूनीति-
दशेमानिविरेचनोपगानि भवन्ति ।'

Āsthāpanopaga

आस्थानोपग

'त्रिवृदिबल्वपिप्पलीकुष्ठसर्षपवचावत्सकफलशतपुधुमधुकमदन-
फलानीति दशेमान्यास्थानोपगानि भवन्ति ।'

Anuvāsanopaga

अनुवासनोपग

'रास्त्रासुरदारुबिल्वमदनशतपुष्पावृश्चीरपुनर्नवाश्वदंष्ट्राग्रिमन्थश्योनाका इति
दशेमान्यनुवासनोपगानि भवन्ति ।'

Jvarahara**ज्वरहर**

‘सारिवाशर्करापाठामञ्जिष्ठाद्राक्षीपीलुपरूषकाभयामलबिभीतकानीति दशे-
मानि ज्वरहराणि भवन्ति ।’

Śramahara**श्रमहर**

‘ब्राक्षारवर्जूर प्रियालबदरदाडिमफल्गुपरूषकेक्षुयवषष्टिका इति दशेमानि
श्रमहराणि भवन्ति ।’

Dāhapraśamana**दाहप्रशमन**

‘लाजाचन्दनकाश्मर्यफलमुधकशर्करानीलोत्पलोशीरसारिवागुडूचीह्री-
वेराणीति दशेमानि दाहप्रशमनानि भवन्ति ।’

Śītapraśamana**शीतप्रशमन**

‘तगरागुरुधान्यकशृङ्गेवेरभूतीकक्याकण्टकार्याग्रिमन्थशयोनाकपिप्पल्य इति
दशेमानि शीतप्रशमनानि भवन्ति ।’

Udardapraśamana**उदरदप्रशमन**

‘तिन्दुकप्रियालबदर खदिरकदरससतपर्णाश्वकर्णोर्जुनासनारिभेद इतिदशे-
मान्युदरद प्रशमनानि भवन्ति ।’

Āṅgamardapraśamana**अङ्गमर्दप्रशमन**

‘विदारीगन्धापृश्निपर्णाबृहतीकण्टकारिकैरण्डकाकोलीचन्दनोशीरैलामधु-
कानीति दशेमान्यङ्गमर्द प्रशमनानि भवन्ति ।’

Śūlapraśamana**शूलप्रशमन**

‘पिप्लीपिप्पलीमूलचव्यचित्रकशृङ्गवेरमरिचाजमोदाजगन्धाजाजीगण्डी-
राणीति दशेमानि शूलप्रशमनानि भवन्ति ।’

Śonitāsthāpana**शोणितास्थापन**

‘मधुमधुकरुधिरमोचरसमृष्कपाललोध्रगैरिकप्रियंगुशर्करा लाजा इति
दशेमानि शोणितस्थापनानि भवन्ति ।’

Vedanāsthāpana**वेदनास्थापन**

‘शालकटफलकदम्बपद्मकतुम्बमोचरसशिरीषवज्जुलैवालुकाशोका इति
दशेमानि वेदनास्थापनानि भवन्ति ।’

Samjñāsthāpana**संज्ञास्थापन**

हिङ्गुकैडर्यरिमेदावचाचोरकवयः स्थागोलोमीजटिलापलङ्कषाशोकरोहि-
ण्य इति दशेमानि संज्ञास्थापनानि भवन्ति ।’

Prajāsthāpana**प्रजास्थापन**

‘ऐन्दीब्राह्मीशतवीर्यासहस्रवीर्याऽमोघाऽव्यथाशिवारिष्टावाट्यपुष्पी विष्व-
क्सेनकान्ता इति दशेमानि प्रजास्थापनानि भवन्ति ।’

Vayahsthāpana**वयःस्थापन**

‘अमृताऽभयाधात्रीयुक्ताश्वेताजीवन्त्यतिरसामण्डूकपर्णीस्थिरापुनर्नवा इति
दशेमानि वयःस्थापनानि भवन्ति ।’

*Caraka Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 4.***Śirovirecanopaga****शिरोविरेचनोपग**

‘ज्योतिष्मतीक्ष्वकमरिचपिप्पलीविडंगशिग्रुंसर्षपामार्गतण्डुलश्वेताम-
हाश्वेता इति दशेमानि शिरोविरेचनोपगानि भवन्ति ।’

Chardinigrahaṇa**छर्दिनिग्रहण**

‘जम्ब्वाम्रपल्लवमातुलुंगाम्लबदरदाडिमयवषष्टिकोशीरमृद्वाजा इति दशेमानि
छर्दिनिग्रहणानि भवन्ति ।’

Trṣṇānigrahaṇa**तृष्णानिग्रहण**

‘नागरधन्वयासकमुस्तपर्पटकचन्दनकिराततिक्तगुडूचीह्वीवेरधान्यकपटो-
लानीति दशेमानि तृष्णानिग्रहणानि भवन्ति ।’

Hikkānigrahaṇa**हिक्कानिग्रहण**

‘शटीपुष्करमूलबदरबीजकण्टकारिकाबृहतीवृक्षरुहाभयापिप्पलीदुराल-
भाकुलीरश्रृंग्य इति दशेमानि हिक्कानिग्रहणानि भवन्ति ।’

Puriṣasaṅgrahaṇīya**पुरीषसंग्रहणीय**

‘प्रियंग्वनन्ताम्रास्थिकट्वङ्गलोध्रमोचरससमंगधातकीपुष्पपद्मापद्म-
केशराणीति दशेमानि पुरीषसंग्रहणीयानि भवन्ति ।’

Puriṣavirajānīya**पुरीषविरजनीय**

‘जम्बूशल्लकीत्वक्कच्छुरामधुकशाल्मलीश्रीवेष्टकभृष्टमृत्पयस्योत्पलति-
लकणा इति दशेमानि पुरीषविरजनीयानि भवन्ति ।’

Mūtrasaṅgrahaṇīya**मूत्रसंग्रहणीय**

‘जम्ब्वाम्रतक्ष्वटकपीतनोदुम्बराश्वत्थभल्लातकारमन्तक सोमवल्का इति
दशेमानि मूत्रसंग्रहणीयानि भवन्ति ।’

Mūtravirajānīya**मूत्रविरजनीय**

‘पद्मोत्पलनलिनकुमुदसौगन्धिकपुण्डरीकशतपत्रमधुकप्रियंगुधातकी-
पुष्पाणीति दशेमानि मूत्रविरजनीयानि भवन्ति ।’

Mūtravirecaniya**मूत्रविरेचनीय**

‘वृक्षादनीश्वदंष्ट्रावसुकवशिरपाषाणभेददर्भकुशकाशगुन्देत्कण्टकमूला-
नीति दशेमानि मूत्रविरेचनीयानि भवन्ति ।’

Kāsahara**कासहर**

‘द्राक्षाभयामालक पिप्पलीदुरालभाजश्रृङ्गीकण्टकारिकावृक्षीरपुनर्नवावा-
तामलकय इति दशेमानि कासहराणि भवन्ति ।’

Śvāsahara**श्वासहर**

‘शटीपुष्करमूलाम्लवेतसैलाहिंग्वागुरुसुरसातामलकीजीवन्तीचण्डा इति
दशेमानि श्वासहराणि भवन्ति ।’

Śvayathuhara**श्वयथुहर**

‘पाटलाग्रिमन्थश्योनाकबिल्वकाश्मर्यकण्टकारिकाबृहतीशालपर्णीपृश्नि-
पर्णीगोक्षुरका इति दशेमानि श्वयथुहराणि भवन्ति ।’

Caraka Samhitā, Sūtra. 4.

SUŚRUTOKTA DRAVYA GAṆA**सुश्रुतोक्त द्रव्य गण**

[Saptatrinsād Dravya Gaṇāh]

Vidarigandhādi**विदारिगन्धादि**

‘विदारिगन्धा विदारी सहदेवा विश्वदेवाश्वदंष्ट्रा पृथक्पर्णी शतावरी सारिवा
कृष्णसारिवा जीवकर्षभकौ महासहा क्षुद्रसहा बृहत्पौपुनर्नवैरण्डो हंसपादी
वृश्चिकाल्युषभी चेति ।’

Varuṇādi**वरुणादि**

‘वरुणार्त्तगलशिगुमधुशिगुतर्कारीमेषशृंगीपूतीकनक्तमालमोरटाग्रिमन्थसै-
रेयकद्वयबिम्बीवसुकवशिरचित्रकशतावरीबिल्वाजशृंगीदर्भबृहतीद्व-
यञ्चेति ।’

Āragvadhādi**आरग्वधादि**

‘आरग्वधमदनगोपघोण्टाकुटजपाठाकण्टकीपाटलामूर्वेन्द्रयवसप्तपर्ण नि-
म्बकुरुण्टकदासीकरुण्टकगुडूचीचित्रकशाङ्गिष्ठाकरञ्जद्वयपटोलकिरात-
तिक्तकानि सुषवीचेति ।’

Vīratarvādi**वीरतर्वादि**

‘वीरतरुसहचरद्वयदर्भवृक्षादनीगुन्द्रानलकुशकाशाश्मभेदकाग्रिमन्थभोरटा

वसुकवशिरभल्लूककुरुण्टकेन्द्रीवरकपोतवङ्गाः श्वदंष्ट्रा चेति ।

Rodhrādi

रोध्रादि

‘रोध्रशावरोध्रपलाशकुटन्नटाशोकफञ्जीकट्फलैवालुकशल्लकीजिङ्गिनी-
कदम्बसालाःकदली चेति ।’

Sālasārādi

सालसारादि

‘सालसाराजकर्णखदिरकदरकालस्कन्धक्रभुकभूर्जमेषशृंगीतिनिशचन्दन-
कुचन्दन शिंशिपाशिरीषासनधवार्जुनतालशाकनक्तमालपूतीकाश्वकर्ण-
गुरुणिकालीयकं चेति ।’

Arkādi

अर्कादि

‘अर्कालर्करञ्जद्वयनागदन्तीमयूरकभार्गीरास्त्रेन्द्रपुष्पीक्षुद्रश्वेतामहा-
श्वेतावृशि चकाल्यलवणास्तापसवृक्षश्चेति ।

Surasādi

सुरसादि

सुरसाश्वेतसुरसाफणिज्जकार्जकभूस्तृणसुगन्धकसुमुखकालमालकासमर्द
क्षवकखरपुष्पा-विडङ्गकट्फलसुरसीनिर्गुण्डी कुलाहलोनदुरुकर्णिकाफ-
ञ्जीप्राचीबलाकाकमाच्यीविषमुष्टिकश्चेति ।

Muṣkakādi

मुष्ककादि

मुष्ककपलाशधवचित्रकमदनवृक्षशिंशापावज्रवृक्षास्त्रिफला चेति ।

Pippalyādi

पिप्पल्यादि

‘पिप्पलीपिप्पलीमूल चव्यचित्रकशृंगवेरमरिचहस्तिपिप्पलीहरेणुकैला-
जम्भोदेन्द्रयवपाठाजीरकसर्षपमहनिम्बफलाहिङ्गुभाङ्गीमधुरसातिविषा-
वचा विडङ्गानि कटुरोहिणी चेति ।

Elādi

एलादि

‘एलातगरकुष्ठमांसीध्यामाक त्वक्पद्मनागपुष्पप्रियङ्गुहरेणुकाव्याघ्रनख-
शुक्तिचण्डास्थौण्येकश्रीवेष्टकचोचचौरकवालुकगुग्गुलुसर्जरसतुरुष्क
कुन्दरुकागरुस्पृकोशीरभद्रदारुकुङ्कुमानिपुन्नागकेशरं चेति ।

Vacādi

वचादि

वचामुस्तातिविषाभयाभद्रदारुणिनागकेशरश्चेति ।

Haridrādi

हरिद्रादि

हरिद्रादारुहरिद्राकलशीकुटजबीजानि मधुकं चेति ।

Śyāmādi

श्यामादि

श्यामामहाश्यामात्रिवृद्धन्तीशङ्खिनीतिल्वककम्पिलकरम्यकक्रमुकपुत्र-

श्रेणीगवाक्षीराजवृक्षकरञ्जद्वयगुडूचीससलाच्छगलान्त्रीसुधाः स्वर्णक्षीरी
चेति ।

Brhatyādi

बृहत्यादि

‘बृहतीकण्टकारिकाकुटजफलपाठा मधुकञ्चेति ।’

Paṭolādi

पटोलादि

‘पटोलचन्दनकुचन्दनमूर्वागुडूचीपाठाकटुरोहिणी चेति ।’

Kākolyādi

काकोल्यादि

‘काकोलीक्षीरकाकोलीजीवकर्षभकमुद्गपर्णीमाषपर्णीमेदामहामेदाच्छि-
त्ररुहाकर्कटशृंगीतुगाक्षीरीपद्मकप्रपौण्डरीकऋद्धिवृद्धिमृद्धीकाजीवन्यो मधुकं
चेति ।

Ūṣakādi

ऊषकादि

ऊषकसैन्धवशिलाजतुकासीसद्वयहिङ्गुनितुत्थकञ्चेति ।

Sārivādi

सारिवादि

सारिवामधुकचन्दनकुचन्दनपद्मककाशमरीफलमधूकपुष्पाण्युशीरं चेति ।

Añjanādi

अञ्जनादि

अञ्जनरसाञ्जननागपुष्पप्रियङ्गुनीलोत्पलनलदनलिनकेशराणि मधुकं चेति ।

Parūṣakādi

परूषकादि

परूषकद्राक्षाकटफलदाडिमराजादनकतकफलशाकफलानि त्रिफला चेति ।

Priyaṅgvādi

प्रियंगवादि

प्रियङ्गुसमङ्गाधातकीपुत्रागपुष्पचन्दनकुचन्दनमोचरसरसाञ्जन कुम्भीक-
स्तोतोऽञ्जनपद्मकेसरयोजनवल्ल्योदीर्घमूला चेति ।

Ambaṣṭhādi

अम्बष्ठादि

Suśruta Saṁhitā Sūtra, 38.

GAṆA GUṆAKARMA PRAYOGA

गणानां गुणकर्माणि प्रयोगश्च

[Gaṇānām Guṇakarmāṇi Prayogāśca]

Vidārigandhādi Gaṇa

विदारिगन्धादिरयं गणः पित्तानिलापहः ।

शोषगुल्माङ्गमर्दोर्ध्वं श्वासकासविनाशनः ॥

Āragyadhādi Gaṇa

आरग्वधादिरित्येषं गणः श्लेष्मविषापहः ।
मेहकुष्ठज्वरवमीकण्डूघ्नो व्रणशोधनः ॥

Varuṇādi Gaṇa

वरुणादिर्गणो ह्येष कफमेदोनिवारणः ।
विनिहन्ति शिरःशूलगुल्माभ्यन्तर विद्रधन् ॥

Viratarvādi Gaṇa

वीरतर्वादिरित्येष गणो वातविकारनुत् ।
अश्मरी शर्करामूत्रकृच्छ्राद्यात रुजापहः ॥

Sālasārādi Gaṇa

सालसारादिरित्येष गणः कुष्ठविनाशनः ।
मेहपाण्ड्वामेयहरः कफमेदो विशेषणः ॥

Rodhrādi Gaṇa

एष रोध्रादिरित्युक्तो मेदः कफहरो गणः ।
योनिदोषहरः स्तम्भी वर्ण्यो विषविनाशनः ॥

Arkādi Gaṇa

अर्कादिक्यो गणो ह्येष कफभेदोविषापहः ।
कृमिकुष्ठप्रशमनो विशेषाद् व्रणशोधनः ॥

Surasādi Gaṇa

सुरसादिर्गणो ह्येष कफहत् कृमिसूदनः ।
प्रतिश्यायारुचिश्वास कासघ्नो व्रणशोधनः ॥

Muṣkakādi Gaṇa

मुष्कादिर्गणो ह्येष मेदोघ्नः शुक्रदोषहत् ।
मेदाऽर्शः पाण्डुरोगघ्नः शर्कराश्मरिनाशनः ॥

Pippalyādi Gaṇa

पिप्यल्यादिः कफहरः प्रतिश्यायानिलारुचीः ।
निहन्याद्दीपनो गुल्मशूलघ्नश्चामपाचनः ॥

Elādi Gaṇa

एलादिको वातकफौ निहन्याद्विषमेव च ।
वर्णप्रसादनः कण्डूपिडकाकोठनाशनः ॥

Vacādi-Haridrādi Gaṇa

एतौ वचाहरिद्रादी गणौ स्तन्य विशोधनौ ।
आमातीसारशमनौ विशेषाद्दोषपाचनौ ॥

Śyāmādi Gaṇa

उक्तः श्यामादिरित्येव गणो गुल्मविषापहः ।
आनाहोदर बिड्भेदो तथोदावर्तनाशनः ॥

Bṛhatyādi Gaṇa

पाचनीयो बृहत्यादिर्गणः पित्तानिलापहः ।
कफारोचकहृत्सासमूत्रकृच्छ्ररुजापहः ॥

Paṭolādi Gaṇa

पटोलादिर्गणः पित्तकफारोचक नाशनः ।
ज्वरोप शमनो व्रण्यश्च्छर्दिकण्डूविषापहः ॥

Kākolyādi Gaṇa

काकोल्यादिरय्यं पित्तशोणितानिलनाशनः ।
जीवनो बृहङ्गो वृष्यः स्तन्यश्लेष्मकरस्तथा ॥
अम्बष्ठाधातकीकुसुमसमङ्गाकट्वङ्गमधुकबिल्वपेशिकाशवररोध्रपलाश-
नन्दीवृक्षाः पद्मकेराणि चेति ।

Nyagrodhādi**न्यग्रोधादि**

न्यग्रोधोदुम्बरश्चिथ्वप्लक्षमधुककपीतनककुभाप्रकोशाप्रचोरकपत्रजम्बू-
पियालमधुकरोहिणीवज्जुलकदम्बबदरीतिन्दुकीसल्लकीरोधशावररोध्रभ-
ल्लातकपलाशानन्दीवृक्षश्चेति ।

Guḍūcyādi**गुडूच्यादि**

गुडूची निम्बकस्तुम्बुरुचन्दनानि पद्मकं चेति ।

Utpalādi**उत्पलादि**

उत्पलरक्तोत्पलकुमुदसौगन्धिककुवलयपुण्डरीकाणि मधुकश्चेति ।

Mustādi**मुस्तादि**

मुस्ताहरिद्रादारुहरिद्राहरीतक्यामलकबिभीतककुष्ठहैमवती वचापाठाकटु-
रोहिणीशाङ्गृष्टातिविषाद्राविडीभल्लातकानि चित्रकश्चेति ।

Triphalā**त्रिफला**

हरीतक्यामलक बिभीतकानि त्रिफला ।

Trikatu	त्रिकटु
	पिप्पलीमरिचशृङ्गवेराणि त्रिकटुकम् ।
Āmalakyādi	आमलक्यादि
	आमलकीहरीतकी पिप्पल्यश्चित्रकश्चेति ।
Trapusyādi	त्रपुस्यादि
	त्रपुसीसताम्ररजतकृष्णलोहसुवर्णानिलोहमलश्चेति ।
Lākṣādi	लाक्षादि
	लाक्षारेवतकुटजाश्वमारककटफलहरिद्राद्वयनिम्बसप्तच्छदमालत्यस्त्राय- माणा चेति ।
Laghupañcamūla	लघुपञ्चमूल
	त्रिकण्टकबृहतीद्वयपृथक्पर्ण्योविदारीगन्धाचेतिकनीयः ।
Bṛhat Pañcamūla	बृहत् पञ्चमूल
	बिल्वाग्निमन्थटिण्डुकपाटलाकाशमर्यश्चेति महत् ।
Vallipañcamūla	वल्लीपञ्चमूल
	विदारीसारिवारजनीगुडूचीऽजशृङ्गी चेतिवल्ली संज्ञः ।
Kaṇṭakapañcamūla	कण्टकपञ्चमूल
	करमर्दत्रिकण्टकसैरैयकशतावरीगृध्नखस्य इतिकण्टकसंज्ञः ।
Tṛṇapañcamūla	तृणपञ्चमूल
	कुशकाशनलदर्भ काण्डेक्षुका इति तृणसंज्ञकः ।
	<i>Suśruta Saṁhītā, Sūtra. 38.</i>
Ūṣakādi Gaṇa	
	ऊषकादिः कफं हन्ति गणो मेदो विशेषणः । अश्मरीशर्करामूत्रकृच्छ्रगुल्मप्रणाशनः ॥
Sārivādi Gaṇa	
	सारिवादि पिपासाघ्नो रक्तपित्तहरो गणः । पित्तज्वर प्रशामनो विशेषाद्दाहनाशनः ॥
Anjanādi Gaṇa	
	अञ्जनादिर्गणो ह्येष रक्तपित्तनिवर्हणः । विषोपशमनो दाहं निहन्त्याभ्यन्तरं तथा ॥

Parūṣakādi Gaṇa

परूषकादिरित्येषः गणोऽनिलविनाशनः ।
मूत्रदोषहरो हृद्यः पिपासाम्नो रुचिप्रदः ॥

Ambaṣṭhādi-Priyaṅgavādi Gaṇa

गणौ प्रियङ्गवाम्बाष्ठादोपक्रातीसार नाशनौ ।

Samdhāniya Gaṇa

सन्धानीयौ हितौ पित्तेव्रणानां चापि रोपणौ ।

Nyagrodhādi Gaṇa

न्यग्रोधादिर्गणो व्रण्यः संग्राही भग्नसाधकः ।
रक्तपित्तहरो दाहमेदोग्नो योनिदोषहत् ॥

Guḍūcyādi Gaṇa

एषसर्वज्वरान् हन्ति गुडूच्यादिस्तुदीपनः ।
हृल्लासारोचकवर्मी पिपासादाहनाशनः ॥

Utpalādi Gaṇa

उत्पलादिरयं दाहपित्तरक्तविनाशनः ।
पिपासाविषहद्रोगच्छर्दि मूर्च्छाहरो गणः ॥

Mustādi Gaṇa

एषा मुस्तादिको नाम्ना गणः श्लेष्मनिसूदनः ।
योनिदोषेहरः स्तन्यशोधनः पाचनस्तथा ॥

Triphalā

त्रिफलाकफपित्तघ्नी मेहकुष्ठविनाशिनी ।
चक्षुष्या दीपनी चैव विषमज्वरनाशिनी ॥

Tryūṣaṇa

त्र्यूषणं कफमेदोग्नं मेहःकुष्ठासृगामयान् ।
निहन्त्यादीपनं गुल्मपीनसान्याल्पतामपि ॥

Āmalakyādi Gaṇa

आमलक्यादिरित्येष गणः सर्वज्वरापहः ।
चक्षुष्यो दीपनो वृष्यः कफारोचक नाशनः ॥

Trapusvādi Gaṇa

गणस्त्रपुस्वादि रित्येषः गरक्रिमिहरः परः ।

पिपासा विषहद्रोगपाण्डुमेहहरस्तथा ॥

Lākṣādi Gaṇa

(लाक्षादिः) कषायस्तिक्तमधुरः कफपित्तार्तिनाशनः ।
कुष्ठक्रिमिहरश्चैव दुष्टव्रणविशोधनः ॥

Laghupañcamūla

कषायतिक्तमधुरं कनीयपञ्चमूलकम् ।
वातघ्नं पित्तशमनं बृंहणं बलवर्धनम् ॥

Bṛhat Pañcamūla

सतिकं कफवातघ्नं पाके लघ्वग्निदीपनम् ।
मधुरानुरसं चैव पञ्चमूलं महत् स्मृतम् ॥

Daśamūla

अनयोर्दशमूलमुच्यते—
गणः श्वासहरो ह्येषः कफपित्तानिलापहः ।
आमस्य पाचनश्चैव सर्वज्वरविनाशनः ॥

Vallipañcamūla-Kaṇṭakapañcamūla

रक्तपित्तहरौ ह्येतौ शोषाढ्यविनाशनौ ।
सर्वमेहहरौ चैव शुक्रदोष विनाशनौ ॥

Tṛṇapañcamūla

मूत्रदोषविकारं च रक्तपित्तं तथैव च ।
अन्त्यः प्रयुक्तः क्षीरेणा शीघ्रमेव विनाशयेत् ॥
एषां वातहरावाद्यावन्त्यः पित्तविनाशनः ।
पञ्चकौ श्लेष्मशमनावितरौ परिकीर्तितौ ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 38.

ṢAḌRASA SKANDHA

Group of Six Tastes

षड्स स्कन्ध

‘यत्तु षड्विधमास्थापनमेकरसमित्याचक्षते भिषजः, तद् दुर्लभतमं संसृष्ट
रसभूयिष्ठत्वाद्द्रव्याणाम् । तस्मान्मधुराणि मधुरप्रायाणि मधुरविपाकानि

मधुरप्रभावाणि च मधुरस्कन्धे मधुरान्येव कृत्वोपदेक्ष्यन्ते, तथेतराणि
द्रव्याण्यपि ।'

Samhitā, Vimāna, 8-138.

Madhuraskandha

मधुरस्कन्ध

'तद्यथा— जीवकवर्षभकौ जीवन्ती वीरा.....मधुसर्पिर्भ्यामुपसंसृज्य पित्त-
विकारिणे विधिवद्दद्यात् । इति मधुरस्कन्धः ।'

Samhitā, Vimāna, 8-139.

'काकोल्यादिः क्षीर-घृत-वसामज्जाशालिषष्टिक.....मधूलिकाकूष्माण्ड
प्रभृतीनि समासेन मधुरो वर्गः ।'

Suśruta Samhitā, Sūtra 42.

Amlaskandha

अम्लस्कन्ध

'आम्राप्रातकलकुचकरमर्दवृक्षाम्लाम्लवेतसकुवलबदरदाडिममातुलुङ्ग-
करीरामलकनन्दीतकशीतकतिन्तिडीकदन्तशठैरावतककोषाम्रधन्वना-
फलानि; पत्राणि चाम्लातकाश्मन्तकचांगेशिंणां चतुर्विधानां चाम्लिकानां
द्वयोश्च कोलयोश्चामशुष्कयोर्द्वयोश्चैव शुष्काम्लिकयोर्ग्राम्यारण्ययोः, आसव-
द्रव्याणि च सुरासौवीरकतुषोदकमैरेयमेदकमदिरामधुसीधुशुक्तकदधि
मण्डोदश्विद्धान्याम्लादीनि च.....इति अम्लस्कन्धः ।'

Caraka Samhitā, Vimāna. 8.

'दाडिमामलकमातुलुङ्गाप्रातककपित्थकरमर्दबदरकोलप्राचीननामलक
तिन्तिडीककोशाप्रकभव्यपारावतवेत्रफल कुचाम्लवेतसदन्तशठदधित-
क्रसुराशुक्तसौवीरकतुषोदकधान्याम्लप्रभृतीनि समासेनाम्लो वर्गः ।

Caraka Samhitā, Sūtra. 42.

Lavaṇa Skandha

लवणस्कन्ध

'सैन्धव सौवर्चलका लविडपाक्यानूप कप्यबालुकैल मौलकसामुद्ररोम-
कौद्भिदौषरपाटेयक पांशुजानी त्वेर्वप्रकाराणिचान्यानि.....लवणास्कन्धः ।'

Suśruta Samhitā, Vimāna. 8.

'सैन्धव सौवर्चल विडपाक्यरोम सामुद्र पक्त्रमयवक्षारोषप्रसूतसुवर्चिका-
प्रभृतीनि समासेन लवणो वर्गः ।'

Suśruta Samhitā, Sūtra. 42.

Kaṭukaskandha

कटुकस्कन्ध

'पिप्पलीपिप्पलीमूलहस्तिपिप्पलीचव्यचित्रकशृङ्गवेरमरिचाजमोदार्रक
विडङ्गकुस्तुटम्बुरुपीलुतेजोवत्येलाकुष्ठभल्लातकास्थिहिङ्गुकिलिममूल-

कसर्षपलशुनकरञ्जशिग्रुमधुरशिग्रुकखरपुष्पभूस्तृणसुमुखसुरस कुठेर-
कार्जकगण्डीरकालमालकपर्णासक्षवकफणिञ्जकक्षारमूत्रपित्तानाम्.....
इति कटुकस्कन्धः ।'

Caraka Saṁhitā, Vimāna. 8.

'पिप्पलादिः सुरसादिः शिग्रुः मधुरशिग्रुमूलकलशुनसुमुखशीतशिवकुष्ठ-
देवदारुहरेणुकावल्गुजफलचण्डागुगुलुमुस्तलाङ्गलकीशुकनासापीलु-
प्रभृतीनि सालसारादिश्च प्रायशः कटुको वर्गः ।'

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 42.

Tiktaskandha

तित्तस्कन्ध

'चन्दनलदकृतमालनक्तमालनिम्बतुम्बूरु कुटजहरिद्रादारुहरिद्रामुस्तमूर्वा-

किराततित्तकटुरोहिणीत्रायमाणाकारवल्लिकाकरवीरकेबुकठिकवृषम-
ण्डूकपर्णीकर्कोटकवार्ताकुर्कशकाकमाचीकाकोदुम्बरिकासुषव्यति

वषापटोलकुलकपाठागुडूचीवेत्राग्रवेतसविकङ्कतबकुलसोमवल्कसप्तपर्ण
सुभनाकविलुजक्यातगरागुरुबालकोशीराणाम्.....इति तित्तस्कन्धः ।'

Caraka Saṁhitā, Vimāna. 8.

'आरगवधादिर्गुडूच्यादिर्मण्डूकपर्णीवेत्रकरीरहरिद्राद्वयेन्द्रयववरुणस्वादु-
कण्टकसप्तपर्णबृहतीद्वयशंखिनीद्रवन्तीत्रिवृत्कृतवेधनकर्कोटक कारवेल्ल-
कवार्ताककरवरीसुमनः शङ्खपुष्यपामार्गत्रायमाणाशोकरोहिणी वैजयन्ती-
सुवर्चलापुनर्नवावृश्चिकालीज्योतिष्मतीप्रभृतीनि समासेन तित्तो वर्गः ।'

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 42.

Kaṣāyaskandha

कषायस्कन्ध

'प्रियङ्ग्वनन्ताप्रास्थ्यम्बष्ठकीकटुकङ्गलोध्र.....इति कषायस्कन्धः ।'

Caraka Saṁhitā, Vimāna. 8.

न्यग्रोधादिरम्बष्ठादिः प्रियङ्गवादी रोध्रादिस्त्रिफलाश्लकीजम्बाम्रबकुल-
तिन्दुकफलाकितकशाकफलपाषाणभेदकवनस्पतिफलानिसालसारादिश्च
प्रायशः कुरुवककोविदारकजीवन्तीचिल्लीपालङ्क्यासुनिषण्णकप्रभृतीनि
वरकादयो मुद्गादयश्च समासेन कषायोवर्गः ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 42.

षड्सस्कन्धाः सार्वयोगिकत्वम्—

षड्वर्गाः परिसंख्याता च एते रसभेदतः ।

आस्थापनमभिप्रेस तान्विद्यात्सर्वयौगिकान् ॥
 सर्वशो हि प्राणिहिताः सर्वरोगेषु जानता ।
 सर्वान् रोगास्त्रियच्छन्ति येभ्यामास्थापनं हितम् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Vimāna. 8/145-146.

Suśrutokta Varga

सुश्रुतोक्त वर्ग

DRAVA-ANNA DRAVYA

Liquid Ditetic Groups

द्रव-अन्न द्रव्य

A.	Drava Dravya	अ.	द्रव द्रव्य
	Jala Varga		जलवर्ग
	Kṣīra Varga		क्षीरवर्ग
	Dadhi Varga		दधिवर्ग
	Takra Varga		तक्रवर्ग
	Ghrta Varga		घृतवर्ग
	Taila Varga		तैलवर्ग
	Madhu Varga		मधुवर्ग
	Ikṣu Varga		इक्षुवर्ग
	Madya Varga		मद्यवर्ग
	Mūtra Varga		मूत्रवर्ग
B.	Anna Dravya	ब.	अन्न द्रव्य
	Śāli Varga		शालिवर्ग
	Kudhānya		कुधान्य
	Vaidala		वैदल
	Māmsa Varga		मांसवर्ग
	Phala Varga		फलवर्ग
	Śāka Varga		शाकवर्ग
	Puṣpa Varga		पुष्पवर्ग
	Kanda Varga		कन्दवर्ग
	Lavaṇa Varga		लवणवर्ग
	Kṣāra Varga		क्षारवर्ग
	Kṛtāna Varga		कृतान्नवर्ग

(अन्य वर्गः पार्थिव द्रव्य-धातुवर्ग तथा रत्नवर्ग)

(Dravadravya vidhi-Annapāna vidhi)

Sūsruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 45/46.

Carakokta Varga

चरकोक्त वर्ग

ĀHĀRA DRAVYA

आहार द्रव्य

‘परमतोवर्गसंग्रहेणाहार द्रव्याण्यमनुव्याख्यास्यामः ।’

Sūsruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 2.

Śūkadhānya Varga	शूकधान्य वर्ग
Śamīdhānya Varga	शमीधान्य वर्ग
Māmsa Varga	मांस वर्ग
Śāka Varga	शाक वर्ग
Phala Varga	फल वर्ग
Harita Varga	हरित वर्ग
Madya Varga	मद्य वर्ग
Jala Varga	जल वर्ग
Gorasa Varga	गोरस वर्ग
Ikṣu Varga	इक्षु वर्ग
Kṛtāna Varga	कृतान्न वर्ग
Āhārayogī Varga	आहारयोगी वर्ग

शूकधान्य शमीधान्यमांसशाकफलाश्रयान् ।

वर्गानहरितमद्याम्बुगोरसेक्षु विकारान् ॥

दश द्वौ चापरौ वर्गौ कृतान्नाहारयोगिनाम् ।

रसवीर्य विपाकैश्च प्रभावैश्च प्रचक्षमहे ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 27.

AGRYA DRAVYA VARGA

अग्र्यद्रव्य वर्ग

A. Carakokta

क. चरकोक्त

Hitakara-Ahitkara Āhāra

हितकर-अहितकर आहार

‘तस्य खलु ये ये विकारावयवा भूयिष्मुपयुज्यते’

‘भूयिष्ठकल्पानां च मनुष्याणां प्रकृत्यैव हिततमाश्चाहिततमाश्च’ तांस्तान् यथावदुपदेक्ष्यामः ।’

Caraka Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 25-37.

हितकर-अहितकर औषध द्रव्य (औद्भिद्)

Hitakar-Ahitakara Auśadha Dravya

‘अतो भूयः कमौषधानां च प्राधान्यतः सानुबन्धानि च द्रव्याण्यनुव्याख्यास्यामः ।’

तद्यथा.....सर्वसंन्यासः सुखानामिति ।’

Caraka Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 25/58-47.

Kapittha	‘आमं कपित्थकण्ठयानाम्’
Madana	‘मदनफलं वमनास्थापनानुवासनोपयोगिनाम्’
Trivṛt	‘त्रिवृत् सुखविरेचनानाम्’
Caturaṅgula	‘चतुरङ्गुले मृदुविरेचनानाम्’
Snuk	‘स्रुकपयस्तीक्ष्णविरेचनानाम्’
Pratyakpuṣpā	‘प्रत्यक्पुष्पा शिरोविरेचनानाम्’
Viḍaṅga	‘विडङ्गं क्रिमिघ्नानाम्’
Siriṣa	‘शिरीषो विषघ्नानानाम्’
Khadira	‘खदिरः कुष्ठाघ्नानाम्’
Rāsnā	‘रास्ना वातहराणाम्’
Āmalaka	‘आमलकं वयःस्थापनानाम्’
Haritakī	‘हरीतकी पथ्यानाम्’
Eraṇḍa	‘एरण्डमूलं वृष्यवातहराणाम्’
Tinduka	‘तिन्दुकमलस्रद्रव्य रुचिकराणाम्’
Pippalimūla	‘पिप्पलीमूलं दीपनीयपाचनीयानाहपशीमनानाम्’
Citraka	‘चित्रकमूलं दीपनीय पाचनीय गुदशोथार्शः शूलहराणाम् ।’
Puṣkaramūla	‘पुष्करमूलं हिक्काश्वासकासपार्श्वशूलहराणाम्’
Mustaka	‘मुस्तं सांग्राहिकदीपनीयपाचनीयानाम्’
Udīcyā	‘निर्वापणदीपनीयपाचनीयच्छर्द्यतीसारहराणाम्’
Katvaṅga	‘कट्वङ्गं सांग्राहिकपाचनीयदीपनीयानाम्’

Anantā	‘अनन्ता सांग्राहिकरक्तपित्तप्रशमनानाम्’
Anṛtā	‘अमृता सांग्राहिक वातहरदीपनीयश्लेष्मशोणित विबन्ध प्रशमनानाम्’
Bilva	‘बिल्वं सांग्राहिक दीपनीय वातकफ प्रशमनानाम्’
Ativiṣā	‘अतिविषा दीपनीय पाचनीय सांग्राहिक सर्वदोषहराणाम्’
Utpala	‘उत्पलकुमुदपद्मकिञ्जल्क सांग्राहिकरक्तपित्त- प्रशमनानाम्’
Duralabhā	‘दुरालभा पित्तश्लेष्मप्रशमनानाम्’
Gandhapriyaṅgu	‘गन्धप्रियङ्गु शोणितपित्तातियोग प्रशमनानाम्’
Kuṭaja	‘कुटजत्वक् श्लेष्मपित्तरक्तसांग्राहिकोपशोषणानाम्’
Kāṣmārī	‘काश्मर्यफलं रक्तसांग्राहिकरक्तपित्त प्रशमनानाम्’
Pr̥sniparnī	‘पृश्निपर्णी सांग्राहिकवातहरदीपनीय वृष्याणाम्’
Vidarigandha	‘विदारिगन्धा वृष्यसर्वदोषहराणाम्’
Balā	‘बला सांग्राहिक बल्यवातहराणां’
Gokṣura	‘गोक्षुरको मूत्रकृच्छ्रानिलहराणाम्’
Hīṅgu	‘हिङ्गुनिर्यासश्छेदनीयदीपनीयानुलोमिक- वातकफप्रशमनानाम्’
Amlavetasa	‘अम्लवेतसो भेदनीयदीपनीयानुलोमिकवात- श्लेष्महराणाम्’
Candana	‘चन्दनं दुर्गन्धहरदाहनिर्वापणलेपनानाम्’
Rāsnā	‘रास्ना गुरुणी शीतापनयनप्रलेपनानाम्’
Lāmājaka	‘लामज्जकोशीरं दाहत्वग्दोषस्वेदापनयन प्रलेपनानाम्’
Kuṣṭha	‘कुष्ठ वातहराम्यङ्गोपनाहोपयोगिनाम्’
Madhuka	‘मधुकं चक्षुष्यवृष्यकेश्यकण्ठ्यवर्ण्य विरजनीरोपणीयानाम्’
Yāvaśūka	‘यावशूक स्रंसनीयपाचनमीयाशोघ्नानाम्’
Yava	‘यवाः पुरीषजनानाम्’
Kulattha	‘कुलत्था अम्लपित्तजनानाम्’

Māṣa	‘माषाः श्लेष्मपित्तजनानाम्’
Jambū	‘जाम्बवं वातजनानाम्’
Ikṣu	‘इक्षुर्मूत्रजनानाम्’ (इत्यादः)

Caraka Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 25-47.

B. Suśrutokta

ख. सुश्रुतोक्त

Pravara-Prasāsta Dravya

प्रवर-प्रशस्त द्रव्य

अ.	षष्टिका यवगोधूमा लोहिता ये च शालयः । मुद्गाढकीमसूराश्च धान्येषु प्रवराः स्मृताः ॥
ब.	लावतित्तिर सारङ्ग कुरङ्गैण कपिञ्जलाः । मयूरवर्मिकूर्माश्च श्रेष्ठा मांसगणेष्विह ॥
स.	दाडिमामलकं द्राक्षां खर्जूरं सपरूषकम् । राजादनं मातुलुङ्गं फलवर्गे प्रशस्यते ॥
द.	सतीनो वास्तुकश्चुचिल्लीमूलकपोतिकः ।
ध.	मण्डूकपर्णी जीवन्ती शाकवर्गे प्रशस्यते ॥
ट.	गव्यं क्षीरं घृतं सैन्धवं लवणेषु च ।
ठ.	धात्री दाडिममम्लेषु पिप्पली नागरं कटौ ।
त.	शर्करेश्कुविकारेषु पाने मध्वासवौ तथा ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 46.

Āhārōṣadha

आहारौषध

Varga	वर्ग	Dravya	द्रव्य
Śāli	शालि	रक्तशालि	
Ṣaṣṭika	षष्टिक	षष्टिक	
Sūka	शूक	यव, गोधूम	
Māmsa	मांस	लाव-तित्तिर-कुरङ्ग-सारङ्ग-एण- कपिञ्जल-मयूर-वर्मि-कूर्म	
Phal	फल	दाडिम-आमलक-द्राक्षा-खर्जूर- परूषक-राजादन-मातुलुङ्ग	
Śāka	शाक	जीवन्ती-सतीन-वास्तुक-चुञ्चु- चिलमी-मूलक-पोतिका-मण्डूकपर्णी	
Kṣīra	क्षीर	गव्य	

Ghṛta	घृत	गव्य
Lavaṇa	लवण	सैन्धव
Amla	अम्ल	धात्री, दाडिम
Kaṣu	कटु	पिप्पली, शुण्ठी
Tikta	तिक्त	पटोल, वार्ताक
Madhura	मधुर	घृत
Kaṣāya	कषाय	मधु, पूग, परूषक
Ikṣu Vikāra	इक्षु विकार	शर्करा
Pāna	पान	मधु, आसव

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 46.

Garbhānulomana

गर्भानुलोमन

‘अथास्यै दद्यात्-कुष्ठैलालाङ्गलीवचाचित्रकचिरबिल्वचव्यचूर्णमुपाग्रातुं’
सा तस्यमुहुर्मुहुरूपजिघ्रेत, तथा-भूर्जपत्रं धूमं शिंशपासारधूमं वा.....
इत्यनेन तु कर्मणा गर्भोऽवाक् प्रतिपद्यते।’

Caraka Saṁhitā, Sārva. 8.

Rasāyana

रसायन

‘तद्यथा—ऐन्द्री ब्राह्मी पयस्या क्षीरपुष्पीश्रावणी महाश्रावणी शतावरी विदा-
रीजीवन्ती पुनर्ववा नागबला स्थिरा वचा छत्राऽतिच्छत्रा मेदा महामेदा
जीवनीयाश्चान्या..... भवानावहन्ति।’

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā. 1.

Bājīkaraṇa

बाजीकरण

शूरमूलेक्षुमूलानि काण्डेक्षुः सेक्षुबालिका।
शतावरी पयस्या च विदारी कण्टकारिका॥
जीवन्ती जीवको मेदा वीरा चर्षभको बला।
ऋद्धिर्गोक्षुरको रास्त्रा सात्मगुप्ता पुनर्ववा॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā. 2.

Apatarṇa

अपतर्पण

व्योषं विडङ्गं शिग्रूणि त्रिफलां कटुरोहिणीम्।
बृहत्यौ द्वे हरिद्रे द्वे पाठां सातिविषां स्थिराम्॥
हिङ्गुकेवुकमूलानि यवानि धान्यचित्रकान्।

सौवर्चलमजाजीं च हपुषां चेति चूर्णयेत् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā. 23.

Lainghana

लंघन

- (अ) गुडूचीभद्रमुस्तानां प्रयोगस्त्रैफलस्तथा ।
.....विडंगं नागरं क्षारः काललोहरजो मधु ।
यावामलक चूर्णं च प्रयोगः श्रेष्ठोच्यते ॥
- (ब) बिल्व्वादि पंचमूलस्य प्रयोगः क्षौद्रसंयुतः ।
शिलाजतु प्रयोगस्तु साग्निमन्थरसः परः ॥
- (स) प्रशातिका प्रियंगुश्च श्यामका यवका यवाः ।
जूर्णाह्वा कोद्रवा मुद्गा कुलत्थाश्चक्रमर्दकाः ॥
- (द) आढकीनां च बीजानि पटोलामलकैः सह ।
भोजनार्थं प्रयोज्यानि पानं चानु मधूदकम् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Sūtra. 21.

ANYA PRAMUKHA GAṆA

अन्य प्रमुख गण

Danta Śodhana

दन्तशोधन

करञ्जकरवीरार्कमालतीककुभासनः ।
शस्यन्ते दत्तपवने ये चाप्येवंविधा द्रुमाः ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Sūtra. 5.

Mukha Śodhana

मुखशोधन

जातीकटुकपूगानां लवङ्गस्य फलानि च ।
कंकोलस्य फलं पत्रं ताम्बूलस्य शुभं तथा ।
तथा कर्पूरनिर्यासः सूक्ष्मैलायाः फलानि च ।
धार्याण्यास्येन वैशद्यरुचिसौगन्ध्यमिच्छता ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Sūtra. 5.

Stambhana

स्तम्भन

शीतं मन्दं मृदु श्लक्ष्णं सूक्ष्मं रूक्षं द्रवं स्थिरम् ।
यद् द्रव्यं लघु चोदिष्टं प्रायस्तत् स्तम्भनं स्मृतम् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Sūtra. 21.

Apatarpana

अपतर्पण

व्योषं विडङ्गं शिग्रूणि त्रिफलां कटुरोहिणीम् ।
 बृहत्यौ द्वै हरिद्रे द्वे पाठां सातिविषां स्थिराम् ॥
 हिङ्गुकेबुकमूलानि यवानिधान्यचित्रकान् ।
 सौवर्चलमजार्जीं च हपुषां चेति चूर्णयेत् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Sūtra. 23.

Sañjñāprabodhana

संज्ञाप्रबोधन

‘मातुलुडरसं तद्वन्महौषधसमायुतम् ।
 तद्वत् सौवर्चलं दद्यायुक्तं मद्याम्लकाञ्जिकैः ।
 हिङ्गुषणसमायुक्तं यावत् संज्ञाप्रबोधनम् ।’
 ‘आत्मगुप्तावघर्षश्च हितस्यस्यावबोधने ।’

Caraka Samhitā, Sūtra. 24.

Raksoghna

रक्षोघ्न

अथास्य रक्षा विदध्यात्—

‘आदनीखदिरकर्कन्धुपीलुपरुषकशाखाभिरस्यागृहं भिषक् समन्ततः परि-
 वारयेत्, सर्वतश्च सूतिकागारस्य सर्षपातसीतण्डुलकणकणिकाः
 प्रकिरेत्.....
 रक्षाविधानमुक्तम् ।’

Caraka Samhitā, Sāra. 8.

Nābhipākahara

नाभिपाकहर

‘तस्य चेन्नाभिः पच्येत तां लोध्र मधुक प्रियङ्गुदारुहरिद्रा कल्कसिद्धेन-
 तैलेनाभ्यज्यात्, एषानेव तैलोषधानां चूर्णेनावचूर्णयेत् ।’

Caraka Samhitā, Sāra. 8.

Śrovirecana

शिरोविरेचन

‘शिरोविरेचनं सप्तविधं फलपत्रमूलकन्दपुष्पनिर्याससत्वगाश्रयभेदान् ।’

Caraka Samhitā, Vimāna. 8.

साताश्रय भेदेन सप्तोषवर्गाः—

फल— ‘शिरोविरेचनद्रव्याणि पुनरपामार्ग पिप्पलीमरिचविडंगशिग्रुशिरीषकुस्तु-
 म्बुरुपीत्वजाज्यमोदावार्ताकीपृथ्वीकैलाहरेणुकाफलानि च ।’

पत्र—

‘सुमुखसुरसकुठेरकगण्डीरकालमालकपर्णासक्षवकफणिज्जकहरिद्राश्रुं-

गवेरमूलकलशुनतर्कारीसर्षपपत्रापि च ।'

मूल— 'अर्कालर्ककुष्ठनागदन्तीवचाभाङ्गीश्वेताज्योतिष्मतीगवाक्षीगण्डीरपुष्य-
वाक्पुष्पीवृश्चिकालीवयःस्थातिविषामूलानि च ।'

कन्द— 'हरिद्राशृंगवेरमूलकशुभकन्दाश्च ।'

पुष्य— 'लोध्रमदनसप्तपर्णनिम्बार्कपुष्पाणि च ।'

निर्यास— 'देवदार्वगुरुसरलशल्लकीजिङ्गिन्यसनहिङ्गुनिर्यासाश्च ।'

त्वक्— 'तेजोवतीववराङ्गेगुदीशोभांजनबृहतीकण्टकारिका त्वच इति ।'

Caraka Samhitā, Vimāna. 8.

Vamana

वमन

'यानि तु खलु, वमनादिषु भेषजद्रव्याण्युपयोगं गच्छन्ति तान्यनुव्या-
ख्यास्यामः, तद्यथा—

फलजीमूतकेक्ष्वाकुधामार्गकुटजकृतवेधनफलानि ।'

Caraka Samhitā, Vimāna. 8.

'मदनं मधुकं निम्बं जीमूतं कृतवेधनम् ।

पिप्पली कुटजेक्ष्वाकुण्वेलां धामार्गवाणि च ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Sūtra. 2.

Virecana

विरेचन

'विरेचन द्रव्याणि तु श्यामात्रिवृच्चतुरंगुलतिल्वकमहावृक्षसप्तला शंखिनी-
दन्तीद्रवन्तीनां क्षीरमूलत्वक्पत्रपुष्पफलानि ।'

Caraka Samhitā, Vimāna. 8.

Āsthāpana	आस्थापन
Anuvāsana	अनुवासन
Bṛñhaṇa	बृंहण
Rūkṣana	रूक्षण
Snehana	स्नेहन
Svedana	स्वेदन
Nidrajanana	निद्राजनन
Nidraśamana	निद्राशमन
Śukrajanana	शुक्रजनन
Mūtrajanana	मूत्रजनन
Purīṣajanana	पुरीषजनन

Garbhopaghātakara	गर्भोपघातकर
Garbhasthāpana	गर्भस्थापन
Garbhavṛddhikara	गर्भवृद्धिकर
Garbhaprasuptihara	गर्भप्रसुप्तिहर
Aparāpātana	अपरापातन
Śakuna	शकुन
Rakṣoghna	रक्षोघ्न

(अ) 'ततो गुग्गुल्वगुरुसर्जरसवचागौरसर्षपचूर्णेः लवणनिम्बपत्रविमिश्रैः
आज्युक्तैर्धूपैः धूपयेत्।'

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 5.

(ब) पुराणसर्पिलंशुनं हिङ्गु सिद्धार्थकं वचा ।
गोलोमी चाजलोमी च भूतकेशी जटा तथा ॥
ऋष्यप्रोक्ता वयःस्था च शृङ्गी मोहनवल्लिका ॥
अर्कमूलं त्रिकटुकं लता स्रोताजमञ्जनम् ।
नैपालीह रितालं च रक्षोघ्ना ये च कीर्तिताः ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Uttar. 60.

(स) 'छत्रातिच्छत्रे लाङ्गली जटिलां ब्रह्मचारिणीं । लक्ष्मीं गुहामतिगुहां शतवीर्यो
सहस्रवीर्या सिद्धार्थाश्च शिरसा धारयेत्।'

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 19.

Raktasrāvaṇa

रक्तस्रावण

'अथखल्वप्रवर्तमानो रक्ते एलाशीतशिवकुष्ठतगरपाठाभद्रदारुविडङ्ग-
चित्रकत्रिकटुकागारधूमहरिद्रार्काङ्कुरनक्तमालफलैर्यथालाभं त्रिभिश्चतुर्भिः
समस्तैर्वा चूर्णीकृतैः सर्षपतैललवणप्रगाढैः व्रणमुखभवघर्षयेदेवं सम्यक्
प्रवर्तते।'

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 14.

Raktarodhaka

रक्तरोधक

'अथातिप्रवृत्ते रोध्रमधुकप्रियङ्गुपतङ्गगैरिकसर्जरसाञ्जनशाल्मलीपुष्पशङ्ख-
शुक्तिमाष्यवगोधूमचूर्णेः शनैः शनैः व्रणमुखवचूर्ण्य अङ्गुल्यवग्रेण अव-
पीडयेत्।'

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 14.

Śophahara (Vimlāpana)

शोफहर (विम्लापन)

- (अ) मातुलुङ्गयग्रिमन्थौ च भद्रदारु महौषधम् ।
अहिंस्ता चैव रास्ता च प्रलेपो वातशोफहत् ॥
दुर्वा च नलमूलञ्च मधुकं चन्दनं तथा ।
शीतलाश्च गणाः सर्वे प्रलेपः श्लेष्मशोफहत् ॥
- (ब) अजगन्धाऽश्वगन्धा च काला सरलया सह ।
एकैषिकाजशृङ्गी च प्रलेपः श्लेष्मशोफहत् ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 37.

Pācana

पाचन

शणमूलकशिग्रूणां फलानि तिलसर्षपाः ।
शक्तवः किण्वमतसी द्रव्याण्युष्णानि पाचनम् ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 37.

Dāraṇa

दारण

चिरबिल्वोऽग्रिको दन्तीं चित्रको हयमारकः ।
कपोतगृध्रकङ्कानां पुरीषाणि च दारणम् ॥
क्षारद्रव्याणि वा यानि क्षारो वा दारुणं परम् ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 37.

Prapīdana

प्रपीडन

द्रव्याणां पिच्छिलानां तु त्वङ्गमूलानि प्रपीडनम् ।
यवगोधूममाषाणां चूर्णानि च समासतः ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 37.

Śodhana

शोधन

शङ्खिन्यङ्कोटसुमनः करवीर सुवर्चलाः ।
शोधनानि कषायाणि वर्गश्चारगवधादिकः ॥
अजगन्धाऽजशृङ्गी च गवाक्षी लाङ्गलाह्वया ।
पूतीकश्चित्रकः पाठा विडङ्गैलाहरेणवः ॥
कटुत्रिकं यवक्षारो लवणानि मनःशिला ।
कासीसं त्रिवृता दन्ती हरितालं सुराष्ट्रजा ॥
श्रीवेष्टके सर्जरसः सरले देवदारुणि ।
सारेषवपि च कुर्वीत मतिमान् व्रणधूपनम् ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 37.

Ropana

रोपण

कषायाणामनुष्णानां वृक्षाणां त्वक्षु साधितम् ।
शृतं शीतं कषायं वा रोपणार्थं प्रशस्यते ॥
प्रियङ्गुका सर्जरसः पुष्पकासीसमेव च ।
त्वक्कूर्णं धवजं चैव रोपणार्थं प्रशस्यते ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 37.

Utsādana

उत्सादन

अपामार्गोऽश्वगन्धा च तालपत्री सुवर्चला ।
उत्सादने प्रशस्यन्ते काकोल्यादिश्च यो गणः ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 37.

Avasādana

अवसादन

कासीसं सैन्धवं किण्वं कुरुविन्दो मनःशिला ।
कुक्कुटाण्डकपालानि सुमनोमुकुलानि च ॥
फले शैरीषकारञ्जे धातुचूर्णानि यानि च ।
व्रणेषूत्सन्नमांसेषु प्रशस्तान्यवसादने ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 37.

Aparāpātana

अपरापातन

‘कटुकालाबुकृतवेधनसर्षपसर्पनिर्मोकैः.....उत्तरबस्तिद्यात् ।’

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 10.

Stanyajanana

स्तन्यजनन

‘अथास्याः क्षीरजननार्थं सौमनस्यमुत्पाद्य यवगोधूमशालिमांसरस सुरा-
सौवीरकपिण्याकलशुनमत्स्यकशेरुकशृङ्गारकविसविट रिन्दमधुकश-
तावरीनलिकालाबूकालशाकप्रभृतीनि विदध्यात् ।’

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sāhira. 10.

Garbhasthāpana

गर्भस्थापन

मधुकं शाकबीजं च पयस्या सुरदारु च ।
...एवमाप्यायते गर्भस्तीब्रारुक् चोपशाम्यति ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sāhira. 10.

Kumārarasāyana

कुमारसायन

(अ) ‘क्षीराहाराय सर्पिः पाययेत् सिद्धार्थकेवचामांसीपयस्याऽपामार्गशतावरी-
सारिवाब्राह्मीपिप्पलीहरिद्राकुष्ठसैन्धवसिद्धं क्षीरान्नादाय मधुकवचा पिप्प-

लीचित्रकत्रिफलासिद्धमन्नादायद्विपञ्चमूली क्षीरतगरभद्रदारुमरिचमधुकवि-
डङ्गद्राक्षार्थिब्राह्मीसिद्धम् ।'

'तेनारोग्यबलमेधायूषि शिशीर्भवन्ति ।'

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sārā. 10.

- (ब) सौवर्णं सुकृतं चूर्णं कुष्ठं मधु घृतं वचा ।
मत्स्याक्षकः शङ्खुपुष्पीमधु सर्पिः सकाञ्चनम् ॥
अर्कपुष्पी मधुघृतं चूर्णितं कनकं वचा ।
हेमचूर्णानि कैडर्यः श्वेता दूर्वा घृतं मधु ॥
चत्वारोऽभिहिताः प्राशाः श्लोकार्धेषु चतुर्ष्वपि ।
कुमाराणां वपुर्मैधाबलबुद्धिविवर्धनाः ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sārā. 10.

Arsāhśātana

अर्शःशातन

- (अ) स्नुही क्षीरयुक्तं हरिद्राचूर्णमालेयः प्रथमः ।
(ब) कुक्कुटपुरीषगुञ्जाहरिद्रापिप्पलीचूर्णमिति गोमूत्रपित्तपिष्टो द्वितीयः ।
(स) दन्तीचित्रकसुवर्चिकालाङ्गलीकल्को वा गोपित्तपिष्टस्तृतीयः ।
(द) पिप्पलीसैन्धवकुष्ठशिरीषफलवल्कः स्नुहीक्षीरपिष्टोर्कक्षीरपिष्टो वा चतुर्थः ।
(ध) कासीसहरितसैन्धवाश्वमारकविडङ्गपूतीककृतवेधनजम्ब्वर्कोत्तमारणी-
दन्तीचित्रकालर्कस्नुहीपयःसु तैलं विपक्वमभ्यञ्जनेनार्शः शातयति ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Cikitsā. 6.

Dantaśodhana

दन्तशोधन

निम्बश्च तिक्तके श्रेष्ठः कषाये खदिरस्तथा ।
मधुको मधुरे श्रेष्ठः करञ्जः कटुके तथा ॥
क्षौद्रव्योषत्रिवर्गोक्तं सतैलं सैन्धवेन च ।
चूर्णेन तेजोवत्याश्च दन्तान्नित्यं विशोधयेत् ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 24.

Mukhaśodhana

मुखशोधन

कर्पूरजातिककूललवङ्ग कटुकाह्वयैः ।
सचूर्णपूगैः सहितं पत्रं ताम्बूल शुभम् ॥
मुखवैशद्यसौगन्ध्यकान्ति सौष्ठवकारकम् ।
हनुदन्तस्वरमलजिह्वेन्द्रिय विशोधनम् ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Cikitsā. 24.

Keśaranjana

केशरञ्जन

नीलीदलं भृङ्गरजोऽर्जुनत्वक् पिण्डीतकं कृष्णमयोरजश्च... ।
 मासोपरिष्टाद् घनकुञ्चिताग्राः केशा भवन्ति भ्रमराञ्जनाभाः ।
 केशास्तथाऽन्ये खलतौ भवेयुर्जरा न चैनं सहसाऽभ्युपैति ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Cikitsā. 25.

Vaktrābhyāṅga

वक्त्राभ्यङ्ग

लाक्षारोधं द्वे हरिद्रे शिलाले कुष्ठं नागं गैरिका वर्णकाश्च ।
 मञ्जिष्ठोग्रा स्यात् सुराष्ट्रोद्भवा च पतंगं वै रोचना चाञ्जनं च ॥
 हेमांगत्वक् पाण्डुपत्रं वटस्य कालीयं स्यात् पद्मकंपद्ममध्यम् ।
 रक्तं श्वेतं चन्दनं पारदञ्च काकोल्यादिः क्षौरपिष्टश्चवर्भः ॥
क्वाथः क्षीरिणाश्च द्रुमाणाम्
 एतत् सर्वं पक्कमैकध्यतस्तु वक्त्राभ्यङ्गे सर्पिरक्तं प्रधानम् ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Cikitsā. 25.

Aṅgarāga

अङ्गराग

हरीतकीचूर्णमरिष्टपत्रं चूतत्वचं दाडिमपुष्पवृन्तम् ।
 पत्रञ्च दद्यान्मदयन्तिकाया लेपाङ्गरागो नरदेवयोग्यः ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Cikitsā. 25.

Ekasara (Viṣaghna)

एकसर (विषघ्न)

सोमराजीफलं पुष्पं कटभी सिन्धुवारकः ।
 चोरको वरुणः कुष्ठं सर्पगन्धा ससप्तला ॥
 पुनर्नवा शिरीषस्य पुष्पमारगवधार्कजम् ।
 भूमीकुरबकश्चैव गण एकसरः स्मृतः ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Kalpa. 5.

Cakṣuṣya

चक्षुष्य

घृतं पुराणं त्रिफलां शतावरीं पटोलमुद्गामलकं यवानपि ।
जीवन्तिशाकं सुनिषण्णकं च सतण्डुलीयं वरवास्तुकं च ॥
चिल्ली तथा मूलकपोतिका च दृष्टेहितं शाकुनजांगलं च ।
 पटोलकर्कोटककारवेल्लवार्त्ताकुतर्कारिकरीरजानि ।
 शाकानि शिग्र्वार्त्तगलानि चैव हितानि दृष्टेर्घृतसाधितानि ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Uttara. 17.

Bājīkaraṇa

बाजीकरण

Rasāyana

रसायन

(Balya-Medhya-Soumya-Divya)	(बल्य-मेध्य-सौम्य-दिव्य)
Viṣa	विष
(Sthāvara-Jaṅgama)	(स्थावर-जङ्गम)
Pramehaghna	प्रमेहघ्न
Pūyavardhana	पूयवर्धन
Pathyatama	पथ्यतम
Ūrdhvabhāgahara	ऊर्ध्वभागहर
Adhobhāgahara	अधोभागहर
Ubhayatobhāgahara	उभयतोभागहर
Śirovirecana	शिरोविरेचन

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra, Sāra & Cikitsā.

RASAŚĀSTREṢU DRAVYAGAṆĀH

रसशास्त्रेषु द्रव्यगणाः

Louha Māraka Gaṇa

लौहमारकगण

त्रिफला शतमूली च सिंहिका तालमूलिका ।
नीलोत्पलं च ह्रीबेरं दशमूलं पुनर्नवा ॥
वृद्धदारकमूलञ्च भृङ्गं विश्वं विडङ्गकम् ।
करञ्ज शिग्रुनिर्गुण्डी सुरसैरण्डमूलकम् ॥
हस्तिकर्णपलाशञ्च पर्पट चन्दनं बला ।
समाख्यातो गणोऽयं तु लौहमारकसंज्ञकः ॥

Rasa Taringīni, 20.

Mitrapañcaka

मित्रपञ्चक

आज्यं गुञ्जाऽथ सौभाग्यं क्षौद्रं च पुरसंज्ञकम् ।
एतत्तु मिलितं विज्ञैर्मित्रपञ्चकमुच्यते ॥

Rasa Taringīni, 20.

Kūṣmāṇḍādigāṇa

कूष्माण्डादि गण

कूष्माण्डतुलसीलाक्षा खण्डश्चशतपुष्पिका ।
लवङ्गं वत्सनागश्च तण्डुलीयस्य मूलकम् ॥
कूष्माण्डादिगणोद्दोषः पूर्वाचार्यं निरूपितः ।
अमूर्च्छितामृतरसविकार कुलकण्डनः ॥

Rasa Taringīni, 20.

Niyāmakagaṇa

नियामकगण

महाबला नागबला यमचिञ्जा पुनर्नवा ।
 आखुपर्णी सहचरा वासिका काकमाचिका ॥
 गोक्षुरः शरपुङ्खा च विष्णुक्रान्ता धनध्वनिः ।
 मण्डूकपर्णी तुलसी बला च गिरिकर्णिका ॥
 शतावरी शंखपुष्पी श्वेतार्कः कनकाह्वयः ।
 चक्रमर्दः करञ्जश्च ब्रह्मदण्डी शिखण्डिनी ।
 गुडूची सैन्धवं पाठा मृगाक्षी सोमवल्लिका ।
 नियामकगणो ह्येष प्रोक्तो रसविशारदैः ॥

Rasa Tariṅgiṇi, 5.

Drāvakagaṇa

द्रावकगण

गुञ्जामधु गुडः सर्पिः सौभाग्यं गुग्गुलुस्तथा ।
 पूर्वाचार्यैः कीर्तितोऽयं धातूनां द्रावको गणः ॥

Rasa Tariṅgiṇi, 2.

Vātaḥaragaṇa

वातहरगण

एरण्डमूलं रास्नाऽथ दशमूलं प्रसारणी ।
 मुद्गपर्णी माषपर्णी शतमूली पुनर्नवा ॥
 अश्वगन्धाऽमृता मांसी बला नागबला तथा ।
 गणो वातहरोऽयन्तु वातामयहरः परम् ॥

Rasa Tariṅgiṇi, 20.

Pittanāśakagaṇa

पित्तनाशकगण

उशीरनीरसिंहिकाकिरातभूरिपुत्रिकाः ।
 पटोलचन्दनामृतासरोजतालमूलिकाः ॥
 सुतिक्तशाल्मलीशिफासितामहीरुहामयाः ।
 गणस्तु पित्तनाशको ह्यं तु पित्तरोगहृत् ॥

Rasa Tariṅgiṇi, 20.

Kaphanāśakagaṇa

कफनाशकगण

रास्ना मरीचं चविका नागिनी विश्वभेषजम् ।
 एरण्डः पिप्पलीमूलं तुलसी शृङ्गवेरकम् ॥
 भाङ्गी रक्तार्क कुसुमं मूर्वा शिग्रु बिभीतकम् ।
 परं बलासगदजिद् गणोऽयं कफनाशकः ॥

Rasa Tariṅgiṇi, 20.

Mārakagana

मारकगण

‘विष्णुक्रान्ता देवदाली सर्पाक्षीसहदेविका।’ (इत्यादयोः)।

Rasa Tariṅgiṇi. 7.

NIGHANṬŪKTA DRAVYA VARGA

निघण्टूक्त द्रव्यवर्ग

A. Kaiyadeva Nighanṭu

Auśadhivarga
Dhātuvarga
Dhānyavarga
Ikṣuvarga
Pakvānavarga
Māmsavarga
Vihāravarga
Miśrakavarga
Nānārthavarga

अ. कैयदेव निघण्टु

औषधिवर्ग
धातुवर्ग
धान्यवर्ग
इक्षुवर्ग
पक्वान्नवर्ग
मांसवर्ग
विहारवर्ग
मिश्रकवर्ग
नानार्थवर्ग

B. Dhanvantariya Nighanṭu

Guḍūcyādivarga
Śatapušpādivarga
Candanādivarga
Karavīrādivarga
Āmrādivarga
Suvarṇādivarga
Miśrakādivarga

ब. धन्वन्तरीय निघण्टु

गुडूच्यादिवर्ग
शतपुष्पादिवर्ग
चन्दनादिवर्ग
करवीरादिवर्ग
आम्रादिवर्ग
सुवर्णादिवर्ग
मिश्रकादिवर्ग

C. Rāja Nighanṭu

Guḍūcyādivarga
Satāhvādivarga
Parpaṭādivarga
Pippalyādivarga
Mūlakādivarga

स. राजनिघण्टु

गुडूच्यादिवर्ग
शताह्वादिवर्ग
पर्पटादिवर्ग
पिप्पल्यादिवर्ग
मूलकादिवर्ग

Śālmalyādivarga	शाल्मल्यादिवर्ग
Prabhadrādivarga	प्रभद्रादिवर्ग
Karavīrādivarga	करवीरादिवर्ग
Āmrādivarga	आम्रादिवर्ग
Candanādivarga	चन्दनादिवर्ग
Suvarṇādivarga	सुवर्णादिवर्ग
Pānīyādivarga	पानीयादिवर्ग
Kṣīrādivarga	क्षीरादिवर्ग
Śālyādivarga	शाल्यादिवर्ग
Māmsādivarga	मांसादिवर्ग
Mīśrakādivarga	मिश्रकादिवर्ग

D. Madanapāla Nighaṇṭu

Abhayādivarga
Śunṭhyādivarga
Karpūrādivarga
Suvarṇādivarga
Vaṭādivarga
Phalādivarga
Śākavarga
Pānīyādivarga
Ikṣukādivarga
Dhānyaguṇavarga
Dhānyakṛtānnādivarga
Māmsavarga
Mīśrakavarga

द. मदनपालनिघण्टु

अभयादिवर्ग
शुण्ठ्यादिवर्ग
कर्पूरादिवर्ग
सुवर्णादिवर्ग
वटादिवर्ग
फलादिवर्ग
शाकवर्ग
पानीयादिवर्ग
इक्षुकादिवर्ग
धान्यगुणवर्ग
धान्यकृतान्नादिवर्ग
मांसवर्ग
मिश्रकवर्ग

E. Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu

Haritakyādivarga
Karpūrādivarga
Gudūcyādivarga

ध. भावप्रकाशनिघण्टु

हरीतक्यादि वर्ग
कर्पूरादिवर्ग
गुडूच्यादिवर्ग

Puṣpavarga	पुष्पवर्ग
Phalavarga	फलवर्ग
Vaṭādivarga	वटादिवर्ग
Dhātuavarga	धातुवर्ग
Dhānyavarga	धान्यवर्ग
Vārivarga	वारिवर्ग
Dugdhavarga	दुग्धवर्ग
Dadhivarga	दधिवर्ग
Takravarga	तक्रवर्ग
Navanītavarga	नवनीतवर्ग
Ghṛtavarga	घृतवर्ग
Mūtravarga	मूत्रवर्ग
Tailavarga	तैलवर्ग
Madhuvarga	मधुवर्ग
Ikṣuvarga	इक्षुवर्ग
Sandhānavarga	सन्धानवर्ग
Māmsavarga	मांसवर्ग
Mīśrakavarga	मिश्रकवर्ग

F. Rājavallabha Nighaṇṭu

Nighaṇṭu Saṅgraha	ट-राजवल्लभनिघण्टु
Nighaṇṭu Ratnākara	निघण्टु संग्रह
Śāligrāma Nighaṇṭu	निघण्टु रत्नाकर
Varga Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu	शालिग्राम निघण्टु
	वर्ग-भावप्रकाशनिघण्टु

Varga Gaṇanā

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu-9	वर्गगणना
Dhanvantarīya Nighaṇṭu-7	ब. कैयदेव निघण्टु-९
Rāja Nighaṇṭu-16 (Auśadhi)	धन्वन्तरीयनिघण्टु-७
Madanapāla Nighaṇṭu-13	राजनिघण्टु-१६ (औषधि)
Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu-20	मदनपालनिघण्टु-१३
	भावप्रकाशनिघण्टु-२०

A. Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya

Drava Dravya-5

Anna Dravya-7

Auśadha Varga

Miśrakavarga-Gaṇa

अ. अष्टाङ्गहृदय

द्रव द्रव्य-५

अन्न द्रव्य-७

औषध वर्ग

मिश्रक वर्ग-गण



SECTION SECOND

DVITĪYA KHAṆḌAM
द्वितीय खण्डम्

ĀDHAKĪ

Botanical Name

Cajanus cajan (Linn.) Mills

Family

Fabaceae (Papilionaceae)

Classical name

Āḍhakī

Sanskrit Names

Āḍhakī, Tuvārī, Śaṇapusṇikā, Varyā, Karavīrabhujā, Pītapuṣpā, Vṛtabījā, Kālavṛntā, Kulatthā, Vakrakā, Tāmra-
varaṇā.

Regional names

Arahar, Tuar (Hindi.)

Description

Plant is an erect, annual-perennial grey or white-hairy, suffruticose herbs or undershrubs. Leaflets lanceolate-oblong, acute or subacuminate, mucronate, glabrescent or short-hairy on the upper surface, densely long-hairy and glandular-punctate on the lower surface, 2-10 (-15) X 0.5-3 (-4) cm.; terminal one a 0.5-2 cm. long petiolate; lateral ones on 0.2-0.3 cm. long petiolules; stipels 0.1-0.2 cm. long, subsistent. Petiole 0.5-5(-8) cm. long. Stipules subsistent, 0.4-0.5 cm. long. flowers yellow, yellow often tinged with reddish brown in densely hairy, peduncled, corymbose racemes, forming a terminal panicle.; racts 0.4-0.5 cm. long; pedicels 0.5-1.2 (-1.5 cm.) cm. long; calyx 1.3-1.5 cm. long; glandular-pubescent without, divided less than halfway down; standard pale-yellow with reddish-purple streaks, retuse; wings yellow; style glabrous above, hairy in the lower part, 1.5 cm. long. Pod sessile, glandular-pubescent, often with reddish-brown streaks, 3 to 5 (-7) seeded 4-5 cm. long. Seeds greyish brown, red or pale-yellow, usually ecarunculate, often with a minute or small caruncle.

Flowering and fruiting time

August to December rains to autumn; Farming/harvesting seasons.

Distribution

Everywhere, in the tropics; tropical Asia and Africa. Extensively cultivated as a common pulse crop throughout India, ascending up to 8,000 ft. 1980 m. in the Himalayas.

Kinds and Varieties

These classical varieties— Śvetā, Raktā and Sitā. Various kinds and grades types of pulse seeds in current agropractices in country (agronomy).

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa :	Kaṣāya, Madhura
Guṇa :	Rūksa, Laghu, Śīta
Vīrya :	Śīta
Vipāka:	Madhura
Doṣakarma :	Pittakaphahara, Vātakara (Īsadvātakara) Tridoṣaśamana (patram)

Properties and action

Karma :	Grāhī, Rucya, Pathya, Dāhahara, Balya, Varṇya, Viṣaghna, Dīpana, Kṛmighna
Roga :	Raktadoṣa, Dāha-santāpa-trṣā. Varṇavikāra-tvacāroga, Pitta-Kap- havikāra, Añśughāta, Kṛmiroga, Agnimāndya, Daurbalya.

Therapeutic uses

The soup of seeds pulse is medicinally effective and considered useful in various ailments and it is given to patients as wholesome medicated regimen as soup (āḍhakī yūṣa) is to alleviate biliousness and nourishing dietary item being tonic and stomachic properties attributed to seeds soup preparation. The soup is highly effective in cases of sunstroke and excessive heat curing extreme hot in summer seasons since it is recommended as electrolytic agent. The seeds are used as a very common pulse much relished among daily food habits. Leaves are also medicinally useful specially they are anthelmintic.

Parts used

Seeds pulse, leaves.

Dose

Edible, dietetic item.

ĀDHAKĪ (आढकी)

- क. आढकी तुवरी चापि सा प्रोक्ता शणपुष्पिका ।
ख. आढकी तुवरा रूक्षा मधुरा शीतला लघुः ।
ग्राहिणी वातजननी वर्ण्या पित्तकफास्रजित् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Dhānya varga, 51-52.

- अ. आढकी तुवरी वर्या करवीरभुजा तथा
वृत्तबीजा पीतपुष्पा श्वेता रक्ताऽसिता त्रिधा ॥
ब. आढकी तु कषाया च मधुरा कफपित्तजित् ।
ईषद्वातकरा रुच्या विदला गुरुग्राहिका ॥
स. सा च श्वेता दोषदात्री तु रक्ता रुच्या पित्ततापादिहन्त्री ।
सा श्यामा चेद्दीपनी पित्तदाहध्वंसा बल्यश्चाढकीयूषमुक्तम् ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Śālyādi vrga, 100-102.

तुवरी

- क. आढकी तुवरी कालवृन्ता कुलत्थका ॥
कुलत्थाश्चक्रका ज्ञेयास्ताम्रवर्णाश्चलापहाः ।
ख. तुवरी तुवरा रूक्षा मधुरा शीतला लघुः ।
ग्राहिणी वातला वर्ण्या कफपित्तविषापहाः ।

आढकीपत्रम्

- ग. त्रिदोषशमनं पथ्यं कृमिघ्नं चाढकीदलम् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, 73-75. Oṣadhi varga.

AGASTYA

Botanical name

Sesbania grandiflora Retz.

Family

Fabaceae (Papilionaceae)

Classical name

Agastya

Sanskrit names

Vaṅgasena, Munivṛkṣa, Munidruma, Munipuṣpa, Śīghrapuṣpa, Siddha, Panktipatra, Mṛduśimbī, Mahāruha, Vakrapuṣpa, Vraṇāri, Dirghaphalaka, Kumbhayoni, Surapriya, Madhuśigruka.

Regional Names

Agasta, Agastiya (Hindi), Vak, Vasnaphul (Beng.)
Agasta (Mar.), Agathiyo (Guj.), Agati (Tem.), Avidhi (Tel.).

Description

A soft wooded medium-sized tree upto 6-6.2 meters height, with smooth, light brown bark, wood white, soft. Leaves 15-30-5 cm. long; leaflets linear oblong, glabrous. Flowers large, white or red, 5-7.5 cm. long, pods 30.5 cm. long, curved., pendulous.

Flowering and fruiting time

February to March; cold and spring season.

Varieties and Kinds

Four kinds of plant based on flowers colour viz. white (śveta), yellow (pīta), blue (nīla) and red (rakta) in classical texts of materia medica (nighaṇṭus); and commonly red or white flowered plant.

Distribution

Plant is found in Bengal, Southern India and Gangetic regions. It is abundantly found in Burma. Cultivated in various provinces i.e. Assam, Gujarat and Kerala.

Chemical Composition

Bark contains tannin and red colour resin.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	:	Tikta Tikta-kaṣāya (puṣpa)
Gūṇa	:	Laghu Rūksa
Vīrya	:	Śīta
Vipāka	:	Kaṭu
Doṣakṛma	:	Kaphapittaśāmaka Vātakara (Vātaprakopana)

Properties and action

Karma	:	Śothahara, Vraṇaśodhanaro-paṇa Bhūtaghna, Śirovirecana, Cakṣuṣya
-------	---	---

Sajñāpravodhana, Medhya
 Dīpana-anulomana, Kṛmighna
 Grāhi-Śūlapraśamana
 Śleṣmaniḥsāraka-kāshara
 Svedajanana-tvacya-visphoṭaghna
 Jvaraghna, Viṣaghna
 Raktapittaśāmaka

Roga

- a. Ābhyantara : Apasmāra-sajñanāśa-mastiṣka-
 daurbalya, Udaravikāra-kṛmi-
 śula-vibandha-agnimāndya
 Atisāra-sangrahaṇī
 Kāsa-pratiśyāya-phuphusasotha
 pīnasa-kṣaya
 Śvetapracara-Garbhāśayaśoṭha
 Pūyameha-mūtravikāra (śoṭha-srāva)
 Tvagvikāra-vaivarṇya
 Jvara-cāturthikajvara-sannipāta jvara
- b. Bahya : Sandhivāta-vātarakta
 Vraṇa-Visphoṭa-Carmavikāra
 Netravikāra-naktāndhya-dṛṣṭimāndya
 Pratiśyāya-pīnasa-śīraḥśūla-
 kaphajvara

Therapeutic uses

It is antihistaminic, astringent, febrifuge, tonic, stomachic, laxative, expectorant, antiphlogistic, wound healer and brain tonic, in general. Juice of leaves is used as snuff in coryza, headache, influenza and cough-cold fever, as well as in epilepsy for countering unconsciousness and epileptic attack. Paste of leaves, especially roots and bark, is externally applied over wounds-ulcers, gout, rheumatic and inflamed joints. Flowers juice is dropped in eyes for checking nightblindness and sight-weakness, and also promoting vision. Bark juice is given in diarrhoea, sprue and abdominal colic, and also gastro-intestinal disorders. Flowers and leaves are useful in worms, constipation and loss of appetite, in the forms of vegetable and juice. Juice of bark mixed with honey is used in cough, coryza, rhinitis, lungs affections, chest complaints, bronchitis and cough fever, includ-

ing acute cough. Flowers are used in leucorrhoea and plant is useful in gonorrhoea and similar uro-genital complaints. It is useful in all types of fevers, periodic fever, small pox, poisoning cases, biliousness and general debility. Ripe pods are brain tonic and memory promotor. Flowering buds are eaten as house hold vegetable (śāka) which is medicinally useful and relished as diet and also employed for preparing Acāra (pickle).

Parts used

Whole plant; flowers, leaves, bark, roots and fruits.

Dose

5-10 gms. powder, 3-6 ml. Juice, 10-20 ml. decoction.

AGASTYA (अगस्त्य)

क. अथागस्त्यो वङ्गसेनो मुनिपुष्पो मुनिद्रुमः ।

ख. अगस्तिः पित्तकफजिश्चतुर्थिकहरो हिमः ।

रूक्षो वातकरस्तिक्तः प्रतिश्यायनिवारणः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Puṣpa varga, 61.

अ. अगस्तिकः कुंभयोनिरगस्त्यो मधुशिग्रुकः ॥

मुनिवृक्षो वङ्गसेनो कोपवैरमधुर्यतिः ।

ब. अगस्तिः शीतलो रूक्षस्तिक्तो वातप्रकोपनः ।

कफपित्तप्रतिश्यायचातुर्थिकविनाशनः ॥

Kaiyadeva nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 937-938.

अगस्त्यः

अगस्त्यः शीघ्रपुष्पः स्यात् अगस्तिसु मुनिद्रुमः ।

व्रणारिर्दीर्घफलको वक्रपुष्पः सुरप्रियः ॥

अगस्त्यः

सिद्धोऽगस्तिः पंक्तिपत्रो मृदुशिम्बी महारुहः ।

अगस्त्य उदयं यावत् सपुष्प इव दृश्यते ॥

Śivadatta

अगस्त्यजातयः

सितपीतनीललोहितकुसुमविशेषाच्चतुर्विधोऽगस्तिः ।

अगस्त्यगुणाः

मधुरशिशिरस्त्रिदोषश्रमकासविनाशनश्च भूतघ्नः ।
अगस्त्यं शिशिरं गौल्यं त्रिदोषघ्नं श्रमापहम् ।
बलासकासवैवर्ण्यं भूतघ्नञ्च बलापहम् ॥

Rāja Nighanṭu, Kaṛāvīrādi varga, 46-48.

अगस्तिपुष्पस्य गुणाः अगस्त्यपुष्पशाकम्—

अगस्तिकुसुमं शीतं चातुर्थिकनिवारणम् ।
नक्तान्ध्यनाशनं तिक्तं कषायं कटुपाकि च ।
पीनसश्लेष्मपिवघ्नं वातघ्नं मुनिभिर्मतम् ॥

Bhāvprakāsa Nighanṭu, Śāka varga, 48.

अगस्त्यपुष्पं पत्रञ्च

मुनिवृक्षदलं लूताव्रणविध्वंसि श्लेष्मनुत् ।
तत्पुष्पं वातलं तिक्तं कषायं कटुपाकि च ॥
क्षयकासहरं चैव पित्तश्लेष्मापकर्षणम् ।
चातुर्थिकज्वरहरं नावनेनोपयोजितम् ॥

Śoḍhala.

तस्य (अगस्त्य) शाकम्

‘अगस्त्यं (शाकं) नातिशीतोष्णं नक्तान्धानां प्रशस्यते ।’

Suśruta Samhitā, Sutra. 46-282

वातरक्ते

‘अगस्तिपुष्पचूर्णेन माहिषं जनयेद्दधि ।
तदुत्थनवनीतेन देहजं स्फुटनं जयेत् ॥’

Bhāvaprakāśa.

शूले

नागरशोभाञ्जनयोः क्वाथः शूलं विनाशयेत्वदिनात् ।
मुनितरुवल्कक्वाथस्तद्वत्पटुरामठप्रतीवापः ॥

Vaidya Manoramā.

चातुर्थिकज्वरे

‘अगस्तिपत्रस्वरसेन नस्यं निहन्ति
चातुर्थिकमुग्ररूपम् ।’

Vṛnda, Jvarādhikāra, 238

बालानामपस्मारे

‘रसं चागस्तिपत्रस्य मरिचैः प्रतियोजितम् ।
एतेन प्रतिसौख्यं स्यात्..... ।’

Hārīta Samhitā, Cikitsā. 43.

अपस्मारे

अगस्तिपत्रं मूत्रेण मरिचं परिपेषितम् ।
तस्य पिष्टमपस्मारं हन्ति शीघ्रं नरस्य तु ॥

Hārīta Samhitā, Cikitsā. 19

निशाब्ध्ये

‘भृष्टं घृतं कुम्भयोनेः पत्रं पाने च पूजितम् ।’

Aṣṭāṅga hṛdaya. Uttara. 13-79

वातरक्ते अगस्त्यदधि

अगस्तिपूष्पचूर्णेन माहिषं जनयेद्दधि ।
तदुत्थनवनीतेन देहजं स्फुटनं जयेत् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Vātaraktādhikāra. 29-56

AGNIMANTHA

Botanical Name

Clerodendrum phlomidis Linn. f.

Premna integrifolia Linn.

Family

Verbenaceae

Classical Names

Agnimantha

Regional Name

Arani, Ganivar, Agethu (Hindi.), Eran (mar.), Takali (Mar.), Arni (Guj.), Ganimari (Beng.), Thalnajji (Tam.) Nelichett (Tel.)

Sanskrit Name

Agnimantha, Jayā, Śrīparṇa, Gaṇikārikā, Vātaghnī, Jayamtī, Nādeyī, Tarkāri, Vaijayantikā,

Description

Premna integrifolia Linn.

A large shrub or small tree, short trunk; branches

numerous, often procumbent and rooting; bark smooth; leaves dark, brown, opposite, cordate, serrate, Flowers minute, numerous. Berries black, pea-sized.

Clerodendrum phlomidis Linn. f.

Flowering and fruiting time

Rains to Winters.

Varieties and kinds

The classical varieties (Agnimantha dvayam-kṣudra agnimantha and bṛhad agnimantha : Nighaṅṭus). Agnimantha (Clerodendrum) and Tarkari (Premna), considered commonly and as known barī arani and cṛoṭi arani respectively.

Distribution

Throughout India specially upper Gangetic planis, Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, Orissa and other Province.

Mostly found in the Coastal areas in southern India, Kerala and Tamilnadu and other Western coasts in dry regions.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Tikta-Kaṭu-Kaṣāya-Madhura
Guna	: Rūkṣa, Laghu
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphavātaśāmaka

Properties and action

Karma	: Śoṭhanara, Vedanāsthāpana Nāḍiśāmaka, Kaphaghna-Kāśahara Dīpana-pācana-anulomana Tvacya Hṛdayottejaka-śoṭhahara-rakta- śodhaka, Pramehaghna Kaṭupauṣṭika, Arśoghna Sītapraśamana, Anuvāsanopaga
-------	---

Roga

a. Bāhya	: Śoṭha-Vedanā
b. Ābhyantara	: Vātavyādhi Śoṭha-vedanāyukta vikāra

Agnimāndya-vibandha-āmadeṣa
 Arśa-Ādhmāna-Gulma-Arucci
 Raktavikāra-śoṭha-Hṛddourbal-ya,
 Kāsa-śvāsa-pratiśyāya hṛdgraha-pāṇḍu
 Prameha-vasāmeha-pūyameha
 Tvacavikāra-śītapitta-koṭha-udarda
 Jvarottara daurfalya-pāṇḍutā
 Yakṛdvikāra.

Therapeutic uses

Plant drug is carminative, cardi tonic, febrifuge, laxative, stomachic, tonic, alterative, expectorant, blood purifier, anodyne and anti-inflammatory. The paste of leaves is applied or leaves warm bandaged over painful and inflamed organs of body. Decoction of root bark and bark is internally given in rheumatism, arthritis and other ailments (under Vātavyādhi) and nervine and neuralgic complaints. Leaves, stems and roots (bark) are useful in the form of juice or decoction and others in urinary complaints, diabetes, gonorrhoea and similar disorders (under prameha). Leaves juice is given in flatulence, colic and other abdominal complaints, Decoction and power of bark is used in constipation and loss of appetite. Bark and root decoction is used in heart disorders, oedema, fever, eruptive fever, debility after febrile conditions anaemia, liver complaints, cough, asthma, coryza and chest complaints. Decoction of roots is given in urticaria, eruptions, allergic and other skin diseases. It has wide therapeutic uses as an ingredient of Daśamūla (bṛhatpancamūla), the commonly used drug-decade in indigenous medicine.

Groups (gaṇa)

Śoṭhahara Śītapraśamana, Anuvāsanopaga (Caraka)
 Daśamūla, Bṛhatpancamūla, Vīratarvādi, Varuṇādi gaṇa
 (Suśruta).

Parts used

Root, Bark, leaves, roots bark.

Dose

Decoction 10-15 ml.

Powder-root bark- 3-6 gms.

AGNIMANTHA (अग्रिमन्थ)

तर्कारी

तर्कारी कटुका तिक्ता तुवरा मधुराग्निदा ।
वीर्योष्ण हरते वातकफश्चयथुपाण्डुताः ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 27.

अग्रिमन्थ

अग्रिमन्थो गुणैस्तद्वद्विशेषाद्वातशोफहा ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 28.

अग्रिमन्थः श्वयथुनुद्वीर्योष्णः कफवातनुत् ।

पाण्डुनुत्कटुकस्तिक्तस्तुवरो मधुरोऽग्रिदः ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 24.

अग्रिमन्थः श्वयथुनुद्वीर्योष्णः कफवातहत् ।

पाण्डुनुत्कणकटुकपित्तकस्तुवरो मधुरोऽग्रिदः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Guḍūcyādi-varga, 24.

तालीसपत्रम्

तालीसं लघु तीक्ष्णोष्णं श्वासकासकफानिलान् ।

निहन्त्यारुचिगुल्मनामयग्घाहिमांघक्षयामयान् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Karpūrādi varga, 115.

तर्कारी कटुरुष्णा च तिक्ताऽनिलकफापहा ।

शोफश्लेष्माग्रिमांघाशीविड्बन्धाध्माननाशिनी ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Prabhadrādi varga, 23.

क्षुद्राग्रिमन्थ

अग्रिमन्थद्वयं चैव तुल्यं वीर्यरसादिषु ।

तन्प्रयोगानुसारेण योजयेत् स्वमनौषधा ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Prabhadrādi varga, 25.

तर्कारी कटुका तिक्ता तथोष्णाऽनिलपाण्डुनुत् ।

शोथश्लेष्माग्रिमांघामविबन्धांश्च विनाशयेत् ॥

Dhanvantari Nighaṅṭu.

पार्श्वशूलादिषु अग्रिमन्थक्षारतैलम्

तथाऽग्रिमन्थस्योनाकपलाशतिलनालजैः ।

बलाकद्रव्यापामार्गक्षारैः प्रत्येकशः स्रुतैः ।
 तैलं पक्त्वा भिषग्दद्यादुदराणां प्रशान्तये ॥
 निवर्तते चोदरिणां हृद्ग्रहश्चानिलोद्भवः ।

Caraka Saṁhitā, cikitsā. 13-170/171.

अश्मरीजन्यवेदनायां अरणीबीजम्

श्रीकरिणीफलबीजं पिष्टं मथितेन यः पुमानद्यात् ।
 शाकमशितमथवाऽस्या हन्याद् रोगाश्मरीपीडाम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Aśmarīrogadhikāra, 37-69.

उपदशचिकित्सायां जयादिपत्रक्राथः

Cakradatta, Upadaśa cikitsā, 47-12.

शीतपित्ताद्विकाराणामग्रिमन्थ प्रलेपः

अग्रिमन्थभवं मूलं पिष्टं पीतञ्च सर्पिषा ।
 शीतपित्तोदरदकोठान् सप्ताहादेव नाशयेत् ॥

Cakradatta, Udardakoṭhasītapitta cikitsā, 50-7.

प्रतिश्याये जयापत्रपुटपाकः

पुटपत्रं जयापत्रं सिन्धुतैलसमन्वितम् ।
 प्रतिश्यायेषु सर्वेषु शीलितं परमौषधम् ॥

Cakradatta, Nāsāroga cikitsā, 58-18.

AHIPHENA

Botanical name

Papaver somniferum Linn.

Family

Papaveraceae

Classical name

(Niryāsa) Ahiphena, Āphūka, Tilabheda, Khastila, Khalhasa (Kṣupa); Khaskhas, Sūkṣmabija, Subija, Sūkṣma-
 taṇḍula.

Regional names

Afimaphim (Hind.), Aphin (Kan.), Aphim (Beng.),
 Aphim, Amal (Mar.) Aphu (Mal.), Aphin (Guj.), Ayuphun
 (Arab.), Opium (Eng.), Poppy Seeds.

Description

An annual usually glaucous quite glabrous herb; leaves oblong, amplexicaul lobed; lobes dentate; flowers white, sometimes purple or scarlet; capsule stalked 2.5 cm. in diam., egg-shaped glabrous, stigmatic rays 5-12. without pores under the stigma; seeds white or black.

Latex or milky juice of immature capsule and later dried (opium); capsule of white or opium poppy (*Papaver capsulae*) and seeds of matured capsule (opium poppy seeds) are commonly known as *Aphim* (*Opium-Ahiphena phala niryāsa*), *Aphim doda-posta* (poppy heads or opium poppy capsule-*Ahiphena phala* or *khaskhas*) and *khaskhas-postadana* (white poppy seeds-*Ahiphena phalabija* or *khasabija*) respectively.

Varieties and kinds

There are four varieties mentioned in classical texts (*Nighaṅṭu*) viz. white (*Śveta*), yellow (*pīta*), black (*kṛṣṇa*) and *citra* based on flowers (colour); and also four others e.g. *Jāraṇa*, *māraṇa*, *dharāṇa* and *saraṇa* based on their utility or purpose (*karma*). Practically there are three kinds viz. *Khaskhas saphed*, *khaslhas syah* and *khaskhas mansur* having flowers of yellowish white, black or blue and red colour respectively. Geographically, opium is of various kinds e.g. Turkish, European, Persian, Indian and others.

Flowering and fruiting time

Farming seasons.

Distribution

Northern subtropical regions and Asia minor, Persia, China, Nepal and India. In India it is a specially cultivated in Uttar Pradesh, Punjab, Madhya Pradesh, Rajasthan, Tamilnadu, West Bengal, Bihar and Jammu and Kashmir and Assam.

Poppy farming on commercial scale for opium production under narcotic drug control in various parts of country.

Chemical Composition

It contains primary alkaloid as morphine, codeine, cotaline, narcotine, and secondary alkaloid as apomo-

rphine, apocodiene and natural substances and organic acids.

Seeds contain a sweet, fixed, yellowish and odourless oil. Opium is a major source of morphine and various other alkaloids alongwith their derivatives of different categories.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Tikta, Kaṣāya
Guṇa	: Sūkṣma, Rūkṣa
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphavātaśāmaka Pittaprapakopa

Properties and action

Karma	: Mādaka-madakāri, Vyavāyi-vikāsi Vedanāsthāpana, Nidrājanana Akṣepahara, Stambhana Śūlapraśamana, Hṛchattivardhaka Raktastambhaka, Śvāsa-kāśahara Mūtramadhurakaśamana, Śukrastambhaka, Svedajanana, Dhātuśośaka, Jvaraghna
Roga	: Kaphavātavikāra
(a) Ābhyantara	: Vedanāpradhāna vikāra Gṛdhrasi-pārśvaśūla-aśmari- udaraśūla-vātaroga-nāḍīśūla Vedanājanya nidrānāśa Apsmāra-apatantraka-kampa-vāta Dhanuṣṭambha, Atisāra (pakva-vātātisāra) Udaraśūla-amāśayaśoṭha, Viśūcikā (prathamāvasthā) Āntrikajvara
(b) Bāhya	: Sandhiśoṭha, Phuphusāvaraṇa-soṭha Dehāngagata, śoṭha-piḍā Arśa-gudavikāra, Netra-karṇa Śoṭha-vedanā.

Therapeutic uses

It is useful as analgesic, anaesthetic, anti-colic, anti-diuretic, astringent, depressant of cerebrum, diaphoretic,

expectorant, febrifuge, hypnotic, sedative, respiratory paralysis and narcotic. It is one of the major and potent narcotic drugs. It is used as anodyne, appetizer, antispasmodic, antipyretic, and aphrodisiac (delaying or prolonging semen ejaculation).

It is used in abdominal pain, colic conditions, dispression, diabetes, diarrhoea, enteritis, impotency, abnormal or early ejaculation of semen (during sexual coitus) sciatica pain, neuralgia, pleurisy, respiratory disorders, spermatorrhea and several ailing conditions. It is indicated in asthma, colic-gallstone, renal diabetes, anasarca, internal haemorrhage, piles and peritonitis. It is anticonvulsant and useful in epilepsy, insomnia, tetanus, convulsions, strychnos poison and other relevant ailments.

It is externally applied to inflammation and pain of organs, and also painful haemorrhoids, rectal and urinary bladder for alleviating pain. It is topically applied to inflamed and painful joints and in pleurisy.

Precaution

It is contraindicated in certain diseases of lungs and chest (respiratory system), central nervous system, meningitis, fever, delirium, brain haemorrhage-cerebral, intestinal and gastric dilatation and incapability.

It requires due precaution while using in cases of nephritis, infants and old patients, all chronic diseases, and specially addition of opium needs to be avoided (opiates). Therefore, careful consideration of dose, age, sex, nature, constitution, addiction (prolonged use), disease and composition or formula. In case of opium poison, the toxic signs and symptoms need to be checked by giving prescribed treatment.

Opium is properly purified under prescribed process of purification (Ahiphena śodhan vidhi) before its medicinal use.

Parts used

Milky juice of immature capsule (phalaniryāsa); Dried fruits and seeds, seeds oil (Khasaphala khasabīja and khasabīja taila).

Dose

10-15 mg. or carefully indicated under due posological considerations and precautions (rarely used as a single drug).

Formulations (Yoga)

Kāminīvidrāvaṇa rasa, Ahiphenasava, Karpūra rasa, Dugdhaveṭi, Nidrodaveṭi, Mahavātarāja rasa, Vedanāntaka malhara, Śambhūnātha rasa.

AHIPHENA (अहिफेन)

अहिफेनं रसे तिक्तं विपाके कटुकं विषम् ।
स्तम्भनं रूक्षमुष्णं च वेदनास्थापनं परम् ।
स्वेदनं स्वापजननं कफरोगविनाशनम् ॥

दारुणके

‘दुग्धेन खाखसं बीजं प्रलेपाद्दारुणं जयेत् ।’

Sāraṅgadhara Saṁhitā

अहिफेनकम्

उक्तं खसफलक्षीरमाफूकमहिफेनकम् ।
आफूकं शोषणं ग्राहि श्लेष्मघ्नं वातपित्तलम् ।
तथा खसफलोद्भूतवल्कलप्रायमित्यपि ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Haritakyādi varga, 238.

खाखसम्

तिलभेदः खसतिलः खाखसश्चापि स स्मृतः ।
स्यात् खाखसफलोद्भूतवल्कलं शीतलं लघु ॥
ग्राहि तिक्तं कषायञ्च वातकृत् कफकासहत् ॥

Bāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Haritakyādi varga, 236.

धातूनां शोषकं रूक्षं मदकृद्वाग्रविवर्धनम् ।
मुहुर्मोहकरं रुच्यं सेवनात्पुंस्त्वनाशनम् ॥

Bāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Haritakyādi varga, 237.

खाखसतिलम्

उच्यन्ते खसबीजानि ते खाखसतिला अपि ॥
खसबीजानि बल्यानि वृष्याणि सुगुरूणि च ।

जनयन्ति कफं तानि शमयन्ति समीरणम् ॥

Bāvaprahāsa Nighaṅṭu, Harītakṛyādi-Varga, 239-240.

खस्खसः सूक्ष्मबीजः स्यात्सुबीजः सूक्ष्मतण्डुलः ।

खस्खसो मधुरः पाके कान्तिवीर्यबलप्रदः ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Śatāhvādi varga, 163.

खसबीजतैलम्

तैलं तु खसबीजानां बल्यं वृष्यं गुरु स्मृतम् ॥

वातहृत्कफहृच्छीतं स्वादुपाकरसं च तत् ॥

Bhāvaprahāsa Nighaṅṭu, Taila varga, 21.

आहिफेनासव — Bhāiṣajya Ratnāvalī.

महावातराजरस — Siddha Bhāiṣajya Maṇimālā.

दुग्धवटी — Bhāiṣajya Ratnāvalī, Śoṭha.

कर्पूररसादिवटी — Bhāiṣajya Ratnāvalī, Atisāra.

AJAGANDHĀ

Botanical name

Cleome gynandra Linn.

Gynandropsis gynandra Briq.

Gynandropsis pentaphylla DC.

Cleome viscosa Linn.

Family

Cleomaceae (Capparidaceae-Capparaceae)

Classical name

Ajagandhā

Sanskrit names

Ajagnadhā, Ugragandhā, Tilaparṇi

Regional names

Hulhula, Hurhura (Hind.); Hudhudia (Beng.), Tilavana (Mar.), Talavani (Guj.), Bogra (Punj.), Naivelai (Tam.), Bagaro (Mal), Kukkvaminta (Tel.); Dog mustard, Bastard Mustard, Caravalla Seed (Eng.).

Description

Cleome gynandra Linn.

A strong, smelling, hairy, erect, glandular-pubescent,

annual herb. Leaves digitately 5-foliolate; leaf-stalks long; leaflets sessile, middle one largest. Flowers in viscous corymbs, elongating into racemes, white, white or purple, stalks slender in flowers but stout in fruits capsules 2-4 in. long, nearly smooth, streaked; seeds kidney shaped, wrinkled, brown or black.

Cleome viscosa Linn.

A simple or sparsely branched, erect, viscid-glandular-hairy or-hispid, annual herb, 15-100 (-150) cm. tall. Leaves digitately 3 to 5 foliolate; leaflets subsessile; elliptic-obovate to oblong, acute or obtuse at apex, cuneate at base; the central one the longest. Flowers yellow, solitary in axils or reduced leaves, forming a terminal corymbose raceme; Capsules cylindrical glandular-pubescent, 6-12 cm. long (incl. 0.6-0.8 cm. long beak). Seeds reddish brown, ribbed 1.2-1.3 cm. across.

Flowering and fruiting time

Summers/rains to autumn/winters; seedling or plants during rainy season.

Distribution

Common weed plant found in all tropical countries; it grows in various tropical regions in India.

Kinds and varieties

Two source plants are considered kinds of śveta puṣpa and pīta puṣpa respectively. (white and yellow-flowered varieties).

Chemical composition

Seeds contain oil.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṭu
Guṇa	: Rūkṣa, Laghu, Tikṣṇa
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakrma	: Kaphavātaśāmakā Pittaprapakopa (atisevana)

Properties and action

Karma	: Vidāhī, Vedanāsthāpana, Pūtihara, Uttejaka, Ākṣepaśāmakā
-------	---

Dīpana-pācana, Anulomana
Kṛmighna, Svedajanana,
Jvaraśāmaka.

Roga

- (a) Bāhya : Sandhivāta-śoṭha-pidā, Jīrṇa,
Vraṇa-vraṇa kṛmi,
Vraṇaśoṭha-Vidradhi, karnaśūla
Sarpa-vṛścikadaṁṣa-viṣa.
- (b) Ābhyantara : Tvagvikāra, Akṣepaka,
Agnimāndya-ajīrṇa,
Udarāsūla-gulma, Kṛmi-gaṇḍūpada.

Therapeutic uses

The leaves are rubefacient, anthelmintic and vesicant. Paste of the leaves is applied in rheumatism, neuralgia, headache and stiff-neck. But prolonged application or leaves paste may cause blisters. The warm juice of leaves is a popular remedy for earache and other ailments of the ear.

The seeds of the plant are rubefacient and anthelmintic. They are orally used for the expulsion of round worms; and this purpose the dose of 10 gm. and grains and 30-60 grains in children and adults respectively twice a day for two days are generally recommended; followed by a purgative on the third or next day. The poultice or seeds or paste are also used in place of mustard. Leaves are applied over snake bite and scorpionsting. Leaves paste is topically applied and also used to wash the chronic or foul ulcers with worms for their eliminations. Plant is used in children convulsion.

Parts used

Seeds, leaves, roots.

Dose (10-60)

Seeds 30 grains to 13 gms; leaves juice 3-6 gms. roots 1-3 gms.

AJAGANDHĀ (अजगन्धा)

अजगन्धा कटूष्णा स्याद्वातगुल्मोदरापहा ।

कर्णव्रणार्तिशूलघ्नी कृमिघ्नी च ज्वरापहा ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu.

अजगन्धा कटुः पाके रसे रूक्षाग्निदीपनी ।
हृद्या रुच्यालघुस्तीक्ष्णा दृक्शुक्रकफवातहा ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu.

श्लेष्मजनितविसर्पे अजगन्धादिलेपः

Cakradatta, 53-14.

AJAMODĀ

Botanical name

Trachyspermum roxburghianum (DC) Sprague.

Carum roxburghianum

Apium graveolens Linn.

Pseucedanum graveolens (Linn.) Hiers.

Family

Apiaceae (Umbelliferae)

Classical Name

Ajamodā

Sanskrit Names

Ajamodā, Kharāhvā

Regional names

Ajmod (Hind.), Antiomum (Tel.), Karpsehind (Arabic, Persian), Gandhuni (Beng.), Ajmoda (Mar.)

Description

***Trachyspermum roxburghianum* (DC) Sprague.**

A herbaceous aronatic annual. Fruits small studded with blunt simple hairs, each mericarp consisting five ridges paler than the spaces between them and containing about 15 vittae.

***Apium graveolens* Linn.**

A glabrous, erect annual herbs, with stems terete, striate. Lower leaves petioled, 3 to 4-pinnate; higher ones sessile, 2-pinnate, ultimate segments filiform 1-3 (-4) cm. long; sheaths white margined. Umbels terminal and or leaf-opposed, on 4-15 (-20) cm. long peduncle. Involucres and involucellae absent. Fruit 0.3-0.5 cm. long, minute, ridges narrow, vittae broad; fruit occurring as separated mericarps, cremocarp brown, ovoid roundish, laterally compressed 1-

1.5 mm. wide, 0.5 mm. thick; 5 scarcely prominent ridges and 6-12 vittae distinguishing; seeds orthospermous.

Flowering and fruiting time

Rainy to autumn season.

Distribution

Hills of the Punjab and foot of the North-West Himalayas; cultivated in sub-Himalayan regions and outlying hills. Cultivated throughout India, specially in Maharashtra (Bombay) and other regions.

Chemical composition

Seeds contain a volatile oil; seeds essential oil several active substances α -limonene, terpinene, dipentene, d-linalool, dipiperinone, thymoquinol, thymol and a crystalline ketonic acid.

Pharmacodynamic

Rasa	: Kaṭu, tikta
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa, Tikṣṇa
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipaka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphavātaśāmaka, Pittavardhaka

Properties and action

Karma	: Śūlapraśamana, Dīpana, Anulomana Vidāhī, Kṛmighna, Vedanāsthāpana Hṛdayottejaka, Kaphaghna, Mūtrapravrtaka, Garbhaśayottejaka, Vājīkaraṇa, Kaṭupaustika.
-------	--

Roga

- (a) Ābhyantara : Agnimāndya, Vamana, Ādhmāna
Udaraśūla, Kṛmi, Hṛddaurbalya
Kāsa, Śvāsa, Hikkā, Bastiśūla
Mūtrāghāta, Kaṣṭārtava, Klaihya
Sāmānya-daurbalya.
- (b) Bāhya : Aṅgāgāta vedanā.

Therapeutic uses

It is useful as anodyne, anthelmintic, aphrodisiac, cardiac, stimulant, carminative, emmenagogue, expectorant, stimulant, stomachic and analgesic drug. It is used in asthma,

cough, cold, hiccup-hicough, colic, pain in bladder and vomiting. Seeds are useful in flantulence, abdominal colic, worms, loss of appetite, indigestion, sexual debility, general debility and menstrual disorders. Seeds are much used as a flavouring and cooling agent in certain parts. Seeds are used as tonic and given in rheumatic complaints. They are also useful in eye diseases.

Seeds are orally used in anorexia, bronchitis, catarrhal affection, liver and splenic disorders, and useful as intestinal antiseptic. Infusion of seeds prepared from water is used in infantile complaints specially gastro-intestinal troubles.

Parts used

Seeds.

Does

1 to 5 gms. seeds powder, 0.25-0.5 ml. distillate

Formulations (Yoga)

Ajamodādi cūrṇa, Ajamodādi vaṭaka.

AJAMODĀ (अजमोदा)

यवानी दीप्यको वल्ली कारवी कृमिनाशिनी ।

अजमोदा कटुस्तिक्ता कटुपाका विदाहिनी ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 1201.

दीपनी पाचनी रूक्षा वीर्योष्णा कफवातहा ।

लघुस्तिक्ता बद्धविटका हृद्या वृष्या विनाशयेत् ॥

नेत्ररोगारुचिच्छर्दि हिष्माध्मावस्तिरुक्कमीन् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 1202-1203.

अजमोदा कटुरुष्णा रूक्षा कफवातहारिणी रुचिकृत् ।

शूलाश्चानारोचकजठरामयनाशनी चैव ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Pippalyādi varga, 110.

अजमोदा कटुस्तीक्ष्णा दीपनी कफवातनुत् ।

उष्णा विदाहिनी हृद्या वृष्या कफकरी लघुः ।

नेत्रामयकृमिच्छर्दिहिक्काबस्तिरुजा हरेत् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Haritakyādi varga, 79

अजमोदा तु शूलघ्नी तिक्तोष्णा कफवातजित् ।

हिक्काध्मानाहधीर्हन्ति कुमिजिद्वहिदीपनी ॥

Dhanwantari Nighanṭu.

आमवाते अजमोदादिचूर्ण वटकश्च

Bhāvaprakāśa, Madhyakhṇḍe, 26-91/96.

आजमोदाद्यवटकः

Cakradatta, Āmavāta cikitsā, 25/49-55.

ĀKARAKARABHA

Botanical name

Anacyclus pyrethrum DC.

Family

Asteraceae (Compositae)

Classical name

Ākarakarabha

Sanskrit names

Ākarakarabha, Akallaka

Regional names

Akarkara, Akarkarah (Hind., Beng., Mar.), Akiekaram (Tam.), Akkalkara (Mar.), Akarkaram (Tel.); Pellitory root (Eng.).

Description

An annual hairy plant, with marigold eye flowers, pale rose having yellowish centre. Stems glandular and hairy.

Roots long, finger-like thick, Cylindrical and tapering, having some hair-like rootlets. Externally the roots are rough, shrinkled surface, compact out bristle, Aromatic and with pungent taste. In chewing it gives a tingling sensation to tongue and lips, and causes excessive flow of saliva in mouth.

Flowering and fruiting time

Summer season and onwards.

Distribution

Arabic countries. It is imported from North Africa.

Chemical composition

It contains an essential oil, and pelliterene and pyrethrin.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṭu
Guṇa	: Rūkṣa, Tikṣṇa
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphavātaśāmaka

Properties and action

Karma	: Tivraṁśobhaka (jihvā)-lālāsṛāvaka Dīpana, Vedanāsthāpana, Śothahara, Jantughā, Uttejaka, Raktaśodhaka, kaphaghna, kaṅṭhya, Mūtrālpātvakara, Vājīkaraṇa, Kaṭupauṣṭika.
-------	--

Roga

- (a) Ābhyañtara : Apsmāra, Pakṣāghāta, Kampavāta
Āmavāta, Sāmānya nadīdaurbalya
Agnimāndya-pittakṣaya
Hṛddaurbalya, Śoṭha Phiraṅga
Kaphajanya Kāsa,
Kaṅṭhavikāra-svarabheda, Prameha
Dhvajabhāṅga, Daurbalya-sāmānya.
- (b) Bāhya : Pakṣāghāta-nādīdaurbalya
Dantakṛmi-dantāśūla-dantaroga
Mukharoga-kaṅṭhaśālūka, Vidradhi
Pīnasa-pratiśyāya, Napunsakatā.

Therapeutic uses

It is useful as attenuant, discutient, cordinal, stimulant, irritant and silagogue. It is used in apoplexy, gingivitis, headache, lethargy, pains, paralytic affections, rheumatism, typhus fever and other various complaints. It is chewed or locally applied (carefully) as masticatory in toothache; and the decoction of roots is used for gargle in cases of dental and throat affections or mouth cavity. The chewing of root piece is irritating effect on tongue resulting burning sensation, stimulation and excess salivary secretion, and later it affects stomach as the roots show specific effect by contact to mucous membrane, and also on skin rendering reddishness and blistering resulted by paste. In cases of pain, the

roots paste is carefully applied as an anodyne and also it is extenally applied for stimulation effect and mixed in formulations used for local application on male genital organs in sexual debility. It is also used as snuff in cases of catarrhal affections including coryza and similar nasal troubles of congestion and others.

The roots are internally used in syphilis, oedema and impotency. It is used in cardiac troubles or as cardiac stimulant. In low doses it is used as bitter tonic, stomachic and cholagogue. It is used in nervous debility and neuralgic disorders specially nervine complaints. It is specifically useful in sexual debility due to nervous weakness. The powder, decoction and in other forms including mixture of drugs are suitably used in various purposes for treatment. It is also considered that the roots may keep their potency for longer period, say it to about seven years.

For checking the signs and symptoms due to excessive use or abnormal effect of roots use, the drugs and dietetic items having pittaśāmaka properties are recommended and also discontinuation of use of effecting drug.

Parts used

Roots.

Dose

250 mg. (125-500 mg.) for oral use, and suitably for external use.

Formulations (Yoga)

Ākarakarabhādi cūrṇa, Ākarakarabhādi vaṭī,
Dantamañjana cūrṇa, Śvetakuṣṭhahara cūrṇa,
Ākarakarabhādi avaleha.

ĀKARAKARABHA (आकरकरभ)

रतिवर्द्धनार्थं आकरकरभादिवटी-

आकरकरभः शुण्ठी लवङ्गं कुङ्कुमं कणा ।
जातीफलं जातिपुष्पं चन्दनं कार्षिकं पृथक् ॥
चूर्णयेदहिफेनन्तु तत्र दद्यात्पलोन्मितम् ।
सर्वमेकीकृतं माषमात्रं क्षौद्रेण भक्षयेत् ॥

शुक्रस्तम्भकरं पुंसामिदमानन्दकारकम् ।
नारीणां प्रीतिजननं सेवेत निशि कामुकः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Vājīkaraṇādhikara, 72/76-78.

आकारकरभश्चैव कलकोऽथ ह्यकलकः ।
अकलकोष्णो वीर्येण बलकृत् कटुको मतः ॥
प्रतिश्यायं च शोथं च वातं चैव विनाशयेत् ।

Bhāvaprakāśa, Nighaṇṭu.

ĀKHUKARNĪ

Botanical name

Ipomoea reniformis Chois

Merremia emarginat Hallier.

Merremia gangetica (L.) Cal.

Family

Convolvulaceae

Classical name

Ākhukarnī-Mūṣākarnī

Regional names

Musakani, Chuhakani (Hind.), A janullar (Arab.), Goromusha (Pers.) Undirkaniparna (Beng.), Undirkani (Mar.), Vellikadiukirai (Tam.) Undurkani (Guj.) Toimmu-tatali, Chuhakani (Urdu), Perrattaikkiray (Tam.) (Tel.).

Sanskrit names

Ākhukānī, Mūṣākarnī, Bahukarnīkā, Bahupādīkā, Muṣīkaparnī, Mūṣīkāhvayā, Nygrodhī, Undukakarnīkā, Bhūdarībhavā, Bhūdarī, Vṛṣkarnī, Srāvaṇī, Kṛṣīkā, Mātā, Bhūmicarī.

Description

Stems numerous, filiform, creeping and rooting at the nodes and twining, clothed with scattered long soft hairs. Leaves 1.3-2.5 cm. broad, usually broader than long, reniform or ovate-cordate, obtuse, crenate, glabrous; petioles 6-25 cm. long, hairy. Flowers yellow, axillary, solitary or few (usually 2-3) together on a very short (often almost obsolete), peduncle; bracts small, ovate, acute, hoary; pedicels short; sepals slightly hairy on the back, strongly ciliate on the

margins, the 2 outer 4 mm. long, ovate mucronate, the 3 inner longer reaching nearly 6 mm. long, subquadrate, deeply divided at the apex into 2 truncate divericate lobes; corolla 6 mm. long, lobes of the limb acute. Capsules 4-5 mm. diam., subglobose, smooth, surrounded by the slightly enlarged ciliate sepals. Seeds glabrous, dark chestnut coloured. The strongly ciliate 2-lobed inner sepals are marked character.

Distribution

Bengal, Konkan, Deccan, Carnatic; Cylon-South Easr Asia and tropical Africa, Many parts in india in moist lands.

Flowering and fruiting time

Rainy season (plant)

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa : Kaṭu, Tikta, Kaṣāya.

Guṇa : Laghu, Tikṣṇa

Virya : Śīta

Vipāka : Kaṭu

Doṣakarma : Kaphapittanāśaka

Karma : Rasāyana, Sāraka, Kṛmighna,
Cakṣuṣya, Mūtrala,
Viśaghna-ākhuviṣa, Balya.

Roga : Viśa-ākhuviṣa (mūśaka)
Mūtraroga-mutrāghāta vṛkka-
bastiroga, Yonidoṣa, Kapharoga
Śūla, Jvara, Dourblāya, Dhātukṣaya
Netraroga-netrābhiṣyanda
Āmavāta-vātavedana, Ānāha.

Therapeutic uses

The plant is useful as bitter, pungent, acrid drug, and cooling, anthelmintic, laxative, carminative, and useful in diseases of the kidney, bladder, lungs and uterus. It used in pairs, fevers, urethral discharges, anaemia, fistula in ano, leucoderma; useful in diseases of the heart and the abdomen, and reduces tumours.

The plant is antipyretic and useful in headache, bronchitis, paralysis, inflammation, troubles of the nose, fevers due to enlargement of the liver.

The plant is diuretic and deobstruent and useful in related complaints. The juice is used in ear-bite and to drop into ear for curing ear sores. It is purgative in large doses.

Parts used

Whole plant, leaves, seeds.

Dose

3 to 5 gms. (dried)

7 to 12 gms. (fresh or green).

ĀKHUKARNĪ (आखुकर्णी)

- क. आखुकर्णी त्वाखुपर्णी पर्णिका भूदरीभवा ।
ख. आखुकर्णी कटुस्तिक्ता कषाया शीतला लघुः ।
विपाके कटुका मूत्रकफामयकृमिप्रणुत् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Guḍūcyādi varga, 308.

- अ. मूषकश्रवणी लीका भूदर्याखुश्रुतिच्छदा ।
वृषकर्णी चाखुकर्णी श्रावणी भूदराश्रया ॥
ब. आखुकर्णी कटुस्तिक्ता कषाया शीतला लघुः ।
विपाके कटुका हन्ति कफमूत्रामयकृमीन् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 764-765.

मूषिककर्णी (मूषाकर्णी)

- क. स्यादाखुकर्णी कृषिका द्रवन्ती
चित्रा सुकर्णोन्दुरुकर्णिका च ।
न्यग्रोधिका मूषिकनागकर्णी
स्याद्विश्विकर्णी बहुकर्णिका च ॥
माता भूमिचर चण्डा शम्बरी बहुपादिका ।
प्रत्यकश्रेणी वृषा चैव पुत्रश्रेण्यद्रिभूह्वया ॥
ख. आखुकर्णी कटूष्णा च कफपित्तहरा मदा ।
आनाहज्वरशूलार्तिनाशिनी पाचनी परा ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Guḍūcyādi varga, 66-68.

मूत्राघाते मूषाकर्णीमूलम्

पिष्ट्वाऽऽखुमूलमुष्णेन चारनालेन लिप्यते ।

बद्धमूत्रं निहन्त्याशु तथैव करभीभवम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Mūtraghātādhikāra, 36-59.

कृमिरोगे पिष्टकमूषिकाप्रयोगः

आखुपर्णीदलैः पिष्टः पिष्टकेन च पूषिकाम् ।

जग्ध्वा सौवीरकञ्चानुपिबेत् कृमिहरं परम् ॥

Cakradatta, Kṛimī cikitsā, 7-4.

AKṢOṬA

Botanical name

Juglans regia Linn.

Family

Juglandaceae

Classical name

Akṣoṭa

Sanskrit names

Akṣoṭa, Akṣoḍa, Karnarala, Śailapīlu, Rekhāpala, Madanābhafala, Śākhī, Parvatīya, Kīreṣṭa, Falasneha, Guḍāśaya, Karparāla, Svādumajjā, Pṛthagchada, Vṛtafala, Akhoṭa.

Regional Names

Akhroṭ, Akharoṭ (Hind.), Akharoṭ (Beng.), Akharoḍ (Guj., Mar.), Akhar (Kan.), Akaroṭ (Tam.), Akharotu (Tel.), Joukhu (Arab.), Gaukhu (Pers.); Walnut (Eng.)

Description

A large deciduous tree, leaves and bark aromatic; bark on old stems marked by parallel vertical furrows grey; young shoots tomentose. Leaves 15-38 cm. long, imparipinnate, more or less tomentose, white when young. Leaflets 5-9 the terminal largest, 7.5-20 by 3.8-10 cm., variable, from elliptic lanceolate, acute or acuminate, usually entire, glabrous or pubescent along the nerves beneath, the laterall leafless opposite or subopposite, sessile or subsessile. Male spikes lateral on the shoots of the previous year, 5-12.5cm. long, often 2 superposed to one leaf-scar; bracts stipitate stamens 10-20, apiculate. Female flowers 1-3; sessile, in a short terminal spikes; calyx-tube 6mm. long, ovoid,

densely tomentose; limb terminal spike; calyx-tube 4mm. long, ovoid, densely tomentose, limb minute, obscured, 4-toothed; petals green, linear-lanceolate, usually minute, Fruit a drupe 5 cm. long, ellipsoid, green, pericarp (composed in part of the calyx-tube) leathery, aromatic, nobtexternally distinctly 2-valved corresponding to the 2-carpels of whirh the ovary is composed rugose, internally incompletely divided by 2 coriaceous dissepiments, one separating the 2-cotyledons the other dividing them into 2-lobes.

Flowering and fruiting time

Spring to autumn seasons.

Distribution

It is found in the Himalayan regions, Temperate Himalayan, 5,000-10,000 ft. elevation; wild and cultivated; Khasia hills; cultivated, Ava hills, Baluchistan.

Chemical composition

Fruits contain oxlic acid and barium alkaloid. Kernel contains oil 40-45 percent, juglandin acid and ash.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Madhura
Guṇa	: Guru, Śnigdha
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Madhura
Doṣakarṃa	: Vātaśāmaka, Kaphapittavardhaka

Properties and Action

Karma	: Balya, Nāḍi-mastiṣka balya, Dīpana Bṛmhaṇa-snehana Varṇya-anulomana Kuṣṭhaghna-kaphanihsāraka Śoṭhahara-vṛṣya, Vedanāsthāpana
--------------	---

Roga

(a) Ābhyantara	: Pakṣāghāta, Ardita Vātavikara-vyādhi, Udaravikāra Kṛmi-sūla-gulma, Vibandha Āmātisāra-kṣaya-daurbalya-kṛṣata Phiraṅga-Dāha, Klaivya
----------------	---

- (b) Bāhya : Hṛddourbalya-hṛddāha
 Varṇavikāra, Carmavikāra,
 Śoṭha, Vātavyadhi, Dantaroga.

Therapeutic uses

The fruit is alterative and tonic and useful in general debility and sexual weakness as it is among the esteemed dry fruits used for general tonic attributed to their medicinal activity.

Generally the fruits are alterative; and the immature fruits are rich in ascorbic acid; the green buils separated from the fruits are anthelmintic and anti-syphilitic.

The bark is useful as astringent, anthelmintic, detergent and lactifuge; and the same are externally applied to skin diseases in the way of leaves uses. Bark powder is also used as dentrifice and mixed in tooth powder. Traditionally in rural areas the piece of bark is used to wash and cleaning the tooth but excess use is irritating due to presence of chemical substances.

The leaves are useful as astringent, alterative, tonic and detergent; their decoction is used specifically in scrufulous sores, herpes, eczema, syphilis and intestinal worms.

The fruit kernel is commonly used as a potent dry fruit possessing general tonic, alterative and nervine tonic effect and also a good brain tonic and tonning up sexual function in males and as cardiac tonic. Kernel is used in heartburn, cardiac troubles, colic and dysentery. The kernels are fried and given in cough and asthma. It is used in various rheumatic and nervine complaints.

The oil expressed and obtained from kernels is a mild laxative, cholagogue and anthelmintic; and it is used specifically in cases of tapeworms. The oil is also used as a dressing medicine for skin diseases of the leprous type.

Part used

Fruit-kernels; Bark, Leaves, kernel oil.

Dose

5-10 gms. or suitable (kernel); Edible dry fruit.

AKṢOTA (अक्षोट)

पीलुः शैलभवोऽक्षोटः कर्परालश्च कीर्त्तितः ।
अक्षोटकोपि वातादसदृशः कफपिद्यत्तकृत् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Āmrādiphala varga, 129.

- क. आक्षोडकः कन्दरालः फलस्नेहो गुडाशयः ।
पार्वतीयो वृत्तफलः स्वादुमज्जा पृथुच्छदः ॥
- ख. अक्षोडकं सरं स्निग्धं मधुरं रसपाकयोः ।
गुरूष्णं बृंहणं वृष्यं बल्य विष्टम्भि रोचनम् ॥
हृद्यं क्षयास्त्रपवनदाहघ्नं कफपित्तलम् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 374-375.

अक्षोटः

अक्षोटः पार्वतीयश्च फलस्नेहो गुडाशयः ।
कीरेष्टः कन्दरालश्चमधुमज्जा वृहच्छदः ॥

अक्षोटगुणाः

अक्षोटो मधुरो बल्यो स्निग्धोष्णो वातपित्तजित् ।
रक्तदोषप्रशमनः शीतलः कफकोपनः ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Āmrādi varga, 81-82.

ALĀBŪ

Botanical name : Cucurhita lagrenaria Linn.

Family : Cucurbitaceae

Classical name : Alābū

Sanskrit names : Alābū, Tumbī

Regional names

Loukī, Loukā, Kaddū (Hind.) Lau, Kidu (Beng.),
Dudha-bhopall (Mar.), Dudhi (Guj.), Choppal (Guj.),
Hulubb, Kurul (Arab.), Daraj, Kadue-siri, Khiyar Kadu
(Pers.); White Pumpkin (Eng.).

Description

A climbing annual; stems patently soft-pubescent, Leaves cordate-orbicular, entire or 5 to 7-lobed, acute, soft-pubescent, dentate. Flowers male and female. Fruit glabrescent on maturity. Plant is common climber among vegetables.

Flowering and fruiting

Rainy season and onwards; other seasons.

Kinds and varieties

Mainly two kinds are found-wild and cultivated as vanya and grāmya of classical convention which also mentions other kinds such as madhura and kaṭu having two varieties of madhura in size (ākāra) viz. dīrgha and vartula, long and round respectively. in respect of their fruits (Kaṭu variety comes under Ikṣvāku-separately and madhura is mainly meant in context).

Distribution

Plant is commonly cultivated throughout India.

Some other kinds mentioned in classical texts (nighanṭu)-Rājālabu, Kumbhatumbī-alābūbheda, Kṣīratumbīu-alābū bheda, Kaṭutumbī, Miṣṭa-madhurālabū and Kaṭutumbī-ikṣvāku.

Chemical composition

Green and fresh fruit contains 90.26 percent water content. Dried fruit contains other extract 1.24 percent, fibrous matter 18.05 percent, ash 4.56 percent and other substances; and also some saponins and fatty acids are present.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Madhura
Guṇā	: Guru, Snigdha, Sara
Vīrya	: Śīta
Vipāka	: Madhura
Doṣakarma	: Vātapaittaśāmaka

Action and Properties

Karma	: Nidrājanana Medhya-maṣṭiskaśāmaka, Rocana Tṛṣṇānigrahaṇa-pittaśāmaka Recana-sāraka, Hṛdayabalya Raktastambhana, Kaphanihsāraka, Sandhānīya, Mūtrajanana Śukravardhaka, Bṛnhaṇa, Jvarahara Dāhpraśamana, Vṛṣya Dhātupuṣṭivivardhana-balya
-------	--

Garbhapoṣaka, Arśoghna
Kṛmighna, Śramahara-santarpaṇa.

Roga

- (a) Ābhyantara : Anidrā-nidranāśa
Mastiṣkodvega-mānsikadaurbalya
Unmāda, Tṛṣṇā-dāha-śrama-klama
Arocaka-aruci-āmāśayavikāra
Kāmalā, Hṛdroga-raktapitta
Kāsa-urahkṣata-yakṣmā
Mūtrakṛcha-mutradāha-pūyameha
Vīryavikāra-śukradaurbalya
Dhātukṣaya-sāmānya daurbalya
Jvara-jvarātisāra-jirṇajvara, Arśa, Viṣa.
- (b) Bāhya : Madātyaya-śīraḥśūla-unmāda
Sannipātajvara
Mastiṣka-mānasika-śirovikāra
Nidrānāśa-anidrā.

Therapeutic uses

It is useful in anorexia jaundice, fatigue, insomnia, headache, tension, general debility, spermatorrhoea, sexual weakness and mental complaints. It is used in cough, phthisis, chest complaints, haemorrhage, heart troubles, haemorrhoids, scanty urine with burning sensation, ciliary affections, and fever. It is specially given in patients of fever and other diseases under recovery and debility; as it is esteemed a wholesome vegetable (or pathyaśāka-phala) of fruits recommended in various diseases particularly caused by pitta and vāta. Besides the fruits the seeds and leaves in various forms are administered in different ailing conditions; and also applied locally under external medicinal uses including the seeds oil, fruit pulp and seeds paste. Leaves expressed juice is used in snuff as juice is useful in cases of jaundice. Fruits and only seeds are orally given in seminal weakness or semen complaints, debility and excess thirst and burning sensation in whole body. It is one of the common and popular domestic fruit vegetables.

Parts used

Fruits, seeds, leaves.

Formulation

Alābū Bija Taila (Rogan magj Tuklm Kadduyunami).

Dose

Seeds powder 3-5 gms. Fruit juice-10-15 gms. Leaves juice 3-6 grms.

ALĀBŪ (अलाबू)**अलाबू-तुम्बीभेदाः**

क. अलाबू कथिता तुम्बी द्विधा दीर्घा च वर्तुला ।

मधुरालाबू

ख. मिष्टतुम्बीफलं हृद्यं पित्तश्लेष्मापहं गुरु ।
वृष्यं रुचिकरं प्रोक्तं धातुपुष्टिविवर्धनम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Śāka varga, 57-58.

कटुतुम्बी

इक्ष्वाकुः कटुतुम्बी स्यात्सा तुम्बी च महाफला ।
कटुतुम्बी हिमा हृद्या पित्तकासविषापहा ।
तिक्ता कटुर्विपाके च वातपित्तज्वरान्तकृत् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Śāka varga, 58-59.

राजालाबु

राजालाबुर्महातुम्बी मधुरालाबुनी मता ।
शाकालाबुस्तुम्बकः स्याद् भक्षालाबुरलाबुनी ॥

राजालाबुगुणाः

राजालाबु हिमं रूक्षं वृष्यं विष्टम्भि वातलम् ।
स्वादुपाकरसं भेदि कफपित्रहरं गुरु ॥

Kāiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 537-538.

तुम्बीशाकम्

तद्वत् श्लेष्मकरं तुम्बशाकं गुरु विषापहम् ।
कृमिश्रमहरं ग्राहि हिमं वैशद्यनाशनम् ॥

अलाबुनलिका (वृन्त)

अलाबुनालिका गुर्वी मधुरा पित्तनाशिनी ।
वातश्लेष्मकरी स्निग्धा शीतला मलभेदिनी ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 540.

कुम्भतुम्बी-अलाबूभेदः

- अ. गोरक्षतुम्बी गोरक्षी नवालाम्बुर्घटाभिधा ।
कुम्भालाम्बुर्घटालम्बुः कुम्भतुम्बी च सप्तधा ॥
- ब. कुम्भतुम्बी समधुरा शिशिरा पित्तहारिणी ।
गुरुः सन्तर्पणी रुच्या वीर्यपुष्टिबलप्रदा ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Mūlakādi varga, 162-163.

क्षीरतुम्बी-अलाबूभेदः

- क. क्षीरतुम्बी दुग्धतुम्बी दीर्घवृत्तफलामिधा ।
इक्ष्वाकुः क्षत्रियवरा दीर्घबीजा महाफला ॥
क्षीरिणी दुग्धबीजा च दन्तबीजा पयस्विनी ।
महाबल्ली ह्यलाम्बुजः श्रमघ्नी शरभूमिता ॥
- ख. तुम्बी सुमधुरा स्निग्धा पित्तघ्नी गर्भपोषकृत् ।
वृष्या वातप्रदा चैव बलपुष्टि विवर्धनी ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu Mūlakādi varga, 164-166.

भूतुम्बी

भूतुम्बी नागतुम्बी च शक्रचापसमुद्भवा ।
वल्मीकसम्भवा देवी दिव्यतुम्बी षडाह्वया ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Mūlakādi varga, 167-168.

इक्ष्वाकुः

‘कासश्वासच्छर्हिहरा विषर्त्ति कफकर्षिते ।
इक्ष्वाकुः वमनेशस्ता..... ॥’

Dhānvantari Nighaṇṭu.

बालानां दन्तरोगे

‘कट्वलाब्वाः समादाय मूलं गले योजितं दन्तरोगापहं स्याच्छिशोः ।’

Rāja Mārtaṇḍa.

योनिदोषे

‘कटुकालाबुसंसिद्धं तैलमभ्यञ्जनाद्भवेत् ।
योनिदोषहरं नार्याः गर्भमुत्पादयेदपि ॥’

Vaidya Manoramā.

कर्णरोगे

‘तुम्बीरसं च धार्येत कर्णरोगे प्रशस्यते ।’

Harita Saṁhitā, Cikitsā 43.

शोथे

लोमशा कटुतुम्बी च काञ्जिकेन जलेन वा ।
निष्क्राथ्य चापि संस्वेदस्तर्यैवोष्णेन तेन च ॥

Harita Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 26.

अर्शःसु

तुम्बीबीजं सैद्धिदन्तु काञ्जिपिष्टं गुडीत्रयम् ।
अर्शोहरं गुहस्यं स्याद् दधि माहिषमश्नतः ॥

Cakradatta.

गलगण्डे

तिक्तालाबुफले पक्वे सप्ताहामुषितं जलम् ।
मद्यं वा गलगण्डघ्नं पानात् पथ्यानुसेवितः ॥

Cakradatta, 41-8.

अश्मर्याम्

‘तिक्तालाबुरसः क्षारः सितायुक्तोऽश्मरीहरः ।’

Cakradatta.

अश्मर्याम्

नृत्यकुण्डलबीजानां चूर्णं माक्षिकसंयुतम् ।
अविक्षीरेण सप्ताहं पीतमश्मरीपातनम् ॥

‘तुम्बीबीजानं चूर्णं माक्षिकान्वितमविक्षीरेण सप्ताहं पीतमश्मरीपातनम् ।’

Aṣṭāṅga, Hṛdaya, Cikitsā 11.

गलगण्डे

तिक्तालाबुफले पक्वे सप्ताहमुषितं जलम् ।
सद्यः स्याद्गलगण्डघ्नं पानात् पथ्यान्नसेविनाम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Madhyakhaṇḍa, 44-31.

नाडीव्रणे कटुतुम्बीतैलम्

मेषरोममसीतुम्ब्या कटुतैलं विपाचितम् ।
नाडीव्रणं चिरोद्भूतं जयेत्तु तूलसङ्गमात् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Madhyakhaṇḍa, 49-25.

प्रदरे

अलाबुफलचूर्णस्य शर्करासहितस्य च ।

मधुना मोदकं कृत्वा खादेत्प्रदरशान्तये ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Strīrogādhikāra, 68-17.

जीर्णगलगण्डचिकित्सायां तुम्बीतैलम्-

Cakradatta, 41/14-15.

ĀMALAKĪ

Botanical name : *Emblica officinalis* Gaertn.

Family : Euphorbiaceae

Classical name : Āmalakī-Dhātrī

Sanskrit names : Āmalakī, Dhātrī, Vayasthā

Regional names

Anwla, Amla, Aonla (Hind.), Amla, Amalaki (Beng.), Anvla (Mar., Guj.), Nillikal (Tam.), Usharinki (Tel.), Amlaj, Amla (Peors.); Emblic Myrobalan, Indian Gooseberry (English).

Description

A medium-sized deciduous tree, with usually a crooked trunk and bark light grey or greenish, peeling off in small irregular patches. Branchlets of 10-20 cm. stipules minute. Bark light grey, red inside, wood red, hard close grained. Leaves small very closely set in pinnate form giving a feathery appearance, sub-sessile, 1-3 cm. linear, oblong, acute., closet over and overlapping. Flowers monoecious, greenish, yellow in axillary clusters; male flowers many, slightly, pedicellate, female flowers few. Fruits 1.5 to 2.5 cm. in diameter, fleshy roundish, rather indistinctly marked with six lobes or ridges; with seeds six angular, and hard.

Fruits

The outer most is the epidermis consisting of rectangular cells and a cuticular outer covering with several small openings. Mesocarp is composed of spherical to oblong cells; peripheral cells smaller and cells towards inner side larger; radial bands present in mesocarp. The lines ac-

count for the outer six vertical ribs present in the fruit surface. In the mesocarp, starch absent, tannin and vascular bundles present. Vascular bundles are seen arranged towards the epicarp. The features of fresh and dried stage of fruits may differ.

Fresh Emblic Myrobalans

They are globular, fleshy, smooth, six-striated of a yellowish-green colour, and sometimes as long as walnut. They contain an obovate-obtusely triangular, 6-celled nut; and each cell of which contains two triangular seeds. The taste of fresh fruit pulp is acid, astringent and somewhat acrid.

Dry Emblic Myrobalans

The dried fruits are of the size of a cobnut, sub-hexagonal, wrinkled, and of a grey-black colour, if they are collected from plants in immature stage.

Flowering and fruting time

Autumn to spring season; February-March and other months.

Kinds and varieties

Wild and cultivated varieties are vanya and grāmya respectively. Wild fruits are small, hard ostony, while cultivated fruits are bigger, fleshy and smooth. Various varieties from locality, production and quality (also purpose of uses) points of view.

Distribution

It is found throughout India; common in the forest mixed deciduous of India ascending to 1350 meters in hilly regions. It is often planted in gardens, and cultivated on small or large scale being under cultivated practices suiting to certain regions, for the commercial fruit produces. Trees occur commonly in tropical and subtropical regions in country extending various States.

Chemical composition

Fruits is a rich source of Vitamin C. Seeds contain fixed oil, phosphatides and an essential oil. Fruit, leaves and bark are rich in tanning fruits contain gallic acid, tanic acid, resinous matter, glucose, albumin, cellulose and minerals

specially calcium, other than good content of Vit. C and other substances.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Pancarasa (alavaṇā) Amla (pradhānarasa)
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa, Śīta
Vīrya	: Śīta
Vipāka	: Madhura
Doṣakarma	: Tridoṣahara, Pittāśāmaka.

Action and properties

Karma :	Rasāyana-vayahsthāpana Sarvadoṣahara Medhya-nāḍi-indriya-maṣṭiṣkabalya Rocana-dīpana-anulomana Stambhana-sransana(ubhaya- mātrābhedāt) yakṛduttejaka-plihahitā Hṛdya-śonitāshāpana-śothahara Kaphaghna-kāsahara Raktastambhaka-rakta-prasādana Vṛṣya-vaḥkaraṇa-grahasthāpana Mūtrala-mehahara Kuṣṭhaghna-kaṇḍughna-tvacya Jvaraghna-dāhapraśamana-tṛṣāhara Cakṣuṣya-keśya, Sukrakara Sramahara-chardighna, Rakta-pittaśāmaka, Sūlapraśamana Sandhāniya-balavibardhana-jīvanīya.
---------	---

Roga

(a) Ābhyantara	: Mastiṣkadaurbalya-nāḍidaurbalya Indriyadaurbalya-dṛṣṭimāndya Udararoga-arśa-udāvarta-vibandha Aruci-agnimāndya-amlapitta-gulma Yakṛta-plihavikāra-pāṇḍu Hṛdroga-raktavikāra-raktapitta Vamana-atisāra-annadravaśūla Kāsa-svāsa-yakṣma Prameha-śukrameha-pradara-somaroga
----------------	--

- Mutrakṛcha-paittika prameha
 Garbhāśaya-daurbalya-vikāra-yonidaha
 Jvaraalttika-jīrṇa, javra
 Daurbalya-kṣaya-soṣa
 Trṣṇā-dāha-pittavikāra-śoṭha.
 (b) Bāhya : Netraroga, Keśavikāra-siroroga
 Tvagvikāra.

Therapeutic uses

It is useful as an astringent, cardiac tonic, diuretic, laxative, livertonic, refrigerant, stomachic, restorative, alterative, general tonic, aphrodisiac, antipyretic, antidermatosis, hairtonic, nervine-brain tonic, anti-inflammatory and digestive medicine. It is used in anaemia, hyperacidity, peptic ulcer, dyspepsia, anorexia, diarrhoea, dysentery, dyspepsia, haemorrhage, eyes inflammation, irritability of bladder, anomalies of urine, leucorrhoea, spermatorrhea, epistaxis, menorrhagia and discharge of blood from uterus, jaundice, weakness of memory, nervine debility, oedema, liver complaints, cough, asthma and pthisis.

Fruits are most useful part of plant and used medicinally in various diseases in different forms. Fruits being rich source of Vitamin C, they are widely used therapeutically for supplementing Vitamin C and other contents. It is one of the most popular, common and highly reputed drugs of indigenous medicine, and the fruits well known and domestically used commonly as edible, dietic and home remedy esteemed for its high medicinal potentials with preventive, restorative and curative utility. It carries prominence in pharmacuetics of Indian medicine, herbal cosmetics and allied field of utilisation.

The Juice of fresh fruits is given as tonic, refrigerant and antiscorbutic, diuretic, laxative and antibilious remedy. The conserve, syrup, murabba (or acāra and catanī etc.) and various other preparations of fresh fruits are used. Juice with honey as an anthelmintic drug; and juice is given in fever, burning sensation, overthirst, dyspepsia and other complaints of digestive system. In cases of scanty urine and

other anomalies urine and semen the juice is orally given and also in haemorrhage, scurvy, constipation and various haemorrhagic disorders. Juice is useful as an eyedrop in eye troubles.

The dried fruits in the form of powder, decoction of infusion, and other forms are internally used in various complaints; and the paste or wash and other forms are externally applied in different diseases; and also administered suitably in various ailments with adjuvants or vehicles.

Powder of fruits is effective remedy in hyperacidity, peptic ulcer, gastric troubles, blood impurities, haemorrhagic troubles and intestinal complaints specially diarrhoea and dysentery. It is used in diabetes, general debility and as nervine tonic. In cough, asthma, consumption, leucorrhoea, epitaxis and cardiac complaints, the powder with honey or other suitable vehicles (or anupāna) and also with other drug, is internally useful.

Generally the dried fruits are put in water for a night or so, and its water content is used as a popular and useful hair wash. The paste is applied in diseases of head, hair and brain; and skin complaints, ophthalmia and other complaints.

The infusion of seeds is used in fever, bilious affections, nausea and diabetes. An ointment made of the burnt seeds with some blend oil is applied to scabies, itchy and similar skin affections. Seeds are recommended in cases of leucorrhoea and other complaints.

Parts used : Fruits.

Dose

3-6 gms. powder and 5-10 gms. fine powder or dried fruits (stoneless)

Groups (Gaṇa)

Triphalā, Parūṣakādīgana (Suśruta.), Vayaḥsthāpana, Virecanopaga (Caraka.)

Formulations

Cyavanaprāśa, Brāhmarasāyana, Dhātrīlauha, Dhataī Rasayāna, Dhātryavaleha, Dhātryariṣṭa, Āmalakāvaleha, Āmalakāghṛtam, Dhātrīphalādīpānakam, Āmalakacūrṇam, Dhātripralepa, Caturāṅgāvaleha, Dhātrīrasādiyoga.

ĀMALAKĪ (आमलकी)

तद्वद् धात्री स्वेदमेदोहराम्ला शुक्रला हिमा ।
भग्नसंधानकृत् केश्या पिपासाकफपित्तहत् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 238.

फलमज्जा

तन्मज्जा तुवरः स्वादुस्तृच्छर्घनिलपित्तहा ।

फलम्

हन्ति वातं तदम्लत्वात् पित्तं माधुर्यशैत्यतः ॥
कफं रूक्षकषायत्वात् फलेभ्योऽभ्यधिकं मतम् ।
चक्षुष्यं सर्वदोषघ्नं वृष्यमामलकी फलम् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 239-240.

आमलकं कषायाम्लं मधुरं शिशिरं लघु ।
दाहपित्तवमीमेहे शोफघ्नं च रसायनम् ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Āmrādi varga, 158.

कटुमधुरकषायं किञ्चिदम्लं कफघ्नं
रुचिकरमतिशीतं हन्ति पित्तास्रतापम् ।
श्रमवमनविबन्धाध्मानविष्टम्भदोष—
प्रशमनममृताभं चामलक्याः फलं स्यात् ॥

Raja Nighaṇṭu, Āmrādi varga, 159.

हरीतकीसमं धात्री फलं किन्तु विशेषतः ।
रक्तपित्तप्रमेहघ्नं परं वृष्यं रसायनम् ॥

Bhāvaṇṭu, Haritakyadi varga, 39.

रसदोषप्रभावम्

हन्ति वातं तदम्लत्वात्पित्तं माधुर्यशैत्यतः ।
कफं रूक्षकषायत्वात्फलं धात्र्यास्त्रिदोषजित् ॥

Bhavaṇṭu, Haritakyadi varga, 40.

वृष्यामलकचूर्णम्

एषमामलकं चूर्णं स्वरसेनैव भावितम् ।
शर्करामधुसर्पिर्भिर्युक्ते लीढ्वा पयः पिबेत् ॥

एतेनाशीतिवर्षोऽपि युवेव परिहृष्यते ।

Cakradatta, Vṛsyādhikāra, 66-4.

धात्रीचूर्णरसायनम्

धात्रीचूर्णस्य कंसं स्वरसपरिगतं क्षौद्रसार्पिः समांशं,
कृष्णा मानीसिताष्टप्रसृतभुतमिदं स्थापितं भस्मराशौ ।
वर्षान्ते तत् समश्नन् भवति विपलितो रूपवर्णप्रभावै—
निर्व्याधिबुद्धिमेधास्मृतिबलवचनस्थैर्यसर्षपसत्वैरुपेतः ॥

Cakradatta, Rasāyanādikāra, 23.

फलानुसार्येणमज्जागुणानि (सामान्य सिद्धान्त)

यस्य यस्य फलस्येह वीर्यं भवति यादृशम् ।
तस्य तस्यैव वीर्येण मज्जानमपि निर्दिशेत् ॥

Bhāvaparakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Haritakyādi varga. 47.

‘विद्यादामलके सर्वान् रसान् लवणवर्जिताम् ।’

Caraka, Sūtra. 27.

तान् गुणांस्तानि कर्माणि विद्यादामलकीष्वपि ।
यान्युक्तानि हरीतक्या वीर्यस्य तु विपर्ययः ॥

Caraka, Cikitsa. 3.

अम्लं समुधरं तिक्तं कषायं कटुकं रसम् ।
चक्षुष्यं सर्वदोषघ्नं वृष्यमामलकी फलम् ॥
हन्ति वातं तदम्लत्वासितं माधुर्यशैत्यतः ।
कफं रूक्षकषायत्वात्फलेभ्योऽभ्यधिकं च यत् ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 46.

हरीतकीसमगुणाः

अतश्चामृतकल्यानि विद्यात् कर्म भिरीदृशैः ।
हरीतकीनां शस्यानि भिषगामलकस्य च ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, cikitsā. 1-1/37.

तान् गुणांस्तानि कर्माणि विद्यादामलकीवपि
तान्युक्तानि हरीतक्या वीर्यस्य तु विपर्ययः ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, cikitsā, 1-1/37.

रसायने आमलकचूर्णम्

‘आमलकचूर्णाढकमेकविंशतिरात्रमामलकस्वरसपरिपीतं

मधुघृताढकभ्यां द्वाभ्यामेकीकृतमष्टभाग पिप्पलीकं शर्कराचूर्ण-
चतुर्भागसंप्रयुक्तं घृढतभाजनस्य प्रावृषि भस्मरात्रौ निदध्यात्;
तद्वर्षान्ते सात्स्यपथ्याशी प्रयोजयेत्; अस्य प्रयोगाद्वर्ष-
शतमजरमायुस्तिष्ठतीति समानं पूर्वेण ।'

Caraka Samhitā, cikitsā, 1-1/8.

‘आमलक वयःस्थापनानम् (श्रेष्ठम्) ।’

Carakasamhitā. Sūtra.

नेत्ररोगे नवीनधात्रीफलस्वरसाश्च्योतनप्रयोगः

तरुस्थविद्धामलकरसः सर्वाक्षिरोगनुत् ।
पुराणं सर्वथा सर्पिः सर्वनेत्रामयापहम् ॥

Cakradatta, Netraroga Cikitsā, 59-39.

कफज (श्वेत) प्रदररोगे धात्रीप्रयोगः —

‘जलेनामलकाबीजकल्कं वा ससितामधु ।
.....आमलकया मधुद्रवम् ॥’

Cakradatta, Asygdara cikitsā, 3-4

नासागतरक्तपित्ते

नासाप्रवृत्तरुधिरं घृतभ्रष्टं श्लयणपिष्टमामलकम् ।
सेतुरिव तोयवेगं रुणाद्धि मूर्हेन प्रलेपेत् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Raktapittadhikāra, 8-46.

अम्लपित्ते

हन्त्यम्लपित्तवमनारुचिदाहमोहखालित्यमोहशिशिरव्रणशुक्रदोषान् ।
भुक्त्वा नरः सततमामलकी रसेन वृद्धोऽप्यनेन हि भवेत्तरुणो रिरंसुः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Amalpitādihikāra, 10-19.

अन्नद्रवशूले

धात्रीफलभवं चूर्णमयश्चूर्णं समन्वितम् ।
यष्टीचूर्णेन वा युक्तं लिह्यात्क्षौद्रेण तद्दे ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Śūladhikāra, 30-73.

रक्तगुल्मे धात्रीरसम्

‘पीतो धात्रीरसो मरिचैश्चास्त्रगुल्मनुत् ।’

Bhāvaprakāśa, Gulmādhikāra, 32-48.

मूत्रकृच्छ्रे धात्रीरसम्

‘गुडाममलकं वृष्यं श्रमघ्नं तर्पणं प्रियम् ।
पित्तासृग्दाहशूलघ्नं मूत्रकृच्छ्रे निवारनम् ।’

Bhāraprakāśa, Mūtryacṣhashikāra, 35-44.

चर्मदले

सलिलेन तु शुष्काणि घृष्ट्वा धात्रीफलान्घ्न ।
कराभ्यां सुखमाप्नोति नरश्चर्म दलान्वितः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Kuṣṭharogādihikāra, 54-132.

सोमरोगे

जलेनामलकीबीजकल्कं समधुशर्करम् ।
पिबेद्दिनत्रयेणैव श्वेतप्रदरनाशनम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Somarogādihikāra, 69-10.

योनिदाहे

‘धात्रीरसं सितायुक्तं योनिदाहे पिबेत्सदा ।’

Bhāvaprakāśa, Yonirogādihikāra, 70-41.

दाहशान्त्यर्थं धात्रीप्रलेपः

‘घृतभृष्टाऽम्लपिष्टा धात्री लेपाच्च दाहनुत् ।’

Cakradatta, Jvara cikitsā, 1-94.

त्रिदोषजन्यवमने धात्रीफलादिपानकम् ।

Cakradatta, Chardi cikitsā, 15-21.

परिणामशूलचिकित्सायां धात्रीलौहम् ।

Cakradatta, 27/60-65.

प्रबलवमने धात्रीरसादियोगः

धात्र्या रसः कपित्थस्य पिप्पलीमरिचान्वितः ।

क्षौद्रेण युक्तः शमयेल्लेहोऽयं छर्दिमुल्बणम् ॥

Cakradatta, Chardi cikitsā, 15-20.

रसायने आमलकघृतम्

बृहच्छरीरं गिरिसारसारं स्थिरेन्द्रियं यातिबलेन्द्रियं च ।

अधृष्यमन्यैरतिकान्तरूपं प्रशस्तिपूजासुखचित्तभाक् च ।

बलं महद्वर्णविशुद्धिरस्या स्वरो घनौपस्तनितानुकारी ।

भवत्यपत्यं विपुलं स्थिरं च समश्रतो योगमिमं नरस्य ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 1-1/5-6.

शूलचिकित्सायां धात्री लौहम्

Cakradatta, 26/51-58.

रसायने आमलकावलेहः

‘आमलकसहस्रं पिप्पली सहस्रं संप्रयुक्तं पलाशतरुणक्षारो-
दकोत्तरं तिष्ठेत्, तदनुगतक्षारोदकमनात् शुष्कमनास्थि
चूर्णकृतं चतुर्शुणाभ्यां मधुसर्पिभ्यां संनीय शर्कराचूर्ण-
चतुर्भागसंप्रयुक्तं घृतभाजनस्थं षष्मासान् स्थापयेदन्तभूमेः ।’

‘तस्योत्तरकालमग्निबलसमां मात्रां खादेत्, पौर्वाहिकः प्रयोगो
नापराह्निकः सात्त्यापेक्षाहारविधिः । अस्य प्रयोगाद्वर्षशतमजरं वयस्तिष्ठतीति
समानं पूर्वेण ।’

Caraka Samhitā, cikitsā, 1-1/7.

पाण्डुरोगे धात्र्यवलेहः, पाण्डुरोगे धात्र्यरिष्टः

Caraka Samhitā, cikitsā, 16-100/101; 111/114.

श्वेतप्रदरे

‘जलेनामलकीबीजं कल्कं वा ससितामधुम् ।’

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 30-116.

ज्वरे (श्वास-कास-मूर्च्छा-अरुचिसहित) चतुरङ्गावलेहः

स्विन्नामलकं पिष्ट्वा द्राक्षया सह मेलयेत् ।
विश्वभेषजसंयुक्तं मधुना सह लेहयेत् ।
तेनास्य शाम्यति श्वासः कासो मूर्च्छारुचिस्तथा ॥

इन्द्रलुप्ते धात्र्यादिलेपः

धात्र्याम्रमज्जलेपात् स्यात् स्थिरता स्निग्धकेशता ।
इन्द्रलुप्ते शिरां विद्ध्वा शिलाकाशीसतुत्थकैः ॥

Cakradatta, 55-95.

अतिसारे आमलकालवालम्

कृत्वाऽऽलवालं सुदृढं पिष्टैरामलकैर्भिषक् ।
आर्द्रकस्य रसेनाशु पूरयेन्नाभिमण्डलम् ॥
नदीवेगोपमं घोरं प्रबृद्धं दुर्द्धरं नृणाम् ।

सद्योऽतीसारमजयं नाशयत्येष योगराट् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Jvarādhikāra, 1-40/41.

प्रमेहरोगे धात्रीस्वरसः

‘सर्वमेहहरो धात्र्या रसः क्षौद्रनिशायुतः ।’

Cakradatta, 35-21.

AMARAVALLĪ

Botanical name : *Cuscuta reflexa* Roxb.

Family

Convulvaceae (also a separate family Cuscutaceae)

Classical name : Amaravallī-Ākāśavallī

Sanskrit Names

Amaravallī, Amaravallārī, Akāśavallī, Khavallī, Vyomavallī, Duḥsparśā, Avantī, Asparśā.

Regional name

Akasabel, Amarabel (Hind.), Svarnalatā (Beng.), Nirmuli (Mar.), Akassbel (Guj.), Aloklatā (Beng.), Salim purmonilu (Tel.), Aftimun Hindi (Pers.), Dodder (Eng.).

Description

A leafless twining parasite plant. Stems brown or yellow (generally yellow) or greenish yellow, .o. 1-0.2 cm. across (-0.3 cm.) long, branching, branches fleshy, stout, forming dense, yellow masses on the host covering, by its net of thread-like stems and branches. Flowers sessile or very shortly pedicelled, in clusters, arranged in racemes; fleshy solitary or in clusters; short stalked, curved, often warty; bracts ovate-suborbicular, small, fleshy; corolla white, lobes triangular, bent back, corolla whitish, lobes ovate-triangular, obtuse reflexed; calyx segments ovate-oblong, obtuse, verrucose on the back; corolla-scales fimbriate; ovary fleshy; stigmas oblong. Capsule globose; seeds 2-4 black, large in small fruits.

Flowering and fruiting time

Spring to summer seasons.

Distribution

Throughout India.

Chemical composition

Plant contains quercetin, resin and cuscutin chemical substances.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Tikta, Kaṣāya.
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa, Picṇhila.
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphapittaśāmaka.

Properties and action

Karma	: Dīpana-Pācana-Grāhī, Yakṛduttejaka, Kṛmighna, Hṛdya Pittarecaka (seeds), Raktaśodhaka Jvaraghna, Kaṭupausthika, Mūrala, Svedajanana, Balya, Rasāyana, Vṛṣya.
--------------	--

Roga :

- (a) Ābhyaantara : Agnimāndya-ajīrṇa, Grahaṇi
Yakṛdvikāra, Kṛmi, Pittādhiḱya
Vibandha, Raktavikāra, Āmavāta
Upadamśa, Mūtrakṛccha
Carmavikāra, Jirṇajvara
Daurbalya-dhātukṣaya, Hṛdvikāra
Śukravikāra-napunsakatā.
- (b) Bāhya : Tivravedanāyuktavikāra, Keśaroga
Netrābhiṣyanda, Vedanāsthāpna
Śothahara, Keśya, Kaṇḍughna-tvacya.

Therapeutic uses

Plant is useful as alterative, purgative, astringent and anthelmintic. The decoction of plant mixed with aromatics is used in protracted fevers, flatulence, induration of liver, bilious disorders and diarrhoea. The infusion prepared of plant is used for washing sores, itch and scabies.

Expressed juice of plant is given in dyspepsia, anorexia flatulence, liver complaints, worms and scanty urine. It is also useful in bilious affections. Seeds are given in constipation and biliary excessive conditions.

The juice of the plant is useful as an eye drop recommended in conjunctivitis. The plant is externally applied to the acute painful organs, and also in hair diseases.

The decoction of plant is used in chronic fever, urinary complaints (difficult or painful micturition), gonorrhoea and seminal disorders. Plant is useful in consumption, pthisis and general debility, and used as restorative and aphrodisiac herb.

Parts used : Whole plant, seeds.

Dose : Seeds powder 1-3 gms. plant juice 6-12 gms.

AMARAVALLĪ (अमरवल्ली)

क. आकाशवल्ली तु बुधैः कथिताऽमरवल्लरी ॥

ख. खवल्ली ग्राहिणी तिक्ता पिच्छिलाऽक्ष्यामयापहा ।

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Gudūcyādi varga, 258-259.

आकाशवल्ली

आकाशवल्ली खवल्ली दुःस्पर्शा व्योमवल्लिका ॥

अवन्ती ग्राहिणी तिक्ता पिच्छिलाऽक्ष्यामयापहा ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 991/992.

खवल्ली-अमरवल्ली

अ. खवल्याकाशवल्ली स्यादस्पर्शा व्योमवल्लिका ।

आकाशनामपूर्वा सा वल्लीपर्यायगा स्मृता ॥

ब. आकाशवल्ली कटुका मधुरा पित्तनाशिनी ।

वृष्या रसायनी बल्या दिव्यौषधि परा स्मृता ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Gudūcyādi varga, 54-55.

AMLAVETASA

Botanical name

Garcinia pedunculata Roxb.

Garcinia indica Choiss.

Citrus decumara.

Family : Guttiferae, Rutaceae.

Classical name : Amlavetasa.

Sanskrit names

Amlavetasa, Cukram-cukraka, Śatavedhī, Sahasranut-jit, Caṇakāmla, Rasāmla, Viravetasa, Vetasāmla, Bhīma, Bhedana-bheda, Amlabhedana-nāśaka, māmsāri, Agnika-

vetasa, Amlabhedana-nāśaka, Raktasāra-raktasrāva, Drāvī, Varavetasa.

Regional name

Amelvet, Amalbet (Hind.), Baikal (Beng.), Tamal (Hind.) Pomelo (Eng.) Kokam tree (Eng.), Kokam Butter tree, Mangosteen oil tree (Eng.)

Description

Garcinia pedunculata Roxb. : A large tree with broad leaves, 15-39 cm. long and 7.6 to 13 cm. broad. Flowers light green and fruits like small apples, yellow in colour.

The fruits are spherical, about the size of a small apple, containing an acid taste pulp of dark reddish colour. Fruit is of very sour due to acidic contents.

Garcinia indica Choiss. : A slender tree with drooping branches. Leaves dark green, young, red, membranous mucronate, rarely obtuse. Male flowers 4-8, in axillary and terminal fascicles, buds at large as pea; sepals orbicular, outer smaller; petals rather larger; stamens membranous 12-20 forming a short capitulum column, anthers oblong, 2-celled, opening longitudinally; female flowers solitary shortly terminal, shortly and strictly peduncled; staminodes in 4 masses, ovary 4-8 celled, stigmas of so many lobes. Fruit spherical as large as small orange, purple throughout not grooved. Seeds 5-8, compressed, enclosed in an acid pulp.

Material of fruits in market in brownish violet shreds.

Citrus decumara : A tree 30-35 ft. tall. Leaves 6-9 in., ovate, minute hairy, pointed. Flowers large, yellow coloured. Fruits big, like Tal fruits green colour at immaturity stage and turning yellow when ripen; fruit pericarp thick; fruit pulp white, acid.

Chemical composition

Fruits (*Citrus decumara*) contain citric acid, sulphuric acid, glucose and pericarp of fruit contains aromatic oil.

Flowering and Fruiting time

Spring to Autumn season.

Distribution

Western peninsula, Konkan Ghats, Canara and Malabar. (*Garcinia indica*). Cultivated in Bengal and Assam (*G. pedunculata*). Throughout India (*Citrus decumara*).

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Amla-atymla
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa, Tikṣna.
Virya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Amla
Doṣakarma	: Kaphavātaśāmaka, Pittavardhaka

Properties and Action

Karma	: Rocana (hr̥dya) Dīpana-pācana-anulomana-bhedana Hr̥dya-hr̥dayottejaka Kāsagara-svasagara-hikkanigrahaṇa Mūtrala, Sajñāsthāpana-ākṣepahara Pittala, Lomahaṣṣaṇam, Arśoghna Sūlapraśamana, Śramajara.
-------	---

Roga

(a) Ābhyantara	: Aruci-arocaka-bhaktadveṣa, Agnimāndya-Ajirna, Vibandha-viṣṭambha, Gulma-ānaha-adhmāna-śūla Vamana-utkleśa, Udararoga-udāvarta Ykṛda-plihavṛddhi-vikāra Hr̥ddourbalya-hṛchūla (udāvartajanya) Kāsa-svāsa-hikkā-pratiśyāya Mūrccha-kampa-ākṣepa, Vāta-nāḍi Vikāra, Mutrakṛccna-aśmarī, Arśa.
----------------	--

Therapeutic uses

It is useful as carminative, aperient, cardiac stimulant, stomachic, diuretic, expectorant, emollient and laxative. It is used in heart weakness, indigestion, loss of appetite, flatulence, dyspepsia, gastric troubles, constipation, rheumatic and nervine complaints. It is given in cough, asthma, coryza, cold, hicough, abdominal colic, overthirst and piles. It is useful in convulsion, fainting condition and heart pain (due to gaseous pressure); and given in ailments of spleen and liver. It is useful in urinary complaints and calculus.

Parts used : Fruits, leaves.

Dose

5-10 gms. powder 3-6 gms. juice 5-10 gms. leaves
juice.

Groups (Gaṇa)

Hṛdya-dīpaniya-śvāsahara daśemāni (Caraka).

Formulation : Aṣṭāṅga lavaṇa.

AMLAVETASA (अम्लवेतस)

- क. स्यादम्लवेतसश्चक्रं शतवेधि सहस्रनुत् ।
ख. अम्लवेतसत्यम्लं भेदनं लघु दीपनम् ॥
हृद्रोगशूलगुल्मघ्नं पित्तलं लोमहर्षणम् ।
रूक्षं विण्मूत्रदोषघ्नं प्लीहोदरार्तनाशनम् ॥
हिक्काऽऽनाहारुचिश्वासकासाजीर्णवमिप्रणुत् ।
कफवातामयध्वंसि च्छागमांसद्रवत्वकृत् ॥
.....छागमांसद्रवत्वकृत् ।
ग. चणकाम्लगुणं ज्ञेयं लोहसूचीद्रवत्वकृत् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Āmrādīphala varga, 144-146.

अम्लवेतसः

वेतसाम्लोऽलाबुसुहृच्छतवेधी सहस्रजित् ।
अम्लोऽम्लवेतसो भीमः शाखाम्लो वरवेतसः ॥
रक्तस्त्रावञ्च मांसारिश्चक्रकोऽग्रिकवेतसः ।
वेधको बोधको द्रावी रसाम्लो वातिकप्रियः ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 319-320.

अम्लवेतफलम्

अम्लवेतफलं चोष्णं तीक्ष्णं स्निग्धं च दीपनम् ।
बद्धमूलानपि व्याधीन् भिन्द्याद् वज्रं गिरीनिव ॥
सशूलानाह विष्टम्भान् जयेद् वातकफामयान् ।

अम्लवेतस गुणाः

अम्लवेतसमम्लं च तीक्ष्णोष्णं लघु भेदनम् ॥
दीपनं पाचनं हृद्यं कफपित्तास्त्रदूषणम् ।
रूक्षं विण्मूत्रदोषघ्नं हृद्रोगाध्मानगुल्मजित् ॥

चणकाम्लत्वम्

द्रवीभवत्यजामांसं मलवस्त्रं सितं भवेत् ।
चणकोम्लापमं स्वादु साम्लं स्यादम्लवेतसम् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 319-325.

अम्लवेतसः

- अ. अम्लोऽम्लवेतसो वेधा रसाम्लो वीरवेतसः ।
वेतसाम्लश्चाम्लसारः शतवेधी च वेधकः ॥
भीमश्च भेदनो भेदो राजाम्लश्चाम्लभेदनः ।
अम्लाङ्कुशो रक्तसारः फलाम्लश्चाम्लनायकः ॥
सहस्रवेध वीराम्ली गुल्मकेतुर्धाऽक्षिधा ।
शङ्खमांसादिद्रावी स्याद्विधा चैवाम्लवेतसः ॥
- ब. अम्लवेतसमत्यम्लं कषायोष्णं च वातजित् ।
कफार्शः श्रमगुल्मघ्नमरोचकहरं परम् ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Pippalyādi varga, 125-128.

कषायं कटु रूक्षोष्णमल्लवेतसकं विदुः ।
तृट्कफानिलजन्त्वर्शोहृद्बाधामरिगुल्मजित् ॥

Dhanvantari Nighaṇṭu.

‘अम्लवेतसं भेदनीयदीपनीयानुलोमिकमवातश्लेष्मप्रामनानाम् ।’

Caraka Saṁhītā, Sūtra. 25-33.

प्लीहारोगे

अम्लवेतससंयुक्तः शिगुक्वाथः ससैन्धवः ।
पीतः प्लीहोदरं हन्ति पिप्पलीमरिचान्वितः ॥

Baṅgasena, Udaracikitsā.

अम्लवेतसकल्पम्

हिमवत्परमावासे दिव्यौषधिसमायुते ।
गंधर्वपक्षाध्युषिते नानाधातुविचित्रिते ॥
विश्वसृङ् भगवांस्तत्र मार्तण्डं भास्करं किल ।
भ्रममारोपयामास रूपहेतोः कदाचन ॥

Gadanigraha, Auśadhikalpādhyāya, 1-2

कृतवान् कनकप्रस्थं रूपं जनमनोहरम् ।

विरूपशकलास्तेभ्यो ये पेतुर्गिरिमूर्धनि ॥
 तेभ्यस्तेजस्विनो जाता वेतसा नामपादपाः ।
 नहि तेषु विलीयन्ते पतंगा न सरीसृपाः ॥

Gadanigraha, Auśadhikalpādhyāya, 3-4.

तेषां फलेभ्यो निर्यासः सोऽम्लत्वादम्लवेतसः ।
 कषायं कटु रूक्षश्च मधुजम्बीरसप्रभः ॥
 भस्मतस्तत्परीक्षा तु स्फुटं चटपटायते ।
 पाषाणमयकाष्ठं वा लौह वा एवमेव च ॥
 भिनयेष महातेजा न तु भिन्द्यादलाबुकम् ।
 तस्मादलाबुप्रचुरं तस्य भाजनमिष्यते ॥

Gadanigraha, Auśadhikalpādhyāya, 5-7.

गुल्मो पिवेदरिष्टेन मन्दाग्रिमधुना युतम् ।
 कोलाम्भसाऽर्शोकारो घृतेन तु जलोदरौ ॥
 अश्रमर्या दधिमण्डेन प्रमेही शीतवारिणा ।
 गवां मूत्रेण तु प्लीही वाते यूषरसेन तु ॥
 सुखोष्णे नाम्भसा शूले पयसा क्षीणरेतसि ।
 पुण्येऽहनि सुनक्षत्रे काले नात्युष्णशीतले ॥

Gadanigraha, Auśadhikalpādhyāya, 8-10.

सुविशुद्धशरीरस्तु पिवेत्कर्षार्धभादितः ।
 ततोऽष्टरात्रात्तु परमर्धकर्षार्धवर्धितम् ॥
 पलं क्षीरयुतं मासं क्षीरवृत्तिरनभुक् ।
 एष प्रयोगः पुष्ट्यायुर्बलारोग्यकरः परः ॥
 रूपयौवनसौभाग्यशोभाकान्तिसुखप्रदः ।
 नातः परतरं किञ्चिच्छ्रेष्ठमस्ति रसायनम् ॥
 हृष्टं गुल्मार्शसामाशु भेदनं परमौषधम् ॥

Gadanigraha, Auśadhikalpādhyāya, 11-16.

AMLIKĀ

Botanical name : Tamarindus indica Linn.

Family : (Papilionaceae) Fabaceae.

Classical name : Amlikā-Cincā.

Sanskrit names

Amlikā-Amlā-Amlī, Cukrikā-Cukrā, Cincā-Cincī, Tintiḍi-Tintini-Tintiḍika, Dantaśaṭhā, Śukta, Caṇḍā, Stambhinikā.

Regional names

Imli (Hind.), Tentul (Beng.), Amilun, Chintapandu (Tam.), Amlika (Tel.), Tamrehindi (Arab.), Kjuranailljindi (Pers.) Chinchā (Mar.), Anwālī (Guj.), Tamarind Tree, Tamarind (Eng.).

Description

A large handsome evergreen tree, with grey bark with longitudinal fissures. Leaves rachis 10-12.5 cm., leaflets 10-15 pairs 2.3.8X 1.2 cm. oblong sessile, yellow, with pink streak flowers in lax race, as; calyx tube 4 lobed, turbinate, lined by disc, petals 3, stamens 3, staminodes 2, ovary stalked, adnate to calyx tube; fls, boat-shaped, stripped with red, yellow.

Fruits pod filled with acid pulp and brown seeds. Fruit is a pendulous legume, oblong-linear-oblong, slightly compressed, curved or nearly straight, 8-20 cm. long, 2-3 c.m. broad, fleshy, brown in colour; seeds 3-12 dark-brown, shining, embedded in a fibrous mass of firm, fleshy pulp, juicy and acid. Pods greenish and becoming brownish when matured with pulp of acidic-sweatish tasty changed from very sour taste of immaturity stage.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Summers to spring seasons; Rains to colds.

Distribution

Throughout, India. Cultivated or semi-cultivated almost everywhere. Southern India, Andhra Pradesh, Gujarat, Jammu and Kashmir, Karnataka, West Bengal and northern India; Burma.

Chemical composition

Fruit contains tartaric acid 5 percent, citric acid 4 percent, malic acid, acetic acid, potassium tartarate 8 percent, sugar 25-40 percent, gum and pectin.

Seeds contain pectin, fat, carbohydrate, 63-52 percent, albuminoids and fibres and alkalies substances consisting phosphorous and nitrogen.

Pods or fruit pulp also contain some oxalic acid.

Seeds coat contain a fixed oil, tannic acid and some insoluble substances.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Amla (Atympla-apakva or unripe and Madhurāmla-pakvaphala or ripe fruits).
Guṇa	: Guru, Rūkṣa
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Amla
Doṣakarma	: Vātaśāmaka, Kaphapittavardhaka Raktapittakāraka (apakva phala) Pittaśāmaka, kaphavātaśāmaka (pakva phala).

Properties and action

Karma	: Rocana-Dīpana Tṛṣṇanigrahaṇa-pittaśāmaka Bhedana, Śūlapraśamana Yakṛduttejaka Hṛdya-raktavātapraśamana Śothahara-vedanasthāpana- ropaṇa-mūtrala-stambhana Dāhapraśamana-jvaraghna Klamahara, Tvacya-viṣaghna Arśoghna.
-------	---

Roga

(a) Ābhyantara	: Agnimāndya-vamana-aruci Tṛṣṇā-klama-bhrama Vibandha-viṣṭambhi Pitta-rakta-vikāra, kaphavatavikara Hṛdvikāra-raktavāta, Mūtrakṛccha Prameha-somebastivikā, Jvara-dāha Vṛddhi-medoroga(dourga) Vātavyādhi-stavdhagātra Gulma-arśa-udaraśūla Arocaka-bhaktadveṣa, Masūrikā Viṣa-sarpaviṣa, Yoniroga.
(b) Bāhya	: Śoṭha-vedanāyuktavikāra

Abhighāta-asthibhagna (śoṭha-rujā)
 Gudabhraṅśa-arśa, Karṇaroga
 Netravikāra-kukūṇaka
 Carmavikāra-dadru.

Therapeutic uses

It is useful as astringent, aperient, anodyne, diuretic and febrifuge. It is used in diseases caused by deranged biles; it is given to check biliousness, vomiting, overthirst, burning sensation.

Ripe fruits drink is useful as cardiac tonic, loss of appetite, stomachic, indigestion and in vomiting, excessive hot, urinary complaints (burning and scanty urination or micturition), and also checks complications (excessive thirst, burning sensation, nausea or vomiting etc.) during febrile conditions. Syrup is prepared of ripe fruits and used as a tasty and medicated drink which is refrigerant, tonic, digestive and countering biliousness and flatulence as carminative and anticolic.

Seeds are boiled and pasted for using as a poultice on boils, inflammation and painful organs. Gargle of warm infusion is used in sore throat for checking cough and relaxing uvula by infusion.

Bark is useful as astringent and tonic. Leaves are made into paste and applied to reduce inflammatory swelling and relieving pains in certain ailing conditions of organs. Bark powder is considered useful in abdominal colic and dyspepsia.

Fruits are used in suitable modes in various gastrointestinal disorders and urinary tract infections including urinary bladder ailments. Unripe fruits are useful in diseases caused by provocation of Vāta, and ripe fruit useful in diseases due to Kaphavāta; and syrup or sherbat (pānaka) is used against ailments caused by provoked and excessive pitta in general.

The seeds are useful as discutient and astringent; and the seeds coat (10 grains) with equal quantity of cumin and sugars, is used in cases of dysentery and diarrhoea, for thrice or twice in a day. The seeds are boiled and a poultice of them is applied over boils and inflamed organs.

The warm poultice of the fruit pulp is applied over inflammatory swellings; and similarly the poultice of pulp made with mixture of salt is applied as a liniment in rheumatic conditions. Warm tamarind water or infusion is used as a mouth-wash as well as gargle in stomatitis and sore throat.

The ash of the bark obtained by heating the bark with salt in an earthen vessel, is given (3-6 grains) for colic and indigestion; and the ash is also used for gargle-water in aphthous sores and throat affections.

A poultice of fresh leaves is locally applied over inflammatory swellings of ankles and joints, boils, sore eyes and scabies. The powder of the dried leaves is used as a dusting powder over foul ulcers, wounds and sore eyes, and also as a gargle with water.

Seeds useful in vaginal complaints, as (bīja varti) recommended also seeds external paste in cases of prolapse of anus. Leaves tender and flowers are externally applied over eyes in conditions of conjunctivitis, and juice is considered useful with specific ingredients in certain eye complaints, and the leaves juice mixed in milk is recommended for applying over ailing eyes. Fruit juice is employed to prepare an oil which is used against earache. Leaves juice is applied over skin complaints and also to ringworm. In cases of obesity the leaves juice is useful to check foul smell of body.

Ripe fruits, tender leaves and flowers are edible and eaten in various forms; and the unripe fruits are very sour when eaten. Pulp of ripe and matured fruits is utilised in several preparations of food, diet and, jam, jelly, chatani, syrup or drink domestically as well as in food industry. Pulp is used in pharmaceutical preparation purposes. It commercial uses as tannin containing plant source. It is also used to prepare tartaric acid.

Formulations (Yoga) : Cincā kṣāra, Aṣṭaṅga Lavaṇa.

Parts used : Fruits, Seeds, Flowers, Leaves, Ash.

Doses

5-10 gms. calcinated powder Ash-Kṣara 5-10 gms., 10-15 gms., Powder. Fruit 2-5 gms., Seeds powder 1-3 gms.

AMLIKĀ (अम्लिका)

- क. अम्लिका चुक्रिकाऽम्ली च चुक्रा दन्तशठाऽपि च ।
अम्ला च चिञ्चिका चिञ्चा तित्तिडीका च तित्तिडी ॥
- ख. अम्लिकाऽम्ला गुरुर्वातहरी पित्तकफास्त्रनुत् ।
पक्वा तु दीपनी रुच्या सरोष्णा कफवातनुत् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Āmrāphalādi varga, 142-143.

चिञ्चा

चिञ्चा तु चुक्रिका चुक्रा चाम्लिका शाकचुक्रिका ।
अम्ली सुतित्तिडी चाम्ला चुक्रीका च नवाभिधा ॥

पक्वापक्वफलम्

- अ. चिञ्चाऽत्यम्ला भवेदामा पक्वा तु मधुराम्लिका ।
वातघ्नी पित्तदाहास्र कफदोषप्रकोपणी ॥
- ब. आम्लिकायाः फलं त्वाममत्यम्लं लघु पित्तकृत् ।
पक्नु मधुराम्लं स्याद्भेदि विष्टम्भवातजित् ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Āmrādiphala varga, 162-164.

चिञ्चा-अम्लीका

चिञ्ची चिञ्चाम्लिकाम्लीकी शुक्ता चण्डा च चुक्रिका ।
अम्ला स्तम्भनिका चुक्रा तित्तिडी तित्तिणी तथा ॥

अम्लिकापुष्पम्

तित्तिडीकुसुमं स्वादु कषायाम्लं रुचिप्रदम् ॥
कफमारुतमेहघ्नं विशदं दीपनं लघु ।

अवस्थाभेदेन अम्लिका फलम् (अपक्व) बाल फलम्

तित्तिडीकफलं बालमसृक्पित्तवलासकृत् ॥

मध्यम (अल्पपक्व) फलम्

ग्राह्युष्णं दीपनं रुच्यं मध्यमं कफवातनुत् ।

पक्वफलम्

तद्वत् पक्वा सरा रूक्षा रुच्याग्निवस्तिशुद्धिकृत् ॥

शुष्कफलम्

हृद्या कफघ्नी शुष्कैवं तृट्क्लमश्रमजिल्लघुः ।

नवफलम्

वातश्लेष्मकरं ज्ञेयं नवं तित्तिडिकाफलम् ॥

सम्बतंसरस्थितं तत्तु पित्तघ्नमनिलापहम् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Ośadhi varga, 363-368.

‘तस्मादिति वृक्षाम्लात् ।’

Caraka Saṁhitā.

नाडीव्रणे

‘पिष्टं चुञ्चूफलं लेपान्नाडीव्रणहरं परम् ।’

Gadanigraha.

गात्रदौर्गन्ध्ये

‘....परिणततिन्तिडीकान्वितपूतिकरञ्जोत्थबीजं वा ।
....लेपात्.....अपनयति ।’

Gadanigraha.

वृद्धौ वर्ध्मोपरि

‘वर्ध्मोपरि परिबद्धा चुक्राच्छटदचक्रिका चार्वी ।
दुर्जयमति तत्कष्टं शमयति सहसा वयं ब्रूमः ॥’

Siddha Bhāṣajya Maṇimāla.

गुदभ्रंशे

भ्रष्टैः सदम्लिकाबीजैः जलघृष्टैः प्रलेपितम् ।
अधो न भ्रंशते जातु गुदचक्रं प्रवेशितम् ॥

Siddha Bhāṣajya Maṇimāla.

अभिघातपीडायाम्

चिञ्चाफलं मांसरसं भूमौ क्षिप्त्वा विमर्द्य करतलतः ।
लिम्पेच्चूर्णसहितं तापय शिखिनाऽभिघातपीडायाम् ॥

Siddha Bhāṣajya Maṇimāla.

वातव्याधौ

तिन्तिडीकदलैः सिद्धं तालमाण्डिकया सह ।
पिष्ट्वा सुखोष्णमालेपं दद्याद्वातरुजापहम् ॥

Baṅgaseṇa, Vātavyādhicikitsāyām.

शोथे

‘संस्वेदनक्रिया कार्या सा कार्या च पुनः पुनः ।
.....अथवा तिन्तिडीच्छदैः ॥’

Hārīta Saṁhitā, cikitsā. 26.

सर्पविषे

लवणार्धपलोपेतः चिञ्चापल्लवजो रसः ।
कुडवप्रमितः पीतो विषं हन्ति फणाभृतान् ॥

Vaidya Manoramā.

नयनयोः बहिल्लेपे

चिञ्चापत्रस्वरसं पयसा संयोज्य घर्षितं कंसे ।
लितं बहिर्नयनयोः शमयति रागाश्रुतोदसंरम्भान् ॥

Vaidya Manoramā, p. 41.

स्तब्धगात्रे

स्तब्धगात्रमनिलान्महाबलाद् भृष्टधान्यतिलवातहास्थिभिः ।
लिसमाशुवशामनयेच्छनैः तिन्तिडीकत्वङ्गनलेन तापितैः ॥

Vaidya Manoramā.

अक्षिरोगे

‘चिञ्चास्वरसनिकृष्टं मरिचं नायन्तने तथा साज्यम् ।
अक्षिनिषिक्तं शमयति कण्डूं तिमिरं च वातोत्थम् ॥’

Vaidya Manoramā, p. 46.

कर्णशूले

‘चिञ्चाफलस्वरससाधिततैलमग्र्यम् ।’
....कर्णे सशूलिनि रहस्यपराङ्मुखे च ॥’

Vaidya Manoramā.

कुकूणके

कान्शिकायसंपिष्टं कंसाभ्यां घर्षितं बहिल्लिसम् ।
चिञ्चास्थ्यङ्कुरमधिराद् बालस्य कुकूणकं जयति ॥

Vaidya manoramā.

दद्रौ

‘....चिञ्चापत्ररसं वा कण्डूतिनाशमन्विच्छन्....प्रलिम्पेत् ।’

Vaidya Manoramā.

सोमरोगे

पूर्वं तोये वासरं वासितानां चिञ्चास्थीनां दुग्धकल्कीकृतानाम् ।
पीत्वा स्यातां सुन्दरीपुरुषौ हि द्राक् अस्थिस्रावात्सोमरोगाच्च मुक्तौ ॥

Vaidya Manoramā.

गुल्मे

वज्रीपलाशशिखरीचिञ्चार्कतिलनालजाः ।
यवजः स्वर्जिका चेति क्षारा अष्टौ प्रकीर्तिताः ॥
एते गुल्महराः क्षाराः अजीर्णस्य च पाचकाः ।

Bhāvaprakāśa.

अस्थिभग्ने

‘अम्लिकाफलकल्कैः सौवीरतैलविमिश्रितैः स्वेदात् ।
भग्नाभिहतुरुजात्रैः..... ॥’

Bhāvaprakāśa.

मसूरिकायाम्

‘निशाचिञ्चाच्छदे शीतवारिपीते तथैव तु ।’

Cakradatta.

नवे प्रतिश्याये

‘प्रतिश्याये नवे शस्तो यूषश्चिञ्चाफलोद्भवः ।
ततः पक्वं कफं ज्ञात्वा हरेच्छीर्षविरेचनैः ।’

Cakradatta, Nāsāroga cikiteāyām.

अरोचके

अम्लिका गुडतोयञ्च त्वगेलामरिचान्वितम् ।
अभक्तच्छन्दरोगे शस्तं कवलधारणम् ॥

Cakradatta, Arocakcikitsāyām.

अर्शःसु

‘.....तथाम्लिका....शाकम् ।
दधिदाडिमसिद्धानि भृष्टानि यमकेऽपि च ॥
धान्यनागरयुक्तानि शाकान्येतानि दापयेत् ।’

Caraka Samhitā, cikitsā. 9-124.

अरोचके (सभक्तद्वेषाभक्तच्छन्दे) अम्लीकापानकम्

पक्वाम्लीका सिता शीत-वारिणा वस्त्रगालिता ।
एलालवङ्गकपूरमरिचैरवधूलिता ॥
पानकस्यास्य गण्डूषं धारयित्वा मुखे मुहुः ।
अरुचि नाशयत्येव पित्तं प्रशमयेत्तथा ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Arocakādhikāra, 16-10/11.

मेदोरोगचिकित्सायां दुर्गन्धनाशनार्थम्

‘चिञ्चापत्रस्वरसं प्रक्षितकल्कादियोजितं जयति ।’

Bhāvaprakāśa, Madhya Khaṇḍa, 39-72.

अभिघातजन्यागुन्तकशोथे

सद्योऽभिघातजनिता आगन्तुश्चयथवः प्रशाम्यन्ति ।

पिष्टकलवणालेपादम्लीकाफलरसाभ्यां वा ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Bhagnādihikāra, 48-19.

भग्नाभिघातजन्यशोथे

अम्लीकाफलकल्कैः सौवीरैस्तैलमिश्रितैः स्वेदात् ।

भग्नाभिहतरुजाघ्नैरथ वौषधसाधितं श्वयथौ ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Bhagnādihikāra, 48-32.

स्थौल्यचिकित्सायां देहदौर्गन्ध्यहरणमुद्वर्तनार्थं चिञ्चापत्रप्रयोगः

चिञ्चापत्रस्वरसप्रक्षितं कक्षादियोजितं जयति ।

दग्धहरिद्रोद्वर्तनमचिराद्धेहस्य दौर्गन्ध्यम् ॥

Cakradatta, Sthaulya cikitsā, 36-38.

ĀMRA

Botanical name : *Mangifera indica* Linn.

Family : Anacardiaceae

Classical name : Āmra

Sanskrit names

Āmra, Cūta, Rasāla, Sahakāra, Atisaurabha, Kāmānga, Madhudūta, Mākanda, Pikavallabha.

Regional names

Am, Ambi, Amia (Hind.), Amno (Guj.), Mangas (Tam.), Amarama (Tel.), Mabaz (Arab.), Amb (Pers.), Amn (Punj.), Amra (Beng.); Mango (Eng.).

Description

A large evergreen tree with widely spreading branches and dark-coloured bark. Leaves crowded at the end of the branches. Flowers pale-yellow, aromatic, greenish-yellow. Leaves 5.6 X 1-2 in., pointed. Fruits are large fleshy drupes. Fruit varies much in size and shape. Pulp has a terbenzinate sweet smell and aciduous taste. It consists of

woody endocarp covered with woody fibres. Seeds have two distinct membranous envelopes, the outer one is of the nature of an aril and white, the inner or proper integument consists of two coats, closely united, the outer-white, the inner of a dark-red colour. Cotyledons are spirally twisted and lobed, their taste are bitter and astringent.

Flowering and fruiting time

Spring to summers-rainy seasons.

Distribution

Throughout india in warmer regions; and specially in Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, West Bengal, Tamilnadu and central India. It is widely cultivated in various areas in country, as a common fruit producing tree.

Kinds and Varieties

Large number of kinds and varieties are produced under cultivation practices of mango fruit and available in market of different regions in country. Practically the kinds of Kalami and Biju, Dashahari, Langarha and many other traditional are popular and many other types known for their delicious fruits.

Classical varieties are mentioned (Nighantus) as Āmra and Rājāmra alongwith specific consideration of various stages, parts and modes of usage of mango fruits (including planting techniques-Vṛkṣāyurveda).

Chemical composition

Fruit contains Vitamins A, B, C and D, specially Vitamin C is richer. Unripe fruit contains water 21, aqueous extract 61.5, cellulose 5, insoluble ash 1.5 and soluble ash 1.9 percent (including potash, tartaric, citric and malic acid). Ripe fruit contains yellow colouring matter, chlorophyl, carbon disulphide, benzol, galic acid, citric acid and resin.

Bark contains tannin. Seeds endosperm or kernel contains malic acid, sugars, resin, ash and starch in good quantity.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa : Kaṣāya, Amla (apakvaphala-unripe fruit), Madhura (pakva-ripe)

Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa, Guru-snigdha (Pakva phala-ripe fruit)
Vīrya	: Śīta
Doṣakarma	: Kaphapittaśāmaka (patra-leaves, puṣpa-flower, bījamajjā-seed kernel and tvā-bark) Tridoṣakara (apakva-unripe fruit) Vātapittaśāmaka (Pakva-ripefruit)

Properties and action

Karma	: Rocana-dīpana (apakva) Snehana-anulomana-sāraka (pakva) Chardinigrahaṇa (patra) Stambhana (puṣpa-tvak-bīja-majjā) Hṛdya-śonitashāpaha (Pakva) Raktapittaprakopaka (apakva), Vṛṣya-vajīkaraṇa (pakva) Garbhāśayaśothahara (tvakbījamajjā) Mūtrasangrahaṇīya (bījamajjā) Dāhapraśamana (Phalapānaka) Balya-br̥mhaṇa (pakva) Vaṛṇya-tvacya (pakva) Mūtrala, Kṛmighna.
-------	--

Roga

(a) Ābhyantara	: Aruci-agnimāndya-chardi-ajīrṇa Vibandha-koṣthagata roukṣya Atisāra-pravāhikā-raktatisāra Kṛmi-roga-plihodara-raktapitta- raktālpatā, Hṛdroga, Carmaroga-tvagdoṣa-kṣudraroga Varṇadoṣa, Anśughāta-dāha-trṣṣā Prameha-pūyamaha Dourbalya-kṛsatā-dhātukṣaya Rakta-śvetapradara-sukralpatā, Vāta-pitta-kapha-vikāra Śoṭha-hikkā, Madātyaya
(b) Bāhya	: Karṇaroga-pūtikarṇa Raktasrāva-vraṇa-daha, Mukhapāka Darūnaroga-Carmavikāra.

Therapeutic uses

It is useful as antiscorbutic, anthelmintic, aphrodisiac, appetizer, stomachic, astringent, cardiac stimulant, demulcent, diuretic, fattening, invigorative, tonic, refrigerant, and laxative in different forms and modes of usage in regard to fruits and other parts of the plant potent for medicine.

It has uses in burning sensation, sunstroke, bleeding, piles or haemorrhoids, haemorrhage, epistaxis, debility and irritability of stomach, uterine complaints haemorrhage, leucorrhoea, menorrhagia, bleeding from lungs and intestinal origin, ophthalmia and eruption, scabies and cutaneous affections. It is used in dysentery, diarrhoea, oedema, debility, urinary anomalies, constipation, abdominal disorders and seminal troubles.

The unripe fruit is fried (or boiled) and pulp is macerated for preparing a recipe with sugar and spices as usual, and this domestic regimen of fruit-pulp is specifically given in cases of sunstroke and also effectively used during the summers for countering excessive heatstroke and other complications, in addition to its home uses of food item with stomachic, tasteful, appetizer and digestive properties. It is used as chatani as household dietetic item commonly; and the dried powder of unripe fruit pulp is one of the common spices and it is a major source of herbal acidic or sour powder of food utility, as the powder as well as dried off slices-pieces of pulps are used for various purposes (Amchur, Chatai, Achar etc. and pickles).

Unripe fruit is acidic, antiscorbutic and astringent. Sun dried slices of unripe fruit is effective remedy for scurvy. The fried skin of the unripe fruit is given with sugar in cases of menorrhagia. The skin of unripe fruit is used as astringent and a stimulating tonic. Its powder is given with milk and honey for bleeding dysentery, and as a tonic for the digestive organs.

The ripe fruit is antiscorbutic, diuretic, laxative, invigorating fattening and astringent. Ripe fruit is used against the diseases caused due to vātapittadoṣa, two body humours. It is useful in constipation and as intestinal demulcent. Ripe

fruit is used as cardiac tonic, blood coagulant, and useful in haemorrhagic disorders. It is given in cardiac troubles, anaemia haemorrhage of different origins. Ripe fruit is used in seminal abnormality. In general debility, consumption and discolouration or complexion abnormalities. Ripe fruit is used in spleen and liver complaints; the fruit juice mixed with honey is recommended for liver disorders.

The ripe fruits are most favourite and delicious edible mango fruits and they are widely used variously as food articles. Chemical profile renders fruits of high nutritive value.

Various other parts of tree of medicinal value and they are used in different ailments for treatment.

The bark is useful as an astringent and has a marked action on mucous membranes. Bark powder or decoction is given in female subjects in cases of leucorrhoea and menorrhagia, and also muco-purulent, discharges from the uterus. Bark is used in bowel complaints, diarrhoea, dysentery, bleeding diarrhoea, intestinal haemorrhage and also from lungs. The juice of fresh bark is internally given with addition of suitable adjuvants, and it enters in various recipes administered in these ailments. Juice of fresh bark is with lime water or other suitable drugs and forms is given in gonorrhoea. Juice of bark is used in skin diseases for internal use, and the decoction of bark is also used in skin complaints. The fluid extract, infusion or decoction of bark is used as a mouth-wash and local application including gargle-fluid in conditions of stomatitis and ailing mucous membranes. It is also administered in leucorrhoea, prolapse of rectum, vaginal prolapse and complaints, in proper mode (as local wash, injection and enema).

The powder of tender leaves is used in diarrhoea and diabetes. The smoke by burning of leaves is inhaled for relieving hiccup, catarrhal and throat affections. The ash for leaves is obtained by burning them and it is used as a dusting powder over burns, scalds and other similar complaints. Leaves powder is locally applied to cuts, ulcers and bruises, and for styptic purpose.

The leaves are considered useful for toning up the gums by masticating them. The midrib is of a calcined leaf is used to remove warts on eyelids. An infusion of leaves and bark is used as an astringent; and it is applied as a mouth-wash for toothache, sore gums and sore throat and similar affections.

The juice of leaves is internally given for checking the nausea and vomiting as the leaves are anti-emetic. Leaves are topically applied to ulcers and wounds. Leaves are recommended against Kaphapitta disorders.

The resinous gum exuded and obtained from tree trunk is used medicinally, the gum is applied as a dressing material for scabies and other parasitic skin complaints. Resinous gum is powdered finely and mixed with oil, and the ointment is externally applied (also adding citrus juice suitably) to scabies, itchy and other epidermal affections.

The seeds and kernels are used medicinally in various ailments. The decorticated seeds contain a large quantity of gallic acid and also fat and calcium, and other contents. Seeds are used as potent astringent; and they are used in dysentery, diarrhoea, haemorrhoids, leucorrhoea, menorrhagia, haemorrhages, and other complaints. Seeds powder is a good anthelmintic and internally given against round worm affection, in adults and children under due posological consideration. The kernels are powdered and fried, and the same is given in pregnant females in case of diarrhoea and dysentery with curd or suitably.

The seeds kernel is orally given in urinary anomalies and also useful in gonorrhoea. Seeds kernel is useful for uterine inflammation. The juice of seeds kernel is recommended as a snuff or nasal drop in condition of epistaxis or bleeding nose. Besides medicinal uses of seeds kernel, the flour is prepared from dried kernels is of use as food article (being richer in fat and calcium, but poorer in protein contents in comparison of wheat flour).

The flowers have medicinal utility and used in different ailments. Dried flowers are astringent, and recommended in diseases caused by kaphapitta body humours.

Flowers powder is locally applied over cuts and wounds and haemorrhage. Flowers are given in diarrhoea and dysentery. They are used in catarrh of bladder and gleet, Dried flowers are fried in cooking oil and used sometimes as a medicated vegetable alike; flowers are also appetizer and stomachic alongwith other medicinal properties including blood purifier.

The medicinal utility or different parts of plant and uses as drug as well as edible fruit, coupled with products and preparations including intake or consumption and its practices, are given due place specifically in classical texts for multipurpose and proper usage.

Parts used

Fruits unripe and ripe, Leaves, , flowers, Seeds-kernels, Resinous gum, Bark, Roots.

Preparations

Puṣyānuga Cūrṇa Āmra pānaka, Amrāvarta.

Dose

Powder 1-5 gms., Juice 12-24 gms., Decoction 8-12ml.

ĀMRA (आम्र)

आम्र

आम्रशूतो रसालश्च सहकारोऽतिसौरभः ।
कामाङ्गो मधुदूतश्च माकन्दः पिकवल्लभः ॥

आम्रपुष्पम्

आम्रपुष्पमतीसारकफपित्तप्रमेहनुत् ।
असृग्हृष्टिहरं शीतं रुचिकृद् ग्राहि-वातलम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu.

आम्रबीजम्

आम्रबीजं कषायं स्याच्छर्द्यतीसारनाशनम् ।
ईषदम्लञ्च मधुरं तथा हृदवदाहनुत् ॥

आम्रफलम्

आम्र बालं कषायाम्लं रुच्यं मारुतपित्तकृत् ।
तरुणं तु तदत्यम्लं रूक्षं दोषत्रयास्त्रकृत् ॥

शुष्कपक्वाग्रफलम्

आम्रमामं त्वाचाहीनमातपेऽति विशोधितम् ।
अम्लं स्वादु कषायं स्याद्भेदनं कफवातजित् ॥

पक्काग्रफलम्

पक्कं तु मधुरं कृष्यं स्निग्धं बलसुखप्रदम् ।
गुरुवातहरं हृद्यं वर्ण्यं शीतमपित्तलम् ॥
कषायानुरसं वह्निश्लेष्मशुक्रविवर्द्धनम् ॥

वृक्षपक्वाग्रफलम्

तदेव वृक्षसम्पक्कं गुरु वातहरं परम् ।
मधुराम्लरसं किञ्चिद्भवेत्पित्तप्रकोपनम् ॥

कृत्रिमपक्काग्रफलम्

आम्रं कृत्रिमपक्कञ्चाद्भवेत्पित्तनाशनम् ।
रसस्याम्लस्य हीनस्तु माधुर्याच्च विशेषतः ॥

चूषितपक्वाग्रफलम्

चूषितं तत्परं रुच्यं वलवीर्यकरं लघुः ।
शीतलं शीघ्रपाकि स्याद्वातपित्तहरं सरम् ॥

गालिताग्ररसः

तद्रसो गालितो वल्यो गुरुर्वाहरः सरः ।
अहृद्यस्तर्पणोऽतीव बृंहणः कफवर्द्धनः ॥

तृष्णावमने आम्रादिकषायः

आम्रजम्बूकषायं वा पिवेन्माक्षिकसंयुतम् ।
छर्दिं सर्वां प्रणुदति तृष्णां चैवापकर्षति ।

Cakradatta, 16-16.

चर्मदले

गलिते चाम्रपेशी तु किञ्चित्सैन्धवसंयुता ।
ताम्रपात्रे विनिर्घृष्टा लेपाच्चर्मदलापहा ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Kuṣṭhādhikāra, 54-131.

गर्भावस्था-ग्रहिणीविकारे

आम्रजम्बूत्वचः क्वाथैर्लेहयेल्लाजशकुकम् ।
अनेनालीढमात्रेण गर्भिणी ग्रहणीं जयेत् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Yonirogādhikāra, 70-67.

पक्वाम्रखण्डम्

तस्य खण्डं गुरु परं रोचनं चिरपाकि च ।
मधुरं बृंहणं वल्यं शीतलं वातनाशनम् ॥

दुग्धयुक्ताम्रः

वातपित्तहरं रुच्यं बृंहणं वलवर्द्धनम् ।
वृष्यं वर्णकरं स्वादु दुग्धाम्रः गुरु शीतलम् ॥

आम्रपल्लवः

आम्रस्य पल्लवो रुच्यः कफपित्तविनाशनः ।

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Āmrāphalādi varga, 1-11, 17-18.

आम्रातियोगः तस्य दोषाः

मन्दानलत्वं विषमज्वरं च रक्तामयं वद्धगुदोदरं च ।
आम्रातियोगो नयनामयं वा करोति तस्मादतितानि नाद्यात् ।
एतदम्लाम्रविषयं मधुराम्लपरं न तु ।
मधुरस्य परं नेत्रहितवाद्या गुणा यतः ॥

आम्रतियोगदोषनिवृत्युपायम्

शुण्ठ्यम्भसोऽनुपानं स्यादाम्राणामति भक्षणे ।
जीरकं वा प्रयोक्तव्यं सह सौवर्चलेन च ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Āmrāphalādi varga, 12-14

आम्रावर्तः

पक्वस्य सहकारस्य पटे विस्तारितो रसः ।
धर्मशुष्को मुहुर्दत्त आम्रावर्त इति स्मृतः ॥
आम्रावर्तस्तृषाच्छर्दिवातपित्तहरः सरः ।
रुच्यः सूर्याशुभिः पाकाल्लघुश्च स हि कीर्तितः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Āmrāphalādi varga, 15-16.

आम्रःसामान्यगुणाः

रसालस्तुवरो रूक्षो रक्तपित्तकफव्रणान् ।
योनिदोषमतीसारं प्रमेहं सन्नियच्छति ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 337.

आम्रत्वचः

‘.....ग्राहिणी त्वक् च दाहनुत् ।’

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 344.

छर्द्यतिसारे आम्रादिक्वाथः

आम्रस्थिमध्यमालूरफलक्वाथः समाक्षिकः ।

शर्करासहितो हन्याच्छर्द्यतिसारमुल्वणम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Atisārādhikāra, 2-107.

प्लीहारोगे आम्रस्वरसम्

सुपक्कसहकारस्य रसः क्षौद्रसमन्वितः ।

पीतः प्रशमयत्येवप्लीहानं नेह संशयः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Plāhayakṛdadhikāra, 33-17.

घ्राणत्प्रवृत्ते रक्ते

‘नस्यं तथााम्रास्थिरसः ।’

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā. 4-97.

रक्तातिसारे

‘.....आम्राजुनत्वचः ।

पीताः क्षीरेण मध्वाद्या पृथक् शोणितवारणाः ॥’

Vṛnda., Atisārādhikāra.

प्लीहोदरे

‘प्लीहव्यपरमो योगः पक्काप्ररसोऽभया समधुः ।’

Vṛnda., Plāhacikitsādhikāre.

मत्स्यभक्षणाजीर्णे

‘आम्रमाम्रफलं मात्स्यै ।’

Bhāvaprakāśa.

मांसभोजनाजीर्णे

‘तवीजं पिशिते हितम् ।’

Bhāvaprakāśa.

अतिसारे

‘.....तथामध्यात्वगाम्रजाः ।

अतिसारं व्यथादाहं हन्त्येदाशु न संशयः ॥’

Bhāvaprakāśa.

बालानं मुखपाके

‘मुखपाके तु बालानामाम्रसारयोरजः ।

गैरकं क्षौद्रसंयुक्तभेजजंसरसाञ्जनम् ॥'

Baṅgasena, Bālarogādihikāra.

पक्वातिसारे

नवचुतस्य पर्णानि कपित्थफलमेव च ।
पिष्ट्वा तण्डुलतोयेन पक्वातिसारशान्तये ॥

Baṅgasena.

शोथे

पुर्ननवासपत्ररसालमूलं संक्षुद्य तोयान्मैणशेषसिद्धम् ।
चतुर्थभागेन घृतं विपक्वं प्रत्यन्तु सकल्कपलाष्टकेन ॥
संसेवितं वातबलासरोगान् सर्वाश्च शोथानपि दुस्तरांश्च ।
गुल्मोदरप्लीहगुदाद्भ्रशांश्च निहन्ति वह्निं कुरुते हि पुंसाम् ॥

Baṅgasena, Śothacikitsā.

दारुणरोगे

आम्रबीजस्य चूर्णः तु शिवाचूर्णसमं द्वयम् ।
दुग्धपिष्टः प्रलेपोऽयं दारुणं हन्ति दारुणम् ॥

Śāraṅgadhara Saṁhitā.

छर्द्याम्

बीजपूराम्रजम्बूनां पल्लवानि जटाः पृथक् ।
विपचेत् पुटपाकेन क्षौद्रयुक्तश्च तद्रसः ॥
छर्दिं निवारयेद् घोरं सर्वदोषमुद्भयाम् ।

Śāraṅgadhara Saṁhitā.

ज्वरे

आम्रजम्बूकिसलयैः वटशुङ्गप्ररोहकैः ।
उशीरेण कृतः फाण्टः सक्षौद्रो ज्वरनाशनः ॥

Śāraṅgadhara Saṁhitā.

रक्तपित्ते

आम्रजम्बू च ककुभं चूर्णीकृत्य जले क्षिपेत् ।
हिमं तस्य पिचेत्प्रातः सक्षौद्रं रक्तपित्तजित् ॥

Śāraṅgadhara Saṁhitā.

आम्रत्वचा-मूल-पुष्पगुणाः

आम्रत्वचा कषाया च मूलं सौगन्धि तादृशम् ।

रुच्यं संग्राहि शिशिरः पुष्पं तु रुचिदीपनम् ॥

Raja Nighaṅṭu.

बालाम्रगुणाः

आमं बालं कषायाम्लं रुच्यं मारुतपित्तकृत् ।
तरुणं तु तदत्यम्लं रूक्षं दोषत्रयास्त्रकृत् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu.

आम्रपेशिका गुणाः

आम्रमामं त्वचाहीनमातपेऽतिविशोषितम् ।
अम्लं स्वादु कषायं स्याद भेदनं कफवातजित् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu.

आम्रास्थितैलगुणाः

आम्रतैलं तु तुवरं स्वादु रूक्षं च पित्तलम् ।
सुगन्धि मुखरोगस्य नाशनं कफवातनुत् ॥

Nighaṅṭu Ratnākāra.

आम्रान्तस्त्वग्गुणाः

आम्रान्तस्त्वग् ग्राहिणी तु तुवरा दाहकारिणी ।
पित्तमेहकफानाहनाशिनी योनिशुद्धिकृत् ॥

Nighaṅṭu, Ratnākāra.

आम्रत्वग्गुणाः

आम्रत्वचा कषाया च मूलं सौगन्धि ताहशम् ।
रुच्यं संग्राहि शिशिरं, पुष्पं रोचनदीपनम् ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu.

आम्रमूलगुणाः

आम्रमूलन्तु तुवरं ग्राहि शीतं रुचिप्रदम् ।
सुगन्धि कफवातानां नाशनं परिकीर्तितम् ॥

Nighaṅṭu Ratnākāra.

पक्काम्रः

पक्ककवन्तु मधुरं वृष्यं स्निग्धं बालसुखप्रदम् ।
गुरु वातहरं हृद्यं वर्ण्यं शीतमपित्तलम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu.

आम्रखण्डगुणाः

आम्रखण्डं गुरु परं रोचनं चिरपाकि च ।
मधुरं बृंहणं वल्यं शीतलं वातनाशनम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu.

(क) क्षुद्राम्रगुणाः

- अ. कोशाग्रमम्लमनिलापहरं कफार्ति-
पित्तप्रदं गुरु विदाहविशोफकारि ।
ब. पक्वं भवेन्मधुरमीषदपारमम्लं
पट्वादियुक्तरुचिदीपनपुष्टिवल्यम् ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu.

(ख) राजाम्रगुणाः

राजाम्राः कोमलाः सर्वे कट्वम्लाः पित्तदाहदाः ।
सुपक्वाः स्वादुमाधुर्याः पुष्टिवीर्यवलप्रदाः ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu.

आम्रपानकम्

सुपक्वमाम्रस्य फलं सुमुष्टिना समहितं शर्करया समन्वितम् ।
एलालवंगमार्द्रकवासवासितं वर्णान्वितं कस्य च रोचकद्रदम् ॥
पानकं त्वाम्रसम्भूतं स्यादम्लं गुरु पित्तजित् ।
सुहृद्यं श्लेष्मकृद्वल्यं वर्ण्यं वृष्यं रुचिप्रदम् ॥

Kṣemakoutūhalam.

ĀMRAGANDHIHARIDRĀ-ARANYAHARIDRĀ

ĀMRAGANDHIHARIDRĀ

Botanical name : Curcuma amada Roxb.

Family : Scitaminaceae

Classical name : Āmrāgandhiharidrā

Sanskrit names : Āmrāgandhiharidrā, Sugandhā

Regional names

Saphedhaldi, Amahaldi (Hind.), Ama ada (Beng.),
Pandhari hald (Mar.) Saphed haldar (Guj.), Samidi allam
(Tam.), Karu-vasupu (Tel), Ambahaladi (Urd.), Amada
(Bengal), Amkladrak (Deccan), Ambahaldi (Canerese),

Darchuha (Pers.), Mamidiallam (Tel.), Mango ginger (Eng.).

Description

Annual herb. Rootstock large; sessile tubers thick, cylindrical or ellipsoid, pale yellow inside. Leaves long-petiolate, in tufts; the blade 30-40 by 7.5-12.5 cm., oblong-lanceolate, acute or acuminate, narrowed to the base, glabrous and green on both sides; petioles as long as the leaf-blade (30-45 cm.). Flowers in autumnal spikes 7.5-15 by 3.8-5 cm. in the centre of the tuft of leaves; peduncle 15 cm. long or more; flowering bracts 2.5 cm. long, greenish white, bracts of the coma longer and narrower, tinged with pink or red; Calyx nearly 13 mm. long, obtusely 3-toothed. Corolla white or very pale yellow; tube about 2.5 cm. long; lobes oblong, acute. Lip semielliptic, yellow, 3-lobed, the middle lobe emarginate.

Root stock smells like odour of mango fruit, and appears like ginger rhizome; and the source plant, resembles Turmeric herb; and these features combine in popular name Mango-Ginger, in category of Turmeric drugs group.

Flowering and fruiting time

Autumn season.

Distribution

Plant is found in West Bengal and western India; the Malay Peninsula Western Peninsula. Malay Archipelago.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Tikta, Kaṭu (Anurasa-madhura)
Guna	: Śīta, Rūkṣa, Laghu
Vīrya	: Śīta
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakṛma	: Pitaśāmaka, Vātavardhaka, Kaphaśāmaka.

Action and properties

Karma	: Dīpana, pitaśāmaka Raktadoṣahara-kaṇḍughna Daharasamana, Grahi-stambhana Jvaraghna-svedala, Mūtrala Kaphaniḥsaraka-kaphaghna
-------	--

Roga	Śothahara-vedanasthapana Saraka-pācana, Vṛṣya, Katupaustika. : Kasa-śvasa-hikka, jvara-sannipatajvara Tvagvikara-kandu-pama Śoṭha-abhigatajanya śoṭha-vedanā Vrana, Gṛdhrasi Mukharoga-mukhapāka Karṇaroga-mūtravikāra-mūtrakṛccha Hṛdvikāra, Atisāra-agnimāndya-arocaka Daurbalya.
------	--

Therapeutic uses

The rhizome is useful as bitter, cooling, astringent, laxative and anodyne. It is used as an antiphlogistic or countering drug against inflammatory and painful conditions and traumatic troubles. Roots are useful as an alexiteric and aphrodisiac.

The rhizomes are popular remedy for sprains and contusions, other traumatic complaints. The paste, powder and other suitable form with adjuvants are applied topically on the effected body organs, for relieving inflammation, pains and other complications. It is also useful in lumbago and nerve pains.

The roots are externally applied to scabies, itchy affections, ulcers, sores and other skin diseases, and also troubles in the mouth, ear, penis (ulcertion) and gleet. It is recommended in all kinds of itching and cutaneous affections.

The rhizomes are useful in cough, asthma hiccup, heart troubles, biliousness, constipation, dyspepsia and diarrhoea.

Part used : Rhizome

Dose : 1-3 gms. powder.

ĀMRAGANDHI HARIDRĀ

(आम्रगन्धिहरिद्रा)

कर्पूरहरिद्रा

क. दार्वीभेदाऽऽस्त्रगन्धा च सुरभीदारुदारु च ।

ख. कर्पूरः पअपत्रा स्यात्सुरभिसुरतारका ॥
 आम्रगन्धिर्हरिद्रा या सा शीता वातला मता ।
 पित्तहा मधुरा तिक्ता सर्वकण्डूविनाशिनी ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Harītakyādi varga, 118-119.

वनहरिद्रा

‘अरण्यहलदी कन्दः कुष्ठवातास्रनाशनः ।’

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Harītakyādi varga, 200.

आम्रगन्धिहरिद्रा

आम्रगन्ध्या हरिद्रा तु शीतला वाताला तथा ।
 पित्तहृत् स्वादुतिक्ता च वृष्या स्यात्सन्निपातजित् ॥

Kaṣyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhī varga, 1118.

अरण्य-वनहरिद्रा-तवक्षीरः

तवक्षीरं पयःक्षीरं यवजं गवयोद्भवम् ।
 अन्यद्गोधूमजं चान्यत्पिष्टिका तण्डुलोद्भवम् ॥
 अन्यच्च तालसम्भूतं तालक्षीरादिनामकम् ।
 वनगोक्षीरजं श्रेष्ठमभावेऽन्यदुदीरितम् ॥

तवक्षीरगुणाः

तवक्षीरं तु मधुरं शिशिरं दाहपित्तनुत् ।
 क्षयकासकफश्वासनाशनं चाऽऽस्रदोषनुत् ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Pipplīyādi varga, 88-90.

ARANYAHARIDRĀ

Botanical name : Curcuma aromatica Salisb.

Family : Soitaminaceae

Classical name : Araṇyaharidrā-Vanahridrā

Sanskrit names

Araṇyaharidrā, Vana (Vanya) haridrā, karpūraharidrā, Araṇyahaladikanda, Dārvībheda, Asragandhā, Surabhidāru, Dāru.

Regional names

Banhaldi, Kapurhaldi, Jangalihaldi, (Hindi), Amahaldi (Local), Banhalud (Bengal), Badanhald,

Ambehaldi (Bombay), Kasturiarishma (Canarese), Kapurkachali, Vanhaladara (Guj.), Banhallad (Konk.) Anskuma (Mal.), Kattumammar (Mal.), Banhalada, (Shuli), (Mar.), kasturimanjal (Tam.), Judwar (Arab.), Darchouba (Pers.); Wild Turmeric, Cochin Turmeric, Yellow Zedoary (Eng.).

Description

Herb. Rootstock large, of palmately branched, sessile, annulate biennial tubers yellow and aromatic inside. Leaves 38-60 by 10-20 cm., oblong-elliptic or oblong-lanceolate, caudate-acuminate, green, often variegated above, pubescent beneath, base deltoid; petioles as long as or longer than the blade. Flowering stem appearing with or before the leading stem, as thick as the forefinger sheathed. Flowers fragrant, shorter than the bracts, in spikes 15-50 cm., long; flowering bracts 3.8-5 cm. long, ovate, recurved, cymbiform, rounded at the tip, pale green, connate below forming pouches for the flowers; bracts of the coma 5.7-5 cm. long, more or less tinged with red or pink, Calyx 8mm. long, irregularly 3-lobed. Corolla-tube 2.5 cm. long, the upper half funnel-shaped; lobes pale rose-coloured, the lateral lobes oblong, the dorsal longer, ovate, concave, arching over the anthers. Lip yellow, obovate, deflexed, subentire or obscurely 3-lobed. Lateral staminodes oblong, obtuse, as long as the corolla-lobes.

Flowering and fruiting time

Summer season.

Plant appears like Turmeric herb, and rhizome like potato (inside orange colour and thick) and smelling like camphorous odour; and these feature combine in its popular name.

Distribution

Bengal, Western Peninsula; wild and sometime cultivated. It is found in almost throughout India specially in Mysore, Malabar forests; also cultivated in various parts of country.

Chemical composition

Rhizome contains volatile oil, resin, white substance,

mucilāginous matter, sugar, exudation, yellow colouring matter, albuminoides and an active substance cucumin.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Tikta, Kaṭu
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphavātaśāmaka Pittarecaka-pittaśāmaka (Tridoṣahara)

Action and properties

Karma	: Kaṇḍughna-kuṣṭhaghna Tvacya-varṇya Raktaprasādana-śodhaka-rodhaka Kaṭupauṣṭika-Dīpana-pācana Vedanāsthāpana-sothahara Viṣphoṭahara, Viṣaghna, Grāhi Vātaghna, Kāсахara-kaphaghna.
Roga	: Kuṣṭha-śvetakuṣṭha Tvagvikāra-kaṇḍu-visphoṭa Raktadoṣajavikāra-raktaśuddhi Daurbalya, Jvara, Kāsa-kaphavikāra Śoṭha-abhighātajanyaroga-vedanā Viṣa-sarpaviṣa Udaravikāra-agnimāndya, Sirahśūla Masūrikā, Vātavikara.

Therapeutic uses

The rhizome is useful as bitter tonic, appetizer, anti-dote to venom, blood purifier, tonic, carminative, antiphlogistic, analgesic, and some other ailments. It is generally used externally.

The rhizome is used in general debility as tonic and stomach troubles, dyspepsia, anorexia as carminative.

The rhizome is considered useful for administering in small doses, (also with costus and carum) in snakebite as an anti-dote against snake bite.

Rootstock is used externally in skin diseases, scabies, eruption of small-pox and itch. It is useful in leucoderma and diseases of blood and caused by its impurities.

It is applied to promote the eruption of exanthemations fevers; it is seldom used alone; but is combined with astringent when applied to bruises, and with bitters and aromatics to promote eruptions.

The rhizome is considered a common remedy by rubbing into a paste with benzoin to the forehead for headache.

Parts used : Rhizome.

Dose : 1-3 gms.

ARANYAHARIDRĀ (अरण्यहरिद्रा)

वनहरिद्रा-अरण्यहरिद्रा

‘अरण्यहलदी कन्दः कुष्ठवातास्त्रनाशनः ।’

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Harīṭakyādi varga, 200.

कर्पूरहरिद्रा

दावी भेदाऽऽस्त्रगन्धा च सुरभीदारुदारु च ।

कर्पूरः पअपत्रास्यात्सुरभि सुरतारका ॥

आम्रगन्धिर्हरिद्रा या सा शीता वातला मता ।

पित्तहा मधुरा तिक्ता सर्वकण्डूविनाशिनी ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Harīṭakyādi varga, 118-119.

ANKOṬA

Botanical name

Alangium salvifolium (Linn. f.) Wang.

Alangium lamarkii Thw.

Family : Alangiaceae

Classical name

Aṅkoṭa-aṅkola

Sanskrit names

Aṅkoṭa-Ankoṭha, Aṅkola-Aṅkolla, Dīrghakīla-Harikīla-Kīla, Talakoṭa, Nikocaka, Akallaka, Recī-Recana, Gandha-puṣpī, Guptasneha-Tailagarbha-Pitasāra, Tāmra-phala.

Regional names

Akola, Ankola, Ankollaka, Dhera (Hind.), Ankola,

Akol (Guj.), Ankol (Mar.) Akodasaghakida (Beng.), Amkolam (Tel.), Elangi (Tam.); Alangy (Eng.).

Description

A small tree more or less spinescent branches; bark light coloured; young parts pubescent. Leaves variable 7.5-12.5 by 2.5-5.6 cm., narrowly oblong to ovate-lanceolate, more or less acuminate, subobuse. entire, glabrous above, pubescent on the nerves and prominently reticulately veined beneath, base rounded or acute; petioles 6-13 mm., long, densely pubescent. Flowers few, in axillary fascicles; pedicels 5-6 mm. long, densely pubescent; teeth triangular 0.85 mm. long; petals 5-10 (usually 6), densely pubescent outside. 1.3-2cm. long and about 5 mm., white, narrowly linear, reflexed; stamens numerous (usually more than 20), nearly as long as the petals; filaments hairy at the base; style as long as the stamens; stigma very large; flowers yellowish white and odorous. Fruits when young avoid or ellipsoid, becoming nearly globular when ripe 1.3-2 cm diam. crowned by the persistent calyx-limb, finely pubescent, nor obscurely ribbed, purplish red, endocarp bony; albumen fleshy outside, friable inside, not at all ruminant; cotyledons foliaceous, flat, not crumpled.

Flowering and fruiting time

Spring to summer season.

Distribution

It is found throughout India specially in tropical, mountaneous drier regions; abundantly in Konkan region; Uttar Pradesh, Gujrat, Bihar and Madhya pradesh and various parts of country. China, Malaya, Ceylon and Philippines in other parts of Asia.

Chemical composition

Barks contains active principle Alangine.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Tikta, Kaṭu, Kaśāya
Guṇa	: Laghu, Snigdha, Tikṣṇa, Sara
Doṣkarsa	: Kaphavātaśamaka, Pittasamśodhana Kaphapittaśamaka (phala-fruit)
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu

Action and properties

- Karma** : Viṣaghna-jaṅgamviṣaharṇ
 Vedanāsthāpana
 Recana-saraka-vamaka
 Śūlapraśamana-Kṛmighna
 Ykr̥duttejaka
 Raktabhārahṛāsaka-hṛdaya-rakta
 vāhini prasāraka,
 Kuṣṭhaghna-śothahara-raktaśodhaka
 Mūtrala, Rasāyana-balya-br̥mhaṇa
 Vīryastambhaka, Kaṭupauṣṭika.
- Roga**
- (a) Abhyāntara : Viṣa-jāṅgama-matsya-mūṣaka-lūtā-
 kukkura-sarpādi
 Garadoṣa-Dantakāṣṭhaviṣa
 Jalodara-arśa-kṛmi-atisāra
 Raktabhārādhikya
- (b) Bāhya : Śōtha-raktavikāra
 Pūyameha-mūtrakṛcchavikāra
 Kuṣṭha-visarpa-phiranga-tvagdoṣa
 Jvara-daurbalya, Kāmalā,
 Bhūta-grahadoṣa. Viṣa-jaṅgama
 Vedanā-śōtha, vraṇa, Tvagvikāra

Therapeutic uses

The root is useful as acrid, bitter, slightly pungent, oily, sharp, heating, anthelmintic, alterative and bitter tonic. The roots are useful for treating erysepalas, biliousness, inflammation, snakebite and fish-poison.

The juice is useful as emetic, alexipharmic and cures diseases due to provocation of Vāta and Pitta, pain inflammation and oedema, diseases due to blood impurities, hydrophobia, rat-bite, lumbago, dysentery, diarrhoea and worms.

The seeds have taste and flavour and they are useful as cooling, aphrodisiac, indigestible tonic and laxative. They are used for treating burning sensation, consumption, biliousness and erysepalas. They cause or provoke kapha and loss of appetite.

The root bark is used in piles. The stem is good in vomiting and diarrhoea. The fruits are useful as sweet, laxative, expectorant, carminative, anthelmintic, alexiteric and oily. They are used in the treatment of inflammation, diseases of blood, burning sensation of whole body, wasting disease, spermatorrhoea, gleet, acute fever and lumbage. The root bark is used in traditional medicine as an athelmintic and purgative medicine. The leaves are used as a poultice for relieving rheumatic pains. In tribal medicine the roots are used as a purgative in dyspepsia and also in gout; and it is used against poisons, worms and joints pain.

The fruits are useful as cooling and tonic medicine and used in burning sensation of body and general debility.

It is an efficient and safe emetic in dose of 15 grains; and in smaller doses it is nauseant and febrifuge. The bark is very bitter, and it is reputed in skin diseases. It is a good substitute for drug Ipecacuanha; and proves useful in all diseases in which the latter is indicated except dysentery. It has been useful as a diaphoretic and antipyretic for relieving pyrexia.

The root bark is used as a nauseant, diuretic and febrifuge, in the doses of 6 to 10 grains; and used as an alterative in dose of 2 to 5 grains and useful in leprosy and syphilis. It is considered as an alexiteric, especially in cases of bites from rabid animals.

The powdered root bark in dose of 60 grains is made into a bolus and given in cases of cobra poisoning in traditional practice. Both the bark and the roots are prescribed as an antidote to snake-venom.

The roots containing alloid alangine are given as decoction or infusion with ghee for bites of dogs and vermin, worms, colic and inflammation. The roots act as a hydrogogue cathartic and useful in dropsy and other similar disorders.

The roots and root-bark are used in rat-bite, fish poison-bite, dog bite-rabies and bites-poisons of other poisonous animals of this category. It is specifically recommended in snake bite cases.

The root bark is powdered and used with rice-water as a snuff in condition of jaundice. This recipe is orally used in cases of the diarrhoea, dysentery and other diarrhoeal complaints.

The fruit oil is medicinally suseful and recommended in treatment of various diseases. As an alternative and restorative medicine, the snuff of oil is prescribed and it helps longevity and vitality. This oil is used in skin diseases, scabies, itch, blood impurities complaints; and it counters provoked Vāta and Pitta, and it is good heathy hairs. The oil is considered helps to enhance semen ejaculation period during coitus if it is locally applied over umblicus region of male. The oil is externally applied over painful organs or complaints with pain predominance, ulcers, wounds, scabies, itchy and cuataneous affections.

The root bark is made into a paste and it is externally applied over body part bitten by poisonous rate, snakes, dogs, jackals and other animals, for countering poisonous effect and allaying the pains, inflammation and other symptoms.

Root bark is a hypotensive agent and considered useful in cases of hypertension as it reduces or control the blood pressure. Injection (intravenous) of Alangine sulphate (Alangine is main active alkaloid of plant) fastly lowers blood presure upto 30-40 mm, and with in 1-2 minutes, the blood pressure becomes normal in experiment.

The flowers are also used as in case of treating poisonous collyrium, the flowers are rubbed and their collyrium is applied into eyes.

Parts used

Root, Rootbark, Fruits, Seeds, Fruit oil (seeds oil)
Leaves.

Doses

15 grain to 3 gms. (emesis).

2-10 grains (powder in diseases) 60 grains (poison antidote) seeds oil (external application).

Root bark

40-50 grains (as emetic); 6-10 grains (as diaphoretic); 2-5 grains (as bitter tonic) and higher doses (in poisnous bites).

Formulation

Āṅkola Taila, Āṅkoṭa vaṭakam.

ĀṅKOTA (अङ्कोट)

अङ्कोटो दीर्घकीलः स्यादङ्कोलश्च निकोचकः ।
 अङ्कोटकः कटुस्तीक्ष्णः स्निग्धाष्णस्तुवरो लघुः ॥
 रेचनः कृमिशूलामशोफग्रहविषापहः ।
 विसर्पकफपित्तास्रमूषकाहिवषापहः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Gudūcyādi varga, 139-140.

- क. अङ्कोटोऽकोल्लको रेची गन्धपुष्पी निकोचकः ।
 हरिकीली दीर्घकीलो गुसस्त्रेहश्च भूषितः ॥
 पीतसारस्ताम्रफलो हुण्डिका रूढमल्लिका ।
- ख. अङ्कोलस्तिककः स्निग्धः तीक्ष्णोष्णस्तुवरः कटुः ।
 वामनो रेचनो हन्ति शूलशोफग्रहकृमीन् ॥
 विसर्पकफपित्तास्रकुक्कुराखुविषं विषम् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 925-928.

अङ्कोलः

अङ्कोलः कोठरो रेची गूढपत्रो निकोचकः ।
 गुसस्त्रेहः पीतसारो मदनो गूढमल्लिका ॥
 पीतस्ताम्रफली ज्ञेयो दीर्घकालो गुणाद्यकः ।
 कोलः कोलम्बकर्णश्च गन्धपुष्पश्च रेचनः ।
 विज्ञानतैलगर्भश्च स्मृतिसंख्याभिधा स्मृतः ॥

अङ्कोलगुणाः

अङ्कोलः कटुकः स्निग्धो विषलूतादिदोषनुत् ।
 कफानिलहरः सूतशुद्धिकृत् सेचनीयकः ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Prabhadvādi varga, 73-75.

अङ्कोलतैलम्

अङ्कोलतैलमभ्यङ्गात् त्वग्दोषकफवातनुत् ॥
 भावनात् सर्वबीजानामङ्कुरं जनयेत् क्षणात् ।
 पित्तानिलमाशु हन्यात्तैलं स्वादु च केशकृत् ।
 लेपनात् सर्वकुष्ठघ्नं पानाच्छोणितनाशनम् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Taila Varga, 334-335.

अतिसारे अङ्गोलकल्कम्

अङ्गोलमूलकल्कस्तण्डुलपयसा समाक्षिकः पीतः ।
सेतुरिव वारिवेगं झटिति निरुध्यादतीसारम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Jvarādhikāra, 1-35.

मत्स्यविषे अङ्गोलपत्रधूमः

अङ्गोटपत्रधूमो मीनविषं झटिति विघट्टये च्छृङ्गी ।’

Cakradatta, Viṣa cikitsā, 24.

अङ्गोलः स्निग्धतीक्ष्णोष्णः कटुको वातनाशनः ।
कुक्कुराखु विषं हन्ति ग्रहजन्तुविषापहः ॥
भूतहृद् विषहृच्चैव कण्ठशूलस्य शोधनः ।

Dhanvantari Nighaṇṭu.

‘श्लेष्मलं गुरु विष्टम्भि चाङ्गोटफलमग्निजित् ।’

Caraka Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 27.

वीर्यस्तम्भनार्थम्

‘वरमङ्गोलतैलेन नाभिलेपोऽपि वीर्यधृक् ।’

Rasaratnākara.

रसायने

नस्यै चाङ्गोलतैलेन कुर्यान्मृत्युजरापहम् ।
निष्कार्धनिष्कं वर्षेकं जीवेद् वर्षशतत्रयम् ॥

Rāsaratnākara.

कामलायाम्

अङ्गोलमूलमथवाऽर्कजटा प्रपिष्टा ।
स्वच्छेन तण्डुलजलेन सुसंप्रयत्नात् ॥
.....स्यात्कामलामयहरो कृतनावनानाम् ।

Śoḍhala.

मत्स्यविषे

अङ्गोलवृक्षदलधूपविधानयोगान्-
नाशं प्रयाति विषमाशु नरस्य मात्स्यम् ।
धूपः पुनः कटुकतैलनृकेशसक्तु-
क्लृप्तोऽस्य दंशपदके सुतरां प्रशस्तः ॥

Śoḍhala.

गरदोषे

अङ्कोटमूलानि क्वाथं फणितं सघृतं लिहेत् ।
तैलाक्तः स्वित्रसर्वाङ्गो गरदोषविषापहः ॥

Cakradatta viṣa. 17.

अतिसारे

तण्डुलजलविष्टाङ्कोटमूलकर्षार्द्धपानमपहरति ।
सर्वातिसारग्रहणीरोगसमूहं महाघोरम् ॥

Cakradatta. 3-52.

श्वविषे

‘....क्षीरेण परिपेषिता ।
अङ्कोटवंशजा वापि श्वविषघ्नी प्रयत्नतः ॥’

Bhāvaprakāśa.

विषसंसृष्टे अञ्जने

‘एकैकं कारयेत् पुष्पं बन्धूकाङ्कोटयो-रपि ।’

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Kalpa. 1-72.

दन्तकाष्ठगते विषे

‘अथवाऽङ्कोटमूलानि..... ।’

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Kalpa 1-50.

अङ्कोलोऽङ्गुलिपत्रः स्यात् पादपो दृढमूलकः ।
शुभ्रपुष्पो ताम्रफलः कण्टकी वनवासी च ॥

Śivadatta.

सर्वातिसारे अङ्कोट वटकः—

Cakradatta, 3/56-58.

अतिसारे अङ्कोट वटकम्

पलमङ्कोटमूलस्य पाठां दार्वीञ्च तत्समाम् ।
पिष्ट्वा तण्डुलतोयेन वटकानक्षसम्मितान् ॥
छायाशुष्कांश्च तान्कुर्यात्तेष्वेकं तण्डुलाम्बुना ।
पेषयित्वा प्रदद्यात्तं पानाय गदिने भिषक् ॥
वातपित्तकफोद्भूतान्द्वन्द्वजान्सन्निपातिकान् ।
हन्यात्सर्वानतीसारान्वटकोऽयं प्रयोजितः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Atisāradhikara. 2-96-98.

APĀMĀRGA

Botanical name : *Achyranthes aspera* Linn.

Family : Amaranthaceae

Classical name : Apāmārga

Sanskrit names

Pratykpūspā, Śikhari, Kharamañjari, Kiṇihī, Adhaḥśalya, Mayūraka.

Regional names

Chirchita, Chichrha, Latjira, Apamarg (Hind.) Apang (Beng.), Aghedo (Guj.), Najurivi (Tam.), Apamargam (Tel). Alkum (Arab.), Kharevajgun (Pers.); Chaff Tree, Prickly-chaff Flower, Rough-chaff Tree.

Description

Erect stiff, annual-perennial herbs, often with a woody base. Stems simple or branched from the base, often tinged with reddish, purple, ribbed, viscid-pubescent. Leaves ovate-elliptic or obovate-rounded, with a cuneate or rounded base, acute or acuminate or obtuse, crispy-undulate, glabrous to pubescent, 3-10 (-15) X 2-6 (-7) cm. Petiole 0.5-2 cm. long. Spikes up to 75cm. long; rachis appressedly or patently hairy. Bracts and bracteoles subequal, ovate, spinescent. Tepals 5, subequal, greenish, ovate-lanceolate, sharply acute, 0.35-0.6 X 0.1-0.15 cm. Pseudo-staminodes truncate or irregularly dentate at apex. 0.1-0.12 cm. long (incl. tube). Utricle 0.2-0.25 cm. long. Plant is very variable in habit, degree of hairiness, size and shape of leaves and length of spikes.

Flowering and fruiting time

Winters to summer seasons.

Distribution

Throughout India. Plant is found common in waste places roadsides, hedges, gardens, fields or farms, forest edges, forest clearings and other places.

Kinds and varieties

There are two varieties of Apāmārga viz. Rakta Apāmārga or red variety and Śveta Apāmārga or white variety and their source plants *Achyranthes rubrofusca* and

Achyranthes aspera respectively. These kinds in classical texts of materia medica (nighaṅṭus) include Raktāpāmārga also as Kṣudrāpāmārga (small and red variety); and classical texts (compendium or saṁhitās) and another (or inclusive) variety as Daurdaṇḍāpāmārga (a sub-variety with whitish stem or daṇḍa by Vāgbhaṭa, Sūtra. 1-39).

Other plants are also indicated as kinds or varieties (sources) of Apāmārga e.g. Achyranthes bidentata Bl., A. porphyistachys and A. argentea.

Chemical composition

The plant (whole herb) and seeds contain alkaline substance specially potash.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṭu, Tikta
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa, Tikṣṇa
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakṛma	: Kaphavātaśāmaka Kaphapittaśaṁśodhaka

Action and properties

Karma	: Dīpana-pācana-kṛmighna-rocana Saṅgrāhi, pittaśaraka-pittaśaṁśodhaka Durjara-viṣṭambhi (bija or seeds) raktaprasādana Hṛdya-raktaśodhaka-raktavardhaka- śothahara, Kaphaniḥśaraka Mūtrala-aśmarīhara-mūtrām-latāhara Svedajanana-kaṇḍūghna Kaṭupauṣṭika-viṣaghna Sophaghna-vedanāsthāpana- viṣaghna, Vraṇaśodhana Raktarodhaka, Śirovirecana Medohara-lekhana-vātakaphaghna Arśoghna, Vāntikṛta.
-------	--

Roga

(a) Ābhyantara	: Udararoga-śūla-ādhmāna-viṣūcikā Aruci-chardi-agnimāndya Bhasmaka-atyagnivikāra (seeds) Arśa-kṛmi-pittāśmarī
----------------	--

Āmavāta-śoṭha-gaṇḍamālā
 Hṛdroga-hṛdgraha-ruja
 Raktavikāra-pāṇḍu-śoṭha,
 Kāsa-śvāsa-hikkā, Pārśvaśūlavikāra,
 Aśmarī-bastīśoṭha-vṛkkaśoṭha-mūtra
 Carmaroga-varṇavikāra-dadru-
 kuṣṭha-kaṇḍū-apacī-vraṇa-viṣa
 Śīroroga.

(b) Bāhya : Jvara-sāmānya-daurbalya
 Śoṭhavedanā (Yuktavikāra)
 Vraṇa-apacī-gaṇḍamālā-sadyovraṇa-
 raktasrāva, Kuṣṭha-tvagvikāra
 Netravikāra-arma-śukla,
 Karṇaroga-pūti-vādhirya,
 Viṣa-sarpa-vṛṣcika-damśa.

Therapeutic uses

The plant possesses various medicinal properties and useful as pungent, laxative, anti-dermatosis, wound healer, blood purifier, poison antidote and cholagogue drug, and also for other activities.

It is considered useful in doopsy, piles, boils, eruptions of skin and other diseases. The dried plant is given to children for colic, and also as anastringent in gonorrhoea. Plant is crushed in water and boiled, and this solution is given in treating pneumonia.

The infusion of roots of plant is given as a mild astringent. Plant's infusion is applied to the wounds caused by Acacia (Babula) thorns in the forests as per forest-tribal practices.

The plant is used in acute stage of coughs and rheumatism. The seeds and leaves are considered emetic and are useful in hydrophobia. The juice of leaves is given in dysentery and diarrhoea.

The flowering spikes made into pills with a little sugar is popular preventive medicine for persons bitten by rabid dogs and this kind of herbal therapy is prevalent in certain rural areas.

The ash of the whole plant (alkalies of kṣāra) is prepared by burning of herb and it contains potash in a large

quantity and the same is used in treatment of coughs and asthma. The ash is mixed with sesamum oil (Tila taila) and used externally over wounds, ulcers and on warts of penis (male genital) and also other parts of body. The ash of whole plant (Apāmārga) is mixed and prepared with sesame oil (Apāmārga Kṣāra taila) and dropped into ear as an effective remedy for ear complaints.

The herb is commonly used as a depurative, astringent, diuretic and pectoral remedy. The roots are given in puerperal, pulmonary, syphilitic and rheumatismal troubles. It is also used in ophthalmia, dropsy and various cutaneous complaints.

An infusion of the roots is used as an emetic for pains in the chest not due to cough. The steam coming from boiling the whole herb is inhaled and also used it as a hot bath for checking acute chills and this kind of fomentation causes sweating and relieving chills and fever temperature.

Whole plant or almost every part of the herb are recommended as a good remedy in treatment of snake-bite and scorpion-sting. Roots of the plants are pounded with black pepper (kali mirach) and given orally with water in cases of snake bite for checking venomous poison.

A paste of fresh leaves is topically applied over insect bites. The herb is used in various forms against the scorpion-sting as well as snake bite and whole plant or its particular parts are frequently administered internally as well as externally both. This carries classical (textual) and traditional background. The plant is also esteemed to apply in magico-medical therapy (Tantra-mantra cikitsā) against the scorpion-bite other than two major modes oral and topical usage of drug. For the instance, a fresh plant is plucked and repeatedly touched downwards for extracting out the poison from scorpion-bite point under traditional belief of specific herbal effect (prabhavājanyakarman).

The plant is also considered as an anti-appetizer with special reference. The seeds are boiled in milk and given in cases of over or excessive appetite (Bhasmika and atyagni), though plant has normally appetizer property. The herb is

sometimes claimed to help control appetite (ksudhaniyantraka or naśaka).

A paste of the roots is applied in ophthalmia and opacity of the cornea in eye complaints. An infusion of the roots is a mild astringent and it is used for bowel complaints, night-blindness, skin diseases and other complaints; it is also given in cases of menorrhagia, piles and inflammation of internal organs.

The juice of leaves or plant is used in large doses to hasten labour pains or may cause abortion.

The ash of the seed containing a high proportion of potash and therefore the ash is an important constituent of alkaline medicines and caustic pastes; and the ash is antacid. It is recommended in respiratory ailments and other various disorders in different modes suitably.

The mixture of ash made of whole plant and four times its weight of water is allowed to stand for 24 hours; and the residue obtained by evaporating the supernatant liquid; and it is finally used as a powder in colic, cough, asthma and several other ailments with honey or any other adjuvant as required in treatment. The calcinated powder is also given in splenic disorders.

The spikes of herb is rubbed or chewed to help the tooth and gums healthy as a dentifrice application. The leaves are warmed up little over heat and juice is extracted; the expressed juice is topically applied over fresh cuts and bleeding for checking it as a styptic and coagulant remedy; the fresh leaves paste is also applied for the purpose of treating wounds.

The water obtained from washing rice (taṇḍulodaka) is mixed with seeds and it is orally used in bleeding piles or haemorrhoids. The leaves of herb are used to check vaginal pain and leaves are locally applied in vagina for relieving pain. The leaves, branch, root and spikes are combined and put into water for boiling to prepare decoction which is orally given in cases of asthma.

The herb is one of the highly medicinally potent and common drug in Indian medicine and prevalent as a valuable plant.

Parts used : Whole Plant, Leaves, Spikes, Roots, Seeds.

Formulation : Apāmārga Kṣāra, Apāmārga Kṣāra Taila.

Dose : Fresh juice 5-10 ml., Decoction 10-15 ml.,
Seeds powder 1-3 gms.

Ash

1-2 grains, 2-5 grains, 8-16 grains.

APĀMĀRGA (अपामार्ग)

अपामार्गः कटुस्तिक्तस्तीक्ष्णोष्णो दीपनः सरः ॥

पाचनो वामनश्छेदी कफमेदोऽनिलापहः ।

निहन्ति शूलहिध्माशःकण्डूदद्रूदरापचीः ॥

Kaiyādeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 1033-1034.

अपामार्गः सरस्तीक्ष्णो दीपनस्तिक्तकः कटुः ।

पाचनो रोचनश्छर्दिकफमेदोऽनिलापहः ।

निहन्ति हद्रुजाध्मार्शःकण्डूशूलोदरापचीः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Guḍūcyādi varga, 220

रक्तापामार्गः

अपामार्गेऽरुणो वातविष्टम्भी कफहृद्भिः ।

रूक्षः पूर्वगुणैर्न्यूनः कथितो गुणवेदिभिः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Guḍūcyādi varga, 221-222.

अपामार्गफलम्

अपामार्गफलं स्वादु रसे पाके च दुर्जरम् ।

विष्टम्भि वातलं रूक्षं रक्तपित्तप्रसादनम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Guḍūcyādi varga, 223.

अपामार्गगुणाः

अपामार्गस्तु तिक्तोष्णः कटुकः कफनाशनः ।

अर्शःकण्डूदरकासघ्नो रक्तहृद् ग्राहि वान्तिकृत् ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Śatāhvādi varga. 91

क्षुद्रापामार्गः (रक्तापामार्गः)

रक्तोऽपामार्गकः शीतः कटुकः कफवातनुत् ।

व्रणकण्डूविषघ्नश्च संग्राही वान्तिकृत् परः ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Śatāhvādi varga, 93.

‘प्रत्यक्पुष्पा शिरोविरेचनानाम् ।’

Caraka Samhitā, Sūtra, 25.

अपामार्गस्तु तिक्तोष्णः कटुकः कफनाशनः ।

अर्शःकण्डूदरामघ्नो रक्त हृद्ग्राहिवान्तिकृत् ॥

Dhanvantari Nighaṅṭu.

पार्श्वशूलादिषु अपामार्गक्षारतैलम्

बलाकदल्यपामार्गक्षारैः प्रत्येकशः स्रुतै ।

तैलं पक्त्वा भिषग्दद्यादुदराणां प्रशान्तये ॥

निवर्तते चोदरिणां हृद्ग्रहश्चानिलोद्भवः ।

Caraka Samhitā, cikitsā 13-171.

विषूचिकारोगे मूलम्

‘जलपीतमपामार्गमूलं हन्याद्विषूचिकाम् ।’

Bhāvaprakāśa, Jaṭharāgnivikārādhikāra, 6-110

विषूचिकारोगे अञ्जनम्

‘अपामार्गस्य पत्राणि मरिचानि समानि च ।

अश्वस्य लालया पिष्ट्वाऽञ्जनाद्भन्ति विषूचिकाम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Jaṭharāgnivikārādhikāra 6-114.

कुष्ठरोगे

शिखरी रसेन पिष्टं मूलकवीजं प्रलेपतःसिध्मम् ।

क्षारेणा वा कदल्या रजनीमिश्रेण नाशयति ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Kuṣṭharogādhikāra, 54-128.

कर्णरोगे (कर्णनादं वाधिर्यञ्च)

शिखरिक्षारजवारि तत्कृतकल्केन साधितं तैलम् ।

अपहरति कर्णनाहं वाधिर्यं चापि पूरणतः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Karṇarogādhikāra, 64-38.

सद्योव्रणेषु रोहणरक्तरोधनञ्च

अपामार्गस्य संसिक्तं पत्रोत्थेन रसेन वा ।

सद्योव्रणेषु रक्तंतु प्रवृत्तं परितिष्ठति ॥

Cakradatta, Vraṇaśoṭhacikitsā, 44-52.

अपामार्ग तैलम्

Rājāmartaṇḍa, 26-7

शस्त्रक्षतेअपामार्गदलालेपः सद्योबध्नाति शोणितम्

Vaidyamārtanḍa, 16-120.

विषमज्वरे अपामार्गजटाबन्धनम्

अपामार्गजटा कट्यां लोहितैः ससतन्तुभिः ।

बद्धा वारे रवेतस्तूर्णं ज्वरं हन्ति तृतीयकम् ॥

Cakradatta, 1-229.

कर्णव्याधिप्रतिकारार्थम् अपामार्गक्षारतैलम्

मार्गक्षारजले तत्कृतकल्केन साधितं तिलजम् ।

अपहरति कर्णनादं वाधिर्यञ्चापि पूरणतः ॥

Cakradatta, Karṇaroga cikitsā, 57-25.

APARĀJITĀ

Botanical name : *Clitoria ternatea* Linn.

Family : Fabaceae (Papilionaceae)

Classical name : Aparājītā-Viṣṇukrāntā

Sanskrit names

Aparājītā, Viṣṇukrāntā, Āsphotā, Girikarnikā.

Regional names

Koyal, Aparajita, Visnukranta (Hind.), Garani (Guj.), Gokarni, Kājali (Mar.); Butterfly Pea, Winged-leaves Clitoria.

Description

A perennial twining herb; stems terete, more or less pubescent. Leaves imparipinnate; petioles 2-2.5 cm. long; stipules 4 mm. long, linear, acute. Leaflets 5-7, subcoriaceous, 2.5-5 by 2-4.2 cm., elliptic-oblong, obtuse, glabrous or with a few short appressed hairs; base obtuse or acute; stipels filiform.

Flowers axillary, solitary; pedicels 8-13 mm. long; bracts small, linear bracteoles 6-13 mm. long, roundish, obtuse, Calyx 1.3-2 cm. long, teeth lanceolate, shorter than the tube. Corolla 3.8-5 cm. long; standard bright-blue or sometimes white; with an orange centre.

Pods 5-10 cm. by 8-13 mm.; flattened, nearly straight, sharply beaked, sparsely appressedly hairy. Seeds 6-10, yellowish brown, smooth.

Flowering and fruiting time

Rainy, Autumn to winter season; Monsoon September-January months.

Distribution

Plant is found common in India and Pakistan. It is cosmopolitan in the tropics. Herb occurs as a pretty climber with beautiful flowers in various provinces of country e.g. Uttar Pradesh, Andhra Pradesh, Assam, Bihar, Madhya Pradesh, Karnataka, Tamilnadu, Jammu and Kashmir, West Bengal, Gujarat and other regions. Cultivated as an ornamental in the gardens and wall, gate or porch climbers.

Kinds and Varieties

Two kinds are mentioned in classical texts viz-White-flowered variety or Śvetapuṣpā Aparājītā, and Blue-flowered variety or Nīlapuṣpā Aparājītā.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Tikta
Guṇa	: Śīta
Vīrya	: Śīta
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Tridoṣahara

Action and Properties

Karma	: Viṣaghna, Kuṣṭhaghna Vedanāsthāpana, Cakṣuṣya, Medhya Kaṅṭhya, Dāhaśāmaka-pittaśāmaka Raktadoṣaśāmaka, Āmapacakā Vraṇaropana, Vājikaraṇa Garbhasthāpana, Jvaraghna, Sāraka-recaka, Mūtrala.
Roga	: Viṣa-sarpaviṣa, Netra-kaṅṭharoga Jvara-dāha, Chardi, Atisāra-āmadoṣa Udararoga-pariṇāmaśūla Raktapitta-raktadoṣa-pittavikāra Śoṭha-ślīpada-valmika, Śukradoṣa-klaibya, Kuṣṭha-śvitra Vraṇa-apaci-galagaṇḍa-granthi Smṛti-buddhi-medhā vikāra- mānasikadoṣa, Balaroga,

Bhūtonmada, Strīroga-garbhasrāva
Mūtravikāra, Kāsa-śvāsa
Koṣṭhaśuddhi-vibandha.

Therapeutic uses

The root is purgative and diuretic; and useful in ascites. Roots are laxative and diuretic and used in fevers and ascites. The roots juice is given in cold milk to remove phlegm in chronic bronchitis; is causes nasuea and vomiting. The juice of the roots (white-flowered variety) is blown up (snuff or nasya) the nostrils as a remedy of hemicrania.

The roots bark is diuretic and laxative; and its decoction is used as a demulcent in the irritation of bladder and urethra.

The seeds are cathartic and the roots diuretic. The powdered seeds in combination with ginger powder is used for laxative action (which may follow with gripping in some cases). The seeds are purgative and aperient.

An infusion of the leaves mixed with common salt is applied warm all around the ear in earache, specially when accompanied with swelling of the adjoining glands. The juice of the leaves with ginger is administered in cases of colliquative sweating in hectic fever.

The roots, stem, and flowers are recommended for the treatment of snake-bite and scorpion-sting.

An infusion of the leaves is externally used for washing the ulcers. An alcoholic extract of roots, in dose of 5 to 10 grains, is useful in ascites and enlargement of the abdominal viscera. The powder of dry root is given in doses of 10 to 30 grains, and its infusion is used in gonorrhoea and irritation genitals and urinary bladder, used in urinary troubles. Seeds are powdered and useful in children suffering with colic and constipation and other abdominal troubles.

The roots cerated in water and used in cases of snake-bite. The mixed with ghee and given in goitre and other glandular complaints. The oedema, the roots are powdered and given to patients. In the elephantiasis the roots are pasted and topically applied.

The leaves of the plant (white-flowered variety) are boiled in milk and orally given in morning as a sexual tonic in impotency and sexual abnormalities.

The flowers of the plant (white variety) are made in a paste in cold water and applied to leucoderma lesions. In children with teething troubles, the flowers mixed with milk are pasted for curing the eye complaints (specially Kukūnaka). In the adults and other common eye diseases specially in corneal opacity, the roots are rubbed in water and used as a collyrium in eyes. The root powder with sugar is orally given (with sitā) and adopted milk diet, in haemorrhage cases (urdhvaga raktapitta). In stomach and gastric pain and other troubles (e.g. Pariṇamaśūla), the roots alongwith sugar and honey (sita and madhu) are prescribed. The roots are used in spleen and liver enlargement, and also in whooping cough. Plant is useful in mental disorders, cough, asthma, biliousness, worms, tuberculosis, burning-sensation, vertigo, diarrhoea and throat affections.

Parts used : Roots, Leaves, Flowers, Seeds.

Doses : Decoction 10-15ml, Roots 103 gms.

Seeds 2-4 grains, 20-40 grains., Juice 8-10 ml.

APARĀJITĀ (अपराजिता)

‘....विष्णुक्रान्ताऽपराजिता ।

विष्णुक्रान्ता कटुस्तिक्ता बुद्धिमेधास्मृतिप्रदा ॥

कषाया कटुका पाके व्रणकुमिकफापहा ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 690-691.

शाकम्

शाकं विषंनं गुरु शङ्खुपुष्या ।

दाहं सपित्तं विनिहन्ति वातम् ॥

Kaiyodeva Nighaṇṭu. Oṣadhi varga, 691-692

गिरिकर्णी हिमा तिक्ता ग्रहघ्नी कण्ठदृष्टिदा ।

त्रिदोषशूलकुष्ठामव्रणशोफविषापहा ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 1080.

‘श्वेतपुष्पा नीलपुष्पा चापराजिता ।’

Bhāvaparakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Guḍūcyādi varga, 111.

अपराजिते कटु मेध्ये शीते कण्ठ्ये सुदृष्टिदे ॥

कुष्ठमूत्रत्रिदोषामशोफव्रणविषापहे ।

कषाये कटुके पाके तिक्ते च स्मृतिवुद्धिदे ॥

Bhāvaparakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Guḍūcyādi Varga. 111-112.

नीलपुष्पी

‘नीलपुष्पी महानीला स्वानीला गिरिकर्णिका ।’

नीलाद्रिकर्णी शिशिरा सतिक्ता रक्तातिसारज्वरदाहहन्त्री

विच्छर्दिकोन्मादमदभ्रमार्त्तिश्वासातिकासामयहारिणी च ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Guḍūcyādi varga, 91.

विष्णुक्रान्ता

‘विष्णुक्रान्ता कटुस्तिक्ता कफवातामयापहा ।’

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Parpatādi varga, 89.

गिरिकर्णीद्वयं तिक्तं पित्तोपद्रवनाशनम् ।

चक्षुष्यं विषदोषघ्नं त्रिदोषशमनं च तत् ॥

Dhānvantari Nighaṇṭu.

गिरिकर्णी हिमा तिक्ता पित्तोपद्रवनाशिनी ।

विषनेत्रविकारांश्च हन्ति कुष्ठरुजापहा ॥

Dhānvantari Nighaṇṭu.

उर्ध्वगरक्तपित्ते

क्षीरान्नकं पिबेत् यत्वाद् विष्णुक्रान्ता सशर्कराम् ।

उर्ध्वरक्तार्दितः सम्यक् गव्येन पयसा सह ॥

Śoḍhala, Gadānigraha, 2-8-66.

गर्भस्थापनार्थम्

गिरिकर्ण्याः शिफा श्वेता कुमुदायाः कटीतटे ।

धार्यमाणा स्त्रियां गर्भस्थापनाय भवेत् प्रभुः ॥

Vaidya Manoramā.

वाजीकरणे

श्वेतगिरिकर्णिकायाः पत्रं पयसा विपक्रमश्रीयात् ।

प्रातर्नरोऽङ्गनानां शतमपि यच्छेदपूर्ववद्रातौ ॥

Vaidya Manoramā, 20-20.

कुकूणके

अन्तर्बाहिरनयनयोः गिरिकर्णिकायाः पुष्पं गवां पयसि पेषितमर्कानाम् ।
संयोजयेद्दशनजन्मनिदानभूतं रोगं कुकूणकमपोहति शीघ्रमेव ॥

Vaidya manoramā, 16-11.

शुक्ररोगे

‘श्वेताद्रिकर्ण्या...मूलैः प्रपिष्टैः यवचूर्णयुक्तैः ।
विलोचनं पूरितमम्बुयुक्तैः विमुच्यते पुष्पकृतोपसर्गात् ॥

Rāja Mārtaṇḍa, 3-13.

अपच्याम्

पुष्पे गृहीतं गिरिकर्णिकायाः मूलं सितायाः गलके निबद्धम् ।
गव्येन लीढं यदि वा घृतेन निहन्ति घोरामपचीं तदेव ॥

Rāja Mārtaṇḍa, 5-31.

श्वित्रे

मूलेन पिष्टेन सिताद्रिकर्ण्याः शीताम्बुयुक्तेन विलिप्य गाढम् ।
पक्षात्प्रणाशं सितमेति कुष्ठं चिरप्ररूढं द्विगुणैर्दिनैर्वा ॥

Rāja Mārtaṇḍa, 8-8.

शोथे

‘कल्को वा गिरिकर्ण्याश्च पीतः शोथविनाशनः ।

Hārīta Saṁhitā, Baṅgasena, Śoṭha, 91.

वल्मीकश्रीपदयोः

‘.....गिरिकर्णिकामूलञ्च ।

पिष्ट्वा प्रलेपनं कार्यं वल्मीकश्रीपदस्य च ॥

Hārīta Saṁhitā, 3-33-6.

परिणामशूले

विष्णुक्रान्ताजटाकल्कः सिताक्षौद्रघृतैर्युतः ।

परिणामभवं शूलं नाशयेत् सप्तभिर्दिनैः ॥

Śāraṅgadhara Saṁhitā, 2-5-17.

सर्पविषे

सिन्धुवारस्य मूलञ्च श्वेता च गिरिकर्णिका ।

पानं दर्वीकरैः दष्टे..... ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā. 23-195.

गलगण्डे

घृतमिश्रं पीतमिव श्वेतगिरिकर्णिकामूलम् ।

Cakradatta, Galagaṇḍa cikitsā. 41-9.

Baṅgasena, Galagaṇḍa, 20.

भूतोन्मादे

साज्यं भूतहरं नस्यं श्वेताज्येष्ठांभुनिर्मितम् ।

Cakradatta, Unmāda cikitsā.

गलगण्डे

श्वेतापराजितामूलं प्रातः पिष्ट्वा पिबेन्नरः ।

सर्पिषा नियताहारो गलगण्डप्रशान्तये ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Madhyakhaṇḍa, 44-30.

श्वेतकुष्ठे

श्वेतं कुष्ठं व्रजत्यस्तं पक्षाद्भ्रूनाधिकेन वा ।

गिरिकर्ण्यास्तु कृष्णाया मूलेन परिलेपितम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Kuṣṭharogādihikāra, 54-153.

ĀRAGVADHA

Botanical name : Cassia fistula Linn.

Family : Caesalpinaceae

Classual name : Āragvadha

Sanskrit names

Āragvadha, Karṇikāra, Parivyādha, Ārogyaśimbimahāśimbī, Drumotpala, Śampāka-sampāka. Ārevata, Caturāṅgula, Vyādhighata, Kṛtamāla, Dīrghaphala, Svarṇabhūṣaṇa-Svarṇaṅga, Sūvarṇkaka, Svarṇavr̥kṣa, Rājavr̥kṣa-Viṭapī-Rājapādapa.

Regional names

Amaltas, Bandalauri, Siyarlathi (Hind.), Amultas, Bahva, Sonaru, Sondal (Beng.) Garmalo, Balla, Girmala

(Guj.), Bhaya, Bawa, Boya, Garmala, Bahava (Mr.) Koman (Mal.), Appai, Ar (Tam.), Rela, Kolaponna (Tel.) Amaltas (Urdu), Sunari (Uriya), Aragina (Can.), Kathaulhind, Khyarshambar (Arab.), Khyarchanbur, Khyarechiga (Pers.), Chinkani (Sind); Indian Laburnum, Cassia, Drumstick, Golden Shower, Pudding-pipe. Pudding-stick, purging Cassia (Eng.).

Description

A tree 6-9 meter high; trunk straight; bark smooth and pale grey when young, rough and dark brown when old; branches spreading, slender. Leaves 23-40 cm. long; main rachis pubescent; stipules minute, linear-oblong, obtuse, pubescent. Leaflets 4-8 pairs, ovate or ovate-oblong, acute, 5-12, 5 by 3.8-9.5 cm., bright green and glabrous above, paler and silvery-pubescent beneath when young, the midrib densely pubescent on the under side, base cuneate; main nerves numerous, close, conspicuous beneath; petiolules 6-10 mm. long, pubescent or glabrous.

Flowers in lax racemes 30-50 cm. long; pedicels 3.8-5.7 cm. long, slender, pubescent or glabrous. Calyx 1 cm. long divided to the base, pubescent, segments oblong, obtuse. Corolla, 3.8 cm. across, yellow; petals 5 subequal, obovate, shortly clawed, veined. Stamens all antheriferous, the 3 lowest the longest very long curved filaments and oblong anthers dehiscing longitudinally, the 4 lateral with short straight filaments and versatile anthers opening the pores at the base, the remaining 3 much smaller, erect with indehiscent anthers.

Pods 30-60 cm. long, 2-2.5 cm. diam., pendulous, cylindrical, nearly straight, smooth, shining, brown-black, not torulose, indehiscent, with numerous (40-100) horizontal seeds immersed in a dark coloured sweetish pulp, and completely separated by transverse dissepiments. Seeds broadly ovate, 8 mm. long, slightly less in breadth, and 5 mm. thick.

Flowers appearing with leaves on hanging branches, appears like Japanese Lanterns and conspicuous or bright-yellow or golden colour.

Flowering and fruiting time

March-April; spring to summer seasons.

Distribution

It is found throughout India. Ceylon, Malaya, China and other regions. It ascends up to 1500 meters altitude; and it is a favourite garden, avenue and ornamental tree being planted commonly. It is found in various provinces in India covering northern, western, southern and eastern zones.

Chemical composition

Leaves contain anthraquinone derivatives and very little tannin. Root-bark besides tannin contains phlobaphenes and oxyanthraquinone substance. Pulp contains resin, the major anthraquinone derivative; small amount of volatile oil, three waxy substance and a resinous substance.

Pulp of pod contains sugar 60 percent, mucilagenous substance, glutine, pectin, colouring matter, calcium oxalate, alkalies, resin and watery contents.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Madhura, Tikta
Guṇa	: Guru, Mṛdu, Snigdha
Vīrya	: Śīta
Vipāka	: Madhura
Doṣakarma	: Vātapittaśāmaka Pittakaphaśamśodhana (‘Doṣatrayaharī’)

Action and Properties

Karma	: Kuṣṭhaghna-kaṇḍūghna-raktaśodhaka Sraṅśana-mṛdivirecana-anulomana- koṣṭhaśuddhikara Ruchivardhaka-yakṣduttejaka Hṛdya-śothahara, Kaphaniḥśāraka Mūtrajanana, Dāhapraśamana Āmapācaka-pittaśāmaka-samśodhaka Jvaraghna, Śūlapraśamana.
-------	--

Roga

(a) Ābhyantara	: Vibandha-koṣṭhagatamala-viṣṭambha Udararoga-udāvarta-śūla-aruci Yakṣchotha-kāmalā-pittodara-pāṇḍu
----------------	---

Hṛdroga-raktapitta-śoṭha
 Kuṣṭha-dāha-tvagvikāra-visarpa
 Jvara-pittajvara
 Vātavyadhi-vātarakta-urustambha,
 Mūtrakṛccha-prameha-haridrāmeha
 Upadaṁśa, Śuṣkāsa-śvāsakaṣṭha
 Śītapitta.

(b) Bāhya : Kuṣṭha-kaṇḍū-dadru-kiṭibha-pāmā
 Vraṇa-vraṇaśoṭha-sadyovraṇa
 Vātavikāra-vedanāśoṭha-sandhivāta
 Mukha-galaroga
 Gaṇḍamāla-granthi.

Therapeutic uses

It is useful as a good laxative and anti-dermatosis drug. It is used for its medical properties of emetic, purgative, febrifuge, lentive and expectorant, diuretic, anti-phlogistic, anodyne, carminative and digestive and cardiac tonic.

The plant is useful in boils, wounds, ulcers, scabies, itchy and other skin affections, urticaria, leprosy, erysepelas, pustules, pruritis, gonorrhoea, constipation, abdominal disorders, colic, bowel complaint is-gripping-flatulence-colic, dyspepsia, habitual constipation and intestinal obstruction, indigestion, fever, heart troubles, blood impurities, urinary complaints, jaundice, rheumatism, gout, nervine complaints, goitre, glandular diseases, worms and paralysis. Various parts of the plant e.g. leaves, bark, root, flowers, fruit-pulp are internally and externally administered in different modes suitably, recommended for treatment of several diseases; and the the fruits pulp and flowers are internally used frequently; and the roots, bark and leaves are used locally and orally both as desired in various forms for treating the ailments. Plant possesses anti-bacterial and anti-fungal action.

Parts used

Leaves, Roots, Bark, Fruit (pod) pulp, Flowers.

Dose : 2-5 gms. fruit pulp, 10-15 ml. Rootbark decoction.

Formulation (yoga) : Āragvadhādi Leha, Āragvadhādi Taila, Āragvadhartiṣṭha.

Groups (gaṇa)

Kuṣṭhaghna, Kaṇḍūghna, Virecana and Tiktaskandha
(Caraka.)

Āragvadhādi, Śyāmādi and Adhobhāgahara (Suśruta.)

ĀRAGVADHA (आरग्वध)

आरग्वधो हिमस्तिक्तो मधुरो मृदुरेचनः ।

गुरुदोषत्रयहरी ज्वरगुल्मोदहरापहः ॥

शूलोदावर्तहद्रोगव्रणकच्छूप्रमेहनुत् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhī varga, 944-945.

आरग्वधो गुरु स्वादुः शीतलः स्नंसनोत्तमः ॥

ज्वरहद्रोगपित्तास्रवातोदावर्तशूलनुत् ।

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Haritakyādi varga, 149.

आरग्वधो राजवृक्षः शम्पाकश्चतुरङ्गुलः ।

आरेवतो व्याधिघातः कृतमालः सुवर्णकः ॥

कर्णिकारो दीर्घफलः स्वर्णाङ्गः स्वर्णभूषणः ।

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Haritakyādi varga, 148.

आरग्वधफलम्

तत्फलं स्नंसनं रुच्यं कुष्ठपित्तकफापहम् ॥

ज्वरे तु सततं पथ्यं कोष्ठशुद्धिकरं परम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Haritakyādi varga, 150.

‘चतुरङ्गुलो मृदुविवेचनानां (श्रेष्ठः) ।’

Caraka, Sūtra, 25.

ज्वरहद्रोगवातासृगुदावर्त्तादिरोगिषु ।

राजवृक्षोऽधिकं पथ्यो मृदुर्मधुरशीतलः ॥

बाले वृद्धे क्षते क्षीणसुकुमारे च मानवे ।

योज्यो मृद्वनपायित्वाद्विशेषाच्चतुरङ्गुलः ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Kalpa, 8-4/5.

आरग्वधो रसे तिक्तो गुरूष्णः क्रिमिशूलनुत् ।

कफोदरप्रमेहघ्नः कृच्छ्रगुल्मत्रिदोषजित् ॥

Dhanvantari Nighaṇṭu.

चतुरङ्गुल आरग्वधः

आरग्वधो राजवृक्षः शम्पाकश्चतुरङ्गुलः ।
प्रग्रहः कृतमालश्च कर्णिकारोऽवघातकः ॥

Caraka, Saṁhita, Kalpa. 8-3.

आरग्वधोऽतिमधुरः शीतः शूलापहारकः ।
ज्वरकण्डूकुष्ठमेहकफविष्टम्भनाशनः ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu.

पित्तज्वरे

‘.....द्राक्षाऽखधयोर्वापि ।’

Cakradatta.

गण्डमालायाम्

‘आरग्वधशिफा क्षिप्रं पिष्ट्वा तण्डुलवारिणा ।
सम्यङ्गनस्यप्रलेपाभ्यां गण्डमालाहराः पराः ॥

Cakradatta, 41-19.

उपदंशे

‘.....शम्पकानां पृथक् पृथक् ।
मूलेन परिपिष्टेन वारिणा..... ।’
असाध्यापि वज्रत्यस्तं लिङ्गोत्था रुक् प्रलेपनात् ।’

Śodhala, Gadaniḡraha, 4-8-21.

सद्योत्रणे किक्किसे च

‘अकिञ्चनानाधिकस्य पत्रं स्तन्येन संपिष्य समर्पयेद् द्राक् ।
सद्योत्रणे रोपणमाशुवाञ्छन् कल्कं च दद्यातथकिक्किसस्य ॥

Vaidya manoramā, 16-121.

दद्रुकिट्टिभकुष्ठेषु

‘आरग्वधस्य पत्राणि धारणालेन लेपयेत् (आरनालेन पेषयेत्) ।
दद्रुकिट्टिभकुष्ठानि हन्ति सिध्मानमेव च ॥’

Vṛndamādhava, 49-9. Baṅgasena, Kuṣṭha, 63.

आमवाते

‘आरग्वधस्य पत्राणि भृष्टानि कटुतैलतः ।
आमघ्नानि नरः कुर्यात्सायं भक्तावृतानि च ॥’

Bhāvaprakāśa, Cikitsā, 26-53.

मनोनुकूलद्रव्यानुपाने विरेचनार्थं शम्पाक-आरग्वधस्य प्रयोगः ।
कच्छू-पामा-शीतपित्तादिविकाराणां प्रतीकारार्थम् कृतमालादिकल्कम् ।

Bhāvaprakāśa, Kuṣṭharogādihikāra, 52/142-144.

त्वक्‌रोगे

पर्णानि पिष्ट्वा चतुरङ्गुलस्य तत्रेण पर्णान्थयकाकमाच्या ।
तैलाक्तगात्रस्य नरस्य कुष्ठान्युद्वर्येद्‌श्वहनच्छदेश्च ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Sūtra, 3-37.

पित्तोदरे

‘.....श्रुतेनारग्वधेन वा ।पित्तोदरं जयेत् ॥’

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā. 18; 13-69/70.

उरुस्तम्भे

‘शाकैरलवणैरद्याज्जलतैलीयसाधितैः ।
.....वेत्रारग्वधपल्लवैः ॥’

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā. 27-25 (26).

कामलायाम्

‘आरग्वधं रसेनेक्षोःपिबेत्रा कामलापहम् ।’

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā. 20-56. Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, 16-41.

विसर्पे

‘आरग्वधस्यापि पत्राणि..... ॥
पृथगालेपनं कुर्याद्द्वन्दशः सर्वशोऽपि वा ।’

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā 21-88 (89-92).

ज्वरे

‘आरग्वधं वा पयसा मृद्धीकानां रसेन वा ।
.....पयसां पिवेज्ज्वरितः ॥’

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā. 3-227 (3-232).

कुष्ठे

‘आरग्वधवृक्षकयोः कषायः.....स्नाने पाने च मतः ।

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā. 7-94 (7-97/98).

विरेचने

यस्य यत् पानमत्रं च हृद्यं स्वाद्वथवा कटु ।

लवणं वा भवेत्तेन युक्तं दद्याद्विरेचनम् ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Kalpa 8-16.

व्रणप्रक्षालने

‘.....पत्राणि जात्यारावधयोस्तथा ।

प्रक्षालने प्रयोज्यानि..... ।’

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 19-39.

हरिद्रामेहे

‘हरिद्रामेहिनं राजवृक्षकषायम् ।’

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Cikitsā. 11-7.

कुष्ठे

‘आरग्वधस्य मूलेन शतकृत्यः शृतं घृतम् ।

पिवेत्कुष्ठं जयत्याशु भजन् सखदिरं जलम् ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Cikitsā. 19-13.

फलकाले फलं तस्य ग्राह्यं परिणतं च यत् ।

तेषां गुणवतां भारं सिकतासु निधापयेद् ॥

सप्तरात्रात्समुद्धृत्य शोषयेदातमे भिषक् ।

ततो मज्जानमुद्धृत्य शुचौ भाण्डे निधापयेत् ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Kalpa, 8.

फलसंग्रहणविधिः

फलकाले फलं तस्य ग्राह्यं परिणतं च यत् ।

तेषां गुणवतां भारं सिकतासु निधापयेत् ॥

सप्तरात्रात् समुद्धृत्य शोषयेदातमे भिषक् ।

ततो मज्जानमुद्धृत्य शुचौ भाण्डे निधापयेत् ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, Kalpa. 6-7

बालरुग्णे

द्राक्षारसयुतं दद्याद्वाहोदावर्तपीडिते ।

चतुर्वर्षमुखे बाले यावद्दशवार्षिके ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, Kalpa. 8.

आरग्वधसाधितक्षीरोद्घृतम्

चतुरङ्गुलसिद्धाद्वा क्षीराद्यदुदियाद् घृतम् ।

मज्जः कल्केन धात्रीणां रसे तत्साधितं पिबेत् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Kalpa, 8-13.

आरग्वधाद्यारिष्टम्

दन्तीक्वाथेऽञ्जलिं मज्जः शम्पाकस्य गुडस्य च ।

दच्चा मासार्धमासस्थमरिष्टं पाययेत च ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Kalpa 15.

आरग्वधषड्योगः

चतुरङ्गुलमज्जस्तु प्रसृतं वाऽथवाऽञ्जलिम् ।

सुरामण्डेन संयुक्तमथवा कोलसीधुना ॥

दधिमण्डेन वा युक्तं रसेनामलकस्य वा ।

कृत्वा शीतकषायां तं पिबेत् सौवीरकेण वा ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Kalpa. 9-10.

आरग्वधयोगद्वयम्

त्रिवृतो वा कषायेण मज्जः कल्कं तथा पिबेत् ।

तथा बिल्वकषायेण लवणक्षौद्रसंयुतम् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Kalpa-8-11.

कफजपाण्डुरोगे

आरग्वधं रसेनेक्षोर्विदार्यामलकस्य च ।

सत्र्यूषणं बिल्वपत्रं पिबेन्ना कामलापहम् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 16-58/59.

आरग्वधाद्यवलेहः

कषायोष्णाथवा तस्य त्रिवृच्चूर्णं गुडान्वितम् ।

साधयित्वा शनैर्लेहं लेहयेन्मात्रया नरम् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Kalpa. 8-12.

कुष्ठचिकित्सायाम्

चतुरङ्गुलदलप्रलेपः ।

Carakadatta. Kuṣṭha cikitsā 50-7.

आरग्वधस्य विविधयोगाः (सुकुमाररुग्णार्थे)

द्राक्षारसे सुरासीध्वोर्दग्नि चामलकीरसे ।

सौवीरके कषाये च त्रिवृतो बिल्वकस्य च ॥

लेहेऽरिष्टे घृते द्वे च योगा द्वादश कीर्त्तिताः ।

चतुरङ्गुलकल्पेऽस्मिन् सुकुमाराः सुखोदयाः ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Kalpa 8-17-18.

आरग्वधपत्रप्रयोगः

आरग्वधस्य पत्राणि भृष्टानि कटुतैलतः ।

आमघ्नानि नरः कुर्यात्सायं भुक्तावृतानि च ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Āmavātādhikāra, 26-52.

उपदंशे आरग्वधादिगणपरिषेचनम्

‘आरग्वधादिक्वाथेन परिषेकञ्च दापयेत् ।’

Bhāvaprakāśa, Upadānīśādhikāra, 51-12.

ARANYAJĪRAKA

Botanical name : *Centratherum anthelminticum* O. Kuntze.

Family : Asteraceae (Compositae)

Calssical name : Aranyajiraka

Sanskrit names

Aranyajiraka, Vanyajiraka-vanajiraka, Tiktajiraka, Somarājī.

Regional names

Kalijiri, Karajiri (Hind.), Kalijiri, Karhavijiri (Guj.), Kangujire (Mar.), Somraj (Beng.), Adabi jilakara (Tam.), Katak Jiramam (Tel.), Kamunkhari (Arab.), Jirae bari-sohria (Pers.) Janglijiri (Urdu), Somraj (Uriya), Kalijiri (Punj.), Purple Fleabane (Eng.).

Description

An erect, robust, leafy, simple or spraingly branched, aromatic annual herb, with stems and leaves covered with minute hairs. Stems 60-90 cms. high, branched, pubescent. Leaves 5-9 by 2.5-3.2 cm., lanceolate or elliptic-lanceolate, acute, coarsely serrate, more or less pubescent on both sides, base tapering into the periole, glabrascent or thinly hispidly hairy, gland-puntate on the lower surface.

Heads 1.3-2cm. diam., subcorymbose, many (about 40) flowered, with a linear bract near the top of the peduncle. Outer involucre bracts linear, hairy, herbaceous, shorter than those of the inner rows; intermediate bracts with

shorter hairy tips, linear, acute or subobtuse, often constricted at the base of the herbaceous part, equalling or shorter (rarely longer) than the innermost; innermost bracts usually the longest, linear subacute, scarious, often tipped with purple.

Pappus reddish, the exterior row very short, subpaleaceous, peristent, the inner hairs somewhat flattened, deciduous, much shorter than the glabrous corolla. Achenes 4.5-6 cm. long, oblong-cylindric, 10-ribbed, pubescent.

Flowering and fruiting time.

Rains to spring season.

Distribution

It is found throughout India, wild; specially in the hilly regions, the Himalayas. It is often cultivated. Ceylon and other countries.

Chemical composition

Seeds contain bitter principles, active anthelmintic principle of achenes isolated in 1 percent yield as a bitter resin, acid; diuretic, antiseptic and stimulant effect of the aches due to 0.02 percent essential oil and resin; seeds contain resin 60 to 90 percent alcoholic extracts have good anthelmintic action against thread worms and they are not effective against hook-worms. Vernolic acid, B-sitosterol isolated along with some flavonoidal glyceride. Seeds yield 18 percent fixed oil and a volatile oil about 0.02 percent and a bitter principle about 1 percent.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṭu, Tikta
Guṇa	: Laghu, Tikṣṇa
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarṃa	: Kaphavātaśāmaka

Action and properties

Karma	: Kṛmighna-jantughna, Kuṣṭhaghna-Kaṇḍughna-tvacya-varṇya Śoṭhahara-vedanāsthāpana Dīpana-vāmaka-kṛmighna Raktaśodhaka, Mūtrasrāvottejaka
-------	--

Garbhāśayaśodhaka-stanyajanana
Jvaraghna-kaṭupaustiṅga, Viṣaghna.

Roga

- (a) Ābhyantara : Kṛmiroga, Agnimāndya,
Kuṣṭha-kaṇḍū-raktavikāra-tvagvikāra
Mūtraghāta
Prasūtiroga-sūtikāvikāra-garbhāśaya-
stanyaroga, Jvara-jirṇajvara
Sāmānya-daurbalya,
Viṣa-jāṅgama viṣa.
- (b) Bāhya : Śoṭha-vedanāpradhāna vikāra,
Kṛmi-bāhyakṛmi-yūkā-likṣā-jantu
Kuṣṭha-śvitra-kaṇḍu-pāmā-dadru
Varṇa-carma vikāra.

Therapeutic uses

The drug is alterative, anthelmintic, anuperiodic, antuphlegmatic, cardiac, diuretic, digestive, stomachic, tonic and blood purifier. It is used in cough, fever; it disperses cold humours; flatulence, and leucoderma, leprosy, dermatosis, psoriasis, skin diseases, ringworm, scabies, itch, prurigo. It is used as an effective drug against works specifically thread worms infection. It is also given against round worms being anthelmintic in general.

A paste is made four parts of the seeds and one part of orpiment with cow's urine is applied locally in leucoderma. Seeds powder in 10 to 30 grains is orally given as stomachic, tonic and diuretic drug. For the treatment of roundworm either two or three drachms of the crushed seeds are given with honey in two equal doses, followed by an aperient; or an infusion of 20-25 grain of powdered seeds is interally given for checking worms affection. The powder of seeds is orally given in infection of thread worms. The seeds are valued and used in the forms of powder or infusion, along and also with other drugs, in treatment of skin diseases and worms infection.

The resin extacted from the seeds of plant is very effectious medicine for the treatment of thread worms particularly and given in doses of 5 to 10 grains and may be followed by purgative as usual.

The seeds are made into a paste and locally applied to inflammatory and painful complaints and also used over boils, scabies, itch and other diseases of skin and pigmentation abnormalities. It is also externally applied to check lice and other similar worms in hairs and head, and other infection.

The seeds are used and mixed as ingredient of recipe given in cases of snakebite as an antidote to poison. An infusion of seeds is used in fever, debility, cough, hiccough, liver disorder, oedema and asthma, and as a bitter tonic and blood purifier. The seeds are given, as powder in complaints in dysuria, intestinal colic and chronic fever, and also in complaints of post-natal or purpeural troubles including lactation disorders in mothers.

The seeds are externally applied to legs in condition of paralysis; and also used in plasters applied to abscess and boils.

The seeds are very useful in veterinary medicine, considered helpful to check gastro-intestinal complaints, and also over grazing flatulence and stomach swelling, and other complaints.

Parts used : Seeds.

Dose : Seeds powder 5-30 grains.

Formulations : Somarājī Taila, Somarājī, Ghṛta.

ARANYAJĪRAKA (अरण्यजीरक)

‘सोमराजी कटुस्तिक्ता कृमिकुष्ठकफापहा ।

तीक्ष्णोष्णा विषकण्डूतिज्वरप्रशमनी च सा ॥’

‘तीव्रेण कुष्ठेन परतिदेहो यः सोमराजीं नियमेन खादेत् ।

संवत्सरं कृष्णतिलद्वितीयां स सोमराजीं वपुष्वातिपोते ॥’

Bhāṣajya Ratnāvalī.

ĀRDRĀKA-ŚUNṬHĪ

Botanical name : Zingiber officinale Rose.

Family : Zingiberaceae

Classical name : Ārdraka-Śunṭhī

Sanskrit names

Ādraka-ārdrikā, Śunthī, Uṣṇā, Nāgara, Viśvabheṣaja, Śṛigavera, Mahouṣadha.

Regional names

Adarak, Adrakh, Adi, Sonth, Sounth (Hind.), Ada, Soonth (Beng.), Sunthi (Mar.), Sunth (Guj.), Sonthi, ardrakamu (Tel.), Ksukku, Inji, rukku (Tam.), Adrak (Urdu), Allam, Attiradam, Sungati, Singiveram (Tam.), Ale (Mar.), Adu, Ale (Bomb.), Shangabir, Janjabil (Pers.), Zanjabil (Arab.), Ginger (Eng.)

Description

A perennial, erect herb with a creeping tuberous thizome. Root-stock horizontal, tuberous, aromatic, stout, rhizome with erect leafy stems 0.6-1.4 meter high. Stems elongated, leafy, 15-150 cm. tall. Leaves narrow, linear, sessile, subsessile on the sheaths, with an alternative base, acuminate, glabrous, 10-50 cm. long, lower part surrounding the stem, 5-10 in. long, smooth, Ligule glabrous. Sheaths glabrous.

Flowers fls. spike terminating the leafy system, up to 3 in. long bracts 2.5 X 2 cm., greenish; stalks slender, enveloped by membranous 1 in. long bracts; corolla greenish-yellow, corolla-lobes yellowish, lip dark-purple, often spotted yellow, 3-lobed; flowers greenish with a small dark purple or purplish-black lip, in radical spikes, 3.8-7.5 cm. long and 2.5 cm. diam., on peduncle 15-30 cm. long; lip often 3-lobed, orbicular, dull purple with creamy blotches; anthers appendage dark purple; stamens dark purple, as long as the lip, rather shorter than the corolla.

Rhizome

The outer most layer of the rhizome is single cell epidermis. Next is cork with irregularly arranged tangentially elongated cells and an inner zone of rectangular tangentially elongated cell. Cork cambium is not distinct. Below the cork is the cortex, cortical cells thick walled, polygonal parenchyma cells packed with starch grains. Large oil globules is yellowish orange colour oil cells are scattered in cortical region. Vascular bundle is composed of an outer phloem

and inner xylem. Phloem consists of thin walled polygonal cells with sieve tubes. The cortex is singly layered endodermis, with thin walled rectangular cells. Pericycle consists of thin walled tangentially elongated cells. The inner stele consists of parenchyma cells with starch grains and oil globules.

There are various varieties, categories and qualities of ginger as of market drug.

Fresh rhizome in green state is Ārdraka or Adarak, the Fresh Ginger; and dry rhizome is known as Śuṅṭhī or Saunth, the Dry Ginger.

Flowering and fruiting season

Farmig season (s).

Distribution

Throughout Tropical Asia and India; warm and moist Zones widely cultivated in India with many rhizome producing regions.

Chemical composition

Rhizomes contain yellowish-coloured volatile oil 1-5 percent; and yellow bitter substance, gingerol, and oily resinous substance as main active principle, gingerin; and other resins, starch and other contents. Gingerol is not volatile with oil.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṭu
Guṇa	: Laghu, Snighdh (Śuṅṭhī)Guru, Rūkṣa, Tikṣṇa (Ārdraka).
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Madhura
Doṣakarma	: Kaphavātasamaka

Action and properties.

Karma	: Tṛptighna-rocana-dīpana-pācana Vātānulomana-śūlapraśamana Arśoghna, Pittaśāmaka-raktaśodhaka Hṛdayottejaka-śoṭhahara Kaphaghna-śvāsahara-kāśaghna Svarya, Vṛṣya-uttejaka
-------	---

Jvaraghna-śītapraśamna, Balya
Vedanāsthāpana-nādyuttejaka.

Roga

- (a) Ābhyantara : Vātavyadhi,
Aruci-hṛllāsa-chardi-mukhavairasya
Agnimāndya-ajīrṇa-adhmānānaha
Udararoga-śūla-koṣṭhabaddhatā
Arśa-pāṇḍu-kāmalā
Hṛddourbalya-hṛcchūla-śoṭha
Āmavāta-ślīpada-śītapitta
Kāsa-śvāsa-hikkā-pratiśyaya
Jvara-sāmānya-jīrṇa-viśamādi
Dourbalya-prasavottara dourbalya.
- (b) Bāhya : Āmavāta-sandhiśoṭha,
Śaitya-avasāda-vedanā-śoṭha.

Therapeutic uses

Ginger is useful as anodyne, stomachic, laxative, aromatic, carminative digestive, rubefacient, expectorant silagogue, stimulant, febrifuge, tonic, aphrodisiac, antiphlogistic, blood purifier, anticollic, diuretic, cardiac stimulant, cooling, aphrodisiac, alexiteric, appetizer, pungent, vermifuge and anti-rheumatic medicine.

Fresh and dry ginger (Ārdraka and Śuṅṭhī) are valuable drug of indigenous systems of medicine with a wide range of usage in therapeutics, pharmaceutics and also dietetics. Besides a common drug and spice condiment including vegetable or edible household item, the ginger is employed in various European preparations including tinctures, in alcoholic formulations, as well as chemical, industrial uses, commercially and large scale agro-farm productions, flavour medicine, aromatic.

The fresh ginger is cut into pieces and mixed with little common salt (to taste) is recommended to be taken just before the meal; or the ginger fresh pieces are chewed before consuming food or any other time. This kind of uses is very appetizer, stomachic and helps to relish the food and also its digestion and silagogue, stimulant and check the bad taste and smell, affection of mouth, tongue and throat.

The rhizomes is used internally as an aromatic, stimulant, stomachic and appetizer in powder or any other suitable forms. The rhizomes is given as an aromatic tonic; and externally applied to boils, enlarged glands, and inflammatory and painful ailments. It is topically applied to theumatic joints and orally used in these complaints.

The rhizomes in the form of powder and infusion, or mixed with other liquid drink and medicinal recipes (commonly admixed with many formulations) administered against respiratory diseases as in cough, cold, coryza, asthma and chest pain, and throat complaints. It is popularly added (fresh ginger slices) with common tea drink. The juice with honey is used in various respiratory ailments. Ginger is used in hiccup, headache, fever, bronchitis, sore throat, allergic disorders including urticaria, nasal and catarrhal affections. It is orally given in rheumatic, lumbago, sciatica, pains, nervous complaints and various Vāta disorders.

The rhizomes are useful in worms affections. The juice is used in dropsy, ascites and liver enlargement; it also acts as good diuretic. Rhizomes in various forms and modes are used in piles, abdominal diseases, flatulence, dyspepsia, diarrhoea and dysentery (amāṭisāra-grahaṇī), constipation, jaundice and vomiting. It is prescribed as an adjunct to many tonic, stimulating and other medicinal formulations recommended in various diseases as an ingredient of many preparations in Indian pharmacopoeia. It is commonly used in traditional medicine in various regions in country as household remedy.

The rhizomes are useful in heart diseases. It is given in heart palpitation, cardiac pain and as cardiac tonic, and also in oedema. A paste of ginger rhizomes is a local stimulant and rubefacient in cases of headache, toothache and short sight due to deficient contractile power of the iris. The powder is rubbed on the extremities of the limbs checks cold perspiration and improves blood circulation, and also in collapse stage of cholera and other similar conditions. The root skin is considered useful in corneal opacity. Rhizomes are considered useful in eye diseases.

The rhizomes powder and infusion, and also in other suitable forms and preparations, are used by mothers after delivery in debility and purpural ailments. It is useful in hysteria, nervine and mental complaints and several other ailments.

Contraindication (prayoga niṣedha)

Summer and autumn season (grīṣma-śaradṛtu); diseases (roga)-Pāṇḍu, raktapitta, mūtrakṛccha, vraṇa, jvara, dāha (excess use).

Parts used : Rhizomes (fresh and dry ginger).

Doses

10-20 grains powder (sunthi-dry rhizome); 1-2 gms. 2-5 ml. juice (Ardraka-fresh rhizome); 1-2 drachms. 8-10 ml. Infusion; 1-2 ounce; 2 drachms.

Formulations (yoga)

(a) Ārdrakakhaṇḍa, Pañcāsamacūrṇa, Samaśarkara-cūrṇa, Rāsnādikvātha, Soubhāgyaśunthī, Saindhavāditaila, Vyośādighṛta, Śunthīghṛtam, Nāgaracūrṇa, Śunthyādikvātha, Śunthīdhānyakaghṛta, Guḍapippalyādicūrṇa.

(b) Large number of formulations employing the drug as an ingredient or adjunct and as processes drug etc.

Groups (Gaṇa)

Trikaṭu, Pippalyādigāṇa (Suśruta), Pañcakola, Śaḍuśaṇa (Bhāvaprakāśa), Tṛptighna, Arśoghna, Dīpanīya, Śūlapraśamana, Tṛṣṇānigrahaṇa daśemāni (Caraka.)

ĀRDRĀKA- ŚUNTHĪ (आर्द्रक-शुण्ठी)

तुत्तुल्यमार्द्रकं विद्यात्सुतीक्षणं भेदनं गुरु ।
पाचनं रोचनं वृष्यं कटूष्णं वह्निदीपनम् ॥
कफानिलहरं स्वयं विबन्धानाहशूलजित् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 1155-1156.

आर्द्रकाङ्कुरम्

अङ्कुरं शृङ्गवेरस्य रक्तजित् श्लेष्मवातहा ॥
अव्यक्तरसवीर्यत्वात्परमं तु कफापहम् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 1156-1157.

सलवणेन काञ्जिकञ्चार्द्रकम्

काञ्जिकार्द्रं सलवणं दीपनं पाचनं परम् ॥
वातश्लेष्मविबन्धघ्नं विशेषादामवातनुत् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighanṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 1157-1158.

सलवणेनार्द्रकम्

रोचनं दीपनं चापि शोफदोषहरं परम् ॥
वातप्रकोपशमनं हर्षणं लवणार्द्रकम् ।
भक्षणं लवणार्द्रस्य हृद्यं वह्निप्रदीपनम् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighanṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 1158-1159.

निम्बूकस्वरसार्द्रकम्

निम्बूकस्य रसे क्षित्तमार्द्रकं मुखशोधनम् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighanṭu, Oṣadhi varga 1158-1159.

भोजनाद्यार्द्रकम्

भोजनाग्रे सदा पथ्यं जिह्वाकण्ठविशोधनम् ।
वातश्लेष्महरं रुच्यं दीपनं पाचनं परम् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighanṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 1160.

शुण्ठी

नागरं मधुरं पाके स्निग्धोष्णं कटुकं लघु ।
रुच्यं मलानां संग्राहि हृद्यं वायोर्विबन्धनुत् ॥
दीपन पाचनं वृष्यं स्वर्यं वातकफापहम् ।
निहन्ति शूलहृद्रोगशोफार्शः श्लेष्मदोदरम् ॥
आनाहश्वासकासामवमीहिध्मामपित्तलम् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighanṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 1151-1153.

आर्द्रशुण्ठी

कटूष्णं दीपनं वृष्यं रुच्यमार्द्रकनागरम् ॥
श्वासकासवमिहिक्वावातश्लेष्मविबन्धनुत् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighanṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 1153-1154.

हिक्कायाम्

‘हिक्काऽऽर्त्तस्य पयश्धागं हितं नागरसाधितम् ।’

Bhavaṅprakāśa, Madhyakhaṇḍa, 3-18.

शृङ्गवेरापिघृतम्

शृङ्गवेरयवक्षारपिप्पलीमूलपिप्पलीः ।
 पिष्ट्वा विपाचयेत्सर्पिरारनालं चतुर्गुणम् ॥
 शूलं बिबन्धामानाहमामवातं कटिग्रहम् ।
 नाशयेद् ग्रहणीदोषमग्निसन्दीपनं परम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Āmavātādhikāra, 26-87/88.

शुण्ठीगुणाः

शुण्ठी रुच्यामवातघ्नी पाचना कटुका लघुः ।
 स्निग्धोष्णा मधुरा पाके कफवातविबन्धनुत् ॥
 वृण्य स्वर्यावमिश्वासशूलकासहृदामयान् ।
 हन्तिश्लेष्मिपदशोथार्श आनाहोदरमारुतान् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Haritakyadi varga, 45-46.

ग्राहीकारणत्वम्

आग्नेयगुणभूयिष्ठात् तोयांशपरिशोषि यत् ।
 संगृह्णाति मलं तत्तु ग्राहि शुण्ठ्यादयो यथा ॥
 विबन्धभेदिनी या तु सा कथं ग्राहिणी भवेत् ।
 शक्तिर्विबन्धभेदे स्याद्यतो न मलपातनी ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu Haritakyadi varga, 47-48.

आर्द्रकस्यगुणाः

आर्द्रिका भेदिनी गुर्वी तीक्ष्णोष्णा दीपनी मता ।
 कटुका मधुरा पाके रूक्षा वातकफापहा ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Haritakyadi varga, 49-50.

शुण्ठीसमगुणत्वम्

‘ये गुणाः कथिताः शुण्ठ्यास्तेऽपि सन्त्वार्द्रकेऽखिलाः ।’

Bhāvaprakāśa, Nighaṇṭu, Haritakyadi, varga, 50.

भोजनाग्रे आर्द्रकभक्षणम्

भोजनाग्रे सदा पथ्यं लवणार्द्रकभक्षणम् ।

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Haritakyadi varga, 51.

ऋतुनिषेधः

‘.....निदाघशरदोर्नैव पूजितार्द्रकम् ।’

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Haritakyadi varga, 52.

आर्द्रकसेवने गुणाः

‘अग्निसन्दीपनं रुच्यं जिह्वाकण्ठविशोधनम् ॥
कुष्ठपाण्ड्वामये कृच्छ्रे रक्तपित्ते व्रणे ज्वरे ।
दाहे..... ॥’

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Haritakyādi varga, 51-52.

अरोचके आर्द्रकस्वरसम्

शृङ्गवेररसं वाऽपि मधुना सह योजयेत् ।
अरुचिश्वासकासघ्नं प्रतिश्यायकफापहम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Arocakādhikāra, 16-9

अरुचिनाशनार्थम्

भोजनाग्रे सदा पथ्यं लवणार्द्रकभक्षणम् ।
रोचनं दीपनं वह्नेर्जिह्वाकण्ठविशोधनम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Arocakādhikāra, 16-8.

आमवाते नागरचूर्णम्

कर्षं नागरचूर्णस्य काञ्जिकेन पिवेत्सदा ।
आमवातप्रशमनं कफवातहरं परम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Āmavātādhikāra, 26-48.

कटिशूले शुण्ठीादिकाथम्

शुण्ठीगोक्षुरक्वाथः प्रातः प्रातर्निषेवितः ।
सामे वाते कटीशूले पाचनं रुक्प्रणाशनम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Āmavātādhikāra, 26-54.

कटिशूले

‘दशमूली कषायेण पिवेद्वा नागराम्भसा ।’

Bhāvaprakāśa, Madhyakhaṇḍa, 26-55.

आमवाते शुण्ठीधान्यकघृतम्

शुण्ठीनां षट्पलं पिष्टं धान्यकं द्विपलं तथा ।
चतुर्गुणं जलं दत्त्वा घृतप्रस्थं विपाचयेत् ॥
वातश्लेष्मामयान् हन्यादग्निवृद्धिकरं परम् ।
दुर्नामश्वासकासघ्नं बलवर्णाग्निवर्द्धनम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Madhyakhaṇḍe, 26/78/79.

आमवाते शुण्ठीघृतम्

क. सर्पिर्नागरकल्केन सौवीरं तच्चतुर्गुणम् ।
सिद्धमग्निकरं श्रेष्ठमामवातहरं परम् ॥

Cakradatta, 25-63.

पुष्ट्यर्थं कल्पना

ख. पुष्ट्यर्थं पयसा साध्यं दध्ना विण्मूत्रसंग्रहे ।
दीपनार्थं मतिमता मस्तुना च प्रकीर्तितम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Madhyakhaṇḍa, 26-80/81.

आमवाते द्वितीयशुण्ठीघृतम्

नागरकृाथकल्काभ्यां घृतप्रस्थं विपाचयेत् ।
चतुर्गुणेन तेनाथ केवलेन जलेन वा ॥
वातश्लेष्मपशमनमग्निसन्दीपनं परम् ।
नागरं घृतमित्युक्तं कटीशूलामनाशनम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Amavātādhikāra, 26-82/83.

Cakradatta, Amavāta cikitsā, 25/56-57.

शुण्ठ्यार्द्रकयोः

कटूष्णमार्द्रकं हृद्यं विपाके शीतलं लघु ।
दीपनं रुचिदं शोफ-कफकण्ठामयापहम् ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Pippalyādi varga, 29.

शुष्ठी कटूष्णा स्निग्धा च कफशोफानिलापहा ।
शूलबन्धोदराध्मान-श्वासश्लीपदानिलापहा ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Pippalyādi varga, 26.

आमवाते

शुष्ठीगोक्षुरककृाथः प्रातः प्रातर्निषेवितः ।
सामे वाते कटीशूले पाचनो रुग्विनाशनः ॥
यवक्षार समायुक्तो मूत्रकृच्छ्रविनाशनः ॥

Vṛnda mādhava, 25-7.

नागरम्

नागरं कफवातघ्नं विपाके मधुरं कटु ।
वृष्योष्णं रोचनं हृद्यं वृष्यं चैवार्द्रकं स्मृतम् ॥
कफानिलहरं स्वर्यं विबन्धानाहशूलनुत् ।

कटूष्णं रोचनं हृद्यं सस्त्रेहं लघु दीपनम् ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 46.

रोचनं दीपनं वृष्यमार्द्रकं विश्वभेषजम् ।

वातश्लेष्मविन्धेषु रसस्तस्योपदिश्यते ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 27.

हृद्रोगे

नागरं वा पिवेदुष्णं कषायं चाग्निवर्धनम् ।

कासश्वासानिलहरं शूलहृद्रोगनाशनम् ॥

Vṛnda mādhyama, 31-4.

शोथे गुडार्द्रकप्रयोग

प्रयोजयेदारद्रकनागरं वा तुल्यं गुडेनार्द्रपलाभिवृद्ध्या ।

मात्रा परं पञ्चपलानि मासं जीर्णे पयोयूषरसाश्च भक्तम् ।

गुल्मोदरार्शः श्वयथुप्रमेहाञ् श्वासप्रतिश्यालसकाविपाकान् ।

सकामलाशोषमनोविकारान् कासं कफं चैव जयेत् प्रयोगः ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 12-47/48.

अर्शे विबन्धनिवारणार्थम्

सस्त्रेहैः शकुभिर्युक्तां प्रसन्नां लवणीकृताम् ।

दद्यान्मत्स्यण्डिकां पूर्वं भक्षयित्वा सनागराम् ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, cikitsā. 14-97.

आमातिसारे शुण्ठीपुटपाकं शुण्ठीकल्कञ्च

एरण्डरससम्पिष्टं पक्रमामञ्च नागरम् ।

आमातिसारशूलघ्नं पाचनं दीपनं परम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Jvārādhikāra, 1-22.

आमवाते

खण्डशुण्ठीपाकम् ।

Bhāvaprakāśa, Madhyakhaṇḍa, 26-104/107.

सर्वशोथे

विश्वं गुडेन तुल्यं वृश्चीररसानुपानमभ्यस्तम् ।

विनिहन्ति सर्वशोथं घनवृन्दं चण्डवायुरिव ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Śothādhikāra, 42-33.

सर्वशोथे गुडादिवटिका

गुडात्पलत्रयं ग्राह्यं शृङ्गवेरपलत्रयम् ।
 शृङ्गवेरसमा कृष्णा लौहविट्तिलयोः पलम् ॥
 चूर्णमेतत्समुद्दिष्टं सर्वश्वयथुनाशनम् ।

Bhāvaprakāśa, Śothādhikāra, 42-35.

वातजन्यशोथचिकित्सायाम्

शुण्ठीपुनर्नवैरण्डपञ्चमूलीशृतं जलम् ।
 वातिके श्वयथौ शस्तं पानाहारपरिग्रहे ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Madhyakhaṇḍa, 42-19.

शीतपित्ते गुडार्द्रकम्

आर्द्रकस्य रसः पेयः पुराणगुडसंयुतः ।
 शीतपित्तापहः श्रेष्ठो वह्निमान्द्यविनाशनः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Śītapittodarakoṭhasphoṭādhikāra, 55-11.

शीतपित्ते

Bhāvaprakāśa, Madhyakhaṇḍa, 55/16-21.

प्रदरे (श्वासञ्च)

‘ असृग्दरं सर्वभवं निहन्ति श्वासञ्च भार्गी सह नागरेण ।’

Bhāvaprakāśa, Strīrogādhikāra, 68-13.

सूतिका रोगे सौभाग्यशुण्ठीपाकम्

Bhāvaprakāśa, Yonirogādhikāra, 70/163-164.

ग्रहणीचिकित्सायां नागरघृतम्

घृतं नागरकल्केन सिद्धं वातानुलोमनम् ।
 ग्रहणीपाण्डुरोगघ्नं प्लीहकासज्वरापहम् ॥

Cakradatta, Grahāṇīchikitsā, 4-42.

कासे शृङ्गवेरस्वरसः

स्वरसं शृङ्गवेरस्य माक्षिकेण समन्वितम् ।
 पाययेच्छ्वासकासघ्नं प्रतिश्यायकफाहम् ॥

Cakradatta, Kāsacikitsā, 11-20.

हृद्रोगे (बाह्यजन्य) चिकित्सायां नागरक्वाथः

नागरं वा पिवेदुष्णं कषायञ्चाग्रिवर्द्धनम् ।

कासश्वासानिलहरं शूलहद्रोगनाशनम् ॥

Cakradatta, Hydroga cikitsā, 31-4.

सर्वशोथे आर्द्रकस्वरसप्रयोगः

आर्द्रकस्य रसः पीतः पुराणगुडमिश्रितः ।

अजाक्षीराशिनां शीघ्रं सर्वशोथहरो भवेत् ॥

Cakradatta, 39-11.

शोथरोगे गुडपिप्पल्यादि प्रयोगः

गुडपिप्पलिशुण्ठीनां चूर्णं श्वयथुनाशनम् ।

आमाजीर्णप्रशमनं शूलघ्नं वस्तिशोधनम् ॥

Cakradatta, Śoṭha cikitsā, 39-14.

शोथचिकित्सायां शुण्ठीघृतम्

विश्वौषधस्य कल्केन दशमूलजले शृतम् ।

घृतं निहन्त्याच्छ्वयथुं ग्रहणीं पाण्डुनाशनम् ॥

Cakradatta, Śoṭha cikitsā, 39-32.

कर्णशूले शृङ्गवेरादिरसपूरणम्

शृङ्गवेरञ्च मधु च सैन्धवं तैलमेव च ।

कटूष्णं कर्णयोर्देयमेतद्वा वेदनाऽपहम् ॥

Cakradatta, Karṇaroga cikitsā, 57-2.

कर्णशूलघ्ना योगाः

शृङ्गवेररसपूरणार्थं प्रयोगः—

आर्द्रकसूर्यावर्तकशोभाञ्जनमूलकस्वरसाः ।

मधुतैलसैन्धवयुताः पृथगुक्ताः कर्णशूलहरः ॥

Cakradatta, Karṇaroga cikitsā, 57-4.

कर्णशूलघ्ने अन्येकौषधिप्रयोगाः— सौवर्चलं शिग्रुमूलकं वा ।

त्रिदोषजशिरःशूलशमनाय नागरक्षीरनस्यम्

नागरकल्कविमिश्रं क्षीरं नस्येन योजितं पुंसाम् ।

नानादोषोद्भूतां शिरोरुजां हन्ति तीव्रतराम् ॥

Cakradatta, Śiroroga cikitsā, 60-22.

ARIṢṬAKA

Botanical name : Sapindus trifoliatus Linn.

Family : Sapindaceae

Classical name : Ariṣṭaka

Sanskrit names

Ariṣṭaka-ariṣṭa-riṣṭa, Phenila-pitaphena, Garbhapātana-Garbhapātī, Raktabīja, Arthasādhana, Kumbhabīja, Rākṣabīja, Sarvatikta, Mañjarī.

Regional names

Ritha (Hind.), Aritha, Arithan (Guj.) Bara ritha, Ritha (Beng.) Antarale (Can.), Arishtam (Mal.), Ringin, Rita (Mar.), Kukudu, Phenilamu (Tel.), Muktamaya (Uriya), Ritha (Urdu), Rita, Bandukehindi (Arab.), Ratah, Bindaka hindi (Pers.) Sopa Nut Tree, Soap Nut (Eng.).

Description

A handsome tree. Leaves sharply pinnate; leaflets subopposite; 2-3 pairs (.5-1.8 by 2.5-10 cm. lanceolate or elliptic-lanceolate, acute, or acuminate, entire, glabrous above, more or less pubescent beneath, base acute; main nerves about 8-12 pairs; petioles 3 mm. long, pubescent.

Flowers dingy white, in terminal rusty-pubescent panicles; the males numerous, the bisexual flowers few. Sepals 5. round-ovate, ciliolate, fulvous-pubescent outside, glabrous within, 6 mm. long. Petals 4-5, shortly clawed, narrower than the sepals, lanceolate, villous outside and more or less so within, usually furnished with 2 villous scales attached at each side of the petal about half way up. Disk concave with a fleshy hirsute margin. Stamens 8; filaments villous; anthers oblong, apiculate. Ovary densely hairy.

Fruit fleshy, nut 2- (usually 3-) lobed, clothed with fulvous hairs when young, glabrous and wrinkled when ripe, with 1 seed in each side. Seeds blackish, smooth, about the size of a large pea, very hard.

Flowering and fruiting time

Autumn to spring season.

Distribution

It is sporadic in all the parts of country. Indian Peninsula, chiefly in Southern India much cultivated. Wild in forests specially in South India and Chhota Nagpur regions. North-western India, Punjab and Assam and other province in India.

Kinds and varieties

There are two varieties generally found viz. Chhota Ritha and Bara Ritha, small and big Ritha considering size of Soap Nut; and they are *Sapindus trifoliatu*s Linn. and *Sapindus mukorossi* Gaertn. respectively. The classical texts (nighaṅṭus) also mention Rīṭhākaraṅja.

Chemical composition

The fruits contain saponin 11.5 percent, sugar 10 percent and some mucilage. Seeds yield 30 percent oil. It is a rich source of a n-licosanic acid. A toxic glucoside Saporubin is isolated from the plant (nut).

Pharmacodynamic

Rasa	: Tikta, Kaṭu
Guṇa	: Laghu, Snigdha, Tikṣṇa
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Tridoṣaghna

Action and Properties

Karma	: Vāmaka, Recaka, Kṛmighna, Mādaka Raktaśodhaka, Kaphaniḥsāraka Garbhāśayasaṅkocaka-garbhapātana Kuṣṭhaghna-kaṇḍughna, Viṣaghna Lekhana, Grahanāśana Kaphaghna-pittasaṁśodhaka Śothahara, Vedanāsthāpana.
--------------	---

Roga

(a) Ābhyaantara	: Udaravikāra, Kṛmiroga, Raktavikāra Kāsa-śvāsa, Rajorodha-kaṣṭhāprasava Kuṣṭha-kaṇḍū, Viṣa.
(b) Bāhya	: Kuṣṭha-kaṇḍu-visphoṭa-gaṇḍamālā Viṣa-jaṅgama-sarpa-vṛścikādi Viṣa-śthāvara-ahiphena Ardhāvabhedaka-mūrchā-apatantrak Sandhigatavāta-āmavāta-pakṣāghāta Śothvedanāyukta, Vikāra.

Therapeutic uses

It is given internally as an emetic, nauseant and expectorant; as an errhine it is used as a remedy in hemicrania, asthma, hysetria and epilepsy. Externally it is useful as deter-

gent and is given for the stings and bites of poisonous insects.

In snake bite the fruit is ground with water and used as a collyrium. The nut and the leaves are recommended in combination with other drugs and enter into the composition of a large number of prescriptions. In case of scorpion sting the fruit is ground to a pulp and given internally, while the smoke from burning nut is being inhaled.

The roots are considered useful as an expectorant. Both the roots and fruits are given as an anthelmintic. It is specifically prescribed in opium poisoning.

As an emetic, nauseant and expectorant; the pericarp of fruits or pulp of soap-nut is quite equal to ipécacuanha, and is very useful in all the affections in which such actions are desired for treatment. It is mostly used as an emetic drug which is considered one of the commonest, best and cheapest; and it is recommended in asthma, indigestion, diarrhoea, cholera and a other ailing conditions. In larger doses it acts as a purgative. In smaller doses it is useful as an anthelmintic, An emulsion is prepared of the nut-pulp is prepared by well rubbing it in water and staining the mixture which is administered under due posological consideration in medicinal application orally for various diseases, and in the line of treatment indicated suitably.

A few drops of a thick solution of the pulp is placed as snuff in the nose for relief of hemicrania, hysteria, epilepsy, asthma, tetanus, vertigo and unconsciousness with favourable effect.

A paste of pulp (with vinegar or suitable liquid) is applied topically for reducing scrofulous swellings. It used for killing head lice, applied to bites and stings of insects and scorpion, centipedes and other poisonaus venous; Pulp is pasted to snake bite and leprosy, dermatosis, eruption, goite and gladular affections; and the poultice to rheumatic joints, gout and paralysis. Solution is applied over burning sensation. It is a detergent. Fruit pulp solution is commonly used for washing hairs and also clothes.

Parts used

Fruit (nut-pulp or epicarp) (also leaves, roots and bark)

Doses

10-20 grains. 1-2 grains. 3-6 gms. (emesis) 4-8 gms. (purgation)

ARIṢṬAKA (अरिष्टक)

क. अरिष्टकस्तु मङ्गल्यः कृष्णवर्णोऽर्थसाधनः ।

रक्तबीजः पीतफेनः फेनिलो गर्भपातनः ॥

ख. अरिष्टकस्त्रिदोषघ्नो ग्रहजिद् गर्भपातनः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Vaṭādi varga, 38.

अ. रक्षाबीजः कुम्भबीजः पीतफेनोऽथ फेनिलः ॥

अरिष्टको गर्भपाती रक्तबीजोऽर्थसाधनः ।

ब. रक्तबीजः कटुः पाके तीक्ष्णोष्णो लेखनो लघुः ।

दोषत्रयहरो गर्भपातनो ग्रहनाशनः ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 981-983.

रीठाकरञ्जः

रीठाकरञ्जस्तिकोष्णः कटुः स्निग्धश्च वातजित् ।

कफघ्नः कुष्ठकण्डूतिविषविस्फोटनाशनः ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Prabhadrādi varga, 72.

रीठाकरञ्जकस्त्वन्यो गुच्छलो गुच्छपुष्पकः ।

रीठा गुच्छफलोऽरिष्टो मङ्गल्यः कुम्भबीजकः ।

प्रकीर्यः सोमवल्कश्च फेनिलो रुद्रसंज्ञकः ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Prabhadrādi varga, 71.

अरिष्टकः

‘अरिष्टस्त्रिदोषघ्नो ग्रहजिद् गर्भनाशनः ।’

Madanpāla Nighaṅṭu.

अरिष्टकः कटुपाके तीक्ष्णोष्णो लेखनो गुरुः ।

दोषत्रयहरो गर्भपातनो ग्रहशान्तिकृत् ॥

अर्धशीर्षव्यथां हन्ति वमनाद्विषनाशनम् ।

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Prabhadrādi varga.

दाहे

‘फेनिलायाश्च यः फेनः तैर्दाहं लेपनं हितम् ।’

Gadanigraha, p. 214.

अरिष्टः

अरिष्टः कटुकः पाके तीक्ष्णोष्णो लेखनोऽगुरुः ।

दोषत्रयहरो गर्भपातनो ग्रहशान्तिकृत् ॥

अरिष्टस्य जलम्

तज्जलं वामकं पानान्नस्याच्छीर्षरुजापहम् ।

अर्धशीर्षव्यथां हन्ति वमनाद्विषनाशनः ॥

Nighaṅṭu Saṅgraha.

ARJUNA

Botanical name : Terminalia arjuna W. & A.

Family : Combretaceae

Classical name : Arjuna

Sanskrit names

Arjuna, Kakubha, Pārtha, Vīravṛkṣa, Nadisarja, Indradru, Dhavala.

Regional names

Arjuna, Kahu, Kahua (Hind.), Arjunasadaj (Mar.) Arjunsajd sadarho, Arjuna (Guj.), Jumra (Beng.), Yarutai (Tam.), Tellamdi (Tel.), Juran (Punj.), Arjuna sadada (Mar.), Marudu, Maruttu, Vellamarutu (Mal.), Arjun, Billimatti (Can.), Arjun, Holematti, Nadiain (Konk.) Orjuno (Ori.) Arjan (Urdu); White Murdah, Arjuna Tree (Eng.).

Description

A large nearly evergreen tree with huge often buttressed trunk and horizontally spreading branches; bark smooth grey, flaking off in large pieces, whitish bark. Leaves usually subopposite 10-15 by 4 - 7 cm., oblong or elliptic-oblong, obtuse or subacute, pale dull green above, pale brown beneath, shallowly crenate-serrate in the upper part or sometimes throughout, base rounded or cordate, often unequal-sided; main nerves arcuate, 10-15 pairs, veins reticulate, pellucid, petioles 6-10 mm. long, with 1 or usu-

ally 2 prominent glands at the top immediately below the leaves.

Flowers sessile, in short axillary spikes or in terminal panicles; bracteoles linear-lanceolate, shorter than the flowers, caducous. Calyx glabrous. Teeth triangular. Ovary quite glabrous; disk clothed with yellowish or reddish hairs.

Drupe 2.5-5 cm., ovoid-or obovoid-oblong, fibrous-woody, glabrous, dark-brown, with 5 hard projecting wings striated with numerous curved veins. Fruit somewhat resembles with fruit (berry acutely angled) of *Averrhoa carambola* Linn. (*Karmaranga* or *Kamrakh*) in shape, but smaller in size.

Bark— Smooth, pinkish-whitish grey. Sapwood reddish, white, heartwood brown, variegated with darker coloured streaks. Bark consists of cork with thick walled, radially arranged cells. The cells of the cork are filled with tannin. The phloem is deep and is traversed by uniseriate ray cells. Phloem consists of best fibres, crystal fibers, sieve tubes with companion cells and phloem parenchyma. Best fibres occur in groups and surrounded by one or two layers of concentric crystal fibres. The calcium oxalate crystals are mostly spheroidal in form. Tannin is found in all the tissues of bark.

Flowering and Fruiting time

Summer to winter season.

Distribution

It is found throughout the greater part of India; in the sub-Himalayan tract-Terai region of the Himalayas, Chota Nagpur, Central India, Central Provinces, parts of Maharashtra-Bombay, and Tamilnadu in country; Bihar, Madhya Pradesh, Uttar Pradesh. Ceylon and Burma.

Chemical composition

Bark contains a crystalline compound arjunine, a lactone, arjunetin, essential oil, tannin, reducing sugar and colouring matter. Bark contains calcium carbonate 34 percent, other salts of calcium 9 percent, tannin 13 percent; and also aluminium, magnesium, organic acid, colouring matter, sugar and other substances.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṣāya
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa
Virya	: Sīta
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakasma	: Kaphapittaśamaka

Action and properties

Karma	: Hṛdya-raktaprasādana-stambhaka- śothahara, Staṃbhaka, Kaphaghna Mūtrasaṅgrahaṇīya-sāmaka, Tvacya Jvaraghna, Sandhāniya, Medohara Viśaghna, Vraṇaropaṇa Balya-rasāyana.
--------------	---

Roga

(a) Ābhyantara	: Hṛdroga-raktavikāra-śoṭha, Raktapitta-pāṇḍu,
(b) Bāhya	: Śvāsa-kṣayajaśvāsa Prameha-pūyameha-śukrameha Pradra-śveta-rakta Carmaroga-kaṇḍū-kuṣṭha Jvara-jirṇajvara, Medoroga Asthibhagna, Dourbalya-raktabhārāptā Viśa-śrama-trṣṇā, Atisāra-pravāhikā. Asthibhagna, Vraṇa-duṣṭavraṇa Raktasrava-kṣata, Yuvānapīḍikā Netraroga-śukla, Granthi-visarpa Śoṭha, Karṇaroga.

Therapeutic uses

It is a prominent cardiotoxic drug in Indian medicine and recommended in heart diseases; specifically the thick bark is ground (and cleaned) and boiled in milk for preparing decoction (kṣīrapāka) which is orally given for effective action; and the bark powder, decoction, juice and other various forms are prescribed in treatment of cardiac troubles.

The bark is useful as a cardio stimulant, tonic, cooling, astringent and febrifuge, lithotropic, cholagogue and vulnerary. The powder is internally given with honey in fractures and contrusions with ecchymosis. The decoction of

the bark is orally given in biliousness or bilious disorders, diarrhoea, dysentery, sprue and haemorrhage.

As an astringent the decoction is applied topically for cleaning sores, wounds or ulcers, chancres and other similar ailments. An ointment of bark made with honey is externally used in acne vulgaris and other allied affections.

The bark is used as deobstruent, diuretic, expectorant, haemostatic, anti-inflammatory and antidote to poisons. The bark is given in gleet, urinary discharges, leucorrhoea and urinary anomalies, also allied to seminal ailments. It is used in oedema, chronic fever, obesity, general debility, cough, asthma, phthisis, anaemia, tumours, overthirst, fatigue, dermatosis, leprosy and skin diseases. It also promotes vitality protects cardiac-circulatory respiratory and allied ailments and general health supporting longevity.

The bark is pasted over fractured organ(s); and the powder of bark is dusted or applied to bleeding lesion as a haemostatic drug; it is also used in haemorrhoids or bleeding piles. In the fractures, the bark is also orally given with milk, and also in other forms both extraneously and internally.

Besides the bark, the leaves and fruits are also used medicinally. The juice of fresh leaves is useful as an ear-drop in earache. The fruits are useful as a tonic and deobstruent. The ash of the plant is considered useful against snake-bite and scorpion-sting, and bark is given in venomous poison. Leaves of the plant are also prescribed the employ for bandaging the wounds (vraṇabandhana); and the powder of leaves is used as a dusting medicine for wounds and sores.

Parts used : Bark

Doses

Powder 1-3 gms.,; 10-30 grains

Juice 10-15 gms.

Decoction 60 gms.-120gms.; 1/2-1 ounce.

Bark 6-12 gms. (for decoction in milk-20-50 ml.)

Formulations (Yoga)

Kakubhādi Cūrṇa, Arjunāriṣṭa-Pārthādyariṣṭa, Arjunatvak cūrṇa, Arjuna ghr̥ta.

Groups (gāṇa)

Kaṣāyaskandha, Udardapraśamana (Caraka).
Nyagrodhādi, Śālasārādi (Suśruta).

ARJUNA (अर्जुन)

अर्जुनस्तुवरः शीतो जयेत् पित्तकफव्रणान् ॥
मेदोमेहास्रहृद्रोगस्वेदभग्नक्षतक्षयान् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 820-821.

ककुभः शीतलो हृद्यः क्षतक्षयविषास्रजित् ।
मेदोमेहव्रणान् हन्ति तुवरः कफपित्तहृत् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Gudūcyādi varga, 27.

अर्जुनस्तु कषायोष्णः कफघ्नो व्रणनाशनः ।
पित्तश्रमतृषार्त्तिघ्नी मारुतामयकोपनः ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Prabhadrādi varga, 118.

हृद्रोगे

तैलाज्यगुडविपक्वं चूर्णं गोधूमपार्थजं वापि ।
पिबति पयोऽनु न भवति जितसकलहृदामयः पुरुषः ॥

Śoḍhala, Gadānigraha, 2-26-21.

ग्रहण्याम्

केशराजोऽर्जुनक्षारः प्रातः पीतश्च मस्तुना ।
निहन्ति साममत्यर्थमचिरात् ग्रहणीरुजम् ॥

Baṅgasena, Grahaṇī, 189.

पूयमेहे

‘....पूयमेहे कषायश्च धवार्जुनस्य..... ।’

Hārīta Saṁhitā, 3-28-7.

क्षयकासे

चूर्णं काकुभमिष्टं वासकरसभावितं बहुवारम् (बहन् वारान्) ।
मधुघृतसितोपलाभिः लेह्यं क्षयकासरक्तपित्तहरन् ॥

Vṛndamādhava, 10-17; Baṅgasena, Rājayaḥṣmā, 56;

Bhāvaprakāśa, cikitsā, 12-29.

मूत्रोरोधजोदावर्ते

‘.....कषायं ककुभस्य च ।’

Bhāvaprakāśa.

बलसञ्जनार्थम्

‘.....ककुभस्य च वल्कलम् ।
रसायनं परं बल्यम्..... ॥’

Cakradatta, Hydroga cikitsā.

रक्तातिसारे

‘....अर्जुनत्वचाः ।

पीताः क्षीरेण मध्वाढ्याः पृथक् शोणितवारणाः ।’

Vṛnda, Atisāva cikitsā 3-41.

भग्रे

‘भग्नः पिवेत् त्वक् पयसाऽर्जुनस्य ।’

Vṛndamādhava, 46-10.

दीर्घायुष्ये

घृतेन दुग्धेन गुडाम्भसा वा पिवन्ति चूर्णं कुकुभत्वचो ये ।
हृद्रोगजीर्णज्वरपित्तरक्तं हत्वा भवेयुश्चिरजीविनस्ते ॥

Vṛnda, Hydrogādhikāra, 31-9.

हृदयामये

घृतेन दुग्धेन गुडाम्भसा वा पिवन्ति चूर्णं ककुभत्वचो ये ।
हृद्रोगजीर्णज्वररक्तपित्तं हत्वा भवेयुश्चिरजीविनस्ते ॥

Cakradatta, Hydroga cikitsā, 31-9

गोधूमपार्थजचूर्णम्

तैलाज्यगुडविपक्वं चूर्णं गोधूमपार्थजं वाऽपि ।
पिवति पयोऽनु च स भवेज्जितसकलहृदामयः पुरुषः ॥

Cakradatta, Hydroga cikitsā, 31-13.

हृदयामये

‘अर्जुनस्य त्वचासिद्धं क्षीरं योज्यं हृदयामये ।

Vṛndamādhava, 31-8.

‘पार्थः पथ्यः क्षते भग्रे रक्तस्तम्भनकृच्छ्रयोः ।’

Rāja Vallbha Nighaṅṭu.

व्यङ्गचिकित्सायामर्जुनत्वया—

Cakradatta, 55-44.

अर्शःसु

‘परिषेचने विदध्यात् वृषककुभयवासनिवाँश्च ।’

Caraka Saṁhitā, cikitsā. 9-214.

रक्तपित्ते

‘धनञ्जयोदुम्बुर..... ।

निशिस्थिता वा स्वरसी कृता वा कल्कीकृता वा मृदिता श्रृता वा ।
एते समस्ता गणशः पृथग्वा रक्तं सपित्तं शमयन्ति योगाः ।’

Caraka Saṁhitā, cikitsā. 4.

व्रणाच्छादनार्थम्

‘अर्जुनस्य पत्रं..... ।

व्रणप्रच्छादने विद्वानादिशेत्..... ।’

Caraka Saṁhitā, cikitsā. 13-13.

कुष्ठे

‘खदिरावघातककुभा....शस्यन्ते स्नानपानेषु ।

Caraka saṁhitā, cikitsā, 7-126.

रक्तपित्ते

‘पिवेच्छीतकषायं वा जम्ब्वाम्राजुनसम्भवम् ।’

शुक्रमेहे

‘शुक्रमेहिनं ककुभचन्दनकषायं वा ।’

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Uttara, 45-23.

मूत्राघाते

‘कषायं ककुभस्य वा ।’

Aṣṭaṅga Hṛdaya, cikitsā, 11-17.

मूढगर्भे

शिरीषककुभक्वाथपिचूनं योनौ विनिक्षिपेत् ।

उपद्रवाश्च येऽन्ये स्युस्तान् यथास्वमुण्चरेत् ॥

Aṣṭaṅga Hṛdaya, Śarīra, 2-44.

व्यङ्गेषु

‘व्यङ्गेषु चार्जुनत्वग्वा ।’

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Uttar, 32-16.

कासे (क्षयज)

चूर्णं काकुभपिष्टं वासकरसभावितं बहुन्वारान् ।
मधुघृतसितोपलाभिर्लेह्यं क्षयकासरक्तहरम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Kāsarogadhikāra, 12-29.

भग्ने

चूर्णं पुरेण संयोज्य घृतेनार्जुनलाक्षयोः ।
भग्नः सन्धानमायाति लीढं क्षीरघृताशिना ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Bhagnādhikāra, 48.29.

सर्वहृद्रोगे

‘पार्थस्य कल्कं स्वरसेन पक्वं शस्तं कृते सर्वहृदयामयेषु ।’

Cakradatta, 31-32.

पित्तजहृद्रोगे

‘अर्जुनस्य त्वचा सिद्धं क्षीरं योज्यं हृदामये ।’

Cakradatta, Hydroga cikitsā, 31-8.

हृद्विकारे

गोधूमककुभचूर्णं छागपयो गव्यसर्पिषा पक्वम् ।
मधुशर्करासमेतं शमयति हृद्रोगमुद्धतं पुंसाम् ॥

Cakradatta, 31-14.

ARKA

Botanical name

Calotropis gigantea (L.) Dryand.

Calotropis procera (Ait.) R. Br.

Family : Asclepiadaceae

Classical name : Arka

Sanskrit names

Arka, Tūlaphala, Alarka, Bhānu-bhāskara-ravi-
śūryapuṣpaka-sūryāhvaya, Kṣīradala-Kṣīrakāṇḍaka-kṣīrāṅga-
kṣīraparnī, Mandāra, Sadāpuṣpī, Āsphotā, Rūpikā.

Regional names

Ak, Akaua, Madar, Akond, Ark (Hind.), Akanda, Akond (Beng.), Akanda, Akra (Bomb.) Arka, Ekke (Can.), Akada Akdamujhada (Guj.), Bukam, Erikku (Mal.), Akanda, Muda, Rui, Akadachajhad (Mar.), Arakkam, Arulagam (Tam.), Arkamu, Jillendu, Uste (Tcl.), Akondu, Orko (Ori.), Ak (Urd.), Ashur, Oschor (Arab.), Khark (Pers.); Shallow Watt, Giant Milk Weed.

Description**A. *Calotropis gigantea* R.Br.**

A tall shrub reaching 2.4-3 meter high; bark yellowish white, furr owed; branches stout, terete, more or less covered (especially the younger ones) with fine appressed cottony pubescence. Leaves 10-20 b 3.8-10 cm., sessile or nearly so, elliptic-oblong or obovate-oblong or obovate-oblong, acute, thick, glaucous-green, clothed beneath and more or less above with fine cottony tomentum; base narrow, cordate, sometimes amplexicaul.

Flowers inodorous, purplish or white, 3.8-5 cm. diam., in umbellate lateral cymes; peduncles from between the petioles 5-9 cm. long, dilated at the base; pedicels much longer than the flowers, covered with cottony wool; buds ovoid. Calyx divided to the base; sepals 6 by 4 mm., ovate, acute, cottony. Corolla 2 cm. long or more; lobes 1.3-1.6 cm. long, deltoid-ovate subacute, revolute and twisted in age; lobes of the corona 1.3 cm. long by 5 mm., broad in the middle, shorter than the column, the back much curved towards the column above the obtuse sour, pubescent on the slightly thickened margin, the apex rounded (not bifid) with 2 obtuse auricles just below it.

Follicles 9-10 cm. long, broad, thick, fleshly, ventricose, green. Seeds numerous 6 by 5 mm., broadly ovate, flattened, narrowly margined, minutely tomentose, brown; coma 2.5-3.2 cm. long.

Roots : Roots is curved, woody, light greyish, white or yellow covered with thick bark. Surface is deeply and closely longitudinally furrowed giving it a rough appearance. On the cancan side of the bends in the root, short yellow transverse cracks on characteristics.

B. *Calotropis procera* R.Br.

An erect shrub usually 1.8-2.4 meter high (sometimes growing much higher in arid places); young parts clothed with white cottony tomentum; bark soft, corky, spongy. Leaves subsessile, usually 5.7-15 by 4.5-8.2 cm. (exceptionally 23 by 15 cm.), broadly ovate, ovate-oblong, elliptic or obovate, with a short abrupt acumination, cottony pubescent when young, at length glabrous.

Flowers in umbellate cymes which are at first tomentose, but becoming nearly glabrous; peduncles 2.5-7.5 cm. long, lateral pedicles 6 mm. long; buds globose. Calyx divided to the base, glabrous, sepals 5-2.5 mm., ovate, acute. Corolla glabrous, about 2.5 cm. across, divided about 2/3 of the way down; lobes usually erect, ovate, acute, 1 cm. long; lobes of corona 6 by 4.5 mm., compressed, equalling or exceeding the staminal column; the back nearly straight or sometimes slightly curved away from the column above the subcurved subacute sour margin; the apex obliquely truncate, bifid and without auricles.

Follicles 7.5-10 by 5-7.5 cm. subglobose, ellipsoid or ovoid. Seeds 6 by 4 mm., broadly ovate, acute, flattened, narrowly margined, minutely tomentose, light brown; coma 3.2 cm. long.

Plant becomes dry and almost leafless during rains.

Flowering and fruiting time

Spring to summer season.

Distribution

Throughout India. Ceylon, Malay Islands, Southern China. Common through out India in warm and dry places, in river beds. Found in Andhra Pradesh, Assam, Gujarat, Jammu & Kashmir, Karnataka, Kerala, Uttar Pradesh and West Bengal. Growing in waste lands also in damp places.

Kinds and varieties

There are two kinds of Arka based on flower-colour viz. white or Śvetārka (Alarka or Mandāra) and red or Raktārka, which are *Calotropis gigantea* (Linn.) B. Br. ex Ait. and *Calotropis procera* (Ait.) R. Br. respectively.

Besides main two kinds, the four varieties are also mentioned in the classical texts of materia medica

(nighantus) e.g. Arka, Rājāka (alarka), śuklārka and śveta mandāra.

Chemical composition

The leaves of *Calotropis gigantea* contain an active principle mudarine. Besides this principle a yellow bitter acid and resin are also found. The leaves, in addition, contain three glycosides viz. calotropin, uscharin and calotoxin.

In the latex of *Calotropis procera*, a powerful bacteriolytic agent capable of lysing *Micrococcus lysodlekstichus* is found to be present. The enzyme has maximum activity at pH 5-5.4 at 45 C. The action is potentiated by versene and hexametaphosphate and inhibited by heavy metals.

Asclepin, isolated from *Calotropis* species was found to be 3-O-acetyl-calotripin by various chemical and physical tests.

The roots bark contain an active principle in little quantity, and an enzymatic substance. In addition other substances Madar Alban, Madar Fluabil, Black acid resin and Caonthone.

It (root bark) contains bitter resins akundarin, calotropin; and latex contains uscharin, Calotoxin, calactin; cardioactivity in cats compared with cuabin taken as 100 is calotropin 83, calotoxin 76, uscharin 58; latex also contains a-calotropeol, B-calotropeol, B-amyrin and calcium oxalate. It also yields a nitrogen and sulphur containing fish and cardiac poison-gigantin; latex also contains traces of glutathione and protestic enzyme similar to parpain; stem bark contains a and B-calotropeols, B-amyrin, two isomeric crystalline alcohols, giganteol and iso-giganteol.

A process for the preparation of uscharin and uscharidin from the active principle containing *Calotropis* part material juice has been taken up. The useful substances for cardiac principles are calotropin, uscharin and calotoxinad they have been patented. Process for the preparation of uscharin and uscharidin from *Calotropis* juice is from both species (*C. procera* and *C. gigantea*) for patent.

The potency of the cardiac principles, calotropin, uscharin and calotoxin present in the latex are 83, 58 and 70 respectively, taking the potency of uscharin as 100.

The latex of *Calotropis procera* contains caoutchone; the cougulum contains resins and cautochone. The latex contains trypsin, an active principle labenzyme, and a cardiac poison. From the African plant's latex, α -lactoceryl isovalerate and α -lactuceryl acetate have been isolated, which can be converted into iso-lactucerol.

From the combined latex of both plant species *Calotropis procera* and *C. gigantea*, uscharin, calotoxin and calactin have been isolated. On hydrolysis, uscharin gives uscharidin, calotoxin yielding pseudo-calotropagenin on treatment with sodium hydroxide.

The leaves and stalk of this species contain calotropin and calotropagenin active substances.

The ash of the plant (*Calotropis gigantea*, 12 percent) is rich in potash (20.8 percent).

The latex which is present in all parts of the plant *Calotropis gigantea* contains cauoutchone. It contains two isomeric resinols, α -calotropeol and β -calotropeol and β -amyrin. It also yields as fish poison, gigantol, similar to but not identical with uscharin. Gigantol is described as one of the most virulent poisons known, probably being 10-20 times as toxic as strychnine the fatal dose, for a dog, given intraperitoneally, being 0.5 mg. per kg.

The latex also contains traces of glutalinons and an enzyme similar to papain. The stem bark contains α - and β -calotropeols, β -amyrin, and volatile oil and fatty acids. The seeds yield an olive green oil and bitter toxic substance. The root bark contains β -amyrin, isomeric crystalline alcohols, giganteol and iso-giganteol.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Katu, Tikta
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa, Tikṣṇa
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarṃa	: Kaphavātaśāṃaka, Kaphapittaśāṃaka (Red-flowered or Raktārkapuṣpa)

Action and Properties

Karṃa	: Bhedana-virecanopaga-recana Vamanopaga-vāṃaka
-------	--

Dīpana-pācana, Pittasāraka
 Hṛdayottejaka-śothahara
 Raktaśodhaka-kaṇḍūghna
 Kuṣṭhaghna-vraṇaśodhana-śothahara
 Raktapittaprasamana
 Kaphanihsāraka-śvāsa-kāsa
 Jvaraghana-svedajanana, Kaṭupouṣṭika
 Viśaghna, Vedanāsthāpana.

Roga

- (a) Ābhyantara : Agnimāndya-ajirṇa,
 Vibandha-koṣṭhabandhatā
 Udarvikāra-gulma, Viśūcikā, Kṛmi,
 Ykrdvikāra, Carmaroga-kuṣṭha,
 Hṛddourbalya, Ślīpada-upadaśa
 Raktavikāra-raktapitta,
 Jvara-jirṇa-viśamajvra, Viśa-sarpaviśa,
 Doūrbālya.
- (b) Bāhya : Śoṭha-vedanāyukta vikāra-ślīpada-ānavāta
 Karṇaroga-karṇaśūla-bādhirya
 Vraṇa, Tvagvikāra-kuṣṭha-kaṇḍu-śvitra
 Kṣudraroga-khālitya,
 Arśa, Dantaroga-dantaśūla.

Therapeutic uses

It is alterative, anodyne, antiperiodic, antispasmodic, blood-purifier, cardiac, diaphoretic, digestive, emetic, expectorant, sedative, stomachic, and suppurative. It is useful in ascites, anasarca, asthma, boils, cold, cough, dysentery, eczema, and eruptive skin diseases, indigestion, earache, enlargement of liver-spleen, elephantiasis and leprosy, eye troubles, piles, worms and toothache.

The leaves are used in dropsy and enlargement of the abdominal viscera. The ash obtained by roasting the leaves with rock salt in a closed vessel is given with butter milk.

An extract of the leaves is prescribed in one to five drop doses in intermittent fever; but it is poison in larger doses. The dried leaves are either inhaled or the smoke from the burning leaves is inhaled for the cure of asthma and cough. Calcinated leaf is used in liver disorders.

The alcoholic extracts of the leaves and roots of *Calotropis gigantea* and *C. procera* were found to have anti-cancer activity against human epidermal carcinoma of the nasopharynx in tissue culture.

The milky juice of *Calotropis gigantea* exhibited marked stimulant action on the spontaneous activity of the isolated nonpregnant rat uterus. The crude latex of *Calotropis procera* and its protein fraction were found to possess high fibrolytic and anti-coagulant activity both in rabbit and human plasma.

The leaves are considered useful in catarrhal affections, being warmed first of all and then the juice is dropped into nose or snuffed in nostrils, which causes sneezing and relieves the accumulation of mucous material from nasal cavity; this application is suggested to be taken in early morning and evening with care and restricted snuff, and warm water is also applied afterwards.

The leaves are used to cure headache. The plant is also useful in treating eye troubles. The leaves and fruits are boiled together and are used in the extraction of guinea worms, by the immersion of the infected limb (either for several hours or one, two or three consecutive days) and it is used as an enema.

The warmed leaves, preferably warmed and also oiled, over organs affected with inflammation and pain various ailments; the leaves are externally applied in rheumatism, elephantiasis, and other similar ailing conditions. The warmed leaves are used as a poultice. The plant is considered good cure for pains, headache and other painful stages; and the warmed leaves are applied to affected parts of body.

The leaves are ground or cut into pieces for boiling in oil; and the expressed juice of leaves is employed to prepare oil (under proper method of *taila siddha pāka*); the leaves oil is used as ear drop in ear complaints specially earache, deafness and other ear troubles.

The oil in which the leaves are boiled or their expressed juice is mixed, is used for dressing application over paralysed part, and the oil is topically applied to painful and inflammatory complaints. The poultice of the slightly

roasted leaves is prepared and it is applied to inflammatory swellings, rheumatic pain, lumbago and other similar complaints. A fomentation with the leaves is used to relieve pain in chest and it cures tympanitis.

The leaves juice is applied to aphthous sores in the mouth of children and skin affections. The powder of the leaves is dusted over ulcers, wounds and sores for healing as a good wound-healer remedy. The dried leaves is used as a dusting powder upon wounds to destroy excessive granulation and promote healthy action.

The expressed juice of the leaves or from warmed leaves are added with Turmeric powder and both drugs are boiled in mustard oil for preparing it a medicated oil which is externally applied to scabies, eczema and itchy affections. The leaves juice duly warmed is dropped into ear to check earache, hard hearing and other ailing conditions.

The root-bark is useful as a cholagogue, diaphoretic, emetic, diuretic alterative, in small doses, three times a day, it is given as an alterative medicine. In large doses the root bark, 50 to 60 grains, as an emetic. It is commonly used in secondary syphilis, spasmodic diseases, leucoderma, incipient leprosy, chronic rheumatism and joints ailments.

A paste of the charcol prepared from the roots, made with some bland oil, is applied over skin diseases caused by syphilitic leprosy and other similar affections. The paste prepared of the root-bark with rice-gruel or vinegar is a useful dressing for elephantiasis and filariasis legs and scrotum.

The latex is a strong irritant to the skin and mucous membrane. An extract injected into the lymphatic of a frog caused slowing of the heart and acute gastroenteritis. The latex is used in medicine in combination with *Euphorbia nerifolia* latex as a drastic purgative. It is also used as a local irritant. A powder of roots bark gives relief in dysentery; the root bark is said to be similar to ipecac or ipecacuanha in its action. In small doses it is useful in cough, asthma and fever as a diaphoretic and expectorant and used for emesis in large dose in ailings.

The durg plant *Calotropis gigantea* acts like digitalis or heart. The taste of the root barks of both varieties (also *C. procera*) is mucilaginous and bitter and the odour is peculiar. Flowers are digestive, stomachic and tonic. Milky juice is a violent purgative and gastro-intestinal irritant. All parts of the plant have alterative properties when taken in small doses and form. The flowers of *Calotropis gigantea* have detergent properties.

Both the varieties are considered to share several properties in common and also actions and the indications in general; and medicinal properties and medicinal values along with and syncope and lastly death in case the consumption is fatal; as the medicine, also in respect of particular part (s), as well as common medicinal utility along with their indications are given for this plant drug. As regards the medicinal efficacy of the parts or contents the flowers, latex, roots and leaves have specially been considered and indicated in treatment.

The milky juice of the plant is used in leprosy, paenia, dropsy, rheumatism and skin diseases; it is also known as vegetable mercury because of its efficacy and usefulness in syphilis nad typhus. It is potent substitute of ipecacuanha.

The roots are abortifacient and the fresh milky juice or latex of plant is an infanticide. In a drachm dose, the fresh latex obtained from *Calotropis* plant is administered orally may be fatal to a large dog within 15 minutes or so, or causing stage of adverse signs and symptoms; its action, though slower, resembles that of hydrocyanic acid, but commences with foaming at the mouth.

In Indian medical system, the latex of *Calotropis* species (*Arkakṣīra*) belongs to category of secondary poison or allied class of poisons (*upaviṣa*) and it is assorted in various groups of milky juice or latex producing plants (*Kṣīratraya*, *kṣīrayoni* and *śodhana ṣaḍavṛkṣa* including *Trivalkala*-trees; *Caraka Saṁhitā*, *Sūtra*. 1) which are indicated medicinally as well as used pharmaceutically (e.g. alchemic processes in pharmacy *Rasaśāstra* and *bhaiṣajya kalpanā*). The purification (*śodhana*) of various poisons of this cadre (*saptoaviṣajāti*) is also instructed with process; and the

method of collection of latex (kṣīra saṅgrahaṇa-Caraka. Kalpa. 1 and nighaṅṭus), storage and other necessary process are mentioned.

Among the irritant organic poisons, the vegetable poisons group includes Madar poison (Calotropis). The overdose or improper use may cause adverse complications (within half an hour to eight hours or so) such as pain and severe burning sensation in throat and stomach, excess salivation, stomatitis, drastic vomiting and purgation, dilation of pupil, convulsions, delirium, depression and syncope and lastly death in case the consumption is fatal; the complicatory signs are resulted by excessive local application of intense reddishness, inflammation and blisters due to severe irritation. The line of treatment for checking the poisonous effect has been recommended which includes oral use of decoction of Butea forndosa (Palāśa), drink of milk mixed with gḥṛta or pure ghee, dusting of fine powder of Palāśa or Bengal kino tree's bark over ulcers and washing with its decoction, and other emergency treatment against convulsions, pain, depression and other signs and symptoms, for stimulation and recovery by antidote and countering toxicity.

The milky acrid juice of Calotropis is infanticide by using common method by forcing down the madar juice or milky sap to victim infant.

In human female; it is abortifacient by putting into the uterus a crude application. The latex is also a cattle poison. These are all abuses or disuses of toxic and irritant nature.

The latex is commonly used for ringworm of the scalp, for relief of painful joints and swellings, for removing piles, and as a depilatory in aphthous condition of the mouth, the juice is used with honey, it relieves pain of carious teeth.

The flowers are tonic stomachic and digestive; they are given in small doses in cough, cold asthma and similar ailments, in dose of one to two grains the dried flowers are given in leprosy, secondary syphilis and gonorrhoea. Flow-

ers are considered useful in loss of appetite, and they are useful in cholera.

In scorpion-sting, the latex is locally applied. The plant is useful for snake-bite and scorpion-sting.

Parts used

Roots-abrk, Root, Latex, Leaves, Flowers, Manna.

Doses

Root-bark powder 1/2-1 gm.; 6-12 grains.

Root-bark powder 1/5-2/3 gm. (as tonic).

Flowers 1-2 gms.

Root-bark 3-5 gms. (as emetic).

Latex 1/8-1/4 gms.; 4-12 grains powder of calcinated

Leaves. 2-5 gms. (Arkalavaṇa 3-6 grains.)

Formulations (yoga)

(a) Arkalavaṇa, Arkataila, Arkeśvara, Arkamanaḥśiladi dhūma.

(b) Habbhaija.

Groups (gaṇa)

Sakkur-el-ushai, Bhedaniya, Vamanopaga, Svedopaga (Caraka), Arkādi, Adhobhāghara (Suśruta).

The plant is said to yield sometimes in certain plants a sugar or manna which is exuded and formed as a deposit on branches or parasitic action of *Larinus ursus*. The madar manna is known as Arka śarkarā which is also considered medicinal.

The milky juice of the plant is mixed with turmeric powder and it is applied as a face paste or lotion (in proper way) for allaying black-spots, discolouration and pigments-abnormalities, and cutaneous affections (kṣudraroga-vyaṅādi).

An intoxicating liquor is said to be prepared from the juice or milky sap of the *Calotropis* plants.

In epileptic fits, it is said to be useful by bandaging the leaves of plant, duly warmed and applying oils (on leaves) on the soles (foot) of patients suffering from epilepsy.

The calcinated leaves and ash prepared of leaves obtained from *calotropis* plants are very useful medicinally and

given in various ailments. This kind of preparation is incorporated in Indian medicine as Arka-laavaṇa commonly prevalent for medical treatment. It has a preparation method (putapākavidhi) by (burning) the leaves put in bundle after applying Saindhava lavaṇa (rock salt) between the layers of leaves (in putapāka) and covered by clay in a closed clay vessel or pot (mṛtika bhāṇḍa)—and putting into cowdung fuel fire (vanyopala agni) till the ash remains; it is finely powdered and becomes black colour alkaline ash, and this preparation 'Arka-lavaṇa' is orally given in various diseases for effective action, in doses of three to six grains under posological considerations, with different suitable vehicles and adjuvants, for the instance:-

Spleenic enlargement (plihāvṛddhi)	: 6 grains with butter milk or takra for three weeks.
Cough (kaphaja kāsa)	: 6 grains with honey and fresh ginger juice or madhu-ārdraka.
Cough (vātajaja kāsa, śuṣka kāsa)	: 6 gms, with malāi of milk or santānikā.
Fever (śītajvara)	: 6 grains with warm water.
Dysmenorrhoea (rajaḥkṛccha)	: 8 grains with worm water.
Abdominal colic (udara śūla)	: 6 grains with warm water.
Urticaria (śītapitta)	: External application, mixed in oil or ghee.

ARKA (अर्क)

अर्काऽलर्को सरौ तिक्तावुष्णौ वातकफौ हतः ॥

कृमिकुष्ठव्रणार्शोऽस्त्रप्लीहगुल्मविषग्रहान् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 1534-1535.

अर्कपुष्पम्

अर्कस्य पुष्पं मधुरं सतिक्तं कुष्ठं क्रिमिघ्नं कफनाश्रु ।

आखोविषं हन्ति च रक्तपित्तं संग्राहि शोफे च हितं सगुल्मे ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 1535.

अलर्ककुसुमम्

अलर्ककुसुमं वृष्यं लघु पाचनदीपनम् ।

अरोचकप्रसेकार्शः कासश्वासनिबर्हणम् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 1536.

अर्क स्नुहीक्षीरञ्च गुणाः

अर्कक्षीरं स्नुहीक्षीरं स्निग्धं वा कटुकं लघु ।

गुल्मिनां कुष्ठिनां चापि तथैवोदररोगिणाम् ॥

श्रेष्ठमेतद्विरेकार्थं ये चान्ये दीर्घरोगिणः ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 1536-1537.

अर्कदुग्धम्

क्षीरमर्कस्य तिक्तोष्णं स्निग्धं सलवणं लघु ।

कुष्ठगुल्मोदरहरं श्रेष्ठमेतद्विरेचनम् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 1538-1539.

अर्कद्वयगुणाः

अर्कद्वयं सरं वातकुष्ठकण्डूविषव्रणान् ।

निहन्ति प्लीहगुल्मार्शः श्लेष्मोदरशकृन्कृमीन् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Guḍūcyādi varga, 69.

व्यङ्गे

अर्कक्षीरहरिद्राभ्यां मर्दयित्वा प्रलेपनात् ।

मुखकार्ष्यं शमं याति चिरकालोद्भवं ध्रुवम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Madhyakhanda, 61-42.

दृढान्त्रवृद्धिर्द्विरोगे रूपिकामूलप्रलेपः

निष्पिष्टमारनालेन रूपिकामूलवल्कलम् ।

लेपो वृद्ध्यामयं हन्ति बद्धमूलमपि दृढम् ॥

Cakradatta, 40-20.

अर्कस्तित्तो भवेदुष्णः शोधनः परमः स्मृतः ।

कण्डूव्रणहरो हन्ति जन्तुसन्ततिमुद्गताम् ॥

Dhanvantari Nighaṅṭu.

अर्कदुग्धगुणाः

क्षीरमर्कस्य तिक्तोष्णं स्निग्धं सलवणं लघु ।
कुष्ठगुल्मोदरहरं श्रेष्ठमेतद्विरेचनम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Guḍūcyādi varga, 72.

क्षीरमर्कस्य विज्ञेयं वामने स विरेचने ।'

Caraka saṁhitā, Sūtra. 1.

शुक्लरक्तार्कयोः पुष्पगुणाः

अलर्ककुसुमं वृष्यं लघुं दीपनपाचनम् ।
अरोचकप्रसेकार्शःकासश्वासनिवारणम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Harītakyādi varga, 70.

रक्तार्कपुष्पं मधुरं सात्तिकं कुष्ठकृमिघ्नं कफनाशनञ्च ।

अर्शो विषयं हन्ति च रक्तपित्तं सङ्ग्राहि गुल्मेश्चयथौ हितं तत् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Guḍūcyādi varga, 71.

श्वेतार्कः

श्वेतार्कः कटुतिक्तोष्णो मलशोधनकारकः ।
मूत्रकृच्छ्रास्त्रशोफार्तिं व्रणदोषविनाशनः ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Karavīrādi varga, 30.

राजार्कः

राजार्कः कटुतिक्तोष्णः कफमेदोविषापहः ।
वातकुष्ठव्रणान् हन्ति शोफकण्डूविसर्पनुत् ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Karavīrādi varga, 32.

श्वेतमन्दारः

श्वेतमन्दारकोऽत्युष्णस्तिक्तो मलविशोधनः ।
मूत्रकृच्छ्रव्रणान् हन्ति क्रिमीनत्यन्तदारुणान् ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Karavīrādi varga, 34.

योनिधारणार्थम् अर्कादिवर्त्ती

भावितं पयसाऽर्कस्य यवचूर्णं ससैन्धवम् ॥
वर्त्तिः कृता मुहुर्धार्या ततः सेव्या सुखाम्बुना ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā. 30-71/72.

प्लीहारोगे पुटपाकम्

अर्कपत्रं सलवणं पुटदग्धं सुचूर्णितम् ।
निहन्ति मस्तुना पीतं प्लीहानमतिदारुणम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Pūhayakṛdadhikāra, 33-12.

कच्छूचिकित्सायामर्कतैलम्

अर्कपत्ररसे पक्वं हरिद्राकल्कसंयुतम् ।
नाशयेत्सार्षपं तैलं पामाकच्छूविचर्चिकाः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Kuṣṭha. 54-166.

कर्णरोगे

क. अर्काङ्कुरानम्लपिष्टान्सतैललवणान्वितान् ।
सन्निदध्यात्सुधाकाण्डे कोरिते मृत्स्नत्याऽऽवृते ॥
पुटपाकक्रमात्स्वत्रं पीडयेदारसागमात् ।
सुखोष्णं तद्रसं कर्णे प्रक्षिपेच्छूलशान्तये ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Karṇarogādhikāra, 64/31-32.

कर्णशूले

ख. अर्कस्य पत्रं परिणामपीतमाज्येन लिप्तं शिखियोगतप्तम् ।
आपीड्य तस्याम्बु सुखोष्णमेव कर्णे निषिक्तं हरते हि शूलम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Karṇarogādhikāra, 64/33.

वातजन्यकर्णशूले

ग. तैलं श्वेतार्कमूलेन मन्देऽग्नौ विधिना कृतम् ।
हरेदाशु त्रिदोषोत्थं कर्णशूलं प्रपूरणात् ॥

अर्कमूलशिलाऽदिधूमः

मनःशिलालिसदलं वदर्यातपशोषितम् ।
सक्षीरं धूमपानञ्च सर्वकासनिवारणम् ॥

Cakradatta, Kāsa cikitsā, 11-40.

अर्कच्छल्लशिले तुल्ये ततोऽर्द्धेन कटुत्रिकम् ।
चूर्णितं वह्निनिक्षिप्तं पिवेद् धूमन्तु योगवित् ॥
भक्षयेदथ ताम्बूलं पिवेद् दुग्धमथाम्बु वा ।
कासः पञ्चविधा यान्ति शान्तिमाशु न संशयः ॥

Cakradatta, Kāsa cikitsā, 11/41-42.

उदररोगे अर्कलवणम्

अर्कपत्रं सलवणमन्तर्धूमं दहेत् ततः ।
मस्तुना तत् पिवेत् क्षारं गुल्मप्लीहोदरापहम् ॥

Cakradatta, Udara cikitsā, 37-43.

श्लिपदे रूपिका (अर्कश्चेत) मूलप्रयोगः

निष्पिष्टमारनालेन रूपिकामूलवल्लकलम् ।
प्रलेपाच्छ्लीपदं हन्ति बद्धमूलमपि दृढम् ॥

Cakradatta, Ślīpada cikitsā, 42-3.

क्रिमिदन्ते अर्कक्षीरयोगः

जीवनीयेन दुग्धेन क्रिमिरन्ध्रप्रपूरणम् ।
अर्कक्षीरेणैवमेकयोगः सद्भिः प्रशस्यते ॥

Cakradatta, Mukharoga cikitsā, 56-36.

कर्णशूले अर्कपत्रस्वरसपूरणम्

अर्कस्य पत्रं परिणामपीतमाज्येन लिप्तं शिखिनावतप्तम् ॥
आपीड्य तोयं श्रवणे निषिक्तं निहन्ति शूलं बहुवेदनञ्च ॥

Cakradatta, Karṇaroga cikitsā, 57-13.

क्रिमिदन्तरोगे

‘सप्तच्छदार्कदुग्धाभ्यां पूरणं क्रिमिदन्तनुत् (शूलजित्) ।’

Aṣṭāṅga Hydaya, Uttara, 22-20;

Cakradatta, mukharoga cikitsā 56.

ARKAPARNĪ

Botanical name : Tylophora asthmatica W. & A.

Family : Tylophora indica Burm. L. Miers.

Asclepiadaceae.

Classical name : Arkaparṇi

Sanskrit names

Arkaparṇi, Śvāsaghni.

Regional names

Antamul, Jankglipikvan (Hind.), Antomul (Beng.),
Antomul, Kharakirasana, Pilimari (Nomb.), Pitkuri (Dec.),
Wallippala (Mal.) Pitakari (Mar.), Kapittum Kaluduipalai

Kodayam (Tam), Kakapala, Veripala Mattukumittukoni (Tel.), Mendi, Mulini (Guj.); Country Ipecacuanha (Eng.).

Description

A twining perennial; roots many, long, fleshy; stems elongate, glabrous or pubescent, not much branched. Leaves 5-10 by 2.5-5.7 cm., ovate or elliptic-oblong, acute or acuminate, often apiculate, glabrous or nearly so above, more or less pubescent (especially when young) beneath, base usually cordate. Petioles 6-13 mm. long.

Flowers large for the genus, in umbellate cymes; peduncles from between the petioles, shorter than the leaves, each bearing at its apex 2-3 nearly sessile umbels; pedicels filiform with a number of filiform hairy bracts at their base. Calyx coarsely hairy outside, divided almost to the base; segments 2.5 mm. long, lanceolate, very acute, Corolla greenish yellow or greenish purple, 5-6 mm. long; lobes 4 mm. long, oblong, acute; corona glabrous below, abruptly narrowed at the apex to a free point which reaches nearly as high as the apex of the style. Pollen-masses minute, transverse, attached to the pollen-carriers by distinct caudicles. Style-apex not exerted beyond the anther-tips.

Follicles 7.5-10 cm. long, tapering to a fine point at the apex, scarcely tapering towards the base; finely striate, glabrous. Seeds 8 mm. long, broadly ovate; coma 2-2.5 cm. long.

Flowering and fruiting time

Autumn and onwards.

Distribution

It is found throughout India, Eastern and Southern India in the plains; Pakistan, Ceylon, Siam, Malay Island and Borneo.

Chemical composition

The roots of the plant contain a crystalline alkaloid tylophorine. Two crystalline alkaloids named tylophorine and tylophorinine occur in glistening plates and prismatic needles respectively.

The leaves, stem and root of the plant contain 0.2 to 0.3 percent of the total alkaloids and the alkaloidal content

does not seem to be significantly affected by seasonal variations. Apart from the alkaloids, the plant also contains cetyl alcohol, a phytosterol, a neutral substance of an alcoholic nature, a wax, a resin, dilorophyl, caoutichone, coloring matter, tannin, glucose, calcium salts and potassium chloride.

Steam distillation of air dried root powder yields 0.8 percent of a colourless crystalline solid and a small content of an oil; the solid was identified as melnoxy salicylic aldehyde; the oil is viscous and deposits a small amount of waxy solid on standing.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Tikta
Guṇa	: Uṣṇa
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphaśāmaka (Kaphavātaśāmaka-pittasāṁśodhaka)

Action and Properties

Karma	: Kaphaghna-kaphanihsāraka Vāmaka. Svedajanana, Pācaka Stambhaka, Raktaśodhaka
Roga	: Svasa-kāsa-kukkurkāsa Atisāra-āmātisāra-pravāhikā Rakta-tvagvikāra, Pradara, Phiranga Agnimāndya jvara.

Therapeutic uses

The dried leaves are emetic, expectorant, diaphoretic, alterative, stimulant and blood purifier. They are considered best substitute of indigenous source for ipecacuanha (asince the alkaloid tylophorine found in the leaves and roots of plant is similar in action to ipecac, obtained from the plant psychotria ipecacuanha a known drug of British pharmacopoea) in the dose of half drachm; they are emetic in smaller dose of three to five grains, they are given three times a day as an expectorant and diaphoretic, often with a little opium.

In asthma, bronchitis, catarrh, early signs of stages of whooping cough and other respiratory diseases. The

leaves are given three times a day or often in five grain doses. A decoction of the leaves is an efficacious remedy for dysentery and diarrhoea. The leaves are given to promote lochia.

The roots are used in the same way as the leaves. In small dose they are used as a cathartic; and in larger doses as an emetic. An infusion, in the dose of about a half teaspoonful, prepared of roots induces vomiting in children who can not bring up phlegm after coughing. As an expectorant the infusion is given in chronic bronchitis. The roots are given in the loss of appetite, fever, skin diseases, syphilis and leucorrhoea; they are also a good substitute for sarsaparilla.

The drug is useful as an antiasthmatic and cardio-tonic, and used in cough, respiratory diseases specially in bronchial asthma. In the traditional medicine, the plant is frequently used in asthmatic conditions.

It has been found useful in dysentery and catarrhal affections, and other ailments in which the Ipecacuanha has been prescribed. The fresh juice of the plant is given for emesis; and the dried pills made of it and given in dysentery. A decoction of one to ten leaves is prepared as well as infusion of roots are given orally in respiratory and intestinal disorders e.g. asthma, bronchitis and dysentery etc., with the satisfactory effects.

There were also reports of dermatitis while working continuously during the extraction of and isolation of the alkaloids from this plant, particularly noticeable in case of solutions of the alkaloids in volatile solvents such as ether, chloroform and benzene, since aqueous acid solutions not found so active (the symptoms of contact dermatitis disappeared within a week as usually treated). The alkaloid tylophorine is toxic and toxicity of the alkaloid varies with different animals; the m.l.d. for frogs is 0.4 mf. per gm. of body weight but its toxicity for the mice and guinea pigs is very high. The alkaloid has no irritant action locally on conjunctiva and on the skin; and it produces little or no local reactions when injected subcutaneously or intramuscularly.

The pharmacological experimental observations find that the effect of the drug is especially marked on musculature of the body, both striped and unstriped varieties being stimulated. The action on the cardiac muscle is however different; the drug having distinct depressing effect on the heart. The blood pressure is lowered when a dose is administered, but is raised soon after and is maintained at a level higher than the normal for a fairly long time. The initial fall is due to the depressant effect of the drug on the cardiac muscle and the subsequent rise in the stimulant effect on the plain muscle of the blood vessels, resulting in contraction and increased cardiac output.

The observations of cardiometer experiments mark distinct evidence of increase of both the systolic and diastolic phases of the heart. In myocardiographic experiments the amplitude of both auricular and ventricular contraction is increased. There is absence of any effect of the drug on pupil remaining unaffected. Further studies on different aspects of the plant have been carried out.

The roots of the plant are also sometimes claimed and prevalent as a marked substitute or adulterant for prominent drug Rāsnā of Indian medicine.

Parts used : Whole plant, roots, leaves.

Dose : Powder 1-5 gms., Leaves powder 3-5 gms.

Decoction 15 ml.

Juice 5-10 ml.

Roots 1-3 gms.

ARKAPARNĪ (अर्कपर्णी)

तिक्ता रसे भवति सोग्रतमोष्णवीर्या ।

स्याद् वामनी कफहरी खसनापहर्त्री ॥

Priya Nighantū.

अर्कपर्णी

तत्र पद्मक कुष्ठैलाकरञ्जककुभत्वचः ।

स्थिरार्कपर्ण्यपामार्ग दूर्वा ब्राह्म्यो विषापहाः ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Kalpa. 8-106.

ĀRUKA

Botanical name

Prunus persica Stokes

Amygdalus persica Linn.

Family : Rosaceae

Classical name : Āruka

Sanskrit name : Āruka

Regional names

Aru-Arhu-Adu (Hindi.), Pishu (Uriya), Adud (Urdu), Ichesu, Pichchisuhianne (Can.), Khuj, Persk (Arab.), Aur, Aru, Bembi (Punj.), Aru, Shuftalu (Pers.), Peach tree, Peach (fruit).

Description

A large deciduous shrub or small tree; twigs glabrous. Leaves conduplicate in bud, 6.5-10 cm. long, lanceolate, ovate-lanceolate or lanceolate-oblong, acuminate, usually hairy on the midrib beneath when young serrate; petiole shorter than the greatest width of the leaf, glandular or not; stipules, subulate, fimbriate.

Flowers pink, usually before, sometimes with the leaves, sessile or shortly pedicelled, mostly solitary on the previous year's wood, Calyx-tube campanulate, 3.8 mm. long. Stamens inserted at the mouth of the calyx-tube.; Calyx-tube; lobes woody, equalling or exceeding the tube. Petals obovate 2 cm. long. Ovary and style hairy. Drupe downy, succulent; stone deeply furrowed.

Flowering and fruiting time

Spring to summer season.

Distribution

It is commonly cultivated in West Asia, Europe, Afghanistan, Baluchistan, Burma, in the Hiamalayas upto 10,000 ft.; India, hilly regions (and in the plains of northern India) in various provinces of country.

Kinds and Varieties

There are four kinds mainly Aru (*Prunus persica* Linn.), Alubukhara (*Prunus communis* Hindson), Elavalukagilas (*Prunus cerasus* Linn.), and Alucha (*Prunus aloocha*).

Chemical Composition

Fruits contain prussic acid. Seeds kernel yields fixed oil which resembles oil of *Prunus amygdalus* Baillon or almond oil (bitter variety).

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Madhura
Guṇa	: Guru
Vīrya	: Śīta, Uṣṇa (Bija taila-seeds oil)
Vipāka	: Madhura
Doṣakarma	: Vātapittaśāmaka

Action and Properties

Karma	: Hṛdya, Raktaprasādana-raktastambhana Mūtrajanana, Dāhaprasāmāna Jvaraghna Balya-br̥mhaṇa-dhātuvṛddhikara Dīpana-pācana, Kṛmighna Yakṛduttejaka, Vedanāsthāpana, Keśya.
Roga	: Hṛdroga
(a) Ābhyantara	: Raktavikāra-Raktapitta, Agnimāndya Kṛmiroga, Yakṛdvikāra, Tr̥ṣṇa-dāha Vibandha-gulma, Arśa Paittika pramha-mūtrakṛccha Jvara, Daurbalya-dhātukṣaya.
(b) Bāhya	: Karṇaroga-śūla-bādhirya Arśa-vedanā, Keśavikāra, Kṛmiroga.

Therapeutic uses

The fruits are useful as tonic to heart and brain, as well as to body as a whole; it enriches the blood and tissues, removes bed smell from the mouth and sputum; it is useful in overthirst, biliousness; and fruits allay vata and pitta, and promote kapha.

The leaves are useful as anthelmintic, insecticidal and vermifugal; and used in leucorrhoea, worms affection and piles. The flowers are useful galactagogue.

The oils obtained from seeds is abortifacient; and useful in haemorrhoids, deafness, earache, stomach troubles in children. Fruits are also useful as an ascaricide.

The bark is useful in dropsy; the bark is considered sedative, diuretic and expectorant. Similarly the leaves are

useful as a sedative, diuretic and expectorant. For irritation and congestion of the gastric surfaces, it has been a specific medicine. It is also used in coughs, whooping cough, and chronic bronchitis; and for these ailments it is used in the form of infusion preferably.

An infusion of leaves is administered in the females for their menstrual troubles; it is used in dysmenorrhoea and irregular, scanty or painful menstrual flow. In the traditional medicine, the infusion of leaves is orally given to ladies for making the menstruation regular and normal, and checking pain and scanty quantity of menstrual fluid. The infusion is also administered in girls attaining puberty or mature age for menstrual cycle but the inception of menses are delayed, and in other troubles.

The peach kernels are given in cough, blood diseases, rheumatism and ague. The seeds are used as an anthelmintic and emmenagogue; and they are applied in the form of powder in pruritis vulvae or vaginal itchy affections.

The seeds kernel oil is applied to impetigo and other similar ailments. The oil is medicinally useful and used in certain diseases (and its properties also differ from fruit as a whole in particular). The oil of seeds kernel is used as an ear-drop for curing earache and deafness; it is also applied over haemorrhoid or piles for checking pain. The oil is considered for using as a hair oil for promoting hairs healthy.

The plant is useful in loss of appetite, stomach troubles (as a stomachic) and abdominal complaints (e.g. constipation and flatulence, colic), and in piles. It is useful as blood purifier and for checking haemorrhage.

The plant is useful in fever, burning sensation of human body, and used in general debility.

The leaves are good anthelmintic, and administered orally in the form of infusion as well as expressed juice for curing worms affections; it is also used in traditional medicine against the worms in children and other cases. The leaves are pasted over abdomen and its juice is also applied to anus in worms complaints.

The fruits or drupes are peach which belong to the common edible fruits as the pulp of ripen fruit is relished (fresh and stoneless).

Parts used : Fruits , Bark, Leaves, Seeds kernel oil.

Dose

Leaves juice 5-10 gms., Leaves infusion 1/2-1 cup;
50-100 gms.

ĀRUKA (आरुक)

‘ आरुकाणि च हृद्यानि मेहाशौनाशनानि च ।’

Dhanvantarī Nighaṇṭu.

‘ अर्शःप्रमेहगुल्मास्त्रदोषविध्वंसनानि च ।’

Rāja Nighaṇṭu.

नात्युष्णं गुरु सम्पक्कं स्वादुप्रायं मुखप्रियम् ।

बृंहणं जीर्यति क्षिप्रं नाति दोषलमारुकम् ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 27.

आरुक

Caraka Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 13-9

(Va.) 27-129, 130.

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra, 27-8 (Va).

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Sūtra 6-135, 137.

ASANA

Botanical name : Terminalia tomentosa W.&A.

Family : Combretaceae

Classical name : Asana

Sanskrit names : Asana, Saradru

Regional names

Asan, Saina, Saradru (Hind.), Aina (Mar.), Aina (Guj.), Kurupya-maruta-maram (Tam.), Maddi (Tel.), Sahajo (Uri.).

Description

A large tree Twigs villous. Leaves coriaceous, villous on the under surface, up to 18 by 8 cm., elliptic-oblong, obtuse or even emarginate or slightly acute at the apex,

rounded or cordate at base of the midrib large and stalked. Panicles of spikes dense, villous. Bracteoles linear. Calyx villous with yellowish brown hairs. Fruit large, glabrous, usually 5 cm. diam., including the five equal wings.

Bark

Bark rough, not fissured, wood hard, dark brown.

Flowering and fruiting time

Summer to colder seasons.

Distribution

It is found throughout India; also found in Pakistan. It is occurring upto 4,000 ft. height in Nepal, Sikkim, Uttar Pradesh and Southern Indian forests.

Chemical composition

Bark contains insoluble matter, 64 percent, extractive substance 4.4 percent, tannin 20.2 percent. and ash 6.7 percent.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṣāya, Tikta
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Tridoṣaśāmaka

Action and Properties

Karma	: Mutrasaṅgrahaṇīya Kuṣṭhaghna-tvacya-kaṇḍūghna Soṇitāsthāpana-raktadoṣahara Stambhan, Vedanāsthāpana, Rasāyana Jantughna-śothahara-vraṇaropana Kṛmighna, Keśya, Pācana, Kapha-pittaghna, Vatārtidoṣahora.
Roga	: Prameha, Raktavikāra-raktamaṇḍaba-visarpa Upadamśa-ślipada Cormaroga-kaṇḍu-udarda, Kuṣṭha-śvitra, Galadoṣa Medoroga-sthoulya, Kṛmiroga Keśavikāra, Dourbalya-dhātuḥṣaya Kapha-pittavikāra, Vātavyādhi, śoṭha Jiṛṇavraṇa, Raktapitta.

Therapeutic uses

The bark is bitter and styptic, useful in ulcers, vāta disorders, fractures, haemorrhage, and bronchitis.

The decoction of the bark is taken internally in atonic diarrhoea, and locally as an application to weak indolent ulcers.

The ashes of the plant in the treatment of snake bite.

The bark has both diuretic and cardiotoxic properties.

The bark is useful as astringent, haemostatic, cardiac tonic and diuretic.

It is useful in ulcers, fractures, haemorrhages, bronchitis, leucorrhoea, gonorrhoea, diarrhoea, dysentery, heart diseases and calculi.

The decoction of bark is given in retention of urine, gonorrhoea, leucorrhoea and ecchymosis, spitting of blood from the chest, and bowel or intestinal troubles.

A powder of the bark is given in heart diseases with ghee or ghr̥ta, and a gruel made of wheat flour, and medicated ghr̥ta prepared with powder is especially efficacious.

The bark is given with milk in cases of fractures.

Locally a decoction of the bark is used for washing ulcers, wounds, contusions, suppurating ears and ecchymoses.

The juice of the bark is orally given in condition of general debility.

The bark is useful in throat affections.

The plant is also useful to help vitality and longevity, in combination with some drugs suitably prescribed.

Parts used : Bark, Heartwood.

Dose : Decoction 50-100 gms.

Groups (gāṇa)

Udardaprasāmana (Caraka), Śālasarādi, (Suśruta.)

ASANA (असन)

शिरो विरेचनार्थे असननिर्यासः

Caraka Samhitā, Vimāna. 8-158.

असनगुणाः

असनः कटुरुष्णश्च तिक्तो वातार्त्तिदोषनुत् ।

स्तम्भनो गलदोषघ्नः रक्तमण्डलनाशनः ॥

Dravyaguna Vijñāna, (Dvītiya-tṛtīya bhāga), p. 522.

असनप्रयोगः

धवाश्वकर्णसिनबालपत्रसारास्तथा पिप्पलीवत् प्रयोज्याः ।

लोहोपलिप्ताः पृथगैव जीवेत् समाः शतं व्याधजराविमुक्तः ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hīdaya, Uttara. 39-105.

AŚOKA

Botanical Name : *Saraca indica* Linn.

Family : Fabaceae (Papilionaceae)

Classical name : Aśoka

Sanskrit names : Aśoka, Hemapuṣpa, Tāmrapallava

Regional names

Ashok (Hind, Mar., Guj.), Ashok (Beng.), Ashogham (Tam.), Ashokasu, Ashokamu (Tel.); Ashoka Tree (Eng.).

Description

A tree 6-9 meters high branches glabrous. Leaves 15-25 cm. long; rachis glabrous, corky at the base, petioles very short; stipules intrapetiolar, completely united, 10-13 by 6 mm., scarious, ovate-oblong, obtuse, parallel nerved. Leaflets 4-6 pairs, 10-20 by 3-5.7 cm. oblong-lanceolate, obtuse or acute, quite glabrous, base rounded or cuneate, slightly oblique; petiolules 4.5-6.5 mm. long, stout, wrinkled; stipels deciduous.

Flowers fragrant, numerous, in dense axillary corymbs 7.5-10 cm. across; peduncles stout; pedicles 8-13 mm. long, red, glabrous; bracts ovate subacute; bracteoles 2, appearing like a calyx, 4 mm. long, spatulate-oblong subacute ciliolate, amplexicaul, coloured. Calyx passing from yellow to orange and finally red; tube 1.3-2 cm. long, cylindric, solid at the base; segments 7 or 8, oblong or obovate-oblong, 1 cm. long. Petals 0. Stamens 7-8, much exerted; filaments filiform, thrice as long as the calyx-segments; anthers purple.

Ovary pubescent, especially on the sutures; anthers purple. Style curved into a ring.

Pods black, 10-25 by 4.5-5 cm., Linear-oblong, tapering to both ends, compressing, glabrous, veined. Seeds 4-8 ellipsoid-oblong, 3.8 cm., slightly compressed.

Flowering and fruiting time

Spring to autumn seasons.

Bark

The bark is externally greyish-brown and rough to touch; it is white when freshly cut from the tree, but turning red after exposure to the air. The taste is mildly astringent and acidulous.

Wood soft, reddish brown. Bark is distinguishing by the presence of warty protruberances and transverse lenticels on the its outer surface, septate and non-septate crystal fibres and prism of calcium oxalate.

Distribution

It is found in West Bengal, Southern India and Central and Eastern Himalaya, Western Peninsula. Burma, Ceylon and Malaya.

Chemical composition

Bark contains tannin and catechol. Active phenolic glycoside has been found to vary depending upon the place, time of collection and storage condition Bengal variety is considered as best.

It contains helmatoxylin and also iron and other substances.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṣāya
Guṇa	: Tikta, Laghu
Vīrya	: Rūkṣa
Vipāka	: Śīta, Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphapittaśāmaka

Action and Properties

Karma	: Ārtavaśamana, Raktāstambhanaśodhaka, Śothahara Stambhana-grāhī, Kṛmighna Mūtrala-aśmarināśana Dāhapraśamana-śramahara
-------	--

Roga	Garbhāśayahita (Srāva-pīdā-śaithilyahara) Varṇya, Viṣaghna, Vedanāsthāpana. : Raktapradara-śvetapradara- Kaṣṭārtavat, Garbhāśayaśaithilya-vikāra Atisāra-pravāhikā, Kṛmiroga Tṛṣṇā-dāha-śrama Śoṭha-raktadoṣa-raktapitta Śoṣa, Raktavikāra, Varṇavikāra Mūtrakṛccha-aśmari mūtrāghāta, Udararoga-gulma-ādhmāna Vedanāpradhāna, vikāra.
------	--

Therapeutic uses

The plant is useful as an astringent drug which is generally recommended as a uterine tonic and frequently used in menorrhagia and uterine affections.

The bark is useful as bitter and acrid; it is cooling to the bowels, anthelmintic, antidysenteric and antidote to poisons. It cures itching, sore throat, bronchitis, indigestion, heaviness, ulcers, boils, psoriasis, inflammations, leprosy, anaemia and leucoderma.

It is given in elephantiasis-filariasis, urinary discharges; it strengthens the teeth and dentature. It is astringent to the bowels, alexiteric, anthelmintic, demulcent and emollient. It is useful to cure dyspepsia, thirst, burning sensation, diseases of the blood and effect of fatigue. It is given in enlargement of abdomen, colic, piles and bloody discharges from the uterus; it is useful against tumours, ulcers. The bark is used internally in cases of menorrhagia and allied menstrual troubles.

It is useful in fractures of the bones; it beautifies the complexion. The seeds are useful in urinary discharges.

The bark is much used in treatment of uterine affections and it is valued for menorrhagia; a decoction of the bark-preparation in milk- is orally given as a specific recommendation (aśokatvak kṣīrapāka), besides use of bark in other forms in this kind of menstrual disorders in female patients.

The flowers are pounded and mixed with water are used for the treatment of haemorrhagic dysentery.

A liquid extract of the bark of tree which strongly astringent has been found to get good results considerably when it is administered in cases of menorrhagia. Sometimes action may be slow but it gives desired effect within three days or so depending on certain factors of disease and patient.

The bark, flowers and fruits are prescribed in combination with other drugs for the treatment of snake-bite and scorpion-sting.

Specially the bark is highly astringent of this tree plant drug; and it is a household remedy for uterine disorders, particularly for menorrhagia and leucorrhoea. It is orally administered as a decoction in these disorders; three ounces of bark are boiled in milk in equal quantity and four-times (12 ounces) water till the total quantity (crude drugs and liquid mixture) is reduced to about three ounces; and it is given in two or three doses; the treatment is to commence from the fourth day of the monthly period (menstrual cycle) and to continue till the excess bleeding is checked. A fresh decoction need to be prepared every day and administered daily.

The decoction of the bark is also used as an efficacious remedy for haemorrhoids and blood dysentery. Similarly the fluid extract of the flowers of plant is internally given in haemorrhagic kind of dysentery in doses of 15 to 60 minims. The powder of dried flowers is also given in diabetes.

The bark is antidote to poisons, useful in stones of kidney and urinary bladder and used as an anodyne, litholytic, diuretic and anti-inflammatory drug. and as a valuable uterine tonic.

The powder of the seeds is orally given in scanty urine, calculus and urinary disorders, as the seeds are diuretic.

The bark is also useful in recurring haemorrhoidal tumours in female subjects.

There is external application in condition of pains and cases of sting-poisons.

The bark is one of the prominent herbal drugs used in uterine disorders in Indian medicine.

Parts used : Bark, Flowers, Seeds.

Formulation (Yoga)

Aśokariṣṭa, Aśokaghṛta, Aśokakṣīram (Aśokatvak, Kṣīrapāka).

Dose : Bark Powder 1-3 gms., Seeds powder 1-3 gms., Flowers powder 103 gms., Bark 12-24 gms. (for decoction).

AŚOKA (अशोक)

अशोकः शीतलः स्निग्धो वर्ण्यो ग्राही कषायकः ॥

दोषापचीतृषादाहकृमिशोषविषास्त्रजित् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi varga 1503-1504.

अशोकः शीतलास्तिको ग्राही वर्ण्यः कषायकः ।

दोषापचीतृषादाहकृमिशोषविषास्त्रजित् ॥

Bhāvaṭprakāsa Nighaṅṭu, Puṣpa varga, 48.

अशोकः शिशिरो हृद्यः पित्तदाहश्रमापहः ।

गुल्मशूलोदराध्माननाशनः क्रिमिकारकः ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Karavīrādi varga, 56.

रक्तप्रदरे

‘अशोकस्य त्वचा रक्तप्रदरस्य विनाशिनी ।’

Soḍhala.

अशोकः शीतलस्तिको ग्राही वर्ण्यः कषायकः ।

दोषापचीतृषादाहकृमिशोषविषास्त्रजित् ॥

Dhanvantarī Nighaṅṭu.

रक्तप्रदरे

अशोकवल्कलक्वाथशृतं क्षीरं सुशीतलम् ।

यथाबलं पिबेत्प्रातः तीव्रासृग्दरनाशनम् ॥

Cakradatta, Asṛgādara cikitsā, 58-5.

मूत्राघाते

जलेन खदिरबीजं मूत्राघातेऽश्मरीहरम् ।

खदिरबीजमशोकबीजमित्याहुः ॥

Śivadāsa.

अशोकारिष्ट-अशोकघृतम्

ज्वरं च रक्तपित्तार्शो मन्दाग्रित्वमरोचकम् ।

मेहशोफारुचिहरः अशोकारिष्टसंज्ञितः ॥

Bhaiṣajya Ratnāvalī.

प्रदररोगे अशोकक्षीरम्

अशोकवल्कलक्वाथशृतं दुग्धं सुशीतलम् ।

यथाबलं पिवेत्प्रातस्तीव्रासृग्दरनाशम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Strīrogādihikāra, 68-14.

संहितायामशोकः

Caraka Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 4-47., Vimāna 8-151., Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra 6-28, 38-13; Cikitsā 1-85, 4-27, 32; Kalpa 5-70, 6-20; Uttara. 17-8, 38-232; Aṣṭāṅga Hydaya, Cikitsā, 3-10, 21-34.

AṢṬAVARGA

1. *Jivaka*

Botanical name : *Microstylis wallichii* Lindl.

Family : Orchidaceae

Description

A short-stemmed; fibrous rooted herb; flowering stem short and swollen at the base. Leaves sheathing. Flowers minute, pale yellow-green, tinged, with purple especially near the centre. Lip shield-like; broadly ovate, tip notched.

Distribution

It is found in Temperate Himalayas, 2,000 to 3,000 meters; also found as far south as Travancore and Andaman Islands.

2. *Rṣabhaka*

Botanical name : *Microstylis muscifera* Ridley.

Family : Orchidaceae

Description

Plant as above, but smaller leaves, oblong or ovate in shape. Flowers pale yellow-green. Lip ovate, abruptly pointed; margins thickened.

Distribution

It is found in the Himalayas; eastward in Sikkim region.

3. Kākoli**Botanical name :** *Fritillaria roylei* Hook.f.**Description**

A glabrous plants, 15 to 16 cm. high, erect, unbranched, leafy. Leaves in a whorl of 5-6, linear-lanceolate, upper ones, often hooked. Flowers nodding, terminal solitary. Perianth bell-shaped, yellow-green, chequered with dull purple. Capsule obovoid, 6-angled. Bulbs whitish and round, sweet in taste.

Distribution

It is found in Western Himalayas, 2,500 to 3,000 meters.

Roscola procera Wall.**4. Kṣīrakākoli****Botanical name :** *Lilium polyphyllum* Don.**Description**

Bulbous herb, with thin stem up to a meter in length. Leaves in whorl, narrowly lanceolate or linear. Perianth, 7 cm. long, green-white with purple dots inside; segments recurved when fully expanded. Capsule 2 to 3 cm. Tubers sweetish in taste.

Distribution

It is found in Western Himalayas.

5. Mahāmedā**Botanical name :** *Polygonatum verticillatum* Allioni.**Family :** Liliaceae**Description**

A tall herb, with thick rootstock, steeping, upper part of the stem, leaf and zigzag, grooved. Leaves in whorls of 4, linear, tips usually acute. Racemes whorled, 2-3 flowered. Perianth white tinged with green. Berry red when ripe.

Rootstocks thick, fleshy; fractures white, tasted sweetish.

Distribution

It is found in Temperate Himalayas, 2,000 to 4,000 meters in Himachal Pradesh.

6. Medā**Botanical name :** *Polygonatum cirrifolium* Royle.**Family :** Liliaceae

Description

A much smaller and thinner plant than preceding ones. Stems round or grooved; leaves in whorl of three, but tendril like. Perianth white, often tinged with green or purple. Berry small.

Rootstocks are much smaller than preceding plant.

Distribution

It is found in Temperate Himalayas.

7. Rddhi

Botanical name : *Habenaria edgeworthii* Hook.f.

Family : Orchidaceae

Distribution

A fine flowering, terrestrial orchid with tuberous roots; covered with hairs. Flowers yellow-green. Petals yellow, thick, erect. Lip yellow, spur yellow-green.

Distribution

It is found in Temperate Himalayas, at about 2,500 meters elevation; Uttar Pradesh hill and Himachal Pradesh.

8. Vrddhi

Botanical name : *Habenaria latilabris* Hook.f.

Description

Plant as above.

Therapeutic uses

The group of eight tubers or condensed stems obtained from different plants is known as *Aṣṭavarga* incorporated in classical texts of medicine and materia medica (samhitā and nighaṇṭu) alongwith mention of their individual ingredient-drugs.

In general the group of drugs is highly esteemed for its nutritive, restorative, alterative, rejuvenative, tonic and various other medicinal properties, and their utility and uses in several diseases for preventive as well as curative purposes.

Formulation (Yoga) : *Cyavanaprāśa*.

AṢṬAVARGA (अष्टवर्ग)**अष्टवर्ग**

जीवकर्षभकौ मेदे काकोल्यौ ऋद्धिवृद्धिके ।

अष्टवर्गोऽष्टभिर्द्रव्यैः कथितश्चरकादिभिः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu.

अष्टवर्गगुणाः

अष्टवर्गो हिमः स्वादुर्बृंहणः शुक्रलो गुरुः ।

भग्नसन्धानकृत्कामबलासबलवर्द्धनः ॥

वातपित्तास्रतृडाहज्वरमेहक्षयापहः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Harīṭakyādi varga, 122.

जीवकर्षभकौ ज्ञेयो हिमाद्रिशिखरोद्भवौ ।

रसोनकन्दवत्कन्दौ निःसारौ सूक्ष्मपत्रकौ ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu.

जीवकः कूर्चकाकारः ऋषभो वृषशृङ्गावत् ।

जीवको मधुरः शृङ्गो ह्रस्वाङ्ग कूर्चशीर्षकः ।

ऋषभो वृषभो धीरो विषाणी द्राक्ष इत्यपि ॥

Dhanvantarī Nighaṅṭu, Guḍūcyādi varga, 122-135.

Rājī Nighaṅṭu, Parpatādi Varga, 154-162.

Guḍūcyādi Varga, 166-169

संहितायामष्टवर्गः

(गणोक्तघटकद्रव्याणि)

मेदा (मेदाद्वय-मेदे)

Caraka Saṁhitā,

Sūtra. 4-1, 19, 21., Vimāna. 8-146., Cikitsā. 1-1 etc.

Kalpa. 4-12 etc.

Suśruta Saṁhitā

Sūtra. 38-36., Cikitsā. 17-10 etc.

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya

Sūtra. 10-23, 15-8., Śārīra. 2-48., Cikitsā. 1-123 etc.

Kalpa. 1-37 etc.

महामेदा

Caraka Saṁhitā

Sūtra 4-1., Vimāna 8-146., Cikitsā 1-4 etc., Kalpa 4-12 etc.

ऋद्धि

Caraka saṁhitā,

Cikitsā. 1-1 etc.

*Suśruta Saṁhitā**Sūtra. 38-25., Cikitsā. 38-28, 54.**Aṣṭāṅga hṛdaya**Sūtra. 15-12., Cikitsā. 1-123 etc., Kalpa. 12-13.**Uttara. 16-13 etc.*

वृद्धि

*Suśruta Saṁhitā,**Sūtra. 38-35., Cikitrā. 37-12, 38-28.**Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya,**Sūtra. 15-12., Cikitrā. 17-27.*

जीवक

*Caraka Saṁhitā,**Sūtra. 3-21, 24 etc., Śārīra. 8-28, 44., Vīmāna. 8-146.**Cikitsā. 1-1 etc., Kalpa. 2-12 etc.**Suśruta Saṁhitā**Sūtra. 16-40 etc., Cikitsā. 2-44 etc.**Aṣṭāṅga hṛdaya**Sūtra. 6-170., Śārīra. 1-39, 2-40., Cikitsā. 2-37.,**Kalpa. 1-36 etc., Uttara. 1-27 etc.*

ऋषभक

*Caraka Saṁhitā**Sūtra. 3-21 etc., Śārīra. 8-28, 94., Vīmāna. 8-146.**Cikitsā. 1-1 etc., Kalpa. 2-12, etc.**Suśruta Saṁhitā**Sūtra. 38-4, 35., Cikitsā. 2-44 etc.**Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya**Sūtra. 6-170 etc., Śārīra. 1-39 etc., Cikitsā. 2-37 etc.**Kalpa. 1-36., Uttara. 2-52 etc.*

काकोली

*Caraka Saṁhitā,**Sūtra. 4-1 etc., Vīmāna. 8-146., Śārīra. 8-34.**Cikitsā. 1-1 etc., Kalpa. 4-12 etc.*

क्षीरकाकोली

*Caraka Saṁhitā,**Sūtra. 4-1, 2, 19, 21., Vīmāna. 8-146., Cikitsā. 1-1 etc.**Siddhi. 4-9 etc., Kalpa. 7-18.*

ASTHISAMHĀRAKA

Botanical name

Cissus quadrangularis Linn.

Vitis quandangularis Wall.

Family : Vitaceae

Classical name : Asthisamhāraka

Sanskrit names

Asthisamhāraka, Asthiśṛṅkhalā, Granthimāna, Vajrāṅgi, Asthiyuk, Bhūtopadrava, Kulahā, Caturdhārā.

Regional names

Hadijod (Hind.), Hodjoda (Beng.), Kandvel (Mar.), Nalleru, Nallerutige (Tel.), Pirandai (Tam.), Vajra valli (Mal-Kerala), Hadsankal (Guj.), Perendeykodi.

Description

Stems leafless; when old, very long, fleshy, glabrous, much contracted at the nodes, quadrangular; the angles of the young branches winged; tendrils long slender, simple. Leaves 2.5-5 cm. long, broadly ovate or reniform, sometimes 3-7 lobes, denticulate, glabrous, cordate, rounded, truncate or cuneate at the base, petioles 6-12 mm. long; stipules small, broadly ovate, obtuse.

Flowers in shortly peduncled cymes with spreading umbellate branches; calyx cup-shaped, truncate or very obscurely lobed; petals 4, ovate-oblong, acute 3 mm. long, hooded at the apex; disk erect, 4-lobed, style short, stout.

Berry obovoid or globose, scarcely 6 mm. long, apiculate, red when ripe, 1-(very rarely 2-) seeded.

Flowering and fruiting time

Post-rains (rainy season) and autumn seasons and onwards.

Distribution

It is found in warmer regions in India and almost throughout country. Planted in hedges and boundry walls of gardens, farms and cultivated fields; and also in pots.

Throughout the higher parts of India; also cultivated. India, Ceylon, Malay Archipelago and East Africa.

Perennial large climber found almost throughout the year surviving in different seasons. Propogated by stem nodes

easily sprouting, seedling for new plant of climbing habit. Conspicuous climber of smooth, green coloured and acutely 4-winged or angled stem, with fleshy-leaves.

Chemical composition

Plant contains calcium oxalate; Carotene and ascorbic acid.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Madhura
Gūṇa	: Laghu
Virya	: Rūkṣa, Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Amla
Doṣakarma	: Kaphavāta śamaka, Pittavardhaka.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Sandhāniya, Stambhana Dīpana-pācana-anulomana Raktaśodhaka-raktastambhaka, Vṛṣya.
Roga	
(a) Ābhyantara	: Bhagna-asthibhagna, Klaihya Dourbalya, Pradara, Vātarakta Phiraṅgā Upadaṁśa Agnimāndya-ajīrṇa, Arśa, Kṛmi.
(b) Bāhya	: Asthibhagna, Abhighātajaśoṭha Urdhvaga raktapitta-nasāgataraktasrāva Kaṇaroga-karṇasrāva.

Therapeutic uses

It is alterative, anthelmintic, blood-purifier, bone-setter, carminative and stomachic.

It is useful in asthma, bowel complaints, dropped in ear in condition of otorrhoea; applied in fractures of bones, also taken internally; snuffed in epitaxis (bleeding from nose), irregular menses and scurvy.

The leaves and stems are frequently taken with curry (in Southern India); and the stems are boiled and fried for preparing vegetable (Śāka-kāṇḍaśāka-khādyā) under dietetics, including condiments and other food-preparations (e.g. papada and chatani).

The young shoots of the plant are burnt to ashes in a closed vessel and administered in dyspepsia and indigestion, and other similar complaints. The stems are ground

and juice is obtained which is useful in otorrhoea and epistaxis or nasal haemorrhage in ear and nasal troubles.

The stem is bitter, laxative, aphrodisiac, tonic, analgesic and allays vata and kapha; and is used to cure piles, blindness, epileptic fit, tumours, loss of appetite and constipation; it cures eye diseases, chronic ulcers; good for spleen; beneficial in fractures of the bones, and used in ascites, and it causes biliousness.

The stems are internally given as well as externally applied in cases of bone fractures; it is one of the effective and frequent medicinally important uses of the drug, carrying support of classical texts, traditional practice and surgical trials. The stems paste or oil prepared with stem is topically applied over fracture, dislocation and the traumatic inflammation; and the stem is also recommended to be taken internally in such conditions, and the stem or plant juice is given also orally in these complaints.

The leaf and young shoots are powerful alteratives; the dried and powdered form of stem are administered in certain bowel affections connected with indigestion.

The stems are ground or beaten into a paste and internally used in asthma; and they boiled in lime water and it forms a preserve useful as a stomachic. The stems paste is applied to wounds.

Plant is recommended in Vātavyādhi and conception (of male child).

Parts used : Stems, Leaves.

Dose : Expressed juice 12-24 gms.

Formulations (Yoga) : Asthisamhāra taila.

ASTHISAMHĀRAKA (अस्थिसंहारक)

- क. ग्रन्थिमानस्थिसंहारी वज्राङ्गी वाऽस्थिशृङ्खला ।
अस्थिसंहारकः प्रोक्तो वातश्लेष्महरोऽस्थियुक् ॥
- ख. उष्णः सरः कृमिघ्नश्च दुर्नाभग्नोऽक्षिरोगजित् ।
रूक्षः स्वादुर्लघुर्वृष्यः पाचनः पित्तलः स्मृतः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Guḍūcyādi varga, 226-227.

तद्वटिकायाः निर्माणविधिः गुणाश्च

काण्डं त्वग्विरहितमस्थिशृङ्गुलाया
माषाद्रद्विदलमकञ्चुकं तदूर्द्धम् ।
सम्पिष्टं सुतनु ततस्तिलस्य तैले
सम्पक्कं वटकमतीव वातहारि ॥

Bhāvāprakāsa Nighaṇṭu, Gudūcyādi varga, 228.

वज्रवल्ली-अस्थिसंहारः

- अ. वज्रप्रोक्तास्थिसंहारो व्रजाङ्गी क्रोष्टुघण्टिका ॥
अस्थिशृङ्गुलिका ज्ञेया ग्रन्थिला वज्रवल्लरी ।
ब. वज्रवल्ली सरा रूक्षा कृमिदुर्नामनाशिनी ॥
दीपन्युष्णा विपाके च स्वाद्वी वृष्या बलप्रदा ।
अस्थिसन्धानजननी वातश्लेष्महरा गुरुः ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhī varga, 1593-1595.

भग्नचिकित्सायाम् अस्थिसंहारादिचूर्णम्

सघृतेनास्थिसंहारं लाक्षां गोधूममर्जुनम् ।
सन्धियुक्तेऽस्थिभग्रे च पिबेत् क्षीरेण मानवः ॥

Cakradatta, Bhagna Cikitsā, 49-9.

अर्शरोगे

अर्शसां तु विशेषेण हिता चैवाग्निदीपनी ।
चतुर्धारा काण्डवल्ली भूतोपद्रवकुलहा ॥

Nighaṇṭu Ratnākāra.

औषधगुणकर्माणि

अत्युष्णाऽऽध्मानवाताश्च तिमिरं वातरक्तकम् ।
अपस्मारं वातरोगं नाशयेदिति कीर्तितम् ॥

Nighaṇṭu Ratnākāra.

पुत्रकामार्थम्

वज्रवल्ली रसे तुल्यं तैलं तत्कल्कमिश्रितम् ।
ऋतुस्नाता वधूः पिण्डं भक्षयेत् पुत्रकाङ्क्षिणी ॥

Vaidya Manoramā.

अरुस्तम्भे

सार्धं मांसैरस्थिशृङ्गाटिकायां भुङ्क्ते यद्वा व्यञ्जनेनापरेण ।
क्षिप्रं शाम्यत्यस्थिभङ्गोऽस्य नूनं वातव्याधिः चातितीव्रोऽपि यः स्यात् ॥

Sodhala.

AŚVAGANDHĀ

Botanical name : *Withania somnifera* (Linn.) Dunal.

Family : Solanaceae

Classical name : *Aśvagandhā*

Sanskrit names

Aśvagandhā, Vājigandhā-hayagandhā, Baladā, Kuṣṭhgandhini, Vārāhakarṇī.

Regional names

Asgandha (H.), *Ashwagandha* (Beng.), *Ammukiram* (Tam.), *Wajigandha* (Tel.), *Asgand, Asvagandha* (Bomb.), *Asan, Asoda, Ghodasoda* (Guj), *Askandha, Kanchuki* (Mar.), *Asugandha* (Uri.), *Kaknajhindi, Mehernan-barari* (Pers.), *Kaknajehindi* (Arab.); *Winter Cherry* (Eng.).

Description

A branched erect under shrub 0.3-1.5 meter high; branches terete, usually clothed with meary stellate hoary tomentum. Leaves 5-10 by 2.5-5 cm., ovate, subacute, entire, more or less minutely stellately pubescent; base acute, main nerves about 6 pairs, stout, conspicuous; petioles 6-13 mm. long, stellately tomentose.

Flowers greenish or lurid yellow, usually about 5 together in a sessile or nearly sessile umbellate cymes; pedicels 0-4 mm. long. Calyx 5 mm. long in flower, stellately tomentose; teeth 2.3 mm. long, linear, acute, from a deltoid base. Corolla 8 mm. long, divided rather more than 1/2-way down; lobes lanceolate, acute, pubescent outside. Filaments 3 mm. long, slender, glabrous; anthers broadly elliptic (almost orbicular), 1.25 mm. long. Ovary glabrous; style glabrous.

Berry red, smooth, 6 mm. diam., enclosed in the inflated calyx which reaches more than 2.5 cm. diam, and globose; slightly 5-angled, pointed with the connivent calyx-

teeth and softly-pubescent outside. Seeds 2.5 mm. diam., yellow, somewhat scurfy.

Roots : The root is long, tapering, light-brown in colour, at times attains the size of a carrot, surmounted by a knotty crown, from which it springs several shrubby shoots.

The dried root of commerce is of very uniform appearance, 10 to 20 cm. long and 0.6 to 1.25 cm. in diameter at the thickest portion; it is plump, smooth, tapering and of a light-yellowish brown in colour externally, while internally brittle, fracture short and starchy. It has a mucilaginous and slightly bitter taste. As market drug, Nagori asagandh is considered best as crude material of cultivated varieties of medicinal use under raw drugs trade.

Flowering and Fruiting time

Rainy-Autumn season and onwards.

Kinds and varieties

There are two kinds of plant drug viz. wild (vanya) and cultivated (grāmya). The cultivated plant produce is marketed and used commonly in medicine specially for internal use. The wild plant roots possessing sedative, diuretic and other properties are preferred only for external application; both varieties also differ phytochemically.

Distribution

Plant is found in drier regions of India; and it is wild grown almost throughout country ascending upto 5,000 ft. elevation (nearabout) but frequently in drier parts; and in Central India, Mysore, Andhra Pradesh, Gujaral, Rajathan, Tamilnadu, Uttar Pradesh and West Bengal. It is cultivated in Malawa and other areas.

Chemical composition

Roots contain a volatile oil and an alkaloid withoniol. They also contain a crystalline alkaloid somniferin and phytosterol and other active substances. They contain three alkaloids and various kinds of substances.

Roots of wild variety contain somniferin which is sedative and hypnotic; and cultivated variety roots contain sugar, fat, resin and some colouring matters.

The plant has hypnotic and sedative properties due to the presence of an alkaloid somniferin. Various parts of

the plant were screened; and roots find traces of an essential oil. The water soluble portion of the roots extracts contain, besides the indefinite amorphous substance, a quantity of sugar; it also consisted chiefly of a black resin which contained hentriacontane, a phytosterol, a mixture fatty acids, consisting of palmitic, stearic, cerotic, oleic, and linolic acid, ipuranol, a new monolytic alcohol, withaniol, and an amorphous alkaloidal principle yielding a crystalline base. The water soluble extract of leaves and stems also contain the same constituents in addition to considerable quantity of potassium nitrate.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Madhura, Kaṣāya, Tikta
Guṇa	: Laghu, Snigdha
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Madhura
Doṣakarma	: Kaphavātaśāmaka

Action and Properties

Karma	: Balya-br̥mhaṇa, Rasāyana, Vājikaraṇa Garbhāśayaśothahara-prajāsthāpana Nāḍibalya-mastiṣkaśāmaka-dīpana- anulomana-kṛmighna, Hṛdya Raktaśodhaka-śothahara Vedanāsthāpana-śothahara, Mūtrala Kuṣṭhaghna-kaṇḍūghna Kaphaghna-svāsahara, Vātahara.
-------	---

Roga

(a) Ābhyantara	: Kṣaya-śoṭha-balaśoṣa, Nāḍidaurbalya-anidrā-nidrānāśa Vātavyādhi-vātavikāra-āmavāta-urustambha Hṛddourbalya-raktavikāra-śoṭha Uadarāvikāra-śūlata-viṣṭambha Kasa-śvasa, Śukradourbalya-śvetapradara Mūtrāghāta, Bandhyātva-klaibya Śvitra-kuṣṭha Śoṭha-vedanā-granthi-galagaṇḍa Mūrcha-bhrama, Vraṇa Snayukaroga, Viṣa.
(b) Bāhya	: Śoṭha-vedanā, Vātavyādhi, Kārśya.

Therapeutic uses

It is abortifacient, alexipharmic, alterative, aphrodisiac, astringent, deobstruent, diuretic, hypnotic and sedative, narcotic, pungent, restorative and tonic.

It is useful in carbuncles, consumption, cough, debility from old age, dropsy, emaciation of children, general weakness and nerve disorders. It promotes urination, removes functional obstruction of body, and used to cure rheumatism, scrofula, senile decay and inflammations; it is useful in vulnerary treatment.

The roots have a bitter sharp, acrid taste; heating, aphrodisiac, tonic, alterative, anthelmintic; and they are useful in vāta and kapha; and recommended in management of oedema, psoriasis, bronchitis, asthma, consumption, ulcers, scabies, marasmus of the children, insomnia, senile debility; and it is alexipharmic and useful against poisons.

The leaves are anthelmintic and febrifuge. A fomentation of the leaves is used for sore eyes, boils and swollen hands and feet. A paste of leaves is locally applied to kill lice infesting the body and over carbuncles and syphilitic sores. An ointment prepared by boiling the leaves in fat or ghee (ghṛta and also taila) is useful for bedsores and wounds. The leaves are applied to tumours and to tuberculous glands.

The roots are useful as tonic, aphrodisiac, emmenagogue and analgesic. They are given in asthma, cough, inflammation, leucoderma, bronchial asthma, lumbago, arthritis and rheumatic disorders; their use favours conception in females.

Antiarthritic activity has been identified in the roots; and antibiotic and antibacterial activities have been shown in the roots and leaves of plant. It possesses an anabolic activity in accelerating growth in children, and retarding the process of aging and countering senile complaints.

The roots are useful as a decoction in rheumatic disorders and arthritic complaints, and used in dyspepsia. It is used in lumbar pains and esteemed as an aphrodisiac and given in impotency as well as seminal disorders.

The roots and bruised leaves are employed as a local application to carbuncles, ulcers and painful swellings. The leaves are very bitter, and are given by preparing infusion in fevers. The leaves are topically applied over boils.

The fresh juice of the leaves of plant is considered beneficial to apply to anthrax pustules, and the plant is said to be useful for disinfecting anthrax. A paste of the leaves, green berry and small twigs is externally applied to saddle sores and girth gall in horses. An application of leaves paste is made to erysipelas. The leaves are considered useful for internal and external treatment of haemorrhoids.

The green berries are bruised, and rubbed into ring-worm in both human beings and animals. the flowers are applied to sores. The fruits are useful as diuretic and given in urinary disorders. Berries are also considered useful for chest complaints.

The seeds are employed to coagulate milk like those of *Withania coagulans*; as the seeds of *Withania coagulans* Dunal, another species and kind of plant drug (known as Punir or Desiasgandh) obtained from the fruits, are popularly employed in process of coagulating the milk. The seeds are used medicinally as diuretic and hypnotic.

An infusion of the bark is useful for asthma. The roots are prescribed in combination with other drugs against snake-bite and scorpion-sting.

The decoction of the roots is useful for colds and chills; it is also administered to tone up the uterus in females who habitually miscarry and in order to remove retained conception, the use of roots is recommended.

An enema of the decorticated roots is given to feverish infants. The plant is also regarded as a specific for gangrenous proctitis, using an infusion of the roots as an enema. The plant is also useful in treating syphilis and healing the sores. Plant is also sometimes indicated as abortifacient.

The roots are valued as a tonic and aphrodisiac; and they are used internally either in the form of decoction or powder, and also in other recipes, in treatment of general debility, rheumatism, consumption and loss of appetite. In

case of chronic gastritis and marked loss of appetite and debility in general, the powder of roots with suitable adjuvant (s).

The roots powder in 30 grains doses is given in general debility, rheumatic affections, dyspepsia, consumption, loss of appetite, cough and dropsy and used as stimulant, alterative, tonic, aphrodisiac, narcotic and deobstruent. Half to one drachm of the root is given with milk or ghee is orally recommended to act as an aphrodisiac. The dose of 45 grains of powdered roots with sugar candy is internally prescribed twice a day with milk or suitable ajuvant (s) in cases of leucorrhoea, bloody discharges or uterine haemorrhage in menstrual complaints of uterus; as the roots are quite effective for tonning up uterus and helping conception process.

The roots are useful as heart-tonic and given in cardiac diseases specially for tonning up heart; it is used in blood diseases and oedema. The roots decoction and other forms of the drug are recommened in treatment of nervine complaints as nervine tonic and sedative to brain, and useful in insomnia. The roots are also useful in vertigo and unconsciouness.

The drug is very useful in various diseases of children, males and females, and one of the prominent herbal drugs in Indian medicine.

Parts Used : Roots, Kṣāra.

Dose : Roots, powder, 3-6 gms., Kṣāra 1-3 gms.

Formulations (Yoga)

Aśvagandhādi cūrṇa, Aśvagandhariṣṭa, Aśvagandhā Rasāyana, Aśvagandha ghr̥ta.

Groups (Gaṇa)

Balya, Br̥mhaṇīya, Madhuraskandha (Caraka).

AŚVAGANDHĀ (अश्वगंधा)

बल्या वाजीकरी..... ॥

अश्वगन्धा कषायोष्णा तिक्ता वृष्या रसायनी ।

बलपुष्टिप्रदा हन्ति कफकासानिलव्रणान् ॥

शोफकण्डूविषश्चित्रकृमिश्वासक्षतक्षयान् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 1045-1047.

अश्वगन्धाऽनिलश्लेष्मश्चित्रशोथक्षयापहा ।

बल्या रसायनी तित्ता कषायोष्णाऽतिशुक्रला ॥

Bhāvaprakāsa Nighaṅṭu, Guḍūcyādi varga, 190.

अश्वगन्धा कटूष्णा स्यात्तित्ता च मदगन्धिका ।

बल्या वातहरा हन्ति कासश्वासक्षयव्रणान् ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Śatāhvādi varga, 112.

वाजीकरणार्थम्

शिशिरे योऽश्वगन्धायाः कन्दचूर्णं पलोन्मितम् ।

मासमत्ति समध्वाज्यं स वृद्धोऽपि भवेद्युवा ॥

Rāja Mārtaṇḍa.

शिशोः बलवर्धनार्थम्

पादकल्केऽश्वगन्धायाः क्षीरे दशगुणे पचेत् ।

घृतं पेयं कुमाराणां पुष्टिकृद्बलवर्धनम् ॥

Cakradatta.

पीताश्वगन्धा पयसार्धमासं घृतेन तैलेन सुखाम्बुना वा ।

कृशस्य पुष्टिं वपुषो विधत्ते बालस्य शस्यस्य यथाम्बुवृष्टिः ॥

Cakradatta.

उरुस्तम्भे अश्वगन्धामूलोत्सादनम्

मूलैर्वाऽप्यश्वगन्धया मूलैरर्कस्य वा भिषक् ।

गाढमुत्सादनं कुर्यादूरस्तम्भे प्रलेपनम् ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, cikitsā. 27.

अश्वगन्धादि बस्ति

Caraka Saṁhitā, Siddhi. 10-37.

अश्वगन्धादि क्षार

Caraka, Saṁhitā, cikitsā. 17-117.

काश्ये अश्वगन्धातैलम्

अश्वगन्धस्य कल्केन क्वाथे तस्मिन्पयस्यपि ।

सिद्धतैलं कृशाङ्गानामभ्यङ्गादङ्गपुष्टिदम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāsa, Kāśyādhikāra, 40-9.

काश्ये अश्वगन्धाचूर्णम्

पीताऽश्वगन्धा पयसाऽर्द्धमासं घृतेन तैलेन सुखाम्बुना च ।
कृशस्य पुष्टिं वपुषां विधत्ते बालस्य शस्यस्य यथाऽम्बुवृष्टिः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Kāśyādihikāra, 40-8.

स्नायुकरोगे

‘शान्तिः भवेत्सब्रणमाशु पुंसां गन्धर्वगन्धेन घृतेन पीत्वा ।’

Bhāvaprakāśa, Snāyukarogādihikāra, 57-8.

वन्ध्याचिकित्सायाम् अश्वगन्धाक्वाथम्

अश्वगन्धाकषायेण सिद्धं दुग्धं घृतान्वितम् ।
ऋतुस्नाताऽङ्गना प्रातः पीत्वा गर्भं दधाति हि ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Yonirogādihikāra, 70-26.

अश्वगन्धारसायनम्

पीत्वाऽश्वगन्धा पयसाऽर्द्धमासं घृतेन तलेन सुखाम्बुना वा ।
वीर्यस्य पुष्टिं वपुषो विधत्ते बालस्य वृक्षस्यय थाऽम्बुवृष्टि ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Rasāyanādihikāra, 73-13.

Cakradatta, Rasāyanādihikāra, 16.

वातव्याधिचिकित्सायाम् अश्वगन्धाघृतम्

अश्वगन्धाकषाये च कल्के क्षीरचतुर्गुणम् ।
घृतं पक्वन्तु वातघ्नं वृष्यं मांसविवर्द्धनम् ॥

Cakradatta, Vātavāyādhi cikitsā, 22-90.

वातव्याधिचिकित्सायाम्-अश्वगन्धातैलम्

Cakradatta, Vātavāyādhi cikitsā, 22/141-145.

वन्ध्याविकारेषु गर्भधारणार्थं हयगन्धासाधितं क्षीरम्

क्राथेन हयगन्धायाः सादितं सघृतं पयः ।
ऋतुस्नाताबला पीत्वा धत्ते गर्भं न संशयः ॥

Cakradatta, Yonīvyāpata cikitsā, 26.

संहितायामश्वगन्धा

(अश्वगन्धा-तुरङ्गगन्धा-वाजिगन्धा-हयगन्धा-हयाह्वया)

Caraka Samhitā,

Sūtra. 3-7, 8 etc., Vimāna 8-144 etc., Cikitsā. 2-1, 34 etc.

Siddhi. 3-37 etc.

Suśruta Samhitā

Sūtra. 15-13 etc., *Cikitsā.* 5-10 etc., *Kalpa.* 8-51 etc.
Uttara. 2-50 etc.

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya

Śāvīra. 2-50, , *cikitsā.* 3-122 etc., *Kalpa.* 4-7, 5-4.
Uttara. 2-50. etc.

AŚVAKARṆA-GARJANA**Botanical name**

Dipterocarpus alatus Roxb.

Dipterocarpus incanus Roxb.

Family : Dipterocarpaceae

Classical name : Aśvakarṇa-Garjana

Sanskrit names : Aśvakarṇa Garjana.

Regional names

Garjan (Hindi), Teliya garjan (Beng.), Gannā (Tam.), Bettisal, Garjan (Bengla), Gurujun (Andaman.), Horagaha (Simhal.); Common Gurgan Tree (Eng.).

Description

A large tree reaching 45 meters in height by 4 meters girth. Twigs, petioles and inflorescence clothed with a buff-coloured felt of short tangled hairs. Leaves on flowering shoots 10-20 by 5.7-11.3 cm., elliptic, orbovate-elliptic, acute, or shortly acuminate, base cuneate or broadly rounded. Margin more or less repand, coriaceous and nearly glabrous except along the midrib above when mature, stellate-pubescent beneath especially a long the veins, ciliate, lateral nerves 12-16 pairs petioles, 2.5-3.8 cm. long, flattened above, stipules 5-9 cm. long, grey-stellate and more or less pilose.

Flowers in axillary simple or branched 3-7 flowered spikes, the lowest flower with a short petiole up to 2.5 mm. long rachis with peduncle 5-10 cm. long, bracteoles 1.2 cm. long, 4.5 mm. broad, lanceolate, caducous. Calyx-tube 1-1.5 cm. long, obconic with 5 wings starting from between the lobes and running down to the base; stellate hairy and pilose; lobes 3 short, 3.8-5 cm. long, rounded, reflexed, 2 linear-oblong about 18 mm. long, Petals 3 cm. long, oblong, pubescent outside. Stamens 30-32, filaments flattened, about

3-8 mm. long; anthers 4.5 mm. long, connective produced in a bristle 3.8 mm. long. Ovary densely tomentose, style 10 mm. long, stout, ribbed and pilose in the lower part, glabrous in the upper fourth.

Fruit-belly 1.8-2.5 cm. long, thinly stellate-hairy, somewhat glabrous, usually 5-winged to the base; the wings 7.5-12.5 mm. high, enlarged calyx-lobe wings about 12.5 cm. by 2.5 cm., 3-nerved for one third or two-third their length, or occasionally the whole length, often glaucous, sprinkled with stellate hairs.

Flowering and Fruiting time

Post-rainy/autumn season.

Distribution

It is found in Andamans in India; it occurs in chittagong, Burma and Tenasserim. Penang-Siam in Thailand, Cochin China, Burma and Malaya.

Kinds and varieties

There are some other species considered kinds of plant drug producing oil or wood oil and oleo-resin viz.

Dipterocarpus turbinatus Gaertn. — Assam and Andamans in India; Chittagong, Burma, Siam.

Dipterocarpus tuberculatus Roxb. — Burma, Siam, Cochin, China.

Dipterocarpus pilosus Roxb. — Sylhet, Assam, Andamans in India; Chittagong, Burma, Siam.

Chemical Composition

Woods contain a resinous oil known as Garjan oil; it is viscid like hoey. The oil is also obtained from other species and kinds of plants. In case a new tricyclic sesamiterpene isolated from oleo-resin.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṭu, Tikta
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa (snigdha)
Virya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphavātaśāmaka

Action and Properties

Karma	: Kothapraśamana, Kuṣṭhaghna Kaṇḍūghna, Svedajanana Rakta-Pitta-śamana-samśodhaka.
Roga	: Carmaroga, Kuṣṭha, Kaṇḍū Jirṇa pūyameha, Śiroroga, Jvara Viṣphoṭa.

Therapeutic uses

The oleo-resin is applied externally in gonorrhoea. The oil is applied in ulcerated wounds.

The bark is considered tonic, and depurative and prescribed in rheumatism. The bark of the young plants is used externally in rheumatism and in liver complaints.

The oleo-resin obtained from the trunk of the tree of *Dipterocarpus turbinatus* Gaertn is known as gargan or gurjan balsam, balsam, gurjan-ka-tail and wood oil.

It is stimulant, diuretic, alterative and demulcent; it is useful substitute for copaiba as an expectorant. It is very efficacious in diseases of the genito-urinary organs, such as gonorrhoea, gleet etc.; as a palliative it is given in leprosy.

In the chronic bronchitis it is given in doses of half to two drachms in one ounce of malt three times a day. An emulsion made with one part of the balsam and three parts of lime water is a useful dressing for skin diseases such as ringworm, indolent and other similar affections.

The essential oil extracted from the balsam is an efficacious remedy for gonorrhoea, gleet, leucorrhoea and other vaginal discharges, leprosy and certain skin diseases; about a teaspoonful of the oil mixed with either some omum water, rice water or thin gruel is given three times a day or more often as required.

An emulsion of the oil made with lime water is rubbed into the parts affected by skin diseases.

The Gurjan oil obtained from *Dipterocarpus alata* is mixed with milk and orally given in cases of chronic gonorrhoea. The oil is topically applied and internally used in dermatosis, leprosy and skin disorders.

The oil of this plant is mixed with Chalmugra oil for more effectively using in skin complaints.

The roots of *Dipterocarpus tuberculatus* Roxb. are considered useful in hepatic troubles. The oleo-resin obtained from trunk of tree is used with asafoetida (Hingu) and cocconut (Narikela) oil as an application for large ulcers.

The balsam of tree *Dipterocarpus pilosus* Roxb. is used in the treatment of gonorrhoea, gleet and similar affections of the urinary organs.

Parts Used : Oil

Dose : Oil 2-6 gms.

Formulation : Garjana Taila-oil of Garjan.

ĀSVAKARṆA-GARJANA (अश्वकर्ण-गर्जन)

- क. जरणद्रुमोऽश्वकर्णस्ताक्षर्यप्रसवश्च शस्यसंवरणः ।
धन्धश्च दीर्घपर्णः कुशिकतरुः कौशिकश्चापि ॥
- ख. अश्वकर्णः कटुस्तिक्तः स्निग्धः पित्तास्रनाशनः ।
ज्वरविस्फोटकण्डूघ्नः शिरोदोषार्त्तिकृन्तनः ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Prabhādrādi varga, 81-82.

संहितायामश्वकर्णः

- क. अश्वकर्ण (अश्वारोहक-अश्वारोहिका)

Caraka Samhitā

Sūtra. 4-43 etc., Kalpa. 1-7 etc., Vimāna. 8-150 etc.

Cikitsā. 3-257 etc.

Suśruta Samhitā

Sūtra. 11-11 etc., Cikitsā. 2-64 etc., Kalpa. 3-9 etc.

Cikitsā 2-64 etc., Uttara. 3-5

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya

Sūtra 15-19., Cikitsā 3-98-15-48., Uttara. 38-40, 39-105.

- ख. अजकर्ण (छागकर्ण)

Caraka Samhitā

Vimāna 8-151.

Suśruta Samhitā

Sūtra 38-12; Cikitsā. 9-14, 11-102, 19-33, 20-14, 27-8, 34-17.,

Kalpa 1-71.

AŚVATTHA

Botanical name : *Ficus religiosa* Linn.

Family : Urticaceae

Calssical name : Aśvattha

Sanskrit names

Aśvattha, Pippala, Bodhi druma, Calapatra, Gajāśana, Pavitraka, Caityadruma, Dharmavṛkṣa, Guhyapūṣpa.

Regional names

Pipal, Pipar (H.P.), Asud, Ashwattha, Aswat (Beng.), Pimpoll (Konkan.) Pipul (Guj.), Pipli (Nep.), Achuvattam, Ahasu, Aryal (Tam.) Asaddhamu (Tel.), Arachu (Mal.) Ashvatha, Pimpala (Mar.). Pipal (Urd.), Osio (Uri.) Bhor, Pipal (Punj.); Peepal Tree, Pipal Tree, Bodhi Tree (Eng.).

Description

A large glabrous, usually epiphytic tree. Leaves coriaceous, 10-18 by 7.5-10 cm., ovate-round, narrowed upwards and the apex produced into a linear-lanceolate tail about half as long as the main portion of the blade (1/3 as long as the whole blade), entire, base broad, rounded, truncate sometimes in young leaves cordate; 5-7 nerved; lateral main nerves about 8 pairs, with finely reticulate venation between; petioles 7.5-10 cm. long, slender; stipules minute, ovate, acute.

Receptacles in pairs, axillary, sessile, smooth, depressed-globose, 13 mm. diam.; dark purple when ripe; basal bracts broad, spreading. Male flowers few, only near the mouth of some receptacles (absent in others), sessile. Sepals 3, broadly ovate. Stamen 1; anther single, ovate-round; filament short.

Gall and fertile flowers sessile or pedicellate; the gall flowers much more numerous than the fertile females, many of them without perianth. Sepals 5, lanceolate. Style short, lateral; stigma rounded.

Fruiting time

Summer season and rainy season maturity.

Distribution

Throughout India, Sub-Himalayan forests. It is found in the plains and lower hills of India, Ceylon and Malaya. It

is commonly planted near the temples, since it is regarded a sacred tree having religious significance.

Chemical composition

Bark contains tannin, cacutchouc and wax.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṣāya
Guṇa	: Guru
Vīrya	: Rūkṣa, Śīta
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphapittaśāmaka

Action and Properties

Karma	: Mūtrasaṅgrahṇīya, Stambhana (bark-tvak) Snehana (ripefruit-pakva phala) Anulomana-mṛdurecana Raktaśodhaka-raktapitta-śāmaka Kaphaghna-śvāsahara (Bark-tvak) Varṇya-tvacya, Vraṇaropaṇa Vedanāsthāpana, Śothahara Raktarodhaka, Yoniviśodhana Dāhpraśamana-tṛṣahara Rocana-chardigna Hṛdya (ripe fruit-pakva phala) Garbhasthāpana, Bājīkaraṇa Viṣaghna.
-------	--

Roga

(a) Ābhyantara	: Chardi-tṛṣā, Atisāra-pravāhikā Udaraśūla-vibandha, Raktavikāra-vātarakta, Raktapitta Kāsa-śvāsa, Kukkurakāsa, Yonidoṣa Klaibya, Prameha, Varṇavikāra.
(b) Bāhya	: Varṇavikāra, Vedana-śotha-raktasrāva Vraṇa-vraṇaśotha, Bhagandara Mukhapāka.

Therapeutic uses

It is useful as alterative, aphrodisiac, astringent, cooling, expectorant, laxative and conceptive.

It is used in asthma, colic, constipation, conception (promoting maturity of foetus in pregnant mothers), diar-

rhoea, dysentery, disorders of genito-urinary troubles and whooping cough.

It is a well-known rejuvenator and the leaf-bud made into jam and taken with milk for a fortnight.

Its employment in Pancavalkala, a group of five bark-producing trees, in Indian medicine has medicinal utility, as the preparation is much used as gargle in salivation, and as a washing lotion for ulcers, and as astringent injection or enema in leucorrhoea and uterine affection (including genital tract in females).

A recipe mostly made of ripe-fruit powder is reported to be useful in conception and delivery of male child in son-desiring mothers, and also helping remove sterility in order to make females fertile as the plant is used as a promotor of conception.

The bark is astringent. The decoction or infusion is given in gonorrhoea and scabies. A paste of the bark is applied to inflammatory swellings as an absorbent. Its juice is used to relieve toothache and strengthen the gums. It is a useful dressing for cracked and inflamed soles of the feet. The powder prepared from root-bark promotes granulation when dusted over sores; and its paste is applied to aphthous sores of children.

The figs of plant are useful as digestive and laxative; and they are powdered and given in asthma and allied ailments.

It is used in diabetes, diarrhoeal affections, hysteria, menstrual troubles-menorrhagia, nervous disorders, sterility and vaginal complaints.

It is used in blood diseases, earache, fracture, diabetes, glandular diseases especially suppurating glands in the neck, haemophilic conditions, scabies, soreness in the mouth, swelling ulcers, urino-genital disorders, vaginal discharges and vomiting.

Beta-sitosterol-D-glucoside has been found in the bark which has showed hypoglycaemic activity comparing favourably with tolbutamide. It is recommended in diabetes cases.

The fruit is sour and the seeds are useful in biliousness, scabies, bronchitis, itch, boils and inflammation.

All parts are acrid, pungent, cooling and useful in diseases of the blood and the vagina, ulcers, burning sensation, biliousness, kapha, inflammation, leprosy, hallucinations and loss of the consciousness; it promotes and maintains pigmentation and colour of the skin and allays its allied disorders.

The shoots are topically applied over ailments caused by discolouration and anomalies of pigmentation. Powder of the bark is used over ulcers. Milky juice is applied externally to haemorrhage as a styptic remedy, and it is also applied to painful and inflamed organs. Bark is applied to stomatitis, fistula-in-ano and boils. Bark is given in vomiting, as the decoction is filtered and water is useful to check overthirst and vomiting ailments.

The various parts of plant is useful as an aphrodisiac and given as sexual tonic; the fruits, roots, bark and shoots are boiled in milk (siddha kṣīra) and it is orally given mixed with sugars and honey. Bark and fruits are used in anomalies of urine. The leaves juice mixed in oil and boiled and it is used in earache. The bark powder mixed with honey is used in stomatitis of infants. The bark decoction is useful in gout.

Parts used : Bark, Fruits, Leaves.

Dose

Juice, 12-24 gms.; 15-30 ml., Decoction 50-100 gms; 55-110 ml., Powder 1-3 gms.

Groups (gaṇa)

Mūtrasaṅgrahaṇīya, Kaṣāyaskandha (Caraka.), Nyagrodhādi (Suśruta.), Kṣīrivṛkṣa, Pañcavalkala (Aṣṭāṅga.)

AŚVATTHA (अश्वत्थ)

- क. बोधिद्रुः पिप्पलोऽश्वत्थश्चचलपत्रो गजाशनः ।
 ख. पिप्पलो दुर्जरः शीतः पित्तश्लेष्मव्रणास्त्रजित् ।
 गुरुस्तुवरको रूक्षो वर्ण्यो योनिविशोधनः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Vatādi varga, 2-3.

- अ. अश्वत्थः पिप्पलो बोधिः बोधिसत्त्वो गजाशनः ।
शुचिश्रैत्यश्चलदलः श्यामलः स्वादुबीजकः ॥
मङ्गल्यः केशवायासो लक्ष्मीवान् क्षीरपादपः ।
- ब. अश्वत्थः शीतलोरूक्षः कषायो दुर्जरो गुरुः ।
व्रणपित्तकफास्रघ्नो वर्ण्यो योनिविशोधनः ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 431-433.

पिप्पलः

अश्वत्थश्चाच्युतावासश्चलपत्रः पवित्रकः ।
शुभदो बोधिवृक्षश्च याज्ञिको गजभक्षकः ॥
श्रीमान् क्षीरद्रुमो विप्रो मङ्गल्यः श्यामलश्च सः ।
पिप्पाली गुह्यपुष्पश्च सेव्यः सत्यः शुचिद्रुमः ।
चैत्यद्रुमो धर्मवृक्षो ज्ञेयो विंशति संज्ञकः ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Āmrādi varga, 112-113.

पिप्पलगुणाः

पिप्पलः सुमधुरस्तु कषायः शीतलश्च कफपित्तविनाशी ।
रक्तदाहशमनः स हि सद्यो योनिदोषहरणः किल पक्वः ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Āmrādi varga, 114.

अन्यञ्च

अश्वत्थवृक्षस्य फलानि पक्रान्यतीव हृद्यानि च शीतलानि ।
कुर्वन्ति पित्तास्र विषार्तिदाहं विच्छर्दिशोषारुचिदोषनाशम् ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Āmrādi varga, 115.

अश्वत्थिका

अश्वत्थी लघुपत्री स्यात्पवित्रा ह्रस्वपत्रिका ।
पिप्पलिका वनस्था च क्षुद्रा चाश्वत्थसन्निभा ॥

अश्वत्थिकागुणाः

अश्वत्थिका तु मधुरा कषाया चास्रपित्तजित् ।
विषदाहप्रशमनी गुर्विण्या हितकारिणी ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Āmrādi varga, 121-122.

त्रिदोषवातरक्ते

बोधिवृक्षकषायं तु प्रपिवेन्मधुना सह ।

वातरक्तं जयत्याशु त्रिदोषमपि दारुणम् ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā 29-158.

दुर्जेयवमनप्रतिषेधार्थम्

अश्वत्थवल्कलं शुष्कं दग्धं निर्वापितं जले ।

तज्जलं पानमात्रेण छर्दिं जयति दुर्जयाम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Chārdyādhikāra, 17-23.

बालमुखपाकहरप्रलेपम्

‘अश्वत्थत्वग्दलक्षौद्रमुखपाके प्रलेपनम् ।’

Bhāvaprakāśa, Bālarogādhikāra, 71-174.

दैवव्यपाश्रयचिकित्सान्तर्गतम् अश्वत्थपत्रं ज्वरहरतर्पणम्

‘गङ्गाया उत्तरे कूले अपुत्रस्तापसो मृतः ।

तस्मै तिलोदकं दद्यान्मुञ्चत्यैकाहिको ज्वरः ।’

एतन्मन्त्रेण चाश्वत्थ पत्रहस्तः प्रतर्पयेत् ॥

Cakradatta, 1-233.

वमने अश्वत्थक्षारजलम्

अश्वत्थवल्कलं शुष्कं दग्ध्वा निर्वापितं जले ।

तत्तोयपानमात्रेण छर्दिं जयति दुस्तराम् ॥

Cakradatta, Chārdi cikitsā, 15-24.

कर्णशूले अश्वत्थपत्रस्वरसप्रयोगः

क. अश्वत्थपत्रखल्वं वा विधाय बहुपत्रकम् ।

तैलाक्तमङ्गारपूर्णं विदध्याञ्छ्रवणोपरि ॥

ख. यत् तैल च्यवते तस्मात् खल्वादङ्गारतापितात् ।

तद् प्राप्तं श्रवणस्रोतः सद्यो गृह्णाति वेदनाम् ॥

Cakradatta, Karṇaroga cikitsā, 57-7/8.

अश्वत्थदिव्यत्वम्

अश्वत्थः सर्ववृक्षाणां देवर्षीणां च नारदः ।

गन्धर्वाणां चित्ररथः सिद्धानां कपिलो मुनिः ॥

Śrīmad Bhagavadgītā, Adhyāya 10-26.

संहितायामश्वत्थः

(पिप्पल-बोधिवृक्ष)

Caraka Samhitā

Sūtra, 4.33 etc., *Vimāna*. 8-151., *Cikitsā* 3-257 etc.
Kalpa. 1-7 etc.

Suśruta Samhitā

Sūtra. 38-43., *Cikitsā*, 3-6, 11-8, 26-27., *Uttara*. 21-9.

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya

Sūtra. 21-26 etc., *Cikitsā*, 3-89 etc., *Uttara*. 18-2 etc.

ATASĪ

Botanical name : *Linum usitatissimum* Linn.

Family : Fabaceae (Papilionaceae)

Classical name : Atasī

Sanskrit names

Atasī, Nīlapuṣpī, Kṣumā-kṣoumī, Umā, Rudrapatnī, Pārvatī, Suvarcalā, Maṣṇā, Veṇu, Ratnapatrā.

Regional names

Tisi, Atsi, Alsi, Alasi, Atasi, (Hind.), Masina (Beng.), Alsa (Mar.), Atasi (Tel.), Alisikhirai (Tam.), Kattan (Arab.), Jagis (Pers.); Linseeds, Flax (Eng.).

Description

Annual 0.6-1.2 meter high; stem solitary or few, corymbosely branched; branches ascending towards the apex. Leaves up to 3.8 cm. long, linear lanceolate, attenuated at both ends, acute at the apex.

Flowers about 2.5 cm. across, in corymbose panicles. Sepals the 2 outer elliptic, acuminate, with entire membranous margins; the 3 linear broader, acuminate, with ciliate margins; all strongly 3-nerved; the middle nerve alone reaching the apex. Petals blue, slightly crenate.

Capsules mucronate; the edge of the dissepiments in the interior glabrous. Seeds compressed, ellipsoid, smooth, dark brown, shining.

Seeds : The capsule is globose; splits into 5 capsules each containing two seeds. The seeds are of a flattened elongated ovoid form with an acute edge, and a slightly oblique

point, blunt at one end. They have a brown gloss, polished surfaces which under a lense is seen to be marked with extremely five pits; seeds mucilaginous.

Flowering and fruiting time

Winter season.

Distribution

It is cultivated throughout India, upto 6,000 ft. elevation; specially in Bengal, Bihar and Uttar Pradesh.

Kinds and varieties

There are four kinds on the basis of colour of seeds viz. white (śveta), yellow (pīta), red (rakta) and black (kr̥ṣṇa) atasī.

Chemical composition

Seeds contain 37-44 percent fixed oil, mucilaginous matter 15 percent, protein, resin, wax, sugar and alkaline substance 3-5 percent. Alkalis contents include sulphate and chloride of potassium, calcium and magnesium.

Linseed oil contains mineral matter consisting mainly potassium, calcium and magnesium and protien 25 percent.

The seeds of the white variety and high oil yielding source for Linseed oil.

The pure and fresh linseed oil in liquid form resembles colourless water, which becomes concentrations in contact of air effects.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Madhura, Tikṭa
Guṇa	: Guru, Snigdha, Picchila
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣākarma	: Vātaśamaka, Kaphapitta, Vvardhaka.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Grāhī (Bharjita-fried) Anulomana (taila-oil) Hṛdya (Puṣpa-flowers) Kaphniḥsāraka, Mūtrala Vājikaraṇa-uttejaka (śukranāśaka)
-------	---

Śothahara-śvayathuvilayana
Vraṇaśoṭha-pakvaśoṭha, Prabhedana
Tvacya-kaṇḍughna.

Roga

- (a) **Ābhyantara** : Vibandha-Ānāha
Adharagudāvarodha, Arśa
Atisāra-Grahaṇī, Hṛdya, Kāsa-śvāsa
Mūtrakṛccha-Bastiśoṭha-pūyameha-
prameha, Kāmaśaitya, Vātavikāra.
- (b) **Bāhya** : Vraṇaśoṭha-Vraṇa, Vātarakta
Carmaroga-kuṣṭha-kaṇḍu
Agnidagdha.

Therapeutic uses

It is aperient (in piles), aphrodisiac (seeds), astringent (roasted seeds), cardiac (flowers), demulcent, diuretic, emollient, expectorant and nerine tonic.

It is useful in burns and scalds (carion oil-lime water and alsi oil), colic, eye trouble, gouty and rheumatic trouble (poultice) haemorrhoids, haemorrhages, irritation of the intestine and genito-urinary passages spasmodic affection of the bowels.

The fixed oil extracted from the seeds is given orally as a laxative in one or two ounce doses twice a day. The oil is used in gravel, stone, pleurisy, spasmodic affections of the bowels and piles. The carion oil is well-known which is for medicinal uses also.

This oil is mixture of equal parts of the oil and lime water, it is a household remedy for burns, scalds and skin diseases like eczema, herpes etc. Linseed oil is rused for removing spots from the face. The oil is administered as an enema in impacted conditions of the rectum and the lower colon.

The bark and leaves are useful in gonorrhoea; and the ash of the bark is useful as styptic and vulnerary. The fibres are obtained from the plant; the fibres are recommended to employ as stitching thread (sīvana-sūtra), besides other utility of fine fibres (for textiles) etc.

The seeds are mainly medicinally useful and used in various diseases and their oil is administered internally and externally in different ailments. The seeds are used in gonorrhoea, inflammatory gastro-intestinal disorders, irritation of urinary tract, nephritis, cystitis, colds, cough, sore throat and pulmonary complaints. The linseed tea or infusion of seeds is given orally repeatedly in a small glassful doses as demulcent and emollient for cough and colds; the tea or infusion prepared with linseeds is also mixed with honey or suitable adjuvants.

As a laxative, the seeds in doses of one to two teatpoonfuls of the seeds are given with water. An infusion made by steeping overnight and ounce of the powdered seeds in a tumblerful of water is given with lime juice to consumptives. The seeds oil is also given in constipation which is prescribed in flatulence, constipation, anal obstruction and similar intestinal troubles, also in cases of piles for regular and constipation-free motion. The oil is employed as enema in intestinal and anal obstruction.

The flowers are useful in heart diseases as they are cardiac tonic. They are also useful as brain tonic.

The poultice of seeds is frequently applied as a household remedy for abscess, boils and inflammatory conditions. The same application is also made for gouty, rheumatic swellings and skin diseases. A poultice is commonly applied to carbuncles. In the ailments of deep seated inflammations such as pneumonia, bronchitis, bronchopneumonia, pleurisy, angina and other similar chest troubles, the external application of seeds is made and seeds oil is topically applied in nervine, neuragia, rheumatic pains, skin affections and also debility as the oil is also used as massage oil.

Seeds are internally used as an aphrodisiac for exciting sexual desire, but they are considered disfavourable to semen. The seeds are useful as a galactagogue and emmenagogue.

The seeds duly roeasted and given in diarrhoea and dysentery. The seeds are rubefacient and employed in poultice in various ailments and for reducing counter irritant

effect of the linseeds poultice the dusting of mustard powder is also sometimes suggested.

An inhalation of the smoke from burning seeds is useful in cold, head affection and hysteria. The burnt seeds are useful as styptic and healer; and they are applied externally to wounds and ulcers.

The seeds meal is used as cataplasms. The oil from seeds is useful in biliousness, backache and it purifies blood, but it may causes loss of appetite. The fumigation of smoke is also considered useful in hysteria and other ailments of cold. The mucilage of seeds is good for eye troubles. The seeds are useful in disorders caused by vāta, pitta and kapha; and the leaves are allaying vāta and used in their ailments.

The seeds are burnt and their fumigation as smoke (in dhūpana vidhi) application which is recommended in certain recipes for natal care and infantile care (prasūtikā-graha and bāla rakṣoghna); the seeds and seeds-oil are also used in other ailing conditions and different purposes (such as paint, dye, varnishes as drying oil etc. including birds-lime by close cooking).

The seeds yielding oil, the linseed oil which is of non-human use but adulterated and also employed to prepared artificial ghee) is used in veterinary medicine, specially horse care e.g. for constipation in horses; the seeds (cake lafet after extracting the oil from linseed) is a nutritive cattle feeds (as it is quite protenuous and also richin calcium and phosphorus contents).

Parts used : Seeds, Oil, Flowers.

Dose : Powder 3-6 gms., Oil 6-12 gms., Flowers 3-5 gms.

Formulation (yoga) : Atasyādi Lepa.

ATASĪ (अतसी)

क. अतसी नीलपुष्पी च पार्वती स्यादुमा क्षुमा ॥

ख. अतसी मधुरा तिक्ता स्निग्धा पाके कटुर्गुरुः ।

उष्णा दृक्छूक्रवातघ्नी कफपित्तविनाशिनी ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Dhānya varga, 66-67.

- अ. रुद्रपत्नी रत्नपत्रा नीलपुष्पी सुवर्चला ।
उमाऽतसी च मसृणा वेणुः क्षौमी क्षुमा स्मृता ॥
- ब. अतसी मधुरा तिक्ता स्निग्धा पाके कटुर्गुरुः ।
उष्णा दृक्शुक्रवातघ्नी कफपित्तप्रकोपनी ॥

अतसीपत्रम्

- स. कासे श्रेष्ठमुमापत्रं वातरोगे तथा कफे ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 84-86.

अतसी

अतसी पिच्छला देवी मदगन्धा मदोत्कटा ।
उमा क्षुमा हैमवती सुनीला नीलपुष्पिका ॥

अतसीगुणाः

अतसी मदगन्धा स्यान्मधुरा बलकारिका ।
कफवातकरी चेषत् पित्तहत् कुष्ठवातनुत् ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Śālyādi varga, 117-118.

अतसीतैलम्

मधुरं त्वतसीतैलं पिच्छिलं चानिलापहम् ।
मदगन्धि कषायञ्च कफकासापहारकम् ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Kṣīrādi varga, 112.

‘वातघ्नं मधुरं तेषु क्षोमं तैलं बलासकृत् ।’

Dhanvantari Nighaṅṭu.

उमा-अतसीतैलम्

उमातैलं गुरु स्निग्धं मधुरं दीपनं घनम् ॥
ग्राह्युष्णं कटुकं पाके कफपित्तबलप्रदम् ।
त्वग्दोषहृच्चक्षुष्यं पिच्छिलं मलवृद्धिकृत् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Taila varga, 319-320.

अतसीतैलगुणाः

- अ. अतसीतैलमाग्रेयं स्निग्धोष्णं कफपित्तकृत् ।
कटुपाकमचक्षुष्यं बल्यं वातहरं गुरु ॥
मलकृद्रसतः स्वादु ग्राहि त्वग्दोषहृद् घनम् ।

तैलप्रयोगाः

बस्तौ पाने तथाऽभ्यङ्गे नस्ये कर्णस्य पूरणे ।

अनुपानविधौ चापि प्रयोज्यं वातशान्तये ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Taila varga, 17-19.

अतसीतैलम्

आतस्यं मधुराम्लं तु विपाकं कटुकं तथा ।

उष्णवीर्यं हितं वाते रक्तपित्तप्रकोपनम् ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Sūtra 27-284.

क्षौम-अतसीसूत्रम्

‘सीव्येत् सूक्ष्मेण सूत्रेण....शणजक्षौमसूत्राभ्यां स्नाय्वा बालेन
वा पुनः ।’

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra, 25-20.

अतसीगुणाः

उष्णाऽतसी स्वादुरसाऽनिलघ्नी ।

पित्तोल्वणा स्यात्कटुका विपाके ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā.

स्निग्धोमा स्वादुतिकोष्णा कफपित्तकरी गुरुः ।

दृक्शुक्रहृत् कटुः पाके तद्वीजं च कुसम्भकम् ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hr̥daya.

पक्वशोथप्रभेदने

‘उमाऽथ गुग्गुलुः..... ।

इत्युक्तो भेषजगणः पक्वशोथप्रभेदनः ॥’

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā. 13.

ब्रणोपनाहने

‘.....सातसीबीजदध्यम्ला शक्तुपिण्डिका ।

.....शस्ता स्यादुपनाहने ।’

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā. 13-49.

वातप्रधानव्रणालेपने

‘सदाहा वेदनावन्तो ये व्रणा मारुतोत्तराः ।

तेषां तिलान्युमाञ्चैव भृष्टान् पयसि निर्वृतान् ॥’

तैनेव पयसा पिष्ट्वा कुर्यादालेपनं भिषक् ।’

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā. 13.

प्रमेहे

‘कुसुम्भसर्षपातसी.....स्नेहाः प्रमेहेषु ।’

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Cikitsā. 13-5.

वाताधिके वातरक्ते

‘क्षीरपिष्टमुमालेपं....कुर्याच्छूलनिवृत्त्यर्थं..... ।’

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Cikitsā. 29.

ATIBALĀ

Botanical name : *Abutilon indicum* G. Don.

Family : Malvaceae

Classical name : Atibalā

Sanskrit names : Atibalā, Rṣyaproktā, Kaṅkatikā.

Regional names

Kanghi, Kakahi, Kakahiya (Hind.), Paitasi, Jhanpi (Beng.), Muda (Mar.), Khapada, Dabali, Kamsaki (Guj.), Tatti (Tam.), Tutirechedru (Tel.), Mashtula gol (Arab.), Darakht shan (Pers.).

Description

A suffrutescent, erect, minutely, tomentose, woody, grey, velvety, shrubby plant. Leaves up to 9 by 5 cm. cordate, ovate, acuminate, toothed, rarely subtrilobate; petioles 3.8-7.5 cm. long; stipules 9 mm. linear, acute, deflexed. Pedicels often 2.5.5mm long, axillary solitary jointed very near the top. Calyx 12.8 mm. long, divided to the middle; lobes ovate, apiculate. Corolla 2.5 cm. diam., yellow, opening in the evening. Staminal tube hairy at the base; filaments long. Carpels usually 15-20, longer than the calyx, with a distinct small acute point hairy, ultimately shining, dark brown. Seeds brown, black, densely and minutely scrobiculate.

Flowering and fruiting time

Autumn to winter seasons. Plant in fruiting stage more or less for longer periods.

Distributions

It is commonly found throughout India and Pakistan specially tropical and temperate regions; Tropics.

Kinds and varieties

The drug atibalā belongs to Balācatuṣṭaya consisting Balā, Atibalā, Nāgabalā and Mahābalā in the classical texts of medicine. Occasionally other groups such as Balādvaya and Balātraya-tritaya, consisting two or three plant, also combine Atibalā (e.g. Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā. 28.165; Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Uttara. 13-52 for Balādvaya and Balātritaya respectively, and other contexts.

There are some kinds or jāti in conventional practice such as choti and Bari Kanghi etc.; and a few species of plants are indicated viz. *Abutilon hirtum* G. Don., *Abutilon asiaticum* G. Don and others.

Chemical Composition

Leaves contain mucilaginous matter, tannin, organic acid; little Asparagin and ash (consisting alkaline sulphate, chloride, magnesium phosphate, and calcium carbonate); roots also contain asparagin.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Madhura, Tikta-kaṭu
Guṇa	: Guru, Snigdha
Vīrya	: Picchila
Vipāka	: Madhura
Doṣakarma	: Vātapitta śamaka

Action and properties

Karma	: Balya-br̥mhaṇa Rasāyana-ojovardhana, Kṛmighna Dahapraśamana, Tṛṣṇānigrahaṇa Viśaghna, Kledaśamana, Mūtrala Vayaḥsthāpana, Vājikaraṇa Kāsaghna, Śothahara Vedanāsthāpana.
-------	--

Roga

(a) Ābhyantara	: Dourbalya-kṛśatā, Klaihya-śukra doṣa Mūtrakṛccha-bastiśoṭha
----------------	--

Prameha-pūyameha-śurameha
Pradara, Jvara, Kāsa-śvāsa-uraḥvikāra
Vātavikāra, Granthivikāra, Kṛmiroga.

(b) **Bāhya** : Kṛmiroga, Vraṇaśoṭha-Vraṇa
Granthi, Vendana-śoṭhapradhāna
Vikṛti.

Therapeutic uses

The bark has sharply bitter taste; it is febrifuge, anthelmintic, and alexeteric; and it allays vāta and tridoṣa; and counters thirst, vomiting and it lessens perspiration. The roots cure uterine haemorrhage discharges. The milk of the plant cures urinary discharges.

The bark is valued as diuretic. Bark is good in strangury and urinary complaints. The infusion of the root is prescribed in fevers as a cooling medicine and is considered useful in strangury, haematuria, as also in leprosy.

The leaves are used in lumbago, toothache, piles and all kinds of inflammation. The mucilaginous seeds are tonic; they are good for chest troubles, bronchitis, piles and gonorrhoea.

The leaves are cooked and eaten in bleeding piles. A decoction is used in bronchitis, in catarrhal bilious disorders of diarrhoeal condition, in gonorrhoea and inflammation of the bladder, and in fevers. It is also applied as a mouth-wash in cases of tooth-ache and tender gums.

The seeds are reckoned aphrodisiac and are used as a laxative in piles, and in the treatment of coughs. They are burnt on charcoal and the rectum of children affected with thread-worm is exposed to the smoke by this application.

The seeds are useful as an emollient and demulcent. The roots are used as a diuretic and pulmonary sedative, and the flowers and leaves as a local application to boils and ulcers.

The seeds are useful as lenitive, discutient remedies and diuretic. They are useful in puerperal diseases, urinary disorders, chronic dysentery and fevers and administered in the treatment in recipes for various diseases.

The seeds are given in doses of one or two drachms, as a laxative in piles, as an expectorant and aphrodisiac.

The roots are alterative and used as restorative. The roots are recommended to be taken internally with water (as Rasāyana). The powder of the roots is prescribed with milk in leucorrhoea (specially raktapradara) and juice of roots is also given for the ailment.

Parts used : Roots, Leaves, Seeds.

Dose : Juice 12-24 gms., Powder 1-3 gms.

Groups (Gaṇa)

Balya, Bṛmhaṇīya, Madhuraskandha (Caraka.)
Madhura, Vātasamśamana (Suśruta.)

ATIBALĀ (अतिबला)

तिक्ता कटुश्चातिबला वातघ्नी क्रिमिनाशनी ।

दाहतृष्णाविषच्छर्दिक्लेदोपशमनी परा ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Śatāhvādi varga, 102.

‘हन्यादतिबला मेहं पयसा सितया समम् ।’

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Guḍūcyādi varga, 146.

मूत्रकृच्छ्रे

‘अतिबलामूलं... कषायोऽतिबलामूलसाधितः

सर्वकृच्छ्रजित् ।’

Cakradatta.

रक्तप्रदरे

‘बला कङ्कतिकाख्या या तस्या मूलं सुचूर्णितम् ।

लोहितप्रदरे खादेच्छर्करामधुसंयुतम् ॥

Bhāvamiśra.

रसायने

‘बलातिबला.....पुनर्नवान्ताश्चौषधयो दश ये

वयःस्थापना व्याख्याता तेषां स्वरसाः

नागबगलावत् प्रयोज्याः ।’

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā. 1-82.

रसायने

‘विशेषस्त्वतिबलामुदकेन ।’

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Cikitsā. 27.

बलाचतुष्टयम्

बलाचतुष्टयं शीतं मधुरं बलकान्तिकृत् ।

स्निग्धं ग्राहि समीरास्रपित्तास्रक्षतनाशनम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa.

संहितायामतिबला

*Caraka Saṁhitā,**Sūtra. 4-7., Vimāna. 8-146., Śārīra. 8-34., Cikitsā. 1-2 etc.**Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya,**Cikitsā. 3-12 etc., Uttara. 39-60 etc.**Suśruta Saṁhitā,**Sūtra 15-39 etc., Cikitsā. 5-7 etc., Kalpa. 8-51.**Śārīra. 10-4., Uttara. 17-34 etc.*

ATIVIṢĀ

Botanical name : *Aconitum heterophyllum* wall.

Family : Ranunculaceae

Classical name : Ativiṣā

Sanskrit names

Ativiṣā, Ghuṇavallabhā, Bhaṅgurā, Kāśmīra, Śīsubha-
iṣajyā, Śuklakandā.

Regional names

Atis (Hind.), Ativish (Mar., Guj.), Ataich (Beng.),
Patis, Batis, (Punj.), Atividyam (Tam.), Atibasa (Tel.),
Bajjturaki (Pers.)

Description

An erect, perennial and tuberous herb, glabrous or
upper part downy. Stems erect, simple or branched, from
15-90 cm. (rarely to almost 2 meters) high, terete, glabrous
below, finely crispo-pubescent in the upper part, lowest 2-4
(sometimes more), internodes short, the following 2-10 elongate.

Leaves more or less heteromorphous, glabrous or the upper sparingly pubescent on the nerves below; lowest on long (up to 13 cm.) petioles; blade orbicular-cordate or ovate-cordate in outline with a usually narrow sinus (1-1.5 cm. deep), 2.5-3.5 cm. high from the sinus to the tip, 3-7 (rarely to 9) cm. across, usually 5-lobed to the middle; lobes crenate or inciso-crenate, crenate, rotundate, apiculate; intermediate leaves shortly petioled or sessile, ovate-cordate, often acuminate, 3.5-12 cm. long, 2.5-7.5 cm. broad; incisocrenate or serrate or the lower ones obscurely lobed; serratures acute or apiculate; uppermost leaves similar to the preceding amplexicaul.

Inflorescence a slender raceme or a lax, leafy panicle, (or in alpin specimen reduced to a few flowers), crispo-pubescent; floral leaves like the preceding infra-floral leaves but smaller, passing upwards into the rapidly decreasing ovate or lanceolate crenate or (the uppermost) entire herbs; bracteoles if present, at or above the middle of the pedicel, elliptic or oblong, usually entire; pedicels erect, in the mature site often adpressed to the rhachis; lower up to 5 cm. long, upper much shorter.

Sepals more or less blue or violet, rarely whitish with dark conspicuous veins. Nectaries glabrous, extinguisher-shaped. Filaments 6-8 mm. long, carpels 5, contiguous.

Follicles contiguous, linear, oblong, straight, 16-18 mm. long, more or less glabrescent. Seeds obpyramidal, 3-4 mm. long, blackish brown, angles acute or more less winged; faces smooth.

Roots : Tuberous roots— tubers root is 2-8 cm. long 0.4 to 1.5 cm. thick of the shape of a minute conch, grey brown outside with scattered pointed minute notches. Starchy white inside 4-9 xylem bundles near the periphery embedded in secondary phloem tissue.

Tubers are of two types, one grey and the other white. The grey shrivalled tubers are larger and longer than the white; those are mother tubers; and are often separated and (sold out as a lower) the material also becomes a part of market drude drug; it consists white tubers in raw drug material of trade.

The white daughter-tubers are plum, externally of a pale ash colour, slightly scarred from the abrasion of root-lets; these tubers are ovoid with a thin tap like extremity; at the summit; there is scaly leaf bud; bracts with a short starchy fracture, white in colour and bitter in taste.

Roots biennial, paired, tuberous; daughter-tuber cylindrical to cylindrical-oblong or conic, 2-5 cm. long, 0.5-1.2 cm. thick (much smaller in weak or alpin specimen), bearing few root-fibres which break off easily, bark very thin, whitish or grey, smooth, fracture pure white; farinaceous, cambium discontinuous, forming (usually 4 or 5) isolated, slender, cylindrical strands arranged in a ring; taste purely bitter; mother-tuber collapsed, deeply grooved and wrinkled, with conspicuous root-fibre scars. Innovation-bud of daughter-tuber conic, 3-8 cm. long.

Flowering and fruiting time

Rainy-autumn seasons and onwards; July-September.

Distribution

It is commonly found in the alpine and subalpine zone of the Himalayas (from Indus to Kumooan) from 6,000 to 12,000 ft. elevation (2,000-4,000 meters).

Kinds and varieties

There are three or four varieties of *Ativisā viz.* white (*śveta*), yellow (*pīta*), red (*rakta*) and black (*kṛṣṇa*) in texts of the materia medica (*nighaṅṭus*). The white variety is mostly in current practice.

The classical texts of materia medica (*nighaṅṭus*) mention three of four varieties of *ativisā viz.* *śveta* (white) *Pīta* (yellow), *Rakta* (red) and also *kṛṣṇa* (black).

Chemical composition

Tubers contain a non-crystalline and very bitter alkaloid *Atisine*; *Aconitic acid*, *tannic acid*, *pectin*, ample starch, fat; *oleic*, *palmitic* and *stearic* glycerin mixture, vegetable mucilaginous matter, *Sacrose* and ash 2 percent.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Tikta, Kaṭu
Guṇa	: Rūkṣa

- Vīrya : Kaṭu
Doṣakarma : Tridoṣahara (Kaphapittaśāmaka)

Action and Properties

- Karma** : Dīpana-Pācana, Chardinigrahaṇa
Grāhī-āmapācana, Arśoghna
Kṛmighna
Raktaśodhaka-raktastambhana
Śothahara, Kaphaghna-kāśahara
Stanyaśodhana, Vājikaraṇa
Jvaraghna-viṣamajvaraprati-vandhaka
Kaṭupauṣṭika, Viṣaghna.
- Roga** : Agnimāndya-ajīrṇa, Bālaroga
Āmadoṣa, Atisāra-āmātisāra
Jvarātisāra, Arśa, Udararoga, Kṛmi
Raktavikāra- raktasrāva (antaḥ)
Śoṭha, Pratiśyāya-Kāsa, Stanyavyāpata
Klaibya, Jvara-viṣamajvara, Medoroga
Kaṭupauṣṭika, Viṣa-mūṣikaviṣa
Chardi.

Therapeutic uses

The roots are exhibited as white, yellow, red and black varieties; and the white is the best for medicinal uses. It is bitter tonic, hot, stomachic, digestive; alterative; it alleviates dysentery and bilious complaints; good in periodic and intermittent fevers as a tonic; useful in diarrhoea and vomiting of children; causes constipation when taken in large doses; and useful in bites from poisonous snakes, scorpion, rates and similar bites-stings.

The white and dark varieties are tonic; they strengthen the human body; the root alleviates dysentery; good in piles, in bilious affections; useful in plethoric conditions; it removes gases from the stomach.

The roots are prescribed with other drugs for the treatment of snake-bite and scorpion-sting.

The pure and genuine roots should break with a short starchy fracture, should taste bitter without producing any acidity and tingling sensation of the tongue.

The roots are given in dysentery and chronic enteritis. The drug is a good bitter tonic, and it is an antiperiodic.

The roots are useful as anthelmintic, febrifuse, aphrodisiac, bitter, carminative, alexipharmic, digestive and antidiarrhoeal. They are given in worms, infantile diseases, feeres, diarrhoea, cough, indigestion, haemorrhage, dyspepsia, inflammatory affections, intermittent-malarial-periodic feveres, piles and vomiting. It is specifically orally recommended in diseases of children, infantile and teething troubles. It is also a good tonic.

Roots are given to check internal haemorrhage. They are administered in powder form with honey or suitable vehicle and adjuvants to children in treating their fever, diarrhoea, cough, vomiting and other similar complaints of the age and also troubles of teething period.

The roots are used in blood impurities diseases, and useful in oedema. It is useful in obesity as it reduces fat. It is also blood purifier; it is useful in impotency and diseases of mother-milk as a galactagogogue.

Purification and Toxicity

The roots are treated or processed with cow-dung juice (gomaya svedana) under prescribed process (svedana vidhi) and dried in sunlight, for purification (śuddhi) of drug material.

In case the over dose or excess (5-6 gms. about) use may cause the toxic signs and symptoms (viṣākta lakṣaṇa) such as throat affections including inflammation, cramp and other vātic symptoms.

Parts used : Roots-tubers.

Dose : 10-60 grains.

Formulations (yoga)

Ativīsādi cūrṇa, Cāturbhadrāvāleham, Sudarśana cūrṇa, Amṛtāriṣṭa, Bālacāturbhadrā cūrṇa.

Groups (gaṇa)

Arśoghna, Lekhaniya (Caraka), Pippalyādi, Vacādi, Mustādi, (Suśruta).

ATIVIṢĀ (अतिविषा)

कटूष्णाऽतिविषा तिक्ता कफपित्तज्वरापहा ।
आमातीसारकासघ्नी विषच्छर्दिविनाशनी ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Pippalyādi varga, 135.

भेदाः

त्रिविधाऽतिविषा ज्ञेया शुक्ला कृष्णा तथाऽरुणा ।
रसवीर्यविपाकेषु निर्विशेषगुणा च सा ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Pippalyādi varga, 136.

शोधनम्

दोलायां गोमयक्वाथे पचेदतिविषां ततः ।
सूर्यतापे भवेच्छुष्का योजयेत् तां भिषगवरः ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Pippalyādi varga, 137.

विषा सोष्णा लघुस्तिक्ता दीपनी पाचनी जयेत् ॥
कफपित्तातिसारामविषकासवमिकृमीन् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 1120-1121.

विषा सोष्णा कटुस्तिक्ता पाचनी दीपनी हरेत् ।
कफपित्तातिसारामविषकासवमिक्रिमीन् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Haritakyādi varga, 214.

सर्वकुक्ष्यामये

अङ्गोटस्य त्रयो भागाः भागश्चैकोऽरुणाभवः ।
तण्डुलोदकसम्पीतः सर्वकुक्ष्यामयापहः ॥

Baṅgasena.

शिशोः कासज्वरच्छर्दिषु

‘कासज्वरच्छर्दिभिरर्दितानां समाक्षिकान्वतिविषां तथैकाम् ।’

Baṅgasena.

बालानं ज्वरातिसारे चातुर्भद्रावलेहम् ।

Bhāvaprakāśa, Bālarogādhikāra, 71-151.

आमातिसारे

‘दद्यात्सातिविषां पेयां सामे साम्लां सनागरम् ।’

Caraka Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 2.

दीपनाद्यर्थेषु

‘अतिविषा दीपनीयपाचनीसङ्ग्राहकसर्वदोषहराणाम् ।’

Caraka Samhitā, Sūtra. 25.

मूषकविषे

प्रातः सातिविषं कल्कं लिहयान्माक्षिकसंयुतम् ।

Suśruta Samhitā, Kalpa. 7-39.

कुञ्जरादीनां विषजुष्टानां हिते

‘तत्र दुग्धैः गवादीनां सर्पिः सातिविषैः शृतम् ।’

Suśruta Samhitā, Kalpa. 1-64.

बालरोगे

‘एका वातिविषा कासज्वरच्छर्दिरूपद्भुतम् ।’

Aṣṭāṅga Hr̥daya, Uttara. 2-58.

विषात्रयं त्रिदोषघ्नं पाचनं ग्राहि तित्तकम् ।

बालानां सर्वदा पथ्यं वमिशोथविमर्दनम् ॥

Śoḍhala.

‘शोफापहाऽतिसारघ्नी शुक्लकन्दा च सा स्मृता ।’

Nighaṅṭu, Saṅgraha.

‘घुणप्रियाऽतिसारघ्नी बालानां रोगनाशिनी ।’

Dhanvantari Nighaṅṭu.

अर्शे रक्तावरोधकार्थम्

सातिविषा कुटजत्वक् फलं च सरसाञ्जनं मधुयुतानि ।

रक्तापहानि दद्यात् पिपासवे तण्डुलजलेन ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā. 14-187.

पित्तजातिसारे

सक्षौद्रातिविषं पिष्ट्वा फलत्वचम् ।

पिबेत् पित्तातिसारघ्नं तण्डुलोदकसंयुतम् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, cikitsā. 19-51.

संहितायामतिविषा

Caraka Samhitā,

Sūtra. 2-211 etc., Vimāna. 8-150., Cikitsā. 3-214 etc.

Suśruta Samhitā,

Sūtra. 11-13 etc., Cikitsā. 4-4 etc., Kalpa. 1-64 etc.

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya

Sūtra. 10-30 etc., Śarīra. 2-8, 41, 42., Cikitsā. 1-65 etc.,

Uttara. 2-19 etc., kalpa. 4-64.

ĀVARTAKĪ

Botanical name : *Cassia auriculata* Linn.

Family : Caesalpiniaceae

Classical name : Āvartakī-Āhulyam

Sanskrit names

Āvartakī, Āhulyam, Carmaraṅgā, Vibhāṅḍī, Pītakīlikā, Raktaphalī, Mahājālinikā, Bindukinī.

Regional names

Tarwar, (Hindi, Beng.), Tarwarh-Tarwar, Tarota, Caramraṅga (Hindi), Aval (Guj.), Avarai (Tam.), Tangedu (Tel.), Tanners Cassia.

Description

A tall much-branched shrub; bark smooth, reddish brown; branchlets finely pubescent. Leaves 7.5-10 cm. long; rachis densely fulvous-pubescent with an erect linear gland between each pair of leaflets; stipules foliaceous, reflexed, very large, rotundate-reniform, produced at the base on the side next the petiole into a long subulate point, persistent. Leaflets 8-12 pairs 2-2.5 cm., slightly overlapping, oblong-ovate, obtuse or emarginate, mucronate, glabrous or finely downy, dull green above, paler beneath, base usually rounded; petiolules 1.25 mm. long.

Flowers large, reaching 5 cm. across, in terminal and axillary corymbose racemes; pedicels 2-2.5 cm. long; bracts ovate, acuminate, caducous. Calyx glabrous segments leathery, concave; the outer much smaller than the other 3. Petals with long claws; criped on the margins; bright yellow, veined with orange. Stames 10, of which the 3 upper are reduced to staminodes, the remaining 7 perfect, of which the 3 lower are larger than the 4 lateral ones.

Pods 7.5-12.5 by 1.3-1.6 cm., flat, thin, papery, oblong, obtuse, mucronate; pale brown, deeply depressed be-

tween the seeds, having a crumpled appearance transversely veined, pubescent. Seeds 10-20.

Flowering and fruiting time

Rainy to autumn season; July-September.

Distribution

It is found in dry regions of the Central Provinces and the Western Peninsula, Rajputana desert; Maharashtra, Gujarat, Rajasthan, Madhya Pradesh and Uttar Pradesh, and other areas in India; Ceylon (Sri Lanka).

Chemical composition

Bark contains 25 percent tannin.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṣāya, Tikta
Gūṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa
Vīrya	: Śīta
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphapittaśāmaka.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Stambhana (prabala), Kṛmighna Raktastambhana-rodhaka Mūtrasaṅgrahaṇīya Śukrastambhana (puṣpa-flowers) Garbhāśayasrāvahara, Kuṣṭhaghna-kaṇḍūghna, Cakṣuṣya (puṣpa-flowers) Mehaghna-Viṣaghna (Bīja-seeds) Chardi-Kṛmihara (Phala-pods) Kaphaghna-śvāsahara- tṛṣṇānigrahaṇa, Varṇya (mūla-roots).
-------	---

Roga

(a) Ābhyantara	: Atisāra-pravāhikā-raktātīsāra Kṛmi, Raktasrāva-raktapitta Pramehasrāva-madhumeha- śukrameha Pradara-garbhāśayasrāva-atyārtava Kuṣṭha-kaṇḍū-carmavikāra Śukrakṣaya-śighravīryapatana
----------------	---

Vaṛṇavikāra, Śvāsa-kāśahara
Trṣṇā-dāha, Jvara, Dhātukṣaya.

(b) **Bāhya** : Vraṇa, Netrābhiṣyanda.

Therapeutic uses

The root is alexiteric; useful in thirst, urinary discharges; cures tumours; skin diseases, asthma; causes flatulence.

The leaves are anthelmintic; good for ulcers, leprosy, skin diseases. A decoction of entire plant is given in diabetes mellitus and other ailments.

The flowers are used in urinary discharges, nocturnal emissions, diabetes, and throat troubles.

The fruits are anthelmintic; useful in vomiting, thirst, urinary discharges.

The seeds are alexipharmic; used in ophthalmia, diabetes and dysentery.

The bark is astringent. The seeds are applied to the eyes in chronic purulent conjunctivitis.

The bark and roots are considered astringent and used as an alterative.

The plant is given in chylous urine as a diuretic and in diabetes with good results; either its powder with honey is given or its decoction.

An infusion of the leaves makes a cooling drink. The bark being highly astringent is valuable substitute for tannic acid or oak bark; it is also used as alterative.

A decoction of the flowers and flowers buds is an excellent remedy for diabetes; they are also used as pessaries to check an excessive menstrual flow.

The seeds are refrigerant and attenuant; an electuary made of the seeds is administered in doses of a small teaspoonful twice a day. Their fine powder is a valuable remedy for purulent ophthalmia ailment; the fine powder is blown into the affected eyes or an ointment made with cocoanut oil or sesame oil is applied. The seeds are also given in diabetes in the same form as flowers are used.

In ulcers and conjunctivitis the paste and collyrium of plant is applied. It is used in haemorrhage as a styptic.

External use is also made in skin affections. Whole plant or various parts are useful in leucorrhoea. The seeds are used to counter poisons.

The decoction of bark is used in hydrocele. The juice of the root bark mixed with salt is given in cholera, gastro-enteritis, gastritis, colic, vomiting and dyspepsia; and it is given bowel and intestinal complaints.

The leaves are pasted over abdomen in condition of colic. In the cases of sprains and bruises, the leaves admixed with leaves of tamarind (cinca patra) and svarjika kṣhara are made into a paste and it is topically applied over effected organs.

The fomentation of leaves or vapoured leaves (svedita patra) are locally applied over snayukajanya sotha (naru diseases in Rajasthan), and similar complaints.

The leaves are pasted over glandular inflammation and it also reduces pain. In condition of stiffness of neck, shoulder or any other organs, the leaves are employed to cover the coat where the patient is lying down, and this is kind of application is said to be helpful to relieve the trouble.

The application of leaves is useful in stomatitis; the leaves are chewed and the juice is used as gargle or local lotion.

The flowers are used to promote skin colour and used in colour ailments. In liver enlargement and inflammation, the leaves are pasted externally as well as they are (juice) is given orally. Various parts of the plant are useful in veterinary medicine.

Parts used

Bark, Flowers, Seeds, Fruits, Leaves, Roots.

Dose

Decoction (bark) 50-100gms., Juice (flowers) 12-24 gms., Powder (seeds) 2-4 gms.

ĀVARTAKĪ (आवर्त्तकी)

आहुल्यम्

आहुल्यं तिक्तशीतं स्याच्चक्षुष्यं पित्तदोषनुत् ।

मुखरुकुकुष्ठकण्डूतिजन्तुशूलव्रणापहम् ॥

पुष्पम् फलम् च

तत्पुष्पं सहसा प्रमेहशमनं स्वर्णस्य वर्णप्रदं
बालं तस्य फलं वमिक्रिमिहरं सर्वप्रमेहापहम् ।
तृष्णाघ्नं सकषायमक्षिहितकृद् रुच्यं तथा दुर्जरं

बीजं मूलञ्च

तद्बीजं मधुमेहहृद् विषहरं रक्तातिसारं जयेत् ॥
तन्मूलं पवनप्रकोपि मधुरं तृष्णाप्रमेहं जये-
च्छ्वासघ्नं गुरु रक्तपित्तशमनं शुक्रक्षये पूजितम् ।

Nighaṅṭu Ratnākara.

आवर्तकी-चर्मरङ्गा

- अ. चर्मरङ्गा बिन्दुकिनी विभाण्डी पीतकीलिका ॥
आवर्तकी रक्तफली महाजालिनिका मता ।
ब. चर्मरङ्गा सरा तिक्ता कषाया कफपित्ताहा ॥
शोफगुल्मोदरानाहतृषाकण्डूविषापहा ।
कृमिकुष्ठवमिश्वासदाहास्रज्वरनाशिनी ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 996-998.

- क. पुष्पम्— 'तत्पुष्पं सहसा प्रमेहहरणं स्वर्णस्य वर्णप्रदम् ।'
ख. फलम्— 'बालं तस्य फलं वमिकृमिहरं सर्वप्रमेहापहम् ॥'
ग. बीजम्— 'तद्बीजं मधुमेहहृद् विषहरं रक्तातिसारं जयेत् ।'
घ. तन्मूलम्— 'तन्मूलं पवनप्रकोपि मधुरं तृष्णां प्रमेहं जयेत् ।
श्वासघ्नं गुरु रक्तपित्तशमनं शुक्रक्षये पूजितम् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, , Oṣadhi varga, 999-1001.

आवर्तकी

आवर्तकी कषायातिस्तम्भनी तिक्तशीतला ।
रक्तपित्तातिसारघ्नी कृमिकुष्ठविनाशिनी ॥
नेत्ररोगे प्रमेहे च तत्पुष्पं तु प्रयुज्यते ।

Dravyaguṇa vijñāna, (Dvitiya-trtīya bhāga), p. 381.

संहितायामावर्तकी

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya,
Cikitsā, 19-22., [Ādāriśimbi-Suśruta Samhitā, Uttara. 44-19]

ĀVARTANĪ

Botanical name : *Helicteres isora* Linn.

Family : Sterculiaceae

Classical name : Āvartanī

Sanskrit names

Āvartanī, Āvartaphalā, Raṅgalatā, Vāmāvartā, Tindukinī, Vibhāṇḍī.

Regional names

Maroraphali (Hind.), Atimora (Beng.), Murudshaing (Mar.), Murudsing (Guj.), Balamburi (Tam.), Guvadhar (Tel.); Indian Screw Tree, East Indian Screw Tree (Eng.).

Description

A shrub or small tree; young shoots clothed with stellate hairs. Leaves bifarious; 7.5-12.5 cm., oblong, obovate or roundish, cordate, suddenly or shortly acuminate, closely dotted or both surfaces with stellate hairs, more or less irregularly crenate-serate; petioles 6-9 mm. long; stipules subulate, 6 mm. long.

Flowers 2.5-3.8 mm. long, distinctly bilabiate; in axillary clusters of 2-6 together; pedicels very short; stellately tomentose; bracts small subulate, hairy. Calyx tubular, 2 mm. long, somewhat 2-lipped, stellately pubescent without, curved, laterally compressed, mouth wide; teeth triangular, unequal, closely reflexed. Petals red at first, fading to lead colour, very unequal, closely reflexed on the calyx, separate but with the claws closely hooked together. Staminal column fused with the gynophore, much exerted, suddenly deflexed; anthers 10, in a ring round the ovary. Ovary conical, on a curved gynophore, 3.8 cm. long; style as long as the ovary; deflexed.

Follicles 5, beaked, 5-6.3 cm. long, linear, twisted together into the form of a screw, stellately tomentose. Seeds numerous, angular; testa loose, wrinkled.

Flowering and fruiting time

Rains to winter season.

Distribution

It is found throughout India, specially central and western India. From the Punjab to Bengal; Ceylon, Burma, Malaya, Australia and West Indies.

Chemical composition

Fruits contain fatty acids and tannin.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṣāya
Guṇa	: Laghu, Snīgdha
Vīrya	: Śīta
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Tridoṣaghna.
Karma	: Stambhana, Śūlapraśamana Kṛmighna, Raktarodhaka Mūtrasaṅgrahaṇīya, Pramehahara.

Roga

- (a) **Ābhyantara** : Atisāra-pravāhikā-raktātisāra
Udaraśula-antravikāra, Kṛmiroga
Raktasrāva, Prameḥa
Tridoṣajanyavikāra.
- (b) **Bāhya** : Vraṇa, Raktasrāva.

Therapeutic uses

The root-bark is used in intestinal disorders in doses of five to 30 gms.; the decoction or its juice is useful in diabetes, and in empyrema.

The pods are demulcent and mildly astringent; they are given in intestinal disorders. Mixed with castor oil they are used in the ear complaints.

The bark is used diarrhoea and dysentery. The roots and bark are expectorant, demulcent, astringent to the bowels and antigalactagogue; they lessen griping; and a cure for scabies when applied topically.

The juice of the roots is considered to have beneficial effect in empyema and stomach affections. It is used in diabetes and also antidote to snake-bite.

The fruits are made into a liniment for sores of the ear, and they are administered internally for colic. They are

demulcent, mildly astringent, and useful in the gripping of bowels and flatulence of children. The flowers are useful in eye and urinary anomalies.

Parts used : Roots, Bark, Fruits.

Does : Decoction 50-100 gms., Powder (fruits) 1-3 gms.

ĀVARTANĪ (आवर्तनी)

आवर्तनीकी कषायातिस्तम्भनी तिक्तशीतला ।
रक्तपित्तातिसारघ्नी कृमिकुष्ठविनाशनी ॥
नेत्ररोगे प्रमेहे च तत्पुष्पं तु प्रयुज्यते ।

Dravyaguṇa Vijñāna, 381.

आवर्तकी

- क. आवर्तकी तिन्दुकिनी विभाण्डी विषाणिका रङ्गलता मनोज्ञा ।
सा रक्तपुष्पी महदादिजाली सा पीतकीलाऽपि च चर्मरङ्गा ॥
- ख. वामावर्त्ता च संयुक्ता भूसङ्ख्या शशिसंयुक्ता ।
आवर्तकी कषायाम्ला शीतला पित्तहारिणी ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Guḍūcyādi varga, 134-135.

आवर्तकी स्निग्धशीता कषायाऽतिसारनुत् ।
त्रिदोषोदरशूलास्रकृमिरोगविनाशिनी ॥

Dravyoguṇa Vijñāna, (Dvītiya-trītiya bhāga), 383.

आवर्तनी

आवर्तनी कषाया च शीतलाह्वातिसारहा ।
त्रिदोषोदरशूलघ्नी कृमिजालविनाशिनी ॥

Nighaṇṭu Adarśa, Pūrvārdha, 188.

BABBŪLA

Botanical name

Acacia nilotica ssp. indica (Benth.) Breman.

Acacia arabica Willd.

Family : Mimosaceae

Classical name : Babbūla

demulcent, mildly astringent, and useful in the gripping of bowels and flatulence of children. The flowers are useful in eye and urinary anomalies.

Parts used : Roots, Bark, Fruits.

Does : Decoction 50-100 gms., Powder (fruits) 1-3 gms.

ĀVARTANĪ (आवर्तनी)

आवर्तनीकी कषायातिस्तम्भनी तिक्तशीतला ।
रक्तपित्तातिसारघ्नी कृमिकुष्ठविनाशनी ॥
नेत्ररोगे प्रमेहे च तत्पुष्पं तु प्रयुज्यते ।

Dravyaguna Vijnāna, 381.

आवर्तकी

- क. आवर्तकी तिन्दुकिनी विभाण्डी विषाणिका रङ्गलता मनोज्ञा ।
सा रक्तपुष्पी महदादिजाली सा पीतकीलाऽपि च चर्मरङ्गा ॥
- ख. वामावर्त्ता च संयुक्ता भूसङ्ख्या शशिसंयुक्ता ।
आवर्त्तकी कषायाम्ला शीतला पित्तहारिणी ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Guḍūcyādi varga, 134-135.

आवर्तकी स्निग्धशीता कषायाऽतिसारनुत् ।
त्रिदोषोदरशूलास्त्रकृमिरोगविनाशिनी ॥

Dravyoguna Vijnāna, (Dvītiya-trītiya bhāga), 383.

आवर्तनी

आवर्तनी कषाया च शीतलाह्वातिसारहा ।
त्रिदोषोदरशूलघ्नी कृमिजालविनाशिनी ॥

Nighaṅṭu Adarśa, Pūrvārdha, 188.

BABBŪLA

Botanical name

Acacia nilotica ssp. *indica* (Benth.) Breman.

Acacia arabica Willd.

Family : Mimosaceae

Classical name : Babbūla

Sanskrit names

Babbūla, Kīṅkirāta-kīṅkirāṭa, Sapīnaka, Yūgmakaṅṭa-kaṅṭaki, Sūkṣmapatra, Pitapuṣpa, Kaṣāyaka, Mālāphala, Dṛḍhāruha.

Regional names

Babula, Bamur, Babul, Kikar (Hind.), Kikkar (Punj.), Babla (Beng.), Bavul (Mar.), Babal (Guj.), Karuvel (Tam.), Mallatumbha (Tel.), Ammugitan (Arb.), Mugilan (Pers.); Babul Tree.

Description

A small tree with dark brown or black longitudinally fissured bark; branchlets slender, terete, pubescent when young. Leaves 2-pinnate, 5-10 cm., long; main rhachis downy; often furnished with glands; petioles 2.5-5 cm. long; stipular spines very variable; 0.6-5 cm. long. smooth, usually whitish, straight, sharp, often absent; pinnae 4-9 pairs, 3-6-1.2-2 mm.; linear-oblong, subobtuse, glabrous or nearly so.

Flowers yellow, in globose heads; peduncle axillary, in fascicles of 2-8, terete, pubescent; bracteoles 2, above the middle of the peduncle, broadly ovate, acute, pubescent. Calyx campanulate, 1.25 mm. long; teeth very short. Corolla 3 mm. long; lobes short, triangular.

Pods stalked, 7.5-15 by 1.5-1.6 cm., monoliform, compressed, constricted at the sutures between the seeds, densely and persistently grey downy, seeds 8-12.

Flowering and fruiting time

Summer to winters.

Distribution

It is found throughout the greater part of India, Ceylon, Baluchistan, Arabia, Egypt, Tropical Africa.

India; Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, Maharashtra, Madhya Pradesh, Tamilndau, Jammu and Kashmir, West Bengal, Gujrat and other provinces.

It is a well-known plant for afforestation of waste lands and a major forest component in dry and warmer regions.

Chemical composition

Bark contains tannin, leaves and fruits contain tan-

nin 32 percent. Pods contain tannin 42 percent. Gum contain arabic acid, malic acid and sugar; enzyme and auxins.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṣāya
Guṇa	: Guru
Vīrya	: Rūkṣa, Śīta
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphapittaśāmaka.

Niryāsa (Gum)

Rasa	: Kaṣāya, Madhura
Guṇa	: Snighdha
Vīrya	: Śīta
Vipāka	: kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Vātipittaśāmaka

Action and Properties

Karma	: Stambhana, Kṛmighna (Tvak, śimbi-bark, pod) Snehana, Grāhī (Niryāsa-gum) Raktapittaśāmaka, Kaphaghna Mūtrala, Vṛṣya, Balya (Niryās) Kuṣthaghna-kaṇḍūghna (Tvak) Viṣaghna, Vraṇaropaṇa Raktarodhana-stambhana- saṅkocaka.
--------------	---

Roga

- (a) **Ābhyantra** : Atisāra-pravāhikā-amātisāra-
raktātisāra, Arśa-kṛmi
Koṣthagatarouksya, Raktapitta, Kāsa
Udararoga-jalodara
Medoroga-svedātyaya
Prameha-mūtrakṛccha
Śukradourbalya-śīghrapatana-
svapnadoṣa, Pradara-rakta-śveta
Carmaroga-kuṣṭha-kaṇḍū-kṣudraroga
Dāhapaittika-rakta-vikāra
Daurbalya, Viṣa.
- (b) **Bāhya** : Bhagna, Raktasrāva, Agnidagdha

Vraṇa, Gudabhramśa
 Mukha-danta-galaroga
 Pradara-yoni-garbhāśayaroga
 Netraroga, Upadamśa.

Therapeutic uses

The bark is acrid and hot and astringent to the bowels; it is alexipharmic and anthelmintic. It cures cough, bronchitis, diarrhoea, dysentery, biliousness, burning sensation, piles, leucoderma, urinary discharges; and it is good in ascities.

The leaves are astringent to the bowels; and they cure bronchitis. It allays vata and kapha. It cures piles and heals fracture; and it relieves piles and cures diseases of eyes.

The fruit is dry, acrid and sweet; and it is cooling and astringent to the bowels; and it cures biliousness.

The gum is astringent to the bowels, antidysenteric and styptic; it is countering biliousness and it checks urinary, vaginal and uterine discharges; it heals fracture and it cures leprosy.

The bark is bitter acrid, with slightly bad flavour, astringent to the bowels emetic; it lessens dyspnoea and it exhibits the same properties as the leaves.

The leaves are astringent; tonic to the liver and the brain and antipyretic. It cures leucoderma, gonorrhoea, strangury and it enriches blood. It is used in urethral discharges, ophthalmia and eye sores. An ointment made of the burnt leaves with coconut oil in an efficacious remedy for skin diseases. An infusion or decoction of bark in aphthous condition of mouth and mercurial salivation.

The flowers a powerful tonic and a good cure for insanity. The gum is sweetish, expectorant, tonic to the liver and antipyretic. It cures sores throat, lung troubles, cough, piles and burns; it enriches the blood and used in colic. All parts of the plant are aphrodisiac.

The bark is powerful astringent and demulcent. It may be used as a substitute for oak galls. It has been found a valuable remedy in prodapsus ani, as an external application in leucorrhoea and has been recommended as a poultice for ulcers, and attended with sanious discharges.

The tender leaves beaten into a pulp and it is given in diarrhoea as an astringent. The bruished leaves are applied to sore eyes in children.

The gum is considered very useful in diabetes mellitua. A strengthening sweetment is made by frying the gum, with spices and butter and making it into balls (modaka or laddu) with sugar. In bloody seminal discharges, about 10 gms. of young leaves with 4 grams of cumin and 20 grams of sugar are eaten or given as a draught beaten up with milk.

The powdered bark is dusted over snake-bitten part of body. The gum resin is used for troubles of the throat and the chest. Fruits are prescribed in dysentery and ophthalmia.

The powder of leaves is dusted over ulcers and wounds; it is applied or sprinkled to burns and haemorrhage; it cheks the blood and heals the wound.

In leucorrhoea the decoction on bark is given as enema (basti). The gargle of decoction of bark is applied in diseases of mouth, throat and teeth.

As a mucilage the gum is commonly used alongwith other medicines. Gum acacia is also employed to prepare castor oil mulsion. Bark is used in fractures.

The gum is used internally as a powder in seminal weakness and spermatorrhoea. The immature pods are dried up in sunlight and made into a powder which is mixed with sugar; it is orally given with milk in nocturnal emission and early ejaculation of semen and similar seminal troubles. The bark and pods are taken in powder form in leucorrhoea (white and bloody discharges).

It is useful in anaemia, skin diseases, haemophilic disorders, anorexia and diabetes. It is used in impotency as an aphrodisiac.

A paste of tender tops made with water and sugar is given as a demulcent in coughs. An infusion of the tops is given as a douche in genorrhoea and leucorrhoea.

Parts used : Bark, Fruits-pods, Leaves, Gum.

Dose

Bark decoction 50-100 gms., Pods powder 3-6 gms., Leaves (ground) 2-4 gms., Gum 3-6 gms.

Formulations (yoga)

Babbūlāriṣṭa, Babbūlañjanam, Lavaṅgādi Vaṭī,
Ābhāgugulu.

BABBŪLA (बब्बूल)

- क. बब्बूलः किङ्किरातः स्यात्किङ्किराटः सपीनकः ।
ख. स एव कपितस्तज्जैरामा षट्पदमोदिनी ।
बब्बूलः कफनुद् ग्राही कुष्ठक्रिमिषापहः ॥
Bhāvaprakāśa, Nighaṅṭu., Vaṭādi varga, 36-37.
- अ. मालाफलोऽथ बब्बूलो युग्मकण्टो दृढारुहः ।
कण्टकी सूक्ष्मपत्रश्च पीतपुष्पः कषायकः ॥
ब. बब्बूलस्तु कषायोष्णः कफकासामयापहः ।
आमरक्तातिसारघ्नः पित्तदाहार्तिनाशनः ॥

बब्बूलफलम्

- स. बब्बूलस्य फलं रूक्षं विशदं स्तम्भनं गुरु ।
Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 1086-1088.

आभावबूलकः

आभावबूलकः कर्णमोटा स्यात् कुक्कुटस्तथा ।
बबूलपत्रं सङ्ग्राहि पुरुषव्याधिकासजित् ॥
रुच्यं कटूष्णं दुर्नामकफमारुतनाशनम् ।
आमा वातहरा तिक्ता कर्णमोटा विषापहा ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 1088-1089.

बर्बुर-बब्बूलः

- अ. बर्बुरो युगलाक्षयः कण्टालुस्तीक्ष्णकण्टकः ।
गोशृङ्गः पङ्क्तिबीजश्च दीर्घकण्टः कफान्तकः ।
दृढबीजः श्वासभक्ष्यो ज्ञेयश्चेति दशाह्वयः ॥

गुणाः

- ब. बर्बुरस्तु कषायोष्णः कफकासामयापहः ।
आमरक्तातिसारघ्नः पित्तदाहार्तिनाशनः ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Śālmalyādi varga, 37-38.

रक्तातिसारपित्तास्त्रमेहप्रदरनाशनः ।

भग्नसन्धानकः शीतः शोणितस्त्रुतिवारणः ॥

Ātreya Saṁhitā.

बब्बूलशिम्बी (फलम्)

बब्बूलस्य फलं रूक्षं विशदं स्तम्भनं गुरु ।

कषायं मधुरं शीतं लेखनं कफपित्तहृत् ॥

Nighaṅṭu Ratnākara.

जालबर्बुरः

जालबर्बुरकस्त्वन्यच्छत्राकः स्थूलकण्टकः ।

सूक्ष्मशाखस्तनुच्छायो रन्ध्रकण्टः षडाह्वयः ॥

गुणाः

जालबर्बुरको रूक्षो वातामयविनाशकृत् ।

पित्तकृच्च कषायोष्णः कफकृद्वाहकारकः ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Śālmalyādi varga, 39-40.

जलोदरे बब्बूलत्वचम्

बब्बूलस्य त्वचं श्रेष्ठा क्वाथयेत्सलिलेन तु ।

पुनः पचेत् कषायन्तु यावत्सान्द्रत्वमागतम् ॥

तत् पिबेत् तक्रसंयुक्तं तक्रमोजो मित्ताशनः ।

निहन्यादाशु योगोऽयं जलोदरमपि ध्रुवम् ॥

Baṅgasena.

अस्थिभग्ने

आभाचूर्णं मधुयुतमस्थिभग्नस्त्र्यहं पिबेत् ।

पीतं चास्थि भवेत्सम्यक् वज्रसारनिभं दृढम् ॥

Bhāvamiśra-Bhāvaprakāśa.

स्नायुकरोगे

‘तद्बब्बूलजं बीजं पिष्टं हन्ति प्रलेपनात् ।’

Bhāvaprakāśa.

नेत्रस्त्रावे

बब्बूलदलनिष्क्वाथो लेहीभूतस्तदञ्जनत् ।

नेत्रस्त्रावो व्रजेच्छोथं मधुयुक्तात्र संशयः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa.

उपदंशे

‘बब्बोलदलचूर्णेन.....मुण्डनं....उपदंशहरं परम् ।’

Cakradatta, 47-10

अतिसारे

‘कल्कः कोमलबब्बोलदलात् पीतोऽतिसारहा ।’

Cakradatta, 3-53.

स्थूलबब्बूलम्

स्थूलबब्बूलपत्रस्वरसं सर्वातिसारघ्नम् ।

‘स्थूलबब्बूलिका’—‘अरण्योद्भवा’

Ādhyamalla, dīpikā ṭikā

‘सा च उर्ध्वशाखाभिरुपलक्षिता’

(आढ्यमल्ल, दीपिका टीका)

‘स्थलजशूलिका आनूपजा इति तात्पर्यार्थः ।’ स्थलजं जलजञ्च ।

‘शूलिका अल्पविटपा बब्बूरीति लोके ।’

Kāśirāma ṭikā

‘स्थूलबब्बूलिका—निषकण्टकबब्बूलः ।’

(काशीराम टीका)

मेदोरोगे स्वेदाधिक्ये

बब्बूलस्य दलैः सम्यग्वारिणा परिपेषितैः ।

गात्रमुद्वर्तयेत्पश्चाद्धरीतक्या सुपिष्टया ॥

भूय उद्वर्तनं कृत्वा पश्चात्स्नानं समाचरेत् ।

प्रस्वेदान्मुच्यते शीघ्रं ततस्त्वेवं समाचरेत् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Sthaulyādhikāra 39/78-79.

अस्थिभग्ने आभाचूर्णम्

आभाचूर्णं मधुयुतमस्थिभग्नस्त्र्यहं पिबेत् ।

पीते चास्थि भवेत्सम्यग्वज्रसारनिभं दृढम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Bhagnādhikāra, 48-31.

अस्थिभग्नचिकित्सायाम् आभागुग्गुलुः

आभाफलत्रिकव्योषैः सर्वैरैतैः समांशकैः ।

तुल्यं गुग्गुलुना योऽयं भग्नसन्धिप्रसाधनम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Bhagnādhikāra, 48-33.

नेत्ररोगे (नेत्रस्त्राव) बब्बूलाञ्जनम्

बब्बूलदलनिष्कवाथो लेहीभूतस्तदञ्जनात् ।

नेत्रस्त्रावो ब्रजेच्छोथं मधुयुक्तान्न संशयः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Netrarogādhikāra, 63-211.

भग्रे आभागुगुलुः

आभापलत्रिकव्योषैः सर्वैरेभिः समीकृतैः ।

तुल्यो गुग्गुलुरायोज्यो भग्नसन्धिप्रसाधकः ॥

Cakradatta, Bhagna cikitsā, 49-15.

BADARA

Botanical name : *Zizyphus jujuba lam.*

Family : Rhamnaceae

Classical name : Badara

Sanskrit names

Badara Kola

(a) Rājabadara, Rājakola, Sauvīra, Kuvala.

(b) Badara, Kola.

(c) Kṣudrabadara karkandhu, Badarī.

Regional names

Ber (Hind.), Bor (Mar., Guj.), Kul (Beng.), Elandapajam (Tam.), Regabānda (Teg.); Jujuba Fruit, Indian Plum, Jujuba Tree (Eng.).

Description

Zizyphus jujuba Linn.

A small subdeciduous tree with dense spreading crown, commonly 0.6 meters high. Bark blackish to grey or brown, rough, regularly and deeply furrowed; the furrows about 1.2 cm. apart. Blaze 9-13 mm., short fibre, pink with or without paler streaks; the juice truning purplish black on the blade of a knife. Branches usually armed with spines, mostly in pairs, one straight the other curved. Young shoots more or less densely pubescent. Leaves 3-6. 3 by 2.5-5 cm., oblong or ovate, usually minutely serrulate or apex distinctly

dotted, obtuse, base oblique and 3-nerved; nerves depressed on the glabrous shining upper surface; densely clothed beneath with white or half tomentum. Petiole 2.5-10 mm. long.

Flowers 3.8-5 mm. diam., greenish, in dense axillary tomentose cymes or fascicles 1.2-1.9 cm. long.

Drupe 1.2-2.5 cm. diam., globose, first yellow then orange and finally reddish brown, containing a single stone surrounded by fleshy pulp; green, mostly yellow-yellowish (or other shade) when ripe, edible.

Flowering and fruiting time

November-December.

Distribution

It is indigenous and naturalised throughout India, Burma and Ceylon, in the outer Himalayas up to 4,500 feet. China, Afghanistan, Africa and Australia.

Zizyphus nummularia Wight & Arn.

A small shrub branched from near the root; branches divaricate, slender, zigzag; bark light-coloured. Leaves 1.2-2 cm., orbicular or ovate, spinous-dentate, clothed beneath with a whitish or buff tomentum, less densely tomentose above; petioles 3-6 mm. long, tomentose; stipular thorns usually in pairs; one straight, sharp and slender and other short, hooked.

Flowers in axillary sessile pubescent cymes; buds globose; pedicels short. Calyx pubescent outside, cleft about half way down; lobes triangular-ovate, keeled on the inner face for about half their length. Petals cuneate, rounded or truncate at the apex, longer than the stamens. Filaments deflexed together with the enclosing petals. Disk 10-lobed, with a pit opposite to each lobe. Ovary 2-celled; styles 2, united to above the middle. Drupes globose 8 mm. diam., glabrous, red when ripe, edible.

Flowering and fruiting time

August-November.

Distribution

It is found in dry and arid regions of the Punjab, Waziristan, Sind, Western Rajputana, Cutch, Kathiawar, Gujarat, Khandesh, Persia.

Zizyphus sativa Gaertn.=*z. vulgaris* Linn.

A small deciduous tree, often shrubby, quite glabrous; branches of young plants armed with very short spines, one staright, 2.5 cm. long, other much shorter recurved; older trees usually unarmed, flowering shoots about 15-20 cm. long, often fascicled on dwarf branches. Leaves 2.5-5 cm. long, ovate-lanceolate, glabrous, crenate-serrate, oblique, 3-nerved; petiole 2.5-7.5 mm. long.

Flowers in few-flowered, axillary culsters. Petals clawed, tips truncate. Disk obscurely lobed. Styles 2, united to the middle.

Drupe ellipsoid, 2 cm. long, stone tuberculate.

Distribution

It is found in Punjab Himalayas up to 6,500 feet; eastwards to Bengal, N.W.F. province; Baluchistan, Persia.

Kinds and varieties

There are three kinds of Badara mainly on the basis of fruit-size viz. Badara, Kṣudrabadara and Rājabadara; and zizyphus jujuba Linn., Zizyphus nummularia W. & A. and Zizyphus sativa Gaertn. are respectively (besides other varieties and species).

Chemical Composition

Fruits contain acids, mucilaginous matter and sugars. Bark and leaves contain tannin and Zizyphic acid, a crystalline substance.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Amla, Madhura, Kaṣāya
Guṇa	: Guru, Snigdha, Picchila
Vīrya	: Śīta
Vipāka	: Madhura
Doṣakarma	: Vātapittaśāmaka.

Action and Properties**Karma**

- (a) **Ābhyantara** : Rocana-hṛdya-śoṇitasthāpana
Rucivardhaka-dīpana-pācana-
anulomana, Grahī
Trṣṇānigrahaṇa

Kaphaniḥsāraka-hikkānigrahaṇa
Mūtrala-mūtragataśarkarā-hrāsaka
Svedopaga-udardapraśamana
Dāhapraśamana-Jvaraghna
Bṛmhaṇa-śramahara.

- (b) **Bāhya** : Dāhapraśamana (patra-leaves)
Vraṇaśodhana-ropaṇa (tvak-bark)
Lekhana (bīja-seeds)
Jihvā svādagrahaṇa śaktihara
(patra-leaves).

Roga

- (a) **Ābhyantara** : Hṛddourbalya, Raktavikāra-raktapitta
Tṛṣṇā-aruci-agnimāndya-vibandha
Kaphaniḥsāraka-snehana
Kāsa-Vātapaittika kāsa-Śvāsa-hikkā
Mūtrakṛccha-Ikṣumeha
Udarda-tvagdoṣa, Jvara
Dourbalya-śoṣa-kṣaya
Aṅgamarda-śrama.

- (b) **Bāhya** : Dāha, Visphoṭa, Netraroga, Vraṇa.

Therapeutic uses

The roots are bitter and cooling; it alleviates kapha and it cures headache and biliousness.

The bark cures boils and checks diarrhoea and dysentery. The leaves are bitter and cooling; it alleviates kapha, reduces obesity and cures diarrhoea, antipyretic.

The ripe fruit (souvīra) is cooling, indigestible; and removes burning sensation, thirst, vomiting, biliousness, consumption and blood diseases; and it is tonic, laxative and aphrodisiac.

A small variety (kola) is hot and tasty; it is laxative and it allays vāta and kapha; and it causes a burning sensation in the body.

A still smaller variety (karkandhu) is sour, acrid, sweet, oily, bitter, indigestible; it allays vāta and pitta.

The unripe fruit (apakva phala) allays vāta and causes kapha. The dry fruit (śuṣkaphala) is laxative and

appetiser; it removes impurities from blood; and it allays thirst.

The seeds (bīja) are acrid and sweetish; they are tonic, aphrodisiac and cure eye diseases, cough, asthma, thirst; it allays vāta; and it cures vomiting, burning sensation, biliousness and leucorrhoea.

The root and bark are tonic. The leaves are anthelmintic; they are good in stomatitis and gum bleeding; they heal wounds, ulcers and syphilitic ulcers. They cure asthma and liver complaints.

The flowers afford a good collyrium in eye troubles. The unripe fruit increases thirst; lessens expectoration and biliousness. The ripe fruit is sweet, sour and has a flavour; not good for digestion; and it causes diarrhoea in large doses; and it is good in fevers, and for wounds and ulcers. The seeds are astringent and tonic to the heart and brain; and they allay thirst.

Various parts of Badara (*Zizyphus jujuba* Linn.) are medicinally used in different ailments besides its fruits or berries ripe are edible commonly.

The leaves boiled in milk are given in virulent gonorrhoea. An infusion of leaves is used as an eye lotion in conjunctivitis. A past of tender leaves and twigs is applied to boils, carbuncles and abscesses to promote suppuration. The boiled leaves are applied over the navel and the public region in dysuria.

The berries are a blood purifier and aid to digestion. They are pectoral and styptic. The dried ripe fruit is a mild laxative and expectorant.

Seeds are given with butter milk in bilious disorders. An ointment made of the seeds with some bland oil is locally applied as a liniment in rheumatism.

The ripe berries are favourable to heart debility as a cardio-tonic, and useful in blood ailments and haemorrhage. The leaves are powdered and orally given in glycosuria in doses of 4-6 gms. twice a day with suitable vehicle (anupāna in Ikṣumeha).

The paste of leaves is made to burning sensation. Leaves are boiled in water which is employed as mouth-wash or gargle for mouth cavity ailments.

The bark is boiled in water to prepared decoction which is orally given to treat diarrhoea, dysentery and other bowel complaints. Fruits are useful in loss of appetite, constipation and overthirst conditional.

It is useful in urticaria, skin affection, eruptions, consumption, general debility, hicough and throat affections.

The young leaves are pounded with those of Udumbara (*ficus glomerata*) and applied to scorpion stings. The bark is used as an astringent in gingivitis. Fruits are mucilaginous, pectoral and styptic. The leaves are prescribed in antipyretic or antifebrile baths and lotions. Roots are given in the form of decotion in febrile conditions and it is also helpful to act as an tonic in debility.

The fruits of Karkandhu (*zizyphus nummularia* W. & A.) are sweet and sour, wholesome, appetiser stomachic, and they cure Kapha and may increase biliousness. Ripe fruits are edible. Ripe fruits are consider to be cool and astringent, and is useful in bilious affections.

The leaves are applied in scabies and to boils; the smoke is used for colds in the heads and nasal discharges. The deocotion of leaves is employed as a hip bath for joint pains, as a gargle in sore throat and bleeding gums. Ripe drupes are eaten commonly.

Parts used : Fruit, Bark, Seeds, Laves, Flowers, Roots.

Dose

Bark decoction 50-100 gms. Fruits 5-7 (in number)
Ripe fruit edible.

Groups (gaṇa)

Hṛdya, Udardaprasāmana, Snehopaga, Hikkānigrahaṇa, Śramahara, Śirovirecana (Caraka.), Āragvadhādi, Vātasam-śamana (Suśruta).

BADARA (बदर)

बदरत्रयम् (बदर-महद्वदर-कोल)

पुंसि स्त्रियाञ्च कर्कन्धूर्बदरी कोलमित्यपि ।

फेनिलं कुवलं घोण्टा सौवीरं बदरं महत् ।

अजाप्रिया कुहा कोली विषमोभयकण्टका ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Āmrāphalādi varga, 71-72.

बदरविशेषाणां लक्षणानि गुणाश्च

क. सौवीरः

पच्यमानं सुमधुरं सौवीरं बदरं महत् ।

सौवीरं बदरं शीतं भेदनं गुरु शुक्रलम् ॥

बृंहणं पित्तदाहास्त्रक्षयतृष्णानिवारणम् ।

सौवीरं लघु सम्पक्वं मधुरं कोलमुच्यते ॥

ख. कोलः

कोलन्तु बदरं ग्राहि रुच्यमुष्णञ्च वातहृत् ।

कफपित्तकरं चापि गुरु सारकमीरितम् ॥

ग. कर्कन्धूः

कर्कन्धूः क्षुद्रबदरं कथितं पूर्वसूरिभिः ।

अम्लं स्यात्क्षुद्रबदरं कषायं मधुरं मनाक् ॥

स्निग्धं गुरु च तिक्तञ्च वातपित्तापहं स्मृतम् ।

शुष्कं भेद्यग्रिकृत्सर्वं लघु तृष्णाक्लमास्त्रजित् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Āmrāphalādi varga, 73-77.

बदरी-सौवीर-कर्कन्धू

अ. घोण्टा घुण्टा गोपघुण्टा बदरी मर्कटी घुटा ।

राष्ट्रवृद्धिकरी कोली गोकण्टी युग्मकण्टिका ॥

स्निग्धच्छदा कोशफला वरा सौवीरकापरा ।

हस्तिकोली सिञ्चितिकापरा कर्कन्धुकी द्युका ॥

ब. बदर्यस्तुवराः स्निग्धाः कफप्रशमनाः स्मृताः ।

बदरस्य पञ्च जातयः—

स. बदरं चापरं कोलं कुबलं फेनिलं कुहम् ॥

कर्कन्धुः ह्रस्वबदरं बेरटं (कर्कन्धु) कन्धुकं धुकम् ।

स्यादामपक्वावस्थासु स्वादु सौवीरकं महत् ॥

मुष्टिप्रमाणं बदरं स्वादु सिञ्चितिकाफलम् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 354-356.

मसूरिकारोगे

लिहेद्वा बादरं चूर्णं पाचनार्थं गुडेन च ।

अनेनाशु विपच्यन्ते वातपित्तकफात्मिका ॥

Cakradattā, 54-32.

व्यङ्गहरो बदरास्थिमज्जालेपः

‘नवनीतगुडक्षौद्रकोलमज्जप्रलेपनम् ।

व्यङ्गजिद्वरुणत्वग्वा छागीक्षीरप्रपेषिता ॥’

Cakradattā, 55-49.

बदरः

बदरो बदरी कोली कर्कन्धूः कोलफेनिलः ।

सौवीरको गुडफलो वालेष्टः फलशैशिरः ॥

दृढबीजो वृत्तफलः कण्टकी वज्रकण्टकः ।

सुवीजः सुफलः स्वच्छः सुरसः स्मृतिसन्मितः ॥

बदरगुणाः

बदरं मधुरं कषायाम्लं परिपक्वं मधुराम्लमुष्णमेतत् ।

कफकृत्पचनातिसाररक्तश्रमशोषार्तिविनाशनं च रुच्यम् ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Āmrādi varga, 136-138.

बदरपत्रत्वग्बीजगुणाः

बदरस्य पत्रलेपो ज्वरदाहविनाशनः ।

त्वचा विस्फोटशमनी बीजं नेत्रामयापहम् ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Āmrādi varga, 139.

राजबदरः

राजबदरो नृपेष्टो नृपबदरो राजवल्लभश्चैव ।

पृथुकोलस्तनु बीजो मधुरफलो राजकोलस्य ॥

राजबदरः सुमधुरः शिशिरो दाहार्तिपित्तवातहरः ।

वृष्यश्च वीर्यवृद्धिं कुरुते शोषश्रमं हरते ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Āmrādi varga, 140-141.

भूबदरः

भूबदरी क्षितिबदरी वल्लीबदरी च वदरिवल्ली च ।

बहुफलिका लघुबदरी बदरफली सूक्ष्मबदरी च ॥

भूबदरीगुणाः

भूबदरी मधुराऽम्ला कफवातविकारहारिणी पथ्या ।

दीपनपाचनकर्त्री किञ्चित्पित्तास्रकारिणी रुच्या ॥

लघुबदरः

सूक्ष्मफलो लघुबदरो बहुकण्टः सूक्ष्मपत्रको दुस्पर्शः ।
मधुरः शम्बराहारः शिखिप्रियश्चैव निर्दिष्टः ॥

लघुबदरगुणाः

लघुबदरं मधुराम्लं पक्वं कफवातनाशनं रुच्यम् ।
स्निग्धं तु जन्तुकारकमीषत्पित्तिदाहशोषघ्नम् ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Āmrādi varga, 144-145.

नाडीव्रणे घोण्टाफलादिवर्तिका

Cakradatta, 45-6.

बदरीपल्लवादिलेपः

बदरीपल्लवोत्थश्च तथैवारिष्टकोद्भवः ॥
फेनिलायाश्च यः फेनस्तेर्दाहं लेपनं शुभम् ।

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā. 24-160-161.

स्वरभेदे बदरीपत्रकल्कप्रयोगः

बदरपत्रकल्कं वा घृतभृष्टं ससैन्धवम् ।
स्वरोपघाते कासे च लेहमेवं प्रयोजयेत् ॥

Cakradatta, Svarabheda cikitsā, 14-10.

स्थौल्ये बदरीपत्रसिद्धपेया

‘बदरीपत्रकल्केन पेया काञ्जिकसाधिता ।’

Cakradatta, 36-16.

संहितायां बदर-बदरी

Caraka Saṁhitā,

Sūtra 4-10 etc., Nidāna. 2-2, Vimāna 8-144 (2),

Cikitsā. 3-257 etc., Kalpa. 1-8, 29 etc.

Suśruta Saṁhitā

Sūtra 38-47 etc., Cikitsā. 10-6 etc., Śārīra. 10-4, 23.,

Cikitsā. 10-6 etc., Uttara. 18-36 etc.

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya

Sūtra. 6-120, Cikitsā. 1-33 etc.

Kalpa 6-25, Uttara. 2-48 etc.

BĀKUCĪ

Botanical name : *Psoralia corylifolia* Linn.

Family : Fabaceae (Papilionaceae)

Classical name : Bākucī

Sanskrit names

Bākucī, Somarājī, Avalgujā, Kṛṣṇaphalā, Pūtiphalī, Kuṣṭhaghñī.

Regional names

Bakuchi, Bavchi (Hind.), Habuch (Beng.), Bavachi (Punjab, Mar., Guj.), Karpokarishi (Tam.), Bhavanchi (Tel.); Purple Fleabane (Eng.)

Description

An erect annual herb of 0.6-1.2 meters height; stems and branches grooved; studded with conspicuous glands and with a few appressed and spreading white hairs.

Leaves simple 3.8-7.5 to 2.5-5 cm., broadly elliptic, inciso-dentate; rounded and mucronate at the apex, sparingly clothed with white hairs on both surfaces; closely nigropunctate; base cuneate; rarely rounded; main nerves 5, springing from the base; and 4-6 pairs of lateral nerves higher up from the midrib; petioles 6-25 mm. long, hairy and gland-dotted; stipules lanceolate, persistent.

Flowers close, in dense axillary, solitary, 10-30-flowered racemes; peduncles 2.5-5 cm. long, hairy; pedicels very short. Calyx 3-4 mm. long, hairy outside; the upper teeth linear-lanceolate; the lower ovate; twice as long as the upper. Corolla bluish purple, nearly twice as long as the calyx; standard orbicular; 6 mm. long; clawed, glabrous.

Pods 5 mm. long, ovoid-oblong, somewhat, closely pitted, mucronate; black, glabrous, beaked. Seed 1, smooth, adhering to the pericarp.

Seeds

A small blackish glabrous ovoid-oblong to oblong or kidney shaped somewhat compressed or flattened closely pitted. One seeded indehiscent legume of about the length of calyx (5 mm.), and included in it; densely gland punctate and slightly adhering to the pericarp, somewhat ovate of a dark colour with an aromatic and slightly bitter taste.

Fruits black, roundish or oblong, closely pitted. Seeds are oblong, an flattened, rough, dark-brown, have an agreeable aromatic odour; taste aromatic and bitter (or bitterish).

Distribution

It is found almost throughout India as a weed of waste places; sometimes cultivated Pakistan and Ceylon. It is grown in various regions of country specially in Uttar Pradesh and Assam.

Chemical composition

Seeds contain a yellowish volatile oil 20.15 percent, a fixed oil, resin, ash 7.5 percent, albumin, sugar, manganese and an alkaloid Vermonine the essential oil of the seeds; is principal active content.

Seeds yield an essential oil and psoralen; contain resin, a terpenoid oil, psoralen and isosoralen; psoralen and isosoralen possess the curative action of plant-drug in leucoderma. Psoralidin is also isolated.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṭu, Tikta
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphavātaśāmaka.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Kuṣṭhaghna-tvacya-varṇya-varṇasañjanana-Svedajanana Keshya, Romasñjanana Vraṇaropaṇa, Nāḍīdourbalya Dīpana-pācana-anulomana Yakṛduttejaka, Kṛmighna Vājīkaraṇa-Uttejaka, Mehaghna Hṛdaya-raktasāmbhanottejaka- śothahara, Kaphaghna Jvaraghna, Kaṭupouṣṭika.
--------------	--

Roga

(a) **Ābhyantara** : Kuṣṭha-tvacā-varṇavikāra

Nāḍīdourbalya
 Agnimāndya-āmadoṣa-vibandha
 Kṛmi-gaṇḍupada, Arśa, Kāsa-svāsa
 Prameha, Klaibya, Jīrṇajvara
 Jvarottara, dourbalya-pāṇḍu
 Hṛdaya, śaithilya-śoṭha.

(b) **Bāhya** : Kuṣṭha-mahākuṣṭha-Kṣudrakuṣṭha-
 śvitra, Carma-varṇa-kaśa-vikāra
 Khālitya, Kaṇḍu.

Therapeutic uses

The root is useful in caries of tooth. The leaves are good to check diarrhoea. The fruit is bitter, diuretic; it causes biliousness; they cure leprosy, skin diseases; and alleviate kapha and vāta; and they improve the complexion and promote hairs. They relieve vomiting, asthma, difficult micturition, piles, bronchitis, inflammation, anaemia.

The seeds are bitter, pungent, acrid (also sweet); they are purgative (laxative), refrigerant, alaterative, antipyretic, anthelmintic and alexiteric; they better taste and they allay kapha and vāta and rakta. Seeds are good for heart troubles, asthma, leucoderma, urinary discharges; and they heal ulcers, skin diseases and scabies. The seeds oil is used in elephantiasis.

The seeds are stomachic, vermifuge, vulnerary, stimulant and aphrodisiac. They improve appetite and cure leucoderma, scabies and biliousness. Seeds cure blood impurities and they are applied externally and given internally in skin diseases.

The seeds are useful as an antiseptic, antibacterial and antiemetic; they are used as diuretic, irritant, nervine tonic and carminative. They are useful in haemorrhoids and impotency.

Seeds are excellent remedy for leucoderma, leprosy and skin diseases. They are given as an alterative in leprosy, leucoderma and inflammatory diseases of the skin including colour or pigmentation disorders.

They are used as a laxative, particularly in biliousness or bilious disorders, in doses of 5 to 20 grains.

The seeds are topically used for skin diseases; their paste is applied over the leucoderma patch on the skin which is then exposed to the sun till the paste dries on, and this application may be repeated thrice a day or as prescribed. Among external uses, the extract of seeds mixed with chālmoogra oil, or vaseline or milk is also applied externally in leucoderma. The seeds are used in various forms of leprosy, skin affections and leucoderma; they are administered in various modes and recipes having wide and common uses against skin disorders.

The seeds are used in baldness or falling of hairs and different kinds of skin diseases (mahākuṣṭha-ksudrakuṣṭha-śvitra) in the form of powder, as well as they are locally applied as a paste; and seeds oil is similarly applied in these skin affections. The oil of the seeds is locally administered to skin with precaution by avoiding reddishness and blistering which may be resulted after prolonged application or any other reason. Seeds are also effective against mucous membrane disorders.

The seeds are used in chronic fever and as bitter tonic; they are used in oedema besides cutaneous affectons. Seeds are also employed to prepare perfumed oil for applying on skin as well as hairs and head.

An application of seeds is esteemed as a valuable remedy for leucoderma; the oleo-resinous extract of the seeds, diluted and with simple ointment; after application for some days the patches white spots appear to become red or vascular; sometimes a slightly painful sensation is felt. Occasionally some small vesicles or pimples appear; and if these be allowed to remain undisturbed they dry up, leaving a dark spot of pigmentary matter, which forms as it were a nucleus. From this point, as well as from the margin of the patch, pigmentary matters gradually develop which ultimately coalesce with each other, and thus the whole patch disappears. It is also remarkable that fresh patches are arrested by its application.

The seeds are prescribed with the other drugs combination in snake-bite and scorpion-sting. In cases of snake

bite, the seeds are ground with water and the liquid poured into each nostril in stuper and coma.

The seeds are macerated in alcohol and liqueur is given in rheumatism and in women's diseases. A compound ointment of the powdered seeds of Bākuci and Cakramarda (Cassia tora) with lime juice was tried in cases of ringworm with marked beneficial effect.

The active principle of the seeds is an essential oil. A fixed oil and a resin occurs in large quantities but these are not pharmacologically active substances. Traces of a substance of alkaloidal nature are also present.

The essential oil has a powerful effect against the skin streptococci. It has a specific effect on the arterioles of the subcapillary plexuses; these it dilates so that in this area plasma is increased. The skin becomes red, the melanoblasts are stimulated leading to pigment formation. This pigment is exuded and diffuses into the decolorised leucodermic patches. Local applications of the oleo-resinous extracts made from the seeds are beneficial in the treatment of cases of leucoderma of non-syphilitic origin. If affections of the gastro-intestinal tract such as *E. histolytica* infections etc. are present, these should be treated at the same time.

The beneficial effects of drug-essential of seeds may be due to (i) absorption and excretion of the oil through the skin where it produces its specific action; (ii) stimulant action on the intestinal mucosa which may caused increased absorption of amino acids concerned in pigment formation; or (iii) antiseptic action in the gastro-intestinal tract.

The action of essential oil is local and specific on the skin. Rouget's cells lie round the capillaries. The endothelium of the capillaries by itself has no contractile power and any increase or dimmution in the size of these vessele is brought about through the agency of the processes of Rouget's cells. In the skin the melanoblasts or pigment-producing cells lie in the vicinity of Rouget's sells. When the capillaries dilate, these cells also increase in size and melanoblasts relax at the same time. During the relaxation of the melanoblasts their processes are extended and they exude pigment mela-

nin. The main action of essential oil appears to be on the arteries in the sub-capillary plexus causing dilation and increase of palsa in the area so that skin becomes red and the melanoblasts are stimulated. The action on the capillaries in the papillae is usually very light in most individuals so that there is no oedema of the prickle cells layer (porokeratosis) and there is no disquannation of epithelium.

Thus the durg has a dual action, i.e. action of the oil can be really demonstrated biologically. In leucoderma the melanoblasts cells are not functioning properly and their stimulation by the oil leads them to form and exude pigments which generally diffuses into the decolourised areas of skin.

The seeds and seeds oil have occupied prominent place in the treatment of skin, colour or complexion disorders in Indian Medicine, specially leucoderma and various kinds of leprosy, in addition to several other diseases; it is also recommended as an alterative medicine (rasāyana) in general and meployed in various medicines prescribed for the purpose.

In deafness of ears, the seeds powder mixed with musali is suggested to be taken normally. The seeds are effectively used as anthelmintic in worms affection specifically in ascaris, in doses of 10 to 30 grains. The seeds are taken as a bitter tonic in doses of 20-25 grains which are also diuretic and digestive. The leaves paste is applied to check the bleeding from incised wounds. Leaves of drug are also prescribed as vegetable or in other form in dysentery.

Purification (Śodhana)

The seeds of the drug are to be kept immersed in cow-urine (gomūtra) or ginger-juice (ārdraka svarasa) for a weak.

Parts used : Seeds, Seeds oil.

Dose : Powder 1-3 gms., 4-6 gms. (as anthelmintic).

Formulation (yoga)

Bākucī taila-somarājitailla viḍaṅga lepa.

BĀKUCĪ (बाकुची)

बाकुची तुवरा तिक्ता कटुपाका हिमा लघुः ।
दीपनी मधुरा रूक्षा रुच्या हृद्या रसायनी ॥
विष्टम्भिनी सरा मेध्या रक्तपित्तकफापहा ।
हन्ति कुष्ठकृमिश्वासकासमेहज्वरारुचीः ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 706-707.

फलम्

‘फलं केश्यं त्वच्यं कृमिश्वासशोथामपाण्डुहृत् ।’

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 708.

बाकुची शीतला तिक्ता श्लेष्मकुष्ठकृमीन् जयेत् ।
रसायनी च कुष्ठघ्नी मेधाग्निबलवर्द्धनी ॥

Dhanvantari Nighaṅṭu.

बाकुची कटुतिक्तोष्णा कृमिकुष्ठकफापहा ।
त्वग्दोषविषकण्डूतिखर्जूप्रशमनी च सा ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu.

बाकुची मधुरा तिक्ता कटुपाका रसायनी ॥
विष्टम्भहृद्भिना रुच्या सरा श्लेष्मास्त्रपित्तनुत् ।
रूक्षा हृद्या श्वासकुष्ठमेहज्वरकृमिप्रणुत् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Harītakyaḍi varga, 207-208.

फलम्

तत्फलं पित्तलं कुष्ठकफानिलहरं कटु ।
केश्यं त्वच्यकृमिश्वास(वमिश्वास)कासशोथामपाण्डुनुत् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Harītakyaḍi varga, 209.

तीव्रकच्छूं कण्डूञ्च शमनार्थमवल्लुजादिलेपः

Cakradatta, Kuṣṭha cikitsā, 50-42.

संहितायां बाकुची

(अवल्लुज-इन्दुराजिका-इन्दुराजी-इन्द्रलेखा-चन्द्रलेखा-
चन्द्रशकला-शशाङ्कलेखा-सोमराजी-बाकुचिका)

Caraka Saṁhita

Sūtra. 2-23., Cikitsā, 23-79, 26-269.

Suśruta Saṁhitā
Cikitsā 9-32, 25-18.
Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya

Cikitsā. 9-21, 19-48, 57., Uttara. 18-45.

श्लीपदे

‘श्लीपदं नश्यति क्षिप्रं सोमराजीजलेन वा ।’

Śoḍhala.

कुष्ठे

घर्मसेवी कटुष्णेन वारिणा बाकुचीं पिबेत् ।
 क्षीरभोजी त्रिसप्ताहात् कुष्ठरोगात्प्रमुच्यते ॥

Vṛnda.

श्वित्रे

खदिरामलककषायं बाकुचीबीजान्वितं पिबेन्नित्यम् ।
 शङ्खेन्दुधवलं श्वित्रं हन्तीह तच्छीघ्रम् ॥

Baṅgasena.

दद्रुकुष्ठे

भागं तिलानां सह सोमराज्या भागद्वयेन प्रतिवासरे यः ।
 अश्नाति तस्य द्रुतमङ्घ्रिद्रुश्चिरप्ररूढाऽपि विनाशमेति ॥

Rāja mārtanḍa.

श्वित्रे

चूर्णेन भाण्डमुपलिप्य शशाङ्कराज्याः
 तत्र स्थितेन पयसा दधि संविदध्यात् ।
 स्नेहं तदीयमसकृन्मधुनोपयुज्य
 श्वित्रं नरो जयति तन्मथितानुपानात् ॥

Rāja Mārtanḍa.

व्रणशोणितवारणार्थम्

‘.....सोमराज्याश्च पल्लवैः ।
 बध्नाति बन्धनं क्षुण्णैः व्रणैः शोणितानि सृतिम् ॥’

Vaidya Manoramā.

कुष्ठे सोमराज्युद्धर्त्तनम्

सोमराजीभवं चूर्णं शृङ्गवेरसमन्वितम् ।

उद्वर्त्तनमिदं हन्ति कुष्ठमुत्थं कृतास्वदम् ॥

Bhāraprakāśa, Kuṣṭhadhikāra, 54-53.

कृमिदन्तरुजि

बीजपूरकमूलस्य बाकुचीनां तथैव च ।
भागाभ्यान्तु समं कृत्वा पिष्ट्वा वर्तिन्तु कारयेत् ॥
एषा रदस्थवर्त्तिस्तु दन्तैर्दन्तैर्निपीडयेत् ।
सद्योऽवस्थितमूत्रा तु कृमिदन्तरुजापहा ॥

Bāngasena.

श्वित्रकुष्ठशामनार्थमवल्युजबीजप्रलेपः

Cakradatta, Kuṣṭh cikitsā, 50-69

बाधिर्ये

मूसलीबाकुचीचूर्णं खादेद् बाधिर्यशान्तये ।

Bāngasena.

प्रवाहिकायाम्

आमे परिणते.... यस्तु विबन्धमतिसार्यते ।
सशूलपिच्छमल्पाल्पं बहुशः सप्रवाहिकम् ॥
तं..... शाकेनावल्युजस्य वा ।
दधिदाडिमसिद्धेन बहुस्त्रेहेन भोजयेत् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā. 10.

श्वित्रे अवल्युजादिगुटिका

Cakradatta, Kuṣṭha cikitsā, 50/71-72.

कुष्ठे

तीत्रेण कुष्ठेन परीतमूर्तिः यः सोमराजी नियमेन खादेत् ।
संवत्सरैः कृष्णातिलद्वितीयां स सोमराजीं वपुषाऽतिशेते ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hr̥daya, Cikitsā. 39.

श्वित्रे

Cakradatta, Kuṣṭha cikitsā, 50-54.

कुडवोऽवल्युजबीजात् हरितालचतुर्थभागसम्मिश्रः ।
गवां मूत्रेण पिष्टः सवर्णकरणं श्वित्रे ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hr̥daya, Cikitsā. 39.

श्वित्रे अवल्गुजादिलेपम्

लेपः किलासहन्ता बीजान्यवल्गुजानि लाक्षा च ।
गोपित्तमञ्जने द्वे पिप्पल्यः काललोहरजः ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 7-171.

कुष्ठचिकित्सायां सोमराजीतैलम्

Cakradatta, Kuṣṭha cikitsā, 50/163-165.

बाकुचीमिश्रितधात्रीखदिरक्वाथः श्वित्रचिकित्सायाम् ।

Cakradatta, Kuṣṭha cikitsā, 50-70.

श्वेतकुष्ठे बाकुचीलेपम्

काकोदुम्बरिका वा सावल्गुजचित्रका गवां मूत्रे ।
पिष्टाः मनःशिला वा संयुक्ता बर्हिपित्तेन ॥

Caraka Samhitā, cikitsā, 7-170

श्वित्रकुष्ठे (पुण्डरीककुष्ठे)

‘आवल्गुजं बीजमपाकरोति, श्वित्राणि कृच्छ्राण्यपि पुण्डरीकम् ।’

Bhāvaprakāśa, Kuṣṭharogādhikāra, 54/150.

श्वित्रे बाकुचीयोगम्

कुडवमवल्गुजबीजं हरितालचतुर्थभागसम्मिश्रम् ॥
मनःशिलां तोलकाढ्यं गुञ्जाफलमग्निमूलञ्च ।
मूत्रेण गवां पिष्टं सवर्णताकरं श्वित्रे ।

Bhāvaprakāśa, Kuṣṭharogādhikāra, 54/151-152.

कुष्ठरोगे सोमराजीघृतम्

Bhāvaprakāśa, Kuṣṭharogādhikāra, 54/156-159.

सर्वकुष्ठे अवल्गुजबीजचूर्णम्

अवल्गुजाद् बीजकर्षं पीत्वा कोष्णेन वारिणा ।
भोजनं सर्पिषां कार्य्यं सर्वकुष्ठप्रणाशनम् ॥

Cakradatta, Kuṣṭha Cikitsā, 50-57.

कुष्ठोपचारार्थं बागुजीचूर्णम्

घर्मसेवी कदुष्णेन वारिणा बागुजीं पिबेत् ।
क्षीरभोजी त्रिसप्ताहात् कुष्ठरोगाद्भिमुच्यते ॥

Cakradatta, Kuṣṭha Cikitsā, 50-55.

सर्वकुष्ठ चिकित्सायां शशाङ्कलेखादिचूर्णम्

शशाङ्कसविडङ्गसारा सपिप्पलिका सहुताशमूला ।

सायोमला सामलका सतैला सर्वाणि कुष्ठानि निहन्ति लीढा ॥

Cakradatta, Kuṣṭha Cikitsā, 50-53.

कुष्ठचिकित्सायां कतिपयाः सवाकुची (अप्रधानघटकः द्रव्यः) योगाः

महातृणकतैलम्, विडङ्गादिलेपः, नवायसरसायनम्, तिलादिचूर्णम्,

पञ्चनिम्बचूर्णम् ।

Cakradatta, Kuṣṭha Cikitsā, 50.

BAKULA

Botanical name : *Mimusopselengi* Linn.

Family : Sapotaceae

Classical name : Bakula

Sanskrit Names

Bakula, Madhugandha-Madya, Simhakeśara, Sidhugandha, Dohada, Viśārada, Madhupuṣpa, Gūḍha-puṣpaka, Sthirakusuma.

Regional names

Moulsiri (Hind.), Bakul (Beng. Mar.), Molsari (Guj.), Magadam (Tam.), Pagadamanu (Tel.). Bullet-wood tree; Indian Medlar (Eng.).

Description

A large glabrous evergreen tree 12-15 meters high; with a compact leafy head and short erect trunk; bark smooth, scaly; Leaves 6.3-10 by 3.2-5 cm., elliptic, shortly acuminate, glabrous, base acute or rounded; petioles 1.3-2.5 cm. long.

Flowers white, fragrant, nearly 2.5 cm. across, solitary or in fascicles of 2-6; buds ovoid, acute; pedicels 6-20 mm. long; appressedly pubescent, often deflexed. Calyx 1 cm. long, fulvous pubescent; segments 8; the 4 outer ovate-lanceolate, acute; the inner narrower than the outer. Corolla longer than the calyx; tube 1.5 mm. long; lobes 8 mm.

about 24-24, in series of 8 the outer of 16 lobes; liner-oblong. Stamens 8, opposite the inner circle of lobes; filaments short, glabrous; anthers glabrous, slightly twisted, acuminate; staminodes 8, alternate with the stamens, lanceolate, acuminate; densely colthed on the back and margins with white hairs. Ovary appressedly silky-pubescent; style grooved, slightly longer than the corolla.

Berry about 2.5 cm. long, ovoid, yellow when ripe. Seed solitary; aoid, compressed, brown, shining.

Flowering and fruiting time

Summers to autumn and post-autumn seasons.

Distribution

It is found Western Peninsula, southwards from the Khandala Ghat in the west and the N. Circars on the east sides, Andamans. Burma, Ceylon, Martaban, Tenasserim, Malay Peninsula and Archipelago.

Throughout country; especially in Andhra Pradesh, Jammu and Kashmir, Tamilnadu, Karnataka. In Central India and other regions.

Kinds and Varieties

Another variety is known as Bṛhdbakula which has larger trees (40-50 ft. high) and flowers.

Chemical composition

Bark contains tannin, wax, rubber, colouring, matter, starch and alkaline substances. Seeds contain a fixed oil. Flowers contain an essential oil. Fruit kernel contains sugars and saponin.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṭu, Kaṣāya
Guṇa	: Guru
Vīrya	: Anuṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphapitta śāmaka.

Action and properties

Karma	: Dantadārdhyakara-dantasthirīkaram-dantya, Grāhī, Kṛmighna
-------	---

Hṛdya (puṣpa-flower)
 Raktastambhana (tvak-bark)
 Mastiṣkabalya (Puṣpa-flower)
 Soumanasyajanana
 Garbhāśaya śaithilya-srava (yoni)-
 śoṭha hara, Śukrastambhana
 Basti-mūtramārgīya śoṭha-srāva-hara
 Jvaraghna, Viṣaghna, Kuṣṭhaghna
 Balya-pouṣṭika (phala-fruits).

Roga

- (a) **Bāhyābhyantara** : Dantaroga-dantacāla-dantaśūla-
 pūyadanta, Mukharoga
 Śiraḥśūla (mastiṣkavikṛtija).
- (b) **Ābhyantara** : Atisāra- pravāhika, Kṛmiroga
 Hṛdroga, Raktapitta-raktātisāra
 Bastiśoṭha-pūyameha, Jvara
 Viṣa, Śoṭha, Dourbalya-sāmānya
 Kuṣṭha-śvitra
 Pradara-śveta-raktapradara
 Garbhāśayaśoṭha, Yonirāva-yoniśūla.

Therapeutic uses

The bark is acrid and sweet; cooling, cardi tonic, aleximarphic; stomachic, anthelmintic and astringent; it cures biliousness, diseases of gums and teeth.

The flowers are sweet, acrid, oleagenous; cooling, astringent to the bowels; helps to improve taste; it cures diseases of the blood.

The fruits are sweet and acrid; oleagenous; astringent to the bowels; good-for teeth; it may cause flatulence. The seeds fix loose teeth; and as an errhite; they cure troubles of head. The fruits and seeds are sweet and sour; aphrodisiac, diuretic; and they cure gonorrhoea.

The flowers are expectorant, they cure biliousness, liver complaints, diseases of the nose, headache; their smoke is good in asthma.

The root is sweet and sour; aphrodisiac, diuretic, astringent to the bowels; good for gonorrhoea; and it cures relaxation of the gums.

The leaves are recommended as one of the snake-bite remedies; in practice about a half a teaspoonful of the expressed juice of the fresh leaves is poured into the nostrils in stuper and coma. It is antipoisoning in general, and the bark and leaves are given for the purpose.

A snuff made from the dried and floweres is given in a disease Ahwah (Bengal) with the symptoms of strong or high fever, pain in the neck, headache, shoulders and other parts of the body.

The powdered flowers induce a copious deffusion from the nose and relieve the pain in the head. An aqua of the flowers (puṣpārka) is used as cardiac tonic in heart diseases. The flowers are aromatic and their adourous property is pleasant, and favourable to medicinal utility of flowers. A water is distilled from the flowers-aromatic aqua-in certain regions, and the aqua is used as a stimulant medicine and as a perfume.

The bark has astringent tonic properties. It is useful in the fevers, and as a general tonic. The pulp of the ripe fruit is sweetish and astringent and is used with good response in chronic result.

The bruised seeds are applied locally within the anus of children in cases of constipation. The unripe fruit, and the fruit and flowers, alongwith other astringents, are used to prepare a lotion for sores and wounds.

The drug is highly valued as a dentrifice and one of the effective remedy for diseases of gums and teeth. The tender branches or sticks are employed as a tooth-brush (datuna or dantakurcaka-dantadhāvana) for strengthening the teeth and gums, and as a preventive and promotor of their health as well as countering ailments. The bark is much used in dental diseases and esteemed in dentistry medicines. The bark is boiled to prepare a decoction which is used as a gargle or mouth-wash in the tooth and gums ailments; the powder of bark is employed as a tooth-powder (dantamañjana). The fruits are also chewed in dental ailments and unripe fruits are suggested for tooth and gums diseases. The drug is used specially in debility of tooth for their strengthening, relexation and pyorrhoea, bleeding

gums, excessive salivation and also for oral hygiene. The bark and also other parts are potent ingredients of various medicinal recipes prepared and prescribed for dental complaints.

The decoction of the bark is given in catarrh of the bladder and urethra as an astringent. The paste of the roots made with vinegar is applied to swellings on the face. The paste of the roots made with water is applied to pustular eruptions of the skin.

The bark decoction is given in diarrhoea and dysentery and the fruits are also used in these conditions. The bark is used as an anthelmintic in worm infestations. It is used in leucorrhoea, spermatorrhoea and vaginal discharges.

Parts used : Bark, Flowers, Fruits.

Dose : Decoction (bark) 50-100 gms.

Powder 1-2 gms. (flowers.)

Formulation (Yoga) : Bakulādyā taila.

BAKULA (बकुल)

- क. बकुलो मधुगन्धश्च सिंहकेशरकस्तथा ।
 ख. बकुलस्तुवरोऽनुष्णः कटुपाकरसो गुरुः ।
 कफपित्तविषाश्वित्रकृमिदन्तगदापहः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Nighaṇṭu, Puṣpa varga, 33.

बृहद्बकुलः

- क. शिवमल्ली पाशुपत एकाष्टीलो वको वसुः ।
 ख. कफोऽनुष्णः कटुस्तिक्तः कफपित्तविषापहः ।
 योनिशूलतृषादाहकुष्ठशोथाम्लनाशनः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Nighaṇṭu, Puṣpa varga, 34-35.

बकुलः

- अ. बकुलः केशरः सिंहकेशरो मद्यदोहदः ॥
 मधुगन्धो मद्यगन्धः सीधुगन्धो विशारदः ।
 शिम्बीसहो गुढपुष्पः कृष्णत्वक्सुकुरः शिवः ॥

बकुलगुणाः

ब. बकुलस्तुवरोऽनुष्णः कटुपाकरसो गुरुः ।
कफपित्तविषश्चित्रकृमिदन्तगदापहः ॥

बकुलफलम्

स. तत्फलं मधुरं स्निग्धं कषायं विशदं हिमम् ।
कफपित्तहरं हृद्यं दन्त्यं सङ्ग्राहि बातलम् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 1512-1515.

बकुलः

बकुलस्तु सीधुगन्धः स्त्रीमुखमधुदोहलक्ष मधुपुष्पः ।
सुरभिर्भ्रमरानन्दः स्थिरकुसुमः केसरश्च शारदिकः ॥
करकः सीधुसंज्ञस्तु विशारदो गूढपुष्पको धन्वी ।
मदनो मद्यामोदश्चिरपुष्पश्चेति सप्तदशसंज्ञः ॥

बकुलगुणाः

बकुलः शीतलो हृद्यो विषदोषविनाशनः ।
मधुरश्च कषायश्च मदाद्यो हर्षदायकः ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Karavīrādi varga, 63-65.

बकुलकुसुमम्

बकुलकुसुमं च रुच्यं क्षीराद्यं सुरभि शीतलं मधुरम् ।
स्निग्धकषायं कथितं मलसङ्ग्रहकारकं चैव ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Karavīrādi varga, 66.

विपाके गुरु सम्पक्वं मधुरं कफपित्तजित् ।
मधुरञ्च कषायञ्च स्निग्धं सङ्ग्राहि बाकुलम् ॥

Sūsruta Samhitā.

बकुलोद्भव पुष्पं च सुपक्वं च सुगन्धि च ।

मधुरञ्च कषायञ्च स्निग्धं संग्राहि बाकुलम् ॥

Dhanvantari Nighaṅṭu.

सुगन्धिपुष्पं भ्रमरानन्दम्

आदाय बकुलगन्धानन्धीकुर्बन् पदे पदे भ्रमरान् ।

अयमेति मन्दं मन्दं काबेरीवारिपावनः पवनः ॥

दन्तस्थिरीकरणार्थम्

सोऽयं सुगन्धिमुकुलो बकुलो विभाति वृक्षाग्रणीः प्रियतमे !

मदनैकबन्धुः ।

‘यस्य त्वचैव चिरचर्वितया नितान्तम् ।
दन्ता भवन्ति चपला अपि वन्नतुल्याः ॥’

Vaidya Jivana.

चलदन्ते बकुलबीजम्

दन्तास्तु बीजैर्बकुलद्रुमस्य स्थानच्युता अप्यचला भवन्ति ।
चलदन्तस्थिरकरं बकुलचर्वणम्—

‘चलदन्तस्थिरकरं धार्यं बकुलचर्वणम् ।’

Cakradatta, 56-13, Śodhala.

दन्तचाले शूले च बकुलत्वक्

दन्तचाले तु गण्डूषो बकुलत्वक्कृतो हितः ।
माक्षिकं पिप्पलीसर्पिमिश्रितं धारयेन्मुखे ॥
दन्तशूलहरं प्रोक्तं प्रधानमिदमौषधम् ।

Cakradatta.

मुखरोगचिकित्सायां बकुलाद्यं तैलम्

Cakradatta, Mukharoga Cikitsā, 56-53/54.

बकुलः

‘सुगन्धि विशदं हृद्यं बाकुलम् ।’

Suśruta Samhitā, Sūtra. 46.

संहितायां बकुलः

Caraka Samhitā,

Vimāna. 7-22, 8-150., Cikitsā 3-257.

Suśruta Samhitā.

Sūtra 6-28, 42-18, 43-3, 46-163, 169, 287., Cikitsā. 11-9.

BALĀ

Botanical name : *Sida cordifolia* Linn.

Family : Malvaceae

Classical name : Balā

Sanskrit names : Balā, Vātyālikā, Kharayaṣṭikā.

Regional names

Khireñṭī, Bariyārā, Barela, Balā, Kharaiṭī, Baryāl

(Hindi.), Barelā (Beng.), Chikaṇa (Mar.), Nilatuthi (Tam.), Chirubēṇḍā (Tel.); Country Mallow, Sida (Eng.).

Description

Shrubby, branched, softly hairy and with much stellate hair nearly all over and subpersistent. Leaves 2.5-5 cm. long, cordate, ovate-oblong, crenate, obtuse or subacute; not acuminate; petioles 1.2-3.8 cm., long. Pedicels solitary or few together, short, some upto 1.2-3 cm. long; jointed much above the middle. Calyx 6-8 mm. long; lobes ovate, acute. Corolla slightly exceeding the calyx, yellow.

Fruits 6-8 mm. diam.; carpels 7-10; strongly reticulated; ciliate on the upper margins almost scabrid; awns 2, nearly as long as the carpels, linear; retrosely scabrid, hairy.

Flowering and fruiting time

July to December. Post-rainy seasons.

Kinds and varieties

There are four kinds of Balā viz. Balā, Atibalā, Mahābalā and Nāgabalā, collectively grouped under Balācatuṣṭaya incorporated in texts (nighaṇṭu). Balā has also of two varieties, based on flower-colour such as white (śveta) and yellow (pīta).

Some other species are also considered plant-sources of Balā e.g. *Sida acuta* Burm. f., *Sida spinosa* Linn., other than *Sida cordifolia* Linn.

In addition some other groups are mentioned in classical texts (samhitā) viz. Balādvaya consisting Balā and Atibalā; and Balātraya or Balātritaya adding Nāgabalā to Balādvaya components (Balā, Atibalā and Nāgabalā).

Another kind of Balā is also indicated as Bhūmibalā with source plant *Sida veronicaefolia* Linn. syn. *Sida humilis* Cav.

In general, the components of Balācatuṣṭaya and their main plant sources may be considered as follow :

1. Balā : *Sida cordifolia* Linn.
2. Atibalā : *Abutilon indicum* Sw.
3. Mahābalā : *Sida rhombifolia* Linn.
4. Nāgabalā : *Grewia populifolia* Vahl.
(Gāṅgerukī).

Distribution

It is found in tropical and subtropical regions of both hemispheres.

Throughout the hotter parts of India; and fairly common in various provinces in country as a common weed; Uttar Pradesh, Madhya Pradesh, Bihar, Assam, Himachal Pradesh, Jammu and Kashmir, Tamilnadu, Andhra Pradesh, Karnataka, Kerala etc.

Chemical composition

Plant contains alkaloidal part 0.085 percent; and seeds containing its highest content 0.32 percent (as the seeds contain much more of the alkaloid than the remaining part of the herb). Ephedrine forms major part of alkaloidal contents. Besides, fatty acids, mucilaginous matter, potassium nitrate and resin. Plant has not yet shown presence of tannin or glucoside.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Madhura
Guṇa	: Guru, Snigdha, Picchila.
Vīrya	: Śīta
Vipāka	: Madhura
Doṣakarma	: Vātapittaśāmaka.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Balya-bṛñhaṇa-ojovardhaka- kāntivardhaka Nāḍībalya-vātahara Anulomana-snehana-grāhī Hṛdya-raktapittaśāmaka Śukrala-prajāsthāpana, Mūtrala Jvaraghna-viṣamajvarahara Kṛmighna, Rasāyana.
--------------	--

Roga

(a) Ābhyantara	: Kṣāya-kṛśatā-dourbalya-kāntikṣaya Pakṣāghāta-ardita-vātavikāra Grahaṇi-vātavikāra Adhmāna-vibandha Hṛddourbalya-raktapitta-uraḥkṣata
-----------------------	--

Pradara
 Prameha-śukrameha-dhātukṣaya
 Garbhāśaya-dourbalya
 Mūtrakṛccha-mūtravikāra
 Jvara-viṣamajvara
 Vātavyādhi-vātarakta
 Rājyakṣmā, Kāsa-svarabheda.

(b) **Bāhya** : Vraṇaśoṭha, Netraroga.

Therapeutic uses

The drug is sweet and slightly bitter; it is tonic, astringent, emollient, aphrodisiac and removes vāta and pitta; it is good in cough as a pectoral and bechic. It is an anti-arthritic, appetizer, cardiac, conceptive, cooling, demulcent, aphrodisiac, alterative, diuretic, anthelmintic and antipyretic.

The bark cures urinary troubles and discharges. The fruit is acrid and sweet; it is digestive, cooling, astringent, aphrodisiac; and it allays pitta and kapha, and causes vāta. It is useful in blood diseases, bleeding piles, diseases of throat, phthisis and insanity.

A decoction of the root with ginger is given in intermittent fever. It is also administered in fever accompanied by shivering fits and strong heat of body. The powder of the root-bark is given with milk and sugar for the relief of frequent micturition and leucorrhoea. In diseases of nervous system the root is used along or in combination with other medicines.

The bark of the root with sesame oil and milk is very efficacious in curing cases of facial paralysis and sciatica when caused by the inflammation of the nerves concerned.

The seeds are reckoned aphrodisiac, and are administered in gonorrhoea. They are also given for colic and tenesmus.

The leaves with other cooling leaves are applied in ophthalmia; the root-juice is used to promote the healing of wounds; and the juice of the whole plant pounded with little water is given in spermatorrhoea.

The plant is used as a children's remedy. The roots are used as diuretic and depurative; and they are given in the treatment of gonorrhoea and ringworm.

The leaves mixed with rice are given to alleviate the bloody flux.

It is used in seminal and sexual disorders as an aphrodisiac; and in fevers as febrifuge. It is used in emaciation fever, flatulence, haemphilic disorders, rheumatism, spondilitis, vague body pains and sciatic pain.

It is useful in cystitis, bile and blood diseases colic, elephantiasis, general debility, headache, heart diseases, piles, ophthalmia and nervous disorders.

The drug is pharmacologically active due to alkaloidal contents and phytochemical composition; as it contains alkaloid ephedrine; the seeds contain much more of the alkaloid than the remaining parts of the herb.

The juice of the plant is given in rheumatism, gonorrhoea and spermatorrhoea; its infusion is given in gonorrhoea, rheumatism and febrile diseases.

The twigs are fibrous; they are boiled in milk and whisked with the twigs coagulates; the decanted liquid is given in piles.

The leaves are mucilaginous; their infusion is given as a demulcent in fevers. They are given as a vegetable to patients suffering from haemorrhoids or bleeding piles.

The plant drug is also used externally. A poultice of the leaves is applied to boils to promote suppuration.

The roots are cooling, astringent, stomachic, nervine and cardiac tonic, diuretic, alterative, febrifuge and demulcent; their infusion is given in half to two drachms doses in the nervous and urinary diseases, bilious disorders, fevers, piles, strangury, haematuria, gonorrhoea, cystitis, leucorrhoea, facial paralysis, stiff neck etc., a strong, decoction of the roots is diaphoretic, antipyretic, stomachic and tonic with asafoetida and rock salt, the root is given in hemiplegia.

The root-bark is given with milk and sugar in frequent micturition, leucorrhoea, gonorrhoea and chronic dysentery. It is given in facial paralysis with sesame oil and

milk; it is used in sciatica orally; it is used as an alterative, and internally given in rheumatism.

In elephantiasis a paste of the root made with the juice of palmyra palm, is locally used. The juice of the roots is applied as a sedative over wounds and ulcers.

The roots are pounded and boiled in oil which is applied to rheumatism paralysis, nervous disorders and debility; it enters in recipes of oils prescribed in disorders of vāta and nervine complaints, and muscular troubles.

Parts used : Roots, Seeds, Leaves.

Dose : Juice 20-40 gms., Powder 1-3 gms.

Formulations (yoga)

Balādi Kvātha, Balādyā ghr̥ta, Balādyariṣṭa, Candanaba-lālākṣādi taila.

Groups (gāṇa)

Balya, Br̥mhaṇīya, Prajāsthāpana, Madhuraskandha (Caraka), Vātasamśamana (Suśruta).

BALĀ- Balācatuṣṭaya (बला-बलाचतुष्टय)

बलाचतुष्टयम्

बलाचतुष्टयं स्निग्धं मधुरं रसपाकयोः ।
शीतलं ग्राहि धात्वोजोबलायुःकान्तिवर्धनम् ॥
हन्ति वातास्रपित्तास्रदोषत्रयक्षतक्षयान् ।

बलाफलम्

बलाफलं स्वादु पाके कषायं मधुरं रसे ॥
हिमं वीर्यं गुरु गुणे स्तम्भनं लेखनं भृशम् ।
विबन्धाध्मानपवनज्वरपित्तकफास्रजित् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 1058-1059.

नागबला

बल्या नागबला गुर्वी रक्तपित्तक्षयापहा ।
वृष्या रसायनी तस्याश्मन्तकफलवत् फलम् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 1057-1058.

बलाचतुष्टयम्

‘बला-महाबला-अतिबला-नागबला ।’

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Śatahvādi varga, 94-102
Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 1051-1059.
Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Guḍūcyādi varga. 142-144.

अ. बला

बलाऽतितक्ता मधुरा पित्तातीसारनाशनी ।
 बलवीर्यप्रदा पुष्टि-कफरोगविशोधनी ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Śatahvādi varga, 95.

ब. महाबला

महाबला तु हृद्रोगवातार्शशोफनाशनी ।
 शुक्रवृद्धिकरी बल्या विषमज्वरहारिणी ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Śatahvādi varga 100.

स. अतिबला

तिक्ता कटुश्चातिबला वातघ्नी क्रिमिनाशनी ।
 दाहतृष्णाविषच्छर्दिक्लेदोपशमनी परा ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Śatahvādi varga, 102.

द. नागबला

मधुराम्ला नागबला कषायोष्णा गुरुः स्मृता ।
 कण्डूतिकुष्ठवातघ्नी व्रणपित्तविकारजित् ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Śatahvādi varga, 105.

बला स्निग्धा हिमा स्वादु वृष्या बल्यां त्रिदोषनुत् ।
 रक्तपित्तक्षयं हन्ति बलौजोवर्धयत्यपि ॥

Dhanvantari Nighaṇṭu.

‘बला सङ्ग्राहिक-बल्य-वातहराणाम् ।’

Caraka Samhitā, Sūtra. 25.

गर्भिणीशूले

‘गर्भिणी तु बलाक्काथसिद्धं सायं प्रयोगि वा ।’

अर्दिंते

‘बलायाः क्षीरं वातात्मके हितम् ।’

Bhāvaprakāśa.

उन्मादे

‘सितकुसुमबलायाः सार्द्धकर्षत्रयं यः
शिखरिचरणकोलं क्षीरपाकेन पक्वम् ।
पिबति तदनु शीतं प्रातरुत्थाय नित्यं
जयति झटिति घोरं व्याधिमुन्मादमुग्रम् ॥

Baṅgasena.

सर्ववातविकारे

बलानिष्ववाथकल्काभ्यां तैलं पक्वं पयोऽन्वितम् ।
सर्ववातविकाराणाम्..... ॥

Baṅgasena.

उरोग्रहे

‘सूर्यावर्तबलोद्भवाः ।
रसा एकैकशः कोष्णा द्विजो वा रामठान्विताः ॥’

Baṅgasena.

अवबाहुके

‘मूलं बलायाः..... पिबेद्वा ।
मासादसौ वज्रसमानबाहुः ॥’

Cakradatta.

स्वरभेदे

‘.....बलाचूर्णमथापि वा ।’

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Uttara. 53.

राजयक्ष्मणि

‘बला पत्रै..... ।
सक्षौरं पयसा सिद्धं सर्पिर्दशगुणेन वा ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hr̥daya, Cikitsā 5.

बलादिरसायनम्

‘बलातिवलाचन्दनागुरुधवतिनिशखदिरशिंशपासन-
स्वरसाः पुनर्नवान्ताश्चौषधयो दश नागबला व्याख्याताः ।
स्वरसानामलाभे त्वयं स्वरसविधिः—चूर्णनामाढकमाढक-
मुदकस्याहोरात्रस्थितं मृदितपूतं स्वरसवत् प्रयोज्यम् ।’

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā. Rasāyanādhyāya. 1-12.

उरःक्षते नागबलाकल्पम्

पिबेन्नागबलामूलमर्धकर्षविवर्धितम् ।
 पलं क्षीरयुतं मासं क्षीरवृत्तिरनन्नभुक् ॥
 एष प्रयोगः पुष्ट्यायुर्बलारोग्यकरः परः ।
 मण्डूकपर्ण्याः कल्पोऽयं शुण्ठीमधुकयोस्तथा ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā. 11-91/92.

वातरक्ते बलाघृतम् अपरपिण्डतैलम्

Bhāvaprakāśa, Vātaraktādhikāra, 29-88/89.

वातरक्ते नागबलातैलम्

शुद्धां पचेन्नागबलातूलान्तु जलार्मणे पादकषायसिद्धम् ।
 विस्त्राव्य तैलाढकमत्र देयमजापयस्तैलविमिश्रितन्तु ॥
 नतं सयष्टीमधुकञ्च कल्कं दत्त्वा पृथक्पञ्चपलं विपक्वम् ।
 तद्वातरक्तं शमयत्युदीर्णं बस्तिप्रदानेन हि ससरात्रात् ।
 दशाहयोगेन करोत्यरोगं पीतञ्च तैलोत्तममश्विनोक्तम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Madhyakhaṇḍa, 29/149-150.

वातव्याधिचिकित्सायां महाबलातैलम्

Cakradatta, Vātavādhi cikitsā, 22/101-110.

अन्त्रवृद्धौ

तैलमेरण्डजं पीत्वा बलासिद्धं पयोऽन्वितम् ।
 आध्मानशूलोपचितामन्त्रवृद्धिं जयेन्नरः ॥

Cakradatta.

प्रदरे

प्रदरं हन्ति बलाया मूलं दुग्धेन मधुयुतं पीतम् ।

Cakradatta, Asṛgadara cikitsā, 9.

रक्तपित्ते

‘गव्यं पयः..... ।

बलाशृतं गोक्षुरजैः शृतः वा ।

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā. 4.

रक्ताशौ

‘हन्त्याशु रक्तरोगं तथा बलापृश्निपर्णाभ्याम् ।’

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā. 9.

कफविसर्पे

.....बला । पुष्पमालेपनं कुर्यात् ।

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā. 11.

मदात्ययस्य पिपासायाम्

तृष्यते सलिलाद्यस्मै दद्यात्....बलायाः शृतम् ।

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā. 12.

व्रणशोधनार्थम्

‘.....बलामूलं आलेपनम् ।निर्वापणम् ।’

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā. 13.

वातरक्ते

बलाकषायकल्काभ्यां तैलं क्षीरसमं तथा ।

सहस्रशतपाकं वा वातासृग्वातरोगनुत् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā. 29.

रसायनार्थम्

‘यथोक्तामागारं प्रविश्य बलामूलद्विपलं पलं वा पयसाऽलोड्य पिबेत् ।
जीर्णं पयःसर्पिरोदन इत्याहारः । एवं द्वादशरात्रमुपयुज्य द्वादशवर्षाणि वर्याणि-
वर्यांस्तिष्ठति ।’

Suśruta Samhitā, cikitsā. 27.

वातरक्ते शतपाकबलातैलम्

बलाकषायकल्काभ्यां तैलं क्षीरचतुर्गुणम् ।

शतपाकं भवेदेतद्वातासृग्वातपित्तनुत् ॥

धान्यं पुंसवनञ्चैव नराणां शुक्रवर्द्धनम् ।

रेतोयोनिविकारघ्नमेतद्वातविकारनुत् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Vātaraktādhikāra, 29/155-156.

वातरक्ते सहस्रपाकबलातैलम्

क. बलाकषायकल्काभ्यां तैलं क्षीरसमं पचेत् ।

सहस्रशतपाकं वा वातासृग्वातरोगनुत् ॥

ख. रसायनमिदं श्रेष्ठमिन्द्रियाणां प्रसादनम् ।

जीवनं बृंहणं स्वयं शुक्रासृग्दोषनाशनम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Vātaraktādhikāra, 29/163-164.

मूत्रकृच्छ्रे अतिबलाक्वाथम्

‘कषायोऽतिबलामूलसाधितोऽशेषकृच्छ्रजित् ।’

Bhāvaprakāśa, Mūtrakṛcchādhikāra, 35-40. Cakradatt, 32-23.

वृद्धिप्रतीकारार्थम्

तैलमेरण्डजं पीत्वा बलासिद्धं यथोचितम् ।

आध्मानशूलोपचितामन्त्रवृद्धिं जयेन्नरः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Madhyakhaṇḍa, 43-25.

फिरङ्गरोगे (सपारद) बलास्वरसम्

पीतपुष्पबलापत्ररसैष्टङ्कमितं रसम् ।

हस्ताभ्यां मर्दयेत्तावद्वावत्सूतो न दृश्यते ॥

ततः संस्वेदयेद्धस्तावेवं वासरसप्तकम् ।

त्यजेल्लवणमम्लञ्च फिरङ्गस्तस्य नश्यति ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Phiraṅgarogādhikāra, 59/20-21.

रक्तप्रदरे कङ्कतिकाबला (अतिबला) चूर्णम्

बला कङ्कतिकाऽऽख्या या तस्या मूलं सुचूर्णितम् ।

लोहितप्रदरे खादेच्छर्करामधुसंयुतम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Strīrogādhikāra, 68-12.

राजयक्ष्मारोगे नागबलालेहः

घृतकुसुमसारलीढं क्षयं नयति गजबलामूलम् ।

दुग्धेन केवलेन तु वायसजङ्घा निपीतैव ॥

Cakradatta, Rājayakṣmā cikitsā, 10-13.

वातविकाराणां शमनाय बलाशैरीयतैलम्

बलानिःक्वाथकल्काभ्यां तैलं पक्वं पयोऽन्वितम् ।

सर्ववातविकाराघ्नमेवं शैरीयसाधितम् ॥

Cakradatta, Vātavyādhi cikitsā, 22-100.

वातरक्ते दशपाकबलातैलम्

बलाकषायकल्काभ्यां तैलं क्षीरचतुर्गुणम् ।

दशपाकं भवेदेतद् वातासृग्वातपित्तजित् ॥

धन्यं पुंसवनञ्चैव नराणां शुक्रवर्द्धनम् ।

रेतोयोनिविकारघ्नमेतद्वातविकारनुत् ॥

Cakradatta, Vātarakta Cikitsā, 23/33-34.

हृद्रोगचिकित्सायां (सकासश्वास) नागबलाचूर्णम् रसायनार्थम्

- क. मूलं नागबलायास्तु चूर्णं दुग्धेन पाचयेत् ।
हृद्रोगश्वासकासघ्नं ककुभस्य च वल्कलम् ॥
- ख. रसायनं परं बल्यं वातजिन्मासयोजितम् ।
संवत्सरप्रयोगेण जीवेदूर्ध्वशतं ध्रुवम् ॥

Cakradatta, Hṛdroga cikitsā, 31/15-16.

तीव्रहृदयविकार-हृच्छूलशमनाय

(सोरःक्षतरक्तपित्तासृग्विकाराणाञ्च) बलाद्यं घृतम्

- घृतं बलानागबलाऽर्जुनाम्बुसिद्धं सयष्टीमधुपादकल्कम् ।
हृद्रोगशूलक्षतरक्तपित्तं कासानिलास्रं शमयत्यदीर्घम् ॥

Cakradatta, Hṛdroga cikitsā, 21/31-31.

संहितायां बला

(भद्रौदनी-वाट्यपुष्पी-वाट्यायनी-वाट्याह-वाट्याभिधान)

Caraka Samhitā

Sūtra. 2-11- etc., Vimāna 8-146., Śarīra. 29-34.,

Cikitsā, 1-1, 42 etc., Siddhi, 3-12 etc.

Suśruta Samhitā

Sūtra. 15-36 etc., Cikitsā. 2-65 etc., Kalpa. 2-46 etc., Uttara. 17-18

etc.

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya

Sūtra 6-169 etc., Śarīra 2-5 etc., Cikitsā. 1-28 etc.

Kalpa. 4-1 etc., Uttara. 2-41 etc.

BĀLAKA-HRĪVERA

Botanical Name : Pavonia odorata Willd.

Family : Malvaceae

Classical name : Bālaka-Hrīvera

Sanskrit names

Bālaka, Hrīvera, Bāla, Piṅgala, Jala-vāri-ambu-toya, Barhiṣṭha, Udīcyā, Tiktāṅga, Keśya-keśāmbu-kuntalī.

Regional names

Sugandhabalā (Hindi.), Kalavala (Bomb.), Kalowalo (Guj.), Avibattam Peranutti, Suvesgam (Tam.) Chittibenda,

Etakati, Muttavapaliagama, Tigobenda (Tel.), Kalawala (Mar.) Balarakkasigida, Mudiwala (Cana.).

Description

An erect branching annual, 45-90 cm. high. Stems covered with soft viscous pubescence and a few longer hairs. Leaves 2.5-7.5 cm. long, roundish, ovate, cordate, shallowly 3-5 lobed, dentate or the lower ones, entire, stellate-hairy on both surfaces, often felted and whitish beneath; lower petioles longer than the blades. Peduncles as long as the leaves, 1-flowered, clustered at the ends of the branches. Bracteoles 10-12. Sepals lanceolate. Corolla pale pink or white, twice the length of the calyx. Carpels globous on their backs, wingless, unarmed, dehiscent.

Distribution

It is found in north-western India, Bundelkhand, Western Rajputana, Bengal, Konkan; and S.M. country, Deccan, Carnatic, Sind, Baluchistan, Ceylon, Eastern Tropical Africa.

Kinds and varieties

Another plant *coleus vettiverides* K.C. Jacob. is considered a source of Bālaka (in south India). Bālaka-Tagara is commonly as *Valeriana wallichii* DC., and Bālaka-Hrivera is considered as *Pavonia odorata* Willd.; both are known as Sugandhabalā in general and latter is name Kalawala in particular, and former has popular market name Sugandhabalā.

Chemical composition

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Tikta, Madhura
Guṇa	: Rūkṣa, Laghu
Vīrya	: Śīta (anuṣṇa)
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakama	: Kaphapittaśāmaka.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Dīpana-pācana, Grāhī-stambhaka Balya-kaṭupauṣṭika, Hṛdya, Tvacya Keśya, Rucikara, Tṛṣṇānigrahaṇa
-------	--

Vāntihara, Dāhapraśamana
Kuṣṭhaghna, Dourgandhyahara.

Roga : Atisāra-pravāhikā, Jvara, Raktapitta
Vraṇa, Dāha, Hṛllāsa, Hṛdroga, Tṛṣā,
Keśavikāra, Raktavikāra, Carmavikāra
Kuṣṭha, Śvitra, Visarpa, Aruci
Agnimāndya, Ajīrṇa, Kāsa-śvāsa
Dourbalya, Āmavāta.

Therapeutic uses

It is an appetizer and strengthner, refrigerant, stomachic, tonic; and allays kapha and pitta. It is prescribed in diseases of the heart and blood complaints; cures dysentery, excessive salivation, and ulcers; and useful in vomiting, thirst, skin eruption, fever, and asthma.

The roots are fragrant and aromatic; and they possess cooling and stomachic properties. They are used in fever, inflammation and haemorrhage from internal organs.

It is recommended as an astringent and tonic in cases of dysentery. The plant drug is also useful in rheumatism.

The roots are useful in burning sensation of body, dermatosis, skin diseases, leucoderma and hairs diseases.

Parts used : Roots.

Doses : 1-3 gms.

BĀLAKAM-HRĪVERA (बालकम्-ह्रीवेर)

बालं ह्रीवेरबर्हिष्ठोदीच्यं केशाम्बु नाम च ।
बालकं शीतलं रुक्षं लघु दीपनपाचनम् ॥
हल्लासारुचिवीसर्पहृद्रोगामातिसारजित् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Karpūrādi varga, 83.

- अ. ह्रीवेरं बालकं वारि बर्हिष्ठं पिङ्गलं जलम् ।
उदीच्यमम्बु तिक्ताङ्गव्रजभावनजं कचम् ॥
ब. बालकं मधुरं तिक्तं दीपनं पाचनं हिमम् ।
लघु रूक्षं ज्वरं हन्ति रक्तपित्तकफव्रणान् ।

दाहहृल्लासवीसर्पतृष्णातिसारहृद्गदान् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 1365-1367.

बालकम्

बालकं वारिपर्यायैरुक्तं ह्रीबेरकं तथा ।

केश्यं वज्रमुदीच्यञ्च पिङ्गञ्च ललनाप्रियम् ।

बालञ्च कुन्तलोशीरं कचामोदं शशीन्दुधा ॥

बालकगुणाः

बालकं शीतलं तिक्तं पित्तवान्तितृषापहम् ।

ज्वरकुष्ठातिसारघ्नं केश्यं शिवत्रव्रणापनुत् ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Karavīrādi varga, 165-166.

संहितायां ह्रीवेरम्

Caraka Samhitā

Sūtra. 2-20 etc., Cikitsā. 3-241 etc.

Suśruta Samhitā

Sūtra. 39-7, Cikitsā 9-26 etc., Kalpa 8-110., Uttara. 9-13 etc.

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya

Cikitsā, 1-50 etc., Kalpa. 4-61 etc.

BANDĀKA

Botanical name

Loranthus falcatus Linn Desr.

=*Loranthus longifolius*.

Family : Loranthaceae

Classical name : Bandāka

Sanskrit names : Bandāka, Vṛkṣādānī, Vṛkṣaruhā.

Regional names

Banda (Hindi.), Māndā (Beng.), Bāṅḍgul (Mar.), Bāndo (Guj.), Kharakatān (Arab.).

Description

A large bushy usually glabrous branch-parasite; bark grey, smooth; young parts glabrous or nearly so. Leaves thick, coriaceous, usually opposite, 7.5-10 by 2-10 cm., very variable in shape and venation; ovate; elliptic, or linear-oblong,

obtuse; midrib prominent; usually red; the secondary red; the secondary nerves obscure; petioles 3-13 mm. long, stout.

Flowers in short spreading stout axillary unilateral racemes; often 2 from an axil; pedicels short; bract 1.6 mm. long, broadly ovate, subacute, concave. Calyx 4 mm. long, more or less hoary tomentose; tube cylindrical; limb cupular; truncate, or shortly 5-toothed. Corolla 2.5-5 cm. long, split at the back; tube curved; slightly widened upwards; scarlet or orange or less commonly pink or white; lobes 5, linear, 1 cm. long; reflexed, green or yellowish. Anthers linear, equal in length to the free portion of the filament. Style slender, quadrangular; stigma rather small, subglobose.

Berry 8-15 mm. long, ovoid-oblong, pink, smooth, crowned by a cupshaped calyx. Albumen white, copious, with 5 linear teeth of the top surrounding the green embryo which resembles a small nail 6 mm. long with a flattened head (the radicle).

Distribution

It is found more or less throughout India, Burma, Ceylon and Australia.

Kinds and varieties

There are various kinds; commonly two varieties of *Bandāka* viz. *baḍā bandā* and *choṭā bandā* which are *loranthus falcatus* Linn. and *loranthus elasticas* Desr. respectively.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṣāya, Tikta, Madhura
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa
Vīrya	: Śīta
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Tridoṣaśāmaka.

Action and Properties

Karma

- (a) *Ābhyañtara* : Mūtrajānana
 Nāḍībalya-akṣepaśāmaka
 Stambhana, Hṛdya-śothahara
 Raktapittaśāmaka-raktaśodhana

Kaphaghna-śvāsahara
 Garbhasṭhāpana, Viṣaghna
 Bhūtaghna, Śrama-dāhapraśamana
 Vṛṣya, Rasāyana
 Vaśya-siddhida-māṅgalya.

(b) Bāhya : Vraṇaropaṇa, Śoṭahara.

Therapeutic uses

The bark has narcotic properties. It is used in wounds and menstrual troubles, and also as a remedy in consumption, asthma and amnia.

The bark is also used as substitute for betelnut.

It is useful as diuretic, astringent, cardiogenic, blood purifier, nervine tonic, antiphlogistic, antiasthmatic, anticonvulsive and wound-healer.

The drug is useful in urinary diseases and calculi as diuretic; it is given in diarrhoea, dysentery, insanity, epilepsy, cardiac troubles, blood diseases convulsions and nerve complaints. It is used in cough and asthma, oedema, wound, ulcers and inflammation. It is favourable to conception.

It is useful as aphrodisiac; and it is given against poison, and it is useful as an alterative and countering demon-evil spirits (as Rakṣoghna-grahabādhāhara).

Parts used : Leaves, Flowers.

Dose : 12-24 gms.

Groups (gaṇa)

Mūtravirecanīya, (Caraka), Vīratarvādi (Suśruta).

BANDĀKA (बन्दाक)

- क. बन्दा वृक्षादनी वृक्षभक्ष्या वृक्षरूहाऽपि च ।
 ख. बन्दाकः स्याद्धिमस्तिक्तः कषायो मधुरो रसे ।
 माङ्गल्यः कफवातास्त्रक्षोत्रणविषापहः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Guḍūcyādi varga, 261.

- अ. वृक्षादनी वृक्षरूहा कामना कामवृक्षकः ॥
 नीलपर्णी नीलवल्ली जीवन्ती विजयद्रुमः ।

कामिनी पादपरुहा शैखर्यपदरोहिणी ॥
 वृक्षादनी हिमा तिक्ता कषाया मधुरा रसे ।
 माङ्गल्या कफवातास्रत्रणरक्षोग्रहापहा ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 853-855.

वन्दाकः

वन्दाकः पादपरुहा शिखरी तरुरोहिणी ।
 वृक्षादनी वृक्षरुहा कामवृक्षश्च शेखरी ॥
 केशरूपा तरुरुहा तरुस्था गन्धभेदिनी ।
 कामिनी तरुरुद् श्यामा द्रुपदी षोडशाह्वया ॥

बन्दाकगुणाः

वन्दाकस्तिक्तशिशिरः कफपित्तश्रमापहः ।
 वश्यादिसिद्धिदो वृष्यः कषायश्च रसायनः ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Parpaṭādi varga, 68-70.

BHAṄĀ

Botanical Name : Cannabis sativa Linn.

Family : Cannabinaceae (Urticaceae)

Classical name : Bhaṅgā-Vijayā

Sanskrit names

Bhaṅgā, Vijayā, Mātulānī, Mādani, Jayā, Gaṅjā.

Regional names

Bhaṅg (Hindi, Mar., Guj.), Siddhi Bhaṅg (Beng.),
 Kinnav (Arab.), Kinav (Pers.), Indian Hemp (Eng.).

Description

An erect annual, smelling, scarcely branched herb of very variable height but usually 0.9-1.5 meter high in its hard state; the female plant being generally supposed to grow taller than the male; stems grooved, finely tomentose, 1-4 meter high; branches few, slender.

Leaves stalked palmate, alternate or the lower opposite; lobes 1-5 in the upper leaves, 5-11 in the lower; linear, lanceolate 5-20 cm., the middle one largest, sharp, toothed;

teeth coarse, long pointed, narrowed to the base; upper surface dark green and rough lower pale-downy. Leaves 7.5-20 cm. diam., upper 3-1-foliolate passing into bracts; lower 3-8-foliolate with long petioles.

Flowers pale yellow-green unisexual; the male and female in separate and dissimilar plants; male flowers clustered in short axillary drooping panicles; perianth 5-parted segments, boat shaped; stamens 5; filaments long thread like; female flowers clustered in short axillary drooping panicles; perianth a single entire leaf-enclosing the ovary; style arms 2; thread-like protruding. Convolute bracts 2 mm. long with oblique mouth much longer than the ovary and its investing hyaline perianth, accrescent; and 5 mm. in fruit. Fruit achenes 1, about 2 mm., enclosed in the persistent perianth.

Flowering and fruiting time

July-August.

Distribution

It is found-throughout India ascending up to 1300 meters elevation in hilly region of Uttar Pradesh; found in Bihar and Gujarat. Wild in North-Western Himalayas; Central Asia, wild; cultivated in tropical and temperate regions.

It is naturally growing throughout the greater parts of country, specially in waste lands, nearby hedges or forest patches and along roadsides. Growth, production and cultivation under restriction of narcotic drug control (for Bhañg, charas and gāñjā); also much cultivated for fibres (specially male plants yield best fibre).

Caras is the narcotic resinous substance which appears on the stems and inflorescence; and it is collected chiefly from cultivated female plants.

Bhāñg consists of the dried leaves and flowers.

Gāñjā is the dried flowering tops of female plants, agglutinated and should be free from leaves.

Chemical composition

Plant contains resin, alkaloid known as cannabinone, a volatile oil, gum, fat, sugars, wax and potassium nitrate.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Tikta,
Guṇa	: Laghu, Tikṣṇa, Rūkṣa
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Vātakaphahara, Pittajanana.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Madakāri-vyavāyī-vikāṣi Soumanasyajanana-pralāpajanana Pralāpajanana, Vedanāsthāpana Nidrājanana, Akṣepahara Dīpana-pācana-rocana Grāhī-pittasāraka Śūlapraśāmana-āntrākṣepahara Śoṇitasthāpana, Śvāsahara Śukrastambhaka Garbhāśayasankocaka, Ojaśoṣaka.
--------------	--

Roga

(a) Ābhyantara	: Vātavikāra, Vedanāyuktavikāra-naḍīśūla Śirahśūla-ardhāvabhedaka Anidrā-nidrānāśa Ākṣepa apatānaka-dhanuṣṭambha Udaraśūla-yakṛcchūla, Arśa Raktasrāva, Śvāsa-kāsa-kukkurakāsa Vṛkkaśūla-mūtraghāta Klaibya-śighrapatan Rajaḥkṛccha-kaṣṭaprasava.
(b) Bāhya	: Arśā-gudavikāra, Kaphavātavikāra.

Therapeutic uses

The leaves are bitter, heating; astringent to bowels, tonic, stomachic, alterative; useful in kapha and leprosy. They cause intoxication, hallucination and their excessive use causes indigestion cough, melancholy, impotency, dropsy and insanity.

The inflorescence of the female plant is stomachic, soporific and abortifacient. They useful in convulsions. They cause thirst, restlessness, intoxication; and dull pain.

The leaves have a bitter, sharp, hot, bad taste; tonic, aphrodisiac, antidirrhoeic, intoxicating and soporific. They cause thirst and biliousness. Their water extract is anthelmintic; their oil is good for earache.

The bark is bitter tonic; good for hydrocele, inflammation and oiles. The seeds are carminative, astringent, aphrodisiac; and it checks vomiting, lessens inflammationed causes headache. The resin is smoked to allay hiccough and bronchitis. Tonic, alterative, emmenagogue and laxative properities are ascribed to the seeds.

The hemp seeds are known as a favourite food of cage-birds. Seeds are roasted and eaten in the Himalayan regions; and the seeds are used as culinary or spice item for frying the food articles in hilly regions of Uttar Pradesh.

The drug is useful as anodyne (feeble), antispasmodic, anaesthetic aphrodisiac, appetizer, astringent, cholagogue, deliriant, digestive, diuretic, exciting, exhilarant, expectorant, heating, hypnotic; induce sleep; intoxicating, narcotic, sedative, stimulant, stomachic and tonic. It is indicated in catarrh, convulsions of children, costiveness, flatulence, haemorrhage, hydrophobia, hernia, diarrhoea and dysentery.

The regular use of drug abuse causes and leads to indigestion, wasting of the body, cough, melancholy, impotence and dropsy.

The leaves (bhāṅg) mixed with other ingredients make sweet drink (ṭhaṇḍāi or other names) refreshing in summer season; it is used conventionally in certain areas.

The leaves are sedative, anodyne, narcotic, antispasmodic, diuretic, digestive and astringent; they are sedative and analgesic; and given in doses of 40 grains in the conditions. Leaves in dose of half a drachm of the dried leaves are given with sugar and black pepper. The leaves are induced administered to sleep, where opium is not to be used; leaves are also used in tetanus and dysmenorrhoea. A paste of the fresh leaves is used to resolve tumours; their juice removes dandruff and head lice; their powder is a useful dressing for wounds and sores. A poultice of the leaves is applied to the eyes in ophthalmia, and other diseases, to piles and orchitis.

The preparations made from specially dried leaves and flowers, known as bhāṅg or hashish, is given dyspepsia, gonorrhoea and bowel complaints and as an appetizer and nerve stimulant.

The dried pistillate flowering tops which are coated with a resinous exudation are known as gāñjā; the smoke from burning gāñjā, is swallowed as an antidote to poisoning by orpiment; the smoke is passed through rectum for relief of strangulated hernia and gripping pains of dysentery. Gāñjā is one of the best anodynes, hypnotics and antispasmodics, if properly used as a medicine (avoiding drug abuse); it is given in one-fourth to two grains doses. Externally it is applied to relieve pains in itching skin complaints.

The resinous exudation is caras that collects on the leaves and flowering tops of plants, is the active principle of hemp; it is like leaves, a valuable narcotic.

It is of great value to malarial and petiodical headaches, migraine, acute mania, insanity, delirium, whooping cough, cough of pthisis, asthma, nervous vomiting, tetanus, convulsions, nervous exhaustion, dysuria and anaemic condition of brain. It is also used as an anaesthetic in dysmenorrhoea, as an appetizer; as an aphrodisiac; and as an anodyne in eczema, neuralgia, severe pains etc. It is usually given in one-sixth to one-fourth grain doses.

The seeds are not narcotic like leaves or other products; the infusion of seeds is given in gonorrhoea. Seeds are edible as well as they are used medicinally; in addition oil is extracted from them and remaining cake is utilised as a cattle fodder. Seeds are considered useful as carminative, astringent, antidiarrhoeal, aphrodisiac, antivomiting, anti-inflammatory, tonic, alterative and appetizer; and they are of other used in ailing conditions other than their domestic as well as veterinary (animal husbandry) uses.

The purification (śodhana) has been recommended in Indian system of medicine in general for using the drug material for therapeutic, by following svedana process (in dolāyantra) and later drying up (śuṣkikaraṇa) and finally frying (ghṛta bharjana) before medicinal and pharmaceutical uses.

Since the leaves (bhāṅga), dried pistillate flowering tops coated with resinous exudation (gāñjā) and resinous exudation collected on leaves and flowering tops (caras) are narcotic category of drugs, they need strictly to be used under careful posological as well as therapeutical considerations, by avoiding the drug abuse and following due precautions (including prolonged and habitual uses), and checking drug addiction.

It is a toxic drug and toxic signs and symptoms are caused due to its improper and excess intake adversely affecting particularly vision, brain and sex etc. The line of treatment for countering toxicity condition has also been suggested in Indian medicine.

The plant carries ethro-botanical importance which also includes its use in religious purposes (e.g. śivapūjanam, the worship of lord Śiva).

Parts used : Bhāṅga, Gāñjā, Caras.

Dose

Bhāṅga 2-4 grains., Gāñjā 1-2 grains., Caras 1/2 grains.

Formulations (yoga)

Jātīphalādi cūrṇa, Indrāśan-cūrṇa, Vijayā-vaṭikā, Lāi cūrṇa, Vijayāvabha, Madanānanda Modaka.

BHĀṄGĀ (भङ्गा)

भङ्गिका पित्तला तिक्ता तीक्ष्णोष्णा ग्राहिणी लघुः ।

कर्षणी दीपनी रुच्या मदकृत् कफवातजित् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 1637.

भङ्गा कफहरी तिक्ता ग्राहिणी पाचनी लघुः ।

तीक्ष्णोष्णा पित्तला मोहमदवाग्बह्विर्वर्द्धनी ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Harītakṣādi varga, 214.

भङ्गा भङ्गकरी मतेः रतिपतेक्ष्यादरं कारिणी

प्रोढत्वात् समासेषु विभवपद्योतहत् सङ्गामे ।

तीक्ष्णोष्णा मदमोहपित्ताश्मरीवाग्बर्द्धनी प्राहिणी

तिक्ता श्लेष्महरा लघुश्च कथिता सन्दीपनी पाचनी ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu.

भङ्गा तु दीपनी रुच्या ग्राहिणी पाचनी लघुः ।

निद्रापित्तप्रदोष्णा च कामदा कफवातजित् ॥

Śoḍhala.

शुष्कार्शःसु भङ्गापत्रोदकप्रक्षालनार्थं योगः

पत्रभङ्गोदकैः शौचं कुर्यादुष्णेन वाऽम्भसा ।

इतिशुष्कार्शसां सिद्धमुक्तमेतच्चिकित्सितम् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 14-169.

अतिसारे विजयाऽवलेहम्

त्रैलोक्यविजयाजातीफले तुल्ये कलिङ्गकम् ।

गृहीत्वा द्विगुणं श्रेष्ठो लेहः सर्वातिसारनुत् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Atisārādhikāra, 2-147.

ग्रहणीरोगे लाईचूर्णम्

कर्षं गन्धकमर्द्धपारदमुने कुर्याच्छुभां कज्जलीं

द्वयक्षं त्र्यूषणतश्च पञ्चलवणं सार्द्धञ्च कर्षं पृथक् ।

भृष्टं हिङ्गु च जीरकद्वययुतं सर्वार्द्धभङ्गान्वितं

खादेदृङ्गमितं प्रवृत्तिगदवांस्तक्रेण बिल्वेन च ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Grahāṇirogādhikāra, 4-47.

प्रतिश्याये विजयापत्रपुटपाकम्

पुटपक्वं जयापत्रं तैलसैन्धवसंयुतम् ।

प्रतिश्यायेषु सर्वेषु शीलितं परमौषधम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Nāsārogaadhikāra, 65-50.

सर्वकुष्ठहररसायनार्थम् इन्द्राशनचूर्णम्

इन्द्राशनं समादाय प्रशस्तेऽहनि चोद्धृतम् ।

तच्चूर्णं मधुसर्पिभ्यां लिहेत् क्षीरघृताशनः ॥

हत्त्वा च सर्वकुष्ठानि जीवेद्वर्षशतद्वयम् ।

[‘इन्द्राशव’ केचित् भङ्गा गुञ्जा वा]

Cakradatta, Kuṣṭha cikitsā, 50-63.

श्रीशिवपूजार्थं विजयाप्रयोगः

ॐ विष्य धनुः कपर्दिनी विशल्यो वाणवां उत ।

अनेशन्नस्य या इषव आभुरस्य निषङ्गधि॥

सर्वदेवपूजापद्धतिः। पृ. ४४.

BHALLĀTAKA

Botanical name : *Semecarpus anacardium* Linn.

Family : Anacardiaceae

Classical name : Bhallātaka

Sanskrit names

Bhallātaka-Bhallī, Aruṣkara-aruṣka, Agnika-Agnimukha, Śophakṛta, Vīravṛkṣa.

Regional names

Bhilawā (Hindi), Bhela (Beng.), Bimba (Mar.), Senkotai (Tam.) Bhallatarmu (Tel.); Hali-el-kalb (Arab.), Baladur (Pers.); Marking Nut (Eng.).

Description

A moderate sized tree. Leaves 18-60 by 10-30 cm., obovate-oblong, rounded at the apex, coriaceous, glabrous above, ashy grey, or half and more or less pubescent beneath and with cartilaginous margin base rounded; cordate or cuneate, sometime shortly auricled; main nerves 15-25 pairs making a large angle with the costs, sometimes nearly horizontal, prominent or both surfaces, petioles 1.2-3.8 cm. long.

Flowers greenish white, subsessile, fascicled in pubescent panicles shorter than the male pedicels short; bracts lanceolate, pilose, Calyx segments about 1 mm. long, pilose outside. Petals 4-5 mm., long by 2 mm.; broad, ovate, acute. Ovary in the male-flowers rudimentary, hairy; in the female suglobose, densely pilose, crowned with 3 styles.

Drupe 2.5 cm. long, obliquely, ovoid or oblong, smooth and shining; black when ripe; seated on a fleshy orange-red-cup receptacle or hypocarp short 2 cm. long, smooth and yellow when ripe.

Fruits : (in transverse section) The pericarp of the fruit is differentiated into epicarp; mesocarp and endocarp.

The epicarp consists of epidermis surrounded by thick uticle. The mesocarp is a broad zone of thin walled parenchyma, having lysigenous cavities and fibrovascular bundles. The endocarp consists of outer and inner prismatic crystals which are radially elongated. Rosetcrystals of redily elongated of calcium oxalate and oil are present in the mesocarp parenchyma.

The fruit is of the size and shape of a size of a broad bean, of a black colour and quite hard and dry externally, but upon breaking the outer skin with a knife; the cellular portion of the pattern is a thin shell, confirming to it continuing a flat kernel, which is not acrid.

Flowering and fruiting time

December, January, February, June.

Distribution

It is found throughout the hotter parts of India and also in Himalaya from Sirmore (Sirmur) to Sikkim ascending to 1100 meters height from sea level; found in Andhra Pradesh, Bihar, Kerala and Uttar Pradesh.

Sub-Himalayan tract from the Bais eastwards, ascending in the outer hills up to 2,500 feet; Assam, Khasia hills, Chittagong, Central India and the Western Peninsula. Eastern Archipelago, North Archipelago.

Chemical composition

Fruit contains anacardiac acid, cardol, catechol, anacardol and a fixed oil, somecarpol and Bhilawanol. Fruit containing oil which is blistering and yield is 32 percent, soluble in ether and it turns black by air contact. Fruitskernel contains a little quantity sweet oil.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Madhura, Kaṣāya
Guṇa	: Lagḥu
Vīrya	: Snigdha, Tikṣṇa
Vipāka	: Madhura
Doṣakarma	: Kaphavātaśāmaka, Pittasamśodhaka

Action and Properties**Karma**

- (a) **Ābhyañtara** : Kuṣṭhaghna-kañḍūghna
 Tvacya-svedajanana
 Medhya-nāḍībalya
 Dīpana-pācana-bhedana
 Yakṛduttejaka, Arśoghna, Kṛmighna
 Hṛdayottejaka-śothahara
 Kaphaniḥsāraka, Vātahara
 Vṛṣya-śukrasrāvavṛddhikara-
 śukraśodhana, Garbhāśayottejaka
 Rasāyana-bṛmhaṇa, Plīhāśothahara
 Keśya, Rasagranthyuttejaka

- (b) **Bāhya** : Sphoṭajanana, Sītapraśamana
 Viśaghna.

- Roga** : Kuṣṭha-kṣudra-mahākuṣṭha-
 Īvacā-Īrṇavikāra-śvitra
 Vātarakta-upadamśa
 Vātavikāra, Jvara-jīrṇajvara, Prameha
 Śukradourbalya-dhvajabhaṅga
 Ārtavavikāra-kaṣṭārtava, Kāsa-śvāsa
 Mastiṣkadourbalya-nāḍīdourbalya-
 apasmāra, Arśa
 Yokṛdvikāra-plīhāroga
 Hṛddourbalya, Granthiśoṭha
 Dourbalya-dhātukṣaya
 Agnimāndya-ānāha
 Pācanavikāra-gulma, Udararoga
 Grahaṇī, Sarpadamśa.

Therapeutic uses

The fruit is acrid, hot, sweetish; digestible, aphrodisiac, anthelmintic; staves looseness of bowels; removes vāta and kapha; ascites, skin diseases, piles, dysentery, tumours, fevers, loss of appetite and urinary discharges; it heals ulcers and strengthens the teeth; it is useful in insanity and asthma.

The rind of the fruit is sweet, oleaginous digestible, acrid, sharp; it is stomachic, anthelmintic, laxative; it cures

vāta, and bronchitis, leprosy, ulcers, ascites, piles, dysentery, tumours, inflammations, fevers; and it causes ulcerations.

The sweet fruit is carminative, tonic, aphrodisiac; it lessens inflammation, stomatitis, piles, fever, weakness and paralysis; expels bad humours from the body.

The fruit pulp is tonic and it cures piles and other ailments. The fruit pericarp is burnt and the smoke from burning pericarp is good for tumours.

The oil from fruit kernel is of hot and dry properties; it is anthelmintic, aphrodisiac, tonic, nervine tonic, anti-inflammatory and anodyne; and it useful in paralysis, superficial pains, inflammation, coryza, leucoderma, epilepsy and nervous diseases. It causes ulcers, burns and blebs.

The drug is useful in all kinds of venereal diseases. A brown gum exudes from the bark which is considered valuable medicine in scrofulous, venereal and leprous affections. An oil from the nut such as a vesicant in rheumatism and sprians.

The nut is used internally in asthma after having been steed in milk in butter-milk; and also given as vermifuge. A single fruit is heated in the flame of lamp and the oil is allowed to drop into a quarter-kilo of milk; this draught is given daily in cough, caused by relaxation of the uvula and palate.

The brown oil of the nut raises a black blister within 12 hours as found; so this should be carefully touched with due protection, as the fluid causes eczematous vesicles on any part of the body; it may come in contact with; it also produces irritation, and it is vesicant and strong-counter-irritant and allergic as causing dermatitis. Its powerful irritant properties cause ophthalmia and skin troubles, and also abortion; and the same is also under drug abuse or evil application (by malogners). It needs caution while using medicinally, as the same is useful in medicine.

Externally the fruite-juice is a powerful counter-irritant and vesicant properties, and it is employed as a local application in rheumatism, sprains and leprous nodules. Internally, the oil is mixed some bland oil is used in syphilis, scrofulous affections, dyspepsia, piles and nervous debility.

The pericarp of the fruit contain a bitter and powerful astringent principle which is used commonly as a substitute of the marking nut in India. The tree yields an acrid viscid juice from which a varnish is made; besides medicinal importance.

The juice of the root-bark is also used medicinally on account of its acrid properties.

The thick, black and acrid oil of the marking nut, prepared either by expression or with the aid of heat, or the nut itself; in the form of electuary; it is found quite efficacious in cases of the rheumatism in acute stage showing its specific value in the rheumatoid disorders. The drug is also very useful in asthma, and more or less beneficial in secondary syphilis, hemorrhoids, neuralgia, epilepsy, anaesthesia, paralysis, lepra, psoriasis, and a few other cutaneous affections.

During the administration of drug (marking-nut), either externally or internally, the least appearance of a rash or redness of the skin, or an itchy or un-easy sensation in any part of the body, should be considered as a sign of bad effects of the drug's application, and therefore it must be stopped in use. The drug is also a good medicine in asthma, but the relief it affords in small doses. The ashes of the plant are prescribed in the combination with other drugs for the treatment of snake-bite; its nut is similarly prescribed for scorpion-sting.

The juice of the shell of the nut is a powerful escharotic; it is given in small doses of one to two minims with some bland oil or butter in leprous and scrofulous affections, syphilis, skin diseases, epilepsy, nervous debility, neuralgia, asthma, dyspepsia and piles.

The bruised nut is used as an abortifacient which is a crude rather harmful application (inducing nut in the mouth of uterus). For the cure of piles and painful swelling or swollen parts are fumigated with the smoke from the shells and the oil from nut are strong counter-irritants and vesicants; they are applied over rheumatic parts sprains, leprotic nodules, piles and inflammations of the bones and

joints. The oil extracted from the nut is a powerful escharotic, antiseptic and cholagogue.

The ripe fruit is an acrid, stimulant, digestive, sedative, antispasmodic, alterative, nervine tonic and escharotic; Before the fruit is used internally it should be either well rubbed between two rough stones or boiled with cow's dung and then well washed in water; the fruit thus prepared is given with butter in dyspepsia, piles, skin diseases, nervous debility, worms, palsy and epilepsy. A decoction of the fruit in half ounce doses at first; the dose is gradually increased to eight ounces a day, according to patient's tolerance; the dose is gradually decreased when the desired effect of drug is observed.

In Indian medicine, the use of fruit has been classically recommended after due purification (śodhana) since the impure or raw fruit (without processed under sodhanavidhi) is restricted for medicinal uses being dustic poison, irritant and vesicant besides its toxic nature. The purification method requires its cutting off by mouth (seating of drupe attached with peduncle vṛntamukha) and kept in brick-powder (iṣṭikā cūrṇa) for a week time first; and then the fruits are well rubbed, cleaned and washed in water and finally they are boiled in milk and the fruits are now purified (śudhita) for use in medicine.

The characters of best fruit (praśasta bhallātaka phala) are indicated in medical system alongwith other specific instructions about drug uses. The fruit which is sunk in water is considered suitable for medicinal uses. The signs and symptoms used by improper use of drug are mentioned. The line of treatment for countering the complication and adverse effect is also prescribed. The use of coconut oil and sesame oil (nārikela and tila taila) has been recommended in the condition; for external blisters, itch rash and redness etc. the topical application of oils of coconut, sesame, butter or ghee (ghṛta-navanīta), and ointment of Rāla (malahara) is prescribed as counter-remedy.

In addition, the contra-indication in respect of fruit use has been given in medical system; the infants, pregnant women, old and persons of pitta constitution (prakṛti) are

mentioned in this context. The wholesome diet and use of other articles as favourable and unfavourable (pathyā-pathya) are given.

The fruits are commonly used in medicine and belong to category of prominent and efficacious herbal drugs in Indian medical system carrying importance in treating various diseases and as a restorative (rasāyana) drug.

Parts used : Fruits.

Dose

Fruit (ground) 3-6 gms., Juice 1-4 grains.

Groups (gaṇa)

Dīpanīya, Mūtrasaṅgrahaṇīya, Kuṣṭhaghna (Caraka).
Nyagrodhādi, Mustādi (Suśruta).

Formulations (yoga)

Amṛtabhallāta, Bhallātakādilepa, Bhallāta-ghṛta, Bhallātakādyā taila, Bhallāta-kvātha, Bhallāta-taila, Bhallātakādyavaleha.

BHALLĀTAKA (भल्लातक)

भल्लातकानि तीक्ष्णाग्निपाकीन्यग्निसमानि च ।

भवन्त्यमृतकल्पानि प्रयुक्तानि यथाविधि ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā. 1-2/17.

भल्लातकतैलम्

‘भल्लातकतैलपात्रं सपयस्कं मधुकेन कल्केनाक्षय-
मात्रेण शतपाकं कुर्यादिति समानं पूर्वेण ।’

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 1-2/15.

भल्लातकक्षौद्रम्

‘भल्लातकानां जर्जरीकृतानां पिष्टस्वेदनं पूरयित्वा
भूमावाकण्ठं निस्यातस्य स्नेहभावितस्य दृढस्योपरि
कुम्भस्यारोप्योडुपेनापिधाय कृष्णमृत्तिकावलिप्तं
गोमयाग्निभिरुपस्वेदयेत्, तेषां यं स्वरसः कुम्भं
प्रपद्येत्, तमष्टभागमधुसम्प्रयुक्तं द्विगुणघृतमद्यात्;
तत्प्रयोगाद्द्वर्षशतमजरं वयस्तिष्ठतीति समानं पूर्वेण ।’

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 1-2/14.

भल्लातकः कफजरोगशत्रुः

कफजो न स रोगोऽस्ति न विबन्धोऽस्ति क्वचन ।
तं न भल्लातकं हन्याच्छीघ्रं मेधाग्रिवर्धनम् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, cikitsā. 1-2/15

भल्लातको लघुस्तिक्तः कषायो मधुरो हिमः ।
ग्राही पाके कटुः पित्तकफघ्नोऽनिलप्रदः ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 496.

भल्लातकस्य पक्वफलम्

भल्लातकफलं पक्वं स्वादुपाकरसं गुरु ।
विष्टम्भि बृंहणं रूक्षं हिमं वातबलासकृत् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 497.

भल्लातकास्थि

शुक्रलं दुर्जरं बल्यं रक्तपित्तविनाशनम् ।
तस्यास्थि मधुरं तिक्तं कटुपाकरसं लघु ॥
कषायं पाचनं स्निग्धं तीक्ष्णोष्णं छेदि भेदनम् ।
मेध्यं बहिकरं हन्ति कफवातव्रणोदरम् ॥
कुष्ठार्शोग्रहणीगुल्मशोफानाहज्वरकृमीन् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga 498-500.

भल्लातकमज्जा

‘तन्मज्जा मधुरा वृष्या बृंहणी वातपित्तहा ।’

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 500.

नदीभल्लातकः

नदीभल्लातकस्तिक्तः कषायो मधुरो हिमः ।
सङ्ग्राही वातलो हन्ति रक्तपित्तकफव्रणान् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 501-502.

फलम्

भल्लातकफलं कषायमधुरं कोष्णं कफार्तिभ्रम-
श्वासानाहविबन्धशूलजठराध्मानक्रिमिध्वंसनम् ।

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Āmrādi varga, 69.

मज्जा

तन्मज्जा च विशोषदाहशमनी पित्तापहा तर्पणी ।

वातारोचकहारिदीप्तिजननी पित्तापहा त्वम्लसा ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Āmrādi varga, 69.

भल्लातकः

भल्लातकः कटुस्तिक्तः कषायोष्णः क्रिमीञ्जयेत् ।

कफवातोदरानाहमेहदुर्नामनाशकः ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Āmrādi varga, 68.

यथा कुष्ठानि सर्वाणि हतः खदिरबीजकौ ।

तथैवार्शांसि सर्वाणि वृक्षकारुष्करौ हतः ॥

रसायने भल्लातकयोगाः

‘भल्लातक सर्पिः, भल्लातकक्षीरं, भल्लातकक्षौद्रं, गुडभल्लातकं, भल्लातक-
यूषः, भल्लातकतैलं, भल्लातकपललं, भल्लातकसक्तवः, भल्लातक-
लवणं, भल्लातकतर्पणम्, इति भल्लातकविधानमुक्तं भवति।’

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā. 1-2/16.

प्रकृत्यनुसारेण भल्लातकप्रयोगाः

एते दशविधास्त्वेषां प्रयोगाः परिकीर्तिताः ।

रोगप्रकृतिसात्म्यज्ञस्तान् प्रयागान् प्रकल्पयेत् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā. 1-2/18.

भल्लातकरसायनविधिः

प्राणकामः पुरा जीर्णश्च्यवनाद्याः महर्षयः ।

रसायनैः शिवैरैतैर्बभूर्दुरमितायुषः ॥

ब्राह्मं तपो ब्रह्मचर्यमध्यात्मध्यानमेव च ।

दीर्घायुषो यथाकामं सम्भृत्य त्रिदिवं गताः ॥

तस्मादायुःप्रकर्षार्थं प्राणकामैः सुखार्थिभिः ॥

रसायनविधिः सेव्यो विधिवत्सुसमाहितैः ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā. 1-3/20-22.

भल्लातकपक्वफलम्

भल्लातकफलं पक्वं स्वादुपाकरसं लघु ।

कषायं पाचनं स्निग्धं तीक्ष्णोष्णं छेदि भेदनम् ॥

मेध्यं बह्निकरं हन्ति कफवातव्रणोदरम् ।

कुष्ठार्शोग्रहणीगुल्मशोफानाहज्वरक्रिमीन् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Harītakyaḍi varga, 229-230.

फलमज्जा

तन्मज्जा मधुरा वृष्या बृंहणी वातपित्तहा ।

फलवृन्तम्

वृन्तमारुष्करं स्वादु पित्तघ्नं केश्यमग्रिकृत् ।

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Harītakyaḍi varga, 231.

रसायनार्थमृतभल्लातकम्

सुपक्कभल्लातकफलानि सम्यग्द्विधा विदार्य्याढिकसम्मितानि ।
विपाच्य तोयेन चतुर्गुणेन चतुर्थशेषे व्यपनीय तानि ॥
पुनः पचेत् क्षीरचतुर्गुणेन घृतांशयुक्तेन घनं यथा स्यात् ।
सितोपलाषोडशभिः पलैस्तु विमिश्र्य संस्थाप्य दिनानि सप्त ॥
ततः प्रयोज्याग्निबलेन मात्रा जयेद् गुदोत्थानखिलान् विकारान् ।
कचान् सुनीलान् घनकुञ्चिताग्रान् सुपर्णदृष्टिं सुकुमारताञ्च ।
जवं हयानाञ्च मतङ्गजं बलं स्वरं मयूरस्य हुताशदीप्तिम् ॥
स्त्रीवल्लभत्वं लभते प्रजाञ्च नीरोगमब्दद्विशतानि चायुः ॥
न चात्रपाने परिहार्य्यमस्ति न चातपे चाध्वनि मैथुने च ।
प्रयोगकाले सकलामयानां राजाहयं सर्वरसायनानाम् ॥

Cakradatta, Rasāyanādhikāra, 191-195.

वाजीकरणे (वाजिवत् लिङ्गवर्धनार्थं) भल्लातकादितैलम्

Cakradatta, Vṛsyādhikāra, 66-45.

भल्लातकस्य सामान्यगुणाः

भल्लातकः कषायोष्णः शुक्रलो मधुरो लघुः ।

वातश्लेष्मोदरानाहकुष्ठार्शोग्रहणीगदान् ॥

हन्ति गुल्मज्वरश्चित्रवह्निमान्द्यकृमिब्रणान् ।

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Harītakyaḍi varga, 232.

भल्लातः कटुतिक्तोष्णो मधुरः कृमिनाशनः ।

गुल्मार्शोग्रहणीकुष्ठान् हन्ति वातकफामयान् ॥

Dhanvantari Nighaṇṭu.

प्लीहोदरे

‘भल्लातकाभयाजाजीगुडेन सह मोदकः ।

सप्तरात्रैर्निहन्त्याशु प्लीहानमर्तिदारुणम् ॥

Baṅgasena.

इन्द्रलुमरोगे भल्लातकादिलेपः

Cakaradatta. 55-99.

कफगुल्मे भल्लातकघृतम्

भल्लातकात् कल्ककषायपक्वं सर्पिः पिबेत् शर्करया विमिश्रम् ।
तद्रक्तपित्तं विनिहन्ति पीतं बलासगुल्मं मधुना समेतम् ॥

Cakaradatta, Gulma cikitsādhikāra, 30-100.

रसायने

तैलं भल्लातकानां तु पिबेन्मासं यथाबलम् ।
सर्वोपद्रवनिर्मुक्तो जीवेद्वर्षशतं दृढः ॥

Brnda, Rasāyanādhikāra.

अर्शःसु

तिक्तारुष्करसंयोगं भक्षयेदग्रिवर्धनम् ।
कुष्ठरोगहरं श्रेष्ठमर्शसां नाशनं परम् ॥

Śoḍhala, Arśorogādhikāra.

इन्द्रलुमे

‘इन्द्रलुमापहो लेपो मधुना.... भल्लातकरसोऽथवा ।’

Śoḍhala, Śirorogādhikāra.

कुष्ठचिकित्सायां भल्लातकादिलेपः

Cakaradatta, Kuṣṭha cikitsā, 50/50-51.

उरुस्तम्भे

भल्लातकफलं पिष्ट्वा पिप्पलीमूलसंयुतम् ।
उरुस्तम्भविनाशाय पिबेन्मधुसमन्वितम् ॥

Śoḍhala, Vātarogādhikāra.

बाजीकरणार्थम्

भल्लातकैश्चतुर्भिश्च गोदुग्धस्याढकं शृतम् ।
पीतं करोति वृषतां सुजीर्णस्यापि देहिनः ॥

Śoḍhala, Bājikaraṇādhikāra.

क्रिमिनाशनार्थम्

भल्लातकास्थिस्वरसं विडङ्गार्धेन संयुक्तम् ।
सूर्यतप्तं लिहेद्युक्त्या सिद्धक्रिमिविनाशनम् ॥

Śoḍhala, Krimirogādhikāra.

रसायनार्थम्

‘भल्लातकानि अनुपहतानि अनामयानि आहत्य एकमादाय द्विधा
त्रिधा चतुर्धा वा छेदयित्वा कषायकल्पेन विपाच्य कषायस्य
शुक्तिमनुष्णां धृताभ्यक्ततालुजिह्वौष्ठः प्रातः प्रातः उपसेवेत । ततोऽपराह्णे
क्षीरं सर्पिरोदन इत्याहारः । एवमेकैकं वर्धयेत् यावत् पञ्चेति ।’

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā. 1-2.

सर्वकुष्ठेषु

‘भल्लातकाभयाविडङ्गसिद्धं वा सर्वेषाम् ।
भल्लातकतैलं वेति ।’

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Cikitsā. 9.

विषसंसृष्टे अञ्जने

‘.....पुष्पं भल्लातकस्य वा ।’

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Kalpa. 1.

उरुस्तम्भे भल्लातकादिव्वाथः

Cakradatta, Urustambha cikitsā, 24-4.

ज्वरागमनवासरे

‘सगुडैः भल्लातकमथापि वा ।’

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Cikitsā, 1-153.

शुष्कार्शःसु

‘शुष्केषु भल्लातकमग्र्यमुत्तम् ।’

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Cikitsā 8-162.

भल्लातकतुवरकतैलम्

आरुष्करं तौवरकं तैलं तीक्ष्णं कषायकम् ।
वीर्योष्णं मधुरं तिक्तं तथोर्ध्वाधोविशोधनम् ॥
मेदोमेहकृमिश्लेष्मशुक्रार्शःकुष्ठवातजित् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Taila varga, 324-325.

नाडीव्रणे भल्लातकाद्यं तैलम्

Bhāvaprakāśa, Madhyakhaṇḍa, 49-28., Cakradatta, 45-19.

कुष्ठरोगे

अमृतभल्लातकाद्यवलेहम्

महाभल्लातकावलेहम्

Bhāvaprakāśa, Kuṣṭharogādihikāra, 54/74-98.

भल्लातकोत्थशोथहराः लेपाः

लेपोऽरुष्करं शोथं निहन्ति तिलदुग्धमधुकनवनीतैः ।
तत्तरुतलमृत्स्ना वा शालदलैर्वाऽपि न चिरेण ॥

Cakradatta, Śoṭha cikitsā, 39-52.

सर्वरोगहरी रसायनार्थं भल्लातकतैलम्

तैलं भल्लातकानाञ्च पिबेन्मासं यथाबलम् ।
सर्वोपतापनिर्मुक्तो जीवेद्वर्षशतं दृढः ॥

Cakradatta, Kuṣṭha Cikitsā, 50-92.

कुष्ठार्शक्रिमिबलीपलितनाशनार्थं मेध्यरसायनयोगः

भल्लातकक्वाथरसायनम्

पञ्च भल्लातकांश्छित्वा साधयेद्विधिवज्जले ।
कषायं तं पिबेच्छीतं घृतेनाक्तौष्ठतालुकः ॥
पञ्चवृद्ध्या पिबेद् यावत् सप्ततिं ह्यासयेत्ततः ।
जीर्णेऽद्यादोहनं शीतं घृतक्षीरोपसंहितम् ॥
एतद्रसायनं मेध्यं वलीपलितनाशनम् ।
कुष्ठार्शःक्रिमिदोषघ्नं दुष्टशुक्रविशोधनम् ॥

Cakradatta, Kuṣṭh cikitsā, 50/89-91.

चरकसंहितायां भल्लातकः

Caraka Samhitā,

Sūtra. 3-4; 4-6. 33; 18-3, 26-122, 27-162.

Vimāna 7-24; 8-149, 151.

Cikitsā. 1-2/13-17, 19 etc., Kalpa. 1-22.

सुश्रुतसंहितायां भल्लातकः

Suśruta Samhitā,

Sūtra. 38-47, 53 etc., Cikitsā. 1-89, 92, 108 etc.

Kalpa. 1-71, Śārīra., 10-5, Uttara 34-3 etc.

अष्टाङ्गहृदये भल्लातकः

Aṣṭāṅg Hṛdaya, Sūtra. 6-134 etc., Cikitsā. 1-154 etc.

Kalpa. 1-15, etc., Uttara. 3-47, etc.

BHĀRŪGĪ

Botanical name

Clerodendrum serratum (Linn.) Moon.

Family : Verberanaceae

Classical name : Bhārṅgī-Bhārgī

Sanskrit names

Bhārṅgī, Bhārgī, Brāhmaṇayaṣṭikā, Kharaśāka.

Regional names

Bhāraṅgī, Ban-bakrī (Hind.), Bamanhaṭi (Beng, Ori.), Bharāṅg (Mar. Guj.), Bamunhaṭi (Beng.), Bhāraṅgī (Guj.).

Description

A shrub 0.9-2.4 meters high, scarcely woody; not much branched; stems bluntly quadrangular; young parts usually glabrous. Leaves often some terrate as well as opposite (passing into bracts above); sometimes reaching as much as 28 cm. long but usually 12.5-15 by 5.7-6.8 cm., oblong or elliptic; acute, coarsely and sharply serrate (sp, etimes but rarely only dentate), glabrous; base acute. petioles very short 6 mm. long.

Flowers numerous, showy, in lax pubescent dichotomous cymes, with a pair of acute bracts of each branching and a flower in the fork, each in the axil of a large leafy bract and collectively forming a long lax terminal usually pyramidal erect panicle 15-25 cm. long; pedic often twisted so as to make the large lower corolla-tube appear uppermost, bracts 1.3-3.6 cm. long from obovate to lanceolate, pubescent, subpersistent, often coloured. Calyx 5 mm. long, puberulous, cup-shaped, truncate, not enlarged in fruit; lobes very small, triangular, acute, ciliolate. Corolla glabrous outside, pale blue; the larger lower lobe (often appearing upper in flower), dark bluish purple; tube 1 cm. long, cylindrical, hairy within at the insertion of the stamens, oblique, flat, spreading 1 cm. long; the lower lobe lip-like, more than 1.3 cm. long, concave, deflexed. Filaments much curved, densely hairy at the base. Ovary and style glabrous.

Drupe 6 mm. long, somewhat succulent, broadly obovoid, normally 4-lobed with 1 pyrene in each lobe (1.3 often suppressed).

Roots

The root is characterized by a stratified cork; secondary phloem, interspersed with sclereids and ring of porous xylem. Xylem rays and xylem parenchyma contain starch grains of the type found in pattern parenchyma, xylem rays and xylem parenchyma contains calcium oxalate crystals. Powder of the roots is yellow-brown.

Roots are thick and knotted; they are almost inert and tasteless; the thin bark constitutes only one-fifth of the weight of the dried root, and contains a small quantity of the peculiar bitter principles.

Flowering and fruiting time

May-August; summers to rainy seasons.

Distribution

It is more or less throughout India. Ceylon and Malay Peninsula.

Throughout the country ascending to 1524 meters altitude from sea level. It is specially found in Karnataka, Kerala and Tamilnadu; and in Himalayan Terai region specially Nepal, Kumaon, Bengal and Bihar; also in southern region in India.

Market drug

The drug Bhāraṅgī sold in northern India market of drugs have been found to be bark of *Gardenia turgida* Roxb and *Gardenia latifolia* Ait. The raw material of these substitute and adulterant drug plants are reportedly supplied from Madhya Pradesh mainly.

Chemical composition

Roots contain starch, resin, fat and an alkaloid. It contains saponins and D-mannitol.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Tikta, Kaṭu, Kaṣāya
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphavātaśāmaka.

Action and Properties

- Karma** : Kaphaghna-Kāshara-Śvāsahara
Svedajanana
Āmapācana-jvaraghna
Dīpana-pācana-anulomana
Raktaśodhaka-śothahara
Kṛmighna, Dāhapraśamana
Raktotkleśaka, Vraṇapācana
Śothahara, granthiśamana.
- Roga**
- (a) **Ābhyantara** : Kāsa-śvāsa-yakṣmā-hikkā-pratiśyāya
Aruci-Agnimāndya-gulma
Raktavikāra-śoṭha, Jvara, Pīnasa
Apsmāra.
- (b) **Bāhya** : Vraṇaśoṭha, Granthi
Galagaṇḍa-gaṇḍamālā.

Therapeutic uses

The root has a bitter, pungent and bitter taste; it is dry, heating. It is stomachic, anthelmintic and antiasthmatic drug; and useful in asthma, bronchitis, cough, hiccough, fever, consumption, epilepsy, ozoena, tumours, diseases of blood, burning sensation, consumption, glandular affections, wounds and tuberculosis. It allays vāta and kapha., body humours.

The roots increase appetite; lessen expectoration; and useful in inflammation, bronchitis, asthma and fevers.

The leaves, boiled in oil and butter made into an ointment, are useful in cephalagia and ophthalmia.

The seeds are bruised and boiled in butter milk and used as aperient and in treatment of dropsy.

The roots are used in catarrhal and febrile affections. It is very effective in asthamatic and lungs affections, and malarial fevers; and also in oedema.

It is given frequently given in asthma, cough bronchitis, dyspnoea, and catarrhal affections of lungs; used in respiratory diseases, rheumatism and dyspepsia. The decoction of roots is useful in lungs affections.

The leaves are considered useful among the snake-bite remedies and the roots are for scorpion-sting.

It is antispasmodic, carminative, expectorant, febrifuge, tonic and refrigerant. Antihistaminic principle isolated from the drug is active substance and constituents; as the drug contains saponin and D-mannitol and found to cause the development of anti-histaminic and antiallergic substances in lungs tissues; and it is effective against bronchial asthma and allied disorders.

It is useful in diseases of blood and oedema, and also in abdominal disorders as well as in glandular affections and ulcers.

The leaves are externally applied over wounds and glandular affections. Roots are prescribed for use as a paste over glandular diseases.

The juice of the roots mixed with ginger juice is orally used in cough, bronchitis and coryza. The decoction of roots is given in respiratory and other diseases where the drug is recommended, It is also administered internally in other forms and in combination with other drugs.

Parts used : Roots.

Dose : 1-3 gms.

Formulations (yoga)

Bhārgigūḍa, Bhārṅgyādi kvātha, Kanakāsava, Śṛṅgyādi cūrṇa, Yogarāja guggulu.

Groups (gana) : Pippalyādi (Suśruta).

BHĀRṄGĪ- BHĀRGĪ (भाङ्गी-भार्गी)

भार्गी तिक्ता कषायोष्णा दीपनी पाचनी लघुः ॥

कट्वी रूक्षा ज्वरश्वासकासशोफकफानिलान् ।

पीनसारुचिगुल्मास्त्रयक्ष्माणं विनियच्छति ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 1135-1136.

भार्गी रूक्षा कटुस्तिक्ता रुच्योष्णा पाचनी लघुः ।

दीपनी तुवरा गुल्मरक्तमुत्राशयेद् ध्रुवम् ॥

शोथकासकफश्वासपीनसज्वरमारुतान् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Harītakṛyādi varga, 188.

भाङ्गीं तु कटुतिकोष्णा कासश्वासविनाशनी ।
शौफन्नक्रिमिघ्नी च दाहज्वरनिवारिणी ।

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Pippalyādi varga, 151.

हिक्काश्वासे भार्गीनागरादियोगः

भार्गीनागरयोः कल्कं मरिचक्षारयोस्तथा ।
.....चाम्बुना पिबेत् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā. 17-110.

अपस्मारे भार्ग्यादिनावनम्

भार्गी वचा नागदन्ती..... ।
.....पादोक्ता मूत्रपेषिताः ॥
योगास्त्रयोऽतः षड् बिन्दून् पञ्च वा नावयेद्भिषक् ।

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 10-42-43.

श्वासरोगे भार्गीगुडम्

Bhāvaprakāśa, Śvāsādhikāra, 14-42/47.
Cakradatta, Hikkāśvāsa cikitsā, 13/25-30.

गलगण्ड-गण्डमाला-कुरण्डे भार्गीमूलप्रलेपः

गलगण्डं गण्डमालां कुरण्डांश्च विनाशयेत् ।
पिष्टं ज्येष्ठाम्बुना मूलं लेपाद् ब्राह्मणयष्टिजम् ॥

Cakradatta, Galagaṇḍādi cikitsā, 41-24.

चरकसंहितायां भाङ्गीं

Caraka Samhitā,
Sūtra. 27-142., Vimāna. 8-158.
Cikitsā. 3-318 etc., Kalpa. 7-14., Siddhi. 4-3, 12.

सुश्रुतसंहितायां भाङ्गीं

Suśruta Samhitā,
Sūtra. 38-15, 21 etc., Cikitsā, 6-13 etc.,
Kalpa 5-69; 6-15., Uttara. 39-191 etc.

अष्टाङ्गहृदये भाङ्गीं

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya,
Sūtra. 15-28, 30, 33., Cikitsā. 1-62 etc.
Kalpa 4-55, 63., Uttara. 2-10, 49, 51, 76, etc.

BHAVYA

Botanical name : *Dillenia indica* Linn.

Family : Dilleniaceae

Classical name : Bhavya

Sanskrit name : Bhavya

Regional names

Chilata, Chalta (Hind.), Chalata (Beng.), Rumphā (Nep.), Karambal (Mar.), Uva (Tam.), Petta kalinga (Tel.)

Description

A middle-sized tree; trunk straight but not high; branches spreading, forming a round and shady head.

Leaves fascicled at the ends of the branches, oblong-lanceolate, acuminate, 20-30 by about 10 cm. sharply serrate; the nerves close running into the serratures, and forking at the margins, upper surface and the nerves beneath more or less pubescent; petioles 2.5-5 cm. long channeled, sheathing.

Flowers often exceeding 15 cm. diam., white, fragrant, appearing with the leaves, usually solitary towards the end of each branchlets; pedicels about 7.5 cm. long, clavate, sound, smooth. Sepals orbicular, concave, thick and fleshy. Petals oblong. Stamens many, the inner larger, and arching over the shorter outer ones.

Fruit large, 7.5-10 cm. diam.; hard outside, fleshy within. Seeds many imbedded in glutinous pulp, compressed, with hairy margins.

Flowering and fruiting time

Summer to winter seasons.

Distribution

It is found from Nepal to Assam and south to Ceylon, Malay Peninsula, Indo-china and Malaya. In India, found specially in southern region, Bengal, Bihar, Assam and other parts of country.

Chemical composition

Fruits contain tannin, glucose and malic acids. Seeds contain mostly mucilaginous matter.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Madhura, Amla, Kaṣāya
Gūṇa	: Guru
Vīrya	: Śīta
Vipāka	: Amla
Doṣakarma	: Vātaśāmaka, Kaphapittavardhaka.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Rocana (hṛdya) Mukhaśodhana (Vaktra-āsyaviśodhana) Viṣṭambhi, Grāhī, Āma-sūlahara Kaphaniḥsāraka, Jvaraghna.
Roga	: Vāta vikāra-paittikavikāra Mukharoga-mukhavairasya Aruci, Tṛṣṇā, Hṛddourbalya Kāsa, Jvara, Raktātisāra.

Therapeutic uses

The raw fruit is sour, bitter and pungent. The ripe fruit is sweet, sour and tasty. It allays vāta and kapha humours. It dispels fatigue and checks abdominal pains.

The juice of the fruit, mixed with sugar and water, is used as a cooling beverage in fevers and as a cough mixture. The fruit is slightly laxative, and is apt to induce diarrhoea if too freely indulged in.

The bark and leaves are astringent.

The juice mixed with water and sugar-by preparing syrup (pānaka) is given in bilious affections. Fruit is useful in dyspepsia, loss of appetite and vocal cavity complaints; and it improves taste and appetizer; it allays thirst and burning sensation.

The juice and syrup of juice is useful in fever and for checking the complications caused with bile (pitta).

The leaves are used in bloody diarrhoea.

The fruit is useful in cardiotoxic and given in heart troubles. The juice is useful in cough and it is expectorant.

Parts used : Fruits, Leaves.

Dose

10-20 gms. Fruit Juice, 2-4 gms. Leaves powder, 20-40 gms. Syrup (pānaka).

BHAVYA (भव्य)

मधुराम्लकषायं च विष्टम्भि गुरु शीतलम् ।

पित्तश्लेष्मकरं भव्यं ग्राहि वक्त्रविशोधनम् ॥

Caraka Samhitā.

हृद्यं स्वादु कषायाम्लं भव्यमास्यविशोधनम् ।

पित्तश्लेष्मकरं ग्राहि गुरु विष्टम्भि शीतलम् ॥

Suśruta Samhitā.

‘ भव्यं तालफलोपमं केवलवल्कलसंहितमात्रमित्यपरे इति ।’

Dalhana, Suśruta Samhitā.

भव्यमम्लं कटूष्णञ्च बालं वातकफापहम् ।

पक्वन्तु मधुराम्लञ्च रुचिकृत्सामशूलहत् ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Āmrādi varga, 97.

BHENDĀ

Botanical name : Hibiscus esculentus Linn.

Family : Malvaceae

Classical name : Bheṇḍā

Sanskrit names

Bheṇḍā, Kaṇaphala, Bhiṇḍā, Astrapatraka, Bhiṇḍatika, Darvikā, Catupuṇḍa, Vṛttabīja, Gandhamūlā, Kaṇaparna, Picchila, Catuspāda, Suśāka, Kṣatrasambhava.

Regional names

Bhiṇḍi, Ramturai (Hind.), Bhiṇḍu (Guj.), Bheṇḍa (Mar.), Bhiṇḍi, Ramturai, Bhiṇḍatori (Punj.), Vendai, Vendi (Tam.), Bheṇḍi (Urd.), Bamiya (Arab.), Bendakai-naru (Can.), Bheṇḍi (Dec.), Ramtorāi, Dhendhas (Beng.); Edible Hibiscus, Gobba, Gumbo, Lady's Finger, Ochro, Okra (Eng.).

Description

An erect, herbaceous, hairy annual; not prickly.

Leaves cordate, 3-5-lobed; lobe oblong, coarsely toothed, scabrous; stalks bristly, long, petioles 15 cm. long, hairy; stipules subulate.

Pedicels about 2.5 cm. long. Involucre bracts 8-10, deciduous, equalling the calyx. Flowers yellow with purple centre. Staminal tube antheriferous throughout.

Fruit a capsule, pyramidal-oblong, 6-8 ribbed, 7.9 by 2.5-3.2 cm. Seeds striate, hairy.

Flowering and fruiting time

Rainy to autumn seasons; cold and different seasons.

Distribution

It is naturalised in India and Pakistan. Cultivated throughout India under common horticultural practice as a fruit-vegetable. Naturalised or cultivated in all tropical countries.

Chemical composition

It contains thiamine 0.06 mg., riboflavine 0.06 mg., ascorbic acid 20 mg., nycine 0.08 mg. and (prajivaka) vitamin A 740 I.U. per 100 gms. It also contains iodine which has higher content in green portion of plant; as iodine is richer in branches or twigs and leaves than roots. Seeds contain oil which is like other edible oils. In general the plant contains large quantity of bland, viscid mucilage.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Madhura
Guṇa	: Śīta, guru, snigdha
Vīrya	: Śīta
Vipāka	: Madhura
Doṣakrma	: Vātakphakara, Pittaśāmaka.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Vṛṣya, Balya, Rucikara Mārdavakara (snehana) Sara.
Roga	: Śukraśaya, Dhātuśaya, Dourbalya Jvara, Pauruṣagranthiśoṭha

Upadañśa, Pradara, Mūtravikāra
 Jirṇaāmātisāra-pravāhikā
 Śukrameha, Kāsa, Arśa
 Koṣṭhabaddhatā (Koṣṭharoukṣya).

Therapeutic uses

The mucilaginous fruit is sour and tasty; tonic, astringent and aphrodisiac; it causes vāta and kapha humours; it may dyspepsia and produce ozaena; it is to be avoided in bronchitis, rheumatic diseases, dyspepsia and nasal complaints. (excess uses).

The mucilaginous fruits are sweetish; cooling, stomachic and aphrodisiac; it enriches blood and cures biliousness. It is useful in gonorrhoea, urinary discharges, stranguary and diarrhoea.

The leaves are used in the form of emollient poultice. The mucilage from the fruit is useful in gonorrhoea and irritation of the genito-urinary system.

The fruits boiled in milk are useful in cough. The plant is very much used as cooling mucilage; every part of the plant is considered emollient and employed as such in ailments.

The plant containing large quantity of bland and viscid mucilage which is a valuable emollient, demulcent and diuretic.

A decoction of the fresh fruits is given in fevers, catarrhal affections, gonorrhoea, cystitis, dysuria, leucorrhoea and other ailments.

A soup is made of the bland mucilage of the fruit is efficacious in dysentery especially in the chronic stage. The unripe fruit is eaten in spermatorrhoea and cough. A poultice of the fresh fruit is an emollient.

The seeds are fried and employed to prepare a coffee-like drink. Seeds oil is also used as edible oil. Fruit is useful in cough specially relapsing nature and throat affection. Fruits are useful as aphrodisiac and seminal disorders.

In traditional medicine it is reported that the roots are ground and made into a decoction; it is used orally in cases of piles and bleeding haemorrhoids.

Fruits are common vegetable of household utility as food article; and the seeds are also edible under food items.

Parts used : Fruits, Seeds, Roots.

Dose : Edible; food article-vegetable.

BHENDĀ (भेण्डा)

भेण्डा-गन्धमूला-करपर्णफलम्

भेण्डा त्वम्लरसा चोष्णा ग्राहिणी रुचिकारिका ।

राजनामानिघण्टे द्रव्येषु वृष्या परा स्मृता ॥

Nighaṅṭu Ratnākara.

करपर्णफलं रुच्यं पिच्छिलं गुरु वातलम् ।

वृष्यं श्लेमकरं बल्यं शुक्रवृद्धिकरं परम् ॥

कासे मन्दानले वाते पीनसेषु विनिन्दितम् ।

Nighaṅṭu, Saṅgraha.

BIBHĪTAKA

Botanical name

Terminalia bellirica Roxb.

Terminalia belerica Roxb.

Family : Combretaceae

Classical name : Bibhītaka-Vibhītaka

Sanskrit names

Bibhītaka, Vibhītaka, Akṣa, Kaliphala, Bhūtavāsa, Kalidrūma, Karṇaphala.

Regional names

Baherhā, Baherā (Hind., Guj., Mar.), Bayarha (Beng.), Akkam (Tam.), Tadi (Tel.), Balilaj (Arab.), Balil (Pers.); Belleric Myrobalan (Eng.).

Description

A large deciduous tree, 10-20 meters high; with thick and dark-green bark; tree tall and straight growing to a height of 24-30 meters with the girth of 2.4-3.5 meters; eas-

ily recognised (for distance) by its characteristic bark and massive crown; bark bluish grey, covered with numerous fine, longitudinal cracks, blaze yellow; wood yellowish grey, hard, course, not durable.

Leaves gathered about the extremities of the branches; alternate, coriaceous, 10-20 by 7-15 cm., broadly elliptic or elliptic-obovate, rounded or rarely subacute or shortly acuminate, both surfaces puberulous when young glabrous and reticulate when old; the margins entire, pellucid, base narrowed; main nerves 6-8 pairs, spreading prominent, the midrib prominent on both surfaces; petioles 2.5-10 cm. long, without glands at apex. Leaves greyish-green in colour and pale beneath.

Flowers pale greenish yellow, with an offensive odour, in axillary slender spikes longer than the petioles but shorter than the leaves; those in the upper part of the spikes male and very shortly pedicelled; those in the lower part hermaphrodite, sessile. Bracts linear; early caducous. Calyx pubescent outside, inside woolly with long brown hairs; teeth broadly triangular, acute. Young ovary always tomentose.

Drupe 12-25 mm. diam., ovoid, grey, suddenly narrowed into a very short stalk, velvety, thick walled and hard. obscurely 5-angled when dried.

The leaves when mature are glabrous and usually punctate on the upper side (the punctations much more permanent than in the other species.)

Fruits : Epicarp has numerous smooth unicellular pointed trichomes; mesocarp and endocarp made of parenchymatous cells in which there are numerous elongated as well as rounded stone cells and conducting elements. Crystals of calcium oxalate are abundantly present in pericarp as well as cotyledonous cells; endospermic cells are absent. Cotyledons is made of angular parenchyma containing food material.

Drupe globose, suddenly narrowed into a short stalk, fleshy; covered with a close tomentum; the stone is hard and pentagonal and contains a sweet oily kernel.

Bark : The bark is bluish grey, with many fine vertical cracks. The wood is yellowish grey, hard, no heartwood; annual rings indistinct pores very scanty, large, frequently subdivided, joined by irregular way, concentrate bands of soft loose cellular tissues.

Flowering and Fruiting time

February-April, Summer to Winter seasons.

Distributions

It is found throughout the deciduous forests of India, Burma and Ceylon below elevations of about 3,000 feet, except in dry and arid region of Sind and Rajputana. Specially in hilly regions in India.

Chemical composition

Fruit contains 17 percent tennin. Seed kernel contain 25 percent fixed oil. The fruits contain gallo-tannic acid, colouring matter and resion. Seeds yield greenish-yellow oil.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṣāya
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa.
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Madhura
Doṣakarma	: Kaphahara, Tridoṣaghna.

Action and Properties

Karma

- (a) **Ābhyañtara** : Chedana-śleṣmahara (Kaphaghna)
 Mādaka-vedanāsthāpana
 Dīpana-anulomana-kṛmighna
 Recana (ardhapakva phala or semi-ripen fruit)
 Grāhī (pakvaśuṣka phala or Ripendry fruit), Tṛṣṇā-chardinigrahaṇa
 Raktastambhana, Bājikaraṇa
 Dhātuvardhaka, Cakṣuṣya
 Svarya-kañṭhya, Keśya
 Vāta-pitta-kaphaśāmaka
 Dāhapraśamana.

(b) **Bāhya** : Śoṭha-vedanāyukta vikārahara
 Tvacya-kuṣṭhaghna-kaṇḍūghna
 Keśya, Sadyovraṇa
 Raktarodhaka-ropaṇa, Caḅsuṣya.

Therapeutic uses

The bark is useful in asthma and leucoderma. The fruit is bitter, pungent acrid; it is digestible, laxative and anthelmintic. They are useful in bronchitis, sore throat, biliousness, inflammations, strangury, asthma, and in diseases of the eye, the nose, the heart and the urinary bladder. The seeds are acrid and intoxicating; the seeds are useful in thirst, vomiting, bronchitis, corneal ulcers and they relieve vāta.

The fruit is bitter, astringent, tonic, attenuant, aperient and antipyretic; it is useful in dyspepsia, bilious headache and diarrhoea; and applied to the eyes, piles and used as brain tonic.

The fruit in combination with other drugs is prescribed for snake-bite and scorpion-sting.

The kernel of the fruit has narcotic properties. The kernel is also eaten, and sometime with betelnut and other nuts. Fruits are used as an astringent, usually in combination with chebulic myrobalans. The pulp is used in medicine.

The fruit is chiefly employed in dropsy, cough, bronchitis, piles, diarrhoea and leprosy and also in fevers. When half ripe, it is considered purgative, when fully ripe or dried, it is used as astringent. Mixed with honey, it is used as an application in cases of ophthalmia.

The oil is considered a good application for the hairs. The gum is considered useful as a demulcent and purgative.

The Beleric myrobalan, like other kinds of Terminalia, affords a yellow fixed oil which is prepared by rural people in some areas (central India) and used as substitute for ghee and as an application for rheumatism.

The bark is also mild purgative; and used in cough and other ailments. The gum is mostly in vernicular pieces of a yellowish brown colour in water in forms a bulky gelatinous mass of insipid taste.

The ripe and dry fruit, known as Bleric myrobalan, is astringent, tonic and laxative, it is given in piles, diarrhoea, fever and dropsy. A decoction or infusion of 15 to 40 grains of the pulp of fruit is administered. A mixture of the pulp of the fruit, with salt, long pepper and honey is a household remedy for cough, hoarseness of voice, sore-throat and dyspepsia. The fried fruit roasted after covering it with a wheat flour paste is another popular remedy for sore-throat, cough and catarrh; as a purgative half a ripe fruit is used.

The fruits are antipyretic, antiseptic, astringent, bitter, laxative, narcotic (seed-kernel) and purgative. It is used in cough, biliousness, diarrhoea, dysentery, dyspepsia, dropsy, headache, inflammatory affections of small intestine and throat affections. Fruit is useful in skin diseases, enlargement of spleen and eye troubles.

The fruit of the Beleric myrobalan forms an ingredient of an important group of three myrobalans (emblic, beleric and chebulic myrobalans), commonly known as Triphalā, which has wide range of uses in number of ailments and medicinal preparations. It is one of the popular household recipes for constipation as laxative and eyes troubles as eye-wash lotion, and also hair washing water, besides other uses in medicine for curing ailments as well as preventive purpose.

The fruits are widely used in various ailments caused by all the three body humours or tridoṣa, but specially indicated in the diseases due to vāta and kapha, the two humours.

The drug is externally used in different ailing conditions, besides very frequent internal administration in many treatment of diseases as a valuable medicine.

The fruits (seedless pulp) is useful for applying as a paste over inflamed and painful organs; and the seeds oil is similarly applied to afflicted parts. The oil obtained from the seeds is topically applied to skin complaints, leucoderma, dermatitis, baldness and other head (skull) ailments.

On the fresh cuts and wounds, the fine powder of fruits is dusted to check bleeding as an astringent and styptic. In the conjunctivitis, the paste of fruit is good.

In the treatment of eye diaseses and as protective of eyes health, the fruit is used externally as well as internally. Which is administered in different forms.

The seeds kernel is orally used in insomnia, nervous disorders and vātavyādhi. In general debility, the fruit is useful and it is specially given in the disorders of lymph, blood, tissues, muscles, fat and other body components. It is alternative, restorative and protective medicine as one of the dhātuvardhaka drugs (Rasāyana being component of Triphalā); and specially it is aphrodisiac and sexual tonic, and a particularly the seed is useful against impotency and for sexual excitement, but careful use is suggested to be narcotic.

The pieces of fruit are used for chewing in cough, sore throat, coryza, cold, asthma, bronchitis and other similar complaints, in addition to the frequent use of fruit in various forms in these respiratory disorders, due to the expectorant, antiasthmatic, antispasmodic, antipyretic and other properties of fruits.

In cases of dyspepsia, flatulence, vomiting, piles, thirst, worms and similar disease of digestive system, the fruits are useful for oral uses.

The semi-ripe fruit is given in constipation and the fully-ripe and dried fruit is used in diarrhoea and in dysentery. The fruits are helpful to regularise the intestinal functions (and its employment in Triphalā).

The fruits are also useful in internal haemorrhage and biliousness including burning sensation.

Dose : Fruit powder 1-3 gms.

Formulations (Yoga)

Triphalā cūrṇa, Bibhītaka taila, Phalatrikādi kvātha, Tālīśādi cūrṇa, Lavaṅgādi vaṭi, Akṣādi cūrṇa, Kalitaruphalādi cūrṇa, Akṣakāḍya-triphalāḍya-louha, Triphalā guggulu.

Groups (gaṇa)

Jvarahara, Virecanopaga (Caraka.)

Triphalā, Mustādi (Suśruta.)

BIBHĪTAKA - VIBHĪTAKA (बिभीतक-विभीतक)

बिभीतकं स्वादुपाकं कषायं कफपित्तनुत् ।
उष्णवीर्यं हिमस्पर्शं भेदनं कासनाशनम् ॥
कफं नेत्रहितं केश्यं कृमिवैस्वर्यनाशनम् ।

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Harītakṣyādi varga, 36-37,
अक्षं कषायमधुरं पाके पित्तकफापहम् ।
उष्णवीर्यं हिमस्पर्शं केश्यं वैस्वर्यजन्तुजित् ॥
चक्षुष्यं भेदनं रूक्षं लघु कासविनाशनम् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 243-244.

बिभीतक(अक्ष)मज्जा

अक्षमज्जा मदकरः कफमारुतनाशनः ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 244.

बिभीतकमज्जातृदृच्छर्दिकफवातहरो लघुः ।
कषायो मदकृच्चायं धात्रीमज्जाऽपि तद्गुणः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Harītakṣyādi varga, 27-28.

विभीतकगुणाः

विभीतकः कटुस्तित्तः कषायोष्णः कफापहः ।
चक्षुष्यः पलितघ्नश्च विपाके मधुरो लघुः ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Āmrādi varga, 232.

बिभीतकः कटुः पाके लघुवैस्वर्यजित् सरः ।
कासाक्षिवक्त्ररोगघ्नः केशवृद्धिकरः परः ॥

Dhanvantari Nighaṇṭu.

रसासृङ्मांसमेदोजान् दोषान् हन्ति बिभीतकम् ।
स्वरमेदकफोत्क्लेशपित्तरोगविनाशनम् ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 27.

‘बिभीतको मदकरः कफमारुतनाशनः ।’

Suśruta Saṁhitā.

श्वासरोगे

प्रस्थं बिभीतकानामस्थि विना साधयेदजामूत्रे ।

अयमवलेहो लीडो मधुसहितः श्वासकासघ्नः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Śvāsādhikāra 14-32.

शिवत्रकुष्ठे

बिभीतकत्वङ्मलयूजटानां क्वाथेन पीतं गुडसंयुतेन ।

Bhāvaprakāśa, Kuṣṭharogādhikāra, 54-150.

पित्तज्वरे दाहशान्त्यर्थम्

‘बिभीतकास्थिमज्जायाः दाहे कुर्यात्प्रलेपनम् ।’

Śoḍhala.

श्वासे उर्ध्वहिक्कायां च

कर्षं कलिफलचूर्णं लीडं चात्यन्तमधुमिश्रम् ।

अचिराद्भरति श्वासं प्रबलामुद्ध्वंसिकाञ्चैव ॥

Cakradatta.

कासे

विभीतकं घृताभ्यक्तं गोशकृत्परिवेष्टितम् ।

स्विन्नमग्नौ हरेत्कासं ध्रुवमास्यविधारितम् ॥

Cakradatta, Kāsa cikitsā, 11-26.

हृद्गते वायौ

पिबेदुष्णाम्भसा पिष्टं साश्वगन्धं बिभीतकम् ।

गुडयुक्तं प्रयत्नेन हृदयानिलनाशनम् ॥

Baṅgasena.

अतिसारे

बिभीतकफलं दग्धं हन्याल्लवणसंयुतम् ।

महान्तमप्यतीसारं चक्रपाणिरिवासुरान् ॥

Baṅgasena.

शोथे

‘बिभीतकस्य फलमध्यलेपः सर्वेषु दाहार्तिहरः प्रलेपः ।’

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā. 17.

ग्रन्थिविसर्पे

‘बिभीतकस्य वा ग्रन्थिं कल्केनोष्णेन सेचयेत् ।’

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā. 11.

अश्मर्याम्

अक्षबीजञ्च सुरया कल्कीकृत्य पिबेन्नरः ।
मूत्रदोषविशुद्ध्यर्थं तथैवाश्मरीनाशनम् ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā.

नेत्ररोगे शुक्ले

‘मज्जा वाऽक्षात् समाक्षिकात् ।’

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya.

सर्वश्वासकासेषु

‘सर्वेषु श्वासकासेषु केवर्त्तं वा विभीतकम् ।’

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Cikitsā. 3.

हिक्काश्वासे कलिफलचूर्णप्रयोगः

कर्षं कलिफलचूर्णं लीढश्चात्यन्तमधुमिश्रम् ।
अचिराद्भरति श्वासं प्रबलामुद्ध्वंसिकाञ्चैव ॥

Cakradatta, Hikkāśvāsa cikitsā, 12-18.

स्वरभेदे कलितरुफलादिचूर्णम्

कलितरुफलसिन्धुकणाचूर्णं तत्रेण लीढमपहरति ।
स्वरभेदं गोपयसा पीतं वाऽऽमलकचूर्णञ्च ॥

Cakradatta, Arocaka cikitsā, 12-9.

अक्षकाद्य(त्रिफला)लौहः

अक्षामलकशिवानां स्वरसैश्च पक्वं सुलोहजं चूर्णम् ।
सगुडं यद्युपभुङ्क्ते मुञ्चति त्रिदोषजं शूलम् ॥

Cakradatta, Pariṇāmāsūla cikitsā, 27-57.

परिणामशूलचिकित्सायाम् अक्षादिचूर्णम्

अक्षादिधात्र्यभयाकृष्णाचूर्णं मधुयुतं लिहेत् ॥
दध्नाऽऽनूनसरेणाद्यात् सतीनयवशक्तुकान् ।
अचिरान्मुच्यते शूलान्नरोऽन्नपरिवर्त्तजात् ॥

Cakradatta, Pariṇāmāsūla cikitsā, 27-6.

चरकसंहितायां विभीतकः

Caraka Saṁhitā.

Sūtra. 4-24, 39 etc., Vimāna. 7-22 etc.

Cikitsā. 1-1, 73, 74, 79 etc., Śārīra. 8-41., Kalpa. 1-18 etc.

सुश्रुतसंहितायां विभीतकः

Suśruta Saṁhitā.

Sūtra. 11-11 etc., Cikitsā. 9-17 etc., Uttara. 12-38 etc.

अष्टाङ्गहृदये विभीतकः

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya

Sūtra. 5-69., Cikitsā. 3-31, 46-178.

[अक्ष-अक्षक-आक्षिक-कलि-मृगलिण्डिक-संवर्तकादि नाम रहित]

BHRṄGARĀJA

Botanical name :

Eclipta alba Hassk.

Wedelia calendulacea Less.

Family : Asteraceae (compositae)

Classical name : Bhrṅgarāja

Sanskrit names

Bhrṅgarāja, Mārkaḥva, Keśarañjana, Aṅgaraka, Keśarāja, Bhrṅgara-bhrṅga.

Regional names

Bhaṅgrā, Bhaṅgraiyā (Hind.), Bhaṅgaro (Guj.), Jal bhaṅgro (Mar.), Bhīmrāj (Beng.), Kaikeshi (Tam.), Galagara (Tel.), Maka (Mar.), Kadimel-bint (Arab.)

Description

Eclipta alba Hassk.

Annual, erect or prostrate, often branching, often rooting at the nodes; stem and branches strigose with appressed white hairs.

Leaves sessile, 2.5-7.5 cm. long, variable in breadth, usually oblong-lanceolate, sub-entire, acute or sub-acute, sparsely strigose with appressed hairs on both sides, base tapering.

Heads 6-8 mm. diam. solitary or 2 together on unequal axillary peduncles. Involucral bracts about 8, ovate, obtuse or acute, herbaceous, strigose with appressed white hairs. Ray-flowers ligulate the ligule small, spreading; scarcely as long as the bracts, not toothed, white. Disk-flowers tubu-

lar, the corollas often 4-toothed. Pappus 0, except occasionally very minute teeth on the top of the achenes.

Achenes cuneate, compressed and with a narrow wing, covered with warty excrescences.

Flowering and fruiting time

August-September; Rainy season to Autumn seasons.

Whole plant

The leaf epidermis is composed of a single layer of parenchyma cells with characteristics on glandular trichomes on both the surfaces.

In transection, the stem is circular in outline with a ring of collateral end each vascular bundles of varying size and a central parenchymatous pith. The root has a diarch structure with normal and secondary growth, prominent multicellular secondary xylem rays are seen. The endrodermis is distinct. Few layers of cork cells are present.

Distribution

It is found throughout India ascending to 1700 meters altitude from sea level specially near by marshy places as a weed. It is growing frequently in different zones in country e.g. Assam, Andhra Pradesh, U.P., Gujrat, Jammu and Kashmir, Kerala, Maharastra, Tamilnadu, West Bengal and other provinces.

Plant grows profusedly near slow streams, in swampy areas, river beds, sewage, drains and other similar habitats; it gives out bigger leaves and herb when grown along algae infested swampy localities.

It has distribution in Bengal, Burma, Malay Peninsula, Central India, Punjab, West Rajputana, Peninsular India, Ceylon, Malaya; cosmopolitan to warm climatic regions (Asia).

Wedelia calendulacea Less.

A perennial herb 0.3-0.9 meters high; stem procumbent at the base and rooting at the lower nodes, terete, more or less appressedly hairy.

Leaves opposite, sessile, 2.3-7.5 by 1.2-8 cm., lanceolate-oblong, entire or irregularly crenate-serrate, sca-

brous with short white hairs or at length more or less glabrous, base tapering.

Heads 2-3.2 cm. diam, solitary; peduncles 2.5-15 cm. long, erect, slender, slightly obovate; hairy, subglobose, much longer than the disk-flowers. Ray-flowers ligulate; ligules yellow, 2-3 toothed. Style-arms of female flowers long, acute, recurved. Pappus a toothed membranous cup. Achenes of the ray tapering, slightly pubescent.

Flowering and fruiting time

Rainy (herb) season to autumn seasons.

Distribution

It is found in Bengal, Assam, Burma, Konkan, plains areas of Madras (Tamilnadu) in India; Ceylon, Malay Archipelago, China and Japan.

Chemical composition

Plant contains resin in high quantity, and an alkaloid Ecliptine. Leaves contain leucine, isoleucine, valine, phenylbalmine and methionine, glycine, glutamine, glutamic acid, cystone and methionine, and they are richer in protein than any other green vegetable.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṭu, Tikta
Guṇa	: Rūkṣa, Laghu
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarman	: Kaphavāta śāmaka.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Keśya-keśavardhana-keśarañjana Savarṇikaraṇa-varṇasañjanana Cakṣuṣya-dṛṣṭiśaktivardhaka Vraṇaśodhana-ropaṇa Vedanāsthāpana-śothahara Dīpana-pācana-yakṛduttejaka Pittasaṁsrāvaka-recaka Śūlapraśamana Raktaprasādana-raktavardhaka Śothahara-mūtrala, Bājikaraṇa
-------	---

Rasāyana-balavardhana
Svedajanana-kuṣṭhghna-tvacya
Kaphaghna, Āmapācana.

Roga

(a) Ābhyantara : Śiraḥśūla-bhrama
Netrāmaya-dṛṣṭimāndya-naktāndhya
Dourbalya-rasāyanārtham
Agnimāndya-ajirṇa-amlapitta
Udaravikāra-udaraśūla-āmāsisāra
Ykṛdvṛddhi-plihavṛddhi
Kāmalā-pāṇḍu, Arśa
Udarasthakrimi
Raktavikāra-pāṇḍu-śoṭha, Kāsa-śvāsa
Mūtradāha
Klaibya-kāmaśaktihṛāsa-kāmaśaitya
Carmaroga-kuṣṭha-kṣudraroga
Keśavikāra, Śitapitta-udarda-koṭha.

(b) Bāhya : Keśā-khālitya-pālitya-keśavikāra
Śothavikṛti-ślīpada-granthi-
upadamśa-vraṇa-kṣata
Carmaraktavikāra-kuṣṭha-śvitra
Netra-karṇa-nāsā-śīroroga
Visarpa-visphoṭa.

Kinds and varieties

Three varieties are mentioned in Indian medicine (e.g. Nighaṇṭus) such as white (śveta), yellow (pīta) and blue (nīla). Śveta Bhṛṅgarāja and pīta Bhṛṅgarāja are Eclipta alba Hassk. and Wedelia calandulacea Less. in the convention respectively.

Therapeutic uses

The drug plant has a bitter sharp taste; hot, dry; it is fattening, alterative, anthelmintic, alexipharmic; good for the complexion, the hairs, the eyes and the teeth; it cures inflammation, hernia, eye diseases, bronchitis, asthma, leucoderma, anaemia, heart disorders, skin diseases, itching, night blindness, syphilis. It allays vāta and kapha humours and used to treat kapha and vāta disorders. It is

used to prevent abortions and miscarriage; and for uterine pains after delivery (or post-natal stage).

The herb with sharp bitter and pungent taste improves colour of the hairs and the lustre of the eyes; it is tonic, expectorant, antipyretic, stomachic and antidermatosis. It is curing the splenic diseases, stomatitis, toothache, headache, hemicrania, fevers, internal diseases, liver pain and vertigo.

It is principally used as a tonic and deobstruent in hepatic and splenic enlargement; and in various chronic skin diseases. It is traditionally employed as hair oil or similar medicinal recipes for internal use and external application for blackening of the hair. The fresh juice of the leaves is rubbed on the head scalp for the purpose of promoting the growth of hair.

The use of herb in traditional practice is made; the juice in combination with aromatics, as a tonic and deobstruent, and given two drops of it with eight drops of honey to new-born children, suffering from catarrh. The juice is applied externally over ulcers, and as an antiseptic for wounds in cattle, besides its use in human for treating wounds and ulcers.

The fresh plant is applied with sesame oil in elephantiasis, and the expressed juice in affection of actions of the liver and dropsy. When used in large doses, it acts as an emetic. It is also used as a cooling medicine. It is useful as anodyne and absorbent; and it relieves headache when applied with a little oil.

The juice of the leaves is given in one teaspoon dose in jaundice and fevers. The root is given to relieve scalding of urine.

The root is applied in conjunctivitis and in galled necks in the cattles. The leaves are used to cure sores when applied to them. The roots are merely tied to the belly for curing all kinds of ills, as per traditional belief.

The herb is considered as an astringent and it is used for checking haemorrhage and fluxes and strengthening the gums. The plant is applied on the gums for toothache, acting as a counter irritant.

The plant is considered as pectoral and anti-asthamtic. The decoction is prescribed externally for skin diseases and the elephantiasis. It is used as a cure for asthma and bronchitis. The pounded leaves are given in haemorrhage. It is used to purify the blood and blood impurities.

The leaves are ground and mixed with cold water, this mixture is then drunk to cure constipation. In scorpionsting the leaves are rubbed on the part affected as well as inhaled. The leaves are extensively used in catarrhal jaundice; the fresh leaves are well washed, ground with a few pepper corns, and hump of the size of a lime is administered early in the morning in sour curd or butter milk; it is found a good remedy when it is used for five or six days; it may also used in the form of a suacus. In action it resembles podophyllin and teraxacum.

The properties of the yellow variety herbal drug *Wedelia calendulacea* Less. as those of white variety *Eclipta alba* Hassk. in general.

The decoction of the herb is used as a deobstruent, and is given in uterine haemorrhage and menorrhagia. The leaves are considered tonic, alterative, and useful in cough, caphalagia, skin diseases and alopecia. An infusion of the plant is given for allaying swelling of the abdomen. The plant is also reported to be useful for preventing the feects of bad or foul waters (in the hill tracts). Whole plant is used as a hair tonic in various forms and it is externally applied to ulcers and wounds; it is recommended in various diseases under therapeusis administering the herbal drug *Bhṛṅgarāja*.

The root of the plant (*Eclipta alba* Hassk.) in extract form shows antibiotic activity against *staphylococcus aureus* and *Escharica colii*.

There is a common and popular use of the plant as a hair tonic and hair oil. The leaves juice is boiled with sesame oil or coconut oil and a hair oil is prepared; it is used for rendering the hair black and luxiriant. Some other ingredients also enter in different formulate of hair oils, suit-

ing to hair, head and brain complaints besides their domestic uses as preventive and promotor medicated oily preparations.

The herb is very effective antiseptic, antibacterial and wound healer and the paste of leaves and other parts is commonly applied to ulcers, wounds and other similar affections. The juice is used in eye affections, specially conjunctivities and in ear complaints specially earache; it is also orally useful in weakness of vision and night blindness. The juice-snuff is useful to check head diseases specially headache (sūryāvarta) by mixing it in milk. The seeds are orally used to promote sexual power as they are aphrodisiac.

The herb is recommended as an alterative, restorative and rejuvenator drug (rasāyana) especially nīla variety.

Parts Used

Whole plant; Leaves including flowers etc. seeds.

Dose

Juice 6-12 gms. ; Seeds powder 1-3 gms.

Formulations (yoga)

Ṣaḍabindu taila, Bhṛṅgarāja taila, Bhṛṅgarājadi cūrṇa, Bhṛṅgarāja ghr̥ta.

BHRṆGARĀJA (भृङ्गराज)

मार्कवः कटुकस्तित्तो रूक्षोष्णोऽक्षिरोऽर्तिहृत् ।

कफवातहरो दन्त्यस्त्वच्यः केश्यो रसायनः ॥

हन्ति कासकृमिश्वासकुष्ठशोफामपाण्डुताः ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 1575-1576.

भृङ्गारः कटुकस्तीक्ष्णो रूक्षोष्णः कफवातनुत् ॥

केश्यस्त्वच्यः कृमिश्वासकासशोथामपाण्डुनुत् ।

दन्त्यो रसायनो बल्यः कुष्ठनेत्रशिरोऽर्तिनुत् ॥

Bhāvaṇṭu, Guḍūcyādi varga, 240-241.

भृङ्गराजास्तु चक्षुष्यास्तिकोष्णाः केशरञ्जनाः ।
कफशोफविषघ्नाश्च तत्र नीलो रसायनः ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Śatāhvādi varga, 141.

भृङ्गराजः समाख्यातः तिकोष्णो रूक्ष एव च ।
कफशोफामपाण्डुघ्नो हृद्रोगविषनाशनः ॥

Dhanvantari Nighaṇṭu.

उपदंशे

असाध्यापि व्रणत्यस्तं लिङ्गोत्थां रुक् प्रलेपनात् ।
सम्यक् समूलपत्रेण मार्कवेणः प्रयत्नतः ॥

Śoḍhala.

गर्भपरिच्युतिवारणार्थम्

मार्कवस्वरसं गव्यं क्षीरं च सदृशं पिबेत् ।
अन्तर्वल्या भवेत्तस्या नैव गर्भपरिच्युतिः ॥

Vaidya Manoramā.

पलितोपचारार्थं भृङ्गराजतैलम्

Cakradatta, 55-125.

सूर्यावर्ते

भृङ्गराजरसश्छागीक्षीरतुल्योऽर्कतापितः ।
सूर्यावर्तं निहन्याशु नस्येनैव प्रयोगराट् ॥

Bhāvaprahāsa.

दारुणकोपचारार्थं केशसघनीकरणञ्च भृङ्गराजाद्यं तैलम्

Cakradatta, Kṣudraroga cikitsā, 55-91.

प्रसवान्तयोनिशूले

बिल्वमार्कवजं मूलं कल्कं मद्येन पापयेत् ।
तेन योनिगतं शूलमाशु शाम्यति योषिताम् ॥

Baṅgasena.

सास्त्रामातिसारे

केशराजसमुद्भवा जलेन गुटिका कृता ।
क्षयेदाममतीसारं सशूलं सास्त्रमाशु च ॥

Baṅgasena.

अम्लपित्ते

पथ्याभृङ्गराजश्चूर्णं युक्तं जीर्णगुडेन तु ।
जयेदम्लपित्तजन्यां छर्दिमन्नविदाहजान् ॥

Cakradatta.

पलिते

क्षीरात्समार्कवरसाद् द्विप्रस्थे मधुकात् पले ।
तैलस्य कुडवं पक्कं तन्नस्यं पलितापहम् ॥

Cakradatta, Kṣudraroga cikitsā, 55-125.

नक्तान्धे

केशराजान्वितं सिद्धं मत्स्याण्डं हन्ति भक्षितम् ।
नक्तान्धं नियतं नृणां सप्ताहात् पथ्यसेविनाम् ॥

Cakradatta.

वराहदशनाह्वे विसर्पे

रजनीमार्कवमूलं पिष्टं शीतेन वारिणा तुल्यम् ।
हन्ति विसर्पे लेपाद् वराहदशनाह्वं धीरम् ॥

Cakradatta.

केशानां कृष्णीकरणे

भृङ्गपुष्पं जपापुष्पं मेषीदुग्धसम्प्रेषितम् ।
तेनैव लोहितं लोहपात्रस्थं भूम्यधःकृतम् ॥

Cakradatta.

कफजकासे

‘.....भृङ्गराजवार्ताकुजाः रसाः ।
सक्षौद्राः कफकासघ्नाः.... ॥’

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 22-115.

पलितरोगे भृङ्गराजघृतम्

भृङ्गराजरसे पक्कं शिखिपित्तेन कल्कितम् ।
घृतं नस्येन पलितं हन्यात् सप्ताहयोगतः ॥

Cakradatta, 55-134.

बालानामकहरमञ्जनम्

‘आर्कं तूलकमाविकरोमाण्यादाय केशराजस्य ।

.....कष्टमनामकरोगं क्षपयति भूतादिकञ्चापि ॥'

Cakradatta, Bālaroga cikitsā, 64-14/15.

कासश्वासयोः

तैलं दशगुणे सिद्धं भृङ्गराजरसे शुभम् ।
सेव्यमानं यथान्यायं श्वासकासौ व्यपोहति ॥

Suśruta saṁhitā, Uttara. 51.

रसायनार्थम्

ये मासमेकं स्वरसं पिबन्ति दिने दिने भृङ्गरजः समुत्थम् ।
क्षीराशिनस्ते बलवीर्ययुक्ताः समाः शतं जीवितमाप्नुवन्ति ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Uttara. 39.

शिवत्रे

मार्कवमथवा खादेत् भ्रष्टं तैलेन लोहपात्रस्थम् ।
बीजकशृतं च दुग्धं तदनुपिबेत् शिवत्रनाशाय ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Cikitsā. 20.

केशकृष्णीकरणार्थं वर्धनार्थञ्च

'ते कृष्णकेशा विमलेन्द्रियांश्च निर्ध्यावयो वर्षशतं भवेयुः ।'

Bhaiṣajya Ratnāvāli.

पलिते भृङ्गराजतैलम्

मार्कवस्वरसात् क्षीराद्विप्रस्थं मधुकात् पलम् ॥
तैः पचेत् कुडवं तैलात्तन्नस्यं पलितापहम् ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 26-267/268.

उपदंशे

त्रिफलायाः कषायेण भृङ्गराजरसेन वा ।
व्रणप्रक्षालनं कार्यमुपदंशप्रशान्तये ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Upadamsādhikāra, 51-22., Cakradatta, 47-7.

शूकरदंष्ट्रके (क्षुद्ररोगे)

भृङ्गराजकमूलस्य रजन्या सहितस्य च ।
चूर्णन्तु सहसा लेपाद्वराहद्विजनाशनम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Kṣudrarogādhikāra, 61-113.

विसर्प-शूकरदंष्ट्रके

रजनीं मार्कवं मूलं पिष्टं शीतेन वारिणा ।
तल्लेपाद्भन्ति वीसर्पवाराहदशनाह्वयम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Kṣudrarogādihikāra, 61-115.

मुखमण्डकाजुष्टग्रहे

मार्कवरसैः भृङ्गवृक्षाणां तथैव हयगन्धया ।
तैलं वसां च संयोज्य पचेदभ्यञ्जनं शिशोः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Bālarogādihikāra, 71-105.

भृङ्गराजरसायनम्

ये मासमेकं स्वरसं पिबन्ति दिने दिने भृङ्गरजःसमुत्थम् ।
क्षीराशिनस्ते बलवीर्ययुक्ताः समाः शतं जीवनमाप्नुवन्ति ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Rasāyanādihikāra, 73-10.

हिक्राश्वासे भृङ्गराजाद्यं घृतम्

Cakradatta, Hikkāśvāsa Cikitsā, 13-14.

केशरञ्जनकरणाय भृङ्गपुष्पादिलेपः

भृङ्गपुष्पं जवापुष्पं मेषीदुग्धप्रपेषितम् ।
तेनैवालोडितं लौहपात्रस्थं भूम्यधःकृतम् ॥
ससाहादुद्धृतं पश्चाद् भृङ्गराजरसेन तु ।
आलोड्याभ्यज्य च शिरो वेष्टयित्वा वसेन्निशाम् ।
पातस्तु चालनं कार्यमेवं स्यान्मूर्द्धरञ्जनम् ।

Cakradatta, Kṣudraroga cikitsā, 55/118-120.

चरकसंहितायां भृङ्गराजः (भृङ्गरजः)

*Caraka Samhitā,
Cikitsā. 4-67, 18-116, 26-262., Kalpa. 1-28.*

सुश्रुतसंहितायां भृङ्गराजः

*Sūsruta Samhitā
Cikitsā, 25-28., Kalpa. 8-54, 56.,
Uttar. 38-284, 51-29.*

अष्टाङ्गहृदये भृङ्गराजः

*Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya
Uttara. 24-37, 42; 39-162.
[भृङ्गमार्कवक्ष नामानि रहितोद्धरणम्]*

BHŪMYĀMALAKĪ

Batonical name

Phyllanthus niruri Linn.

Phyllanthus urinaria Linn.

Family : Euphorbiaceae

Classical name : Bhūmyāmalakī

Sanskrit names

Bhūmyāmalakī, Bhūdhātrī, Tāmalakī, Bahupatrā, Bahuphalā.

Regional names

Buiāmalā (Hind.), Bhui āmlā (Beng.), Bhui ānwlā (Mar.), Bhoyanwla (Guj.)

Description

Phyllanthus urinaria Linn.

Annual 30-60 cm. high, glabrous or nearly so. Stem erect; slightly branched; leaf-bearing branchlets short, flattened or slightly winged.

Leaves closely placed; dichotomously imbricate, sessile or nearly so, 6-13 by 2.5-6 mm., oblong or linear-oblong, rounded and apiculate at the apex, pale beneath, glabrous, base rounded, usually oblique; stipules peltate, very acute, from a broad base.

Flowers minute, axillary, subsessile, solitary, yellowish. Sepals 0.8-1 mm. long, oblong, rounded, not enlarged in fruit.

Capsule 3 mm. diam., globose, scarcely lobed, echinate. Seeds 1.5 mm. long, 3-gonous, rounded on the back, tranversely furrowed.

Flowering and fruiting time

Autumn season and onwards.

Distribution

It is found warmer regions of country such as Bihar, Assam, West Bengal, Central India, southern regions. Tropics generally.

Phyllanthus niruri Linn.

Annual herb 30-60 cm. high, quite glabrous stem often branched at the base, angular leaf bearing branchlets slender, spreading.

Leaves numerous, subsessile, distichous often imbricating, 6-13 by 3-6 mm., elliptic-oblong, obtuse (rarely subacute), flaucous beneath, base rounded; petioles very short; stipules lanceolate-subulate, very acute.

Flowers yellowish, very numerous, axillary; the males 1-3; the females solitary. Sepals of male flowers 0.6 mm. long, rounded, those of the females 1.2 mm. long, oblong, subacute, with white margins, not enlarged in fruit. Stamens 3, anthers sessile on a short column. Styles minute, free, 2-lobed. Disk of male minute glands of female annular, lobed.

Capsule 5 mm. diam., depressed-globose, smooth, scarcely lobed. Seeds 1.5 mm. long, 3 gonous, rounded and with longitudinal regular parallel ribs on the back.

Flowering and fruiting time

Autumn season and onwards. Plant dormancy (drying) season-summers.

Distribution

It is found throughout hot parts of India and Pakistan. Tropics generally. Various provinces of country such as Andhra Pradesh, Gujarat, Karnataka, Kerala, Tamilnadu, Uttar Pradesh and other regions.

Chemical composition

Plant contains on active principle phyllanthin.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Tikta, Kaṣāya, Madhura
Guṇa	: Laghu
Vīrya	: Rūkṣa
Vipāka	: Śīta, Madhura.
Doṣakarma	: Kaphapittaśāmaka.

Action and properties

Karma	: Mūtravirecanīya-mūtrala Kaphaghna-kāsa-śvāsa-hikkā Raktavikāra-raktapittaśāmaka
--------------	---

Pradara-rakta-śvetapradarahara
 Garbhāśayaśothahara, Raktaśodhaka
 Dīpana-pācana-anulomana
 Yakṛduttejaka, Stambhana
 Tr̥ṣṇānigrahaṇa-dāha pittaśamaka-
 sṛṅsana, Balya-viśaghna
 Jvaraghna-niyatakālikajvara-
 pratibandhaka,
 Vraṇaropana-śothahara-kuṣṭhaghna.

Roga

- (a) **Ābhyantara** : Mūtravikāra-mūtrakṛccha
 Prameha-pūyameha
 Kāsa-śvāsa-yakṣmā-kṣaya-hikkā
 Rakta vikāra-raktapitta
 Aruci-agnimāndya-amlapitta-
 vibandha
 Pāṇḍu-kāmalā-śoṭha, Udararoga
 Atīsāra-pravāhikā
 Strīroga-garbhāśaya-yonivikāra
 Rakta-śveta pradara-atyāratava
 Upadaṁśa. Dourabalya.
- (b) **Bāhya** : Vraṇa-vraṇaśoth-duṣṭavraṇa,
 Kṣata, Carmaroga, Kuṣṭha-kaṇḍū
 Asthibhagna, Netravikāra.

Therapeutic uses

The fruit and the plant are acrid, sour, astringent, sweetish, bitter and cooling; it is alexipharmic and useful in thirst, bronchitis, leprosy, anaemia, urinary discharges, anuria, biliousness, asthma and hiccough.

It is much used as a diuretic in dropsical affections, also in gonorrhoea and other genitourinary troubles. The root is given to sleepless children. The plant is considered diuretic, sudorific, depurative and emmenagogue. It is given as a drink in dysentery and cystitis. The plant is useful as a bitter tonic, astringent and febrifuge.

Whole plant is used in urinary diseases and gonorrhoea; it is a good diuretic. Seeds are ground in rice-water (taṇḍulodaka) and it is orally used in leucorrhoea

(śveta-rakta pradara). In chronic malarial fever (jīrṇa viṣamajvara), the decoction of whole plant is internally given; it checks fever by falling down temperature and enlargement of spleen and liver.

The juice of the roots is mixed with sugar and it is given orally, and also its drops are used as nasal snuff.

Herb is used in jaundice, hyperacidity, peptic ulcer, dyspepsia, loss of appetite and diarrhoea. It is given in cough and asthma.

Whole plant is used in general debility as a tonic; and also it is given in poisons.

Herb is topically applied to incised lesions, inflammation and cutaneous affections. The leaves are ground and applied externally to bone fracture. The roots are mixed and ground in gruel (kāñjika) added with salt (saindhava); it is applied externally to eyes in ailing condition.

Whole plant is employed to prepare a decoction which orally given in menorrhagia, leucorrhoea and other similar female ailments.

The decoction or powder or herb is given in urinary ailments (specially Prameha roga). It is effectively used in dropsical affections (as a diuretic), gonorrhoea and other troubles of the genito-urinary tract. The leaves are pounded and used to cure gonorrhoea.

The fresh root is considered to be useful remedy for jaundice. The plant is very much used in blennorrhagia, dropsy and diarrhoea.

The decoction of root and leaves is very bitter and is a favourite remedy for the treatment of intermittent fevers.

It is also considered a preventing remedy against expected patroxysm; the tincture in dose of two drachms in morning once is given.

An aqueous extract or a decoction of the fresh roots stems and leaves is given internally in snake-bite as an antidotal treatment.

Whole plant, leaves, fruits and roots are employed in external remedies applied to tubercular ulcers, ulcers, wounds, sores, bruises, scabies, ringworm and other skin affections.

The herb is useful in gout and anaemia. Fresh roots mixed with milk are given as galctagogue.

The juice of the plant is an efficacious dressing for offensive sores; and it is mixed with some bland oil, the juice is used in ophthalmia.

Parts used : whole plant.

Dose : Juice 12-24 gms., Powder 3-6 gms.

Formulation (yoga) : Cyavanaprāśa avaleha.

Groups (Gaṇa) : Kāśahara, Śvāsahara (Caraka.)

BHŪMYĀMALAKĪ (भूम्यामलकी)

भूधात्री वातकृत्तिका कषाया मधुश हिमा ।

पिपासाकासपित्तास्रकफकण्डूक्षतापहा ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Guḍūcyādi varga 278.

- क. तामलक्यमुत्तमा ताली शतमाला तमालिनी ॥
कटोज्झटा बहुसुता दृढपादा हिमालया ।
वितुन्नका फलमाला शिवा तामलकी दृढा ॥
बहुपुत्रा सूक्ष्मफला विष्वक्पर्णी शुभाङ्गिनी ।
बहुयोगी बहुफला भूधात्री तुन्नकारिका ॥
- ख. तामलकी हिमा तिक्ता कषाया मधुरा लघुः ।
रोचनी पाण्डुपित्तास्रकफकुष्ठविषापहा ॥
जयेच्छ्वासतृषादाहहिध्माकासक्षतक्षयान् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Ośadhi varga, 250-251.

भूम्यामली-भूम्यामलकी

भूम्यामली तमाली च ताली चैव तमालिका ।

उच्चटा दृढपादी च वितुन्ना च वितुन्निका ॥

भूधात्री चारुटा वृष्या विषग्री बहुपत्रिका ।

बहुवीर्याऽहिभयदा विश्वपर्णी हिमालया ।

जटा वीरा च नाम्ना सा भवेदेकोनविंशतिः ॥

भूम्यामलकीगुणाः

भूधात्री तु कषायाम्ला पित्तमेहविनाशिनी ।

शिशिरा मूत्ररोगार्ति-शमनी दाहनाशनी ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Parpaṭādi varga, 91-93.

स्त्रीरोगेषु भूम्यामलकीबीजम्

भूम्यामलकीबीजं तु पीतं तण्डुलवारिणा ।

दिनद्वयं त्रयेणैव स्त्रीरोगं नाशयेद्ध्रुवम् ॥

Baṅgasena.

BHŪRJA

Botanical name

Betula utilis D. Don.

Betula bhojapatra.

Family : Cupuliferae

Classical name : Bhūrja-Bhūrjapatra

Sanskrit names

Bhūrja, Bhūrjapatra, Bahupuṭa, Lekhyapatraka, Citrapatra, Bhūtahā.

Regional names

Bhojpatra (Hind.), Bhurjpatra (Mar.), Bhojpatra (Guj.), Bhurjpatra (Beng.); Jacquemon Tree (Eng.).

Description

A small deciduous tree or shrub; bark white with conspicuous long horizontal lenticles the innerlayer; twigs dotted with yellow resinous drops; young shoots, petioles and leaves silky soon becoming glabrous.

Leaves 5-10 cm. long, ovate, acute, sharply irregularly serrate, base broadly cuneate or rounded, rarely subcordate, sticky when young with yellow resinous scales; petioles 1-2 cm. long.

Male catkins 5-7.5 cm. long, collected at the tips of long shoots. Female spikes about 2.5 cm. long, solitary, erect, terminating dwarf shoots.

Fruiting spikes not exceeding 3.8 cm. long; bracts deeply 3 lobed, lobes linear-oblong; fruit narrower than the bracts, the wings narrower than the nut.

Bark peeling in horizontal flakes with papery and thin layers as papery strips.

Flowering and fruiting time

Summer to autumn season.

Distribution

It is found at high altitudinal regions in the Himalayas.

Temperate Himalayas from Kashmir, between 7,000 to 12,000 feet elevation from sea level, to Sikkim, 9,000-14,000 feet, Bhutan, Japan and Afghanistan.

Found in north-western regions of the Himalaya; Himachal Pradesh, Kashmir and Uttar Pradesh.

Kinds and varieties

Allied to Bhūrja or Bhūrjapatra drug plant, Bhūrjagranthi or bhourjagranthi is mentioned in classical medicine (Caraka Samhitā, Sūtra 3-14) which are burls formed by a fungus on the old stem branches of tree; and they are known as Bhujeda in the U.P. hills (Garhwal region) carrying medicinal importance in traditional practices of herbal drugs (e.g. it enters as an ingredient of certain antifertility recipe locally used as contraceptive.).

Chemical composition

Plant contains an alkaloid Betulin and a volatile oil.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṣāya
Guṇa	: Laghu, Snigdha
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Tridoṣaghna.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Bhūtanāśana-bhutagrahahara-rākṣasaghna-rakṣoghna Ākṣepaśamana, Jivāṇuniṣūdana-pūtihara, Medhya, Stambhana Raktarodhaka-rakta-pittaśāmaka Kaphaghna
-------	---

Lekhana-medodhātuksayakara
Vātaśamaka-nāḍīśamana.

Roga

(a) **Ābhyañtara** : Bhūta-graha-rākṣasa vādhā
Unmāda-apasmāra-ākṣepaka-
apatantraka, Atisāra-pravāhikā
Raktapitta-raktasrāva, Kāsa
Medoroga, Viṣa, Tridośaja
Vikāra (kapha-vāta-pittaroga).

(B) **Bāhya** : Vraṇa,
Karṇaroga-karṇasrāva-śūla
Būtavādha-duṣṭagraha-rākṣasa-
grahadoṣa.

Therapeutic uses

The bark is acrid, pungent, heating, tonic and alexiteric; it is useful in convulsions, bronchitis, diseases of the blood and the ear, leprosy, and tridośa or tri-humours.

The bark is good for earache. The decoction of the bark is used as a wash in otorrhoea and poisoned wounds.

The infusion of the bark is used as a carminative; it is prescribed also in hysteria. It has also certain aromatic and antiseptic properties.

The bark is used in the form of decoction for jaundice and bilious fevers. The bark is considered as an antidote to the snake-venom. The bark is useful as carminative, antiseptic and hyperlipidaemic. It is used in convulsions, diarrhoea, dyspepsia, epilepsy, haemophilic conditions, obesity and wounds.

The bark is recommended to use for countering effects and ailing conditions due to demons and evil-spirits (graha-bhūtavādhā); it is employed in dhūpana or medicated-smoke incense remedies.

The bark-lotion or filtered decoction is applied as wash in earache and otorrhoea; the oil is also prepared with bark for using in ear ailments.

The decoction of the bark is topically employed as dressing and washing medicine for ulcers as a good antiseptic and wound-healer.

The bark is useful in cough and nervous disorders, and also as a brain tonic.

During ancient age, the papery bark had tradition of its utility as manuscript writing paper sheets (bhojapatra pāṇḍulipi).

Parts used : Bark.

Dose

Powder 1-3 gms., Decoction 50-100 gms.

BHŪRJA (भूर्ज)

भूर्जपत्रः

- क. भूर्जपत्रः स्मृतो भूर्जश्चर्मो बहुलवल्कलः ।
 ख. भूर्जो भूतग्रहश्लेष्मकर्णरुक्पित्तरक्तजित् ॥
 कषायो राक्षसघ्नश्च मेदोविषहरः परः ।

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Vaṭādi varga, 47-48.

भूर्जः

- अ. भूर्जो भुजो बहुपुटो मृदुत्वक् चास्थिरच्छदः ॥
 चित्रपत्रो बहुत्वक्को भूतहा लेख्यपत्रकः ।
 ब. भूर्जः कषायो जयति बलासं पित्तशोणितम् ॥
 मेदो भूतग्रहं रक्षःकर्णरोगविषप्रणुत् ।
 (कषायो राक्षसघ्नश्च मेदोविषहरः परम्) ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Ośadhi varga, 817-819.

भूर्जः

- भूर्जो वल्कद्रुमो भुर्जः सुचर्मा भूर्जपत्रकः ।
 चित्रत्वग्विन्दुपत्रश्च रक्षापत्रो विचित्रकः ।
 भूतघ्नो मृदुपत्रश्च शैलेन्द्रस्योद्धिभूमितः ॥

भूर्जगुणाः

- भूर्जः कटुकषायोष्णो भूतरक्षाकरः परः ।
 त्रिदोषशमनः पथ्यो दुष्टकौटिल्यनाशनः ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Prabhadrādi varga 112-113.

चरकसंहितायां भूर्जः

Caraka Samhitā,
Sūtra. 3-3, 14, Vimāna. 8-159.
Śārīra. 8-59, 65, 70., Cikitsā. 11-58, 21-124, 25-98.

सुश्रुतसंहितायां भूर्जः

Suśruta Samhitā
Sūtra 38-11., Cikitsā 1-113., Kalpa. 6-3.

अष्टाङ्गहृदये भूर्जः

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya,
Sūtra. 15-19, 29-72, Śārīra. 1-86
Uttara. 3-49, 18-28, 25, 45, 35-26.
[भूर्ज- भूर्जपत्र- भूर्जग्रन्थि- भौर्जग्रन्थि]

BĪJAKA

Botanical name : Pterocarpus marsupium Roxb.

Family : Fabaceae (Papilionaceae)

Classical name : Bijaka

Sanskrit names

Bijaka, Pitasāra, Pitaśālaka, Bandhūkapuṣpa, Prīyaka, Sarjaka, Asana.

Regional names

Bijoysar, (Hind.), Pitshal, Piyashal (Beng.) Vivila (Mar.), Biyo (Guj.), Bhengai (Tam.), Pedagi (Tel.) Dambha-ul-akhvain Hindi (Arab); Indian Kino, Malabar Kino (Eng.).

Description

A large deciduous tree with a stout crooked stem and widely spreading branches; bark thick; yellowish grey; the outer layer corky.

Leaves 15-25 cm. long; rhachis glabrous; prolonged 2-2.5 cm. beyond the insertion of the upper lateral leaflet. Leaflets 5-7, coriaceous; 6.5-10 by 3-8.5 cm. oblong, obtuse, rounded, truncate or more or less retuse at the apex; glabrous on both surfaces, shining above, base subacute; main nerves numerous; close prominent; petiolules 6-10 mm. long.

Flowers in short lateral and terminal fusco-pubescent paniculate racemes, usually shorter than the leaves; pedicels short, articulated, beneath the flower. Calyx 6 mm. long, veined, brown-pubescent; teeth very short, broadly triangular; the upper the largest. Corolla 1.5 cm. long, pale yellow; with crisp margins; standard 11 mm. broad, with a long claw. Stamens monadelphous or the staminal tube often finally slii on both sides; making them isadelphous. Ovary shortly stalked; ovules 2.

Pods 2.5-5 cm. diam., nearly circular; glabrous or nearly so, the wings veined. Seeds small.

Flowering and fruiting time

Autumn-winter seasons.

Distribution

It is found in Western Peninsula and Southern India; and Ceylon. Specially found in central and southern India, Tamilnadu, Bihar and other areas in country.

Chemical composition

Gum contains a specific tannin substance kinotannic acid 70-80 percent; and pyro-catechin, galic acid and gum-resin.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṣāya, Tikta
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Tridoṣaśāmaka.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Mūtrasaṅgrahaṇīya-mehahara Kuṣṭhaghna, Sandhāṇīya Keśya, Śothahara, Rasāyana Tvacya, Kṛmighna Raktadoṣaghna-raktaśodhaka Śleṣmapittahara.
--------------	--

Roga

(a) Ābhyantara	: Prameha-madhumeha, Mūtra-basti vikāra, Atisāra-pravāhikā
-----------------------	---

Stri-bāla atisāra, Krimiroga
 Raktavikāra-raktapitta
 Āmavāta-sandhivāta-vātarakta
 Kuṣṭha-udarda-visarpa
 Keśa-vikāra
 Abhighāta-abhighātaja-vedanā
 Dourbalya-dhātukṣaya.

(b) Bāhya : Tvagvikāra, Śoṭha-visarpa
 Kuṣṭha-śvitra, Dantaśūla
 Abhighātajanya piḍā
 Keśavikāra-pālitya.

Therapeutic uses

The plant and the gum are hot and bitter with a sharp bitter taste; it is laxative, anthelmintic, alterative; and it cures vāta and kapha humours in provocation. It cures diseases of the blood, eruptions on the body, leucoderma, erysipells, urinary discharges, anal troubles, leprosy; it is useful eye troubles and elephantiasis. The flowers are sweet, bitter, they improve the appetite and may cause flatulence.

The gum is bitter with a bad taste; it is useful in all diseases of the body. It is styptic, vulnerant, tonic to the fever, antipyretic and anthelmintic; it is good for gripping and biliousness, ophthalmia, boils, gleet and urinary discharges. The gum is used for checking toothache. It is considered a good astringent in diarrhoea and pyrosis.

The bark of the tree is used as an astringent. The bruised leaves are useful as an external application to boils, sores and skin diseases.

The heart-wood is effectively used for the treatment of urinary diseases specially Prameha roga, its decoction is given and considered efficacious remedy in diabetes. The water is kept in an utensil made of wood of the tree for a day or so and the same is regularly drunken by patients of diabetes; and recently the specially designed tumbler (or similar other pots) for drinking Bijakajala is employed in certain areas.

The leaves are bruised or ground for making a paste which is topically applied to various cutaneous affection,

dermatosis, eruptive diseases of skin, inflammation and other similar skin complaints. For the hair diseases (pālitya), the oil prepared and applied.

The heart-wood is rubbed (like sandal wood) and it is applied over traumatic pain of affected organ. The gum of woods is given for chewing to painful teeth. The decoction of heart wood is orally also given in traumatic conditions (including fractures).

Powder or decoction of the bark is given in worms affection. The bark as well as gum are internally used in diarrhoea and dysentery; and specially indicated for infantile and female ailments of intestinal tract.

The heart-wood is useful in gout, rhematic arthritis and blood diseases.

The heart-wood is useful as an alterative medicine (rasāyana). It is used in obesity, gonorrhoea, throat affections and general debility.

Parts used : Heartwood, Gum.

Dose

Powder 3-6 gms., Gum 4-10 grains.,

Decoction 50-100 gms.

BĪJAKA (बीजक)

क. बीजकः पीतसारश्च पीतशालक इत्यपि ।

बन्धूकपुष्पः प्रियकः सर्जकश्चासनःस्मृतः ॥

ख. बीजकः कुष्ठवीसर्पश्चित्रमेहेनुदक्रिमीन् ।

हन्ति श्लेष्मास्रपित्तञ्च त्वच्यः केश्यो रसायनः ।

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Vatādi varga, 28-29.

अ. असनो बीजकः काम्यः प्रियो बन्धूकपुष्पकः ॥

शीरिः काश्यो महासर्जः तिष्योऽन्यः कृष्णसर्जकः ।

सुगन्धिनीलनिर्यासः पुष्पवृक्षोऽलकप्रियः ॥

ब. बीजकः कटुकः सोष्णः कषायः कफपित्ताह ।

त्वचः केश्योऽस्रपित्तघ्नः कृमिवीसर्पनाशनः ॥

हन्ति कुष्ठखुडश्चित्रमेदोमेहान् रसायनः ।

असनपुष्पम्

स.

असनस्य च पुष्पाणि विपाके मधुराणि च ॥
 (केश्यानि चोष्णवीर्याणि कषायमधुराणि च)
 तिक्तानि पाचनीयानि वातलानि भवन्ति हि ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 812-815.

बीजकः

‘बीजकः सकषायश्च कफपित्तास्त्रनाशनः ।’

Dhanvantari Nighaṅṭu.

असन-सर्जकविशेषः

असनस्तु महासर्जः सौरिर्बन्धूकपुष्पकः ।
 प्रियको बीजवृक्षश्च नीलकः प्रियशालकः ॥

असनगुणाः

असनः कटुरुष्णश्च तिक्तो वातार्तिदोषनुत् ।
 सारको गलदोषघ्नो रक्तमण्डलनाशनः ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Prabhadrādi varga 132-133.

नीलबीजः

द्वितीयो नीलबीजः स्यान्नीलपत्रः सुनीलकः ।
 नीलद्रुमो नीलसारो नीलनिर्यासको रसैः ॥

गुणाः

बीजवृक्षौ कटु शीतौ कषायौ कुष्ठनाशनौ ।
 सारकौ कण्डुदद्घ्नो श्रेष्ठस्तत्रासितस्तयोः ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Prabhadrādi varga, 134-135.

पाण्डुरोगे बीजकारिष्ठः

Caraka Samhita, Cikitsā 16-106/111.

श्लीपदे

खदिरासनशालानां सारकल्कं पिबेन्नरः ।
 प्रातर्गवां हि मूत्रेण सक्षौद्रं श्लीपदं जयेत् ॥

Śodhala.

स्थौल्यनाशनार्थम्

‘अतिस्थूलशरीरो यः तिलतैलं प्रगे पिबेत् ।

पिबेदसनसारस्य क्वाथं वा मुधुसंयुतम् ।'

Vaidya Manoramā.

पश्चात्तके

असनस्य तु पुष्पाणि श्लक्ष्णचूर्णानि कारयेत् ।
गुटिकां कारयेद्वैद्यः तां च भक्तस्य वारिणा ॥
एतां पश्चात्तके दद्याद्बालेषु मतिमान् भिषक् ॥

Baṅgasena.

उपदंशे

'.....क्वाथं पिबेद्वा खदिरासनाभ्याम् ।
सगुगुलुं वा त्रिफलायुतं वा सर्वोपदंशापहरः प्रयोगः ॥

Baṅgasena.

रक्तपित्ते

'तथा मधूकस्य तथाऽसनस्य साराः प्रयोज्याः विधिनैव तेन ।'

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā 4-92.

रसायने

'.....खदिरशिंशपाऽसनस्वरसाः, तेषां स्वरसाः
नागबलात् स्वरसानामलाभे स्वयं स्वरसविधिः..... ।'

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā. 4-92.

मसूरिकारोगेषु भक्तद्वेषहरणाय

'पिबेदम्भस्तसशीतं भावितं खदिरासनैः ।'

Cakradatta, Masūrika Cikitsā, 54-34.

चरकसंहितायां बीजकः

Caraka Saṁhitā

Cikitsā. 16-108

सुश्रुतसंहितायां बीजकः

Sūsruta Saṁhitā

Cikitsā. 3-134, 5-28, 20-8., Uttara 38-150, 153.

अष्टाङ्गहृदये बीजकः

Cikitsā 3-184, 5-28., Uttara 38-150, 153.

BĪJAPŪRAKA

Botanical name : Citrus medica Linn.

Family : Rutaceae

Classical name : Bījapūraka

Sanskrit names

Bijapūraka, Mātuluṅga, Rūcaka, Phalapūraka, Supūra, Bījapurna.

Regional names

Bijoura, Bijora, Bara nimbu (Hind.), Bara nembu, Bejjora (Beng.), Matulung (Mar.), Bijora (Guj.).

Description

An evergreen shrub. 1.8-3.6 meters high, with stems up to 10 cm. diam. Young shoots glabrous. Bark smooth, yellowish, brown. Blaze 2.5 mm., pale orange or pale yellow. Branches up to about 5 cm. long. Branches often procumbent, and rooting freely in contact with the ground.

Leaves 7.5-15 by 3-7.5 by 5-7.5 cm., oblong or elliptic willi acute or rounded apex, rather obscurely crenate-serate. Coriaceous, glabrous, pellucid-punctate, dull dark green above. Petiole 5-12 mm. long, sometimes very narrowly winged.

Flowers 3.8-4.5 cm. diam., scented, white tinged pink outside, often unisexual, in few-flowered axillary cymes up to 2.5 cm. long or solitary. Pedicels 3.8-6 mm. long.

Fruit 5-7.5 cm. long, usually obovoid, yellow when ripe, with a leathery rind.

Flowering and fruiting time

Various seasons. (cultivated practices).

Distribution

It is found in northern, southern and other regions in country; cultivated throughout India.

Kinds and varieties

There are majorly two kinds of Mātuluṅga or Bijapūraka viz. sweet (madhura) and sour (amla). Certain varieties carry classical base such as Madhukarkatī, Devajūtā (mātuluṅga's vanya jāti), Vanabījapūraka, mātuluṅga-Bījapūra, Madhura Bījapūra.

Different varieties and forms are cultivated in various regions of country and they produce fruits of varying characteristics, taste, size, importance and utility depending upon localities and kinds (also commercial, pharmaceutical and allied uses) of a common edible citrus fruits.

Chemical Composition

The fruit juice contains citric acid, sulphuric acid and sugars. Fruits (rind) contains an aromatic volatile oil which is consisting citrone 76 percent, citrol 7-8 percent, cymene and citronellal. Fruits contain the glucoside hesperidin. It contains oil from peel, limonene, dipentone and citrol etc.

Different varieties of fruits have various chemical contents.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Madhura (Madhura jāti-sweet variety), Amla (amla jāti-sour variety)
Guṇa	: Laghu, Snigdha (madhura jāti) Tikṣṇa (amla jāti)
Vīrya	: Anuṣṇa
Vipāka	: Madhura (Madhura jāti), Amla (amla jāti)
Doṣakarman	: Vātapittaśāmaka (Madhura jāti) Kaphavātaśāmaka.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Rocana (hṛdya) Hṛdya-raktapittaśāmaka (madhura phala or sweet fruit) Hṛdayottejaka (amla phala or sour fruit) Rucivardhaka-dipana-anulomana Tṛṣṇānigrahaṇa, Yakṛduttejaka Grāhī (keśara-stamens) Kṛmighna (phala tvak-fruitrind) Kaphaghna Ārtavajanana (fruit and seeds-phala bīja) Vedanāsthāpana (patra-leaves) Śothahara (bīja-seeds) Lekhana-viṣaghna (bīja-seeds).
-------	---

Roga

- (a) **Ābhyantara** : Hṛdroga-raktapitta
 (madhura phala-sweet fruit)
 Hṛddourbalya
 (amla phalā-sour fruit)
 Raktapitta (puṣpa-flowers, mūla-
 root)
 Kāsa-śvāsa-hikkā
 Rajorodha-kaṣṭārtava
 (fruit-phala, seeds-bīja)
 Yakṛdvikāra-Arśa
 Aruci-chardi-tṛṣṇā-agnimāndya-
 ajīrna
 Udaravikāra-gulma-ādhmāna-śūla
 Pravāhikā (keśara)
 Kṛmiroga (root bark-mūlatvak)
 Madātyaya.
- (b) **Bāhya** : Vedanāyuktāṅga (patra-leaves)
 Carmaroga-śoṭha (bīja-seeds)
 Vṛścika daṁśa (bīja-seeds).

Therapeutic uses

The fruits (*Citrus medica* proper, the Citron) are large, oblong, obovoid or somewhat irregularly shaped; mamilla obtuse; rind thick; very aromatic; pulp scanty, subacid.

The root is anthelmintic. It is used in constipation and in tumours. It removes colic. It is useful in vomiting, urinary calculous and carries of teeth.

The buds and flowers are stimulant, astringent to the bowels; they increase appetite; and relieve vomiting. They are useful in tumours, abdominal complaints, asthma, cough, hiccough and intoxication.

The unripe fruit increases vāta and kapha humours (doṣa); and disfavours blood. The ripe fruit is sweet and sour; the ripe is stimulant, digestible, tonic; they cure leprous and relieve sore throat, cough, asthma, thirst, hiccough; it is good for throat; the juice allays earache.

The rind of the fruit is sweet is bitter, sharp, oily, aphrodisiac; they allay vāta and kapha. The seeds are indigestible, heavy and heating to the body, stimulant, tonic; and good for piles and in biliousness. They cure inflammation and allay kapha.

The Citron rind is hot, dry, and tonic; the fruit pulp is cold and dry. The seeds, leaves and flowers are hot and dry. The juice is refrigerant and astringent. The fruit is an expellant of poisons; it also checks fetid breath and helps normalise the taste of the mouth. The distilled water of the fruit is used as a sedative.

The rind of the fruit made into a marmalade and is an antiscorbutic. It is made into a preserve and is used for dysentery.

Either alone or in combination with other drugs, the bark, leaves and fruit are prescribed in snake-bite. Similarly the root and fruit are recommended for the treatment of scorpion-sting.

The sweet variety of the fruit (madhura phala) is specific for allaying vāta and pitta doṣa (body humours), while acid or sour variety (amla phala) alleviate kapha and vāta humours of body (doṣa). Accordingly both kinds of fruits are useful against various diseases caused due to provocation of relevant body humours.

The leaves are slightly warmed and applied over painful organs. The seeds are made into a past and applied externally to skin affections and inflammation. Seeds are topically applied to lesions of scorpion-stings.

The fruit is useful to counter alcoholism (madātyaya) and acid juice fruit is specially to check excess alcohol consumption and its complications. Fruit in general is used against intoxication, unconsciousness and various other ailments.

The fruit juice is given as it is useful in dyspepsia, vomiting, abdominal colic, haemorrhoids and other similar diseases of gastro-intestinal tract. The juice of fruit is useful in respiratory diseases specially cough, asthma, bronchitis and hiccough; and also throat affections. Fruit is used in worms affections; specifically the root is prescribed against worms.

The sweet fruits are useful in heart diseases as a cardiotoxic and given in haemorrhage, epistaxis and haemoptysis (raktapitta). The flowers and roots are also used in these conditions. The acid fruit is used as cardiotoxic in heart complications. The fruits and seeds are used in dysmenorrhoea and allied complications of menstrual cycle (scanty, irregular and painful conditions).

Parts used

Fruit, Root-bark, Flower-stamens, Seeds, Fruit rind oil, leaves.

Dose

Fruit juice 6-12 gms., Seeds powder 1-2 gms., Fruit rind oil. 5-3 drops, Root-bark decoction (minims) 40-80 gms., Fl. stamens Powder 3-6 grains.

Formulation (yoga)

Bijapurakāḍya taila, Mātuluṅgādi lepa.

Groups (gaṇa)

Hṛdya, Chardinigrahaṇa (Caraka).

BĪJAPŪRAKA (बीजपूरक)

- क. बीजपूरो मातुलुङ्गो रुचकः फलपूरकः ।
 ख. बीजपूरफलं स्वादु श्लेष्मलं दीपनं लघु ॥
 रक्तपित्तहरं कण्ठजिह्वाहृदयशोधनम् ।
 श्वासकासरुचिहरं हृद्यं तृष्णाहरं स्मृतम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Āmrāphalādi varga, 130-131.

मधुकर्कटी

बीजपूरोऽपरः प्रोक्तो मधुरो मधुकर्कटी ॥
 मधुकर्कटिका स्वाद्वी रोचनी शीतला गुरुः ।
 रक्तपित्तक्षयश्वासकासाहिक्काभ्रमापहा ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Āmrāphalādi varga, 133.

मातुलुङ्ग-बीजपूरः

मातुलुङ्गो बीजपूरो लुङ्गो मध्याम्लकेशरः ।
 पूरकाहो बीजपूर्णः सुपूरः फलपूरकः ॥
 केशराम्लो बीजकाहः सीधुवृक्षः सुपूरकः ।

मातुलुङ्गफलम्

लुङ्गं पित्तकरं हृद्यं रुच्याम्लं दीपनं लघु ॥
 (पित्तास्रदूषणं रुच्यं जिह्वास्यकण्ठशोधनम् ।)
 उष्णं वातकफश्वासकासतृष्णावमिप्रणुत् ॥

मातुलुङ्गफलत्वक्

तस्य त्वक् कटुतिकोष्णा गुर्वी स्निग्धा च दुर्जरा ।
 कृमिश्लेष्मानिलहरा मांसं स्वादु हिमं गुरु ।
 बृंहणं श्लेष्मलं स्निग्धं पित्तमारुतनाशनम् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 253-256.

फलकेशरम्

केशरं दीपनं मेध्यं लघु सङ्ग्राहि रोचनम् ।
 हिध्मागुल्मोदरश्वासकासशूलमदात्ययान् ॥
 आस्यशोषानिलश्लेष्मविबन्धाशोवमीञ्जयेत् ।

फलस्वरसः

तद्रसः पार्श्वहृद्बस्तिशूलश्लेष्मसमीरणम् ॥
 कासश्वासारुचिच्छर्दिबहिमान्द्यं नियच्छति ।

फलबीजम्

बीजमुष्णं कृमिहरं दुर्जरं गर्भदं तथा ॥
 मदमूर्च्छाभ्रमकरं वातश्लेष्मविनाशनम् ।

बीजमज्जा

मज्जा स्वादुः स्निग्धबल्यो दीपनोऽनिलपित्तजित् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 257-268.

मातुलङ्गप्रयोगः

तरुजान् ज्वलितान्मूत्रे निर्वाप्यामृद्य चाङ्कुरान् ॥
 मातुलङ्गस्य तत् पूतं पाण्डुशोथहरं पिबेत् ।

Cāraka Samihitā, Cikitsā. 16-65/66.

सुखप्रसवार्थम्

मातुलुङ्गस्य मूलं तु मधुकेन युतं तथा ।
 घृतेन सहितं पीत्वा सुखं नारी प्रसूयते ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Madhyakhaṇḍa, 70-110.

मातुलुङ्गजटा (मूलम्)

लुङ्ग्या जटा विषूच्यर्शःकृमिशूलविबन्धनुत् ।

मातुलुङ्गपुष्पम्

कुसुमं रक्तपित्तघ्नं शीतलं ग्राहि वातजित् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 261.

मधुकर्कटी (मातुलुङ्गस्यान्यजातिः देवजूता)

अ. (बीजपुरः परः प्रोक्तो मधुरो मधुकर्कटी) ।

अन्यात्यम्ला देवजूतान्या स्वादुर्मधुकर्कटी ॥

घण्टालिका स्वादुलुङ्गी मधुरा मधुवल्लिका ।

मधुपर्णी स्वादुमज्जा वर्द्धमाना महाफला ॥

गुणाः

ब. मधुकर्कटिका स्वाद्वी रोचनी शीतला गुरुः ॥

रक्तपित्तक्षयश्वासकासहिध्माभ्रमान् जयेत् ।

तस्मादल्पान्तरगुणैः देवजूतावनोद्भवे ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 262-264.

बीजपूरः

बीजपूरो बीजपूर्णः पूर्णबीजः सुकेसरः ।

बीजकः केसराम्लश्च मातुलुङ्गः सुपूरकः ॥

रुचको बीजफलको जन्तुघ्नो दन्तुरत्वचः ।

पूरको रोचनफलो द्विदेवमुनिसन्मितः ॥

बीजपूरगुणाः

बीजपूरफलमम्लकटूष्णं श्वासकासशमनं पचनं च ।

कण्ठशोधनपरं लघु हृद्यं दीपनं च रुचिकृञ्जरणं च ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Āmrādi varga, 147-148.

पक्वापक्वतो विभिन्नावस्थातया विशेषगुणाः

बालं पित्तमरुत्कफास्रकरणं मध्यं च तादृग्विधं

पक्वं वर्णकरं च हृद्यमथ तत्पुष्णाति पुष्टिं बलम् ।

शूलाजीर्णविबन्धमारुतकफश्वासार्तिमन्दाग्निजित्

कासारोचकशोफशान्तिदमिदं स्यान्मातुलुङ्गं सदा ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Āmrādi varga, 149.

वनबीजपूरः

अम्लः कटूष्णो वनबीजपूरो रुचिप्रदो वातविनाशनश्च ।
स्यादम्लदोषकृमिनाशकारी कफापहः श्वासनिषूदनश्च ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Āmrādi varga, 153.

मधुरबीजपूरः

मधुकर्कटी मधुरा शिशिरा दाहनाशनी ।
त्रिदोषशमनी रुच्या वृष्या च गुरुदुर्जरा ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Āmrādi varga, 155.

गुल्मे मातुलुङ्गरसः

चूर्णानि मातुलुङ्गस्य भावितानि रसेन वा ।
कुर्याद्वर्तिः सगुटिका गुल्मानाहार्तिशान्तये ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā. 5-78.

हिक्कानिरोधार्थं मातुलुङ्गरसप्रयोगः

‘मधुसौवर्चलोपेतं मातुलुङ्गरसं पिबेत् ।’

Cakradatta, 12-6.

मसूरिकारोगे मातुलुङ्गकेशरप्रयोगः

‘सौवीरेण तु सम्पिष्टं मातुलुङ्गस्य केशरम् ।
प्रलेपात् पातयत्याशु दाहञ्चाशु नियच्छति ॥’

Cakradatta, 54-28.

गुल्मानाहयोः

चूर्णानि मातुलुङ्गस्य भावितेन रसेन वा ।
कुर्याद्वर्तिः सगुडिका गुल्मानाहार्तिशान्तये ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 5.

पित्तं स्वमाशयमानयनाय

मातुलुङ्गरसं क्षौद्रं पिप्पलीमरिचान्वितम् ।
सनागरं पिबेत् पित्तं तथास्यैति स्वमाशयम् ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 21.

रक्तपित्ते

मूलानि पुष्पाणि च मातुलुङ्ग्या
पिष्ट्वा पिबेत् तण्डुलभावेन ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Uttara. 47.

ज्वरकृते आस्यवैरस्ये

‘केसरं मातुलुङ्गस्य मधुसैन्धवसंयुतम् ।
.....वैरस्ये धारयेत् कल्कम्..... ॥’

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Uttara. 39.

कर्णशूले

‘रसेन बीजपूरस्य.....पूरयेत् ।

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Uttar. 18.

मुखकान्तिकरमातुलुङ्गजटाऽऽदिलेपः

Cakradatta, 55-48.

वातविसर्पे

‘मातुलुङ्गरसेनापि धावनं वातसर्पिषु ।’

Hārīta Saṁhitā.

गुर्विणीनामरुचौ

‘.....सकटुकं मातुलुङ्गस्य केसरम् ।
मार्जनं दन्तजिह्वासु गण्डूषश्चोष्णवारिणा ।
गुर्विणीनाञ्च सर्वासामरुचिञ्च नियच्छति ॥’

Hārīta Saṁhitā.

शर्करायाम्

यो मातुलुङ्गविकामूलं पिबेत् पर्युषिताम्बुना ।
तस्यान्तःशर्करोद्भूतं दुःखं सद्यो विलीयते ॥

Hārīta Saṁhitā, Cikitsā. 29.

अधोवातहरो योगः

‘क्षौद्रेण बीजपूरत्वग्लीढाऽधोवातगन्धनुत् ।’

Cakradatta 66-61.

पित्तज्वरिणः पिपासायाम्

केसरं मातुलुङ्गस्य मधुसैन्धवसंयुतम् ।
पेष्यमानं तालुलेपः सद्यः पित्ततृषापहः ॥

Hārīta Saṁhitā, Cikitsā. 2.

मातुलुङ्गगुणाः

श्वासकासारुचिहरं तृष्णाघ्नं कण्ठशोधनम् ।
लघूष्णं दीपनं हृद्यं मातुलुङ्गमुदाहृतम् ॥

Dhanvantari Nighaṅṭu.

शूलेऽरुचौ विबन्धे च मन्देऽग्रौ मद्यविप्लवे ।
हिक्काश्वासे च कासे च वम्यां वर्चोगदेषु च ॥
वातश्लेष्मसमुत्थेषु सर्वेष्वेवोपदिश्यते ।
केशरं मातुलुङ्गस्य लघु शेषमतोऽन्यथा ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Sūtra. 27-54.

लघ्वन्नं दीपनं हृद्यं मातुलुङ्गमुदाहृतम् ।
त्वक् तित्ता दुर्जरा तस्य वातक्रिमिकफापहा ॥
स्वादु शीतं गुरु स्निग्धं मांसं मारुतपित्तजित् ।
मेध्यं शूलानिलच्छर्दिकफारोचकनाशनम् ॥
दीपनं लघु सङ्ग्राहि गुल्मार्शोग्नं तु केसरम् ।
शूलाजीर्णविबन्धेषु मन्देऽग्रौ कफमारुते ।
अरुचौ च विशेषेण रसः तस्योपदिश्यते ॥

Suśruta Samhitā, Sūtra. 46.

हिक्कासु मातुलुङ्गरसः

‘मधुसौवर्चलोपेतं मातुलुङ्गस्य केसरम् ।

Bhāvaprakāśa.

मसूरिकापाचनार्थम्

सौवीरेण तु सम्पिष्टं मातुलुङ्गस्य केसरम् ।
प्रलेपात् पातयत्याशु दाहञ्चाशु नियच्छति ॥’

Cakradatta.

वातभवशूले

बीजपूरकमूलस्य घृतेन सह पाययेत् ।
जयेद्वातभवं शूलं कर्षमेकं प्रमाणतः ॥

Cakradatta, 26-19.

पार्श्वहृद्बस्तिशूले

मातुलुङ्गरसो वापि..... ।
सक्षारो मधुना पीतः पार्श्वहृद्बस्तिशूलनुत् ॥

Cakradatta.

कृमिदन्तरुजापहम्

बीजपूरकमूलस्य बाकुचीनां तथैव च ।
भागाभ्यां तु समं कृत्वा पिष्ट्वा वर्तिन्तु कारयेत् ॥
एतां रदस्थवर्तिं तु दन्तैर्दन्तैर्निपीडयेत् ।

सद्योऽवस्थितमात्रा तु कृमिदन्तरुजापहा ॥

Baṅgasena.

वमने

मातुलुङ्गरसो लाजाशर्करामधुसंयुक्तः ।
पिप्पलीचूर्णसंयुक्तः श्रेष्ठः छर्दिनिवारणः ॥

Baṅgasena.

अरोचके

साज्यसैन्धवमरोचकापहम् ।
मातुलुङ्गफलकेसरं स्मृतम् ॥

Vaidya Jivanam.

वातजन्यशूले बीजपूरकमूलम्

बीजपूरकमूलं च घृतेन सह पाययेत् ।
जयेद्वातभवं शूलं कर्षमेकं प्रमाणतः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa. Madhyakhaṇḍa, 43.

अपानवायुशमनाय

आस्वादिता सकृदपि मुखगन्धं सकलमपनयति ।
त्वग्बीजपूरफलजा पवनमपाच्यं वारयति ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Mukharogādhikāra, 66-164.

BILVA

Botanical Name : *Aegle marmelos* Corr.

Family : Rutaceae

Classical Names

Bilva, Śrīphala, Mālūra, Sadāphala, Granthila, Kaṅṭakī, Śaṅḍīlya, Gandhagarbha, Śailūṣa, Mahākapittha.

Regional Names

Bel (Hindi), Bel (Mar.), Bili (Guj.), Bil (Beng.), Bil (Punj.), Aluvidham (Tam.), Billamu (Tel.), Katori (Sindh.), Beh Hindi (Pers.), Safarjale Hindi (Arab.), Bael, Bengal quince (Eng.).

Description

A small or medium sized deciduous tree, armed with straight sharp exillary thorns; 2,5-6, 3 cm. long, terete.

Leaves alternate, 3-foliolate, rarely; 5-foliolate; petiole 2.5-6.3 cm. long, terete. Leaflets 5-10 by 2.5-6.3 cm., ovate or ovate-lanceolate, crenate, acuminate, membranous pallucid-punctate; the lateral opposite, subsessile; the terminal long, petioluled.

Flowers greenish white, sweet-scented; about 2.5 cm. across; 2-sexual; in short axillary panicles. Calyx flat pubescent, 4-lobed; lobes rounded; sometimes obscure. Petals 4, spreading, oblong, thick, gland-dotted; much exceeding the sepals; imbricate. Stamens numerous; anthers elongate, apiculate; filaments free or fascicled inserted round in inconspicuous disk. Ovary ovoid, cells 10-20; style terminal, short, deciduous; stigma capitate; ovules numerous, 2-seriate.

Fruit 5-10 cm. diam., globose, grey or yellowish; rind woody. Seeds numerous, oblong compressed, with a woody mucous testa; embedded in orange-coloured mucilaginous, sticky, sweet and aromatic pulp.

Fruits

Fruit globose; pulp mucilaginous, astringent, sweet, orange and astringent. Dried slice having for the outside a smooth greenish-brown, shell enclosing a hard orange-brown gummy pulp in which cells and seeds may be seen. Dried pulp has a mucilaginous acid and slightly astringent; taste has an agreeable aroma.

Root

Transverse section shows a pentahedral stele; cork cambium arises in the pericycle.

Bark

In the mature bark cork is lignified and stratified. Phelliform consists of a broad zone of parenchyma and strands of stone cells. The medullary group is in the inner region, and are uni or triserrate; while in inner region in to pentaseriate.

Leaves

Leaf is dorsy-ventral, in transverse section, the epidermis on both the sides consist of rectangular in longitu-

dinally elongated cells covered with thick cuticle. The cells are polygonal in surface view; stomata are the aponiocytic type present on both side in which cells are squarish to radially elongated and pallsade and contain many idioblasts containing a single prism of calcium oxalate.

Flowering and fruiting time

Summers to spring season and onwards, Leafless during hotter months.

Distribution

It is found as wild in the sub-Himalayan tract; Central and Southern India; and Burma. Often planted all over India and Burma. Wild and planted trees are found.

Sub-montane regions hills terai, and plains; almost throughout the country; also frequently planted around temples, in gardens and in other vicinities. Cultivated fruits larger than the fruits from wild plants.

Chemical Composition

Fruit contains marmalasin (Marmelosine). Young bark contains coumarin and umbelliferone; and old bark umbelliferone and coumarin. Leaves contain essential oil, consisting of α - and β - phellandrine. Matured bark Y-fragine, umbelliferone and marmesin, sterols and triterpenoids. Leaves contain 0.6 percent of essential oil mostly compound of d-limonene. An aromatic yellowish-greenish oil obtained by pressing the seeds has laxative activity. Roots, leaves and bark contain mainly tannin.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṣāya, Tikta
Guṇa	: Rūkṣa, Laghu
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphavātaśāmaka

Action and Properties

Karma	: Śōthahara, Hṛdya-Raktastambhana Kaphaghna Mūtrālpātvakara-śārkārāhrāsaka Garbhāśayaśōthahara
--------------	---

Jvaraghna (mūla-root, patra-leaves)
 Kaṭupouṣṭika-Balya
 Nāditantuśāmaka (mūla-roots)
 Dīpana-pācana-grāhī
 (apakvaphala-unripe fruit)
 Mṛdurecana-kaśāya-madhura
 (pakvaphala-ripe fruit)
 Viṣṭambhi (atisevanāt-excessive use)
 Śophahara-vedanāsthāpana

Roga

- a) **Ābhyantara** : Śothahara, Hṛddourbalya-hṛtkampa
 Raktastambhana
 Prameha-Ikṣumeha-pūyameha-
 śukrameha
 Garbhāśayaśoṭha-Śvetapradara-
 sūtikāroga
 Agnimāndya-Atisāra-pravāhikā-grahani
 Udaraśūla-āma-śūla
 Raktātisāra-raktapravāhikā-raktarśa
 Vibandha, Kāmalā-viṣūcikā
 Kāsa-śvāsa-pratiśyāya
 Jvara-viṣamajvara.
- b) **Bāhya** : Pārśvaśūla-śoṭha, Netrābhiṣyanda
 Karṇaroga-bādhirya-śūla
 Gātradourgandhya
 Bāla-skandhograha
 Śothahara, Arśoghna
 Āsthāpanopaga
 Anuvāsanopaga (Carak).

Therapeutic uses

The unripe fruit or half ripe fruit of plant is medicinally potent; the pulp of unripe or half-ripe fruit is aromatic, cooling and laxative. The pulp of unripe or half-ripe fruit is astringent, digestive and stomachic, and useful in diarrhoea. Roots bark is used medicinally and powder or decoction of bark obtained from the root of tree is internally given in cases of intermittent fever.

The fruits are alterative, antipyretic, antiscorbutic, astringent, cordiac, digestive, febrifuge, laxative, nutritive, odoreferous, restorative, stimulant, stomachic and tonic. It is useful in fever, hepatic fever, typhoid, bronchitis, abdominal complaints, constipation or habitual constipation, hypochondrias, melancholia, palpitation of heart, diabetes, debility, diarrhoea and dysentery, piles, seminal weakness and vomiting.

Fruits are mucilaginous and sweet; they are pulpy and sticky specially ripe pulp is sweet, sticky and astringent. Dried pulp has a mucilaginous acid and slightly taste, with agreeable aroma. Unripe fruits are demulcent. Fresh juice of fruit is bitter and pungent. Root and stem, bark are antipyretic and useful in fever. Aegelin derived from the plant is considered useful in bronchial spasm (on experimental basis).

Pharmacological activity of plant and its various parts have been studied alongwith phytochemical and other investigations on different aspects. Pharmacological study finds that the aqueous and alcoholic extracts of the leaves of plant drug, causes and increases in amplitude and force of contractions of frog's heart similar to that shown by digoxin. Both these extracts stimulated the ventricles of dog's heart, as seen from the electrocardiograms.

The alcoholic-extracts of the roots and fruits drug showed hypoglycaemic activity in albino rats. The fruit extract showed antiviral activity against Ranikhet diseases virus. Marmelosin, isolated from the plant drug showed anthelmintic activity against ankylostomiasis, the test organism employed being *Nippostrongylus nuris* as per studies conducted.

The extract of the fresh half-ripe fruit is given in doses of half to one drachm and this is repeated many times a day. An extract prepared from sun-dried slices of the unripe fruit is given (1-2 drachms). The powder of the dried of fruit pulp (in doses of 10-12 grams) as a tonic in general debility. It is used as an antiscorbutic and febrifuge (in doses of 10-30 grams). It is given in a nauseant and antidysenteric (in dose of 20 grains to 2 drachms).

The juice of leaves is orally given in diabetes mellitus as the plant drug is an antidiabetic agent. The fresh juice of leaves is given with honey as a mild laxative in fever, catarrh and asthma (in dose of 2-4 drachms). In dropsy with constipation, the leaf-juice mixed with black pepper is given. The same recipe is used in case of Jaundice. The decoction of the leaves is used as a febrifuge and expectorant in febrile conditions and respiratory complaints, especially in asthmatic ailments.

A hot poultice of leaves is applied to the eyes in condition of ophthalmia. Similarly the leaves poultice is applied to head in delirium of fever; the poultice is useful for applying to the chest in acute bronchitis and to inflated parts of the body.

The root-bark is useful in various diseases; the decoction of root-bark is used in intermittent fever, melancholia and heart (abnormal) palpitation. Root bark is also useful in dyspepsia, diarrhoea and dysentery. The decoction of root bark is given in oedema; and the powder of root bark is useful as bitter tonic.

This drug is one of the important herbal drugs used in various diseases and one of the ingredients of Daśamūla (group of ten drugs) and groups of the drugs as component. The drug is specifically considered useful in dysentery and bowel complaints where the fruits (in different stages and forms) are given. The root, root-bark and bark are recommended for using in nervine disorders, oedema, dropsy and uterine complaints.

Various formulations of medicines with this drug are used in treatment of number of diseases. The syrup, confections and the traditional preparations (śarbat) murabbā and other) for domestic and commercial purpose. Ripe Fruits are commonly used domestically as edible fruits, they are known for health promotive, nutritive and curative medicinal potentiality.

In the system of indigenous medicine (Āyurveda), this drug finds several and frequent therapeutic uses in different forms and recipes (single and compounds); they are prescribed (in medical texts) in a number of diseases

such as abdominal disorders, gastro intestinal diseases, piles or haemorrhoids, oedema, Jaundice, vomiting, obesity, deafness (ear complaints), eye diseases (ophthalmia etc.), fever, paediatric disorders, gynaecological disorders, urinary complaints, and as an alterative or rejuvenative (geriatrics) drug.

Besides the wide medicinal utility, the plant and its certain parts (i.e. leaves and fruits) are of socio-cultural (religious) importance since the tree is regarded as one of the sacred trees of Indian heritage.

Part used

Root, Bark, Leaves, Fruits, Root-bark.

Dose

Powder 3-6 gms., Juice 12-24 gms., Syrup 24-48 gms. (pānaka), Decoction 40-80 gms. (bark), Fruit pulp (ripe) 10-15 gms., Root bark powder 3-6 gms., Fruit pulp (unripe) 5-10 gms.

Formulation (yoga)

Bilvapañcaka kvātha, Bilvādi cūrṇa, Bilva taila, Bilvādi ghṛta, Bilvamūlādi guṭikā, Gangādhara cūrṇa (laghu), Daśamūlariṣṭa-kvātha.

Groups (gaṇa)

Bṛhatpañcamūla, Daśamūla, Ambaṣṭhādi, Varuṇādi (Suśruta.)

BILVA (बिल्व)

फलं पत्रञ्च

श्रीफलस्तुवरस्तिक्तो ग्राही रूक्षोऽग्निपित्तकृत् ।

वातश्लेष्महरस्तस्य पत्रं सङ्ग्राही वातजित् ॥

Kaigedeva Nghanṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 19

जटा-बिल्वपेशिका

जटा दोषवमीकृच्छ्रशूलघ्नी मधुरा लघुः ।

कफवातशूलघ्नी च ग्राहिणी बिल्वपेशिका ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighanṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 20

काण्डम्

‘काण्डं कासामवातघ्नं हृद्यं रुच्यश्रिवर्धनम् ।’

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 21

बालफलम्

बिल्वं कटु कषायोष्णं तिक्तं दीपनपाचनम् ।

स्निग्धं तीक्ष्णं लघु ग्राहि हृद्यं वातकफापहम् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 21-22

पक्वफलम्

पक्वं विदाहि विष्टम्भि मधुरानुरसं गुरु ॥

दोषलं दुर्जरं पूतिवातं ग्राह्याग्निसादनम् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 22-23

पुष्पम्

‘निहन्याद् बिल्वजं पुष्पमतीसारं तृषां वमिम् ।’

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 23

काञ्जिसाधितफलम्

काञ्जिके संस्थितं बिल्वमग्निसन्दीपनं परम् ॥

हृद्यं रुचिकरं प्रोक्तमामवातविनाशनम् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 24

श्रीफलस्तुवरस्तिक्तो ग्राही रूक्षोऽग्निपित्तकृत् ।

वातश्लेष्महरो बल्यो लघुरुष्णश्च पाचनः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Guducyādi varga, 13

बिल्वस्तु मधुरो हृद्यः कषायः पित्तजित् गुरुः ।

कफज्वरातिसारघ्नो रुचिकृद्दीपनः परः ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Āmrādi varga, 190

बिल्वमूलम्

‘बिल्वमूलं त्रिदोषघ्नं मधुरं लघु वातनुत् ।’

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Āmrādi varga, 191

बिल्वफलम्

फलं तु कोमलं स्निग्धं गुरु सङ्ग्राहि दीपनम् ॥

तदेव पक्वं विज्ञेयं मधुरं सरसं गुरु ।

कटुतिक्तकषायोष्णं सङ्ग्राहि च त्रिदोषजित् ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Āmrādi varga, 191-192

बिल्वमूलं त्रिदोषघ्नं छर्दिघ्नं मधुरं लघु।
बिल्वस्य च फलं चाम्लं स्निग्धं सङ्ग्राहि दीपनम् ॥
कटुतिक्तं कषायोष्णं तीक्ष्णं वातकफापहम्।
विद्यात्तदेव पक्वं तु मधुरानुरसं गुरु ॥
विदाहि विष्टम्भकरं योगहत् पूतिमारुतम् ॥

Dhanvantari Nighaṅṭu.

शूले बिल्वमूलादिगुटिका, बिल्वमूलादिक्राथः

Cakradatta, 26-20, 26-44.

आमशूले

गुडेन भक्षयेत् बिल्वं रक्तातीसारनाशनम्।
आमशूलविबन्धघ्नं कुक्षिरोगहरं परम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa

शिशोः छर्द्यतिसारयोः

बिल्वमूलकषायेण लाजाश्चैवः सशर्कराः।
आलोड्य पाययेद्बालं छर्द्यतिसारनाशनम् ॥

Bangasena, Bālaroga, 49

ज्वरे परिकर्त्तिकायां बिल्वमज्जाक्षीरपाकम्

एरण्डमूलोत्थितं ज्वरात् सपरिकर्त्तिकात्।
पयो विमुच्यते पीत्वा तद्बिल्वशालाटुभिः ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsa 3-235

कर्णवाधिर्ये बिल्वतैलम्

फलं बिल्वस्य मूत्रेण पिष्ट्वा तैलं विपाचयेत्।
साजाक्षीरं तद्धि हरेद् वाधिर्यं कर्णपूरणे ॥

Cakradatta, Karṇaroga cikitsā, 57-29

नेत्रामयानां प्रतिकारार्थं बिल्वाञ्जनप्रयोगः

बिल्वपत्ररसः पूतः सैन्धवाज्येन चान्वितः।
शुल्वे वराटिका घृष्टः धूपितो गोमयाग्निना ॥
पयसालोडितश्चाक्षयोः पूरणाच्छोधशूलनुत्।
अभिष्यन्दधिमन्थे च स्नावे रक्ते च शस्यते ॥

Cakradatta, Netraroga cikitsā, 59-36-37

रसायने

बिल्वरसायनम्

Suśruta Samhitā, Cikitsā 28, 10-12

अतिसारे

कणां मधुयुतं पीत्वा तक्रं पीत्वा सचित्रकम् ।
.....बालबिल्वानि मुञ्चेत जठरामयान् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 19-113

द्रवे सरक्ते.....बालबिल्वं सफाणितम् ।
सक्षौद्रतैलं प्रागेव लिख्यादाशु हितं हि तत् ॥

Suśruta Samhitā, Uttara. 40-119

स्विन्नानि पिष्टवद् वापि समं बिल्वशलाटुभिः ।

Suśruta Samhitā, Uttara. 40-119

गुडेन खादयेद् बिल्वं रक्तातीसारनाशनम्

Bṛnda Mādhava, 3-66

कुक्षिशूलामशूलम्रं विविधास्त्रातिसारजित् ।
सेवेत सगुडं बिल्वं बिल्वतुल्यपयोधरे ॥

Bṛndamādhava, 3-40, Vaidya Jivana, 2-15, Bhāvaprakāśa, 2-57

बिल्वचूतास्थिनिर्यूहः पीताः सक्षौद्रशर्कराः ।

निहन्याच्छर्घतीसारं वैश्वानर इवाहुतिम् ॥

Bṛndamādhava, 3-30

ग्रहणीरोगे

स्विन्नानि बालबिल्वानि खादेत् क्षौद्रेण मानवः ।

तक्रेणानलगर्भं सार्धं तद् ग्रहणीं जयेत् ॥

Baṅgasena, Grahaṇī, 169

श्रीशिवपूजनम्

दर्शनं बिल्वपत्रस्य स्पर्शनं पापनाशनम् ।

अघोरपापसंहारं बिल्वपत्रं शिवार्पणम् ॥ ३ ॥

त्रिदलं त्रिगुणाकारं त्रिनेत्रं च त्रिधायुतम् ।

त्रिजन्मपापसंहारं बिल्वपत्रं शिवार्पणम् ॥ ४ ॥

अखण्डैर्बिल्वपत्रैश्च पूजयेत् शिवशङ्करम् ।

कोटिकन्यामहादानं बिल्वपत्रं शिवार्पणम् ॥ ५ ॥

गृहाण बिल्वपत्राणि सपुष्पाणि महेश्वर ।
सुगन्धीनि भवानीश शिव त्वं कुसुमप्रियः ॥ ६ ॥

Sarvadeva Pūjāpaddhati, 45-46

श्रीगणेशपूजनम्

बिल्वपत्रम्-

त्रिशाखैर्बिल्वपत्रैश्च अच्छिद्रैः कोमलै शुभैः ।

तव पूजां करिष्यामि गृहाण परमेश्वर ॥ २७ ॥

Sarvadeva Pūjāpaddhati, 10

श्रीशालिग्रामपूजनम्

बिल्वपत्रम्-

‘तुलसीबिल्वनिम्बैश्च जङ्गीरैरामलैः शुभैः ।

पञ्च बिल्वमिति ख्यातं प्रसीद परमेश्वर ॥ २३ ॥

Sarvadeva Pūjāpaddhati, 70

कर्णरोगे बिल्वतैलम्

गवां मूत्रेण बिल्वानि पिष्ट्वा तैलं विपाचयेत् ।

सजलञ्च सदुग्धञ्च तद्वाधिर्यहरं परम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Karṇarogādihikāra, 64-39

उदरामयानां मन्दाग्निविकारे बिल्वगर्भघृतम्

मसूरस्य कषायेण बिल्वगर्भं पचेद् घृतम् ।

हन्ति कुक्ष्यामयान् सर्वान् ग्रहणीपाण्डुकामलाः ॥

Cakradatta, Grahaṇi cikitsā, 4-39

अर्शःसु

‘बिल्वोत्क्वाथे.....सुखोष्णैः । तं शूलार्तमुपवेशयेत् ॥’

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 9

प्रवाहिकायाम्

‘कल्कः स्यात् बालबिल्वानां तिलकल्कश्च तत्समः ।

दध्नः सरोऽम्लस्नेहाढ्यः खडो हन्यात् प्रवाहिकाम् ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā 19-34

स्कन्धग्रहप्रतिषेधार्थम्

‘.....बिल्वस्य कण्टकान् ।

.....ग्रथितान्येन धारयेत् ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Uttara, 28

पित्तरक्तोत्थिते अतिसारे

‘बिल्वमध्यं शर्कराक्षौद्रसंयुक्तम् ।

तण्डुलाम्बुयुतो योगः पित्तरक्तोत्थितं जयेत् ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 40-127

श्रीशिवपूजनम्

बिल्वपत्रयुतां मालां गृहाण सुमनोहराम् ।

‘बिल्वपत्रम्— ॐ नमो बिल्वमने च कवचिने च

नमो वर्मिणे च वरुथिने च नमः श्रुताय च श्रुतसेनाय

च नमो दुन्दुभ्याय चाहनन्याय च नमो धृष्णवे ॥ १ ॥

काशीक्षेत्रे निवासी च कालभैरवपूजनम् ।

कोटिकन्यामहादानं बिल्वपत्रं शिवापर्णम् ॥ २ ॥

Sarvadeva Pūjapaddhati, 45

विषमज्वरे

वन्दाको बिल्वभवः तक्रेण श्रुतेन वा अङ्गे प्रोतः ।

विषमज्वरस्य विकृतिं जयेन्निःशेषमतिविषमाम् ॥

Vaidya Manoramā

शोथे

बिल्वपत्ररसं पूतं सोषणं क्षयथोः त्रिजे ।

विट्सङ्गे चैव दुर्नाम्नि विदध्यात् कामलास्वपि ॥

Cakradatta. Br̥nda Mādhava, 39-9

वमने

श्रीफलमस्य.....कषायो मधुकयुतः ।

पेयः छर्दि शीतः ॥

Cakradatta

बाधिर्ये

फलं बिल्वस्य मूत्रेण पिष्ट्वा तैलं विपाचयेत् ।

साजाक्षीरं तद्धि हरेत् बाधिर्यं कर्णपूरणे ॥

Cakradatta.

बिल्वतैलम्

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Uttara. 21-35.

Bṛnda Mādhava 59-27. Śāraṅgadhara Saṁhitā 2-9-171

गात्रदौर्गन्ध्ये

‘बिल्वपत्ररसैर्वापि गात्रदौर्गन्ध्यनाशनः ।

Cakradatta

ग्रहण्याम्

श्रीफलशलाटुकल्को नागरचूर्णेन मिश्रितः सगुडः ।

ग्रहणीगदमत्युग्रं तक्रभुजा शीलितो जयति ॥

Cakradatta, Vṛnda Mādhava, 4-10

रक्तार्शौ

‘..... किंवा बिल्वशलाटवः । योज्याः ॥’

Cakradatta

ग्रहणीरोगे बिल्वकल्कम्

श्रीफलशलाटुमज्जा नागरचूर्णेन मिश्रितः सगुडः ।

ग्रहणीगदमत्युग्रं तक्रभुजा शीलितो जयति ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Grahṇī rogādhikāra, 4-54

अर्शांसि

बिल्वक्वाथेऽथवा तत्रे दधिमण्डाम्लकाञ्जिके ।

गोमूत्रे वा सुखोष्णे तं सम्यक्तमवगाहयेत् ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā 14-47

युक्तं बिल्वकपित्थाभ्यां महौषधिबिडेन वा ।

आरुष्करैर्यवान्या वा प्रदद्यात्तक्रतर्पणम् ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Cikitsā, 8-35

यः सततं बिल्वशलाटुभोजी रक्तार्शांसां नाशमसौ करोति ।

Rāja Mārtaṇḍa, 19-6

बालरोगे

दीपनो बालबिल्वैलाशर्करालाजसक्तुभिः ।

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Uttara, 1-40

अलोड्य पाययेद् बालं छर्घतीसारनाशनम् ।

Baṅgasena, Bālaroga, 49

कामलायाम्

सत्र्यूषणं बिल्वपत्रं पिबेन्ना कामलापहम् ।
दन्त्यर्षपलकल्कं वा द्विगुडं शीतवारिणा ॥

Caraka Saṃhitā, Cikitsā 16-59

मेदोरोगे

बिल्वोऽग्रिमन्थः श्योनाकः काश्मरी पाटला तथा ।
क्वाथ एषां जयेत् मेदोदोषं क्षौद्रेण संयुतः ॥

Śārṅgadhara Saṃhitā, 2-2-117

बिल्वपत्ररसो वापि गात्रदौर्गन्ध्यनाशनः ।

Vṛnda Mādhava, 36-18

बिल्वशिवा समभागा लेपाद् भुजमूलगन्धमपहरति ।

परिणतपिडकाञ्चापि पूतिकरञ्जोत्थबीजं वा ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Cikitsā, 39-71

छद्याम्

श्रीफलस्य गुडूच्या वा कषायो मधुसंयुतः ।

पेयच्छर्दित्रये शीतो मूर्वा वा तण्डुलाम्बुना ॥

Vṛnda Mādhava, 15-15, Baṅgasena, Chardi, 39

बिल्वत्वचो गुडूच्या वा क्वाथः क्षौद्रेण संयुतः ।

जयेत् त्रिदोषजां छर्दिं पर्पटः पित्तजां तथा ॥

Śārṅgadhara Saṃhitā, 2-2-85, Bhāvaprakāśa, Cikitsā 17-25

बिल्वनागरनिःक्वाथो हन्याच्छर्दिं विसूचिकाम् ।

बिल्वनागरकैटर्यक्वाथस्तदधिको गुणैः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Cikitsā, 6-112

उदररोगे

पार्श्वशूलमुपस्तम्भं हृद्ग्रहं च समीरणः ।

यदि कुर्यात् तत्तस्तैलं बिल्वक्षारान्वितं पिबेत् ।

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Cikitsā, 15-45

BIMBĪ

Botanical name

Coccinia grandis (Linn.) Voigt.

Coccinia indica Wight. & Arn.

Family : Cucurbitaceae

Classical name : Bimbī

Sanskrit names

Bimbī, Tuṇḍī, Tuṇḍikerī, Raktaphalā, Dantacchadā.

Regional names

Kundru, Kanduri, Tirkol (Hind.), Tirkol (Bihar), Talakucha (Beng.), Tondle (Mar.), Tidora (Guj.), Kanduri (Punj.), Kovai (Tam.), Dondatiga (Tel.)

Description

Perennial, scandent or prostrate, much-branched; root thick; stems grooved, slender, glabrous. Tendrils slender, striate, simple. Leaves 5-10 cm. long and broad, bright green above, paler beneath, studded and sometime tough with papillae, palmately 5-nerved from a cordate base, often with circular glands between the nerves, obtusely 5-angled or sometimes deeply 5-lobed, the lobes broad, obtuse or acute, apiculate, more or less sinuate-toothed; petioles 2-3.2 cm. long.

Male flowers peduncles 1-flowered, 2-3.8 cm. long, subfiliform; calyx-tube glabrous, broadly campanulate, 4-5 mm. long; teeth 2.5 mm. long, linear; corolla 2.5 cm. long, veined, pubescent inside, glabrous outside; segments 4.5-7.5 mm. long, triangular, acute; staminal column glabrous, capitulum of anthers subglobose.

Female flowers peduncles 1.3-2.5 cm. long; staminodes 5, subulate, 3 mm. long; ovary fusiform, glabrous, slightly ribbed.

Fruits fusiform, ellipsoid, slightly beaked, 2.5-5 by 1.3-2.5 cm., marked when immature with white streaks, bright scarlet when fully ripe. Seeds some what obovoid, rounded at the apex, slightly papillose, much compressed, yellowish grey.

Flowering and fruiting time

Spring to autumn or cold season.

Varieties and kinds

Classical texts of medicine and materia medica (especially Nighaṅṭus) mention two kinds of fruits (plants

drugs) viz. variety (madhura bimbī) and bitter variety (tikta bimbī).

Distribution

It is found throughout India and Ceylon, Malaya and Tropical Asia.

Chemical composition

It contains enzyme, hormone and traces of an alkaloid; alkaloid pharmacologically inert, the juice contains an amylase. Roots contain resin, an alkaloid, starch, sugar, gum, fat, organic acid and ash 16 percent. An enzyme is also found in the plant.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Tikta, Kaṣāya
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa, Tikṣṇa
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphapittahara

Action and Properties

Karma	: Madhurakaśamana Mūtrasaṅgrahaṇīya Raktaśodhaka, Śothahara Kaphaniḥsāraka, Svedajanana Javaraghna, Kaṭupouṣṭika Dīpana-pācana-recana Yakṛduttejaka, Kṛmighna Chardikara, Pittavirecana Vraṇaropaṇa, Masūrikāpratiśedhaka
-------	---

Roga

a) Ābhyantara	: Madhumeha-Ikṣumeha-Ojomeha- Pūyameha Mūtravikāra-Prameharoga Kāsa-Śvāsa-Pratiśyāya Rakta vikāra-śoṭha Agnimāndya Yakṛdvikāra-Kāmalā-pāṇḍu Tvagvikāra, Masūrikā Krimiroga, Jvara
---------------	---

Dourbalya, Kaphapaittika roga
(Vamana-Virecana-karma).

b) Bāhya : Śoṭha, Madhura Bimbī
(Sweet variety), Vraṇa, Madhura
Mukhapāka, Śīta, SlanyaJanana
Stambhana, Raktapittaśāmaka.

Therapeutic uses

The ripe fruit of plant alongwith Jaggary is recommended for putting in mouth and setting it in normal position followed by obation and fomentation in case of lock jaw.

The ghr̥ta kalpanā (prepared butter) with Bimbī is prescribed for oral use against the worms located in gastrointestinal tract of patient.

Juice of leaves and roots is orally given in diabetes. Leaves are applied externally inruption of skin.

Plant is internally used in gonorrhoea. It is useful in diabetes, syphilis and skin affections.

Locally the juice of leaves is externally applied to ulcers.

Fruits are used as vegetable. Fruits are useful in diabetes and vegetable of fruits is useful for diabetes. Roots and leaves juice is regarded as an efficacious anti-diabetic medicine. Fruit Juice is also similarly given in diabetes.

The fruit is cooling, bitter, pungent, laxative, wholesome, alexiteric, emetic, aphrodisiac and galactagogue. Fruits cures biliousness, foul breath, bad taste, bronchitis, leprosy, anaemia, inflammations, diseases of the blood. Fruits of bitter variety are specially useful in medicine, though both kinds of fruits are of medicinal uses.

The roots of plant drug are cooling, aphrodisiac, urinary loses, burning of hands and feet, and given in uterine discharges.

The leaves are sweet, acrid, cooling, astringent to the bowels, and they cure disorders of vāta and kapha.

The flowers cure itching, biliousness and jaundice; they are useful to counter complaints caused with vitiation of pitta doṣa. Medicinal properties of flowers are also

mentioned in texts alongwith the medicinal utility of other parts i.e. fruits, roots, leaves etc. generally used in therapeutics.

Parts used

Whole plant, Fruit, Roots, Leaves.

Dose

Juice 12-24 gms., Powder 3-6 gms., Powder 3-5 grains (as bitter tonic), Leaves juice 10-20 ml.

BIMBĪ (बिम्बी)

तुण्डिका कफपित्तासृक्शोथपाण्डुज्वरापहा ।

श्वासकासापहं स्तन्यं फलं वातकफापहम् ॥

Dhanvantari Nighaṇṭu

‘तित्तं प्रसूनं पित्तघ्नं तत्परं कामलापहम् ।’

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu.

तित्तबिम्बीफलं तित्तं पित्तघ्नं वातकोपनम् ।

विषघ्नमतिरुच्यं स्यात् गुरु श्लेष्महरं न च ॥

शोफास्रपाण्डून् जयति न मेध्यं छर्दिकृत् परम् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu.

स्वादुतुम्बिका-बिम्बी

अ. अथ भवति मधुरबिम्बी मधुबिम्बी स्वादुतु (वि)म्बिका तुण्डी ।

रक्तफला रुचिरफला सोष्णफला पीलुपर्णी च ॥

ब. बिम्बी तु मधुरा शीता पित्तश्वासकफापहा ।

असृग्ज्वरहरा रम्या कासजिद् गृहबिम्बिका ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Mūlakādi varga, 189-190

क्रिमिरोगे बिम्बीघृतम्

‘पीतं बिम्बीघृतं हन्ति पक्वमामाशयान् क्रिमीन् ।’

Cakradatta, Krimi cikitsā, 7-9

मसूरिकारोगेषु प्रतिषेधार्थं बिम्ब्यादिशीतक्वाथः

बिम्ब्यतिमुक्तकाशोकप्लक्षवेतसपल्लवैः ।

निशिपय्युर्षितः क्वाथो मसूरीभयनाशनः ॥

Cakradatta, Masūrīkā cikitsā, 54-45

हनुग्रहे

सगुडां पक्वबिम्बीं तु प्रक्षिप्य वदनान्तरे ।
स्रस्तं सङ्गमयेत् स्थानं स्निग्धं स्विन्नञ्च नाशयेत् ॥

Baṅgasena, Vātavyādhi. 101

क्रिमिरोगे

क्रिमीनामाशयगतान् पक्वाशयगतानपि ।
पीतं बिम्बीयुतं हन्ति तरुमिन्द्राशनिर्यथा ॥

Gadanigraha, 2-6-41

BOLA

Botanical name

Commiphora myrrha (Nees.) Engl.
Balsemanudendron myrrha T. Nees.

Family : Burseraceae

Calssical name : Bola

Sanskrit names

Bola, Jātīrasa Pora, Prāṇa Goparasa, Gandharasa
Piṇḍa.

Regional names

Bol, Hirabol (Hind.), Gandhbol (Beng.), Hirabol
(Mar., Guj.) Vellaippapolam (Tam.), Valintrapolam (Tel.),
Murr (Arali), Bol (Pers.), Myrrh (Eng.).

Description

The shrub or small size tree of *Balsemanudendron myrrha* resembles of *Commiphora mukula* (Guggulu). The trunk of plant exudates oleo-resin which is known as Bola. Such exudation is obtained from two or three varieties of trees under this group.

This oleo-resin contains numerous round crystals that forms the consolidation of resinous substance. It is reddish yellow or alike, frogile, odorous and bitter in taste.

Distribution

It is native of north-eastern America and it also occurs in Arab Persia, Abyssynia and Siam. The resinous product of Macca is considered best which is called 'Murmacci.'

Chemical Composition

It contains a volatile oil known as Myrrhol, resin, bitter extract, calcium, phosphate, carbonate and other substances.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Tikta, Kaṭu, Kaṣāya
Guṇa	: Rūkṣa
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Tridoṣahara

Action and Properties

Karma	: Chedana-śleṣmahara-pūtihara Raktaśodhaka-svetakaṇa (raktagata) varadhana, Mūtrala, Ārtavajanana Dīpana-pācana-anulomana Kṛmighna, Śothahara-stambhana Vedaṇāsthāpana-Kothapraśamana Svedajanana-jvaraghna, Netrya Vātaśāmaka, Vraṇaropaṇa Garbhāśayaviśuddhikara Medhya, Vṛṣya, Graha vādhāhara Sandhāniya, Kuṣṭhaghna-Tvacya.
--------------	--

Roga

a) Ābhantara	: Kāsa-śvāsa-pārśvaśula Raktadoṣa-kuṣṭha-carmaroga Pāṇḍu-vātarakta Mūtrakṛccha, Rajorodha-kaṣṭārtava Netraroga-netrābhiṣyanda Agnimāndya-vibandha-ānāha Krimiroga, Vātavyādhi-vātavikāra Vātaślaiṣmika vikāra, Graha-bhūta- vādhā, Apasmāra, Arśa Garbhāśayadoṣa.
b) Bāhya	: Vraṇa, Mukha-danta roga Sandhivāta-vātarakta-gr̥dhrasī Netrābhiṣyanda.

Therapeutic Uses

The gum-resin is useful in dysentery, chlorosis, amenorrhoea and uterine affections.

It is blood purifier, anthelmintic, stomachic, wound healer, aphrodisiac, anti-dermatosis, diaphoretic, antipyretic, analgesic, diuretic and emmenagogue. The gum-resin is effective in respiratory troubles.

The gum-resin is useful in various diseases such as blood impurities, cough, asthma, catarrhal affection, anaemia, dysmenorrhoea, worms affections, nerve complaints, gout, sciatica, rhematic, arthritis, epilepsy, piles, ulcers, diseases of vocal cavity, ears and eyes.

It is used in dyspepsia, abdominal troubles and flatulence. In condition of conjunctivitis, the gum is applied after mixing with mother latex.

Externally, the gum-resin is applied over body parts affected with gout, joints pain, rheumatism and sciatic complaint. It is applied to wounds and ulcers. The gargle of warm mixed with resin is used in mouth and dental complaints.

Part used : Gum.

Dose : 10-20 grains.

BOLA (बोल)

- क. बोलगन्धरसप्राणपिण्डगोपरसाः समाः ।
 ख. बोलं रक्तहरं शीतं मेध्यं दीपनपाचनम् ॥
 मधुरं कटु तिक्तं च दाहस्वेदत्रिदोषजित् ।
 ज्वरापस्मारं कुष्ठघ्नं गर्भाशयविशुद्धिकृत् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Dhātuvādi varga, 159-160.

बोलम्

- अ. बोलं जातीरसं पोरं निर्लोहं बर्वरं रसम् ॥
 रसगन्धं च गन्धाम्रं गोमतं नालिकं बलम् ।
 पिण्डं स्तोत्रं कालकूटं स्तोमकं वासगन्धकम् ॥
 ब. बोलस्तिक्तः कटुस्वादुः पाचनो दीपनो हिमः ।
 मेध्यो वृष्यस्त्रिदोषघ्नो गर्भाशयविशोधनः ॥
 हन्त्यपस्मारकुष्ठार्शः भग्नस्वेदग्रहज्वरान् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Dhātu varga, 82-85

बोलम्

बोलं रक्तापहं मुण्डं सुरसं पिण्डकं विषम् ।
 निर्लोहं वर्वरं पिण्डं सौरभं रक्तगन्धकम् ॥
 रसगन्धं महागन्धं विश्वञ्च शुभगन्धकम् ।
 विश्वगन्धं गन्धरसं व्रणारिर्वसुभूह्वयम् ॥

बोलगुणाः

बोलन्तु कटुतिकोष्णं कषायं रक्तदोषनुत् ।
 कफपित्तामयान् हन्ति प्रदरादिरुजापहम् ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Pippalyādi varga, 114-116

बोलं रक्तहरं शीतं मेध्यं दीपनपाचनम् ।
 मधुरं कटु तिक्तं च ग्रहस्वेदत्रिदोषनुत् ॥
 ज्वरापस्मारकुष्ठघ्नं गर्भाशयविशुद्धिकृत् ।
 श्रीवासः सरलो बोलः कुन्दरुः ग्रन्थिपर्णकम् ॥
 तुरुष्कं सिल्हकं स्पृक्षा गुच्छं नखद्वयं मुरा ।
 सर्वेऽमी पावनाः प्रोक्ता रक्षोघ्नाः ज्वरनाशनाः ।
 स्वादुतिकरसायुष्याः स्वेददौर्गन्ध्यनाशनाः ।
 लघूष्णाः कटुकाः पाके कफवातनिबर्हणाः ।
 बोलो विशेषतस्तत्र रक्तहन्ता प्रकीर्तितः ॥

Nighaṇṭu Saṅgraha

BRĀHMĪ

Botanical name

Bacopa monnieri (Linn.) Pennel.

Bacopa monniera Wettst.

Herpestis monniera (Linn.) H.B. & K.

Family : Scrophulariaceae

Classical name : Brāhmī

Sanskrit names

Brāhmī, Nirabrahmi, Brahmācāriṇī, Jalanimba-
 jalabrahmi, Divyā, Sarasvatī, Aindrī, Medhyā, Bhāratī, Soma,
 Śāradā, Suraśreṣṭhā, Brahmakamya, Kapotavankā.

Regional names

Brahmi (Hind.), Nira-brahmi, Brhmi-sak (Beng.)
Nirabrdhmi (Tam. & Mal.), Indian Pennywort (Eng.).

Description

A glabrous somewhat succulent creeping herb; stems 10-30 cm. long, rooting at the nodes; branches numerous, ascending. Laves sessile, decussate, 6.25 by 2.5-10 mm., obovate-oblong or spatulate, rather fleshy, dotted with black specks, very obtuse, quite entire, nerves obscure. Flowers axillary, solitary; bracteoles 5 mm. long, linear; pedicels 0.6-3.2 cm. long, slender. Calyx glabrous, divided to the base; upper sepals 6 by 3-4 mm., ovate, acute; the other 4 sepals slightly shorter than the upper; the 2 inner lateral ones 1.5 mm. wide, lanceolate, acute. Corolla pale blue or almost white, 8 mm. long; lobes nearly equal, rounded, spangled when fresh with shining dots. Anthers bluish purple; pollen white.

Fruits capsule 5 mm. long, ovoid, acute, pointed with the style-base, glabrous. Seeds about 0.85 mm. long, oblong striate, pale.

Flowering and fruiting time

Summer season.

Distribution

It is growing throughout India in wet places damp and marshy areas. Al warm countries, Ceylon (Sri Lanka).

Kinds and Varieties

Allied drug is Maṇḍukaparṇī : *Centella asiatica* (Linn.) Urban.

Chemical Composition

Plant contains alkaloid known as Brahmine and its therapeutic action resembles strychnine, but it is less toxic. There bases are isolated : B₁ oxalate, B₂ oxalate and B₂ chloroplatinate, a sterol. Plant also contains alkaloid herpestine and a mixture of three alkaloids from the plant.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Tikta, Kaṣāya
Guna	: Laghu, Snigdha, Sara

Vīrya	: Śīta
Vipāka	: Madhura
Doṣakarma	:

Action and Properties

Karma	: Dīpana, Pācana, Rasāyana, Svarya Āyusyakara, Medhya, Kuṣṭhaghna Kaṇḍūghna-tvacya, Viṣaghna Vedanāsthāpana, Mehaghna Śothahara, Javaraghna.
Roga	: Unmāda-apasmāra, Yoṣāpasmāra Masūrikā-pīḍ (ṭ) ikā, Bālaroga Smṛtīvikāra-dourbalya Kuṣṭha-tvagvikāra-kaṇḍu Pāṇḍu-kāmalā, Pliharoga-vṛddhi Śoṭha, Kāsa-śvāsa-svarabhaṅga Prameha, Aruci, Javara, Udararoga.

Therapeutic Uses

It is febrifuge, nervine, bitter and cardiac tonic. Herb is useful in epilepsy, fever, insanity, nervine and mental diseases. The herb is reputed as a brain tonic and good herbal drug for promoting memory power and mental faculties. The leaves and whole plant are used in various nervine and mental complaints, and they are considered very useful for brain power, skin, complexion and general restorative or rejuvenating drug.

Whole plant is nervine tonic; it is used in asthma, epilepsy, hoarseness, insanity and diarrhoea. The stems and leaves are considered useful against snake-bite. Whole plant or leaves are useful in dermatosis and other skin affections.

The hot poultice of the plant is applied in acute bronchitis, cough and chest complaints.

Dried leaves are effectively useful in debility, nervous break-down and other low dynamic conditions. They are also specially suggested for students and intellectuals to tone up mind and mental power including memory. The leaves are given in stoppage of urine accompanied by obstinate costiveness. The leaf juice is applied to swellings; and as a good liniment for rheumatism (mixture of petroleum and leaf-juice).

The plant drug is bitter, pungent; heating, emetic, laxative; useful in bad ulcers, tumours, ascites, spleen enlargements, indigestion, oedema, inflammation, leprosy, anaemia, snakebite, scorpion-sting, biliousness and disorders of vāta and kapha.

Herbal durg is useful in syphilis, scabies, leucoderma, diarrhoea, pyresis and it purifies blood, and it is maturant and expectorant.

The juice of leaves is given to infants suffering from catarrh or severe bronchitis (giving relief by causing vomiting and purging).

Whole plant is sueful in hysteria and other similar complaints. The fomentation of whole plant is applied for erysipelas and elephantiasis.

Parts used : Whole plant, Leaves.

Dose : Juice 10-20 ml., Powder 500 mg. 1 gm.

Formulations (Yoga)

Brāhmīghṛta, Brāhmī taila, Brāhmī pākam, Brāhmī Vaṭī., Brāhmī Rasāyana.

BRĀHMĪ (ब्राह्मी)

रसायने

ब्राह्मीरसायनम् ।

Suśruta Samhitā, Cikitsā, 28-5/6

उन्मादे

ब्राह्मीकूष्माण्डीफलषड्ग्रन्थाशङ्खपुष्पिकास्वरसाः ।

उन्मादहते दृष्टाः पृथगेते कुष्ठमधुमिश्राः ॥

Vṛnda Mādhava, 20-3 Śāraṅgadhara Samhitā, 2-1-18

मेधादिजनने बालोपचरणीये

ब्राह्मी मण्डूकपर्णी च त्रिफला चित्रको वचा ।

शतपुष्पा शतावर्या दन्ती नागबला त्रिवृत् ॥

एकैकं मधुसर्पिभ्यां मेधाजननमभ्यसेत् ।

Kāśyapa Samhitā, p. 5

धारयेदोषधीः श्रेष्ठा ब्राह्म्यैन्द्रीजीवकादिकाः ।
हस्ताभ्यां ग्रीवया मूर्ध्ना विशेषात् सततं वचाम् ॥
आयुर्मेधास्मृतिस्वास्थ्यकरि रक्षोऽभिरक्षणीम् ।

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Uttara, 1-27

मसूरिकायाम्

सक्षौद्रं पाययेद् ब्राह्म्याः रसं वा हैलमोचिकम् ।

Vṛnda Mādhava, 56-2

अपस्मारे

ब्राह्मीरसवचाकुष्ठशङ्खपुष्पीभिरेव च ।
पुराणघृतमुन्मादालक्ष्यापस्मारपापनुत् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā 10-25

ब्राह्मीघृतम् ।

Vṛnda Mādhava, 21-15

विसंस्मृतिं ब्राह्मी ।

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Uttara, 40-51

प्रयुञ्ज्यात्तैललशुनं पयसा वा शतावरीम् ।
ब्राह्मीरसं कुष्ठरसं वचां वा मधुसंयुताम् ॥
तत् सेव्यं शङ्खपुष्पी च यच्च मेध्यं रसायनम् ।

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā 10-62

BRĀHMĪ-MANḌŪKAPARNĪ

(ब्राह्मी-मण्डूकपर्णी)

ब्राह्मी हिमा सरा तिक्ता लघुर्मेध्या च शीतला ।
कषाया मधुरा स्वादुपाकाऽऽयुष्या रसायनी ॥
स्वर्या स्मृतिप्रदा कुष्ठपाण्डुमेहास्त्रकासजित् ।
विषशोथज्वराहरी तद्वन्मण्डूकपर्णिनी ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Guducyādi varga, 280-281

ब्राह्मी शीता सरा तिक्ता कषाया मधुरा लघुः ।
मेध्या स्वर्या स्वादुपाका हृद्यायुष्या रसायनी ।

मतिस्मृतिप्रदा हन्ति कुष्ठकण्डूज्वरं मलान् ।
शोफारुचिविषश्वासकासमेहास्रपाण्डुताः ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 722-723

ब्राह्मीगुणाः

ब्राह्मी हिमा कषाया च तिक्ता वातास्रपित्तजित् ।
बुद्धिं प्रज्ञां च मेधां च कुर्यादायुष्यवर्धिनी ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Parpaṭādi varga, 66

क्षुद्र(लघु)ब्राह्मीगुणाः

ब्राह्मी तु क्षुद्रपत्राऽन्या लघुब्राह्मी जलोद्भवा ।
ब्राह्मी तिक्तरसोष्णा च सरा वातामशोफजित् ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Parpaṭādi varga, 67

ब्राह्मयायुष्याः हिमा मेध्या कषाया तिक्तका लघुः ।
स्वर्या स्मृतिप्रदा कुष्ठपाण्डुमेहास्रकासजित् ॥

Dhanvantari Nighaṅṭu

मेध्यरसायनार्थं सारस्वतघृतम् (ब्राह्मीप्रधानघटक)

Cakradatta, Rasāyanādihikāra, 25-32

अपस्मारे ब्राह्मीरसम्

‘ब्राह्मीरसञ्च मधुना सर्वापस्मारभेषजम् ।’

Cakradatta, Aṣasmāra cikitsā, 21-13

अपस्मारे (मेध्यरसायनम्)

ब्राह्मीस्वरसयुक्तं यत् पञ्चगव्यमुदाहृतम् ।
तत् सेव्यं शङ्खपुष्पी च यच्च मेध्यं रसायनम् ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 10-62

अतत्त्वाभिनिवेशे

प्रयुञ्ज्यात्तैललशुनं पयसा वा शतावरीम् ।
ब्राह्मीरसं कुष्ठरसं वचां वा मधुसंयुताम् ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā 10-64

मेध्यायुष्यकामाय ब्राह्मी

‘हत् दोष एषागारे प्रविश्यः प्रतिसंसृष्टभक्तो
ब्राह्मीस्वरसमादाय सहस्रसम्प्राप्ताभिहुतं कृत्वा
यथा बलमुपयुञ्जीत । औषधीश्च पराह्ने यवागूम-

लवणा पिबेत् । क्षीरसात्म्यो वा पयसा भुञ्जीत ।
 एषं सप्तरात्रमुपयुज्य ब्रह्मवर्चसी मेधावी भवति ।
 द्वितीयं सप्तरामुपयुज्य ग्रन्थमीप्सितमुत्पादयति ।
 नष्टं चास्य प्रादुर्भवति ।
 तृतीयं सप्तरात्रमुपयुज्य द्विरुच्चारितं शतमप्यवधारयति ।
 एषमेव विंशतिरात्रमुपयुज्य अलक्ष्मी अपक्रमति ।
 मूर्तिमन्तौ चैनं वाग्देवी अनुप्रविशति ।
 सर्वाश्चैनं श्रुतयः उपतिष्ठन्ति ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 28-5

अपस्मारे

(क) ब्राह्मीघृतम्

ब्राह्मीरसवचाकुष्ठशङ्खपुष्पीश्रुतं घृतम् ।
 पुराणं स्यादपस्मारोन्मादग्रहहरं परम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Apasmārādhikāra, 23-18

(ख) ब्राह्मीघृतम्

ब्राह्मीरसे वचाकुष्ठशङ्खपुष्पीभिरेव च ।
 पुराणं मेध्यमुन्मादग्रहापस्मारनुद् घृतम् ॥

Cakradatta, Vātavyādhi cikitsā, 21-30

मसूरिकायाम्

‘सक्षौद्रं पाययेद् ब्राह्म्याः रसम् ।’

Baṅgasena. Cakradatta, Masūrikā cikitsā, 54-2

पिटिकायाम्

‘रसौ मण्डूकपर्ण्यां तु प्रलेपान् पिटिकामयम् ।
 सम्प्रणाशयेत् ।’

Śoḍhala, Granthyādhikāra.

उन्मादे

‘ब्राह्मीकूष्माण्डौ.....स्वरसाः उन्मादहताः
 दृष्ट्वा पृथगेते कुष्ठमधुमिश्राः ।’

Cakradatta.

अपस्मारे

‘पयसा वा ब्राह्मीरसम् ।’

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 16-88

रसायनार्थम्

‘मण्डूकपर्ण्याः स्वरसः प्रयोज्यः क्षीरेण..... ।’

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 18-176

पुष्ट्यायुर्बलारोग्यकरत्वे

‘मण्डूकपर्ण्याः कल्पोऽथ शुण्ठीमधुकयोस्तथा ।’

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 16

उदरे

त्रिवृन्मण्डूकपर्ण्याश्च शाकं स्वरसोदकसाधितम् ।

निरम्ललवणस्नेहं स्विन्नस्विन्नमन्नभुक् ॥

मासमेकं ततश्चैव तृषितः स्वरसं पिबेत् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā 18

मेध्यरसायनम्

‘मण्डूकपर्ण्याः स्वरसः प्रयोज्यः क्षीरेण यष्टीमधुकस्य चूर्णम् ।’

अप्युप्रदान्यामयनाशनानि बलाग्रिवर्णस्वरवर्धनानि ।

मेध्यानि चैतानि रसायनानि..... ॥’

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā 1/3-30

मेधायुष्यकामाय मण्डूकपर्णी

हत् दोष एवं प्रतिसंसृष्टभक्तः यथाक्रमम् आगारं प्रविश्य मण्डूकपर्णी-
स्वरसमादाय सहस्रसङ्घाताभिहूतं कृत्वा यथाबलं पयसा आलोड्य
पिबेत् । पयोऽनुपानं वा तस्यां जीर्णायां यवान्नं पयसोपयुञ्जीत । तिलैर्वा सह
भक्षयित्वा त्रीन् मासान् पयोऽनुपानं जीर्णे पयः सर्पिरोदन इत्याहारः
एवमुपयुञ्जन् ब्रह्मवर्चसौ श्रुतिनिगादौ भवति, शतवर्षमायुरवाप्नोति ।

त्रिरात्रोपोषितश्च त्रिरात्रमेतां भक्षयेत् त्रिरात्रादुर्ध्वं पयः सर्पिरिति
चोपयुञ्जीत ।

बिल्वमात्रं पिण्डं वा पयसाऽलोड्य पिबेत् । एवं दशरात्रमुपयुज्य
मेधावी शतवर्षायुः भवति ।

Sūsruta Samhitā, Cikitsā 28-4

उन्मादे

ब्राह्मीकूष्माण्डीफलषड्ग्रन्थाशङ्खपुष्पिकास्वरसाः ।

उन्मादहतो दृष्टाः पृथगेते कुष्ठमधुमिश्राः ॥

Bṛnda Mādhava 20-3 Śāraṅgadhara Samhitā 2-1-18

BRHATĪ

Botanical name : *Solanum indicum* Linn.

Family : Solanaceae

Classical name : Bṛhatī

Sanskrit names : Bṛhatī, Kṣudrabhaṅṭākī, Simhī.

Regional names

Ubhi ringani (Guj.), Barikateli, Banbhanta (Hind.)
Byakura (Beng.), Ringni (Mar.), Popparamati (Tam.),
Teliamulak (Tel.), Kataikatan (Pers.), Large Egg Plant
(Eng.)

Description

A much-branched under-shrub 0.3-1.5 meter high, very prickly; prickles large, with along compressed base, sharp, often slightly recurved; stem stout, often purple; branches covered with minute stellate hairs.

Leaves 5-15 by 2.5-7.5 cm., ovate in outline, acute, subentire or with a few large triangular-ovate, subacute lobes, sparsely prickly both sides, clothed above with simple hairs from bulbous bases intermixed with small stellate ones, covered below with small stellate hairs; base cordate, cuneate or truncate, often unequal-sided; petioles 1.3-2.5 cm. long, prickly.

Flowers in racemose extra-axillary cymes; peduncles short; pedicels 6-13 mm. long, stellately hairy and prickly; calyx 3 mm. long, stellately hairy; teeth triangular, 1.5 mm. long; corolla 8 mm. long, deltoid-ovate, acute; filaments very short, almost 0; anthers oblong-lanceolate, opening by small pores; ovary often hairy at the top; style stellately hairy, curved at the apex.

Fruit berry 8 mm. diam., globose, dark yellow when ripe, glabrous or sometimes with a few stellate hairs at the apex. Seeds 4 mm. diam., minutely pitted.

Flowering and fruiting time

Summer season.

Distribution

It is found throughout tropical India, Malaya, China and Philippines.

Chemical composition

Roots and fruits condition contain wax, fatty acid and the alkaloids Solanine and Sonanidine.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṭu, Tikta
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa, Tikṣṇa
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphavātaśāmaka

Action and Properties

Karma	: Kaphaghna-kāśahara-śvāsahara Mūtrala, Hṛdayottejaka-raktaśodhaka- śothahara Dīpana-pācana-rocaka- vairasyahara-grāhi-kṛmighna Garbhāśayasaṅkocaka, Bājīkaraṇa Jvaraghna Vedanāsthāpana-uttejaka, Keśya Kaṇḍūghna-kuṣṭhaghna-tvacya Dantya.
--------------	--

Roga

- a) **Ābhyantra** : Kāśa-śvāsa-pratiśyāya-
(Internal) svarabheda-hikkā
Agnimāndya-grahaṇī-aruci-chardi
Udararoga-udaraśūla, Kṛmi
Hṛddourbalya-śoṭha-raktavikāra
Sanjñānāśa, Sūtikā-strī-ārtava-
vikāra-rajorodha- Kaṣṭhāprasava
Carmaroga-Kuṣṭha-kaṇḍū, Jvara
Mūtrakṛccha-aśmarī.
- b) **Bāhya** : Vedanāyukta vikāra, Yonikaṇḍū
(External) Dhvajabhaṅga

Indralupta-keśavikāra, Krimidanta
Samjñānāśa-mūrchā.

Therapeutic Uses

The roots are cerminative, expectorant; they are useful in asthma, cough, catarrhal, affections, difficult parturition, toothache, fevers, worm complaints, colic, dysuria and inchuria.

The external application of leaves and fruits of plant is made; they are rubbed up with sugar on itchy part of body. The juice of leaves is mixed with ginger and orally given for checking vomiting.

The roots are medicinally used in various diseases in different forms, as they are major part of plant drug frequently employed in therapeusis. The roots similarly enter into several groups of drugs (gaṇa) e.g. Daśamūla or Laghu pañcamūla, generally used as decoction and in other forms, and also as component of various compound formulations.

Secondly the fruits are important medicinally useful parts of the plant drug. Classically the medicinal properties and uses of the fruits are specifically mentioned with therapeutic indication (materia medica and other works). As regards the medicinal utility and used in various diseases, the textual sources mention certain kinds of plant drug and their fruits (e.g. Amlabṛhatī phalam, Nādeyī bṛhatī phalam, Sthūla bṛhatī phalam, latābṛhatī phalam, Simhi phalam, Bṛhatī pakvaphalam etc.).

The drug is commonly used potential herbal medicine with common availability. It is analgesic, aphrodisiac, astringent, carminative, digestive, emmanagogue, expectorant and resolvent. It is used in calculus affections, chronic febrile conditions, flatulance, heart troubles, hair ailments, skin diseases, respiratory and nerve complaints.

It is useful in gastro-intestinal troubles, piles or haemorrhoids and miscarriage, obesity, children diseases, eye troubles and several other ailments. The herbal drug is frequently and effectively used in respiraotry troubles and other complaints.

Parts Used : Roots, Fruits, Flowers, Leaves.

Dose

Powder 1-2 gms., Decoction 40-80 gms.

Formulations (yoga)

Bṛhatyādi kvātha, Bṛhatyādi gaṇa, Daśamūlāriṣṭa, Laghu pañcamūla kvātha.

Groups (Gana)

Kaṅṭhya, Hikkānigrahaṇa, Śoṭhahara, Aṅgamarda-praśamana (Caraka.) Bṛhatyādi Bṛhatpañcamūla (Suśruta.).

BRHATĪ (बृहती)

बृहती कटुका तिक्ता सोष्णा वातकफापहा ॥
दीपनी पाचनी हृद्या ग्राहिणी ज्वरकुष्ठनुत् ।
श्वासास्यमलवैरस्यकासारोचकशूलजित् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 50-51

सिंही-बृहत्योः गुणाः

सिंहीवृहत्यौ विज्ञेये रसतः कटुतिक्तके ॥
कफवातहरे तत्र सिंही सोष्णा तु पित्तनुत् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 59-60

निदिग्धिका-कण्टकार्योः फलम्

निदिग्धिकाकण्टकार्योः फलं सोष्णं तयोरपि ॥
कासश्वासापहा तत्र कण्टकारी तयोर्वरा ।
शेषांस्तु चाक्षुषा बल्या वातपित्तनिबर्हणाः ॥
श्लेष्मलाः क्लेदजननाः मधुराः गुरुर्बृहणः ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 60-62

सिंहीफलम्

सिंहीफलं कोमलमम्लाग्निसादश्वासत्रिदोषान् हरते लघूष्णम् ।

अम्लबृहतीफलम्

रुचिकृद् गुरु विष्टम्भिदग्धभूबृहतीफलम् ।
फलमम्लबृहत्यास्तु पित्तश्लेष्मकरं लघु ॥
अम्लं रुचिकरं हृद्यं वातघ्नं कृमिनाशनम् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 63-64

नादेयबृहतीफलम्

वातपित्तप्रशामनमभिष्यन्दकरं गुरु ॥
बल्यं कफकरं हृद्यं नादेयबृहतीफलम् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 64-65

स्थूलबृहतीफलम्

श्लेष्मलं सृष्टविष्मूत्रं शीतलं गुरु बृंहणम् ॥
वातपित्तहरं वृष्यमनल्पबृहतीफलम् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 65-66

लताबृहतीफलम्

वल्लीसिंहीफलं श्लेष्मकरं गुर्वाग्रिमान्द्यकृत् ।
आमकृद् वातलं कण्डूजननञ्च प्रसेककृत् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 66

बृहत्याः पक्कफलम्

शीतं विपाके मधुरं तु वृष्यं श्लेष्मापहं पिच्छिलमामनन्ति ।
वाते च पित्ते च हितं बृहत्याः फलं सुपक्वं रुचिकृच्च हृद्यम् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 67

बृहती ग्राहिणी हृद्या पाचनी कफवातहृत् ॥
कटुतिक्ताऽऽस्य वैरस्यमलारोधकनाशिनी ।
उष्णा कुष्ठज्वरश्वासशूलकासाग्रिमान्द्यजित् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Guḍucyādi varga, 36-37

संज्ञास्थापनार्थं बृहतीचूर्णप्रधमनम्

एकं बृहत्याः फलपिप्पलीकं शुण्ठीयुतं चूर्णमिदं प्रशस्तम् ।
प्रध्मापयेत् घ्राणपुटे विसंज्ञः चेष्टां करोति क्षवथुप्रबुद्धः ॥

Śodhala.

ग्रहणीरोगे

जायेत् सङ्ग्रहणीं तद्वत् तत्रेण बृहतीभवः ।

Śaraṅgadhara Saṁhitā, 2-5-58

क्रिमिकर्णे

वार्ताकुधूमश्च हितः सार्षपस्त्रेह एव च ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Uttara 21-52. Vṛanda Mādhava, 59-45

अलसके बृहतीप्रतिसारणम्

बृहतीरससिद्धेन तैलेनाभ्यज्य बुद्धिमान् ।

शिलारोचनकाशीशचूर्णैर्वा प्रतिसारयेत् ॥

Cakradatta, Kṣudraroga cikitsā, 55-17

क्रिमिदन्तरोगे बृहत्यादिक्वाथः

Cakradatta, Mukharoga (Dantaroga) cikitsā, 56-30

इन्द्रलुप्ते

इन्द्रलुप्तापहो लेपो मधुना बृहतीरसः ।

Bṛnda Mādhava, 57-76. Gadanigraha, 3-1-78.

Śaraṅgadhara Saṁhitā, 3-11-21

प्रजास्थापनार्थम् (गर्भधारणप्रयोगः)

क्षीरेण श्वेतबृहतीमूलं नासिकया पिबेत् ।

दक्षिणायात्मजार्थं वा कन्यार्थं वामया तथा ॥

Baṅgasena, Strīroga, 15-3

अर्शांसि

स्विन्नं वार्त्ताकफलं घोषायाः क्षारजेन सलिलेन ।

तद्धृतभ्रष्टं युक्तं गुडेन वा तृप्तितो योऽस्ति ॥

पिबति च तक्रं नूनं तस्याश्वेवातिवृद्धगुदजानि ।

यान्ति विनाशं पुंसः सहजान्यपि सप्तरात्रेण ॥

Bṛnda Mādhava, 5-14/15

मेदोविकारजनितकोठे

पाकोन्मुखानि बृहतीकुसुमोद्भवानि मूत्रावृतानि सुकरी सम्पुटे निधाय ।

दग्ध्वा कुकूलदहनेन च तानि हन्युः मेदोविकारजनितचिरेण कोठान् ॥

Vaidya Manoramā, 16-317

सन्निपातज्वरे

एकं बृहत्या फलपिप्पलीकं शुण्ठीयुतं चूर्णमिदं प्रशस्तम् ।

प्रध्मापयेद् घ्राणपुटे विसंज्ञः चेष्टां करोति क्ष्वथुप्रबुद्धः ॥

Gadanigraha, 2-1-400

बालरोगे

पीतं पीतं वमति यः स्तन्यं तं मधुसर्पिषः ।

द्विवार्त्ताकीफलरसं पञ्चकोलञ्च लेहयेत् ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Uttara 2-58

नेत्ररोगे

फलं बृहत्याः मगधोद्भवानामादाय कल्कं फलपाक्काले ।
स्रोतोजयुक्तं च तदुद्धृतं स्यात्.....तद्वत्तु पिष्टे विधिरेव चापि ॥
वार्ताकशिम्बिन्द्रसुरापटोलकिराततित्कामलकीफलेषु ॥

Suśruta Samhitā, 11-14/15

कासे

तोयाल्पस्विन्नबृहतीफलमल्पखण्डं दण्डाहतं चिरविपाचितमाज्यमध्ये ।
चूर्णेन सैन्धवमयेन विमिश्रितञ्च वह्निं प्रबोधयति कासनिवारणं हि ॥

Kṣema Kutūhalam, 8-62

CAKRAMARDA

Botanical name : *Cassia tora* Linn.

Family : caesalpiniaceae (Leguminosae)

Classical name : Cakramarda

Sanskrit names

Cakramarda, Dadrughna, Meṣalocana-meṣakusuma, Prapunnāḍa (ṭa), Padmāṭa, Cakrī-cakrikā, Kṣoḍaka, Tarvaṭa, Mardakara, Vimardaka, Śokanāśana, Kharjūghna.

Regional names

Chakwad, Parwad (Hind.), Chakunde (Beng.), Nakla (Mar.), Kubariya (Guj.), Tagari (Tam.), Tangarise (Tel.), ain-es-suratin (Arab.), Sanjisuboya (Pers.), Ring worm plant (Eng.).

Description

An annual field herb, 30-90 cm. high, as a rainy season weed with a foetid smell.

Leaves 7.5-10 cm. long; rachis grooved, more or less pubescent, with a conical gland between each of the 2 lowest pairs of leaflets; stipules 1.3-2cm. long, linear-subulate, caducous. Leaflets 2 pairs, opposite, 2.5-4.5 by 1.3-2.5 cm. (the lowest pair the smallest), obovate-oblong, glaucous, membranous, glabrous or more or less pubescent, base somewhat oblique, usually rounded; main nerves 8-10 pairs; petiolules 2.5 mm. long, pubescent.

Flowers usually in subsessile pairs in the axils of the leaves; the upper crowded; common peduncle in fruit not exceeding 4 mm. long; pedicels in fruit rarely exceeding 8 mm. long. Calyx glabrous, divided to the base; segments 5 mm. long, ovate, acute, spreading. Petals 5, pale yellow, subequal, 8 by 2.5 cm., oblong, obtuse, spreading the upper petal (standard), 2-lobed, the others entire. Stamens 10, the 3 upper reduced to minute staminodes, the remaining 7 perfect, subequal.

Pods 12.5-20 cm. by 4-5 mm., subhetragonous, much curved when young, obliquely septate, puberulous, not reticulate, the sutures very broad. Seeds 25-30, rhombohedral, with the long axis in the direction of the pod.

Fowering and Fruiting time

May to November; Summer and autumn, colds season.

Distribution

It is found throughout country; it is a common rains-weed specially in waste places, roadsides, farming fields, forest edges and other places, generally in warmer parts of different regions in India; Ceylon and the tropics generally.

Chemical Composition

Plant contains emodin, glucoside and a pleasant smelling fixed oil 50 percent. Seeds contain a glucoside like chrysophanic acid.

Leaves contain a purgative substance like Cathartine, red colouring matter and some mineral substances.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṭu
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphavāta śāmaka, Patra-leaves Bīja-seeds, Madhura (rasa-vipāka) Śīta (vīrya).

Action and Properties

Karma : Kuṣṭhaghna-kaṇḍūghna-dadrughna
 Nāḍībalya, Anulomna-Kṛmighna-
 Recana, Yakṛduttejaka
 Hṛdya-raktaprasādana
 Kaphanihsāraka
 Viṣaghna-ojovardhaka
 Medohara-Lekhana, Jvaraghna.

Roga

a) **Ābhyantara** : Kuṣṭha-kaṇḍū-carmaroga
 Kāsa-śvāsa
 Raktavikāra-hṛdroga-raktaśodhaka
 Arśa, Kaphavātajanya vikāra
 Vāta-nāḍī vikāra-pakṣāghāta-ardita
 Vibandha-gulma, Kṛmi, Viṣa
 Oupasargika roga (pratiṣedha)

b) **Bāhya** : Tvaca-rakta-varṇa vikāra, Viṣavikṛti
 Arśa, Dadru-pāmā-kaṇḍū
 Gaṇḍamāla
 Kuṣṭha-kiṭibha-sidhma-uṣṭha
 Śīroroga, Vraṇa.

Therapeutic uses

The drug is aperient, antiparasitici, germicidal and suppurative. It is useful in eczema, fever, teething troubles, itchy eruptions, leprosy, psoriasis, ringworm, skin diseases, hastening, suppuration, ulcers and tumours.

The seeds are roasted and ground powder, they are used a coffee or tea drink. The young leaves cooked and eaten as a vegetable. The seeds are anti-dermatosis and anti-pruritis; they are a tonic and stomachic and they are externally as well as internally very useful in skin complaints, as seeds contain chrysophenic acid active in skin affections.

The leaves are made into paste with curd and applied over the affected part in skin complaints. A paste of roots made with lime juice is specific remedy for ringworm.

The poultice of leaves is applied over boils; it is topically applied to gout, sciatica and joints pain. The leaves

are anti-periodic, aperient, alterative, anthelmintic, antiphlogistic and analgesic. The decoction of the leaves is a mild laxative; it is suitable for children having intestinal disorders (in lower doses) and also in teething troubles with febrile condition.

The seeds are tonic and stomachic. Seeds are useful in eye troubles and liver complaints. The pods are useful in dysentery.

The roots are bitter, tonic, stomachic.

The seeds paste is applied to rings of poisonous insect. It is also applied to piles. External application is considered useful in headache. The seeds and leaves are used internally in leprosy, dermatosis, leucoderma and other skin diseases; the leaves are cooked and a vegetable is suggested to skin patients and the juice of leaves is also orally given in such cases. The powder of seeds is recommended in treatment of skin complaints. The drug is suggested as preventive and counter medicine in conditions of poisons, obesity and infectitious diseases. The plant drug is used in goitre and glandular affections, especially roots.

Parts used : Seeds, Roots, Leaves.

Dose

Seeds powder 1-3 gms., Leaves juice 6-12 gms.

Formulation (yoga) : Dadrughnī vaṭī.

Groups (gaṇa) : Urdhvabhāgahora (Suśruta).

CAKRAMARDA (चक्रमर्द)

चक्रमर्दो लघुः स्वादू रूक्षः पित्तानिलापहः ।

हृद्यो हिमः कफश्वासकुष्ठदद्रुकृमीन्हरेत् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Harītakṛyādi varga, 211

चक्रमर्दफलम्

हन्त्युष्णं तत्फलं कुष्ठकण्डूदद्रुविषानिलान् ।

गुल्मकासक्रिमिश्वासनाशनं कटुकं स्मृतम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Harītakṛyādi varga, 212

चक्रमर्दः

क. द्रुघ्नः स्यादेडगजः क्षोडको मर्दकस्तथा ।
आवर्तकस्त्वेडगजः चक्रमर्दश्च च चक्रिका ॥
पमाडो (पद्माटः) मेषकुसुमः प्रपुत्राटप्रपुत्राडः ।

चक्रमर्दप्रपुत्राटगुणाः

ख. प्रपुत्राटो हिमो रूक्षो हृद्यः स्वादुः पटुर्लघुः ॥
विष्टम्भी सृष्टविण्मूत्रः कुर्यात् पित्तानिलौ हरेत् ।
कफकुष्ठज्वरश्वासकासमेहारुचिकृमीन् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 699-701

चक्रमर्दशाकम्

प्रपुत्राटस्य शाकं तु कफकुष्ठानिलापहम् ।
पित्तप्रकोपणं बल्यं दद्रुपामाहरं गुरुः ॥

चक्रमर्दफलम्

तत्फलं कटुकं सोष्णं जयेत् कुष्ठकफानिलान् ।
विषकण्डूगुल्मदद्रुश्वासकासकृमीन् जयेत् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 702-703

चक्रमर्दः

स्याच्चक्रमर्दोऽण्डगजो गजाख्यो मेषाह्वयश्चैडगजोऽण्डहस्ती ।
व्यावर्तकश्चक्रगजस्य चक्री पुत्राडपुत्राटविमर्दकाच्च ॥
दद्रुघ्नस्तर्वटस्य स्याच्चक्राहः शकनाशनः ।
दृढबीजः प्रपुत्राटः खर्जूघ्नश्चोनविंशतिः ॥

चक्रमर्दगुणाः

चक्रमर्दः कटुस्तीव्रो मेदोवातकफापहः ।
व्रणकण्डूतिकुष्ठार्तिदद्रुपामादिदोषनुत् ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Śatāhvādi varga, 198-200

दद्रुघ्नपत्रम्-चक्रमर्दपत्रशाकम्

दद्रुघ्नं पत्रं दोषघ्नमम्लं वातकफापहम् ।
कण्डूकासक्रिमिश्रासदद्रुकुष्ठप्रणुल्लघु ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Śāka varga, 36

चक्रमर्दः

चक्रमर्दः कटूष्णः स्यात्प्रोक्तो वातकफापहः ।

दद्रुकण्डूहरः कान्तिसौकुमार्यकरो मतः ॥

Dhnavantari Nighanṭu

चक्रमर्दबीजम्

तद्वीजं दद्रुजित् सिध्मत्वग्दोषसर्वकुष्ठजित् ।
वातरक्तापहं तस्य शाकं कफहरं लघु ॥

Dhanvantari Nighanṭu.

प्रपुत्राटो लघुः स्वादुः वातरलेष्महरः परः ।
तिक्तः कण्ड्वामयहरः कासकुष्ठकृमीञ्जयेत् ॥

Kṣemakutūhalam.

द्रव्रौ

‘चक्रमर्दस्य बीजञ्च मूलकाम्बुप्रपेषितम् ।
दद्रुघ्नं लेपनं कुर्यात्..... ।’

Baṅgasena.

गण्डमालायाम्

चक्रमर्दकमूलस्य कल्कं कृत्वा विपाचयेत् ।
केशराजरसे तैलं कटुकं मृदुनाऽग्निना ॥
पक्त्वा शेषे विनिक्षिप्य सिन्दूरभवा तारयेत् ।
एततैलं निहन्त्याशु गण्डमालां सुदारुणाम् ॥

Baṅgasena.

सुखप्रसवार्थम्

‘प्रपुत्राटशिफागाढं क्षुष्णा योनौ धृता भवेत् ।
..... सुखसूतिदा ॥’

Vaidya Manoramā, Paṭala 13-30

सूर्यावर्त्ताध्वविभेदयोः नस्ययोगः

चक्रमर्दबीजैर्वा लेपः काञ्जिकपेषितैः ।

Śoḍhala, Śirorogādihikāra.

किटिभकुष्ठे

चक्राह्वयं स्रुहीक्षीरं भावितं मूत्रसंयुतम् ।
रवितप्तं हि किञ्चित्तु लेपनात् किटिभापहम् ॥

Cakradatta 50-32.

कुष्ठचिकित्सायां चक्रमर्दबीजादिप्रलेपः

चक्रमर्दस्य बीजानि जीरकञ्च समांशिकम् ।
स्तोकं सुदर्शनामूलं द्रुकुष्ठविनाशनम् ॥

Cakradatta, Kuṣṭha cikitsā, 50-23

सिध्मकुष्ठे

एडगजः सर्जरसो..... सिध्मकुष्ठानाम् ।
काञ्जिकयुक्तं तु पृथङ्मतमिदमुद्वर्तनं क्रमशो लेपाः ।

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā 7-124

शिरोरोगे

‘.....लेपे तु प्रपुत्राटोऽम्लकल्कितः ।’

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Uttara, 24-10.

गण्डमालायां चक्रमर्दतैलम्

चक्रमर्दकमूलस्य..... मृदुनाऽग्निना ।
पादांशिकं विनिक्षिप्य सिन्दूरत्ववतारयेत् ।
एततैलं निहन्याशु गण्डमालां सुदारुणम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Madhyakhaṇḍa, 44/45-46.

कुष्ठचिकित्सायां प्रपुत्राडबीजप्रयोगः

Cakradatta, 50-22.

कुष्ठे

एडगजः सविडङ्गो द्वे च निशे राजवृक्षञ्च ।
कुष्ठोद्दालनमद्यं सपिप्पलीपाकलं योज्यम् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā 7-16

चक्रमर्दस्य बीजानि जीरकं च समांशिकम् ।
स्तोकं सुदर्शनामूलं द्रुकुष्ठविनाशनम् ॥

Baṅgasena, Kuṣṭha, 67.

चक्रमर्दकबीजन्तु मूलकाम्बुप्रपेषितम् ।
दद्रुघ्नं लेपनं कुर्याच्छिग्रुमूलत्वचोऽथवा ॥

Baṅgasena, Kuṣṭha, 66.

एडगजः सर्जरसो..... सिध्मकुष्ठानाम् ।
काञ्जिकयुतं तु पृथङ्मतमिदमुद्वर्तनं लेपाः ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 7-127

चक्राङ्गबीजं स्तुक्क्षीरभावितं मूत्रसंयुतम् ।
रवितप्तं सकिण्वं च लेपनं किटिभापहम् ॥

Vṛnda Mādhava, 51-35

चक्रमर्दस्य बीजन्तु मूलकाम्बुप्रपेषितम् ।
दद्गुणं लेपनं कुर्याच्छिगुमूलत्वचाऽथवा ॥

Baṅgasena, Kuṣṭha, 66

वातव्याधौ

प्रपुत्राटकपत्राणां शाको च वाटिकापि वा ।
वातव्याधिं शमयति विस्मयः किमतःपरम् ॥

Siddha Bhaiṣajya Maṇimālā, 4-461

शिरोरोगे

स्थिरारसं वा लेपं तु प्रपुत्राटोऽम्लकल्कितः ।

Gadanigraha, 3-1-63.

CAKṢUṢYĀ

Botanical name : Cassia absus Linn.

Family : Caesalpiniaceae

Classical name : Cakṣuṣyā

Sanskrit names

Cakṣuṣyā, Āraṇyakulatthikā, Dṛkprasādā, Kulatthikā, Kulālī, Kumbhakārī, Locanahitā, Malāpahā.

Regional names

Chakṣu, Chaksu (Hind.), Chaksu (Punj.), Vankulthi (Punj.), Chinol (Mar.), Chimed (Guj.), Chamed (Guj.), Chavar (Sindh.), Kreed Nindratacch, (Kann.), Karum (Tam.), Chanupalavittulu (Tel.), Joshmijaj (Arab.), Chashmijaj (Pers.).

Distribution

An erect, spraingly branched annual 15-45 cm. high; stems and branches clothed with spreading viscous glandular hairs.

Leaves long-petioled; rhachis viscous-hairy, grooved; petioles 2-2.5cm. long; stipules 3mm. long, subulate. Leaflets

2 pairs, very oblique, 1.6-3.8 by 0.8-2.5 cm. (the terminal pair the largest), elliptic-oblong or elliptic-obovate, obtuse or subacute, minutely mucronate; glabrous or nearly so above, slightly hairy but not glandular beneath; petiolules 1.25 mm. long, densely hairy.

Flowers in terminal or leaf-opposed erect narrow few-flowered racemes; pedicels short, viscous-hairy; bracts beneath the pedicels, ovate, acute; bracteole 1 about the middle of each pedicel, small, ovate, Calyx hairy, 4 mm. long; segments oblong, obtuse, subequal. Petals 6 mm. long, obovate-cuneate, reddish yellow, tender, veined. Stamens 5 all perfect, equal. Ovary densely bristly with long hairs.

Pods 2-5-4.5 cm. by 6-8 mm., ligulate, nearly straight, oblique, compressed, thin, clothed with bristly hairs. Seeds 4-6, trapezoid-ovoid, 4.5 by 4 mm. black, shining.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Distribution August-December, Rainy season to colder season.

It is found throughout India, Sri Lanks, Tropical Asia, Australia and Africa.

Plant is commonly growing in agricultural fields, roadsides, waste places, grassy localities, forest edges, forest clearings and other places in country.

Chemical Composition

Seeds contain alkaline substance 3-7 percent and little quantity of manganese.

The chemical constituents of the seeds oil are studied.

Seeds Kernels yield 1.5% total base consisting of chaksine and isochaksine; the Chemical substance chaksine is general depressant of heart, respiration and nerves. Lethal dose for dog 0.1g./kg.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṣāya, Tikta
Guṇa	: Rūkṣa
Vīrya	: Śīta
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarṃa	: Kaphapittaśāma

Action and Properties**Karma**

- a) **Bāhya** : Cakṣuṣya, Vraṇaropaṇa, Tvacya
Kaṇḍughna, Śvayathuvilayana
Lekhana.
- b) **Ābhyantara** : Raktastambhana, Mūtrala, Viṣaghna
Lekhana, Medonāśaka, Grāhī
Kāsaghna.

Roga

- a) **Bāhya** : Pothaki-netraśoṭha-srāva
Netra-cakṣuvikāra
Netrābhīṣyanda-dṛṣṭimāndya
Vraṇa-Kṣata-jananendriya vraṇa
Carmaroga-dadru-pāmā-kaṇḍū-
visphoṭa.
- b) **Ābhyantara** : Mūtrakṛccha-aśmarī-mūtravikṛti
Viṣa-sthāvara-jaṅgama, Medoroga
Grahaṇī-atisāra-raktātisāra-pravāhikā
kāsa, Raktasrāva-adhogaraktasrāva.

Therapeutic Uses

The leaves are useful in cough and throat affections. Leaves are bitter and astringent.

The seeds are astringent and cathartic. They are used in ringworm, skin affections, conjunctivitis and ophthalmia.

The herbal drug is specifically used in ophthalmic diseases.

The seeds paste is made and it is applied to eyelids. The collyrium (aṅjan or surmā) is prepared with seeds and it is applied to eyes in various ophthalmic troubles. Seeds fine powder is dusted to eyes in conjunctivities and other eye complaints.

The plaster of seeds is applied to incised wounds, ulcers and specially to ulceration of the genital organs.

The seeds with seed coat are ground and their powder is given in calculous and urinary affection especially incantation of urine.

Seeds are useful in diarrhoea, dysentery and bloody stools. They are also given in haemorrhage.

The seeds powder is considered useful in vegetable and animal poisons, and also in obesity.

Part used : Seeds

Dose : Powder 1-3 gms.

Formulation (Yoga) : Cakṣuṣkalpa.

CAKṢUṢYĀ (चक्षुष्या)

- क. चक्षुष्या दृक्प्रसादा च सैव प्रोक्ता कुलत्थिका ।
कुलाली लोचनहिता कुम्भकारी मलापहा ॥
- ख. हिमा प्रोक्ता कषाया च विषं स्थावरजङ्गमम् ।
छिनत्ति योजिता सम्यक् नेत्रस्त्रावावनेकशः ॥
सा च विस्फोटकण्डूर्तिव्रणदोषनिवर्हणी ।

Dhanvantari Nighaṇṭu.

कुलत्थिका तु चक्षुष्या कषाया कटुका हिमा ।
विषविस्फोटकण्डूर्तिव्रणदोषनिवर्हणी ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu.

नेत्ररोगे

चक्षुष्याकल्पः ।

Kaśyapa Samhitā, p. 183

आरण्यच्छगणरसे पटाववद्धाः सुस्विन्नः नखबिन्दुषीकृताः कुलत्थाः ।
तच्चूर्णं सकृदवचूर्णनान्निशीथे नेत्राणां विधमति सद्य एव कोपम् ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Uttara. 16-6.

CAMPAKA

Botanical name : *Michelia champaca* Linn.

Family : Magnoliaceae

Classical name : Champaka

Sanskrit names

Champaka, Svarṇapuṣpa-hemapuṣpa-hemāhvaḥ,
Cāmpeya, Śītalacchada-śīta, Sthiragandha-atigandhaka-

surabhi, Pītapuṣpa, Bhramarātithi-bhṛṅgamohī, Vanadīpa-Doṣapuṣpa.

Regional names

Champa (Hind.), Champa (Beng.), Champa (Punj.), Chanpha (Mar.), Chanpo (Guj.), Sanbgam (Tam.), Champakamu (Tel.); Golden Champa (Eng.).

Distribution

A tall handsome, evergreen tree with a straight trunk; branches ascending, spreading, forming a close head.

Leaves 15-25 by 5-9 cm. lanceolate, acute or acuminate, entire, glabrous above (except when young), glabrous or more or less pubescent beneath; petioles 18-25 mm. long.

Flowers about 5-6.2 cm. diam., very fragrant, axillary, solitary, each enclosed in bud by a greyish yellow pubescent, spathaceous, coriaceous, deciduous bract, Sepals and petals 15 or more, deep yellow or orange; the outer oblong, acute; the inner linear; pedicels 6 mm. long, stout, wrinkled, marked with an annular scar round the middle.

Capsules 18 mm. dark brown, opening on the back by two valves, valves woody, orbicular, covered with white warty excer excrescences. Seeds 1-12, brown, polished, variously angled, rounded, on the back.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Flowers in rainy season and fruits ripen in winters.

Distribution

It is found in the Eatsern Sub-Himlayan tract and lower hills up to 3,000 feet. It is wild in Assam, Burma and Western Ghats. It is much cultivated in various parts of India and Burma.

Chemical Composition

Bark contains an aromatic essential oil, fixed oil, resin, tannin, starch, mucilaginous matter and sugar.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa : Tikta, Kaṭu, Kaṣāya, Madhura
Gṇa : Laghu, Rūkṣa, Tikṣṇa

Vīrya	: Śītā
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphapittaśamaka

Action and Properties

Karma	: Dāhapraśamana, Hṛdya-raktaśodhaka-raktapittapitta śāmaka śothahara, Kaphaghna-śvāsahara Garbhāśayottejaka-ārtavajanana Mūtrajanana Kuṣṭhaghna-tvacya-vraṇaśodhana Jvaraghna-niyatakālīka-Jvaraprativandhaka, Viśaghna, Balya Rocana-dīpana-pācana-āmapācana-anulomana, Krimighna-virecana.
--------------	--

Roga

- a) **Ābhyantara** : Hṛddourbalya, Raktavikāra-upadaṁśa-gaṇḍamāla-āmvāta Raktapitta-śoṭha, Kāsa-śvāsa Rajorodha-kaṣṭārtava Mūtrakṛccha-pūyameha Jvara-viśama-Jirṇajvara Dourbalya viśa, Agnimāndya-aruci Āmadoṣa-śūla-ādhmāna Kṛmiroga.
- b) **Bāhya** : Dāha, Kaṇḍu-carmaroga, Vraṇa Śiraḥśūla.

Therapeutic uses

The flowers and fruits are considered stimulant, antiseptic, tonic, carminative, bitter and cooling. They are used in dyspepsia, nousea and fever.

It is useful as diuretic in renal diseases and in gonorrhoea. It is mixed with sesamum oil form an external application in vertigo.

The juice of the leaves is given, with honey in colic. The seeds and fruit are used for healing cracks in feet.

The bark is febrifuge, stimulant, expectorant and astringent.

The dried root and root bark are purgative and in the form of infusion useful as emmenagogue. The bark is mixed with curdled milk and the paste applied to abscesses and inflammations.

The flowers oil is useful application in cephalalgia, ophthalmia and gout.

In fevers, the bark infusion (2-3 ounces) or powder (10-30 grains or more) in adults, as febrifuge and anti-periodic medicine, is orally given.

The bark is regarded a good substitute for gulacum in chronic rheumatism, as an alterative. In mild cases of gastritis, the decoction of the bark (in the dose of half to one ounce) is given.

The infusion of the flowers is given in gonorrhoea for preventing scalding and also in kidney diseases.

Parts used

Bark flower

Dose

Flowers powder 1-3 gms., Bark decoction 24-48 gms.
Decoction 50-100 ml.

CHAMPAKA (चम्पक)

चम्पकं कटुकं तिक्तं कषायं मधुरं हिमम् ।

निहन्ति कफपित्तास्रमूत्रकृच्छ्रविषक्रिमीन् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighanṭu.

चम्पकः कटुकः तिक्तः शिशिरो दाहनाशनः ।

कण्डूकुष्ठव्रणहरः कफपित्तविनाशनः ॥

Rāja Nighanṭu, Karavīradi varga 60.

‘चम्पकं रक्तपित्तघ्नं तिक्तोष्णं कफनाशनम् ।’

Suśruta Samhitā

चम्पकः कटुकस्तिक्तः कषायो मधुरो हिमः ।

विषक्रिमिहरः कृच्छ्रकफवातास्रपित्तजित् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighanṭu, Puṣpa varga, 32.

चम्पकः

- अ. चम्पकः स्वर्णपुष्पश्च चाम्पेयः शीतलच्छदः ।
 सुभगो भृङ्गमोही च शीतलो भ्रमरातिथिः ॥
 सुरभिर्दोषपुष्पश्च स्थिरगन्धोऽतिगन्धकः ।
 स्थिरपुष्पो हेमपुष्पः पीतपुष्पस्तथाऽपरः ।
 हेमाह्वः सुकुमारस्तु वनदीपोऽष्टभूह्वयः ॥

चम्पककलिका

- ब. तत्कलिका गन्धफली बहुगन्धा गन्धमोदिनी त्रेधा ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Karavīrādi varga, 57-59

चम्पकगुणाः

- स. चम्पकः कटुकस्तिक्तः शिशिरो दाहनाशनः ।
 कुष्ठकण्डूव्रणहरो गुणाढ्यो राजचम्पकः ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Karavīrādi varga, 60.

क्षुद्रचम्पक-वनचम्पकः

- क्षुद्रादिचम्पकस्त्वन्यः स ज्ञेयो नागचम्पकः ।
 फणिचम्पकनागाह्वश्चम्पको वनजः शराः ॥

गुणाः

- वनचम्पकः कटूष्णी वातकफध्वंसनो वर्ण्यः ।
 चक्षुष्यो व्रणरोपी वह्निस्तम्भं करोति योगगुणात् ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Karavīrādi varga, 61-62.

चम्पक-स्वर्णचम्पकः

- चम्पकशिफाकषायो निरुणद्धि मूत्रमवशगम् ।
 चम्पकं कुसुमं शीतं चक्षुष्यं विशदं शुभम् ॥

Kṣema Kutūhalam,

योनिदौर्गन्धे

- संयोजितं चम्पकपल्लवेन जातीप्रसूनैर्मधुकान्वितैश्च ।
 सूर्याशुताः घृतमङ्गनानामभ्यङ्गतो हन्ति वराङ्गगन्धम् ॥

Gadanigraha, 6-9-92.

अवशे मूत्रनिर्गमे

- चम्पकशिफाक्वाथः पीतो निरुणद्धि मूत्रमवशगतम् ।

Vaidya Manoramā, 7-14

CANAKA

Botanical name : *Cicer arietinum* Linn.

Family : Fabaceae (Leguminosae-Papilionaceae)

Classical name : Caṇaka

Sanskrit names

Caṇaka, Harimantha, Jīvana, Bālabhojya, Sakalapriyā, Sugandhā.

Regional names

Chana (Hind. p.) But (Oriya), Chana (Urdu). Chana, Chania (Guj.), Harhara (Mar.), Chenna (Deccan), But (Beng.), Bengal Gram, Chick Pea, Common Gram (Eng.).

Description

A viscid much-branched annual.

Leaves 2.5-6 cm. long, with usually a terminal leaflet; stipules small, obliquely ovate, toothed; leaflets about 6 mm. long, ovate oblong, obovate, deeply cut. Peduncle 1.3-2 cm. jointed about the middle, deflexed after flowering. Calyx 6-8 mm., teeth linear. Corolla scarcely half as long as the calyx, pink, blue or white.

Pod 2-2.5 cm., turgid, pubescent, topped by the persistent base of the style. Seeds obovate or subglobose, beaked, reddish brown, black or white.

Flowering and fruiting time

January-April; colder season to spring/summer months; farming seasons.

Distribution

It is largely cultivated in most parts of India as a major food crop.

Chemical Composition

Plant contains oxalix, acetic, malic and another acid. As-0.009 mgs. in 100 g. seeds. Other active substances, three crystalline products and oil-soluble Vitamins A, D and E. Gram seeds contain higher percentage of oil (than other pulses) 4-5%.

Some other chemical constituents are isolated in seeds (grams), such as arginine, tryrosine, cystine, tryptophone.

It contains carotenoids and oilsoluble vitamins.

Lecithin, phytin and saponin are present in whole gram.

The chrystalline products Biochanin A, Biochanin B, Biochanin C, isolated from fresh whole germ of sprouting gram.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa : Kaṣāya, Madhura

Guṇa : Rūkṣa, Laghu

Vīrya : Śīta

Vipāka :

Doṣakarma : Pittakaphahara, Vātajanan.

Karma : Viṣṭambhī-ādhmānakara, Grāhi
Jvaraghna, Mehaghna, Kāsaghna
Balya, Śukrala, Rasāyana, Rocana
Dīpti-varṇakara, Santarpaṇa
Dāha-tṛṣāhara.

Roga : Jvara, Dāha, Tṛṣā, Dourbalya, Aruci
Śoṣa, Aṣmarī, Kāsa, Atisāra, Prameha-
madhumeha.

Therapeutic Uses

Aerial exudation is astringent and it is used in dyspepsia, constipation and snake-bite.

The soup of gram is given in case of excessive burning in fever. Soup of gram mixed with Uśira and Dhānyaka is given in caused by bilious vomiting. The parched grain flour of gram is given with soup of Paṭola leaves. Grams soaked in Snuhī latex and slightly heated on fire is useful as a drastic purgative.

The gram (seeds) are a major food item; the gram (seeds as a whole or pulse), flour and leaves (vegetable) are quite commonly used diet in various forms and preparations (dishes).

The gram flour mixed with mustard oil is often applied (udvartan) on body parts for promoting complexion as a domestic use.

The gram is useful in cough, culculous, dyspepsia, debility, heating sensation and overthirst.

The gram is frequently recommended in the restricted diets of the diabetics.

Parts used

Seeds (grams), Leaves, Acid Exudation (caṇakāmla).

Dose

Soup 100-200 ml. Edible (food).

CANAKA (चणक)

क. हरिमंथो वाजिमंथश्चणको हरिजीवनः ॥

ख. चणको वातलो रूक्षो विष्टम्भी पुंस्त्वकारकः ।
सकषायो लघुः शीतः पित्तास्रकफनाशनः ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Dhānya varga, 69-70.

क. चणस्तु हरिमन्थः स्यात्सुगन्धः कृष्णकञ्चुकः ।
बालभोज्यो वाजिभक्षश्चणकः कञ्चुकी च सः ॥

ख. चणको मधुरो रूक्षो मेहजिद्धातपित्तकृत् ।
दीप्तिवर्णकरो बल्यो रुच्यश्चाध्मानकारकः ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu Śālyādi varga, 84-85.

क. चणको हरिमन्थः स्यात्सकलप्रियः इत्यपि ।

ख. चणकः शीतलो रूक्षः पित्तरक्तकफापहा ।
लघुः कषायो विष्टम्भी वातलो ज्वरनाशनः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Dhānya varga, 53.

भर्जनादिभेदेन तस्य गुणभेदाः

स चाङ्गारेण सम्भृष्टस्तैलभृष्टश्च तद्गुणः ।
आर्द्रभृष्टो बलकरो रोचनश्च प्रकीर्तितः ॥
शुष्कभृष्टोऽतिरूक्षश्च वातकुष्ठप्रकोपणः ।
स्विन्नः पित्तकफं हन्यात् सूपः क्षोभकरो मतः ॥

आर्द्रोऽतिकोमलो रुच्यः पित्तशुक्रहरो हिमः ।
कषायो वातलो ग्राही कफपित्तहरो लघुः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Dhānya varga, 56-58.

आमचणकः

आमचणः शीतलरुच्यकारो सन्तर्पणो दाहतृषापहारी ।
गौल्योऽश्मरीशोषविनाशकारी कषाय ईषत्कटुः वीर्यकारी ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Śālyādi varga, 86.

कृष्णचणकः

कृष्णस्तु चणकः शीतो मधुरः कासपित्तहत् ।
पित्तातिसारकासघ्नो बल्यश्चैव रसायनः ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Śālyādi varga, 87.

गौरचणकः

चणो गौरस्तु मधुरो बलकृद्रोचनः परः ।
श्वेतो वातकरो रुच्यः पित्तघ्नः शिशिरो गुरुः ॥

भृष्टचणकः

सुभृष्टचणको रुच्यो वातघ्नो रक्तदोषकृत् ।
वीर्येष्णोष्णो लघुश्चैव कफशैत्यापहारकः ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Śālyādi varga, 88-89.

चणकयूषगुणाः

चणस्य यूषं मधुरं कषायं कफापहं वातविकारहेतुः ।
श्वासोर्ध्वकासक्लमपीनसानां करोति नाशं बलदीपनत्वम् ॥

पर्युषितचणोदकगुणाः

चणोदकं चन्द्रमरीचिशीतं पीतं प्रगे पित्तरुजापहारि ।
पुष्टिप्रदं नैजगुणं च पाके सन्तर्पणं मञ्जुलमाधुरीकम् ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Śālyādi varga, 90-91.

चणकशाकः

शाकं चणकजं स्वादु रसे पाके च दुर्जरम् ।
वातश्लेष्महरं रुच्यं पित्तकृद् दन्तशोफकृत् ॥

चणकाम्लम्

चणकाम्लकमत्यम्लं दीपनं दन्तहर्षणम् ।

लवणानुरसं रुच्यं शूलाजीर्णविबन्धनुत् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 643.

चणकपत्र-चणकशाकम् (चणकपत्र-शाकगुणाः)

रुच्यं चणकशाकं स्याद् दुर्जरं कफवातकृत् ।

अम्लं विष्टम्भजनकं पित्तनुद्दन्तशोथहृत् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Śāka varga, 45.

अन्नद्रवशूले

पटोलपत्रयूषेण खादयेच्चणकसक्तुकम् ।

Gadanigraha, 2-23-142.

पैत्तिकछर्द्याम्

सोशीरधान्यं चणकोदकं वा ।

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā 20-31.

ज्वरदाहे

महादाहे प्रदातव्यो यूषश्चणकसम्भवः ।

Bhāvaprakāśa, Cikitsā, 1-397.

उदरे

सुक्क्षीरोक्षितचणको यावद्वारं कृशानुना ततः ।

क्रूरजठरमपि पुरुषं तावद्वारं विरेचयति ॥

Siddha Bhaiṣajya Maṇimālā, 4-650.

CAÑCU

Botanical Name

Corchorus aetuanus Linn.

Corchorus acutangulus Lamk.

Family : Tiliaceae

Classical name : Cañcu

Sanskrit names

Cañcu, Ciñcā, Cuncu, Cañcukī, Dīrghapatrā, Satiktaka, Vijulā, Kalabhī, Virapatrikā, Kṣetrasambhava, Suśāka, Cuñcupatra.

Regional names

Cheneh (Hind.), Sunch (Mar.) Chhuchhu (Guj.), Titapat (Beng.).

Description

Erect or suberect, simple or slightly branched, pilose-hairy, annual herbs, 10-60 cm. tall.

Leaves ovate-lanceolate to oblong, acute-subacuminate at apex, rounded or subcordate at base, double-serrate, pilose.

Flowers pale-yellow, 1-3 together on short, axillary peduncles. Sepals lanceolate-oblong, mucronate. Petals oblanceolate-spatulate, with ciliate claws, as long as the calyx. Style 0.12-7-0.15 cm. long.

Capsule 2-4 (-6) cm. long, with 6, 8 or 10, serrate, broad-winged angles, Seeds 0.12 x 0.08 cm.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Autumun season.

Distribution

A common weed in various parts of country, particularly in sandy, grassy, localities of river-beds, fields, forest-edges and roadsides; growing in hotter parts of India.

Plant is very variable in habit, size and shape of leaves and degree of hairiness.

Kinds and varieties

There are classical varieties of Cancu viz. Cancu, Bṛhaccancu or Mahācañcu and Kṣudracañcu.

Certain (species of *Corchorus*) medicinal plants are referred context of Cancu viz. *Corchorus asetuans* Lamk. *Corchorus Capsularis* Linn., *Corchorus Oliotorus* Linn., *Corchorus Trilocularis* Linn.

Chemical Composition

Quercetin (m.p. 300-305⁰) has been isolated from the ethanolic extract of the fresh plant drug. (*Corchorus asetuans* Lamk). Leaves have also been phytochemically screened.

Seeds contain numerous cardiac glycosides of the cardenolide type which include monosides and polar glycoside.

Chemical aspect of other species of Corchorus have also been studied.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Madhura, Kaṣāya
Guṇa	: Guru, Snigdha, Picchila
Vīrya	: Śīta
Vipāka	: Madhura

Bija-Seeds

Rasa	: Kaṭū
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Tridoṣaśāmaka

Action and Properties

Karma	: Mūtrasaṅgrahaṇīya, Snehana-anulomana-grāhī-malaśoṣaṇa Raktapittaśāmaka, Vṛṣya Kuṣthaghna-kaṇḍūghna Balya-br̥ṇhaṇa-dhātupuṣṭikara Viṣaghna, Jantughna-vraṇaropaṇa Medhya.
--------------	--

Roga	: Mūtrakṛccha, Raktapitta Śukradourbalya Koṣthagata roukṣya-udaraśūla Atisāra-pravāhika-grahaṇī Arśa, Kuṣṭh-kaṇḍu Vraṇa, Dourbalya, Mūṣaka viṣa.
-------------	--

Therapeutic Uses

The seeds are stomachic and they are useful in pneumonia. Seeds and leaves are mainly used in medicine.

The paste is topically applied to ulcers. It is useful in diarrhoea, dysentery, colic, piles and constipation. It is considered a good remedy for sinus. Seeds are useful in dermatosis and itch and also other skin diseases.

The powder of seeds is used in spermatorrhoea. Leaves are useful in general debility. Seeds are useful in rat-bite poisoning. It also considered an antiseptic.

The leaves are useful as demulcent and are useful in abdominal disorders.

The fruits (seeds) are ground and the paste is applied to sinus, chronic ulcer and other wounds.

In the classical texts of medicine and materia medica (specially nighaṅṭu), the medicinal properties and uses of certain varieties (small and large i.e. kṣudra cañchu and bṛhaccañcu or mahācañcu) have specifically been mentioned along with medicinal utility of particular parts of herb i.e. fruits seeds) and leaves etc.

The herb is also belonging vegetable (śāka) group; the leaves are used for preparing vegetable.

Parts used

Leaves, Fruits, seeds.

Dose

Seeds powder 1-3 gms., Leaves juice 6-12 gms.

CAÑCU (चञ्चु)

- क. चिञ्चा चञ्चुश्चञ्चुकी च दीर्घपत्रा सत्तित्तकः ।
ख. चञ्चुः शीता सरा रुच्या स्वाद्वी दोषत्रयापहा ॥
धातुपुष्टिकरी बल्या मेध्या पिच्छिलका स्मृता ।

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Śāka varga, 27.

चञ्चुस्याच्चञ्चुकश्चञ्चुर्बृहच्छोटी तु लोणिका ।
चञ्चू रूक्षा सरा शीता मधुरा सर्वदोषहा ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 647.

चुञ्चुः

चुञ्चुश्च विजला चञ्चुः कलभी वीरपत्रिका ।
चुञ्चुरश्चुञ्चुपत्रश्च सुशाकः क्षेत्रसम्भवः ॥
चुञ्चुस्तु मधुरा तीक्ष्णा कषाया मलशोषणी ।
गुल्मोदरविबन्धार्शोग्रहणीरोगहारिणी ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Śatāhvādi varga, 144-145.

बृहच्चुञ्चुः

बृहच्चुञ्चुर्विषारिः स्यान्महाचुञ्चुः सुचुञ्चुका ।

स्थूलचुञ्चुर्दीर्घपत्री दिव्यगन्धा च सप्तधा ॥

महाचुञ्चुः कटूष्णा च कषाया मलरोधनी ।

गुल्मशूलोदरार्शोऽर्तिविषघ्नी च रसायनी ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Śatāhvādi varga, 146-147.

क्षुद्रचुञ्चुः

क्षुद्रचुञ्चुः सुचुञ्चुः स्याच्चुञ्चुःशनकः चुञ्चुका ।

त्वक्सारमेदिनी क्षुद्रा कटुका चिरपत्रिका ॥

क्षुद्रचुञ्चुस्तु मधुरा कटूष्णा च कषायिका ।

दीपनी शूलगुल्मार्शःशमनी च विबन्धकृत् ॥

Raja Nighaṇṭu, Śatāhvādi Varga, 148-149.

महाचुञ्चुबीजम्

चुञ्चुबीजं कटूष्णञ्च गुल्मशूलोदरार्तिजित् ।

विषत्वग्दोषकण्डूतिखर्जूकुष्ठविषापहम् ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Śatāhvādi varga, 150.

नाडीव्रणे

पिष्टं चञ्चुफलं लेपान्नाडीव्रणहरं परम् ।

Aṣṭāṅga Hr̥daya, Uttara, 16-6.

A. CANDANA

Botanical name : Santalum album Linn.

Family : Santalaceae

Calssical name : Candana, Candana-śveta.

Sanskrit names

Candaṇa, Malayaja, Śrikhaṇḍa, Candradtyuti, Gandhasāra, Bhadraśrī.

Regional names

Chandan, Safed chandan (Hind.), Sukhad (Guj.), Sandanmaram (Tam.), Gandhpuchekka, (Tel.), Sandale safed (Pers.), Sandale abaya (Arab.), Sandalwood (Eng.).

Description

A small or middle-sized evergreen, glabrous and semi-parasitic tree with slender dropping branches; the sapwood

white and odourless; the heartwood yellowish brown, strongly scented.

Leaves 3.8-6.3 by 1.6-3.2 cm., elliptic-lanceolate, subacute, glabrous, entire, thin, abse acute; petioles 1-1.3 cm. long, slender.

Flowers brownish purples, inodorous, in terminal and axillary paniculate cymes shorter than the leaves; perianth campanulate; limb of 4 valvate triangular segments; stemens 4, exserted, alternating with 4 rounded obtuse scales.

Fruits drupe globose. 1.3 cm. diam., purple-black; endocarp hard, ribbed.

Woods

Sandalwood logs are about a yard in length and 12 to 15 cm. in diam. They are tripped of the bark and a portion of sapwood. It is very homogenous, rather hard and ponderous, although it does not sink in water. The heartwood is pale, reddish, with darker, reddish-brown and brighter yellowish concentric zones. The sapwood is scentless, whereas the heartwood, when freshly cut, is in high degree odorous state, possessig very agreeable and remarkably persistent odour of sandal oil. Sandalwood is prized and esteemed for its aromotic value as one of the popular scented wood items.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Rainy season to winter season and onwards.

Distribution

It occurs Western Peninsula; it is also cultivated elsewhere. It is growing wild in Karnataka and neighbouring States; and it is naturalised in other provinces such as Uttar Pradesh, Madhya Pradesh and Orissa more or less.

Kinds and Varieties

There various kinds of Candana is classical texts (sainhitā, Nighaṇṭu and other textual works) such as—

(A) 1. Śveta candana, 2. Rakta Candana, 3. Pīta Candana, 4. Kālīyaka, 5. Haricandana, 6. Veṭṭa Cnadana, 7. Sukkaḍi Candana, 8. Kairata Candana (B) Dvididha-Caturvidha-Saptavidha Candana.

The characteristics, features, qualities, occurrence and categories etc. (alongwith medicinal properties) are also mentioned.

Mainly there are two kinds of Candana (sandal) which are commonly (prevalent as known viz.

A. Śveta Candana (white sandal-): Santalum album Linn.

B. Rakta Candana (Red Sandal): Pterocarpus Santalinus Linn.

The yellow sandal or Pīta Candana is considered yellow inner heartwood of white sandal wood (śveta candana) of popular or special quality. Sandal found in Mysore is popular as major commercial forest produce.

Chemical Composition

Heartwood contains essential oil, containing santalol 90 percent. Stemwood (heart wood) and roots contain volatile oil 3-6 percent which is obtained by distillation. It is known as sandal oil, which is high quantity in the roots (approximety Sandal woods yield 125 gms. oil in 40 kgs. or depending on quality.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Tikta, Madhura
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa
Vīrya	: Śīta
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphapittaśāmaka

Action and Properties

Karma	: Dāhapraśamana Soumanasyajanana-medhya Hṛdya-Raktaśodhaka-raktapittaśāmaka Kaphaniḥsāraka-śleṣmapūtihara Mūtrajanana-Kothapraśamana (mūtrapatha), Kuṣṭhaghna Jvaraghna-Svedajanana Aṅgamardapraśamana, Viśaghna Tṛṣṇānigrahaṇa-āhlādakara- santāpaśāntiprada-chardighna Śrama-klama-śoṣahara, Grāhī
--------------	--

Kṛmighna-Balya
(āmāśaya-antra-yakṛta), Rasāyana
Varṇya-tvacya-dourgandhyahara-
śāmaka.

Roga

- a) **Ābhyantara** : Dāha-santāpa-śrama-bhrānti-tṛṣṇā
Mānasika, Vyagrata-dourbalya
Pācanavikṛti-Atisāra-pravāhika
Kṛmiroga, Hṛddourbalya-
Raktavikāra-Raktapitta
Jiṛṇakāsa, Madātyaya
Rakta-śvetapradara-Śukrameha
Mūtrakṛccha-pūyameha-bastīsotha
Carmaroga-Varṇavikāra
Dāha-angamarda-tṛṣa-vami-santāpa-
śrama, Śoṣa.
- b) **Bāhya** : Dāha-visarpa-kaṇḍu-kuṣṭha
Carmarvikāra-varṇavikāra
Atisvedajanya durgandhi, Netra roga.

Therapeutic Uses

The wood piece (sandal) is ground or rubbed up with water into a paste which is applied to the temple in headache, fever and local inflammation. The sandal paste is applied externally to skin diseases for allaying heat and pruritis, and also for diaphoretic and refrigerant action. It is effective in prickly heat and for skin health care.

The oil from heart wood is used in the symptomatic treatment of dysuria, in gonorrhoeal arthritis and cystitis.

The sandal powder, sandal oil and essential oil (from heart wood) are aromatic and cosmetic uses, besides the medicinal utility of sandal.

The wood is bitter, sedative, cooling, astringent, cardiac tonic and diuretic. The wood is used in biliousness, fever, and morbid thirst. The powder of the sandal wood is given with coconut water to allay thirst. The powder is mixed with milk or made into pills is given in gonorrhoea, fever and bilious disorders.

The watery emulsion of the wood mixed with sugar, honey and rice water are administered in gastric irritability, dysentery and excessive thirst.

For external uses, the sandal is used in various forms and preparations.

The wood is of religious importance.

Parts used

Heartwood-sandalwood, sandal oil.

Dose

Powder 3-6 gms., Oil 5-20 drops-minims.

Formulations (Yoga)

Candanādi cūrṇa, Candanādi vaṭi. Candanāsava, Sudarśana cūrṇa, Pippalyāsava, Chandanādi taila.

Groups (Gaṇa)

Dāhpraśamana, Aṅgamardapraśamana, Trṣṇāni-grahaṇa, Varṇya, Kaṇḍughna, Viṣaghna, Tiktaskandha (Caraka.). Sālasarādi, Paṭalādi, Sārivādi, Priyaṅgvādi, Guḍūcyādi, Pittasamśamana (Suśruta.).

B. RAKTACANDANA

Botanical name : Pterocarpus santalinus Linn.

Family

Fabaceae (Papilionaceae)-Leguminosae.

Classical name

Raktacandana, Candana-rakta.

Sanskrit names

Raktacandan, Kucandana, Raktasāra, Tilaparni, Pravālapphala.

Regional names

Lal chandan (Hind.), Ratanjali, Lal chandan (Guj.), Cheng Chandanam (Tam.), ErrChandanamu (Tel.), Sensandamum (Tam.), Raktachandanama (Tel.), Sandal Ahmar (Arab.), Sandal Surkh (Pers.); Red Sandal, Red Sandal wood (Eng.).

Description

A small tree, or medium-sized attaining 7-5 meters, with extremely hard, dark purple heart-wood. Leaflets 3 rarely 4 or 5 broad-elliptic, obtuse, 3.8-7.5 cm. long, underside pale and clothed with fine appressed hairs. Flowers few, in short axillary or terminal racemes. Pod 3.8 cm. diam., oblique, gradually narrowed into a short stalk. Seeds red like seeds of *Abrus precatorius* Linn. (Guñja); and leaves of look like leaves *Sesamum indicum* (Taila).

Woods obtained from tree with blackish grey barks; woods externally of lighter colour, whereas the heartwood is blood red. Woods sink in water; it is dark red with black veins; thin savings appear blood-red with veins of a lighter tint. All parts of the wood full of colouring matter.

Flowering and Fruiting time

Summer season.

Distribution

It is found in Deccan, in the hills Cuddapah, Southern Kurnool, Northern Arcot and Chingel pet; in the areas up to 1,500 feet. It is also planted in different areas in country.

Chemical Composition

Plant contains santalin, santalic acid, santalic pterocarpin and homopterocarpin; and other glucosides and colouring matters. Santalin is a crystalline red active substance in heart wood.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Tikta, Madhura
Guṇa	: Guru, Rūkṣa
Vīrya	: Śīta
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphapittaśāmaka

Action and Properties

Karma	: Dāhapraśamana, Jvaraghna Raktapitta-śāmak-Rakta-śodhaka Kuṣṭhaghna, Viśaghna Chardi-nigrahaṇa-trṣṇa-nigrahaṇa -atisārahara
--------------	--

Kṣata-śoṭha-dāha-śiraḥśūlahara
 Carmarogahara-tvacya
 Netrarogahara-Cakṣusya, Vṛṣya.

Roga

- a) **Bāhya** : Dāha-kṣata-śoṭha, Netravikāra
 Carmaroga, Vraṇa, Śiraḥśūla.
- b) **Ābhyantara** : Chardi-trṣṇā-atisāra, Raktapitta-
 raktavikāra, Kuṣṭha, Dāha-Jvara, Viṣa.

Therapeutic uses

The wood is astringent, tonic and cooling. It is used as cooling external application for inflammation and headache. It is used in bilious affection, fever, skin diseases, boils and to strengthen the sight or vision. It is useful as a diaphoretic and in scorpionsting.

The woods of both kinds of sandal viz. white sandal (śveta candana) and red sandal (rakta candana) are considered to have almost similar medicinal properties, however, the white sandal is generally preferred for internal use, while the red sandal is often suggested for external application. But both varieties (also antohter yellow sandal or pīta cnadana, the yellow heart wood or internal yellow heart wood of white sandal) are recommended (in classical medicine in different mode of administration (therapeusis) and forms (pharmaceuties); and sometimes both types of sandal woods are inter mixed in recipes of medicines used in treatment of various diseases.

The Red sandal wood is used in different oilments. The decoction of sandal wood is given in chronic dysentery. The powder of the wood is given with milk in haemorrhoids or bleeding piles.

The wood is used in bilious disorders, skin diseases and also useful as a diaphoretic.

Externally, a paste of the wood is a cooling-medicine which is applied to boils, inflammatory diseases of the skin, swollen limbs, ophthalmia, sore eyes, headache and some other oilments in conditions of over heat and burning sensation.

Parts used : Heartwood.

Dose : Powder 3-6 gms.

Formulations (yoga)

Daśāṅga lepa, Parpaṭādi Kvātha, Amṛtāṣṭaka Kvātha, Guḍūcyādi Kvātha, Ṣaḍaṅgapāniya.

Groups (Gaṇa)

Paṭolādi, Sārvādi, Priyaṅgvādi (Suśruta.).

CANDANA (चन्दन)

चन्दनम् (श्वेतचन्दन)-रक्तचन्दनम्-पीतचन्दनम्-कैरातचन्दनम् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 1256-1260.

वर्णभेदं देशभेदञ्च गन्धवैशिष्ट्यात्

श्रेष्ठं मलयसम्भूतं यवनेषु च मध्यमम् ॥
वर्बरैष्वधमं प्रोक्तं पाञ्चालयवनादिषु ।
सर्वाण्येतानि तुल्यानि रसतो वीर्यतस्तथा ॥
गन्धेन तु विशेषोऽस्ति पूर्वं श्रेष्ठतमं गुणैः ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 1262-1263.

श्रेष्ठचन्दनलक्षणम्

स्वादने कटुशीतं च घर्षणे पीतमेव च ।
छेदने रक्तवर्णञ्च श्रेष्ठं चन्दनमुच्यते ॥
अत्रापि चोत्तमं विद्याद् ग्रन्थिखर्परकोटरम् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 1263-1264.

अवस्थाभेदेन

आर्द्रश्चित्रं पित्तहरं शुष्कच्छित्रं च वातनुत् ।
आर्द्रशुष्कं तु यच्छित्रं तच्च श्लेष्महरं परम् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 1265.

चन्दनसामान्यगुणकर्म

सतिकं चन्दनं सर्वं सूक्ष्मं स्वादु हिमं गुरु ।
तृष्णादाहास्रपित्तघ्नं क्लमशोथविनाशनम् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 1266.

चन्दनविशिष्टगुणकर्म

भद्रश्रियं हिमं तिक्तं हृद्यमाह्लादनं लघु ।

वर्ण्यं बलासपित्तघ्नं दाहतृष्णाविषप्रणुत् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 1267.

रक्तसारचन्दनम्

रक्तसारं गुरु स्वादु चक्षुष्यं शुक्रलं हिमम् ।

किञ्चित् तिक्तं ज्वरच्छर्दितृष्णापित्तास्रनाशनम् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 1269-1270.

मूत्रघाते चन्दनजलम्

शृतशीतपयोऽन्नाशी चन्दनं तण्डुलाम्बुना ।

पिबेत्सशर्करं श्रेष्ठमुष्णवाते सशोणिते ॥

Cakradatt, 33-14. Bhāvaṣṭrakāśa, Mūtraghātādhikāra, 36-39.

त्रिविधचन्दनम्

चन्दनं त्रिविधं विद्याद् रक्तं पीतं च पाण्डुरम् ।

आरक्तमुत्तमं चैव मध्यमं पीतकं तथा ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 1268.

चन्दनस्य गुणः

चन्दनं शीतलं रूक्षं तिक्तमाह्लादनं लघु ।

श्रमश्लेषविषश्लेष्मतृष्णापित्तास्रदाहनुत् ॥

Bhāvaṣṭrakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Karpūrādi varga, 13.

उत्तमचन्दनस्य लक्षणम्

स्वादे तिक्तं कषे पीतं छेदे रक्तं तनौ सितम् ।

ग्रन्थिकोटरसंयुक्तं चन्दनं श्रेष्ठमुच्यते ॥

Bhāvaṣṭrakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Karpūrādi varga, 12.

पीतचन्दनम्

कालीयकं रक्तगुणं विशेषाद् व्यङ्गनाशनम् ।

रक्तचन्दनम्

रक्तं शीतं गुरु स्वादुच्छर्दितृष्णाऽस्रपित्तहृत् ।

तिक्तं नेत्रहितं वृष्यं ज्वरव्रणविषापहम् ॥

Bhāvaṣṭrakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Karpūrādi varga, 17.

सर्वेषां चन्दनानां मध्ये मलयजस्य श्रेष्ठता

चन्दनानि तु सर्वाणि सदृशानि रसादिभिः ।

गन्धेन तु विशेषोऽस्ति पूर्वं श्रेष्ठतमो गुणैः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Karpūrādi varga, 20.

श्रीखण्डम्

श्रीखण्डं कटुतिक्तशीतलगुणं स्वादे कषायं कियत्

पित्तभ्रान्तिवमिज्वरक्रिमितृषासन्तापशान्तिप्रदम् ।

वृष्यं वक्त्ररुजापहं प्रतनुते कान्तिं तनोर्देहिनां

लिप्तं सुप्तमनोजसिन्धुरमदारम्भादिसंरम्दम् ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Candanādi varga, 9.

श्रेष्ठ-क्षीण-मध्यमचन्दनम्

श्रेष्ठं कोटरकर्परोपकलितं सुग्रन्थि सद्रौरवं

छेदे रक्तमयं तथा च विमलं पीतञ्च यद्घर्षणे ।

स्वादे तिक्तकटुः सुगन्धबहुलं शीतं यदल्पं गुणे

क्षीणाश्चार्धगुणान्वितं तु कथितं तच्चन्दनं मध्यमम् ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Candanādi varga 8.

द्विविधं चन्दनम्

चन्दनं द्विविधं प्रोक्तं बेट्टसुक्कडिसंज्ञकम् ।

बेट्टं तु सार्द्रविच्छेदं स्वयं शुष्कं तु सुक्कडि ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu Candanādi varga, 10.

चन्दनं दुर्गन्धहरदाहनिर्वापणलेपनानाम् ।'

Caraka Saṁhītā, Sūtra 25.

लूताविषे

रोध्रं सेव्यं पद्मकं पद्मरेणुः कालीयाख्यं चन्दनं यच्चरक्तम् ।

कान्तपुष्पं दुग्धिनीका मृणालं लूताः सर्वाः घ्नन्ति सर्वक्रियाभिः ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Uttara 37-86.

बेट्टचन्दनम्

बेट्टचन्दनमतीव शीतलं दाहपित्तशमनं ज्वरापहम् ।

छर्दिमोहतृषिकुष्ठतैमिरोत्कासरक्तशमनं च तिक्तकम् ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Candanādi varga, 12.

सुकुडिचन्दनम्

सुकुडिचन्दनं तिक्तं कृच्छ्रपित्तास्रदाहनुत् ।
शैत्यसुगन्धदं चार्हं शुष्कं लेपे तदन्यथा ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Candanādi varga, 13.

कैरातचन्दनम्

कैरातमुष्णं कटुशीतलञ्च श्लेष्मानिलघ्नं श्रमपित्तहारि ।
विस्फोटपामादिकनाशनञ्च तृषापहं तापविमोहनाशि ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Candanādi varga, 15.

पीतचन्दनम्

पीतञ्च शीतलं तिक्तं कुष्ठश्लेष्मानिलापहम् ।
कण्डूविचर्चिकादद्रुकृमिहृत्कान्तिदं परम् ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Candanādi varga, 17.

रक्तचन्दनम्

रक्तचन्दनमतीव शीतलं तिक्तमीक्षणगदास्रदोषनुत् ।
भूतपित्तकफकासज्वरभ्रान्तिजन्तुवमिजित् तृषापहम् ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Candanādi varga, 22.

हरिचन्दनम्

हरिचन्दनं तु दिव्यं तिक्तहिमं तदिह दुर्लभं मनुजैः ।
पित्ताटोपविलोपि चन्दनवच्छ्रमशोषमान्द्यतापहरम् ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Candanādi varga, 26.

चन्दनसामान्यगुणाः

चन्दनानि समानानि रसतो वीर्यतस्तथा ।
भिद्यन्ते किन्तु गन्धेन तत्राद्यं गुणवत्तरम् ॥

Raja Nighaṇṭu, Candanādi varga, 27.

पित्तजमदात्यये चन्दनोदकस्पर्शाश्चन्दनालेपश्च

- क. चन्दनोदकशीतानां स्पर्शाश्चन्द्रांशुशीतलाः ।
ख. चन्दनानां च मुख्यानां शस्ताः पित्तमदात्यये ॥
शीतवीर्यं यदन्यच्च तत् सर्वं विनियोजयेत् ।

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 24-152/155.

छर्दिविकारे चन्दनकल्कप्रयोगः

चन्दनेनाक्षमात्रेण संयोज्यामलकीस्वरसः ।

पिबेत् माक्षिकसंयुक्तं छर्दिस्तेन निवर्त्तते ॥

Cakradatta, Chardi cikitsā, 15-6.

विस्फोटे दाहशान्त्यर्थम्

चन्दनादिलेपः ।

Cakradatta, Visarpa cikitsa, 53-28.

रतिवर्द्धनार्थं महाचन्दनादितैलम्

Bhāvaprakāśa, Vājīkaraṇādihikāra, 72, 50-59.

पित्तजनशोथे चन्दनघृतम्

Caraka, Cikitsā 12-69

छर्दिरोगे चन्दनधात्रीरसः

Caraka, Cikitsā, 20-32.

रसायनप्रयोगे चन्दनरसायनम्

Caraka 1-2/12.

यक्ष्मारोगे दाहशमनाय चन्दनश्रुतकषायपरिषेकः

Caraka, Cikitsā 8-86.

चन्दनादियोगः

Caraka, Sūtra 5-63/70.

छर्दिरोगे चन्दनादिकल्कः

Caraka, Cikitsā, 20-33. Cakradatta, 15-7.

चन्दनादिकल्कः

Caraka, Śārīra, 8-32.

विसर्परोगे चन्दनादिकषायः

Caraka, Cikitsā, 21-54

व्रणरोपणाय चन्दनादिकषायः

Caraka, Cikitsā 21-54.

अर्शःसु रक्तावरोधकचन्दनादिक्वाथः

Caraka, Cikitsā, 14-186.

ज्वररोगे चन्दनादितैलम्

Caraka, Cikitsā 3-258.

हृदयरोगे चन्दनादिप्रदेहः

Caraka, Cikitsā 26-77.

पित्तजातिसारे चन्दनादियोगः

Caraka, Cikitsā 19-53.

निरुह्वबस्तियोग- चन्दनादिबस्तिः

Caraka, Siddhi 3-48/52.

पित्तनाशकचन्दनादिबस्तिः

Caraka, Siddhi 10-22.

नेत्ररोगे चन्दनादिविडालकः

Caraka, Cikitsā, 26-234.

रक्तपित्ते चन्दनादिसिद्धपेया

Caraka, Cikitsā 4-45.

ग्रहणीरोगे चन्दनाद्यं घृतम्

Caraka, Cikitsā, 15-125/128.

पित्तजशोथे बाह्योपचाराः

सचन्दनाः पद्मकबालकौ च पैत्ते प्रदेहस्तु सतैलपाकः ।

आक्तस्य तेनाम्बु रविप्रतप्तं सचन्दनं साभयपद्मकं च ।

स्नाने हितं क्षीरवतां कषायः क्षीरोदकं चन्दनलेपनं च ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 12-68/69.

वमनतृष्णाशामकयोगः

धात्रीरसेनोत्तमचन्दनं वा तृष्णावमिघ्नानि समाक्षिकाणि ।

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 20-32.

राजयक्ष्मा-दाहशान्त्यर्थं परिषेकाभ्यङ्गयोगाः

चन्दनाद्यतैलेन शतधौतेन सर्पिषा ।

अभ्यङ्गाः पयसा सेकः शस्तश्च मधुकाम्बुना ॥

माहेन्द्रेण सुशीतेन चन्दनादिश्रृतेन वा ।

परिषेकः प्रयोक्तव्य इति संशमनी क्रिया ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 8-85/86.

रक्तातिसारे

पीत्वा सशर्कराक्षौद्रं चन्दनं तण्डुलाम्भसा ।

दाहतृष्णाप्रमेहेभ्यो रक्तस्त्रावाच्च मुच्यते ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 19-86.

नाभिपाके

दग्धेन छागशकृता नाभिपाकेऽवचूर्णनम् ।
त्वक्चूर्णः क्षीरिणां वापि कुर्याच्चन्दनरेणुना ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Cikitsā, 79-180.

उष्णवाते

शृतशीतपयोत्राशी चन्दनं तण्डुलाम्बुना ।
पिबेत् सशर्करं श्रेष्णमुष्णवाते सशोणिते ॥

Vṛnda Mādhava, 33-10.

प्रमेहे

अ. शुक्रमेहे शुक्रमेहिनं ककुभचन्दनकषायं वा ।

Suśruta Samhitā, Cikitsā 11-9.

माञ्जिष्ठमेहे (मञ्जिष्ठामेहे)

ब. मञ्जिष्ठामेहिनं मञ्जिष्ठाचन्दनकषायम् ।

Suśruta Samhitā, Cikitsā 11-9.

मसूरिकायाम्

श्वेतचन्दनकल्केन हिलमोचारसं भवम् ।

पिबेन् मसूरिकारम्भे..... ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Cikitsā 60-35.

विषे

हृदि चन्दनलेपस्तु तथा सुखमवाप्नुयात् ।

Suśruta Samhitā, Kalpa. 1-36.

प्रदरे

दुर्गन्धिपूयसंकाशे मज्जतुल्ये तथार्तवे ।

पिबेद् भद्राश्रियः क्वाथं चन्दनक्वाथमेव वा ॥

Suśruta Samhitā, Śārīra 2-14.

चन्दनक्षीरयुक्तं पाययेत् सघृतं भिषक् ।

शर्करामधुसंयुक्तमसृग्दरविमर्दनम् ॥

Gadanigraha, 6-1-42.

ख. रक्तचन्दनम् (विशिष्टप्रयोगाः)

भग्ने

आलेपनार्थं मञ्जिष्ठां मधुकं रक्तचन्दनम् ।

शतधौतघृतोन्मिश्रं शालिपिष्टं च संहरेत् ॥

Suśruta Samhitā, Cikitsā, 3-7.

हिक्कायाम्

नारीपयः पिष्टमशुक्लचन्दनं घृतसुखोष्णं च ससैन्धवं तथा ।
चूर्णीकृतं सैन्धवमम्भसाऽथवा निहन्ति हिक्कां च हितं च नस्यतः ॥

Suśruta Samhitā, Uttara, 50-17.

व्यङ्गादौ

वक्त्राभ्यङ्गे लाक्षादिघृते ।

Suśruta Samhitā, Cikitsā, 25-39.

रक्तचन्दनमञ्जिष्ठाकुष्ठरोध्रप्रियङ्गवः ।

वटाङ्कुराः मसूराश्च व्यङ्गघ्नाः मुखकान्तिदाः ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Uttara, 32-17.

प्रदरे

पुष्यानुगे चूर्णे ।

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 30-92.

रक्तपित्ते

भद्रश्रियादिगणे ।

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 4.172.

प्रियङ्गवादिनिरूहबस्तौ ।

Suśruta Samhitā, Uttara, 45-39.

क. श्वेतचन्दनम् (विशिष्टप्रयोगाः)

रक्तपित्ते

उशीरकालीयकलोध्र.....पृथक् पृथक् चन्दनतुल्यभागिकाः ।

सशर्करास्तण्डुलधावनाप्लुताः रक्तं सपित्तं शमयन्ति साद्यः ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 4-73.

तत्क्षणं क्षुण्णमाघ्रातं शुष्कगोमयमस्यति ।

नासासृतमसृक्स्त्रावं चन्दनस्योत्पलस्य वा ॥

Vaidya Manoramā, 2-7.

चन्दन मधुकं रोध्रमेवमेव समं पिबेत् ।

करञ्जबीजमेवं वा सिताक्षौद्रयुतं पिबेत् ॥

Suśruta Samhitā, Uttara 45-25.

छर्द्याम्

धात्रीरसेनोत्तमचन्दनं वा ।

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā.

धात्रीरसे चन्दनं वा घृष्टं मुद्गदलाम्बुना ।

कोलामलकमज्जानं लिहयाद् वा त्रिसुगन्धिकम् ॥

Suśruta Samhitā, Uttara. 49-33.

रक्ताशंसि

कुटजत्वङ्गनिर्यूहः सनागरः स्निग्धरक्तसङ्ग्रहणः ।

त्वग्दाडिमस्य तद्वत् सनागरश्चन्दनरसश्च ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 14-185.

वातरक्ते

पित्तज्वरहरं वा चन्दनादिकषायं शर्करामधुमधुरम् ।

Suśruta Samhitā, Cikitsā, 5-8.

विसर्पे

अविशोध्यस्य दोषेऽल्पे शमनं चन्दनोत्पलम् ।

मुस्तनिम्बपटोलं वा पटोलादिकमेव च ।

सारिवामलकोशीरमुस्तं वा क्वथितं जले ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Cikitsā, 18-4.

नेत्ररोगे

यष्टीकषायः सेकस्तु क्षीरं चन्दनसाधितम् ।

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Uttara, 9-18.

रक्तचन्दनम्

पित्तातिसारे

दावीं दुरालभा बिल्वं बालकं रक्तचन्दनम् ।

षडेतेऽभिहिता योगाः पित्तातीसारनाशनः ॥

Suśruta Samhitā, Uttara, 40-63/65.

जीर्णज्वरे

त्रिफलाद्यघृते ।

Suśruta Samhitā, Uttara, 39-247.

भग्ने

आलेपनार्थं माञ्जिष्ठां मधुकं रक्तचन्दनम् ।

शतधौतघृतोन्मिश्रं शालिपिष्टं च संहरेत् ॥

Suśruta Samhitā, Cikitsā, 3-7.

नेत्ररोगे (तिमिररोगे)

सलिलमकरन्दसर्पिस्तैलैः प्रत्येकतस्तु समाहम् ।

विनिहन्ति तिमिरमचिरादञ्जनतश्चन्दनरक्तम् ॥

Baṅgasena, Netraroga, 312.

CANDRAŚŪRA

Botanical Name : *Lepidium sativum* Linn.

Family : Cruciferae (Brassicaceae)

Classical name : Candraśūra

Sanskrit names

Candraśūra, Vāsapuṣpā, Candrikā, Paśumehana-kārikā, Darakṛṣṇa.

Regional names

Chansur, Halim (Hind.), Haliya (Punj.), Ahalimba (Mar.), Asheliyo (Guj.), Alivirai (Tam.), Adili (Tel.), Habburrashad (Arab.), Sipandana (Pers.), Common Cress (Eng.).

Description

An erect, glabrous, annual herb, 10-45 (-80) cm. tall. Stems usually branched in the upper part.

Lower leaves petioled, pinnatipartite with pinnatifid segments; upper ones sessile, nearly entire or so, glabrous, linear-oblong or linear.

Flowers white in lax racemes of 10-15 cm. long. Pedicels 0.3-0.35 cm. long. Sepals obtuse, 0.12-0.15 cm. long. Petals 0.2-0.23 cm. long.

Pods shallowly retuse, broadly winged at the top, pod obovate or broadly elliptic, rotundate, emarginate (occasionally with 3 valves), slightly but thickly winged above. Seeds reddish brown, 0.2x0.1 cm.

Flowering and Fruiting time

February-March; spring season to summer season.

Distribution

It is found through out India; cultivated. It is also found in roadsides and waste places as weed of cultivation (fields).

Chemical Composition

Seeds contain an aromatic essential oil, an active principle and fixed oil. Whole herb contains iodine, iron, phosphate, potash, bitter, extractive, water and sulphur.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṭu, Tikta
Guṇa	: Laghu, Snigdha, Picchila
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Vātakapha śāmaka

Action and Properties

Karma	: Śūlapraśamana, Vātānulomana-grāhī Raktaśodhaka Hikkānigrahaṇa-kaphānihsārka Mūtral, Vṛṣya Ārtavajanana-Stanyajanana, Balya.
--------------	---

Roga

a) Ābhyantara	: Vātavyādhi Agnimāndya-ajīrṇa-ādhmāna Udaraśūla-gulma, Atisāra-pravāhikā Hikkā-śvāsa, Mūtrakṛccha Śukradourbalya Kaṣṭārtava-prasūtiroga-stanya-kṣaya- vikāra, Dourbalya-dhātukṣaya.
b) Bāhya	: Kaṭiśūla-pārśvaśūla-sandhivāta.

Therapeutic Uses

The seeds are galactagogue and administered after being boiled with milk to cause abortion, applied to pains or hurts as a poultice, used as aperient.

Herb administered in case of moist asthma, cough with expectoration, and bleeding piles.

The roots are used in secondary syphilis and tenesmus.

The Leaves are stimulant, diuretic, and useful in scorbutic diseases.

The seeds are tonic, alterative, aphrodisiac, stimulant and aperient. They are given as a decoction or infusion in hiccup, dysentery, diarrhoea, skin diseases due to impurity of blood and enlargement of the spleen; and as a galactagogue. The seeds are given in breast-feeding mothers for promoting lactation.

An emulsion of the seeds is given to check hiccup and irritation of the intestinal mucous membranes in dysentery and diarrhoea.

The confection made of the seeds with butter (ghṛta or ghee with śarkarā) and sugar is a popular remedy for general debility. A porridge of the seeds is given with sugar to nursing mothers soon after delivery.

The seeds are given in flatulence, inpotency, leucorrhoea, lumbago and rheumatic pains. A poultice of the seeds is locally used for relief internal inflammations and rheumatic pains. The seeds are considered a better rubefacient than mustard and they are used as a substitute of mustard for rubefacient purpose.

The seeds are claimed to have anti-fertility utility and they are suggested for oral use as one of the contraceptive herbal drug. They are also considered abortifacient in higher dose. Seeds have specific action on uterus, hence they are given after delivery.

Part used : Bīja-seeds

Dose : 1-3 gms.

Formulation (yoga) : Caturbīja cūrṇa.

Groups (gaṇa) : Caturbīja (Bhāvaprakāśa).

CANDRAŚŪRA (चन्द्रशूर)

चन्द्रशूरं हितं हिक्कावातश्लेष्मातिसारिणाम् ।

असृग्वातगदद्वेषि बलपुष्टिविबर्धनम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu.

दरकृष्णो वातशूलगुल्मघ्नः स्तन्यपुष्टिकृत् ।
बल्यो बाजीकरः पानाल्लेपाच्छोणितशूलनुत् ॥

Śoḍhala.

हिक्कायाम्

चन्द्रशूररसः ।

Bhāvaprakāśa, Cikitsā 13-24/25.

CĀNGERĪ

Botanical name : *Oxalis corniculata* Linn.

Family : Oxalidaceae.

Classical name : Cāngerī.

Sanskrit names : Cāngerī, Amlapatrikā.

Regional names

Tinpatiyā (Hind.), Chukrikarasa, Chukatripatti (H.), Amrul (Beng.), Khattibūti (Punj.), Ambuti (Mar.), Puliyarai (Tam.), Pulichit (Tel.), Indian Sorrel, Yellow oxalis (Eng.).

Description

A small procumbent herb; stems rooting, pubescent with appressed hairs.

Leaves palmately 3-foliolate; petioles 3.8-9 cm. long, very slender, pubescent; stipules small, oblong, adnate to the petiole; leaflets 1.2-2.5 cm. long, obcordate, cuneate at the base; subsessile, glabrous or with a few appressed hairs and with ciliate margins.

Flowers axillary, subumbellate; peduncles solitary, up to 9 cm. long, deflexed in fruit, pubescent; bracts beneath the pedicels lanceolate, hairy. Sepals 3-4.5 mm. long, oblong, obtuse, appressedly hairy outside. Petals yellow, oblong, rounded at the apex, emarginate, twice as long as the sepals. Stigma papillose.

Fruits capsules 2 cm. long, linear-oblong, 5-angled, shortly beaked, tomentose. Seeds numerous broadly ovoid, acute, transversely striate, brown.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

January-December, colder season.

Distribution

It is found mostly in all the regions throughout the warmer parts of India, Sri Lanka and other countries. Growing in various regions upto the altitude of nearly 8,000 ft. in the Himalaya. It occurs as a common herb specially in shaded localities, ravines, river banks, wall margins, gardens, fields, roadsides, forest edges and scrub jungles, grounds patches and also other similar places.

Chemical Composition

Plant contains potassium and Oxalic acid.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Amla, Kaṣāya
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Amla.
Doṣakarman	: Kaphavātaśāmaka, Pittavardhaka.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Rocana (hr̥dya), Hr̥dya- Raktastambhana-śonitāsthāpana Madanāśaka, Dipāna-yakṛduttejaka Śīta-dāhapraśamana, Jvaraghna Mādakaviṣahara Śothahara-Vedanāsthāpana-lekhana Madanāśaka-sajñāprabodhana.
--------------	---

Roga

a) Abhyantara	: Hr̥dvikāra-raktasrāva, Aruci-agnimāndya-Pravāhikā-grahaṇī Gudabhramśa-arśa Jvara-cāturthikajvara, Madātyaya Mādakaviṣa-dhattūra, Kharjūraka.
b) Bāhya	: Vraṇaśoṭha, Śiraḥśūla, Tvagvikāra Netravikāra-arma-śuklādi.

Therapeutic uses

The leaves are cooling, stomachic, refrigerant and antiscorbutic.

The infusion of herb (leaves) is used in fever, dysentery, scurvy and biliousness.

The leaf juice is given as an anti-scorbutic and as an antidote for the intoxicating effect of *Datura* poison (dhattūra viṣa).

The fresh leaves are eaten as vegetable for promoting appetite and digestion.

It is an effective remedy for prolapse of rectum (anus) and piles. The fresh juice of the leaves or any other suitable form is given in cases of rectum prolapse; it is similarly given in piles.

In mild cases of dysentery and enterities, the leaves boiled in butter milk are given.

Externally the leaves are applied for removing the warts, corns and other excrescences on the skin and opacity. The leaves mixed with black papper and butter (ghee) is a salve for the relief of red spots and eruptions on skin due to biliousness. The leaves paste is applied in headache. Juice is applied to ophthalmia, corneal opacity and other eye complaints.

The leaves juice is given in heart disease and haemorrhage.

Part used : Whole plant-herb.

Dose : Expressed juice 6-12 gms.

Formulation (yoga) : Cāṅgeri ghr̥ta, Cāṅgeriyādi cūr̥ṇa.

CĀNGERĪ (चाङ्गेरी)

चाङ्गेर्यम्ला कषायोष्णा मधुरा दीपनी लघुः ।

पित्तला हन्त्यतीसारग्रहण्यर्शःकफानिलान् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 698.

चाङ्गेरी दीपनी रुच्या रूक्षोष्णा कफवातनुत् ।

पित्तलाऽम्ला ग्रहण्यर्शःकुष्ठातीसारनाशिनी ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Śaka varga, 24.

चाङ्गेरी शाकमत्युष्णं कटु रोचनपाचनम् ।

दीपनं कफवातार्शःसङ्ग्रहण्यतिसारजित् ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Mūlakādi varga, 148.

दीपनी चोष्णवीर्या च ग्राहिणी कफमारुते ।

प्रशस्यतेऽम्लचाङ्गेरी ग्रहण्यशोहिता च सा ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Sūtra. 27.

ग्रहण्यशोविकारघ्नी साम्ला वातकफे हिता ।

उष्णा किञ्चित् कषाया च चाङ्गेरी चाग्निदीपनी ॥

Suśruta Samhitā, Sūtra. 46.

अर्शःसु

त्रिवृदन्तीपलाशानां चाङ्गेर्याश्चित्रकस्य च ।

यमके भर्जितं दद्याच्छाकं दधिसमन्वितम् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 14-122.

चाङ्गेर्याः चित्रकस्य च ।

सुभृष्टं यमके दद्यात् शाकं दधिसरायुतम् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā. 9.

सुनिषण्णकचाङ्गेरीघृतम् ।

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā 14-239/242.

ग्रहण्याम्

कल्केन मगधादेश्च चाङ्गेरीस्वरसेन वा ।

चतुर्गुणेन दध्ना च घृतं हितं भवेत् ॥

Suśruta Samhitā, Uttara, 40-180.

अर्शःसु

नागरादिघृतम् ।

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 14-110/112.

चातुर्थकज्वरे

अम्लोटजसहस्रेण दलेन सुकृतां पिबेत् ।

पेया घृतप्लुता जन्तुश्चातुर्थकहरा त्र्यहम् ॥

Cakradatta.

गुद्रभंशचिकित्सायाम्

चाङ्गारीघृतम्

Cakradatta, 55/31-32.

खर्जूरकविषे

चाङ्गेरिकाविमेश्रेण लवणेन प्रयत्नतः ।
घर्षयेन्मुच्यते दंशखर्जूरविषान्नरः ॥

Śodhala. Gadanigraha, 7-7-7.

चाङ्गेरी तु कषायोष्णा मधुरा वह्निदीपनी ।
साम्ला वातकफौ हन्ति ग्रहण्यर्शोविकारनुत् ॥

Cakrapāṇi, Dravyaguṇa Saṁgraha.

चाङ्गेरीघृतम्

चाङ्गेरीकोलदध्यम्लनागरक्षारसंयुतम् ।
घृतमुत्क्वथितं पेयं गुदभ्रंशरुजापहम् ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā. 19-43.

चाङ्गेर्यादिचूर्ण-स्वरस-योगः

चाङ्गेरीकोलतक्राम्लांश्चतुरस्तान् कफोत्तरे ।
श्लोकार्धविहितान् दद्यात् सस्त्रेहलवणान् खडान् ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā. 9-111/112.

गुदभ्रंशे

चाङ्गेरीघृतम् ।

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā 19-143.

उन्मादे

चाङ्गेरीरसकाञ्जिकगुडसमभागाः सुमथिताः क्रमशः ।
उन्मादरोगशमनाः पीताः दिवसत्रयेणैव ॥

Baṅgasena, Unmāda. 21.

अतिसारे

चाङ्गेरीघृतम् ।

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 19-42/43.

अतिसारे

चाङ्गेर्याशूक्रिकायाश्च दुग्धिकायाश्चकारयेत् ।
खडान् दधिसरोपेतान् ससर्पिष्कान् सदाडिमान् ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā 8-131.

CARMAKAṢĀ (CARMAVṚKṢA)

Botanical name

Ehretia laevis Roxb.

Ehretia aspera Willd.

Family : Boraginaceae

Classical name : Carmakaṣā, Carmavṛkṣa

Sanskrit names

Carmavṛkṣa, Carmakaṣā.

Regional names

Chamarorha, Chamror, Chamarhiya (Hind.), Dattangi, Kuṭṭa (Mar.), Chambal (Sindh.), Chamror (Punj.), Tella juvi (Tel.).

Description

A shrub; branches usually glabrous, short, terete.

Leaves very variable, 2-6.3 by 1.3-3.8 cm., elliptic-oblong or obovate, rounded or shortly acuminate, sometimes retuse, scabrous, slightly hairy or globose above, persistently hairy beneath; petioles 6-20 mm. long.

Flowers white, in paniculate cymes which are at first close, corymbose and apparently terminal, afterwards lax and lateral. Calyx 2.5 mm. long, hairy outside; segments 1.5 mm. long, ovate-oblong, subacute, ciliate. Corolla 6-8 mm. long; tube longer than the calyx; lobes about equalling the tube, oblong, obtuse. Ovary ovoid; style 5-6 mm. long, bifid about 1/3 the way down; stigmas capitate.

Drupe depressed-globose, 6 mm. across; pyrenes usually 4, bony.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Spring to summer season, and also on wards.

Distribution

It is found in Deccan, Peninsula extending northwards to Uttar Pradesh and Punjab, Rajputana desert, Carnatic, Madhya Pradesh, Salt Range. It occurs in Sind, Baluchistan, Burma, Afghanistan and Abyssinia.

Chemical composition

Plant (*Ehretia microphylla* lam.) contains glucoside; leaves contain chlorogenic acid.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Tikta, Kaṣāya
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Vātakaphahara

Action and Properties

Karma	: Viṣaghna, Grāhi, Kāśahara-śvāsahara.
Roga	: Viṣa Sthāvaraviṣa Phirṅga-upadamśa, Śvāsa kāsa.

Therapeutic Uses

Decoction of roots is used in venereal diseases.

Fruits are eaten. Leaves are used as a Cattle Fodder, Laves are stated to be used as betal. Leaves are considered useful in asthma and other respiratory ailments.

In the stage of poisoning, the classical texts (*Caraka saṁhitā* and *Suśruta Saṁhitā*) prescribe the medicinal application of this plant drug. The paste of root (40 gms.) is suggested to be applied on scalp (after incising) and the same is followed by blowing (*pradhamaṇa*) in nostrils of the powder of other three drugs viz. *Kaṭabhī*, *Kaṭukā* and *Kaṭphala*.

Parts used : Roots, Bark, Leaves.

Doses : 1-3 gms.

CARMAKAṢĀ [चर्मकषा (चर्मवृक्षः)]

विषे

चर्मकषायाः कल्कं बिल्वसमं मूर्ध्नि काकपद्मस्य ।

कृत्वा दद्यात् कटभीकटुकटफलप्रथमं च ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 23-66.

सरक्तं चर्म मांसं वा निक्षिपेच्चास्य मूर्धनि ।
चर्मवृक्षकषायं वा कल्कं वा कुशलो भिषक् ॥

Suśruta Samhitā, Kalpa. 5-46.

CAVYA

Botanical name : Piper Chaba Hunter.

Family : Piperaceae

Classical name : Cavya

Sanskrit names : Cavya, Cavica.

Regional names

Chabh, Chavya (Hind.), Chai (Beng.), Chavak (Guj.),
Sevasu (Tel.).

Description

A climbing glabrous pepper, rather fleshy.

Leaves oblong, ovate or lanceolate acuminate, base round unequal, cordate; nerves at base 3, with 2 pairs from midrib, 12.5-18 cm. long, 6.3-7 cm. wide; petioles 6-13 mm. long.

Peduncles 13-25 mm. long.

Fruiting spikes cylindro-conic, widest at base, bright red, 2.5-7.5 cm. long, 6 mm. through.

Drupe very small, globose sunk.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Rainy season end.

Distribution

It is cultivated in various parts of India and Malay Island.

Chemical Composition

Plant contains piperine and other chemical substances. Plant also contains an essential oil.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa : Kaṭu

Guṇa : Laghu, Rūkṣa

Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphavātaśāmaka, Pittavardhaka.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Tṛptighna Dīpana-pācana-vātānulomana Śūlapraśamana, Yakṛduttejaka Kṛmighna, Kaphaghna.
Roga	: Aruci-ānāha-agnimāndya Ajīrṇa-pācana vikāra, Udararoga Arśa, Kṛmiroga, Kāsa-svāsa.

Therapeutic uses

The roots of the plant drug are alexiteric. They are useful in asthma, bronchitis and consumption.

The fruits are pungent, heating, anthelmintic, expectorant and carminative. They improve appetite and taste. Fruits are useful in asthma, bronchitis, fever, piles, pain the abdomen and at the anus.

The fruit are also considered a substitute for pepper (Piper longum Linn.) or Pippalī.

The fruits are stimulant and carminative; they are used in haemorrhoidal affections.

The fruits are aromatic, stimulant and carminative; they are used in cough, cold and haemorrhoidal affections.

The drug is quite useful in ailments of stomach, gastro-intestinal tracts, worms liver and respiratory, system; and it is frequently employed as a component drug in various medicinal preparations (textually incorporated formulations and group of drugs etc.).

Generally, the roots and fruits of the plant are used as the drug recommended in various ailments; the classical texts of materia medica also mention medicinal properties of the flowers (cavyapuṣpam) as they are prescribed to use in treatment of worms affections, colic or pain and abdominal diseases in particular. In addition, the tender leaves (cavyapallavam) are rarely recommended for treating diarrhoea.

Parts used : Roots, Fruits.

Dose : Powder 10-20 grains., 1-2 gms.

Formulations (yoga)

Pañcakola phāṇṭa, Prāṇada guṭikā, Kānkāyana Modak, Cavyādi ghr̥ta.

Groups (gaṇa)

Tṛptighna, Arśoghna, Dīpanīya, Śūlapraśamana (Caraka.), Pippalyādi gaṇa (Suśruta.), Pañcakola, Ṣaḍūṣaṇa (Bhāvaprakāśa).

CAVYA (चव्य)

भवेच्चव्यं तु चविका कथिता सा तथोषणा ।

कणामूलगुणं चव्यं विशेषाद् गुदजापहम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Harīṭakyādi varga, 67.

चव्य-ग्रन्थिः (पिप्पलीमूलम्)

चव्यं कोला च चविका चव्यनं कोलवल्लिका ।

ग्रन्थिचव्यं रसे पाके कटूष्णं दीपनं लघु ॥

पित्तलं पाचनं तीक्ष्णं रूक्षं रोचनभेदनम् ।

कफवातकृमिप्लीहगुल्मानाहोदरापहम् ॥

चव्यपुष्पम्

गुल्मशूलकृमिहरं चव्यपुष्पं गदापहम् ।

Kāiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 1173-1175.

चव्यकम्

क. चव्यकं चविका चव्यं वशिरो गन्धनाकुली ।

वल्ली च कोलवल्ली च कोलं कुटलमस्तकम् ।

तीक्ष्णा करिणिका वल्ली क्रकरी नेत्रमूह्या ॥

चव्यगुणाः

ख. चव्यं स्वादुष्णकटुकं लघु रोचनदीपनम् ।

जन्तूद्रेकापहं कासश्वासशूलार्तिकृन्तनम् ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Pippalyādi varga, 41-42.

उरुस्तम्भे चव्यादिकल्कः

चव्याभयाग्निदारुणां समधुः स्यादुरुग्रहे ।

कल्को लिहेच्च मूत्राढ्यैः करञ्जफलसर्षपैः ॥

Cakradatta, Urustambha cikitsā 24-9.

उदररोगे

चव्यशृङ्गवेरकल्कं वा पयसा ।

Suśruta Samhita, Cikitsā 14-10.

अतिसारे

चव्यादिघृतम् ।

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā 19-44.

पल्लवं चविकायाश्च श्वेतमूलाह्वसम्भवम् ।

पल्लवं क्षीरिवृक्षस्य पिष्ट्वा तैलेन पाययेत् ॥

Vaidya Manoramā, 6-2.

CHHATRAKA

Botanical name

Psalliota Campestris Linn.

Agaricus campestris Linn.

Family : Agaricaceae-Fungi.

Classical names

Chhatraka, Sarpachhatraka, Śilindhraka.

Sanskrit name

Chhatraka

Regional names

Khumbi, Khumi (Hind.), Alambe (Mar.), Viladino-top (Guj.) Naikkodai (Tam.), Kukkagodugu (Tel.), Mushroom edible (Eng.).

Description

This is one of the fungi plants.

The fungus is common in many parts of India. It is to be found chiefly in cattle-fields of the Central Punjab after the rains in the barren desert tracts of Central and Southern Punjab; and also Baluchistan and Afghanistan.

Occurrence time

Post rainy season.

Distribution

It is found commonly in many parts of India, chiefly in cattle-fields of Central Punjab, after rains, barren desert tracts of central and southern Punjab. It generally occurs in hilly regions. Mushrooms of edible group are cultivated in hilly areas.

Kinds and Varieties

There are several kinds of fungi which consist of poisonous and non-poisonous groups of fungi (saviṣa chhatraka and nirviṣa chhatraka). Edible Mushrooms are popular varieties.

Chemical Composition

The juice of mushroom contains a thermostable substance which increases the strength of contraction of the heart of the total and acts on the rate of the heart of dog.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Madhura
Guṇa	: Guru, Snigdha
Vīrya	: Śīta
Vipāka	: Madhura
Doṣakarma	: Vātapittaśāmaka, Kaphavardhaka.

Action and Properties

	: Bṛmhaṇa, Balya, Bājīkaraṇa, Sara.
Roga	: Kṣaya, Śoṣa, Śukradourbalya Vatapaittika vikāra, Vibandha.

Therapeutic Uses

It is tonic, laxative and aphrodisiac. Mushrooms (non-poisonous) are of nutritive value and edible as vegetable and also other dishes or food preparations possessing tonic and other medicinal properties.

The mushrooms are boiled in milk (chhatraka Kṣīrapāka) and it is internally given to patients of pthisis and also useful in tuber culosis.

The mushrooms are given in general debility, constipation, seminal weakness or other seminal ailments.

They are considered useful in oiling conditions caused by vitiation of vāta and pitta doṣa.

The mushrooms or chhatraka are mentioned in classical texts of medicine and materia medica (saṁhitā and nighaṅṭu) under category of Sansvedaja śāka with textual information about their occurrence, habit, varieties properties and medicinal utility.

Part used

Whole plant, Edible vegetable, Khādyā śāka.

Dose : 306 gms.

CHHATRAKA (छत्रक)

सर्पच्छत्रकवर्ज्यास्तु बह्व्योऽन्याश्छत्रजातयः ।
शीताः पीनसकर्त्र्यश्च मधुरा गुर्व्य एव च ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 27.

संस्वेदजशाकानि

उक्तं संस्वेदजं शाकं भूमिच्छत्रं शिलीन्ध्रकम् ।
क्षितिगोमयकाष्ठेषु वृक्षादिषु तदुद्भवेत् ॥

गुणाः

- क. सर्वे संस्वेदजाः शीता दोषलाः पिच्छिलाश्च ते ।
गुरुवश्छर्द्यतीसारज्वरश्लेष्मामयप्रदाः ॥
- ख. श्वेताशुचिस्थलीकाष्ठवंशगोमयसम्भवा ।
नातिदोषकरास्ते स्युः शेषास्तेभ्यो विगर्हिताः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Śāka varga, 119-121.

CHHIKKIKĀ

Botanical name : Centipeda orbicularis Lour.

Family : Asteraceae (Compositae)

Classical name : Chhikkikā-Kṣavaka

Sanskrit names

Kṣavaka, Nāsāsamvedana, Chikkikā, Kṣuraka, Chhikkanī, Krūra, Tikṣṇā, Udvejana, Ghrāṇaduḥkhadā.

Regional names

Nakchhikni (Hind.), Mecheta, Hachuti (Beng.), Nakshinkaṇi (Mar.), Nakchhikani (Guj.), Aphakur (Arab.); Sneeze-wort (Eng.).

Description

A small annual; stems numerous, 10-20 cm. long, spreading from the root, prostrate, slender, leafy, usually glabrous.

Leaves numerous, subsessile 6-10 by 3-4.5 mm., oblong-spathulate, with few teeth (usually 2 on each side), base tapering.

Heads 2.5-4 diam., globose, solitary, axillary, subsessile. Involucral bracts (in flower) small, oblong, with membranous margins.

Pappus O.

Acheones minute, 4-angled, bristly on the angles.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Herb sprouting after winter season.

Distribution

It is found throughout India in moist places.

Chemical Composition

Plant contains an essential oil and bitter extractive.

Herb contain an alkaloid, glycoside, traces of saponins and bitter acidic principle myrrigysin, besides amorphous bitter substance. The extraction of the powdered whole plant (through a process of isolation) yielded two colourless crystalline substances (provisionally named centipeda I and II).

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṭu
Guṇa	: Tikṣṇa, Rūkṣa, Laghu
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphavātaśāmaka

Action and Properties

Karma	: Śirovirecana-nāsāsamvedana-chhikkikajanana
-------	--

Rocana-dīpana-kṛmighna
 Plihakāṭhinyahara, Nādībalya
 Raktaprasādana, Kuṣṭhaghna
 Vedanāsthāpana, Vṛṣya, Uttejaka.

Roga : Pratiśyāya-Śirahśūla, Nādīdourbalya
 Vātarakta-pakṣāghāta
 Aruci-agnimāndya-kṛmi, Plihavṛddhi
 Raktavikāra, Klaihya, Kuṣṭha.

Therapeutic Uses

The seeds and the powdered herb are used in the form of snuff. It is given in ozaena, headache and colds. They are used in toothache and hemicrania. It has been considered useful in paralysis, pains in joints and as a vermifuge. The infusion of the herb has been found to very efficient in case of ophthalmia, purulent or otherwise.

The leaves and seeds powder are used to induce sneezing and a snuff made from them is used for cold and headache. Whole plant is boiled and made into thick paste applied to check toothache.

An infusion of the herb is useful in ophthalmia.

The seeds powder is orally given in worms affections as vermifuge.

The drug is specially known for its immediate action on nasal mucous membrane and hence considered a good snuff (nasya) causing sneezing which is resulted into relief of nasal, coryzal, headache and other ailments of the organs concerned.

It is useful as a stimulant drug. It is used in sexual impotency, nervous debility, gout, paralysis and blood impurities.

Part Used : Seeds

Dose : 1-3 gms.

Formulation (Yoga)

Chhikkikā modaka (Bājikaraṇa yoga)

Groups (gaṇa)

Śirovirecanopaga, Mustādi (Suśruta).

CHHIKKIKĀ (छिक्किका)

- क. छिक्कनी क्षमकृत्तीक्ष्णा छिक्किका घ्राणदुःखदा ।
 ख. छिक्कनी कटुका रुच्या तीक्ष्णोष्णवह्निपित्तकृत् ।
 वातरक्तहरी कुष्ठक्रिमिवातकफापहा ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Guḍūcyādi varga, 304.

क्षवकः

- अ. छिक्किका छिक्कपत्रा च नासासंवेदनस्तथा ।
 क्षवकः क्षुरकस्तीक्ष्णः क्रूर उत्तेजनस्तथा ॥
 क्षुधाभिजननो राजक्षवकः क्षुद्विबोधनः ।
 ब. क्षवकः कटुकः पाके रसे रुच्याग्निपित्तकृत् ॥
 तीक्ष्णोष्णः कफवातस्रदृक्कुष्ठक्रिमिजिल्लघुः ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 906-908.

क्षवक-क्षुरकः

- क्षवकः क्षुरकस्तीक्ष्णः क्रूरो भूताङ्कुशः क्षवः ।
 राजोद्वेजनसंज्ञश्च भूतद्रावी ग्रहाह्वयः ॥
 भूताङ्कुशस्त्रीव्रगन्धः कषायोष्णः कटूस्तथा ।
 भूतग्रहादिदोषघ्नः कफवातनिकृन्तनः ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Prabhadrādi varga, 147-148.

- छिक्कनी कटुका रुच्या तीक्ष्णोष्णा वह्निपित्तकृत् ।
 वातरक्तहरी कुष्ठकृमिवातकफापहा ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa.

क्षुत्कारी श्वासकासासृग्विषघ्नी वामनी मता ।

Śoḍhala.

क्षवकं कृमिलं तेषु स्वादुपाकं सपिच्छिलम् ।
 विष्यन्दि वातलं नातिपित्तश्लेष्मकरं च तत् ॥

Suśruta Samhitā, Sūtra 46-291.

अतिसारे

‘शुण्ठीघृतं सक्षवकं सतैलं विपाच्य लीढ्वाऽऽमयमाशु हन्यात् ।’

Suśruta Samhitā, Uttara. 40-154.

विषूचिकायाम्

‘कृष्णाजमोदक्षवकाणि वापि तुल्यौ पिबेद्वापि मगधानिकुम्भौ ।’
 ‘क्षवकः क्षवथुकारः फणिज्जाकारः ‘चिह्नारिकाय’ इति परियात्रे-
 प्रसिद्धः छिक्कनीति लोके ।’

Dalhana, Suśruta Samhitā, Sūtra. 38-18.

‘छवकः छत्रकः । अन्ये द्रोणपुष्पी सदृशं विटपमाहुः तत्र,
 तस्य अनुद्भिदत्वात् ।’

Dalhana, Suśruta Samhitā, Sūtra. 46-291.

छिक्काऽवरोधजोदावर्त्तचिकित्सायां क्षवकपत्रम्-

क्षवजं क्षवपत्रेण घ्राणस्येनानयेत् क्षवम् ।

तथोर्ध्वजत्रुगोऽभ्यङ्गः स्वेदो धूमः सनावनः ॥

Calradatta, Udāvarta Cikitsā, 28-19.

CICINĀ

Botanical name : *Trichosanthes anguina* Lam.

Family : Cucurbitaceae

Sanskrit names

Cicinā, Śvetarāji, Sudīrgha, Gṛhakūlaka.

Classical name : Cicinā

Regional names

Chinchida, chichada, Chinchidha (Hind.),
 Chichinga Honpa (Beng.), Padaval (Mar.), Pandolu (Guj.),
 Pudal (Tam.), Singopatal (Tel.), Snake-gourd (Eng.)

Description

An annual, monoecious scandent herb; the climber resembles almost with *Trichosanthes cucumerina* (Kāravellaka) exactly except as regards the fruit which differs chiefly in being very variable both as to shape and size. It varies from 0.3-0.9 meter in length and is often much contorted. When young fruit is green striped with white, changing to a bright orange colour when ripe.

Plant is an annual climber. Leaves cordate, subreniform. Flowers monoecious, yellow. Fruit elongate,

cylindric, sometimes contorted, 2-3 ft. long, with green-white, strips. Seeds many (packed in pulp).

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Rainy season.

Distribution

It is extensively cultivated throughout the hotter parts of India. Plant is under fruit vegetable farming.

Chemical Composition

Fresh fruit contains 95 percent. Dry fruits contain ether extract 2.2 percent, protin 2.2 percent, soluble vegetative matter 67.85 percent, fibres 10.60 percent and ash 5.6 percent.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Madhura, Tikta
Guṇa	: Laghu, Snigdha
Vīrya	: Śīta
Vipāka	: Madhura
Doṣakarma	: Vātapittaśāmaka

Action and Properties

Karma	: Jvarahara-āmapācana, Rocana-dīpana-pācana-anulomana, Recana-Krmighna, Raktaśodhaka, Balya, Pathya.
Roga	: Jvara, Raktavikāra, Kuṣṭha, Kṛmiroga (Bīja-seeds), Vibandha-koṣṭhaśuddhi (pakva phala-ripe fruit) Aruci-agnimāndya-āmadoṣa, Kṣayaroga, Pathya śāka (phala-fruits)-kṣayādi.

Therapeutic uses

The seeds of fruit obtained from this plant are with cooling properties.

The fruits are considered purgative, anthelmintic and emetic.

The fruits are among the fruit vegetables of common use as domestic edible item.

The fruits are tonic and they are useful in curing ailments of due to vitiation of vāta and pitta.

The roots and seeds are anthelmintic and antidiarrhual; they are used in biliousness and syphilis. The fruit is also said to be tasteless (through taste or rasa defined) and it lessens thirst and increases appetite. Fruits are used in general debility as tonic and stomachic.

The Plant is vermifuge and purgative. The stupose reticular material round the seeds is given in the form of an aqueous infusion.

In general the medicinal properties of the plant drug ciciṇḍa (*Trichosanthes anguina* Lam.) are indicated (in textual sources) lesser than another similar plant drug Paṭola (*Trichosanthes dioica* Roxb.)

Part used : Fruit

Dose : Juice 12-24 gms.

CICINḌA (चिचिण्ड)

- क. चिचिण्ड श्वेतराजिः स्यात्सुदीर्घो गृहकूलकः ।
 ख. चिचिण्डो वातपित्तघ्नो बल्यः पथ्यो रूचिप्रदः ।
 शोषणोऽतिहितः किञ्चिद् गुणैर्न्यूनः पटोलतः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Śāka varga, 62.

CILHAKA

Botanical name

Casearia tomentosa Roxb.

Roxb. *Casearia graveolens* Dalz.

Family : Samydaceae

Classical name : Cilhaka

Sanskrit name : Cilhaka

Regional names

Chillara, Bairi (Bombay), Linja, Karei, Massei (Marathi), Chilara, Chilla, Bairi, Bhari, Bheri (Hindi),

Chilakaduddi, Girugudu, kalamiavari, Piriki (Telugu), Girari, Giridi, Kokoli, Khonji, Kirti (Uriya), Kadichai, Kaludukkuti, Kottal, Kuti (Tamil), Gholouni (Guj.).

Description

A small tree attaining 9 meters high; bark thick, ash-coloured; branchlets tomentose or pubescent, rarely glabrous.

Leaves 0.3-18 by 3-8.7 cm. oblong, acute, more or less serrulate, or sometimes almost entire, slightly pubescent or glabrous above, pubescent or tomentose (densely so on the nerves) beneath, base usually rounded or subcordate (more or less obliquely); main nerves 8-10 pairs; petioles 4.5-9 mm. long, densely pubescent; stipules minute, densely pubescent, deciduous.

Flowers greenish white, crowded in axillary fascicles; pedicels less than 6 mm. long densely pubescent, articulated near the base. Calyx pubescent; tube scarcely 0.8 mm. long; lobes 3 mm. long, broadly elliptic, obtuse. Stamens usually 8; filaments glabrous; staminodes clavate, much shorter than the stamens, villous at the apex. Style 0.8 mm. long; stigma subglobose.

Fruit broadly ellipsoid, 2 cm. long, smooth and shining, 3-valved. Seeds embedded in a soft pulpy scarlet mass consisting of the agglomerate arils.

Distribution

It is found throughout India from the base of the Himalays to Sri Lanka.

Flowering and fruiting time

Spring season and onwards.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Tikta
Guṇa	: Rūkṣa, Laghu
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Vātakaphahara

Action and Properties

Karma	: Mūtrala, Śothahara, Dhātupuṣṭikṛta Āgneya, Matsyaniṣudana-matsyaviṣa.
-------	--

Roga : Mūtrakṛccha-mūtraroga, Śoṭha,
Jalodara.

Therapeutic Uses

The bark of plant is bitter and applied externally in dropsy. The leaves are used in medicated bath. The pulp of the fruit is a useful diuretic.

The fruits are crushed and thrown in water (Tanks, ponds etc.) to benumb fish by rural people and tribals in certain areas. Fruit are fish poison; they are used as fish-stupefying plant material.

Parts used : Bark, Fruit-pulp, Leaves.

Dose : 1-3 gms.

CILHAKA (चिहक)

चिहको वातनिर्हारः श्लेष्मघ्नी धातुपुष्टिकृत् ।
आग्नेयो विषवद्यस्य फलं मत्स्यनिषूदनम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Guḍūcyādi varga, 133.

CIRBHITA

Botanical name

Cucumis mels var. momordica Duthie & Fuller

Family : Cucurbitaceae

Classical name : Cirbhita

Sanskrit names

Cirbhita, Kṣetracirbhita, Karkachirbhita, Cirbhitaka, Pathyā, Sucitra, Citraphala, Rocanaphalā, Godugdha, Karkaṭikā, Pāṇḍuphalā, Gorakṣacirbhita.

Regional names

Phut, Kachra, Kachri, Phunt, Tuti (Hindi), Kakarikkai (Tamil), Peddakai, Peddadonrai (Telugu), Phut (Urdu).

Description

The fruit is cylindrical and quite smooth, when ripe bursts spontaneously, its colour at that time being yellow

often mottled with dark green. It varies in size from 30-60 cm. long, and from 7.5-15 cm. diam., and weights from 4-8 lbs. The seeds are smaller than those of the melon.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Farming season; summers.

Distribution

It is cultivated in many parts of India.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa : Tikta, Madhura
 Guṇa : Rūkṣa, Guru (Laghu)
 Vīrya : Anuṣṇa-uṣṇa
 Vipāka : Madhura
 Doṣakarma : Kaphapittahara, Kaphavātahara
 Pittala, Pittakaphahara, Vātala.
 [Properties of unripe, ripe and young
 Fruits have variation.]

Karma : Rocana-dīpana, Grāhi, Viṣṭambhi
 Dāhapraśamana, Tṛṣṇāhara.

Roga : Agnimāndya-aruci, Dāha, Tṛṣṇā.

Therapeutic Uses

The seeds are useful as cooling medicine. Ripe fruits are useful in thirst, burning sensation and as stomachic. Fruits are edible in ripe state.

The seeds are cooling, indigestible; they are tonic to the heart and the brain; they cause cough. The flowers cause tridoṣa and dyspepsia. The unripe fruit is sweet, dry, indigestible, astringent to bowels. The ripe fruit is hot; they cause biliousness.

Parts used : Seeds

Dose : Edible fruit (pulp).

CIRBHITA (चिरभिट)

चिरभिटम्—

गोरक्षकर्कटी ज्ञेया गोदुग्धं चिर्भिटं स्मृतम् ।

चिर्भिटं मधुरं पाके रूक्षं स्यादूषणं गुरु ॥

अनुष्णं ग्राहि विष्टम्भि बालं चानिलकोपनम् ।
कफपित्तहरं स्यन्दि पक्वमुष्णं तु पित्तलम् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 551-552.

गजचिर्भिटम्

सक्षारमुष्णं वितनोति वह्निम्, पित्तावहं तल्लघुरोचनं च ।
साष्टीलमानाहमपाकरोति, फलं तु तित्तं गजचिर्भिटस्य ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 553.

चिर्भिटा

अ. स्यात् चिर्भिटा सुचित्रा चित्रफला क्षेत्रचिर्भिटा पाण्डुफला ।
पथ्या च रोचनफला चिर्भिटिका कर्कटिका ग्रहसङ्ख्या ॥

ब. बाल्ये तित्ता चिर्भिटा किञ्चिदम्ला
गौल्योपेता दीपनी सा च पाके ।
शुष्का रूक्षा श्लेष्मवातारुचिघ्नी
जाड्यघ्नी सा रोचनी दीपनी च ॥

Raja Nighaṇṭu, Mūlakādi varga, 215-216.

चिर्भिटं धेनुदुग्धं च तथा गोरक्षकर्कटी ।
चिर्भिटं मधुरं रूक्षं गुरु पित्तकफापहम् ॥
अनुष्णं ग्राहि विष्टम्भि पक्वं तूष्णञ्च पित्तलम् ।

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Āmrādiphala varga, 36-37.

CIRABILVA

Botanical name

Holoptelea integrifolia Planch

Family : Urticaceae

Classical name : Cirabilva

Sanskrit names

Cirabilva, Karañjī, Udakīrya.

Regional Names

Chilbbil (Hind.), Bavla (Mar.), Aga (Tam.), Navili (Tel.).

Description

A large, spreading glabrous deciduous tree, 15-18 meters. high; bark grey, pustular.

Leaves 7.5-12.5 by 3.2-6.3 cm., elliptic, acuminate, glabrous, entire (those of the seedlings and shoots often serrate), base rounded or cordate; main nerves 3-7 pairs, petioles 6-13 mm. long.

Flowers usually male and hermaphrodite mixed, in short racemes or fascicles at the scars of fallen leaves. Sepals often 4, pubescent, 1.5-2.5 mm. long. Stamens 4-8 (often 6 or 7); filaments glabrous; anther pubescent. Ovary compressed; pubescent, 1-celled, stalked, the stalk lengthening as the seed ripens; styles 2-3-4 mm. long, stigmatose on the inside throughout their whole length.

Samara nearly orbicular 2.5 cm., diam, with particularly veined wings.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Spring season and onwards.

Distribution

It is found in Sub-Himalayas, Rajsthan, Bundelkhand (U.P.), Madhya Pradesh, Bihar, Assam and Western Peninsula, Berma, Celon (Sri Lanka) Cochin, China.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Tikta, Kaṣāya
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphapittaśāmaka.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Lekhana (karṣaṇa), Śoṭhahara Raktaśodhaka, Kuṣṭhaghna Pramehaghna, Dīpana, Anulomana Pittasāraka, Bhedana, Kṛmighna.
--------------	---

Roga

a) Ābhyantara	: Medoroga, Kuṣṭha-carmaroga Raktavikāra,
----------------------	--

Agnimāndya-chardi-Udararoga
Śūla-gulma-arśa-kṛmi, Prameha.

b) Bāhya : Śoṭha.

Therapeutic Uses

The juice of boiled bark is applied to rheumatic swellings. Bark paste is also applied to inflammation. The bark is useful in dyspepsia, vomiting, colic, abdominal disorders, piles and worms affections. It is given in blood impurities. The bark is useful in skin complaints.

The bark is considered effective in obesity. It is also useful in urinary anomalies.

Part Used : Bark

Dose : Decoction 50-100 gms.

CIRABILVA (चिरबिल्व)

- क. उदकीर्यस्तृतीयोऽन्यः षड्ग्रन्था हस्तिवारुणी ।
मर्कटी वायसी चापि करञ्जी करभञ्जिका ॥
- ख. करञ्जी स्तम्भनी तिक्ता तुवरा कटुपाकिनी ।
वीर्योष्णा वमिपित्तार्शःकृमिकुष्ठप्रमेहजित् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Guḍūcyādi varga, 123-124.

CITRAKA

Botanical name : Plumbago zeylanica Linn.

Family : Plumbaginaceae

Classical name : Citraka

Sanskrit names : Citraka, Agni.

Regional names

Chita (Hind.), Chita (Beng.), Chitranyl (Mar.), Chitro (Guj.), Chittir (Tam.), Telchitra (Tel.), Shitaraj (Arab.), Shitar (Pers.); Leadwort (Eng.).

Description

A perennial herb, sometimes in shady places;

subscandent; stems 0.6-1.5 meter long, some what woody, spreading, terete, striate, glabrous.

Leaves Thin, 3.8-7.5 by 2.3-3.8 mm., ovate, subacute, entire, glabrous, some what glaucous beneath, reticulately veined, shortly and abruptly attenuated into a short petiole; petiole narrow; amplexicaul at the base and there often dilated into stipule like auricles.

Flowers in elongate spikes; rhachis glandular, striate; bracteoles ovate, acuminate, shorter than the calyx, glandular or not. Calyx 1-1.3 cm. long, narrowly tubular, persistent, densely covered with stalked glands; teeth small, with membranous margins. Corolla white, slender; tube 2-2.5 cm. long; lobes 9 mm. long; obovate-oblong, acute, apiculate. Filaments as long as the corolla-tube; anthers exerted just beyond the throat.

Capsule oblong, pointed; pericarp thin below, thick and hardened above.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Winter season and onwards.

Distribution

It is found throughout India; much cultivated in gardens. Wild in various parts of country, western Peninsula, Bengal, Uttar Pradesh and southern India.

Kinds and Varieties

There are four classical varieties (in Nighaṅṭu) viz. Śveta, Pīta, Rakta and Kṛṣṇa, based on mainly colour of the flowers. Practically, two kinds are prevalent such as white (śveta citraka) and red (rakta citraka) varieties of this plant drug. The occurrence of red variety is scarce. Red Variety (Rakta citraka) plant is identified as *Plumbago rosea* Linn.

Rakta Citraka : *Plumbago rosea* Linn.

Stems herbaceous, erect, terete, slightly striate, simple, upwards branching. Leaves large, oblong, attenuate and slightly obtuse upwards, short-cuneate at the base, passing into a very short, amplexicaul, exauriculate petiole.

Flowers 3.5 cm. long, forming very long terminal and axillary, lax spikes, which after flowering reach 30-60 cm.,

rhachis quite glabrous. Bracteoles ovate-cuspidate, subequal, 4 times shorter than the calyx, almost pellucid, Calyx red, short-cylindric, shortly and acutely 5-dentate, along the ribs covered with stipitate, bifarious and sessile glands. Corolla-tube slender, 4 times as long as the calyx, limb wide, segments ovate, round, cuspidate.

Plant is cultivated in gardens throughout country Sikkim and Khasia hills in India.

Chemical Composition

Roots contain a bitter, crystalline, yellow, needle-like active substance which is known as Plumbagin 0.91 percent (maximum content).

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṭu
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa, Tīkṣṇa
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakaṣma	: Kaphavātaśāmaka, Pittavardhaka.

Action and Properties

Karma : Dipana-Pācana-Pittasāraka-Arśoghna
Grāhī, Kṛmighna
Raktapittaprapakopaka
Kaphaghna-kaṇṭhya
Garbhāśaya-saṅkocaka-
garbhasrāvakara
Bājīkaraṇa, Svedajanana, Jvaraghna
Kaṭupouṣṭhika.

Roga : Agnimāndya-ajirṇa
Udararoga-śūla-gulma
Yakṛdvikāra-arśa, Kṛmiroga
Grahaṇī, Śothahara
Yakṛtplihā-gudā śoṭha
Jirṇa-pratiśyāya-śoṭha
Rajorodha-prasūtivikāra-makkalaśūla
Dhvajabhaṅga, Kuṣṭha-śvitra
Carmaroga, Jvara-Jirṇa-viṣama
Nāḍīdourbalya, Jvarottara-dourbalya.

Therapeutic Uses

The roots and root bark are bitter, dry, stomachic, carminative, astringent to the bowels, anthelmintic alterative, they cure, intestinal troubles, dysentery, leucoderma, inflammation, piles, bronchitis, vitiation of vāta and kapha, itching, liver disorders, consumption, ascites, tridoṣa and anaemia.

The leaves are caustic, vesicant, aphrodisiac and useful in scabies. The root has a sharp bitter taste, bechic, laxative, expectorant, stomachic, tonic, abortifacient, alexipharmic; it is a good appetizer; and the roots are useful in dyspepsia, loss of appetite, flatulence, laryngitis, rheumatism, disorders of the spleen, leucoderma, ringworm, scabies.

The roots of the plant from a prominent and effective herbal drug; for increasing digestive power and promoting appetite; it is frequently used in the treatment of a number of diseases specially digestive system and also other ailments; and the drug is employed for preparing several formulations.

A tincture of the root-bark has been employed as an antiperiodic, and it also acts as a powerful sudorific. The milky juice is used as an application to unhealthy ulcers and is cases of scabies. The plant is used as a vulnerary. The roots are used as an enema to cure piles. The roots are considered useful in leprosy and other similar diseases. The powdered material is taken orally as well as applied externally.

The roots are made into a paste with water, milk, salt, vinegar or any other suitable liquid as well as other drug material as per indication. The external administration of the roots is recommended in various skin affections, inflammation, elephantiasis or filariasis, gout and allied ailments, (including skin diseases of an obstinate character); but the roots-paste causes blister, rushes or reddishness etc. So the paste is allowed to remain on skin (lesion) until a blister has formed. The milky juice of herb is also used as an application to unhealthy ulcers and in cases of scabies milky juice is suggested to be applied in ophthalmia.

The active principle plumbagin and the pharmacological actions of the plant drug are due to the presence of

this neutral principle. Externally it is strong irritant and has a powerful germicidal action on bacteria and the unicellular organisms. The principal action of plumbagin is on the muscular tissue which it stimulates in smaller doses and paralysis in larger ones. It stimulates the secretion of sweat, urine and bile. It has a stimulant action on the nervous system. Thus the use of drug as a rubefacient, vasicator, local ecboic and sudorific is based on pharmacological activity on account of its chemical constituents.

The roots of plant are used with honey in obesity. The roots are also given in filiriasis. The infusion of roots is given in urinary ailments (sikatāmeḥa, one of the ailments of Prameha groups). The roots decoction is orally useful in anemia. Roots are regarded as one of the alterative or restorative medicine (rasāyana). The oil prepared with the roots and other ingredients is used in fistula-in-ano. The roots are useful in liver and splenic disorders.

The roots of another variety, Rakta citraka has the almost similar medicinal properties as that of Śveta citraka; it is specially fattening, alterative and cures leprosy; and this kind of drug is considered very effective and suitable for certain diseases being its particular efficiency and in some pharmaceutical (alchemic) processes.

The vegetable of the plant, especially leaves (citraka śākam) is also mentioned in the texts.

Excess use of the roots of drug causes toxic signs and symptoms on accounts of plant its poisonous (vānaspatika viṣa) effects; and the administration of antibilious, cold and oleous medicines and measures is suggested to counter toxicity stage.

Part used

Root bark (Potentiality of crude drug material-fresh roots.)

Dose : 4-16 grains.

Formulation (Yoga)

Citrakādi vaṭi-guṭikā, Citrakaharītakī, Citrakaghṛta, Citrakādi cūrṇa, Agnitunḍī vaṭi, Pippalyādi, Mustādi,

Āmalakyādi, Muškākādi, Varemādi, Āragvadhādi (Suśruta),
Pañchakola, Ṣaḍūṣaṇa (Bhāvaprakāśa.).

Groups (Gaṇa)

Dīpanīya, Tṛptighna, Śūlapraśamana, Bhedaniya,
Arśoghna, Lekhaniya, Kaṭukaskandha (Caraka.).

CITRAKA (चित्रक)

चित्रकः दीपनस्तित्तः कटुः पाके रसे लघुः ।
अग्निवत् पाचनो रूक्षो वीर्योष्णो रोचनो जयेत् ॥
ग्रहणीकफवातामशोफकुष्ठोदरकृमीन् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 1179-1180.

रसदोषयोः सम्बन्धः (कार्मुकत्वम्)

कटुकत्वात् वातं प्रशमयेत् त्रिदोषघ्नोऽग्निदीपनः ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 1180.

चित्रकशाकम्

‘तच्छाकं लघु सङ्ग्राहि कफपित्तविनाशनम् ।’

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 1181.

चित्रकः कटुकः पाके वह्निकृत्पाचनो लघुः ॥
रूक्षोष्णो ग्रहणीकुष्ठशोथार्शःकृमिकासनुत् ।
वातश्लेष्महरो ग्राही वातघ्नः श्लेष्मपित्तहत् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Haritakyādi varga, 70-71.

चित्रकोऽग्निसमः पाके कटु शोफकफापहः ।

वातोदराशोग्रहणीक्रिमिकण्डूतिनाशनः ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Pippalyādi varga, 45.

चित्रकमूलम्

‘चित्रकमूलं दीपनीयगुदशोफहराणाम् ।’

Caraka Samhitā.,

रक्तचित्रकः

‘वातोदराशोग्रहणीकृमिकण्डूविनाशनः ।

रसे नियामकः लौहे वेधकश्च रसायनः ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Pippalyādi varga, 46.

प्लीहयकृच्चिकित्सायां चित्रकघृतम्

Carakadatta, Plihayakṛccikitsā, 38/34-37.

मेदोरोगे

‘मधुना चित्रकमूलं तथैव हितभोजनो भुङ्क्ते ।’

Baṅgasena.

श्लीपदे

‘हितश्चालेपनं नित्यं चित्रको देवदारु वा..... ।’

Cakradatta.

ग्रहण्याम्

चित्रकक्वाथकल्काभ्यां ग्रहणीघ्नं शृतं हविः ।
गुल्मशोथोदरप्लीहशूलाशोभ्रं प्रदीपनम् ॥

Cakradatta.

व्रणशोथदारणार्थम्

‘.....चित्रको हयमारकःदारुणम् ।’

Cakradatta.

अतिसारे

‘तक्रं पीत्वा सचित्रकम् ।
.....मुच्यते जठरामयात् ॥’

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 10-11.

अर्शःसु

त्वचं चित्रकमूलस्य पिष्ट्वा कुम्भं प्रलेपयेत् ।
तक्रं वा दधि वा तक्रं जातमर्शहरो पिबेत् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā. 9-76.

दद्रुरोगे चित्रकाद्यं तैलम्

Cakradatta, Kṣudraroga cikitsā, 55-89.

श्वयथौ

क्षीरं घटे चित्रककल्कलिप्ते दध्यागतं साधु विमथ्यते च ।
तज्जं घृतं चित्रकमूलगर्भं तक्रेण सिद्धं श्वयधुघ्नमग्र्यम् ।
अर्शोऽतिसारानिलगुल्ममेहान्श्चेतान्निहन्त्यग्निबलप्रदं च ।
तक्रेणावाऽद्यात् सघृतेन तेन भोज्यानि सिद्धामथवा यवागून् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā. 18-114, Cikitsā 12-58/59.

सिकतामेहे

‘सिकतामेहिनं चित्रककषायं पाययेत् ।’

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Cikitsā. 11-8.

पाण्डुरोगे

‘मूलं बलाचित्रकयोः पिबेद् वा,
पाण्ड्वामयात्तोऽक्षसमं हिताशी ।
सुखाम्बुना वा..... ॥’

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Uttara. 44-26.

भगन्दरचिकित्सायां विष्यन्दनतैलम्

Bhāvaprakāśa, Madhyakhaṇḍa, 50/29-30.

शूलचिकित्सायां चित्रकादिकाथः

Cakradatta, Śūlacikitsā, 26-59.

मूत्राघातचिकित्सायां चित्रकादिकाथः

Cakradatta, Mūtrāghāta cikitsā, 33-19-25.

उदरोगे चित्रकघृतम्

चतुर्गुणे जले मूत्रे द्विगुणे चित्रकात् पले ।
कल्के सिद्धं घृतप्रस्थं सक्षारं जठरी पिबेत् ॥

Cakradatta, Udaracikitsā, 31-60.

चित्रकजातयः (गुणवत्ता)

यथास्यं चित्रकः पुष्पैः ज्ञेयः पीतसिताऽसितैः ।

यथोत्तरं स गुणवान् विधिना च रसायनम् ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Uttara. 39-62.

रसायने

छायाशुष्को ततो मूलं मासं चूणीकृत्य लिहत् ।
सर्पिषा मधुसपिभ्यां पिबन् वा पयसा यतिः ॥
अम्भसा वा हितात्राशी शतं जीवति नीरुजः ।
मेधावी बलवान् कान्तो वपुष्मान् दीप्तपावकः ॥
तैलेन लीढो मासेन वातान् हन्ति सुदुस्तरान् ।
मूत्रेण श्वित्रकुष्ठानि पीतस्तक्रेण पायुजान् ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Uttara. 39-63/65.

शोथार्श आदिविकारेषु चित्रकघृतम्

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 12-58/59.

शोथरोगे

द्वितीयचित्रकादिघृतम्

पिबेद् घृतं वाऽष्टगुणाम्बुसिद्धं सचित्रकक्षारमुदारवीर्यम् ।
कल्याणकं वाऽपि सपञ्चगव्यं तिक्तं महद्वाऽप्यथ तिक्तकं वा ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 12-57.

उदररोगे चित्रकघृतम्

चतुर्गुणे जले मूत्रे द्विगुणे चित्रकात् पले ॥
कल्के सिद्धं घृतप्रस्थं सक्षारं जठरी पिबेत् ।

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā. 13-116/117.

ग्रहण्यां चित्रकादिवटी

चित्रकं पिप्पलीमूलं क्षारो लवणपञ्चकम् ।
व्योषं हिङ्गवजमोदा च चव्यं चैकत्र चूर्णयेत् ॥
वटिका मातुलुङ्गस्य रसैर्वा दाडिमस्य च ।
कृता विपाचयत्यामं दीपयत्याशु चानलम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Grahaṇīrogādhikāra, 4-52/53.

व्रणचिकित्सायां विपरीतमल्लतैलम्

Bhāvaprakāśa, Vraṇaśothādhikāra, 47/93-97.

CORAKA

Botanical name : Angelica glauca Edgew.

Family : Apiaceae (Umbelliferae)

Classical Name : Coraka

Sanskrit names

Coraka, Duṣpātra, Viṣama, Śaṅkita, Gopana, Kṣemaj,
Paṭu, Śukara, Gaṇahāsaka, Ripu, Dhūrta, Nīca, Gopana,
Kṣema.

Regional names

Chora, Chura (Hindi, Punj.), Chora (U.P. hills).

Description

A glabrous herb; stem erect, hallow, 1.2-3.6 meters, finely grooved.

Leaves usually large, 1-3-pinnate; leaflets often in threes or reduced to 3, sometimes to 1, ovate or lanceolate, undivided or lobed, irregularly and sharply toothed; upper surface dark green, lower, glaucous.

Umbels compound, long-stalked. Bracts several, linear, up to 2.5 cm. Rays many, nearly equal. Bracteoles many, linear, 6 mm.

Flowers white or purple, many in an umbel. Calyx-teeth none.

Fruit glabrous, flattened, oblong, 13 by 6 mm.; dorsal and intermediate ridges not winged, lateral ridges expanded into membranous, broad, free wings so that the fruit is surrounded by a double or 2-leaved border.

Distribution

It is found in western Himalayas, from Kashmir (J. & K. State) to Shimla (Himachal Pradesh).

CANDĀ**Botanical name**

Angelica archangelica Linn.

Archangelica officinalis Hoffm.

Family : Apiaceae (Umbelliferae)

Classical name : Caṇḍā

Sanskrit names

Caṇḍā, Phalachourā, Taskara, Kitava, Krodhana, Piśuna, Gourī, Śaṅkhinikā, Śaṭhī, Douḥkuleya-duṣkula.

Regional names

Phalachora, Chora (Hindi, U.P. Hills)

Description

Angelica archangelica Linn.

Perennial glabrous herb with stem 5-10 ft. or 1.5-3 meters high. Leaves 30-90 cms. ovate, ultimate pinnac

sessile, rarely decurrent, terminal often; often lobed, 3-lobed. Flowers white. Bracts small, rays 10-30, 1.5-4 in; pedicels very numerous. Lateral ridges usually winged; pericarp somewhat corky, easily separating from the seed; vitte numerous, small, on the inner surface of the pericarp.

Flowering and Fruiting season

July to October.

Distribution

North-western Himalayas; from Kashmir to Shimla; 8,000-10,000 ft. elevation. or 3,000-4,000 meters altitude in the Himalayas.

Chemical Composition

The dry roots yield essential oil 11.3% (*Angelica glauca* Edgew). The dry roots stocks another allied plant (*Angelica orchangelica* Linn.) contain 0.35%; the main constituent is phellandrene (in essential oil); air dried roots yield essential oil; other chemical substances.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Tikta, Kaṭu, Madhura
Guṇa	: Laghu, Tikṣṇa, Hima
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Vātakaphahara

Action and Properties

Karma	: Rakṣoghna, Kuṣṭhaghna Kaṇḍūghna, Svedahara, Viṣaghna Medohara, Tikṣṇa-Tivragandhi Kṛmighna, Hṛdya, Śothaghna Kāsaghna, Dīpana Dourgandhyahara.
Roga	: Unmāda-apasmāra, Pratiśyāya, Viṣa Bālaroga, Bhūta-grahavādhā, Kuṣṭha Kaṇḍū-tvagvikāra, Medoroga Jvara-sītajvara, Śirahśūla Kāsa-hikkā-śvāsa, Śoṭha Agnimāndya-ajirṇa Vraṇasotha-vraṇa, Nāsā-mukharoga.

Therapeutic Uses

The herb is considered a good cardiac tonic and stimulant and it is useful in dyspepsia and constipation.

Herb is useful in flatulence.

The roots, root stocks and fruits of the plant (*A. Archangelica* Linn.) are stimulant, expectorant and diaphoretic.

In general, the roots of the plant (*Angelica*) are stimulant, aromatic, diuretic, diaphoretic, carminative and emmangogue. Both species are used medicinally and used in different ailments.

The roots and leaves of the herbal drug are medicinally useful. It is also used as a flavouring agent.

The herbal drug is incorporated in various recipes and prescriptions (in medical texts) recommend for treatment of different diseases such as insanity, epilepsy, headache, hicough, brenchial asthma, coryza, poison, fever with rigor, pediatic diseases and oedema and it is employed for fumigation (*dhūpana*) in certain ailments and for countering demnofogical effect (*rakṣoghnabhūtagra-havādhā pratiṣedha*).

Parts Used : Roots-root stock, Fruits, Leaves.

Dose : Powder 1-3 gms.

CORAKA-CANDĀ (चोरक-चण्डा)

अ. चोरको गोपनः क्षेमो दुष्पत्रः क्षेमको रिपुः ।
विषमाशुकरो धूर्तः शङ्कितो गणहासकः ॥

चण्डा

ब. फलचौरो दौःकुलेयस्तस्करः कितवोऽपरः ।
क्रोधना पिशुना चण्डा चौरी शङ्खिनिका शठी ॥
स. चोरको मधुरस्तित्तः कटुपाकः कटुर्लघुः ।
तीक्ष्णो हृद्यो हिमो हन्ति कुष्ठकण्डूकफानिलान् ॥
रक्षोऽश्रीस्वेदमेदोऽस्रज्वरगन्धविषत्रणाम् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi varga, 1383-1385.

चोरकः ग्रन्थिपर्णभेदः

- अ. चोरकः शङ्कितश्चण्डा दुष्पत्रः क्षेमको रिपुः ।
 चपलः कितवो धूर्तः पटुर्नीचो निशाचरः ॥
 गणहासः कोषनकश्चौरकः फलचोरकः ।
 दुष्कुलो ग्रन्थिलश्चैव सुग्रन्थिः पर्णचोरकः ।
 ग्रन्थिपर्णी ग्रन्थिदलो ग्रन्थिपत्रस्त्रिनेत्रधा ॥
- ब. चोरकस्तीव्रगन्धोष्णास्तिको वातकफापहः ।
 नासामुखरुजाजीर्णक्रिमिदोषविनाशनः ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Candanādi varga, 126-138.

(क) चोरकः

विषे

एकसरगणे विषापहे ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Kalpa 5-84/86.

शिरःशूले

शिरोरुजायां सघृतः प्रदेहो लेहिरकापद्मचोरश्रेष्ठः ।

Caraka Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 3-24.

उन्मादे

सिद्धं सर्पिहितं तद्वत् वयःस्थाहिङ्गुचोरकैः ।

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā 9-57.

प्रतिश्याये

प्रियाश्च रोहिषाजाजीवचातर्कारिचोरकाः ।

त्वक्पत्रमरिचैलानां चूर्णं वा सोपकुञ्चिका ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā 26-138.

बालरोगे

वचा-वयस्था-तगर-कायस्था-चारकैः शृतम् ।

बस्तमूत्रसुराभ्याञ्च तैलमभ्यञ्जने हितम् ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Uttara, 2-53.

शीतज्वरे

तगरादितैले ।

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Cikitsā, 1-35/139.

धूपनार्थम्

धूपनानि पुनर्वासना शयनास्तरणप्रावरणा-
नाञ्च यवसर्षपातसीहिङ्गुगुगुलुवचा-
चोरकवयःस्थागोलीमीजटिलापलङ्कषा-
शोकरोहिणीसर्पनिर्मोकाणि घृतभुक्तानि स्युः ।

Caraka Samhitā, Śārīra, 8-62.

हिक्काश्वासयोः

दशमूलरसे सर्पिर्दधिमण्डे च साधयेत् ।
कृष्णासौवर्चलक्षारवयःस्थाहिङ्गुचोरकैः ॥
कायस्थया च तत् पानाद्धिक्काश्वासौ प्रणाशयेत् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 17-140/141.

शद्यादिचूर्णे ।

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 17-123/124.

अपस्मारे

वचाशम्पाककैटर्यवयःस्थाहिङ्गुचोरकैः ।
सिद्धं पलङ्कषायुकैर्वातश्लेष्मात्मके घृतम् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 10-27.

अपेतराक्षसी कुष्ठपूतनाकेशिचोरकैः ।
उत्सादनं मूत्रपिष्टैर्मूत्रैरवावरोचनम् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 10-39.

(ख) चण्डा

शोथे

चण्डागुरुभ्यामनुलेपनञ्च ।

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 12-70.

CUKRA

Botanical name : Rumex Vesicarius Linn.

Family : Polygoaceaceae

Sanskrit names

Cukra, Ckurikā, Patrāmla, Śatavedhinī-Sahasravedhī,
Rocanī.

Regional names

Chuka (Hind.), Chuka-palang (Beng.), Chakavat (Mar.), Chuko, Khationaji (Guj.), Shukanakirai (Tam.) Shukakakurkaku (Tel.), Hummaj (Arab.), Tursh (Pers.), Country Sorrel (Eng.).

Description

Annual, monoecious, glabrous, branched from the root, rather fleshy, pale green, 15-30 cm. high, dichotomously, branched. Leaves 2.5-7.5 cm., obtuse or acute, elliptic, ovate or oblong, 3-5 nerved, base cuneate rarely cordate or-hastate; petiole as long as the blade.

Racemes 2.5-3.8 cm. terminal and leaf-opposed, leafless; pedicels slender, jointed about the middle or unjointed.

Flowers sometimes 2-nate and connate, valves large, orbicular, 2-lobed at each, very membranous and reticulate without a marginal nerve.

Fruit 1.3 cm. diam., white or pink, valves hyaline.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Rainy season and onwards.

Distribution

It is found in most parts of India in a state of cultivation or as a garden-escape. It occurs in Western Punjab, Salt Range and Trans-Indus hills. It grows specially in hilly reazon and terai zone.

Chemical Composition

Fresh and green herb contains 92 percent water content. Dried plant contains either extract 4.62 percent, albuminoid 16.27 percent, carbohydrate 57.86 percent, woody part 10.50 percent, and alkaline 10.75 percent. Roots contain Rumicin and Lapathin, the two active principles which resemble chregrophanic acid in properties and action.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Amla, Madhura
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Amla

- Bija-seeds : Picchila, Śīta
 Doṣakarma : Vātaśāmaka, Kaphapittaśāmaka
 Pittaśāmaka (Bija-seeds)

Action and Properties

- Karma** : Yakṛduttejaka
 Rocana-dīpana-bhedana
 (patra-leaves)
 Snehana-grāhi (bija-seeds)
 Hṛdya, Mūtrala
 Viśaghna-jaṅgama viṣa
 Dhātuksayakara, Pittasāraka.

Roga

- a) **Ābhyantara** : Aruci-hṛllāsa-agnimāndya
 Gulma-arśa-śūla
 Yakṛdvikāra-Kāmalā, Pravāhikā
 Hṛtspandana
 Mūtrakṛccha-mūtradāha
 Viṣa-vṛścikadaṁsa-viṣa.
- b) **Bāhya** : Sotha-vedanā-dāha, Vṛścikaviṣa
 Dantaśūla (Patra-leaves).

Therapeutic Uses

The juice is cooling and useful in heat of the stomach and to allay the pain tooth or toothache; it checks nausea by its astringent action.

Leaves are cooling, aperient and useful in diarrhoea and given as astringent; they are useful in snake-bite.

Seeds are cooling and used in dysentery in roasted form; and they are also given in the scorpion-sting.

The herb is very sour; it is laxative, stomachic. It is useful in heart troubles, pains, tumours, constipation, alcoholism, diseases of the spleen, hicough, flatulence, asthma, bronchitis, dyspepsia, vomiting and piles; it causes biliousness or vitiation of pitta doṣa.

The leaves, besides cooling and aperient, are diuretic to certain extent. Leaves are also considered antidote to snake-venom. Similarly the seeds are useful against scorpion-sting.

The leaves juice is considered useful to check nausea, promote the appetite and allay morbid craving for whole some substances. It is also regarded a very cooling medicine and useful to allay heat of stomach, and externally as an epithem to allay pain, especially that caused by the bites and stings of reptiles and insects. The seeds are said to have similar properties, and they are prescribed roasted in dysentery, and as an antidote to scorpion-sting.

The herb is tonic, analgesic; and is useful in jaundice, liver disorders, bleeding piles or haemorrhoids and other various ailments of gastro-intestinal tract. It also allays thirst.

Part Used : Whole plant, Leaves, Seeds.

Dose

Juice 12-24 gms., Seeds powder 3-5 gms.

CUKRA (चुक्र)

- क. चुक्रिका स्यात्तु पत्राम्ला शेचनी शतवेधनी ।
ख. चुक्रा त्वम्लतरा स्वाद्वी वातघ्नी कफपित्तकृत् ।
रुच्या लघुतरा पाके वृन्ताकेनातिरोचनी ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Śāka varga, 225-26.

चुक्रं स्यादम्लपत्रं तु लघूष्णं वातगुल्मनुत् ।
रुचिकृद्दीपनं पथ्यमीषत्पित्तकरं स्मृतम् ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu.

अन्यत्र चुक्रम्

चुक्रं सहस्रवेधि स्याद्रसाम्लं शुक्तमित्यपि ।
चुक्रमत्यम्लमुष्णञ्च दीपनं पाचनं परम् ॥
शूलगुल्मविबन्धामवातश्लेष्महरं सरम् ।
वमितृष्णाऽऽस्यवैरस्यहृत्पीडावह्निमान्द्यकृत् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Harītakyaḍi varga, 260-261.

अतिसारे

चाङ्गेर्याश्चुक्रिकायाश्च दुग्धिकायाश्च कारयेत् ।
खडान् दधिसरोपेतान् ससर्पिष्कान् सदाडिमान् ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā 8-131.

रक्तार्शःसु

गृञ्जनकशाल्मलीनां क्षीरिणायाश्चक्रिकायाश्च ।
न्यग्रोधशुङ्गकानां खडांस्तथाकोविदारपुष्पाणाम् ॥
दघ्नः सरेण सिद्धान् दद्याद्रक्ते प्रवृत्तेऽति ।

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā. 14-202/203.

लाजापेया पीता सचुक्रिका केशरोत्पलैः सिद्धा ।
हन्त्याश्वस्त्रावं तथा बलापृश्निपर्णीभ्याम् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā. 14-199.

DĀDIMA

Botanical Name : *Punica granatum* Linn.

Family : Punicaceae

Classical name : Dāḍima

Sanskrit name

Dāḍima, Dantabija, Lohitapuṣpaka, Koraka.

Regional names

Anār (Hind.), Dadimb (Beng.), Dalimb (Mar.),
Dadam (Guj.), Madalai Chetti. (Tam.), Danimma (Tel.),
Anar (Pers.), Rumman (Arab), Pomegranate (Eng.)

Description

A large deciduous shrub or small tree; bark smooth, grey, thin, often armed with small axillary or terminal thorns.

Leaves opposite, 2.5-6.3 cm. long, oblong-lanceolate, oblong-elliptic, or oblong-oblanceolate, glabrous, entire, minutely pellucid-punctate, shining above, bright green, beneath, base narrowed into a very short petiole.

Flowers 3.8-5 cm. long and as much across, mostly solitary, sometimes 3-4 together, terminating short shoots, sometimes apparently axillary, sessile or nearly so. Calyx-tube campanulate, adnate to and produced beyond the ovary, Coriaceous, lobes 5-7, valvate. Petals 5-7, obovate, scarlet, wrinkle, inserted between the calyx lobes. Stamens very numerous inserted on the calyx below the petals at various leaves; anthers elliptic, dehiscing longitudinally. Ovary inferior, many-celled, the cells arranged in 2 concentric

रक्ताशःसु

गृञ्जनकशाल्मलीनां क्षीरिणायाश्चक्रिकायाश्च ।

न्यग्रोधशुङ्गकानां खडांस्तथाकोविदारपुष्पाणाम् ॥

दध्नः सरेण सिद्धान् दद्याद्रक्ते प्रवृत्तेऽति ।

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā. 14-202/203.

लाजापेया पीता सचुक्रिका केशरोत्पलैः सिद्धा ।

हन्त्याश्वस्त्रावं तथा बलापृश्रिपर्णीभ्याम् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā. 14-199.

DĀDIMA

Botanical Name : Punica granatum Linn.

Family : Punicaceae

Classical name : Dāḍima

Sanskrit name

Dāḍima, Dantabija, Lohitapuṣpaka, Koraka.

Regional names

Anār (Hind.), Dadimb (Beng.), Dalimb (Mar.), Dadam (Guj.), Madalai Chetti. (Tam.), Danimma (Tel.), Anar (Pers.), Rumman (Arab), Pomegranate (Eng.)

Description

A large deciduous shrub or small tree; bark smooth, grey, thin, often armed with small axillary or terminal thorns.

Leaves opposite, 2.5-6.3 cm. long, oblong-lanceolate, oblong-elliptic, or oblong-ob lanceolate, glabrous, entire, minutely pellucid-punctate, shining above, bright green, beneath, base narrowed into a very short petiole.

Flowers 3.8-5 cm. long and as much across, mostly solitary, sometimes 3-4 together, terminating short shoots, sometimes apparently axillary, sessile or nearly so. Calyx-tube campanulate, adnate to and produced beyond the ovary, Coriaceous, lobes 5-7, valvate. Petals 5-7, obovate, scarlet, wrinkle, inserted between the calyx lobes. Stamens very numerous inserted on the calyx below the petals at various leaves; anthers elliptic, dehiscing longitudinally. Ovary inferior, many-celled, the cells arranged in 2 concentric

circles; style long, bent; stigms capitate. Carpels early coalescing and owing to unequal growth becoming arranged into 2 tiers, 3 in the lower and 5-9 in the upper.

Fruit 3.8-7.5 cm. diam; globose, tipped with the calyx-limb, rind coriaceous, woody the interior septate with the membranous wall of the carpels each carpel containing numerous seeds angular from mutual pressure. Seeds with a watery outer coat containing pink juice and a hoorny inner coat. Fruits are astringent in taste and odourless.

Kinds and Varieties

There are two or three varieties (jāti) of fruit (dadima phala) in texts of the materia medica (nighantu) viz.

1. Sweet (svādu or madhura dāḍima)
2. Acid or sour (amla dāḍima)
3. Sweet-sour mixed (Svādvamla or madhurāma dāḍima)

Besides the varieties based on taste (rasa), the several kinds of fruits are available known for their particular regions or localities of fruits production being one of the esteemed popularly edible market fruits.

In addition, the wild as well as cultivated varieties of fruits are prevalent, as the forests in hilly regions also produce smaller variety fruits.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Spring or summers to rainy or autumn season and onwards.

Wild and cultivated or planted trees may vary for seasons in different regions or occurrence and growth of plants.

Chemical Composition

Fruit contains sugar 15 percent, pectin and other substances.

Root contains liquid alkaloid pelleterine; it also contains two inactive alkaloids.

Bark yields alkaloid pelleterine; rootbark contains four alkaloids, pseudo-pelleterine, palleterin; isopelleterine and methylpelleterine.

Stembark and Pericarp (fruit) contains tannin 22-25 percent and root bark punico-tannic acid 20-25 percent.

Distribution

It is found in wild state in the Salt Range and in the Himalayas from the elevation 3,000 to 6,000 ft.

It is cultivated in many parts of India.

Pharmacodynamics

- Rasa : Madhura, Kaṣāya, Amla.
 Guṇa : Laghu, Snigdha.
 Vīrya : Anuṣṇa
 Vipāka : Madhura (madhura jāti-sweet variety), Amla (amla jāti-sour variety).
 Doṣakarman : Tridoṣaghna (madhura phala-sweet fruit), Kincit pittakara (Madhurāmla phala sweet-actidic fruit)
 Kaphavātaśāmaka-pittala (amla phala-sour fruit).

Action and Properties

- Karma** : Rocana-rucivardhaka, Dīpana, Grāhī
 Varco vibandhan, Tāpahāri
 Trṣṇānigrahaṇa-tarpaṇa-śramahara
 Kṛmighna, Hṛdya-sonitāsthapana
 Kaphaghna
 Snehana-kaphaniḥsāraka, Mūtrala
 Śukravardhana, Jvaraghna, Balya
 Medhya-maskiṣka balya
 Śothahara-ropaṇa, Kaṇṭhya.

Roga

- a) **Ābhyantara** : Hṛdroga-Raktapitta-Raktālpatā-
 urdhroga (mukha-ghrāṇa)
 Rakta vikāra, Mastiṣka dourbalya-
 mastiṣkavikāra, Aruci-agnimāndya-
 mukhavairasya, Amlapitta-paittika
 vikāra, Atisāra-pravāhikā-raktātisāra
 Kṛmiroga (mūlatvak)-sphīta kṛmi
 Tridoṣaja vikāra (madura phala
 Kaphavātaja vikāra (madhurāmla-
 amla phala), Arśa-raktārśa, Bāla

Kaphādhikya (puṣpa kalikā)
 Vātapaittika kāsa (phala)
 Mūtrakṛcchra, Śukradourbalya
 Jvara-pathya (phala-bīja)
 Dourbalya (phala).

b) Bāhya : Mukha-kaṅthavikāra (phala tvak)
 Vraṇa, Upadaṁśa (tvacā), Stanavikṛti
 (Kucavṛddyartham).

Therapeutic Uses

This plant is a well known fruit-source (Dāḍima or Anāra, the pomegranate) as well as an effective herbal drug therapeutically used in medicine.

The juice of the fresh leaves and young fruits is given in dysentery. Juice of the leaves and flowers is a styptic; the paste of the leaves is locally applied in conjunctivitis.

As an anthelmintic medicine with efficiency, the bark of the stem and roots, are commonly used. The rootbark is preferred for this purpose, as it contains an alkaloid pumicine in greater quantity than the stem-bark which comparatively yields lesser chemical substance considered active anthelmintic being highly toxic to tapeworms; the fresh bark is preferred than bark in dried state for its use in treatment of worms and allied ailments.

It is anthelmintic, astringent, cardiac and cooling, diuretic, expectorant, refrigerant and suppurative. It is useful in brain affections, cough and cold, diarrhoea and dysentery, dropsy, heart tonic. The drug increases seminal flow and checks bleeding from nose, as in nasal haemorrhage, the flowers are specifically useful. This herbal drug is specific for worms especially tapeworms affections; the dried pericarp or rind of the fruit possesses anthelmintic properties in particular.

The seeds obtained from the fruits, specially from wild sources (plant is occurring wild in warm valleys in many parts of the outer West Himalaya) are sold as anārdānā (also anārdānā from cultivated fruits of good quality). Market drug anārdānā, the dried seeds of obtained from fruits, is employed in food items as well as medicinal

preparations. Seeds are commonly used as a souring agent for food or edible items such as chutney, pickle (sour dishes), syrups and other similar refrigerant, tasty and food or dietetic recipes having domestic utility.

The fresh juice of the fruit (seeds are actually used) is used as an ingredient of cooling, refrigerant and stomachic mixtures of some medicines for the dyspepsia, loss of appetite and, other stomach troubles and also for common gastro-intestinal disorders. The physicians of indigenous medicine also use the rind of the fruit and the flowers combined with aromatics, such as Cloves, Cinnamon, Coriander, Pepper etc., as a bowel astringent in diarrhoea. The seeds are considered to be stomachic, the pulp cardiac and stomachic.

The root of the plant drug is an external vermicide. The bark and seeds are useful in bronchitis. The flowers are useful in epistaxis. The unripe fruit is a good appetiser and tonic, astringent to the bowels, aphrodisiac. they are helpful to cure biliousness, tridoṣa vitiation, thirst, burning sensation of the body, fever, heart disease, sore throat and stomatis. The rind of the fruit is anthelmintic; it is useful in diarrhoea and dysentery.

The bark of the plant is astringent; it strengthens the gumes, it is used in piles, prolapse and colic. The flowers are styptic to the gums; they check vomiting, useful in biliousness, sore eyes, ulcers sore throat; they are applied in hydrocele; they are vulnerary. The unripe fruit lessens inflammation and the fruit is useful in keratitis.

The ripe fruit is sweet, tonic, laxative, diuretic, fattening, they enrich the blood; they allay thirst, they are used in sore throat, sore eyes, brain diseases, spleen complaints, chest troubles, scabies, bronchitis and earache; the seeds are astringent to the bowels; enrich the blood; and they are used in vomiting, sore eyes, biliousness, scabies, liver and kidney disorders.

The pomegranate peel (dāḍima phala tvak) combined with opium and an aromatic, such as cloves (lavaṅga), is a most useful remedy in chronic dysentery and diarrhoea. A decoction of the bark followed by a purgative and it acts as an anthelmintic.

The dried bark of the stem (trunk) and the roots are also considered to have anthelmintic properties. The bark and fruit combined with other drugs are prescribed for the treatment of snake-bite; and bark is also prescribed for scorpion-sting. A decoction of the dried rind of the fruit is drunk for the relief of stomach-ache and in dysentery; and its infusion is given in colitis.

The decoction of the bark (well-filtered) is applied to ulcers as a wash medicine. Fruits are useful in the ailments of brain and allied (mental) complaints. They are useful in anaemia, general debility, fever and allied complaints, especially fruit (seeds) juice is given for recovering the normalcy. The fruits are recommended as wholesome (pathya) article for patients in certain diseases.

Parts used

Fruit-seeds, Fruit-pericarp, Roots bark.

Dose

Fruit juice 12-60 gms. Bark decoction 40-80 gms.

Formulations (yoga)

Dāḍimāṣṭaka cūrṇa, Dāḍimādi cūrṇa, Dāḍimādyā ghr̥ta, Dāḍimādyā taila, Dāḍimacatuhsama.

Groups (gaṇa)

Hṛdyā, Chardinigrahaṇa (Caraka) Parūṣakādi (Suśruta).

DĀDIMA (दाडिम)

दाडिमः

‘दाडिमः करको दन्तबीजो लोहितपुष्पकः ।’

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Āmrādi Varga, 310

‘स्वाद्वम्लं मधुरं चाम्लं त्रिविधं दाडिमीफलम् ।’

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 306

मधुरदाडिमः

मधुरं तु त्रिदोषघ्नं स्वाद्वम्लं वातपित्तनुत् ।

असृक्पित्तकरं चाम्लं संग्राहि सर्वमुच्यते ॥

दाडिमः

दाडिमं रोचनं हृद्यं दीपनं नातिपित्तहाम् ।
मेध्यं कण्ठास्यरोगघ्नं तर्पणं कफवातजित् ॥
वर्चो विबन्धनं स्निग्धं कषायानुरसं लघु ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 307-308.

दाडिमजातयः

द्विविधं: तत्तु विज्ञेयं मधुराम्ल विभेदतः ।
अम्लं तु द्विविधं ज्ञेयं रूक्षाम्लं स्निग्धचक्रकम् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 309-310.

स्वादु त्रिदोषतृड् दाहज्वरहृद्रोगनाशनम् ॥
रूक्षाम्लं दाडिमं यत्तु तत् पित्तानिल कोपनम् ।
पित्ता विरोधिनात्युष्णं स्निग्धाम्लं कफवातनुत् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 310-311.

दाडिमफलम्

तत्फलं त्रिविधं स्वादु स्वाद्वम्लं केवलाम्लकम् ।

क. मधुरदाडिम—

तत्तु स्वादु त्रिदोषघ्नं तृड्दाहज्वरनाशनम् ।
हृत्कण्ठमुखगन्धघ्नं तर्पणं शुक्रलं लघुः ॥

ख. स्वाद्वम्लं दीपनं रुच्यं किञ्चित्पित्तकरं लघु ।

ग. अम्लत्तु पित्तजनकमामं वातकफापहम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Āmrādi Varga, 102-104.

दाडिमं मधुरमम्लकषायं कासवातकफपित्तविनाशी ।

याहि दीपनकरञ्च लघूष्णं शीतलं श्रमहरं रुचिदायि ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Āmrādi Varga, 75.

मधुरदाडिम भेद

दाडिमं द्विविधमीरित मार्यैरम्लमेकमपरं मधुरञ्च ।

तत्रवातकफहारि किलाम्लं तापहारि मधुरं लघुपथ्यम् ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Āmrādi Varga, 76.

द्विविधं तच्च विज्ञेयं मधुरं चाम्लमेव च ।

Dhanvantari Nighaṇṭu.

रूक्षाम्लं दाडिमं यत्तु यत् पित्तानिल कोपनम् ।
मधुरं पित्तनुत्तेषां तद्धि दाडिममुत्तमम् ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 27.

कषायानुरसं तेषां दाडिमं नातिपित्तलम् ।
दीपनीयं रुचिकरं हृद्यं वर्चो विबन्धनम् ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 46.

द्विविधं तत्तु विज्ञेयं मधुरं चाम्लमेव च ।
त्रिदोषघ्नं तु मधुरमम्लं वातकफापहम् ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 46.

व्यङ्गे

‘अजाक्षीरेण वार्द्रदाडिमत्वक् ।’

Aṣṭāṅga, Hṛdaya, Uttara, 37-24.

कुचवृद्धयर्थम्

‘विपाचितं दाडिमकल्कयुक्तं तैलं भवेत्सर्षप सम्भवं यत् ।
अभ्यञ्जनात् कुरुते नितान्तमुच्चैः स्तनो-वृद्धियुतौ च कर्णौ ।’

Rāja Mārtaṇḍa.

उपदंशे दाडिमत्वचः लेपम्

बंधूकदलचूर्णेन दाडिमत्वग्रजोऽथवा ।
गुण्डनं वृषणे शस्तं लेपः पूगफलेन वा ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Madhyakhaṇḍa, 51-26.

अरोचकघ्न कवलग्रहः

‘आर्द्रदाडिमनिर्यासश्चाजाजी शर्करायुतः ।’

Cakradatta, 14-6.

अरोचके

विट्चूर्णमधुसंयुक्तो रसो दाडिमसम्भवः ।
असाध्यमपि संहन्यादरुचि वक्त्रधारितः ॥

Cakradatta, Arocaka Cikitsā, 14-13.

उपदंशे

‘.....दाडिमसम्भवः ।

गुण्डनं.....उपदंशहरं परम् ॥’

Cakradatta, 47-10.

बन्धूकदलचूर्णेन दाडिमत्वगरजोऽथवा ।
गुण्डनं वृषणे शस्तं लेपः पूगफलेन वा ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Cikitsā 5-126.

पूयमेहे

प्रातः पिबेद् दाडिमवल्कफाण्टकं सौजाकवान् कर्करशर्करासखम् ।
निधेहि नीरे कुडवं द्विकर्षं वल्कं प्रकुञ्चक्षिप्रं शर्करायाः ॥

Siddha bhaiṣajya maṇimālā, 4-811.

मुखप्रवृत्तेरुधिरे

‘दाडिमस्यफलत्वग्वा चूर्णं लिह्यात् सितायुतम् ।’

Hārītā Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 11.

चलितगर्भे

‘पञ्चमेमासिचलिते गर्भे दाडिमी पत्राणि, चंदनं, दधि,
मधु च पाययेत् ।’

Hārītā Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 11.

ज्वरकृतेआस्यवैरस्ये दाडिमबीजः

शर्करादाडिमाभूयाञ्च द्राक्षादाडिमयोस्तथा ।
वैरस्ये धारयेत्कल्कं गण्डूषं च तथा हितम् ॥

Baṅgasena.

आमाजीर्णे

‘आमेऽजीर्णे..... अथ दाडिमं वा ।
आमेष्वजीर्णेषु गुदामयेषु वर्चो विबन्धेषु च नित्यमद्यात् ।’

Bhāvaprakāśa.

रक्तातिसारे

वत्सत्वग्दाडिममतरुशलाटु फलसंभवात्त्वक् च ।
त्वयुगलं पलमानं विपचेदष्टांशसंमिते तोये ॥
अष्टभागमवशेषं क्वाथं मधुनां पिबेत्पुरुषः ।
रक्तातीसारमुल्बणमतिशयितं नाशयेत्त्रियतम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa.

पाण्डुरोगे

दाडिमाद्य घृतम् ।

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā. 16-45/46.

पाण्डुरोगे

दाडिमाद्यं घृतम् ।

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā 45-46.

घ्राणात्प्रवृत्तेरुधिरे

‘.....नस्यं तथा दाडिम पुष्पतोयम् ।’

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 5.

रक्तार्शःसु

‘स्निग्धरक्तसंग्रहणः त्वग्दाडिमस्य तद्वत् ।’

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 5.

अरोचके दाडिमादि चूर्णम्

द्वे पले दाडिमांम्लस्य खण्डं दद्यात्पलत्रयम् ।

त्रिसुगन्धि पलं चैकं चूर्णमेतत्त्र कारयेत् ॥

तच्चूर्णं मात्रया भुक्तमरोचकहरं परम् ।

दीपनं पाचनं च स्यात्पीनस ज्वरकासजित् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Madhya Khaṇḍa, Cikitsā,

Prakaraṇaṁ 8, 16-16/17.

रक्तार्शसि

‘त्वचं वा दाडिमोद्भवाम् ।’

Aṣṭāṅga Hr̥daya, Cikitsā 8-103.

त्वग्दाडिमस्य तद्वत् सनागरश्चन्दनरसश्च ।

सर्पिः सदाडिमस्सं सस्यावशूकं शृतं जयत्याशुः ।

रक्तं शूलम् ।

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā 14-98.

मसूरिकायामारोचके दाडिमरस यूष प्रयोगः

‘दाडिमांम्लासैर्युक्ता यूषाः स्युररुचौ हिताः ।’

Cakradatta Masūrikā Cikitsā, 54-34.

विसर्पे

लंघितेभ्यो हितो मन्थो रूक्षः सक्षौद्रशर्करः ।

मधुरः किञ्चिदम्लं वा दाडिमामलकान्वितः ।

सपरुषकमृद्धीकः सखर्जूरः शृताम्बुना ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 29-108/109.

पैतिकं ज्वरे

‘पक्वेन दाडिमफलस्वरसेन यापि सक्तून पिबेत्
प्रबल पित्तमवज्वरार्त्तः ।’

Vaidya Manoramā, 1-11.

मदात्यये

‘भुक्ते तु वारुणी मण्डं दद्यात् पातुं पिपासवे ।
दाडिमस्य सं वापि जलं वा पाञ्चमूलिकम् ॥
धान्यनागरतोयञ्च ।’

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 24-129.

तृष्णायाम्

दाडिमस्य तु बीजानि जीरकं नागकेशरम् ।
चूर्णः सशर्करा क्षौद्रो लेहस्तृष्णाविनाशनः ॥

Baṅgasena, Bālaroga, 53.

रक्तपित्ते

रसो दाडिमपुष्पाणामाम्रोत्थः शाद्वम्लस्य वा ।
कल्पयेच्छीतवर्गञ्च प्रदेहाभ्यञ्जनादिषु ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Cikitsā, 2-47.

नस्यं दाडिमपुष्पोत्थो रसौ दूर्वाभवोऽथवा ।
आम्रास्थितः पलाण्डोत्थं नासिकासुतरक्तजित् ॥

Vṛndamādhava, 9-32.

सच्छागदुग्धश्च सशर्करश्चर सोहितो दाडिमपुष्पजश्च ।

Vṛndamādhava, 9-33.

दाडिम कुसुमस्वरसः स्तन्य वा चूतकुसुमसलिलं वा ।
दूर्वाभ्यो वा नस्यान्नासारक्तंस्तुतिं जयति ॥

Vaidyamanoramā, 2-8.

अतिसारे

कषायो मधुना पीतस्वत्वचो दाडिम वत्सकात् ।
सद्यो जयेदतीसारं रक्तजं दुर्निवारकम् ॥

Vṛndamādhava.

दाडिमीकलिकाकल्कः प्रत्नमाक्षिकमाक्षिकः ।

सकृदेव प्रयुक्तश्चेदतिसारस्य का कथा? ॥

Siddhabhaiṣajya Maṇimālā, 4-147.

पुटपाकेन विपचेत् सुपक्वं दाडिमीफलम् ।
तद्रसो मधुसंयुक्तः सर्वातीसारनाशनः ॥

Śāraṅadhara Saṁhitā, 2-1-31.

क्षुधितं भोजयेदेनं दधिदाडिमसाधितैः ।
शाल्योदनं तिलैर्माषैर्मुद्गैर्वासाधु साधितम् ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Cikitsā, 9-19.

दाडिमाष्टक चूर्णम् ।

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Cikitsā 9-112/113.

DAMANAKA

Botanical name : *Artemisia sieversiana* Willd.

Family : Asteraceae (Compositae)

Classical name : Damanaka

Sanskrit names

Damanaka, Tapodhana, Gandhotkaṭa, Brahmajaṭā,
Puṣpacāmara.

Regional names

Douna (Hind.), Dona (Beng.), Davana (Mar.),
Damaro (Guj.).

Description

An annual, hoary, silky, pubescent, herbaceous plant (very similar in many respect to *Artemisia absinthrum* (Linn.) with much larger heads, distant on the long, lax racemes and the anthers are aristate. Hoary, pubescent, stem erect, angled, ribbed, simple or paniculately branched above.

Leaves mostly petioled, broadly ovate, 2-pinnatisect, segments obtuse and obscurely lobed, hoary on both surfaces.

Heads 6-13 mm. diam. broadly hemispheric, pedicelled, secund, nodding, distant, in lax long racemes, terminating the branches. Outer involucre bracts green, hoary, inner broadly scarious.

Receptacular hairs long, straight.

Leaves and flowers are quite odorous.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Autumn to cold season.

Distribution

It is found in western Himalaya, from Kashmir (J. & K. State) to Lahul-spiti (Himachal Pradesh), 8,000 to 10,000 ft. elevation. It also occurs in other regions of country.

Chemical Composition

Plant contains a bitter extract, chlorophyll, camphoraceous volatile oil and alkaline substance.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Tikta, Kaṣāya
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa, Tikṣṇa.
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Tridoṣaśāmaka.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Pittasāraka, Dīpana-pācana-anulomana, Hṛdayottejaka-śothahara-raktaśodhaka Kaphaghna, Mūtrajanana Uttejaka-Garbhāśayasaṅkokaka Kuṣṭhaghna Jvaraghna-aṅgamardapraśamana Kaṭupouṣṭika, Viṣaghna Vedanāsthāpaṇa-Vātahara Śothahara.
--------------	--

Roga

a) Ābhyantara	: Yakṛdvikāra-pittādhikya Udararoga-udaraśūla Agnimāndya-Viṣṭambha-ādhmāna Hṛddourbalya-śotha-raktavikāra Kāsa-śvāsa, Mūtrakrcchra, Vātavyādhi Rajorodha-kaṣṭārtava, Kuṣṭha-kaṇḍū Kāmaśaitya, Jvara-āmapācana Pāṇḍuroga, Vātavyādhi.
----------------------	--

b) Bāhya : Śoṭha-vedanā pradhāna Vikāra,
Vraṇaśoṭha.

Therapeutic Uses

The herb is tonic, febrifuge, deobstruent, anthelmintic, emmenagogue. The plant is applied externally as a discutient and antiseptic remedy.

The plant drug is acrid, bitter, hot, dry, pungent, with the flavour, cardiogenic, aphrodisiac, alexipharmic and tonic properties. It improves taste and appetite. The herb is useful in leucoderma, diseases of the blood, itching, sweating, tridoṣa, amenorrhoea, and dysmenorrhoea; it is used in ailments caused by vitiation of vāta and kapha, tumours, diseases of the spleen and the heart.

The herb has a bitter (and unpleasant or bad) taste with a flavour, anthelmintic, aphrodisiac, emmenagogue, stimulant to the heart and the brain; and it is useful in hypochondriasis, jaundice dropsy, gout pains in the joints, troubles of the stomach, the liver, the blood and the spleen, and used in hysteria.

It is febrifuge, deobstruent, and anthelmintic. It is applied externally as a discutient and antiseptic.

This herbal drug is useful as cholagogue, stomachic, digestive and for countering biliousness.

Its various parts e.g. leaves and flowers and whole plant are given in forms of expressed juice, powder and infusion etc. The drug is used in worms, fever, liver complaints, oedema, cough, asthma, menstrual troubles, dermatosis, anaemia, abdominal and nervous complaints.

Part Used

Whole plant, Leaves, Flowers.

Dose

Juice 6-12 gms., Powder 10-12 grains.

DAMANAKA (दमनक)

क. उक्तो दमनको दान्तो मुनिपुत्रस्तपोवनः ।
गन्धोत्कटो ब्रह्मजटो विनीतः कलपत्रकः ॥

ख. दमनकस्तुवरस्तिको हृद्यो वृष्यः सुगन्धिकः ।
ग्रहणाद् विषकुष्ठास्त्रक्लेद कण्डूत्रिदोषजित् ॥

Bhāvaprakāsa Nighaṇṭu, Puṣpa Varga, 67-68.

दमनकः

अथ दमनकस्तु दमनो दान्तो गन्धोत्कटो मुनिर्जटिलः ।
दण्डी च पाण्डुरागो ब्रह्मजटा पुण्डरीकश्च ॥
तापसपत्रः पत्री पवित्रको देवशेखरश्चैवः ।
कुलपत्रश्च विनीतस्तपस्विपत्रश्च सप्तधात्रीकः ॥

दमनक गुणाः

दमनःशीतलतिक्तः कषायकटुकश्च कुष्ठदोषहराः ।
द्वन्द्वत्रिदोष शमनो विष विस्फोट विकारहरणः स्यात् ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Karavīrādi Varga, 144-146.

वन्यदमनः

अन्यश्च वन्यदमनो वनादिनामा च दमनपर्यायः ।
वीर्यस्तम्भनकारी बलदायी चामदोषहारी च ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Karavīrādi Varga, 147.

दमनकः

क. ऋषिपुत्रो ब्रह्मजटी दमो गन्धोत्कटो मुनिः ।
पाण्डुराङ्गो दमनको विनीतः कुलपुत्रकः ॥
पुण्डरीको मुनिसुतो दान्तः साधुस्तपोधनः ।
ख. दमनस्तुवरस्तिको हृद्यो वृष्यास्त्रिदोषनुत् ॥
निहन्ति कफजां कण्डू कुष्ठक्लेद विषग्रहान् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 1569-1571.

दमनः

दमनःस्याद्रसे तिक्तो विषघ्नो भूतदोषनुत् ।
त्रिदोषशमनो हृद्यः कण्डूकुष्ठापहः स्मृताः ॥

Dhanvantari Nighaṇṭu.

DANTĪ

Botanical name

Baliospermum montanum Muell-Arg.

Family : Euphorbiaceae

Classical name : Danti

Sanskrit names

Danti, Udumbaraparnī, Eraṇḍaphalā, Śighrā, Ghuṇapriyā, Nikumbha, Pratyakśreṇī.

Regional names

Danti (Hind.) Haphun (Beng.), Danti (Mar.), Amadam (Tel.) Dantimul (Mar.) Mirudimuttu (Tam.) Nelajidi (Tel.).

Description

A leafy stout usually monoecious undershrub 0.9-1.8 meter high with herbaceous branches from the root, glabrous except the young shoots and sometimes the leaves beneath.

Leaves sinuate-toothed, the upper small, lanceolate, penninerved, the lower large, reaching 15-30 cm. long and often as broad, ovate, often palmately 3-5 lobed, abse rounded or cuneate, 2-glandular; petioles 5-15 m long; stipules of glands.

Flowers in numerous axilliary racemes or contracted panicles, all male or with a few females below. Male flowers; Calyx globose, 2.5 mm. long, 4-5 partite, glabrous or slightly pubescent; segments about 20. Female flowers; Sepals ovate-lanceolate, pubescent, not accrescent in fruit. Disk 2.5 mm. diam, thin, entire. Ovary hairy ; styles about 1.5 mm. long, thick 2-partite, dull red, the stimate surface smooth, not fimbriate. Capsules 8-13 mm. long, obovoid, usually hairy, of three 2-valved crustaceous cocci. Seeds 8 by 5 mm., ellipsoid, quite smooth, mottled.

Flowering and Fruiting time

Autumn or cold season to summers.

Distribution

It is found in Bihar, North Bengal, Chhota Nagpur, Assam, West Peninsula and other parts of country. Burma and Malaya.

Chemical Composition

Plant contains resin and starch. Seeds are rich in oil.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṭu
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa, Tikṣṇa.
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphapittahara

Action and Properties

Karma	: Virecana, Pittasāraka, Dīpana Yakṛduttejaka, Kṛmighna Raktaśodhaka-Śoṭhahara Śvāsahara (patra-leaves) Aśmarināśana, Jvaraghna, Vikāśi- viṣaghna, Vedanāsthāpana- śophahara (mūla-bija-roots-seeds).
--------------	---

Roga

- a) **Ābhyañtara** : Udararoga-vibandha, Agnimāndya
(internal) Yakṛdvikāra, Arśa, Kṛmi, Raktavikāra-
sarvāṅgaśoṭha, Śvāsa (patra-leaves)
Asmarī, Vibandhayukta jvara
Sarpaviṣa (bija-seeds), Tvagvikāra
(mūla-roots).
- b) **Bāhya** : Śoṭha-vedanā (mūla), Arśa (mūla)
(external) Vātavyādhi (bija taila-seeds oil).

Therapeutic Uses

The seeds are purgative; and they are externally applied as stimulant and rubefacient. It is considered useful against snake bite.

The roots are cathartic; and they are useful in dropsy, anasarca and jaundice. The decoction of the leaves in asthma. The oil obtained from seeds is useful as hydrogogue, cathartic, and applied externally to rheumatism.

This is one of the important purgative drugs in indigenous system of medicine recommended in treatment of a number of diseases.

The paste of the roots is applied to inflammation, painful lesions and conditions of organs, piles and similar other ailing conditions.

The oil extracted from the seeds is externally applied to ailments (under vātavyādhi) with inflammatory and painful conditions.

The roots are used in skin complaints. Roots are given in fever with (chronic) constipation or in the stage needing purgation for purification (malasodhana).

In asthma, the decoction of leaves is given. The drug is used in liver, abdominal, intestinal and worms affections. The drug is also useful in urinary calculous.

Seeds are suggested to be used in snake bite, in the form of collyrium (netrāñjana).

There is proper mode of oral use of the drug (dantīkalpa) and the precautions and their measures in case of complications, have been given in medical texts of Indian medicine; and this herbal drug is an ingredient of several formulations.

Parts used

Roots, Seeds, Leaves.

Dose

Root powder 1-3 gms., Seeds oil 2-5 drops, Seeds 1-2 grains. Seeds 125-250 gms. Leaves decoction 40-80 gms.

Formulations (yoga)

Dantyarīṣṭa, Dantiyādi, Cūrṇa, Dantī harītakī, Dantiyādi lepa.

Groups (gaṇa)

Virecana, Mūlinī, Mūlāsava (caraka), Abhobhāghara, Śyāmādi (suśruta).

DANTĪ (दन्ती)

दन्ती द्रवन्तिका चोष्णा कटुपाकरसा लघुः ।
विकर्षिणी सरा तीक्ष्णा दीपनी पाचनी हरेत् ॥
कफपित्ततोदहरानाहशोफशूल गुदाङ्कुरान् ।
विदाहकण्डूकुष्ठास्रप्लीह गुल्माश्मरी कृमीन् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 1009-1011.

दन्तीबीजम्

जयपालो दन्तिबीजं मुकुलं तित्तिडीफलम् ।

दन्तीद्वयफलम्

तयोफलं रसेपाके मधुरं रेचनं लघु ॥
सुस्निग्धं बृंहणं वृष्यं बल्यं पित्तकफापहम् ।
निहन्त्यनिलदाहास्रकासकृच्छ्र क्षतक्षयान् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 1012-1013.

क्षुद्रदन्तीफलम्

क्षुद्रदन्ती फलं स्वादु मधुरं रसपाकयोः ।
शीतलं सृष्ट विण्मूत्रं गरशोफ गदापहम् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi, Varga, 1014.

लघुदन्तीबृहद्दन्ती (दन्ती द्रवन्ती) च

दन्तीद्वयं सरंपाकं रसे च कटु दीपनम् ॥
गुदाङ्कुराश्मशूलास्रकण्डूकुष्ठविदाहनुत् ।
तीक्ष्णोष्णं हन्ति पित्तास्रकफशोथोदरक्रिमीन् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Guḍūcyādi Varga, 199-200.

लघुदन्तीफलम्

क्षुद्रदन्तीफलं तु स्यान्मधुरं रसपाकयोः ।
शीतलं सृष्टविण्मूत्रं गरशोथकफापहम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Guḍūcyādi, Varga, 201.

क. दन्ती

दन्ती कटुष्णा शूलाम त्वगदोष शमनी च सा ।
अर्शोत्रणाश्मरोचक शोधनी दीपनी परा ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Pippalyādi Varga, 160.

ख. अपरदन्ती

अन्या दन्ती कटुष्णा च रेचनीक्रिमिहा परा ।
शूलकुष्ठामदोषघ्नी त्वगामय विनाशनी ॥

Raja Nighaṅṭu, Pippalyādi Varga, 162.

तीक्ष्णोष्णान्याशुक्रारीणि विकाशीनि गुरूणि च ।
विलप्ययन्ति दोषौ द्वौ मारुतं कोपयन्ति च ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Kalpa 12.

दन्ती द्रवन्ती स्नेहास्तिककटुकषायाः अधोभागहरा-
कृमिकुष्ठकफानिलहराः ।

Suśruta Samhitā, Sūtra. 45.

पिप्पलीमधुलिप्तानि स्वेदयेत् भृत्कुशान्तरे ।
शोषयेदातयेऽन्यकौ हतो ह्येषां विकाशिताम् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Kalpa, 12.

‘विलाययन्ति दोषौ द्वौ मारुतं कोपयन्ति च ।’

Caraka Samhitā, Kalpa 12.

तयोर्मूलानि संगृह्य स्थिराणि बहलानि च ।
हस्थिदन्त प्रकाराणि श्यावताम्राणित्राणि बुद्धिमान् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Kalpa 12.

पाण्डुरोगे दन्तीघृतम्

दन्त्याश्चतुष्पलरसे पिष्टैर्दन्तीशलाटुभिः ।
तद्वत्प्रस्थो घृतात्सिद्धः प्लीहपाण्डूर्तिशोफजिता ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 16-51.

दूष्योदर चिकित्सायां दन्ती-द्रवन्ती-तैलम्

दन्तीद्रवन्तीफलजं तैलं दूष्योदरे हितम् ॥
शूलानाह विबन्धेषु मस्तुयूषरसादिभिः ।

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 13-154/155.

पाण्ड्वामये विरेचनार्थं दन्तीफलरसयोगम्

दन्तीफलरसेकोष्णे काश्मर्याञ्जलिनाशृतम् ।
द्राक्षाञ्जलि मृदित्वा वा दद्यात् पाण्ड्वात्रयापहाम् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 16-56/57.

कुष्ठरोगे

लिह्याद् दन्ती त्रिवृद् ब्राह्मीशूर्णितः मधुसर्पिषा ।
कुष्ठमेह प्रसुमीनां परमं स्यात्तदौषधम् ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hr̥daya, Cikitsā 19-34.

गुल्मरोगचिकित्सायां दन्ती हरीतकी अवलेहम्

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā 5-154/160.

पक्वशोधभेदने दन्ती भेषजगणः

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā 25-53.

अश्रोगचिकित्सायां दन्त्यरिष्टः

Caraka, Cikitsā 14-144/147.

अर्शःसु दन्त्वाद्य प्रलेपम्—

Caraka 14-55

वातपित्तजन्य शोथे दन्त्यादि योग सिद्धक्षीर—

Caraka 12-24.

ऊरुस्तम्भे दन्त्याद्योत्सादन योग—

Caraka, 27-52.

प्रमेहचिकित्सायां दन्त्यासवः—

Caraka, 6-44/45.

ग्रन्थौ

‘दन्ती.....भिन्द्याच्छिन्नमपि ।’

Vṛnda mādhyava, 49-32.

दन्ती-द्रवन्ती कल्प (दश) योगाः

दधितक्रसुरमण्डैः पिण्डमक्ष समं तयो ।

प्रियाल कोलबदरपीलुशीधुभिरेव च ॥

पिबेद् गुल्मोदरी क्षेपैरभितक्तश्च यो नरः ।

गोमृगाजरसैः पाण्डुः कृमिकोष्ठो भगन्दरो ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Kalpa, 12-7/8.

पाण्डुरोगे विरेचन प्रयोग

दन्तीद्विपलनिर्यूहो द्राक्षार्धप्रस्थसाधितैः ।

विरेचनं पित्तकासे पाण्डुरोगे च शस्यते ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Kalpa 12-30.

कामलारोगे विरेचन प्रयोग

दन्तीकल्कं समगुडं शीतवारियुतं पिबेत् ।

विरेचनं मुख्यतमं कामलाहर-मुत्तमम् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Kalpa 12-31.

विरेचनार्थं अरिष्ट प्रयोग

क. श्यामादन्ती रसे गौडः पिप्पली फलचित्रकैः ।

लिप्तेऽरिष्टोऽनिलश्लेष्मप्लीह पाण्डूदरापहः ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Kalpa 12-32.

ख. तथा दन्ती द्रवन्त्योश्च कषाये साजगन्धयोः ।
गौडः कार्योऽजशृङ्गया वा स वै सुखविरेचनः ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Kalpa, 12-33.

कफजगुल्मनाशक योग

तच्चूर्णं क्वाथमाषाम्बुकिण्वतोयसमुद्भवा ।
मदिरा कफगुल्माल्पवह्निपार्श्वं कटिग्रहे ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Kalpa 12-34.

सौवीरक-तुषोदक प्रयोग

अजगन्धाकषायेण सौवीरकतुषोदके ।
सुराकम्पिल्लके योगौ लोध्रवच्च तयो स्मृतौ ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Kalpa, 12-35.

दन्ती द्रवन्ती कल्प-विविध योगाः

दन्तीद्रवन्तीकल्पेऽस्मिन् प्रोक्ताः षोडशकास्त्रयः ।
नानाविधानां योगानां भक्तिदोषामयान्प्रति ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Kalpa, 12-40.

दन्तीद्रवन्ती फलजं तैलं दूष्योदरं हितम् ।
शूलानाह विबन्धेषु मस्तुयूषारसादिभिः ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Cikitsā, 15-77.

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 13-154.

उदरे

सैन्धवाजमोदायुक्तं वा निकुम्भ तैलम् ।

Suśruta Samhitā, Cikitsā, 14-10.

गुल्मे—दन्ती हरीतकी योगः

विधिः

जलद्रोणे विपाक्तव्या विंशतिः पञ्च चाभयाः ।
दन्त्याः पलानि तावान्ति चित्रकस्य तथैव च ॥
तैलार्धं कुडवं चैव त्रिवृत्तायाश्चतुष्पलम् ।
चूर्णितं पलमैकं तु पिप्पली भेषजम् ॥
तत् साध्यं लेह वच्छीते तस्मिस्तैलसमः मधु ।
क्षिपेच्चूर्णपलं चैकं त्वगैलापत्रकेशरान् ॥
ततो लेह पलं लीढ्वा जग्ध्वा चैकां हरीतकीम् ।

प्रयोगः

सुखं विरिच्यते स्निग्धोदोषप्रस्थमनायम् ॥
 गुल्मं श्वयथुमर्शासि पाण्डुरोगमरोचकम् ।
 हृद्रोगं ग्रहणीदोषं कामलां विषमज्वरम् ॥
 कुष्ठं प्लीहानमानाह मेषा हन्युपसेविता ।
 निरत्ययः क्रमश्चास्या द्रवो मांसरसौदनः ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā 5-154/160.

प्रमेहे दन्त्यासवः

क्वाथः एताष्टपलं च दन्त्या भल्लातकानां च चतुष्पलं स्यात् ।
 सितोपला त्वष्टपला विशेषः शौद्रं च तावत् पृथगासवौतौ ॥

Caraka Samhitā. Cikitsā, 7-45.

कुष्ठे विरेचनार्थम्

‘कुष्ठेषु त्रिवृता दन्ती त्रिफला च विरेचने शस्ता ।’

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 7-44.

कामलायाम्

सत्र्यूषणं बिल्वपत्रं पिबेत्रा कामलापहम् ।
 दन्त्यर्धपलकल्कं वा द्विगुडं शीतवारिणा ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 16-59.

पिबेन् निकुम्भकल्कं वा द्विगुणं शीतवारिणा ।
 कुम्भस्य चूर्णं सशौद्रं त्रैफलेन रसेन वा ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Cikitsā, 16-42.

अर्शासि

दन्त्यरिष्टः ।

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 14-144/147.

पाण्डुरोगे

मूत्रं निकुम्मार्धपलं विपाच्य पिबेदभीक्षणं कुडवार्धकम् ।

Suśruta Samhitā, Uttara, 44-16.

नेत्राभिष्यन्दे

..... दन्ती प्रत्येकशो
 मधुयुतः स्वरसोऽञ्जनेन कोपं नवं नयनयोः सहसैव हन्ति ।

Gadanigraha, 3-3-150.

DĀRUHARIDRĀ

Botanical Name : Berberis aristata DC.

Family : Berberidaceae

Classical Name : Dāruharidrā

Sanskrit Names

Dāruharidrā, Dārvī, Parjanya, Katankateri, Pacopaca.

Regional Names

Daruhaldi (Hind.), Daruharidra (Beng.), Darahaldi (Punj.), Daruhald (Mar.), Daruhaladar (Guj.), Garamenjal (Tam.), Kasturipaspu (Tel.), Darchoba (Pers.), Kingora, Kashmal, Kashmoi, Kilmora (U.P. Hills); Indian Berbery (Eng.).

Description

A large deciduous shrub usually 1.8-3.6 meters high but attaining 4.5 meters height with stem 20 cm. diam. Twigs whitish or pale yellowish brown. Bark pale brown, closely and rather deeply furrowed, rough. Blaze 5-7.5mm., Bright yellow with coarse reticulate fibre.

Leaves 3.8-10 by 1.5-3.3 cm., obovate or elliptic, entire or spinous toothed, base gradually narrowed, with prominent reticulate nerves, glossy dark green above, glossy, pale green but no glaucous beneath. Petiole 0 or distant to 4 mm.

Inflorescence a simple drooping raceme, 2.5-7.5 cm., long, ovoid, blue black with a thick pale bloom, style distinct.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Spring to summer seasons.

Distribution

It is found in the Himalayas within the elevation from 6,000 ft. to 10,000 ft.

Chemical Composition

Plant contains berberine, oxycanthine and umballiatine; Roots and bark contain an yellow alkaloid berberine. Fruits contain citric and malic acid.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Tikta, Kaṣāya.
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa.
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Rasa	: Phala-fruit : Mādhurāmla.
Vīrya	: Śīta
Doṣakarma	: Kaphapittahara, Pittaśāmaka (Phala-fruits)

Action and Properties

Karma	: Pittasāraka, Yakṛduttejaka, Dipana- grāhī, Raktaśodhaka Raktastambhana (rasānjana- extract), Rocana-tṛṣṇānigrahaṇa (Phala-fruit), Kaphghna Svedajanana-varṇya, Jvaraghna Kaṭupouṣṭika, Śothahara- vedanāsthāpana, Vraṇaśodhana- vraṇaropana, Cakṣuṣya Garbhāśaya śoṭha-srāva.
--------------	--

Roga

a) Ābhyantara	: Yakṛdvikāra-kāmalā-pāṇḍu Agnimāndya-Pravāhikā, Aruci-tṛṣṇā (Phala) raktasrāva, Raktavikāra- phiraṅga (rasānjana), Raktapitta- raktārśa-raktapradara-Kāsa, Pradara- śveta-raktapradara, Prameha- piṣṭameha, Unmāda-Graha, Kuṣtha- kaṇḍū-visphoṭa, Vṛddhiroga Tvagvikāra-varṇavikāra, Jvara- jīrṇajvara-viṣamajvara, Dourbalya.
b) Bāhya	: Śothavedanāyukta Vikāra Netraroga-Netrābhiṣyanda- netraśoṭha-naktāndhya Karnaroga-karṇaśūla-karṇasrāva- pūtikarṇa Raktavikārajanya śoṭha-phiraṅga- upadaṁśa-sarvaliṅgavikāra-śūkadoṣa

Gaṇḍamālā, Bhagandara, Visarpa
Bāla gudapāka, Sarpaviṣa
Mukharoga, Vraṇa-nāḍivraṇa.

Therapeutic Use

The root-bark, wood and an extract made from root-bark are alterative, deobstruent, used in skin diseases, menorrhagia, diarrhoea, jaundice and eyes affections.

The decoction of root bark is given in malarial fever.

The roots are useful for healing ulcers, urethral discharges in leucorrhoea, ophthalmia, jaundice, fevers and source of an extract (Rasānjana or rasaunt) which is a medicinal potent and quite useful product of this drug; the extract is used frequently in various ailments in external mode of application, and extract is also orally used in certain diseases.

Dāruharidrā satva, known as Rasānjana or Rasaunt (wood extract) is dark brown, extract of the consistency of opium having a bitter, astringent taste, readily soluble in water, forming a rich yellowish brown colour.

The raw material of Dāruharidrā phala or Zarisk (zirisk) is moist sticky mass of small black fruit most of them are abortive, but a few contain one or two oblong seeds with a thin roughish brown resin, beneath which is a membranous covering exists.

Part used : Roots, Stems, Fruits.

Dose

Rootbark juice 12-24 gms., Decoction 50-100 gms., Extract 0.5-1 gm. (rasānjana) 1-2 gm., (viṣama jvara) Fruits 6-12 gms.

Formulations (yoga)

Dārvyādi kvātha, Dārvyādi leha, Dārvyādi taila, Rasānjanādi cūrṇa, Khadirāriṣṭa, Punarnavāmaṇḍūra, Candraprabhā vaṭī, Chandanādi vaṭī, Phalatrikādi kvātha, Viṣagarbha taila (laghu).

Groups (gaṇa)

Arśoghna, Kaṇḍūghna, Lekhaniya (Caraka).
Haridrādi, Mustādi, Lākṣādi (Suśruta).

DARUHARIDRA (दारुहरिद्रा)

(सैवकालीयकः प्रोक्तस्तथा कालीयकोऽपि च ।)

तद्व दार्वी विशेषेण कर्णनेत्रास्य रोगजित् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 117.

सैव कालीयकः प्रोक्तस्तथा कालीयकोऽपि च ॥

पीतद्रु हरिद्रुश्चपीतदारु च पीतकम् ।

दार्वी विशागुणा किन्तु नेत्र कर्णास्य रोगनुत् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Harīṭakyādi Varga, 201-202.

दार्वीक्वाथ जातं रसाञ्जनम्

दार्वीक्वाथसमं क्षीरं पादं पक्त्वा यदा घनम् ।

तदा रसाञ्जनाख्यं तत्रेत्रयोः परमं हितम् ॥

रसाञ्जनं तार्क्ष्यशैलं रसगर्भञ्च तार्क्ष्यजम् ।

रसाञ्जनं कटु श्लेष्म विषनेत्र विकारनुत् ॥

उष्णं रसायनं तिक्त छेदनं व्रणदोषहत् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Harīṭakyādi Varga, 203-205.

अन्या दारुहरिद्रा च.....सप्तदशाह्वया ।

तिक्ता दारुहरिद्रा तु कटूष्णा व्रणमेहनुत् ।

कण्डू विसर्प त्वग्दोषविषकर्णाक्षिदोषहा ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Pippalyādi Varga, 202.

तिक्ता दारुहरिद्रा स्याद्रूक्षोष्णा व्रणमेहनुत् ।

कर्णनेत्रमुखोद्भूतां रूजं कण्डूं च शोषयेत् ॥

Dhanvantari Nighaṅṭu.

दार्वी कुटजवत्पत्रैः अङ्गोलौसदृशो गिरौ ।

क्षीरिणी सा भवेत् तस्याः क्वाथेन स्याद्रसांजनम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa.

उन्मादे दार्व्यादि गुटिका

‘दार्वीमधुभ्यां पुष्यायां कृतञ्च गुडिकाञ्जनम् ।’

Cakradatta, Unmāda Cikitsā, 20-46.

प्रदरे दार्व्यादिक्वाथम्

दार्वी रसाञ्जनकिरातवृषाब्द बिल्वसक्षौद्रचन्ददिनेशभवप्रसूनैः ।

क्वाथः कृतो मधुयुतो विधिना निपीतो रक्तं सितञ्च सरुजं प्रदरं निहन्ति ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Strīrogādihikāra, 68-18.

नाडीव्रण चिकित्सायां रसाञ्जनादि कल्कः

Cakradatta, Bhagandara Cikitsā, 46-6.

नेत्राभिष्यन्दे

‘दावीं विशेषेण कफाभिष्यन्दनाशिनी ।’

Rājavallabha Nighaṇṭu.

अहिपूतनकोपचारार्थं रसाञ्जन प्रयोगः

‘रसाञ्जनं विशेषेण पानालेपनभयोर्हितम् ।’

Cakradatta, 55-25.

पूतिकर्णोपचारार्थं रसाञ्जनादि पूरणम्

घृष्टं रसाञ्जनं नार्याः क्षीरेण क्षौद्रसंयुतम् ।

प्रशस्यते चिरोत्थेऽपिसास्त्रावे पूतिकर्णके ॥

Cakradatta, Kaṃaroga Cikitsā, 57-51.

शिशौ गुदपाक शमनाय रसाञ्जनं प्रयोगः

गुदपाके तु बालानां पित्तग्री कारयेत् क्रियाम् ।

रसाञ्जनं विशेषेण पानालेपनमोर्हितम् ॥

Cakradatta, Bālaroga, Cikitsā, 64-44.

प्रमेहे

ग्राहान् गजेन्द्रो विष्णोर्वे प्रसादेन यथा तथा ।

तद्वत् क्षौद्रान्विता दावीं पीतश्चामलकी रसः ॥

Vaidyamanoramā, 7-20.

ग्रहोपशमनार्थम्

कूष्माण्डौफलसलिलेन पुष्यसंज्ञेनक्षत्रेमसृणतरां प्रपिष्य दावीम् ।

कर्त्तव्यं नयनयुगेऽञ्जनं प्रशस्तनिःशेषग्रह रजनीचरोपशान्त्यै ॥

Rājamārtanḍa.

असृग्दरे

दाव्यादिक्वाथः ।

Vṛndamādhava, 63-6.

श्वेतप्रदरे

पिबेद्दारुहरिद्रायाः क्वाथं वा मधुसंयुतम् ।

पाण्डुप्रदरशान्त्यर्थं पाययेत्तण्डुलाम्बुना ॥

Śoḍhala, Pradarādhikāra, 6-1-24.

सर्पविषे

हरिद्रे तु हिते ख्याते ताभ्यां नास्ति समं क्वचित् ।
अगदस्तु विषार्तानां प्रलेपादिप्रयोजितः ॥

Śoḍhala, Gadani-graha, 7-3-11.

उपदंशे

रसाञ्जनं शिरीषेण पथ्यया च समन्वितम् ।
सक्षौद्रं लेपनं योज्यमुपदंशगदापहम् ॥

Śāraṅgadhara Samhitā, 3-11-107.

नक्तान्धये

रसाञ्जनं हरिद्रे द्वे मालतीनिम्बपल्लवाः ।
गोशकृद्रसंयुक्ता वर्ति नक्तान्धयनाशिनी ॥

Śāraṅgadhara Samhitā, 3-13-85.

पाण्डुरोगे दाव्यादिलेहम्

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsa 16-17.

नेत्ररोगे

रसाञ्जनं व्योषयुतं सपिष्टं वटकीकृतम्
कण्डूपाकान्विता हन्ति लेपादञ्जनामिकाम् ॥

Śāraṅgadhara Samhitā.

व्रणरोपणार्थम्

‘दावीत्वचश्च कल्केन प्रधानं व्रणरोपणम् ।’

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 13, 25-93.

पिष्टमेहे

‘पिष्टमेहिनम् हरिद्रायादारुहरिद्राकषायम् ।’

Suśruta Samhitā, Cikitsā, 13, 11-9.

मूत्रकृच्छ्रे

दावी तथैवामलकी रसेन समाक्षिकं पित्त कृते तु कृच्छ्रे ।

Caraka, Samhitā, Cikitsā, 26-53.

श्लैष्मिक वृद्धौ

‘गोमूत्रेण पिबेत्कल्कं श्लैष्मिके पीतदारुकम् ।’

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Cikitsā, 13-33., Vṛndamādhava, 40-5.

सर्वदोषप्रकुपिते नेत्रे

षोडशभिः सलिलपलैः पलं तत्रैकं कण्टकण्टयो सिद्धम् ।
सेकोऽष्टभागावशिष्टः क्षौद्रयुक्तः सर्वदोषप्रकुपिते नेत्रे ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Uttara, 16.

सर्वलिङ्गविकार-उपदंश-चिकित्सायां रजाञ्जनादि कल्कः

Cakradatta, 47-9.

कुष्ठे

‘दावी रसाञ्जनं वा गोमूत्रेण प्रबाधते कुष्ठम् ।’

Caraka Saṃhitā, Cikitsā, 7-61.

कुष्ठनाशक कषाय

‘दावी रसाञ्जनस्य च..... ।
इतिषट् कषाययोगः कुष्ठघ्न..... ॥’

Caraka Saṃhitā, Cikitsā, 7-97/98.

मुखरोगादयाः दावीक्वाथम्

स्वरसः क्वथितो दावीर्घनीभूतो रसक्रिया ।
सक्षौद्रा मुखरोगासृग्दोषनाडीव्रणापहा ॥

Caraka Saṃhitā, Cikitsā, 26-202; Cakradatta, 56-34.

बालरोगे (गुदपाके)

गुदपाके तु बालानां पित्तघ्नीं कारयेत् क्रियान् ।
रसाञ्जनं विशेषेण पानालेपनयोर्हिततम् ॥

Suśruta Saṃhitā, Sāhira, 10-47; Vṛndamādhava, 66-21.

कुष्ठनाशक लेपः

श्वेतकरवीमूलं कुटजकरञ्जयोःफलं त्वचो दावीर्घाः ।
सुमनप्रवालयुक्तो लेपः कुष्ठापहः ॥

Caraka Saṃhitā, Cikitsā, 7-94.

योनिस्त्रावे-प्रदररोगे

तण्डुलीयकमूलं तु सक्षौद्रं तण्डुलाम्बुना ॥
रसाञ्जनं च लाक्षा च च्छागेन पयसा पिबेत् ॥

Caraka Saṃhitā, Cikitsā, 30-96/97.

सर्वाङ्गव्याप्तोपदंशोपचारार्थं रसाञ्जन लेपम्

रसाञ्जनं शिरीषेण पथ्ययो वा समन्वितम् ।

सक्षौद्रं लेपनं योज्यं सर्वाङ्गदापहम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Upadamśādhikāra, 51-32.

उपदंशे दाव्यादिलेपम्

त्वचो दारुहरिद्रायाः शाङ्खनाभी रसाञ्जनम् ।
लाक्षागोमय निर्यासतैलं क्षौद्रं घृतं पयः ॥
एभिस्तु पिष्टैस्तुल्यांशैरुपदंशं प्रलेपयेत् ।
व्रणाश्च तेन शमयन्ति श्वयथुदाहृष च ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Upadamśādhikāra, 51/17-18.

शूकदोषे दावी तैलम्

दावीसुरसयष्ट्या ह्यैर्गृहधूमानिलायुतैः ।
सम्पक्वं तैलमभ्यङ्गामेद्रोगं हि नाशयेत् ॥

Bhāvarprakāśa, Śūkadoṣādhikāra, 53-22.

शूकदोषे रसाञ्जन लेपम्

रसाञ्जनं साह्वयमेकमेव प्रलेपमात्रेण नयेत्प्रशान्तिम् ।
सपूति पूयव्रण शोथकण्डूशूलान्वितं सर्वमनङ्गरोगान् ॥
साह्वयमित्यनङ्गरोगस्य विशेषेणम् ।
अनङ्गरोगस्य नामापि दूरीकरोतीत्यर्थः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Madhyakhaṇḍa, Śūkadoṣādhikāra, 53-23.

सम्पूर्ण मुखरोगे (नाड़ीव्रणादि)

स्वरसः कथितो दाव्या घनीभूतो रसक्रिया ।
सक्षौद्र मुखरोगासृग्दोषनाडी व्रणापहा ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Mukharogādhikāra, 66-161.

सर्वप्रदरे रसाञ्जनम्

रसाञ्जनं तण्डुलकस्य मूलं क्षौद्रान्वितं तण्डुलतोयपीतम् ।
असृग्दरं सर्वभवं निहन्ति श्वासञ्च भार्गी सह नागरेण ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Strīrogādhikāra, 68-13.

DEVADĀRU

Botanical Name : Cedrus deodara (Roxb.) Loud.

Family : Pinaceae

Classical Name : Devadāru

Sanskrit names

Devadāru, Devakāṣṭha, Kāṣṭhadāru-Snigdhadāru, Pītradru, Bhadrādāru, Surabhūruha.

Regional Names

Deodar, Devdar, Debdar (Hind.), Diar (Punj.), Devdar (Mar., Guj.), Divdar (Kan.), Devdaru (Beng.), Devadaru (Tam.), Devadari (Tel.), Deodar (Eng.).

Description

A large evergreen tree; branches not whorled, the leading shoot and tips of the branches usually drooping; bark dark; sometimes almost black; usually very rough on old stems; sometimes only lightly furrowed. Shoots dimorphic, long-shoots with the needles solitary and arranged spirally, and dwarf-shoots with the needles arranged in dense whorls.

Leaves 2.5-3.3 cm. long, needle-like, triquetrous, sharp-pointed. Flowers usually monoecious, but some trees or branches habitually bear flowers of one sex (unisexual flowering).

Male catkins solitary at the ends of the branchlets, cylindrical, 4.3 cm. long; stamen with 2 oblong, open-sacs, the connective produced as a flattened, ovate, obtuse, upturned appendage with an irregularly crenulate margin. Female flowers in cones which are solitary at the ends of the branchlets; scales double, the placental scale large, the carpellary small; the placental scale bearing near the base 2 reversed ovules. Cone erect, 10-12.5 by 7.5-10 cm., formed of the imbricating, thin, woody, placental scales which break away when ripe leaving a stout woody axis. Seed 7.5-15 mm. long, pale brown, wing longer than the seed.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Rains to Autumn season.

Distribution

It is found in North-Western Himalaya, eastward to Kumaon, from 5,500 ft. to 12,000 ft. elevation Afghanistan.

Chemical Composition

Wood oil contains oleo-resin, essential oil, and needles (leaves) contain ascorbic acid.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Tikta, Kaṭu
Guṇa	: Laghu, Snigdha
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphavātaśāmaka.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Vedanāsthāpana Hṛdayottejaka-raktaprasādana Śoṣahara, Dīpana-pācana-āmapācana Kṛmighna, Kaphaniḥsāraka- śleṣmapūtihara-Hikkānigrahaṇa Mūtrajanana-pramehaghna Garbhāśayaśodhana Lekhana-medo-sthoulyahara Kuṣṭhaghna-śothahara.
--------------	---

Roga

- a) **Ābhyantara** : Vātavikāra-śoṭha-vedana
(yuktavikāra), Jīrṇasandhivāta-
āmavāta-gradhrasī-śīraḥśūla-
ūrustambha, Āmadoṣa-Vibandha-
ādhmāna, Kṛmiroga
Kāsa-pīnasa-hikkā-śvāsa-śleṣma vikāra
Hṛddourbalya-raktavikāra-hṛcchūla
Śoṭha-golagaṇḍa-ślipada, Upadamśa
Prameha-puyameha-mūtrakṛcchra
Sūtikāroga-stanyadoṣa, Medoroga
Jīrṇajvara, Carmaroga-kuṣṭha-kaṇḍū
Śoṣa.
- b) **Bāhya** : Sandhivāta-śoṭhavedanā pradhāna
Vikāra, Tvagvikāra
Vraṇāśodhana-ropana-kṣata-
duṣṭavraṇa, Karṇaroga-Karṇāśūla.

Therapeutic Use

The wood is diaphoretic, diuretic, carminative; and it is useful in fever, flatulence, pulmonary and urinary disorders, rheumatism, piles, gravel in kidney. It is also an antidote to snake bite.

The bark is astringent; and useful for fevers, diarrhoea and dysentery. The wood (heartwood) oil is useful as a diaphoretic, and it is used in skin diseases and for the ulcers.

The drug is alterative, anodyne, anthelmintic, carminative, febrifuge and emollient and expectorant.

It is used in cough, diarrhoea, and dysentery, gravel in kidney and bladder, headache and heart palpitation, inflammation, leprosy, paralysis, pulmonary troubles, prolapsus, rheumatism, urinary diseases, ulcers and skin diseases.

The wood oil (also known as Kelon ka Tail) has been found one of the best repellent to insects and fleas. Wood oil is much used for preserving leather bags used for floating in the water.

The leaves have mild terrebinthimate properties.

Part used : Heartwood Oil.

Dose

Powder 1-3 gms., Wood Oil 20-40 drops-minims.

Formulations (yoga)

Devadārvādi kvātha, Devadārvādi cūrṇa, Rāsnādi kvātha, Śaṭyādi cūrṇa, Rāsnāpancaka kvātha, Devadārvādyariṣṭa, Karañjādi yoga, Punarnavādi maṇḍūra, Viṣagarbha Taila (laghu), Candraprabhā vatī.

Groups (gaṇa)

Stanyaśodhana, Anuvasanopaga, Kaṭukaskandha (Caraka), Vātasamśamana (Suśruta).

DEVADĀRU (देवदारु)

देवकाष्ठं लघु स्निग्धं तिक्तोष्णं कटुकं रसे ।

विपाके हन्ति कासामश्वसहिध्माकफानिलान् ॥

ज्वर मेहविबन्धाध्मानकण्डूशोफास्रपीनसान् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 1310-1311.

देवदारु लघु स्निग्धं तिक्तोष्णं कटुपाकि च ।

विबन्धाध्मानशोषामतन्द्राहिक्का ज्वरास्रजित् ॥

प्रमेह पीनसश्लेष्मकासकण्डूसमीरनुत् ।

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Karpūrādi Varga, 25.

स्निग्ध दारु स्मृतं तिक्तं स्निग्धोष्णं श्लेष्मवातजित् ।

आमदोष विबन्धार्शः प्रमेह ज्वरनाशनम् ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Candanādi Varga, 29.

देवकाष्ठम्

देवकाष्ठन्तु तिक्तोष्णं रूक्षं श्लेष्मानिलापहम् ।

भूतदोषापहं धत्ते लिप्तमङ्गेषु कालिकम् ॥

द्विविध देवदारु

देवदारु द्विधा ज्ञेयं तत्राद्यं स्निग्धदारुकम् ।

द्वितीयं काष्ठदारु स्याद् द्वयोर्नामान्य भेदतः ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Candanādi Varga, 32.

‘देवदार्वनिलं हन्ति स्निग्धोष्णं श्लेष्मपाकतः ।’

Dhanvantari Nighaṅṭu.

देवदारुस्नेहस्तिक्त कटुक पाठा दुष्टत्रण शोधनाः ।

कृमिकण्डूकफकुष्ठानिलहरांश्च ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra, 45.

हिक्काश्वासे

दशमूलस्य वा क्वाथमथवा देवदारुणः ।

तृषितौ मदिरां वापि हिक्काश्वासी पिबेन्नरः ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 17-105.

वातपित्तजनितशोथे

‘सुशुण्ठी पीतद्वुरसं प्रयोज्यं..... ।’

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 12-25.

परिकर्त्तिकामये देवदारु-तिलकल्क योगः

‘देवदारुतिलानां वा कल्कमुष्णाम्बुनां पिबेत् ।’

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 6-66.

ऊरुस्तम्भे देवदारुत्सादन योगः

'.....मूलैरथवा देवदारुणः ।
गाढमुत्सादनं कुर्यादूरुपस्तम्भे प्रलेपनम् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā 27-51.

नासास्त्रावे

'तीक्ष्णं धूमं देवदार्वाग्नि काभ्यां वाजंयुक्तमात्रादिशन्ति ।'

Suśruta Samhitā, Uttara, 23-10.

क्रिमिरोगे

'सुराहसरलस्त्रेहं पृथगेवं प्रकल्पयेत् ।

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Cikitsā, 20-32.

श्लीपदे

'हितं वा लेपने नित्यं भद्रदारु सचिः च ।'

Suśruta Samhitā, Cikitsā, 19-58; Cakradatta, 42-5.

हृच्छूले देवदार्वादि चूर्णम्

'भुक्तेऽधिकं जीर्यति शूलमल्पं जीर्णे स्थित चेत् सुरदारुकुष्ठम् ।
..... सातिविषं पिबेत् ॥'

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 26-101.

देवदार्वादि तैल

Caraka Cikitsā, 26-223.

देवदार्वादि योग

Caraka, Cikitsā, 13-10/19.

देवदार्वादि योग

Caraka Cikitsā, 14-19.

देवदार्वादि योग

Caraka, Cikitsā, 23-231/240.

देवदारुतैलम्

देवदारुभवं तैलं कटुतिक्तकषायकम् ।

कृमिकुष्ठानिलहरं दुष्टव्रणविशोधनम् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Taila Varga, 328-329.

कर्णरोगे देवदार्वादि तैलम्

देवदारुवचाशुण्ठीशताह्वा कुष्ठसैन्धवैः ॥

तैलं सिद्धं बस्तमूत्रे कर्णशूल निवारणम् ।

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā 26-223/224.

शोथे

देवदारु शुण्ठी वा ।

Suśruta Samhitā, Cikitsā, 23-12.

आमवाते देवदारु पुटपाकम्

सुरतरुवल्कलसहितं गोमूत्रं स्थापितन्तु सप्ताहम् ।

हिङ्गुवचाशतपुष्पासैन्धवयुक्तेन तेनाथ ॥

तत्पुटपाकं हन्यात्कटीजं दारुणं पुंसाम् ।

आममेदो वृद्धिभवाचिकारांशचनिलोद्भवान् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Āmavātādhikāra, 26=60/61.

सूतिका रोगे देवदारुदिवक्वाथम्

शोथरोगे दारुवादि कवाथः ।

Bhāvaprakāśa, Yonirogādhikāra, 70/23-127.

‘दारुगुग्गुलुशुण्ठीनां कल्को मूत्रेण शोथाजित् ।’

Cakradatta, Śoṭha Cikitsā, 39-19.

गलगण्डे

‘देवदारु विशाले च कफगण्डे प्रलेपनम् ।’

Vṛndamādhava, 41-3.

उदरे

देवदारुदिलेपः ।

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 13-108.

नेत्ररोगे (पिल्ले)

‘भावितबस्तमूत्रेण सस्नेहं देवदारु च ।’

Vṛndamādhava, 31-242.

कासे

कफकासी पिबेदादौ सुरकाष्ठात् प्रदीपितात् ।

स्नेहं परिस्रुतं व्योषयवक्षारावचूर्णितम् ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Cikitsā 3-40.

DHĀMĀRGAVA

Botanical Name

Luffa aegyptiaca Mill. ex Hook.f. *Luffa cylindrica* (Linn.) M. Roem.

Family : Cucurbitaceae

Classical name : Dhāmārgava

Sanskrit names

Dhāmārgava, Mahakośatakī, Mahājālinī, Kṛtavedhana, Rājakośatakī, Hastighoṣā, Mahāphalā, Rājimatphalā, Ghoṣaka, Hastiparṇa.

Regional Names

Nenua (Hin.), Ghiyatori (Punj.), Dhundul (Beng.), Ghooden (Mar.), Golakan (Guj.), Guttibira (Tam.), Numibira (Tel.); Smooth Lieffa (Eng.).

Description

Annuals or biennials. Stems 5-angular, glabrous. Tendrils 3-ft. Leaves cordate-suborbicular, 10-25 cm. across, 5-lobed, dentate, acuminate.

Male flowers in racemes. Peduncle up to 30 cm. long. Pedicels 1-2 cm. long jointed below the apex. Caly 1.8-2 cm. long; lobes triangular, acute. Corolla 3.5-4 cm. long. Female flowers : peduncle 1-5 cm. long. Calyx eglandular.

Fruit ovoid-ellipsoid to cylindric, beaked.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Rainy season to cold season.

Distribution

Generally is waste places, roadsides and hedges. It is cultivated throughout the greater part of India.

Chemical Composition

Plant (bitter variety) contains a bitter substance alike colocyntin, and also luffein. Seeds contain a fixed oil.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Tikta, Kaṭu (Kaṭu jāti-bitter variety).
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa, Tiksṇa.

Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphapittasamśodhana, Pittaśāmaka.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Vāmaka, Pakvāśayaśodhana Bhedana-vāntikara-dīpana-sara Raktaśodhaka-śothahara Kaphaniḥsāraka, Viṣaghna Jvaraghna.
Roga	: Udararoga-gulma, Raktavikāra-śoṭha Kāsa-śvāsa-svaravikāra-kaṇṭha-vaktra- vikāra, Viṣa Kaphavikāra (samśodhanārtha) Pittavikāra (śamana-samśodhanārtha) Mānasika Vikāra.

Therapeutic Use

The seeds are emetic and cathartic. The fruit is oleagenous and laxative, and it counters vāta and biliousness. It is useful in leprosy.

The fruit is of three kinds, bad taste (bitter), expectorant, excellent tonic, cures biliousness spleen diseases, leprosy, piles, fever, haematuria, syphilis, bronchitis; one of the three kinds is also purgative.

The fruit is prescribed as galactogogue. it is mostly used as a dieuretic.

The young fruit is applied to tumours as a poultice. The seeds yield an oil.

The fruits, seeds, leaves and herb are medicinally used, and they are used in various ailments. Fruits are used in abdominal diseases.

It is recommended in fever, asthma, cough and worms.

Part Used : Fruits, Flowers, Leaves.

Dose : Powder 1-3 gms., Juice 3-6 gms.

Formulations (yoga)

Kalpa yoga-60 (Caraka Samhitā, kalp.4)

Groups (gāṇa)

Vamana, Phalinī (Caraka), Ūrdhvabhāgahara (Suśruta).

DHĀMĀRGAVA (धामार्गव)

- क. धामार्गवः पीतपुष्पो जालिनी कृतवेधना ।
राजकोशातकी चेति तथोक्ता राजिमत्फला ॥
- ख. राजकोशातकी शीता मधुरा कफवातकृत् ।
पित्तघ्नी दीपनी श्वासज्वरकासकृमिप्रणुत् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Sāka Varga, 67-68.

महाकोशातकी

- क. महाकोशातकी प्रोक्ता हस्तिघोषा महाफला ।
धामार्गवो घोषकश्च हस्तिपर्णश्च स स्मृतः ॥
- ख. महाकोशातकी स्निग्धा रक्तपित्तानिलापहा ।

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Sāka Varga, 65-66.

धामार्गव-राजकोशातकी

- राजकोशातकी हस्तिपर्णिका पीतपुष्पिका ।
धामार्गवः कोशफला महाजाली सपीतकः ॥
राजकोशातकी तिक्ता मधुरा कफवातला ।
पित्तघ्नी दीपनी हन्ति श्वासकास ज्वरकृमीन् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 573-574.

महाकोशातकी

- अन्या त्वैभी हस्तिघोषा महत्पुष्पा सर्थतिका ।
महाकोशातकी त्वस्याः कथितं जाङ्गलं फलम् ॥
हस्तिघोषा सरा स्निग्धा मधुरा श्लेष्मला गुरुः ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 575-576.

धामार्गवः

‘अन्या स्वादुस्त्रिदोषघ्नी ज्वरस्यान्ते हिता स्मृता ।’

Dhanvantari Nighaṇṭu.

धामार्गव

कर्कोटकी कोठफला महाजालिनिरैव च ।

धामार्गवस्य पर्याया राजकोशातकी तथा ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Kalpa, 4-3.

धामार्गवोपोज्याङ्गः

‘फलं पुष्पं प्रवालं च विधिना तस्य संहरेत् ।’

Caraka Samhitā, Kalpa, 4-5.

धामार्गव योगद्वय

चूर्णीकृतस्य वर्ति वा कृत्वा बदरसंमिताम् ।

विनीयाञ्जलिमात्रे तु पिब्रेद्गोऽश्वकृद्रसे ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Kalpa 4-11.

धामार्गव पञ्च योगाः

‘पुष्पादिषु पयोयोगाश्चत्वारः पञ्चमी सुरा-

पूर्ववत्..... ।’

Caraka Samhitā, Kalpa, 4-7.

गुल्म तथा उदररोग नाशक योगः

‘.....जीर्ण शुष्काणामतः कल्पः प्रवक्ष्यते ॥

मधुकस्य कषायेण बीजकण्ठोद्धृतं फलम् ।

सगुडे व्युषितं रात्रि कोविदारादिभिस्तथा ॥’

Caraka Samhitā, Kalpa 4-7/8.

धामार्गव फल प्रयोगः

दद्याद् गुल्मोदरार्तेभ्यो ये चाप्यन्ये कफामयाः ।

दद्यादनेन संयुक्तं छर्दि हृद्रोगशान्तये ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Kalpa, 4-9.

धामार्गव चूर्ण गन्धयुक्त पुष्प प्रयोगः

चूर्णैर्वाऽप्युत्पलादीनि भावितानि प्रभूतशः ।

रसक्षीरयवाग्वादितृप्तो भ्रात्वा वमेत् सुखम् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Kalpa, 4-10.

धामार्गव विषनाशक योगः

‘धान्यतुम्बुरुयूषेण कल्कः, सर्वविषापहः ।’

Caraka Samhitā, Kalpa 4-15.

मानसिकरोगनाशक योगः

जात्याः सौमनसाविन्या रजन्याश्चोरकस्य च ।

वृश्चीरस्य महाक्षुद्र सहहैमवतस्य च ॥
 बिग्व्याःपुनर्नवाया वा कासमर्दस्य वा पृथक् ।
 एकं धामार्गवं द्वे वा कषाये परिमृद्यतु ॥
 पूतं मनोविकारेषु पिबेद्धमनमुत्तमम् ।

Caraka Saṁhitā, Kalpa, 4-16/17.

धामार्गव घृतयोगः

'तच्छृतक्षीरजं सर्पिः साधितं वा फलादिभिः ।'

Caraka Saṁhitā, Kalpa 4-18.

धामार्गव पत्रस्वरस नव योग

प्रवाल स्वरसं शुष्कं कृत्वा च गुलिकाः पृथक् ।
 कोविदारिभिः पेयाः कषायैर्नर्मधुकस्य च ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Kalpa 4-6.

धामार्गव दश योग

पृषतष्यकुरङ्ग गजोष्ट्रश्चित्राविके ।
 श्वदंष्ट्रखरखड्गानां चैवं पेया शकृद्रसे ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Kalpa, 4-13/14.

DHANVANA

Botanical name : *Grewia tilaefolia* Vahl.

Family : Tiliaceae

Classical name : Dhanvana

Sanskrit names

Dhanvana, Dhanvaṅga, Dhanurvṛkṣa, Mahābala, Sāraṅkṣa, Sutejaṅga, Dharmāṅga, Gotravṛkṣa-druma-puṣpa, Raktakusuma, Rujahara.

Regional names

Dhaman, Dhamin (Hi.), Dhamana (Mar.), Dhaman (Guj.), Thada (Tam.), Tparra (Tel.).

Description

A tree, 9-10-5 meters high; bark pale brown; young parts densely pubescent.

Leaves 7.5-12.5 by 5-7.5 c., ovate, acuminate with a tendency to become lobate at the apex, crenate-dentate, upper surface minutely stellately hairy or subglabrous the nerves pubescent, lower surface hoary-tomentose, cordate and inequilateral at the base, 6-nerved, 3 nerves at the larger and 2 at the smaller side of the midrib; petioles 6-18 mm. long, Pubescent stipules 10 mm. long, leafy, somewhat falcate; auricled, with a rounded lobe on the lower side, veined.

Flowers small, umbellate; buds obovoid-oblong or subglobose, tomentose; peduncles 3 or several; axillary, thick, about equalling the petioles; pedicels 3-5, divergent, shorter than the peduncle, bracts beneath the pedicels linear-lanceolate. Sepals 8 mm. long, oblong, obacute, pubescent outside, glabrous within. Petals about half as long as the sepals, oblong or spatulate, entire or notched gland about one-third the length of the petal, densely white-villous on the margins. Torus rather long, ribbed, glabrous, with 5 obscure villous teeth at the apex. Ovary villous; style longer than the stamens; stigma somewhat irregularly 5-lobed.

Drupes size of a pea, black, globose or 2-(rarely 4) lobed 1; stones 1-2-celled.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Spring to cold season.

Distribution

It is found in Central India, Madras, Bihar, Orissa and Sub-Himalayan tract.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṣāya, Madhura.
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa, Picchila.
Vīrya	: Śīta
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphapittaśāma

Action and Properties

Karma	: Stambhana (tvak-bark)-grāhī Vāmaka (Kāṣṭha-wood) Raktastambhana
--------------	---

Kaphaniḥsāraka-kāśahara
Balya-Bṛñhaṇa, Viśaghna-sthāvara
Kaṇḍūghna, Sandhāniya
Vraṇaropaṇa.

Roga

- a) **Ābhyantara** : Raktātisāra-pravāhikā-atisāra
Raktapitta, Kāsa, Dourbalya-kṛṣatā
Viṣa-ahiphenaviṣa, Kaṇṭhāmaya.
- b) **Bāhya** : Vraṇa-kṣata, Kaṇḍū-kapikacchujanita
kaṇḍū, Bhagna.

Therapeutic Use

The bark is expectorant, and astringent; it is used to check discharges and haemorrhage.

The decoction of the bark is orally given in diarrhoea and blood dysentery. The bark is ground or crushed and soaked in water and after maceration the mucilaginous liquid substance is given in dysentery. This preparation (recipe) mixed with sugar is orally used in general debility and muscular atrophy.

The bark is used as an expectorant in cough. The irritation, rushes and burning sensation caused by stinging hairy pod of cowhage plant (kapikacchu) are checked through application of paste of the bark.

The bark is used in dysentery and it is employed externally to remove the irritation from cow-itch. The woods are used in powder form as an emetic and antidote to opium poisoning.

Part used : Bark

Dose : Juice 10-20 gms.

Groups (Gaṇa)

Amlaskandha, Āsavayoni-phala (Caraka).

DHANVANA (धन्वन)

- क. धन्वङ्गस्तु धनुर्वृक्षो गोत्रवृक्षः सुतेजनः ॥
ख. धन्वङ्ग कफपित्तास्रकासहत्तुवरो लघुः ।

बृंहणो बलकृद्रूक्षः सन्धिकृद् व्रणरोपणः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Vaṭādi Varga, 61-62.

धन्वङ्गः

- अ. गोत्रद्रुमो गोत्रपुष्पो धन्वनो घर्मणः स्मृतः ॥
रुजाहरो धनुर्वृक्षः सार वृक्षः सुतेजनः ।
ब. घर्मणः स्वादुसुवरो रूक्षः पित्तास्रजिल्लघुः ॥
बृंहणो व्रणसंधान रोपणो बलवर्धनः ।

धन्वनस्यफलः

- स. फलं तस्य हिमं स्वादु कषायं कफवातजित् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 839-841.

धन्वन

धन्वनो रक्तकुसुमो धनुवृक्षो महाबलः ।
रुजापहः पिच्छको रूक्षः स्वादुफलश्च सः ।

धन्वनगुणः

धन्वनः कटुकोष्णश्च कषायः कफनाशनः ।
दाहशोषकरो ग्राही कण्ठामयशमप्रदः ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Prabhadrādi Varga, 110-111.

‘धन्वनः कफपित्तास्रकासजित् तुवरो लघुः ।’

Madanpāla Nighaṅṭu.

गांगेरुकी करीरं च बिम्बी तोदनधन्वनम् ।
मधुरं सकषायं च शीतं पित्तकफापहम् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Sūtra 27-136.

‘सकषायं हिमं स्वादु धान्वनं कफवातजित् ।’

Suśruta Samhitā, Sūtra 46-170.

‘धन्वननगवृत्तिका शाल्मलीमृत्तन्नघृताभ्यां भ्रक्षयित्वा हस्तं
योवौ प्रविश्य गर्भमुपहरेत् ।’

Suśruta Samhitā, Cikitsā 15-9.

ज्वरे

चन्दनाद्य तैले ।

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā 3-258.

पैत्तिक शूले

पालाशं धान्वनं वापि पिबेद् यूषं सशर्करम् ।

Suśruta Samhitā, Uttara 42-107.

पिच्छिलबस्तौ

बदर्यैरावतीशेलुशाल्मली धन्वनाङ्कुरा ।

क्षीरसिद्धाः क्षौद्रयुताः सरसाः पिच्छिलसंज्ञिताः ॥

Suśruta Samhitā, cikitsā, 38-85.

शोणितस्थापने

‘अथातिप्रवृत्ते.....सालसर्जार्जुनारिमेदमेषशृङ्ग-

धवधन्वनत्वग्भिर्वाचूर्णिताभिः.....वधीयात् ।’

Suśruta Samhitā, Sūtra, 14-36.

प्रमेहे

पाठाविडङ्गार्जुनधन्वनाश्च ।.....

पादै कषायाः कफमेहिनं ते दशोपदिष्टाः मधुसंप्रयुक्ताः ।

Caraka Samhitā, cikitsā, 6-27/29.

DHANVAYĀSA

Botanical name : *Fagonia cretica* Linn.

Family : Zygophyllaceae

Classical name : Dhanvayāsa

Sanskrit names

Dhanvayāsa, Durālabhā, Samudrāntā, Rodinī, Gandharī, Kacchurā, Kaṣāyā, Harivigrahā, Marudbhava, Dūramūla, Tāmramūlikā, Danvayavāsaka.

Regional names

Dhamasa (Hi.), Durlabha (Beng.), Dhamasa (Mar.), Dhamaso (Guj.), Dharmah (Punj.), Tulaganari (Tam.), Gilarangati (Tel.), Khorasan Thorn (Eng.).

Description

A small spin undershrub with stiff branches often more or less prostrate. Twigs slender, terete, striate, glabrous, glandular.

Leaves opposite 1-3 foliate, about 12 by 2.3 mm., entire, linear or elliptic, mucronate; petiole very variable, 0.3 cm. long, sometime leaf like; stipules transformed in to sharp slender spines up to 1.2 cm. long, persistent and combining growth long after the fall of the leaves.

Flowers solitary, rose coloured, on peduncles 5-12 mm., long arising from between the stipules. Sepals 5, deciduous, imbricate, marked claw. Disk short, inconspicuous. Stamens 10, inserted on the disk; filaments filiform, naked; anthers oblong. Ovary hairy, sessile, 5-angled, 5-celled, tapering into a 5-angled style; stigma simple.

Fruit 5 mm, long, of 5-1-seeded cocci; glandular-pubescent; deeply 5-partite almost to the axis; cocci dehiscing along the ventral suture and separating from a honey endocarp.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Autumn season.

Distribution

It is found in sandy soils in hotter parts; it occurs in Upper Gangetic plains, Rajasthan, Uttar Pradesh, Punjab, Cutch, Gujarat and other parts in country. Afganistan, Persia, Arabia and Mediterranean region.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṣāya, Madhura, Tikta.
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa.
Vīrya	: Śīta
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphapittaśāmaka

Action and Properties

Karma	: Tṛṣṇānigrahaṇa-Dāhpraśamana Mastiṣkabalya, Stambhana Raktastambhana-raktaprasādana Kaphaniḥsāraka, Mūtrala Tvagdoṣahara, Jvaraghna Kaṭupouṣṭika, Chardighna Kothapraśamana-Vraṇaropaṇa.
--------------	---

Roga

- a) **Ābhyantara** : Tr̥ṣṇanā-dāha, Prameha-mūtravikāra-
mūtrakṛcchra, Bhrama-mūrchā
Atisāra-grahaṇī-vamana
Raktapitta-vātarakta-raktadoṣa
Kāsa-pratiśyāya-śvāsa-phuphusaśoṭha
Tvagvikāra, Jvara-viṣamajvara
Masūrikā (pratiṣedhārtha)
Sāmānya dourbalya-atisārajanita
dourbalya, Medoroga
Kuṣṭha-visarpa.
- b) **Bāhya** : Dāha-jvara-kaṇḍū
Mukhapāka-galaroga, Vraṇa.

Therapeutic Use

Plant is bitter, astringent, tonic and febrifuge; the herb is prophylactic, against small pox, in dropsy, delirium and any disorder which arises from poisoning. The leaves and twigs are cooling.

An infusion of the stem and leaves (2-4 ounces) is given in fevers for checking over thirst and it is used in dropsy, delirium, vomiting and poisoning case. It is also given orally as bitter tonic. The infusion is given in itchy affections and conditions of skin irritability and specially a bath of the infusion of whole plant or leaves is recommended. A paste of the plant is applied to tumours and scrofulous swellings as an antiseptic. The juice of the leaves is applied as a dressing for open wounds. A candy prepared of the juice is put into mouth for relief in stomatitis.

The smoke of the herb or leaves is useful for inhaling in asthmatic condition. In general debility and debility specially post-diarrhoeal stage, the infusion of leaves and whole plant is given. It is useful as diuretic in urinary complaints. The herb is useful in gout.

Part used

Whole plant.

Dose

Powder 6-12 gms. (for preparing Hima kalpanā),
Infusion 40-80 gms.

Formulations (yoga)

Durālabhādi Kvātha, Durālabhādi Kaṣāya, Śatyādi Kvātha, Sudarśana cūrṇa, Haritakyādi, Kvātha.

DHANVAYĀSA (धन्वयास)

क. दुरालभा दुरालम्भा समुद्रान्ता च रोदिनी ।
गान्धारी कच्छुराऽनन्ता कषाया हरिविग्रहा ॥

ख. यवासस्य गुणैस्तुल्या बुधैरुक्ता दुरालभा ।

Bhāvaprakāsa Nighaṇṭu, Guḍūcyādi Varga, 211/214.

दुरालभा

अ. दुरालभा दुरालम्भा धन्वयासो मरुद्भवः ॥
दूरमूलो दीर्घमूलो समुद्रान्तो निकण्टकः ।
यासा यवासो दुःस्पर्शा कच्छुरा ताम्रमूलिका ॥
गान्धारिका बालपत्रान्ता धन्वयवासकः ।

ब. धन्वयासी हिमस्तिक्तः कषायो मधुरो लघुः ॥
सरो निहंति पित्तास्रकफमेदोमदभ्रमान् ।
विसर्प कुष्ठ वातास्रतृष्णाकासं वमिज्वरान् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 985-986.

दुरालम्भा— धन्वयासः

क. धन्वयासो दुरालम्भा ताम्रमूली च कच्छुरा ।
दुरालभा च दुःस्पर्शाः धन्वी धन्वयवासकः ॥
प्रबोधनी सूक्ष्मदन्ता विरूपा दुरभिग्रहा ।
दुर्लभा दुष्प्रघर्षा च स्याच्चतुर्दश संज्ञका ॥

दुरालम्भा गुणाः

ख. दुरालम्भा कटुस्तिक्ता सोष्णा क्षाराम्लिका तथा ।
मधुरावातपित्तघ्नी ज्वरगुल्मप्रमेहजित् ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Śatāhvādi Varga, 53-55.

क्षुद्रदुरालम्भा

क. अन्या क्षुद्रदुरालम्भा मरुस्था मरुसम्भवा ।
विशारदाऽजभक्षा स्वाद जादन्युष्ट्रभक्षिका ॥

कषाया कफघ्नच्चैव ग्राहिणी करभप्रिया ।
 करभादनिका चेति विज्ञेया द्वादशाभिधा ॥
 ख. दुरालम्भा द्वितीया च गोल्यास्त्रज्वरकुष्ठनुत् ।
 श्वासकास सभ्रमघ्नी च पारदे शाङ्गकारिका ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Śatāhvādi Varga, 56-58.

दुरालभा स्वादुशीता तिक्ता दाहविनाशिनी ।
 विषमज्वर तृट्छर्दि मेहमोह विनाशनी ॥

Dhanvantari Nighaṇṭu.

दुरालभा कटुस्तिक्ता मधुरा रक्तशुद्धिकृत् ।
 शीता चोष्णा विसर्पघ्नी विषमज्वरनाशिनी ॥
 तृट्छर्दिमेह गुल्मघ्नी मोहरक्तरुजापहा ।
 वातं पित्तं कफं कुष्ठं ज्वरं चैव विनाशयेत् ॥

Nighaṇṭu, Ratnakara.

भ्रमरोगे

पिबेद्दुरालभाक्वाथं सघृतं भ्रमशान्तये ।

Cakradatta, 17-8.

रक्तपित्ते

‘.....दुरालभा पर्यटको मृणालम् ।
 पृथक् पृथक् चन्दनयोजितानि ॥
 तेनैव कल्केन हितानि तत्र ॥

Caraka Saṃhitā, Cikitsā, 4-75.

कफज्वमने

दुरालभां वा मधुसम्प्रयुक्ताम् ।
 लिह्यात् कफच्छर्दिं विनिग्रहार्थम् ॥

Caraka Saṃhitā, Cikitsā, 23.

मूत्राघाते

‘रसं वा धन्वयासस्य च ।’

Aṣṭāṅga Hr̥daya, Cikitsā, 218-14/15, 33-8.

Vṛndamādhava, 28-14/15; Baṅgasena, Udāvarta, 17.

रक्तपित्तशामनार्थं श्रेष्ठत्वम्

‘अनन्ता संग्राहकरक्तपित्तप्रशामनानाम्’

Caraka Saṃhitā, Sutra, 25.

रक्तपित्ते रोगे

ह्रीवेरमूलानि पटोलपत्रं पर्पटको मृणालम् ।
.....पृथक् पृथक् चन्दनयोजितानि तेनैव कल्पेन हितानि तत्र ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā 4-75/79.

भ्रमे

‘पिबेद् दुरालभा क्वाथं सघृतं भ्रमशान्तये ।’

Vṛndamādhava, 17-7; Baṅgasena, Mūrcchā, 33;

Bhāvaprakāśa, Cikitsā 19-40.

अतिसारे

कच्छुरामूलकल्कं वाऽप्युदुम्बरफलोपम् ।

Suśruta Samhitā, Uttara, 40-74.

भोजने च हितं क्षीरं कच्छुरामूलसाधितम् ॥

Suśruta Samhitā, Uttara 40-110.

छर्द्याम्

दुरालभां वा मधुसम्प्रयुक्तं लिहयात् कफच्छर्दिनिग्रहार्थम् ।

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā 20-38.

खादेत कपित्थं सब्योषं मधुना वा दुरालभाम् ।

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Cikitsā 6-21.

ग्रहणी रोगे

दुरालभासवः ।

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 15, 152-155.

मूत्राघाते

दुःस्पर्शास्वरसं वापि कषायं कुङ्कुमस्य च ।

एर्वारुबीजं तोयेन पिबेद् वाऽलवणीकृत् ॥

पञ्चमूलीश्रुतं क्षीरे द्राक्षारसमथापि वा ॥

Suśruta Samhitā, Uttara 55-25.

DHĀNYAKA

Botanical Name : Coriandrum sativum Linn.

Family : Apiaceae (Umbelliferae)

Classical name : Dhānyaka

Sanskrit Names

Dhānyaka, Chatrā, Kustumburu, Vitunnaka.

Regional Names

Dhandya, Dhana (Hi.), Dhane (Beng.), Dhana (Guj.), Katamalli (Tam.), Daniyalu (Tel.), Kujjar (Arab.), Kasnij (Pers.), Coriander (Eng.).

Description

An annual plant, 40-50 cm. high or sometimes somewhat more; glabrous.

Leaves of two kinds, the lower ones petioled impari pinnatisect into 2-3 pairs ovate-cuneiform, obtuse, incised dentate sements, the upper ones short-petioled on subsessile 2-3 pinnatisect into linear setaceous lobes. Umbels 5-10 rayed, involucre O, or compressed of 1, small setaceous bract, involucra usually of 3, short linear-lanceolate bracts.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Autumn to Winter/Spring seasons. Farming seasons.

Distribution

It is cultivated throughout India; it is under crop farming on commercial as well as domestic scale for production of fruits being a major spice.

Chemical Composition

Fresh and green plant has moisture 84 percent. Fruits contain a volatile oli 1 percent, fixed oil 13 percent, fat 13 percent, mucilage; tannin, malic acid and alkaline 5 percent. Coriander oil contains coriandrol, Geraniol and Baborneol. It contains an essential oil, coriandrol, oxalic acid and calcium content in fresh leaves. Leaves are rich sources of vitamin C and of carotene. Besides an essential oil, seeds contain 19-21 percent of a fatty oil.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṣāya, Tikta, Madhura, Kaṭu.
Guṇa	: Laghu, Snigdha
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Madhura
Doṣakarma	: Tridoṣahara, Pittaśāmaka, ārdra harita-fresh or green.

Action and Properties

Karma : Tṛṣṇānigrahaṇa
 Dāhapraśamana-antardāhaśamaka
 Mastiṣkabalya
 Rocana-dīpana-pācana-āmapācana
 Srotoviśodhana, Ykṛduttejaka
 Dourgandhyahara, Kṛmighna
 Grāhī-Arśoghna, Raktapittaśāmaka-
 hṛdya, Kaphaghna
 Mūtrajanana-mūtravirajanīya-
 bastiśodhana, Śukradhatuṣayakara-
 abraṣya-kāmaśaityakara
 Jvaraghna-śītāpraśamana
 Śothahara-śulahara, Cakṣuṣya.

Roga

a) **Ābhyantara** : Dāha-antardāha
 Tṛṣṇa-vamana-śrama-bhrama-
 mūrccā, Aruci-udaraśūla-
 agnimāndya, Āmadoṣa-ajirṇa-
 Atisāra-pravahikā, Arśa-gudavikāra
 Kṛmiroga
 Smṛtihrāsa-mastiṣka dourbalya
 Mūtrakṛcchra-paittika prameha-
 bastivikāra-mūtrāghāta
 Kāsa-śvāsa, Kāmonomāda-
 dhavothāna (vaikārika)
 Raktapitta-raktavikāra-raktasrāva-
 vātarakta, Jvara-jvaropadrava
 Balaroga-kāsaśvāsa, Pittaja vikāra
 Hṛdroga-hṛddourbalya.

Therapeutic Use

The fruits are aromatic, stimulant, carminative, diuretic, tonic, stomachic, antibiliary, refrigerant and aphrodisiac. The seeds are chewed to check bad smell of mouth (foul focal bredth).

A strong decoction of the herb is given with milk and sugar for the cure of bleeding piles or haemorrhoids.

The poultice of whole plant, specially leaves and tender twigs, is applied as cooling medium to headache.

The juice of the herb is used as a dressing liquid to soothe irritation and inflammation, caused by marking nut (Bhallātaka or Bhilāvā). For indolent swellings, the herbal paste, with barley meal is applied. The herb has cooling, anti-inflammatory and antibilious effect in external application.

A decoction of the fruits is orally given in flatulent colic; the dried fruits are obtained for preparing decoction. it is also used in bleeding piles. The infusion is used as an eye-wash in conjunctivitis.

The volatile oil distilled from the fruits is given (in doses of one to four minims) in colic, flatulence, abdominal troubles, rheumatism and neuralgia.

Groups (gaṇa)

Trṣṇānigrahaṇa, Śītapraśamana (Caraka), Guḍūcyādi (Suśruta).

Part Used

Whole plant, Leaves, Fruits.

Dose

Powder 3-6 gms., Hima 20-40 gms., Juice (herb) 12-24 gms.

Formulations (Yoga)

Dhānyakādi hima, Dhānyapancaka Kvātha, Dhānyacatuṣka, Guḍūcyādi Kvātha, Abhayāriṣṭa, Lavaṇa-bhāṣkara, Cūrṇa.

DHĀNYAKA (धान्यक)

धान्यकं तुवरं स्निग्धमवृष्यं मूत्रलं लघु।
 तिक्तं कटूष्णवीर्यञ्च दीपनं पाचनं स्मृतम्॥
 ज्वरघ्नं रेचकं ग्राहि स्वादुपाकि त्रिदोषनुत्।
 तृष्णा दाहवमिश्वासकासकाश्र्य क्रिमिप्रणुत्॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Haritakyādi Varga, 87-88.

आर्द्रम्

‘आर्द्रन्तु तद्गुणं स्वादु विशेषात्पित्तनाशनम्।’

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Haritakyādi Varga, 88.

धान्यकशाकम्

कुस्तुम्बरुत्थं मधुरं कषायं शाकं सतिकं न करोतिपित्तम् ।

श्लेष्मानिलघ्नं लघु भेदिरुच्यं बह्निप्रदं मूत्रकरं ज्वरघ्नम् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 1197.

आर्द्र (हरित) धान्यकम्

आर्द्रा कुस्तुम्बरी कुर्यात् स्वादु सौगन्ध्यहृद्यताः ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 1195.

शुष्क धान्यकम्

शुष्का स्निग्धास्वादुपाका कषाया कटुका लघुः ।

अवृष्या मूत्रला तित्ता हृद्या रुच्या त्रिदोषहा ॥

तृष्णादाहवमिशवासकासामगुदजकृमीन् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 1195-1196.

धान्यकं मधुरं शीतं कषायं पित्तनाशनम् ।

ज्वरकासतृषाच्छर्दि कफहारि च दीपनम् ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Pippalyādi Varga, 37.

तृष्णानिग्रहणार्थं

धान्यक हिमः ।

Śārangadhara Saṁhitā, 2-4-7.

ज्वरे

पर्युषितं धान्यजलं प्रातः पीतं सशर्करं पुंसाम् ।

अन्तर्दाहं शमयेत् प्रवृद्धमपि तत्क्षणादेव ॥

Vṛndamādhava, 1-101; Bhāvaprakāśa, Cikitsā, 1-356;

Vaidya Jivana, 51-32.

द्वितयैकांशधान्याकनागराभ्यां शृतं जलम् ।

पेयं प्रमाथि सप्ताहज्जवरिदेनाग्नि वृद्धये ॥

Vaidyamanoramā, 1-7.

आमवाते

धान्यनागरजः क्राथं पाचनो दीपनस्तथा ।

एरण्डमूलयुक्तश्च जयेदामनिलव्यथाम् ॥

Śārangadhara Saṁhitā, 2-2-65.

छद्याम्

युक्ताम्ललवणाः पिष्टाः कुस्तुम्बुरुयोऽथवा हिता ।

तण्डुलाम्बुयुतं खादेत् कपित्थं त्र्यूषणेन वा ॥

Suśruta Samhitā, Uttara. 49-30.

धान्यमतिविषाशृङ्गीगजाह्वारक्षण चूर्णितम् ।

बालानां छर्द्यतीसारं मधुना हन्ति लेहनात् ॥

Baṅgasena, Bālaroga, 46.

अशांसि

कण्टकार्या श्रुतं वापि श्रुतं नागरधान्यकैः ।

अनुपानं भिषग् दद्याद् वातवर्चोऽनुलोमनम् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 14-129.

शुष्काऽर्द्रं धान्यकम्

आर्द्राकुस्तुम्बुरुः कुर्यात् स्वादु सौगन्ध्य हृद्यताम् ।

सा शुष्का मधुरा पाके स्निग्धा तृट्दाहनाशिनी ॥

Dhanvantari Nighaṅṭu.

धान्यकं कासतृट्छर्दिज्वरहृच्चक्षुषो हितम् ।

कषायं तिक्तं मधुरं हृद्यं रोचन दीपनम् ॥

Dhanvantari Nighaṅṭu.

ज्वरे अन्तर्दाहे

पर्युषितं धान्यं जलं प्रातः पीतं सशर्करं पुंसाम् ।

अन्तर्दाहे शमयति प्रवृद्धमपि तत्क्षणात् सिद्धम् ॥

Śoḍhala Nighaṅṭu.

कफपित्तज्वरे

दीपनं कफविच्छेदि पित्तवातानुलोमनम् ।

ज्वरघ्नं पाचनं भेदिश्रुतं धान्य पटोलयोः ॥

Śoḍhala Nighaṅṭu, Vṛnda mādhava, 1-130.

आमाजीर्णं शूले च

धान्यनागर सिद्धं वा तोयं दद्यात् विचक्षणः ।

आमाजीर्णं प्रशमनं शूलघ्नं बस्ति शोधनम् ॥

Baṅgasena.

पित्तातिसारे

धान्यकल्केन संसिद्धं चतुर्गुणजलं घृतम् ।

पित्तातिसारे सरुजं देहं दीपन पाचनम् ॥

Baṅgasena.

शिशोः कासेशवासे च

धान्यं शर्करया युक्तं तण्डुलोदक संयुक्तम् ।
पानमेतत् प्रदातव्यं रवासकासापहं शिशोः ॥

Baṅgasena.

गुल्मे

‘तां वा धान्यकैर्जलम् ।’

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Cikitsā, 14-60.

वातरक्ते

‘धान्यनागरसंयुक्तं क्षीरं चास्य प्रदापयेत् ।’

Kāsyapa, Saṁhitā, 3-23-6.

धान्यकर्षद्वजीरे द्वे गुणेन परिपाचितम् ।
भक्षणे वातरक्तानां दापयेदोषशान्तये ॥

Hārīta Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 24;

Kāsyapa Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 3-23-10.

‘धान्यस्तुम्बुरुः । रोचनं दीपनं वातकफदौर्गन्ध्य नाशनम् ।’

Caraka Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 27.

भक्ष्यव्यञ्जनभोज्येषु विविधष्ववचारिता ।
आर्द्रा कुस्तुम्बरीं कुर्यात् स्वादु सौगन्ध्यहृद्यताम् ॥

Sūsruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra, 46.

रोगोपसर्गजातायां तृष्णायाम्

‘रोगोपसर्ग जातायां धान्याम्बु संसितामधु ।

पानं प्रशस्तम्..... ।’

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Cikitsā, 6-81.

पित्तज्वरे अर्न्दाहनिवारणार्थं धान्यक क्वाथः

ससितो निशि पर्युषितः प्रातर्धान्याकतण्डुलक्वाथः ।

पीतः शमयत्यचिरान्तर्दाहं ज्वरं पैत्तम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśasya Madhyakhaṇḍe,

Jvarādhikāre, 1-669.

तृषा निवारणार्थं

प्रातः शर्करयोपेतः क्वाथो धान्याकसम्भवः ।

ज्येत्तृष्णां तथा दाहं भवेत्स्रोतो विशोधनम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Madhyakhaṇḍe, 18-23.

मूत्राघाते

धान्यगोक्षुरकघृतम्

धान्यगोक्षुरक्वाथकल्कयुक्तं घृतं हितम् ।

मूत्राघाते मूत्रकृच्छ्रं शुक्रदोषे च दारुणे ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Mūrtrāghādhikāra, 36-41.

बालरोगे धान्यकादिपानम्

धान्यं च शर्करायुक्तं तण्डुलोदकसंयुतम् ।

पानमेतत्प्रदातव्यं कासश्वासापहं शिशोः ॥

*Bhāvaprakāśa, Balarogādhikāra, 162;**Baṅgasena, Bālaroga, 60.*

DHĀṬAKĪ

Botanical Name : Woodfordia fruticosa Kurz.**Family :** Lythraceae**Classical Name :** Dhataki**Sanskrit Names**

Dhātaki, Dhatupuṣpī, Vahnijvālā, Raktapuṣpā, Mādinī, Dāḍimipatrā,

Regional Names

Dhay (Hi.), Dhava (Punj.), Dhavas (Mar.), Dhavani (Guj.), Sironji (Tel.), Dathari jargi (Tam.); Woodfordia (Eng.).

Description

A straggling leafy shrub reaching 3-6 meters high; branches long, spreading; bark smooth, Cinnamon brown, peeling off in fibres; young shoots terete, often clothed with fine white pubescence.

Leaves 5-9 by 1.3-2.5 cm., opposite or subopposite, sometimes in whorl of 3, sessile, ovate-lanceolate, acute, softly velvety above, usually hoary and always nigro-punctate beneath, base rounded or cordate; main nerves 6-12 pairs; arcuate, prominent beneath, uniting in a distinct intramarginal nerve.

Flowers numerous, in short 2-15 (rarely 1-) flowered cymes from the axils of former, less commonly of present leaves; panicles short, glandular-pubescent. Calyx 1.6 cm. long, striate covered with glandular dots, with a small campanulate base and a long slightly curved bright red tube which is a slightly contracted above the included capsule; mouth oblique; teeth about 2.5 mm. long triangular, acute. Petals slightly longer than the calyx-teeth, narrowly linear, produced at the apex to a long fine point.

Capsule 1 cm. long, usually splitting the calyx near the base, irregularly dehiscent. Seeds cuncate obovoid, brown, smooth.

Flowering and Fruiting time

Spring season and onwards.

Distribution

It is found throughout India, specially in the greater part of country; extending upto 1,600 meters in the Himalayan regions.

Chemical composition

Flowers as well as generally the whole plant yield tannin upto 20 percent.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kasāya, Kaṭu.
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa.
Vīrya	: Śīta
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphapittaśamaka

Action and Properties

Karma	: Stambhana-raktastambhana Sandhānīya-Raktapittaśāmaka Mūtravirajānīya, Yonisrāvarodhaka Kuṣthaghna, Jvaraghna Dāhapraśamana, Vraṇaropaṇa Trṣṇānigrahaṇa, Kṛmighna Madakara, Tvacya, Balya.
--------------	---

Roga

a) Ābhyantara (internal)	: Atisāra-pravāhikā-raktātisāra Raktapitta-Raktasrāva
-----------------------------	--

Paittika prameha
 Srāvayuktayonivyāpat-śvetapradara-
 raktapradara, jvara-paittika jvara
 Carmaroga-visarpa-kuṣṭha
 Dāha-raktasrāva-vraṇa
 Agnidogdha, Tṛṣṇa-dāha, Viṣa
 Krimiroga, Jvarātisāra
 Stanavikṛti-stanapīḍā
 Yakṛdvikāra, Dourbalya.

b) Bāhya : Dāha, Raktasrāva, Vraṇa-duṣṭavrāṇa
 (external) Agnidagdha, Viṣphoṭa-kandū-
 śleṣmikakalāvikāra, Anya (other)-
 Puṣpa-Āsavāriṣṭa Kalpanā
 Sandhāna-madakarāṇa-rajana
 Karma.

Therapeutic Use

The dried flowers are astringent; and they are used in dysentery, menorrhagia, derangement of the liver, diarrhoea, disorders of the mucous membrane and haemorrhoids. They are considered safe stimulant in pregnancy.

The dried flowers are given with milk in dysentery and other bowel complaints; it is used internal haemorrhage. The flowers are given in leucorrhoea, menorrhagia, piles and liver complaints.

The powder of the flowers in dried form or their decoction is applied over foul ulcers and wounds.

The powder of the flowers is dusted over burns or applied in other suitable form. Bark is crushed or ground and the material is boiled in water to prepare an ointment (by continuous heating) and after getting it cool, this recipe is applied to burns lesions as an effective remedy.

The flowers powder is applied to cuts as a styptic for checking blood haemorrhage and also for healing the ulcers.

The flowers are frequently employed during pharmaceutical process of alcoholic preparations (āsava-riṣṭa kalpanā) as fermentation and colouring agent (sandhāna-rajana dravya).

Part used : Flowers, Bark.

Dose : Flowers 1-3 gms.

Formulations (Yoga)

a) Dhātakyādi cūrṇa, Dhātakyādi taila, Dhātakyariṣṭa, Laghu Gaṅgādhara curna.

b) Kuṭajariṣṭa, Abhayāriṣṭa, Pippalyāsava, Kanakāsava, Khadirāriṣṭa, Aśokāriṣṭa, Pārthyadyariṣṭa.

Groups (gaṇa)

Purīṣasamgrahīṇīya, Mūtravirajanīya, Sandhānīya (Caraka.), Priyaṅvādi, Ambaṣṭhādi (Suśruta).

DHĀTAKĪ (धातकी)

धातकी शीतला कट्वी कषाया मदकृल्लघुः ॥
तृष्णापित्तास्रवीसर्प विषातीसार जन्तुजित् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 1072/1073.

धातकीशाकम्

रूक्षं स्वादु विषघ्नं च तच्छाकं वीर्यशीतलम् ॥
पित्तलं दीपनं पथ्यमतिसार विनाशनम् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 1073-1074.

धातकीपुष्पम्

‘रूक्षं कषायं च लघु धातक्याः कुसुमं मतम् ।’

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 1074.

धातकी कटुका शीता मृदुकृत्तुवरा लघुः ।

तृष्णाऽतीसारपित्तास्रविषक्रिमि विसर्पजित् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Harītakyaḍi, Varga, 187.

धातकी कटुरुष्णा च मदकृद्विषनाशिनी ।

प्रवाहिकाऽतिसारघ्नी विसर्पव्रणनाशिनी ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Pippalyādi Varga, 215.

प्रवाहिकायाम्

‘धातकी बदरीपत्रं..... ।

एकतो दग्ना पिबेत् प्रवाहिकार्दितः ॥’

Bhāvaprakāśa, Cikitsā 2-120.

ब्रणरोपणे (सत्रण भग्ने)

‘धातकीचूर्णलोध्रैर्वा तथा रोहन्ति ते ब्रणाः ।’

Cakradatta, Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā 25-66/67.

ज्वरातिसारे

धातकीक्वाथंसंसिद्धा विश्वभेषजसंस्कृता ।

दाडिमाम्लयुता पेया ज्वरातिसारशूलिनाम् ॥

Baṅgasena.

श्वेतप्रदरे

‘धातक्याश्चाक्षमात्रं वा..... ।

पाण्डुप्रदरशान्त्यर्थं पाययेत्तण्डुलाम्बुना ॥’

Śoḍhala Nighaṇṭu.

कुष्ठे

‘लोध्रस्य धातकीनां.....कल्कं.....कुष्ठेषु उद्वर्तनालेपः ।’

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 7-95.

धातुकीपुष्पम्

‘धातकी कुसुमं शीतं रक्तपित्तातिसारं जित् ।’

Rājaballabha Nighaṇṭu.

स्तनपीडायां धत्तूर लेपः

‘निशाकनकफलाभ्यां लेपश्चापि स्तनार्तिदा ।’

Cakradatta, Strīroga Cikitsā, 64-52.

गर्भजननार्थम्

धातकीकुसुमैर्युक्तं नारी नीलोत्पलं पिबेत् ।

शृतौ मधुयुतं प्रातः क्षिप्रं गर्भेण युज्यते ॥

Gadamigraha, 6-5-9.

पित्ताभिष्यन्दे

‘चूर्णं कुर्याद्भजनार्थं रसो वा स्तन्योपेतो-

धातकीचन्दनाभ्याम् ।’

Suśruta Samhitā, Uttara. 90-9.

अतिसारे

‘संग्राही धातकीपुष्पशर्करालाजातर्पणैः ।’

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Uttara, 1-40.

DHATTŪRA

Botanical Name

Datura metal Linn.

Datura stramonium Linn.

Family : Solanaceae

Classical name : Dhattūra

Sanskrit names

Dhattūra, Kanaka, Unmattaka, Dhustūra.

Regional names

Dhatura, Dhastura, (Hindi.), Adukkumattai, Madulam, Vellaiyunmattai, Velummattai (Tamil), Tellavumnettu (Telugu), Dhottura, Dhutrua (Uriya), Downy *Datura* (English).

Description

Datura metal Linn. Syn. *D. fastuosa* Linn. *D. alba* Nees.

Whole plant densely clothed with greyish tomentum. Stem erect, 0.9-1.2 meter high, stout, ovate, acute or acuminate, unequal at the base and often cordate, entire or repand-dentate, densely tomentose on both surfaces and generally glandular, petioles 6.3-9 cm. long peduncles at first erect, afterwards nodding. Calyx about 7.5 cm. long, inflated towards the middle, persistent and reflexed in fruit; teeth lanceolate, acuminate, unequal. Corolla about twice as long as the calyx, white tinged with green below, pubescent outside, limb 10-toothed. Capsule globose, nodding, covered with long rather slender spines.

Datura stramonium Linn.

An erect, coarse annual, 0.6-1.2 meters high, glabrous of farinose-puberulous, widely branched, annual or perennial herbs. Stems short-hairy on young parts or glabrous.

Leaves ovate-oblong to triangular, with a subcordate or cuneate or rounded, often unequal-sided base, acute or acuminate, glabrous or short-hairy, 6-20 X 3-15 cm. Petiole 3-5 (-10) cm. long, leaves stalked about 18 cm. long.

Flowers 8-12 cm. long, on 0.3-0.5 cm. long petioles. Calyx 5-angular, 3.5-4cm. long. Corolla white or purple; lobes with a short acumen, lobes 5, cuspidate.

Capsule fruit erect, oblong, 4-7 cm. long, densely covered with 3-1 cm. long prickles; capsule ovoid, deeply 4-valved, covered with rigid long and short prickles surrounded below by the enlarged reflexed base of the calyx.

Flowering and Fruting Time

Autumn (post-rains) to Summer seasons.

Distribution

It is found throughout India in warmer regions, in waste grounds and other places.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa : Kaṣāya, Tikta, Madhura.

Guṇa : Tikṣṇa.

Vīrya : Uṣṇa

Vipāka : Kaṭu

Doṣakarma : Vātakaphaśāmaka

Karma : Vedanāsthāpana

Kaphaghna-kāśahara

Madakāri-vyavāyī-vikasī

Varṇya-kāntikara

Tvacya-kaṇḍūghna, Viṣaghna

Dīpana, Kṛmighna-jantughna.

Roga

a) **Abhyantara** : Agnimāndya, Kāsa-śvāsa, Vātavyādhi
Unmāda, Vātarakta-sandhivāta, Jvara.

b) **Bāhya** : Carmavikāra-kaṇḍū-kharjū
Jaṇtu vikāra-yūka-likṣā, Pādādāri-
Vipādikā, Unmāda, Vraṇa
Stanapīḍā, Viṣa-jāṅgama-kukkuṭa-visa
Sotha-vedanā pradhāna vikāra
Vātarakta-sandhivāta-gṛdhrasī
Granthi.

Therapeutic Uses

The whole plant is toxic, narcotic, aphrodisiac; and it is applied topically to counter the pain of tumours and

piles. The leaves after roasting are applied locally to relieve eye pain, headache, nose trouble, enlargement of the testicles and boils. The root is useful in reducing inflammation. The seeds are narcotic, febrifuge, anthelmintic; and they are useful in checking inflammation, painful piles and biliousness; and they can cause headache.

The seeds are acrid, bitter and sharp taste; they are heating, tonic, febrifuge, anthelmintic, alexiteric, emetic; and they are useful in leucoderma, skin diseases, ulcers, itching, bronchitis, biliousness, jaundice and piles.

The seeds and leaves are antispasmodic, anodyne, narcotic; they act similarly to Belladonna and do not constipate.

The inhalation of the smoke from burning leaves is recommended for relieving attacks of asthma. It is a better cough remedy than opium, as it does not arrest secretions.

The young fruits are sedative and (slightly) intoxicating. The leaves are commonly considered useful in asthma. The leaves mixed with wine or powdered rice and saffron and this mixture is applied externally for various pains and swellings.

The leaves are smoked and then they are applied as a poultice over the spleen in intermittent fever. The roots of drug plants are powdered and applied to the gums in order to relieve the pain and toothache. The flowers are dried and roughly powdered with or without the leaves and rolled into cigarettes for relief of asthma.

The fresh or green fruit is pounded and applied to carbuncles. The warm leaves are applied topically to sciatica.

The leaves are crushed, mixed with oil and used as an antidote for poison our insects, flies, such as those of tarantulla spiders.

The leaves are applied for relief of headache. A warmed pad of leaves is applied to painful and swollen parts, and a similar poultice is applied to ingrowing tow-nails and to burns also.

The fresh warmed leaf or the vapour of an infusion of the leaf was applied particularly to relieve the pain of rheumatism and gout. An ointment containing the juice of

leaf and young shoots for application to running sores. A poultice of leaf is applied to carcinomatous ulcers.

The smoke of from the burning leaf is inhaled for the relief of asthma and bronchitis. The fruit juice is applied to head (scalp) for falling hairs and dandruff. The powdered leaf to bruises and wounds in both human and animals, the application is considered useful for drawing out pus and inflammation. It is also used as a smoothing application to painful wounds and sores. The fresh leaves are applied to tropical ulcers.

The juice of the leaves is given with curdled milk for gonorrhoea. Juice of the fresh leaves is useful in painful swellings, ophthalmic pain and ear-ache. The roots are considered useful against the dog-bite; and they are used in insanity. The leaves enter into the composition of snake-bite remedies. The leaves are ground and paste is applied to scorpion-sting.

The seeds are useful in bites of dogs, purulent discharges from the ear, elephantiasis, indigestion; and they prevent conception also, the epithems of the bruised leaves or embrocations formed by macerating the bruised seeds in any bland oil, are often very effectual for allaying the pains in rheumatic swellings, moles, boils and tumours.

The flowers are used in asthma and fruits are useful in earache. The seeds are intoxicating, narcotic and poison as the seeds are categorised in upaviṣa group in indigenous medicine. The signs and symptoms of *Datura* poisoning proper and restricted doses.

The seeds are, therefore, recommended to be used after purification and are considered in toxicology and the counter treatment in also prescribed.

Part Used : Seeds (fruits-seeds), roots, leaves.

Dose : Powder 50-100 mg.

DHATTŪRA (धत्तूर)

श्लीपदे

धत्तूरकस्य बीजानि पिप्पलीवर्धमानवत् ।

शीतोदकेन पीतानि श्लीपदं घ्नन्ति तत्क्षणम् ॥

Baṅgasena, Ślīpada, 23.

धत्तूरो मधुरस्तिक्तीक्ष्णोष्णस्तुवरो गुरुः ।
उन्माद वांतिमन्दाग्नि कान्तिदोष ज्वरकुष्ठनुत् ॥
यूकालिक्षाव्रणश्लेष्मकृमि कण्डू विषापहा ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 1546-1548.

धत्तूरो मदवर्णाग्निवातकृज्वर कुष्ठनुत् ॥
कषायो मधुरस्तिक्तो यूकालिक्षा विनाशकः ।
उष्णो गुरुव्रणश्लेष्मकण्डूकृमि विषापहः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Guḍūcyādi Varga, 86-87.

धत्तूरः कटुरुष्णश्च कान्तिकारी व्रणार्तिनुत् ।
त्वग्दोषखर्जूकण्डूति ज्वरहारी भ्रमप्रदः ॥

Rājā Nighaṅṭu, Karavīrādi Varga, 19.

श्वेतधत्तूर— कृष्णधत्तूर— राजधत्तूर

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Karavīrādi Varga, 17-22.

सितनीलकृष्ण लोहित पीतप्रसवाश्च सन्ति धत्तूराः ।
सामान्य गुणोपेतास्तेषु गुणाद्यस्तु कृष्णकुसुमः स्यात् ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Karavīrādi Varga, 22.

वातरक्ते धत्तूराद्यतैलम्

कनकशिखरिमानक्षारसंसिद्धतोये कुसुमलवणयुक्तैः सर्जनिर्यास चूर्णैः ।
विधिश्रुततिलतैलं कल्कयुक्तं निहन्ति प्रचुरतर मिदानी मिन्द्रलुप्तास्त्रवातम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Vātaraktādhikāra, 29-148.

पाददारी चिकित्सायां उन्मत्ततैलम्

उन्मत्तकस्य बीजेन मानकख्यास्य वारिणा ।
विपक्वं कटुतैलन्तु हन्यादारीं न संशयः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Kṣudrarogādhikāra, 61-126.

धत्तूरमद शमनार्थम्

‘धौस्तूरञ्च दुग्धं सशर्करं पानयोगेन ।

Cakradatta, Madātyaya Cikitsā, 18-20.

सर्वोन्मादे धूर्त्तमूल (रसः) पायसः

श्वेतोन्मतोतरदिङ्-मूलसिद्धस्तु पायसः ।

गुडाज्यसंयुतो हन्ति सर्वोन्मादांस्तु दोषजान् ॥

Cakradatta, 20-6.

विपादिका शमनार्थं धुस्तूरबीज तैलम्

उन्मत्तकस्य बीजेन माणकक्षारवारिणा ।

कटुतैलं विपक्तव्यं शीघ्रं हन्याद्विपादिकाम् ॥

Cakradatta, Kuṣṭha Cikitsā, 50-39.

स्तनपीडाया धतूर फलं लेपः

‘निशाकनकाभ्यां लेपश्चापि स्तनार्तिहा ।’

Cakradatta, Strīroga, Cikitsā, 64-52.

कुक्कुटविषहरो धतूरोदुम्बर लेपः

कनकौदुम्बर फलमिव तण्डुलजलपिष्टं पीतमपहरति ।

कनकदलद्रवघृतगुडदुग्धपलैकं शुनो गरलम् ॥

Cakradatta, Viṣacikitsā, 25.

इन्द्रलुप्ते

इन्द्रलुप्ते यथासन्नं सिरां विदध्वा प्रलेपयेत् ।

प्रच्छाय गाढं..... ।

धतूरकस्य पत्राणां भल्लातक रसेन वा ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hr̥daya, Uttara 24-28/30.

अलर्क विषे

फलं धुधूरकान् मूलं काकोदुम्बरिकोद्भवम् ।

शीधुनां श्वविषं हन्ति पीतं वा तण्डुलाम्बुना ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha, Uttara, 46-69.

तण्डुलोदकमादाय पेषयत्तण्डुलै सहः ।

उन्मत्तकस्य पत्रैस्तु संवेष्ट्यापूपकं पचेत् ।

खादयदौषधकाले च तदलर्कं विदूषितः ॥

Suśruta Samhitā, Kalpa 77-53/54.

ज्वरे

पक्वानि धतूर दलानि पिष्ट्वा पटेन पूतानि सितासुतानि ।

वल्लप्रमाणानि निषेवितानि सर्वज्वरघ्नानि समीरितानि ॥

Siddhabhaiṣajya Maṇimālā, 4-109.

पिटकासु

रसो मण्डूकपर्ण्यासु प्रलेपात् पिडकामयम् ।
धतूरकशिफां क्षुण्णां बद्ध्वा च सम्प्रणाशयेत् ॥

Gadanigraha, 4-1-119.

क्रिमौ

धतूरपत्रजं वापि क्रिमिनाशनमुत्तमम् ।

Bhāvaprakāśa, Cikitsā, 7-24.

त्वग्बिकारे (त्वग् रोगे)

धतूरनिम्बताम्बूलीपत्राणां स्वरसैः पृथक् ।
अस्य प्रलेपमात्रेण पामादद्भुविचर्चिकाः ॥

Śāraṅgadhara Saṁhitā, 3-11-52.

विपादिकायाम्

उन्मत्तकस्य बीजेन माणकक्षार वारिणा ।
कटुतैलं विपक्तव्यं शीघ्रं हन्याद् विपादिकाम् ॥

Vṛndamādhava, 51-36.

DHAVA

Botanical Name : Anogeissus latifolia Wall.

Family : Combretaceae

Classical Name : Dhava

Sanskrit Names

Dhava, Goura, Dhurandhara, Dṛḍha-sthira, Dhara, Nanditaka-nanditaru, Śakaṭākhyā, Vaṭa.

Regional names

Dhava, Dho, Baka (Hi.), Daoya (Beng.), Dhavarha (Mar.), Dhavarho (Guj.), Villainag (Tam.)

Description

An erect tree sometimes reaching 18-21 meters; bark smooth, light coloured; young parts glabrous or silky/pubescent.

Leaves 0.3-10 by 3.5 cm., alternate or sub opposite, elliptic or oblong elliptic, obtuse, or very often shortly

cuspidate, glabrous when fully grown, pale dull glaucous—green, base, usually, rounded, midrib, prominent, pink; main nerves 6-10 pairs, arching prominent on the lower side, the veins between them reticulate; petioles 6-13 mm. long.

Flowers sessile, in small dense, heads; peduncle 1 or more from the same axil, branched, not much longer than the petioles. Calyx tube pubescent; teeth short, broadly triangular.

Fruit small, several crowded in a globular head, the nucleus nearly planconvex, 4-5 mm. long (excluding the beak), 3-4 mm. broad (including the wings), yellowish brown, glabrous or more or less pubescent, winged down the 2 longer sides, beaked with the persistent calyx which is as long as or sometimes longer than the nucleus, wings with entire margins. Seeds solitary.

Flowering and fruiting time

Rainy season and winter seasons.

Distribution

It is found throughout (greater part of) India.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṣāya, Madhura
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa
Vīrya	: Śīta
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphapittaśāmaka.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Mūtrasangrahaṇīya, Stambhana Śonitāsthāpana, Kuṣṭhaghna Rasāyana, Viśaghna, Rucya Raktarodhaka, Vraṇaropaṇa Śothahara, Arśoghna, Mehahara.
--------------	--

Roga

a) Ābhyantara	: Prameha, Atisāra-pravāhikā Arśa-raktārśa, Kuṣṭha, Dourbalya Viṣa-jāṅgama-vṛścika-sarpaviṣa Raktavikāra-Raktapitta Dourbalya-kṣayaśoṣa.
----------------------	--

b) Bāhya : Kṣata-vraṇa-śoṭha,
Visarpa-kuṣṭha, Karṇapūya.

Therapeutic Uses

The bark is bitter and astringent. Plant is claimed to be antidote to scorpion-sting and snake-bite.

The root is pungent, acrid, stomachic; and roots increase biliousness. Bark is pungent, acrid, sweet and cooling; it improves both taste and appetite, it causes biliousness and counters vitiation of kapha and vāta. The bark is useful in anaemia, urinary discharges, and piles; the bark is applied in skin affection and erysepalas.

The juice of the leaves is given in purulent discharges from the ear. The fruit is acrid, dry and with flavour; it is cooling, astringent to bowels; and it causes (increases) vāta and checks (reduces) kapha and counters biliousness.

The bark is bitter, astringent to the bowels and it is useful in liver complaints, chronic diarrhoea, ophthalmia and eyesores.

The bark enters into the competition of a remedy against difficult expectoration and obstruction of the windpipe by phlegm.

The plant is considered useful in the treatment of snake-bite and scorpion-sting. The flowers and ash of the roots, bark and leaves are useful in various ailments.

Part Used : Bark, Heartwood, Gum.

Dose

Decoction 50-100 gms., Gum 10-20 grains.

Groups (gaṇa)

Śālasārādi, Muṣkakādi (Suśruta).

Asanādi, Muṣkakādi (Aṣṭāṅga).

DHAVA (धव)

क. धवो वटो नन्दितरुः स्थिरो गौरो धुरन्धरः ।

ख. धवः शीतः प्रमेहार्शः पाण्डुपित्तकफासहा ॥

मधुरस्तुवरस्तस्य फलञ्च मधुरं मनाक् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Vatādi Varga, 60.

धवः

- अ. धवो धरो नन्दितकः शकटाख्यो मरोद्वहः ।
कषायमधुरस्यवल्कः स्थिरो गौरो धुरंधरः ॥
- ब. धवस्तु तुवरः शीतो मधुरो मेहपाण्डुदा ।

धवफलम्

- स. कफपित्तहरं तस्य फलं स्वादु कषायम् ॥
हिमं रूक्षं गुरुस्तम्भि वातलं कफपित्तजित् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 837-839.

धवः

धवोदृढतरुगौरः कषायो मधुरत्वचः ।
शुक्लवृक्षः पाण्डुतरुर्धवलः पाण्डुरोनवः ॥
धवो दृढतरुः गौरः कषायो मधुरत्वचः ।
पाण्डुतरुः पीतफलो धवलश्च भरोद्वहः ॥

Śivadatta.

धवगुणाः

धवः कषायः कटुकः कफघ्नोऽनिलनाशनः ।
पित्तप्रकोपणो रुच्यो विज्ञेयो दीपनः परः ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Prabhadrādi Varga, 108-109.

कुष्ठे

‘खदिरो धवश्च लेपः ।’

Caraka Saṃhitā, Cikitsā, 7-121.

विसर्पे

खदिरं सप्तपर्णं च मुस्तमारग्वधं धवम् ।
.....पृथगालेपनं कुर्याद् द्वन्द्वशः सर्वशोऽपि वा ॥

Caraka Saṃhitā, Cikitsā, 11-97.

कर्णपूये

‘.....मधूक धवशाल्मजम् ।
पूरणार्थं प्रशंसन्ति तैलं वा तैर्विपाचितम् ॥’

Suśruta Saṃhitā, Uttara. 21-47.

रसायनार्थम्

धवाश्वकर्णासनबालपत्रसारास्तथा

पिप्पलीवत्प्रयोज्याः ।

लोहोपलिप्ता पृथगेव जीवेत् समाः शतं व्याधि जराविमुक्तः ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hr̥daya, Uttara, 39-105.

DINĪŚĀ

Botanical Name

Citrullus vulgaris Var. *fistulosus* Duthie & Fuller.

Family : Cucurbitaceae

Classical Name : Diṅḍiśā

Sanskrit Names

Diṅḍiśā, Romaphala, Sunirmita.

Regional Names

Tinda, Tinde, Dhendas (Hindi.), Tandus, Tendu, Tinda (Punjab), Dilpasand (Sind).

Description

Stems and petioles hollow. Tendrils 3-4 rarely 5-fid. Leaves much less divided. Fruit about of a small Turnip, depressed at each end, hispid when young, afterwards glabrous.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Spring to Summer seasons; Farming seasons.

Distribution

It is cultivated in the western region of upper Gangetic Plain, Punjab, Uttar Pradesh, Central India and various parts of country. Largely cultivated in Uttar Pradesh, Punjab and Maharashtra for popular vegetable fruits.

Chemical Composition

Chemical analysis of the fruit is carried out.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Madhura
Guṇa	: Rūkṣa, Śīta, Laghu.
Vīrya	: Śīta
Vipāka	: Madhura
Doṣakarma	: Pittakaphaśāmaka, Vātajanana.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Rucikara, Bhedena, Sara-anulomana Mūtrala.
Roga	: Agnimāndya, Aruci, Mūtravikāra Aśmarī, Vibandha.

Therapeutic Uses

The seeds are medicinally used. Fruits possess medicinal properties. Fruits are popularly used as domestic vegetable and they are also given as wholesome vegetable (pathya śāka) in certain ailments (suited to medicinal properties of fruits).

Parts Used : Fruits, Seeds.

Dose : Fruits Edible, Vegetable.

DINḌIŚĀ (डिण्डिश)

- क. डिण्डिशो रोमशफलो सुनिर्मित इत्यपि ।
 ख. डिण्डिशो रुचिकृद्धेदी पित्तश्लेष्मापहः ।
 सुशीतो वातला रूक्षो मूत्रलश्चाश्मरीहरः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Śāka Varga, 83-84.

DRĀKṢĀ

Botanical Name : Vitis vinifera Linn.

Family : Vitaceae

Classical Name : Drākṣā

Sanskrit Names

Drākṣā, Svādupalā, Madhurasā-phalā-sambhavā, Mṛdvīkā, Gostanī, Caruphalā, Guḍā.

Regional Names

Dakha-dakh, Munakka, Angura, (Hi.), Draksha, Angura (Beng.), Dakh, Angur (Punj.), Draksh (Mar.), Darakh (Guj.), Dakh, Minaka (Ma.), Drakshapandu (Tel.), Kadimandi (Tam.), Angur (fresh-hara), Mavysa (drysukha), Mavys munakki (dried-seedless); Grape (Eng.).

Description

A large deciduous climber, tendrils long, bifid.

Leaves 7.5-15 cm. long, orbicular-cordate, more or less deeply (3-) 5-lobed, margin irregularly and coarsely toothed, glabrous or nearly so above, clothed beneath with deciduous grey tomentum, thin, membranous; petiole 3.8-7.5 cm. long.

Inflorescence leaf-opposed of paniced cymes; peduncle sometimes bearing an unbranched tendril below the flowers. Flowers green, Petals 5, covering at the apex. Disk reduced to 5 hypogynous glands adenate to the base of the ovary. Style very short, thick.

Berry very variable in size, bluish black or greenish. Seeds 2-4, pear-shaped, with a discoidal tubercle on the back from which a low ridge runs over the top and down the ventral face.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Autumn to winter seasons (in temperate or cold regions); various seasons.

Distribution

It is cultivated in many parts of India, specially north-western India. Largely under farming for fruits or grapes commonly used as edible fruits, and planted in gardens for edible fruits, the common grape vine.

Chemical Composition

Fruit juice contains malic, tartaric, and racemic acid, alongwith 0.05 percent of ash. Fruits contain glucose and other substances.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Madhura
Guṇa	: Snigdha, Guru, Mr̥du
Vīrya	: Śītā
Vipāka	: Madhura
Doṣakarma	: Vātapittaśāmaka.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Snehopaga, Tṛṣṇānigrahaṇa-dāhapraśamana-santarpaṇa
-------	--

Anulomana-sara mūtraviṭa
 Rucikara, Hṛdayabalaprada
 Raktaprasādana-raktapittaśāmaka
 Phuphusabaladā, Sandhānakāraka
 Kaphaniḥsāraka-uṣṇa, Mūtrala
 Vṛṣya-garbhasthāpana
 Jivaniya-Balya-Bṛñhaṇa-puṣṭiprada
 Dāha-paittika vikārahara
 Jvaraghna-tāpakrama hrāsaka
 Medhya-soumanasya janana-
 mastiṣkabalya
 Kāsa-śvāsahara-svarya
 Netīya-cakṣuṣya, Mādahara, Śoṣahara
 Garbhasthāpana, Tvacya
 Kaṭupouṣṭika, Kṣatahara.

Roga

: Vibandha-udāvarta
 Tṛṣṇā-dāha-saṁmoha-santāpa
 Kāsa-śvāsa-svarabheda-uraḥkṣata
 Raktapitta-raktasrāva
 Kṛṣatā-śoṣa-dourbalya-kṣaya
 Śukradourbalya-Garbhāsayadourbalya
 Tvacāroga-vātapaittika vikāra-dāha
 Hṛddourbalya-vātarakta-raktavikāra
 Mūtrakṛcchra-mūtradāha-mūtradoṣa
 Mastiṣkadourbalya-madātyaya
 Kāmalā-pāṇḍu, Netravikāra.

Therapeutic Use

The dried fruits are demulcent, cooling, sweet, laxative, stomachic; and they are useful in thirst, heat of body, cough, hoarseness, constipation and in wasting diseases.

The sap of young branches is used as a remedy for skin diseases.

The juice of unripe fruits is astringent, and it is useful in throat affections. The leaves are astringent and used in diarrhoea.

There are five kinds of fruits. The ripe fruits is acrid, cooling, sweet, laxative, and purgative, fattening, diuretic, aphordisiac, appetiser; it is good for eyes, and the throat;

cures thirst, fever, asthma, gout, jaundice, strangury, burning, bad effects of drinking or alcoholism and blood diseases. It allays vitiation of vāta and vomiting. It is difficult to digest, it causes gases in the stomach; and also causes kapha. The sour fruit causes biliousness. The black fruit is aphrodisiac; and it cures kapha and biliousness.

The leaves are useful in piles. The juice is useful in headache, syphilis, piles, inflammation of the spleen. It is diuretic and it allays vomiting and stops bleeding from the mouth; it is applied in scabies and produces alopecia.

The ashes of the stem are good for pain in the joints, stones in the bladder, swelling of the testicles and piles.

The flowers are expectorant, emmenagogue; they enrich blood and are tonic to the liver and useful in chronic bronchitis and causes constipation.

The fruits are sweet and sour; digestive, stomachic, expectorant, blood purifier and blood enricher; they are good for lungs, heart, liver and kidney; and they are prescribed general debility.

The seeds are cooling, aphrodisiac, astringent to the bowels; and their as is applied to diminish inflammation.

The dried fruits are demulcent, laxative, sweet, cooling, agreeable and useful in thirst, heat of body, cough, hoarseness and consumption.

Parts Used : Fruits.

Dose : Fruits (drākṣā-mṛdvīkā) depending upon need.

Groups (gaṇa)

Snehopaga, Virecanopaga, Kāsahara, Jvarahara (Caraka). Parūṣakādi, Kākolyādi (Suśruta).

Formulations (Yoga)

Drākṣāriṣṭa, Drākṣādi Kvātha, Drākṣādi leha, Pippalyāsava, Kanakāsava, Parthyadyariṣṭa, Drākṣādyā ghr̥ta.

DRĀKṢĀ (MRDVĪKĀ) द्राक्षा (मृद्वीका)

द्राक्षा, तत्पक्वापक्वफलस्य भेदानां च गुणांश्च

क. द्राक्षा स्वादुफला प्रोक्ता तथा मधुरसाऽपि च ।

मृद्वीका हारहूरा च गोस्तनी चापि कीर्तिता ॥

- ख. द्राक्षा पक्वा सरा शीता चक्षुष्या बृंहणी गुरुः ।
स्वादुपाकरसा स्वर्या तुवरा सृष्टमूत्रजित् ॥
कोष्ठमारुत् कृद् वृष्या कफपुष्टि रुचिप्रदा ।
- ग. हन्ति तृष्णाज्वरश्वासवात वातास्रकामला ।
कृच्छ्रास्रपित्तसम्मोहदाहशोषमदात्ययान् ॥
- घ. आमा स्वल्पगुणा गुर्वी सैवाम्ला रक्तपित्तकृत् ।
वृष्या स्याद् गोस्तनी द्राक्षा गुर्वी च कफपित्तनुत् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Āmrāphalādi Varga, 109-113.

द्राक्षा

- अ. द्राक्षा फलोत्तमा स्वाद्वी हारहूरा च बृंहणी ।
मधुयोनिश्चारुफला रसाला मधुसम्भवा ॥
मधुफला स्वादुफला मृद्धीका गोस्तनी गुडा ।
कृष्ण मधुरसा वृष्याऽपरा काश्मीरिका मता ॥

द्विविध द्राक्षा

- ब. मधुरा मधुराम्ला च द्राक्षेति द्विविधामता ।

मधुरद्राक्षा

- स. मधुरा वातपित्तघ्नी साम्ला तु कफपित्तकृत् ॥

आमद्राक्षा

- आमा साम्लगुणा गुर्वी सैवाम्ला रक्तपित्तकृत् ।
द्राक्षाम्लोष्णा सरा गुर्वी वातघ्नी कफपित्तदा ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 298-301.

पक्वद्राक्षा

- पक्वा स्निग्धा सरा स्वर्या स्वादुपाक रसा हिमा ।
हृद्या सा तुवरा वृष्या चक्षुष्या सृष्टमूत्रविद् ॥
कोष्ठमारुतकृद् गुर्वी कफपुष्टिरुचिप्रदा ।
निहन्ति वातपित्तास्र तिक्तास्य त्वक्षतक्षयान् ॥

गोस्तनी द्राक्षा

- तद्वद् गोस्तनिका द्राक्षा स्वाद्वी वृष्यतमामता ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi, Varga, 302-304.

द्राक्षा

- द्राक्षा चारुफला कृष्णा प्रियाला तापसप्रिया ।

गुच्छफला रसाला च ज्ञेयाऽमृतफला च सा ॥

द्राक्षागुणाः

द्राक्षाऽतिमधुराऽमृता च शीता पित्तार्तिदाहजित् ।
मूत्रदोषहरा रुच्या वृष्या सन्तर्पणी परा ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Āmrādi Varga, 96-97.

द्राक्षाभेदाः

गोस्तनी द्राक्षा

अन्या कपिलद्राक्षा मृद्धीका गोस्तनी च कपिलाफला ।
अमृतरसा दीर्घफला मधुवल्ली मधुफला मधूली च ॥
हरिता च हारहूरा सुफला मृद्धी हिमोत्तरपथिका ।
हैमवती शतवीर्या काश्मीरो गजराज महिगणिता ॥

गोस्तनी गुणाः

गोस्तनी मधुरा शीता हृद्या च मदहर्षणी ।
दाहमूर्च्छा ज्वररवास तृषाहल्लासनाशिनी ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Āmrādi Varga, 102-104.

काकली द्राक्षा

अन्या सा काकलीद्राक्षा जम्बुका च फलोत्तमा ।
लघुद्राक्षा च निर्बीजा सुवृत्ता रुचिकारिणी ॥
शिशिरा श्वासहल्लास नाशिनी जनवल्लभा ।

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Āmrādi Varga, 105.

पक्वापक्वतो विभिन्नावस्थतया विशेषगुणाः

द्राक्षा बालफलं कटूष्ण विशदं पित्तास्रदोषप्रदं
मध्यं चाम्लरसं रसान्तरगते रुच्यातिवज्जिप्रदम् ।
पक्वं चेन्माधुरं तथाऽम्लसहितं तृष्णास्र पित्तापहं
पक्वं शुष्कतमं श्रमार्ति शमनं सन्तर्पणं पुष्टिदम् ॥

अपरञ्च

शीता पित्तास्रदोषं दमयति मधुरा स्निग्धपाकाऽतिरुच्या ।
चक्षुष्या श्वासकासश्रमवमिशमनी शोफतृष्णा ज्वरघ्नी ।
दाहाध्मानभ्रमादीनपनयति परा तर्पणी पक्वशुष्का ।
द्राक्षा सुक्षीणवीर्यानपि मदनकलाकेलिदक्षान्विधत्ते ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Āmrādi Varga, 106-107.

पाण्डुरोगे द्राक्षाघृतम्

पुराणसर्पिषः प्रस्थो द्राक्षाऽर्द्धप्रस्थसाधितः ।
कामलागुल्मपाण्डूवर्ति ज्वरमेदोदरापहः ॥

Cakradatta, 8-52.

पाण्डु रोगे

स्थिरादिभिः शृतं तोयं पानाहो प्रशस्यते ।
पाण्डूनां, कामलार्तानां मृद्धीकामलकाद् रसः ॥

*Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 26-114;
Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Cikitsā, 14-61.*

गुल्मे

द्राक्षाभयारसं गुल्मे पैत्तिके सगुडं पिबेत् ।
लिह्याद् कम्पिल्लकं वापि विरेकार्थं मधुद्रवम् ॥

*Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 5-130;
Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Cikitsā 14-61.*

कासे

मृद्धीकार्धशतं त्रिंशत् पिप्पलीः शर्करापलम् ।
लेह्ययेन् मधुनां गोर्वा क्षीरं च शकृद्रसम् ॥

*Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 18-91;
Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Cikitsā 3-30.*

ज्वरे

द्राक्षामलककल्केन कवलोऽहितो मतः ।
पक्वदाडिमबीजैर्वा धाराकल्केन च क्रचित् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Cikitsā 1-364.

मृद्धीकामलकानां वा स प्रस्कन्दनं पिबेत् ।
रसमामलकानां वा घृतभृष्टं ज्वरापहम् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 2-230.

द्राक्षामालकयोः कल्कं सघृतं वदने क्षिपेत् ।
तेन पृष्ठा मुखस्यान्तः कुर्वति प्रतिसारणम् ॥
तेन तालुगलान्तः स्थः रुचिर्भवति भोजने ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Cikitsā 1-322/323.

छद्याम्

द्राक्षारसं वापि पिबेत् सुशीतम् ।

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 20-30.

मूत्राघाते

पञ्चमूलीशृतं क्षीरं द्राक्षारसमथापि वा ।
द्राक्षारसेन वा त्रपुसकुसुम्भोर्वारुबीजवृषककुंकुमकल्कं सर्वमूत्राघातानाम् ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha, Cikitsā, 13-4.

क्षयरोगे

घृतं खर्जूर मृद्धीकाशर्करा क्षौद्रसंयुतम् ।
सपिप्पलीकं वैस्वर्य कासश्वासज्वरापहम् ॥

Carak Saṅgitā, Chikitsa, 8-96.

द्राक्षासिताभागाधिकावलेहः सक्षौद्रतैलः क्षयरोगघाती ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Uttar, 49-40, Vṛndamādhava, 10-9.

रक्तपित्ते

द्राक्षाशृतं नागरकैः शृतं वा कालागुरु गोक्षुरकैः शृतं वा ।
सजीवकं सर्षभकं ससर्पिः पयः प्रयोज्य सितया शृतं वा ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 4-84.

द्राक्षा कणायामलं तु कणासमेतप्रातः पिबेद्गुडयुतं पयसा विमिश्रम् ।
सद्यः सुखी भवति लोहित पित्तयुक्तः शीताभिरद्धिरथवा पयसाभिसिक्तम् ॥

Kalyāṅakāraka, 9-19.

घ्राणप्रवृत्ते जलमाशु देयं सशर्करं नासिकया पयो वा ।
द्राक्षारसं क्षीरयुतं पिबेद् वा सशर्करं चेशुरसं हिमं वा ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Uttara 45-37; Vṛndamādhava, 9-31.

द्राक्षारसस्येशुरसस्य नस्यं क्षीरस्य दूर्वास्वरसस्यचैव ।
यवासमूलानि पलाण्डुमूलनित्यं तथा दाडिम पुष्प तोयम् ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā 4-100.

तृष्णायाम्

तृष्यते चातिबलवद् वातपित्ते समुद्धते ।
तथाद् द्राक्षारसं यातुं शीतं दोषानुलोमनम् ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā 24-146.

विबन्धे (कोष्ठबद्धता)

द्राक्षारसं पीलुरसं जलमुष्णमथापि वा ।
मद्यं वा तरुणं पीत्वा मृदुकोष्णे विरिच्यते ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 13-67.

गर्भशूले

‘पीता क्षौद्रोपेता मृद्धीका गर्भशूलहरा।’

Vaidyamanoramā, 13-18.

भ्रमे

‘हरति भ्रमं षडूषणारजोषिरङ्घ्रवार्तिता द्राक्षा।’

Sidhabhaiṣajya Maṇimālā, 4-442.

ग्रहणी रोगे

‘तद्वद् द्राक्षेक्षुखर्जूस्वरसानासुतान् पिबेत्।’

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 15-151.

मदात्यये

‘तद्याद् द्राक्षारसं पानं हन्ति दोषानुलोमनम्।’

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Cikitsā 7-27.

DRONAPUṢPĪ

Botanical Name : *Leucas cephalotes* (Roth.) Spreng.

Family : Lamiaceae (Labiatac)

Classical Name : Droṇapuṣpī

Sanskrit Names

Droṇapuṣpī, Phalepuṣpā.

Regional Names

Guma (Hi.), Halakasa, Ghalghase (Beng.), Tumba, Kunma (Mar.), Kubo (Guj.), Tumbari (Tam.), Puyappatosi (Tel.).

Description

Erect, simple or branched herb, annuals, 15-60 cm. tall. Stems patently hairy.

Leaves on short petioles, lanceolate-oblong or ovate-lanceolate, with a cuneate base, subobtusely crenate-serrate, hairy, gland-punctate, beneath, 3-8 X 1-4 cm.

Centricillasters dense, globose, 3-5 cm. across, Bracts involucrate, lanceolate, acuminate, ciliate, 1.2-1.5 X 0.3-0.35 cm. long, glabrous in the lower part, hairy in the upper part,

10 dentate, with a villous throat. Corolla white, 1.7-2 cm. long. Nutlets oblong, 3-gonous, smooth, 0.3-0.32X0.12 cm.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Rainy season to autumn season.

Distribution

It is found in various regions throughout India.

Chemical Composition

Flowers contain an aromatic oil and an alkaloid.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṭu, Lavaṇa, Madhura.
Guṇa	: Guru, Rūkṣa, Tikṣṇa.
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Madhura
Doṣakarma	: Kaphavātaśamaka, Pittasamśodhaka.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Jvaraghna-viṣamajvara prativendhaka Pittasāraka-pittasamśodhaka Recaka-bhedana Dīpana-anulomana, Kṛmighna Kaphaghna-jantughna-viṣaghna Ārtavajanana, Svedajanana.
-------	---

Roga

- a) **Ābhyantara** : Jvara-viṣamajvara-vātaślaiṣmikajvara
Kāsa-śvāsa-pratiśyāya-śiraḥśūla-
tamakaśvāsa
Rajorodha-kaṣṭhārtava-ārtava vikāra
Carmaroga, Raktavikāra-śoṭha
Viṣa-sarpa viṣa
Pittavikāra (śodhanārtha)
Kaphavāta vikāra (śamanārtha)
Kāmālā-pāṇḍu, Ādhmāna-śūla
Kṛmiroga, Prameha.
- b) **Bāhya** : Pāṇḍu-kāmālā, Sarpaviṣa
Krimidanta, Pratiśyāya-śiraḥśūla
Vraṇa.

Therapeutic Use

The herb is stimulant, diaphoretic and insecticide. The fresh juice is an external application in scabies. The flowers in form of a syrup are used as remedy for cough and colds.

The plant has a pungent taste with a flavour; heating and indigestible; it causes vāta and pitta. It is laxative, anthelmintic, stimulant and febrifuge.

The herb is useful in bronchitis, asthma, cough, jaundice, inflammation, dyspepsia, paralysis and leucoderma. The leaves are useful in fever and urinary discharges. The leaves are used in combination with other drugs in scorpion-sting.

The juice of herb specially leaves and flowers is used in various ailments. A snuff of expressed juice of herb is given (nasya) in coryza, catarrhal affections and headache. The decoction of the herb is used to ulcers as wash liquid. It is also applied externally to poisonous insects bites.

The juice of this herb is applied as a collyrium (netrānjana) in case of jaundice. The herb is used in the form of a decoction or infusion in the fevers specially in intermittent fevers; it is effective in malarial fever and influenza.

It is used in worms affections, jaundice, biliousness, constipation, abdominal colic and menstrual disorders. It has a good cholagogue action and given in certain diseases of biliary affections.

Part used : Whole plant (leaves and flowers).

Dose : Juice 6-12 gms.

DRONAPUṢPĪ (द्रोणपुष्पी)

द्रोणपुष्पी स्वादुपाका स्वादूष्णा लवणा गुरुः ।

सक्षारा कटुका रूक्षा भेदनी वातपित्तकृत् ॥

कफामकामलाशोफतमकश्वासकासजित् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 665-666.

द्रोणपुष्पी गुरुः स्वादू रूक्षोष्णा वातपित्तकृत् ।
सतीक्षणलवणा स्वादुपाका कट्वी च भेदिनी ।
कफामकामलाशोथतमकश्वासजन्तुजित् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Guḍūcyādi Varga, 282-283.

द्रोणपुष्पी कटुः चोष्णा रुच्या वातकफापहा ।
आग्निमांघ्र हरा चैव पथ्या वातापहारिणी ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Parpaṭādi Varga, 138.

द्रोणपुष्पी पत्रम्— द्रोणपुष्पी पत्रशाकम्

द्रोणपुष्पी दलं स्वादुरूक्षं गुरु च पित्तकृत् ।
भेदनं कामलाशोथमेहज्वरहरं कटु ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Śāka Varga, 34.

विषमज्वरे

‘द्रोणपुष्पी रसो वाऽपि निहन्ति विषमज्वरान् ।’

Bhāvaprakāśa, Jvarādhikāra, 1-754.

पाण्डुरोगे द्रोणपुष्पीस्वरसस्याञ्जनम्

‘अञ्जनं कामलाऽर्त्तानां द्रोणपुष्पीरसः स्मृतः ।’

Cakradatta, Pāṇḍu Cikitsā, 8-25.

क्रिमिदन्ते द्रोणपुष्परसपूरणम्

द्रोण पुष्पद्रवः फेनमधुतैल समायुतः ।
क्रिमिदन्तविनाशाय क्वाथ्य कर्णस्य पूरणम् ॥

Cakradatta, Mukharoga Cikitsā, 56-37.

विषमज्वरे

‘द्रोणपुष्पी रसे वापि निहन्ति विषमज्वरान् ।’

Śāraṅgadhara Samhitā, 2-1-17.

कामलायाम्

अञ्जनं कामलार्त्तानां द्रोणपुष्पीरसः शुभः ।

Vṛndamādhāva, 8-12.

हरतिपटलमक्ष्णीस्तण्डुलाम्बुप्रपिष्टासिचयगलितसारंः नावनाद् द्रोणपुष्पी ।
शमयति च रसोऽस्या नेत्रायोज्जनेनप्रसमतिचिरोत्थं रोगमाशु ॥

Rāja Mārtaṇḍa, 3-97; Gadaniḡraha, 3-3-378.

DUGDHAPHENĪ

Botanical Name : *Taraxacum officinale* Weber.

Family : Asteraceae (Compositae)

Classical Name : Dugdhaphenī

Sanskrit Names

Dugdhaphenī, Payaḥphenī, Phenadugdhā, Payasvinī, Lūtāri, Vṛṇakatu, Gojāparṇī.

Regional names

Dudhal, Dudhali (Hi.), Dandelion (Eng.).

Description

A perennial herb; juice milky.

Leaves all radical; sessile usually glabrous, variable in shape, narrowly oblong, 5-20 cm., irregularly, pinnatifid, lobes, linear or triangular, acute, toothed, pointing, downwards, or rarely oblanceolate and nearly entire.

Heads ligulate, 0.8-5 cm. diam, glabrous, solitary on a hollow, leafless stalk 5-20 cm. long, inner involucre bracts linear, erect, nearly equal, margins often white, tips usually, thickened or hooked; outer bracts short, ovate, erect or recurved; receptacles, flat, naked; flower yellow; pappus copious, white, not feathery, soft, ligules long, spreading 3-5 toothed, often brown on the back; stylearm long.

Achenes glabrous, flattened, ribbed, narrowed to base, minutely spiny on the upper half, abruptly contracted into a long, slender beak crowned by the pappus.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Summers to Autumn seasons.

Distribution

It is found throughout, the Himalaya, from 1,000 to 10,000 ft.

Chemical Composition

Latex contains Taranacin, a bitter substance, Taraxacerin, a crystalline, principle, potassium, calcium and resins. Roots contain inulin 25 percent, pectin, sugar, lebulin and ash 5-7 percent.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Tikta, Kaṭu.
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa, Tikṣṇa.
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphapittahara.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Pittasāraka-yakṛduttejaka-recana Dīpana, Kṛmighna Raktaśodhaka-śothahara Mūtrala, Jvaraghna, Svedajanana Kaṭupouṣṭika, Viṣaghna, Rasāyana Vraṇaśodhana.
--------------	--

Roga

a) Ābhyantara	: Agnimāndya-Udararoga-vibandha Kāmalā-yakṛd vṛddhi, Kṛmiroga Rakta vikāra-śoṭha, Mūtra kṛcchra Carmaroga, Jīrṇajvara Sāmānyadourbalya, Viṣa.
----------------------	---

b) Bāhya	: Jīrṇavraṇa.
-----------------	---------------

Therapeutic Uses

The roots are useful as diuretic, tonic, aperient, and they are used as remedy for chronic disorders of urinary, kidney and liver. The leaves are employed in fomentation.

The roots are good cholagogue and used in biliary ailments; they are useful in liver complaints, jaundice, abdominal troubles, constipation and worms affections.

It is used in blood impurities and oedema. It is useful in skin diseases. It is given in chronic fevers. The roots are used in poisons and general debility.

The juice of plant is applied in chronic ulcers.

Part Used : Roots.

Dose : Powder 10-20 grains., Decoction 25-50 gms.

DUGDHAPHENĪ (दुग्धफेनी)

क. दुग्धफेनी पयःफेनी फेनदुग्धा पयस्विनी।

लूतारिर्व्रणकेतुश्च गोजापर्णी च सप्तधा ॥
 ख. दुग्धफेनी कटुस्तिका शिशिरा विषनाशिनी ।
 व्रणापसारिणी रुच्या युक्त्या चैव रसायनी ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Parpatādi Varga, 98-99.

DUGDHIKĀ

Botanical Nams

Euphorbia microphylla Heyne.

Euphorbia hirta Linn.

Euphorbia pilulifera anct. non Linn.

Euphorbia thymifolia Linn.

Family : Euphorbiaceae

Classical Name : Dugdhikā

Sanskrit Names

Dugdhikā, Nagarjunī, Svāduparṇī, Vikṣīriṇī.

Regional Names

Duddhi (Hi.), Kerai (Beng.), Lahan nayati (Mar.),
 Dudheli (Guj.), Dodhak, hajaradana (Punj.), Sitrapaladi
 (Tam.), Peddavari (Tel.), Shirak (Pers.).

Description

Euphorbia microphylla Heyne

A nearly glabrous annual; stems numerous, spreading from roots, 10-25 cm. long, whitish, slender, leafy, glabrous, brittle, dichotomously branched.

Leaves opposite, 4-6 mm. long, often nearly as broad as long, coriaceous, obliquely oblong, rounded, oblong or subquadrate, rounded, subtruncate or retuse at the apex, usually entire, often with pink margins; stipules 2-partite or laciniately toothed.

Invoules numerous, subsolitary, axillary, 1 mm. long, broadly campanulate, glabrous, stalk 0.6 mm. 1.2 mm. long; lobes triangular, apiculate; gland very shortly stipulate with small limb. Capsules 1.5 mm. diam., glabrous, keeled; styles short, deeply 2-fid. Seeds scarcely 1.2 mm. long, obtusely quadangular, very bluntly pointed, yellowish brown, smooth, mucous when wetted.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Post-rainy to autumn season.

Distribution

It is found in Bihar, Bengal and Western Peninsula.

***Euphorbia hirta* Linn.**

Annual 15-50 cm. high, erect or ascending, hispid with long when yellowish crooked hairs; stems usually terete; branches often 6-angled.

Leaves opposite, 1.3-3.3 by 0.6-1.6 cm., obliquely oblong-lanceolate or obovate-lanceolate, acute or subacute, serrulate or dentate, dark green above, pale beneath, base usually unequal sided, acute or rounded; main nerves few; distinct; petioles distinct, 1.5-3 mm. long; stipules pectinate, soon falling.

Involucres numerous, less than 1.25 mm. long, on a stalk of about the same length; crowded in small axillary shortly pedunculate globose cymes; gland minute, globose, either without a limb or with a very small orbicular white entire one.

Capsules 1.25 mm. diam., appressedly hairy. Seeds 0.3 mm. long; ovoid-trigonous, slightly transversely rugose, light reddish brown.

Distribution

It is found throughout India in hotter parts.

***Euphorbia thymifolia* Linn**

A small annual herb; more or less hispidly pubescent; stems prostrate.

Leaves opposite, very small, numerous, 3.6 by 2.5-4 mm., obliquely oblong or elliptic-oblong, rounded at the apex, crenulate, glabrous above, glaucous and usually slightly pubescent beneath, base rounded, very unequal-sided; petioles very short; stipules fimbriate.

Involucres axillary, solitary or 2-3 in an axil, campanulate, 0.0 mm., long; stalk very short; gland minute or 0; limb 0. Capsules 1.5 mm. long; keeled pubescent; styles short; s-fid. Seeds 1.25 mm. long; quadrangular, bluntly pointed with 5 or 6 transverse furrows.

Distribution

It is found throughout India in the plains and lower hills.

Varieties and Kinds

There are two main kinds of the drug Dugdrikā, popularly known as greater (barhi) and lesser (choti) Dudhi (Bṛhat dugdrikā and laghu dugdrikā) indented and *Euphorbia hirta* Linn. and *Euphorbia microphylla* Heyne. respectively. Laghu dugdrikā is of two varieties viz. white (śveta) and red (rakta) dugdrikā which are botanically considered as *Euphorbia microphylla* Heyne. and *Euphorbia thymifolia* Linn. respectively.

Chemical Composition

Plant (*E. microphylla*) contains a crystalline alkaloid alike quercetin. Another plant (*E. pilulifera*) contains a resin, an alkaloid, wax, chlorophyll, tannin, sugar, mucilage, calcium oxalate, carbohydrate, albuminoid, gallic acid, quercetin and little aromatic oil. Herb (*Euphorbia thymifolia* Linn.) contains essential oil; and leaves and stems contain certain flavons.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṭu, Tikta, Madhura.
Guṇa	: Guru, Rūkṣa, Tikṣṇa.
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphapittahara, Vātavardhaka.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Bhedana-anulomana, Kṛmighna Uttejaka-raktaśodhaka Kaphaghna-śvāsahara, Mūtrala Vṛṣya-ārtavajanana, Kuṣṭhaghna Viṣaghna.
Roga	: Udararoga-vibandha-koṣṭhavikāra Pravāhikā, Kṛmi, Hṛddourbalya Raktavikāra-upadamśa-phiraṅga Jirṇakāsa-śvāsa Mūtrakṛcchra-pūyameha

Śukrameha-kāmaśaitya
Rajorodha-ārtavavikāra
Kuṣtha-tvagvikāra, Viṣa-Jāṅgama.

Therapeutic Use

The herb (*Euphorbia microphylla* Heyne.) is useful as galactagogue.

The recipe of plant, also with other galactagogue drugs is given to nursing mothers suffering with deficient lactation of milk for breast feeding.

It is useful as cardi tonic, aphrodisiac and anthelmintic; it is useful in worms affections, skin diseases and kapha ailments.

The drug plant *Dugdhikā* (*Euphorbia thymifolia* Linn.) is steamed with cooked rice and taken after adding some oil in blood dysentery.

The roots of the plant drug is recommended for chewing or pasting to teeth in dental complaints.

In the greying hairs, the drug pounded with milk is applied as snuff (*nāvana*).

The butter or *Ghṛta* (ghee) cooked with *Dugdhikā* and *kañtakāri* and the recipe is used in bleeding piles.

The latex of two plant is pasted, after rubbing with cowdung, to spoil ringworm. The latex is externally applied to eruptive boils.

The dried leaves and seeds of this plant are aromatic, astringent, stimulant and laxative; and they are given to children in bowel complaints. Juice of the herb is applied to ringworm, and also claimed to be useful against snake bite. The juice is externally applied to skin diseases. The decoction of the roots is given in amenorrhoea.

The plant drug *Dugdhikā* (*Euphorbia hirta* Linn.) is used in diseases of children specially in worms affections, bowel complaints and cough. The latex of herb is topically applied to warts. The herbal juice is useful in dysentery and colic. The decoction of the whole plant is suggested to use in dysentery and colic.

Part used

Whole plant-herb., Roots, Latex.

Dose

Juice 6-12 gms., Decoction 20-40 gms., Paste 5-10 gms.

DUGDHIKĀ (दुग्धिका)

- क. दुग्धिका स्वादुपर्णी स्यात्क्षीरा विक्षीरिणी तथा ।
 ख. दुग्धिकोष्णा गुरु रूक्षा वातला गर्भकारिणी ।
 स्वादुक्षीरा कटुस्तित्ता सृष्टमूत्रमलापहा ॥
 स्वादुर्विष्टम्भिनी वृष्या कफकोष्ठकृमि प्रणुत् ।

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Guḍucyādi Varga, 275-276.

- अ. राजक्षवो दुग्धिनिका दुग्धिका स्वादुपुष्पिका ।
 क्षीरावी क्षीरिका शीता सिताम्बुः मधुपर्णिका ॥
 ब. क्षीरावी मधुरा तिक्ता गुर्वी क्षारा कटुः पटुः ।
 रूक्षोष्णा वातला हृद्या शुक्रला सृष्टमूत्रविट् ॥
 विष्टम्भिनी गर्भहरी कृमिकुष्ठकफप्रणुत् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 694-695.

दन्तरोगे

मूलानि दुग्धिकायाः कमलिन्या वा वराहकर्णा वा ।
 स्तुह्या वा घ्नन्ति गुणं दन्तैः सञ्चर्व्यमाणानि ॥

Rāja Mārtaṇḍa, 5-14, Gada Nigraha, 3-5-100.

प्रवाहिकायाम्

तथा पक्वान्नवाष्पेन स्वित्ना तैनेव भक्षिता ।
 सरक्ता बिम्बिसी हन्यात् सतैला क्षुद्रदुग्धिका ॥

Vaidya Manoramā, 6-14.

विस्फोटे

‘एरण्डफलयुक्ता वा दुग्धिका स्फोटनाशिनी ।’

Gada Nigraha, 2-40-19.

रक्तार्शसि

रक्तं सशूलमथवा निदिग्धिका दुग्धिका सिद्धम् ।

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 14-198.

दुग्धिका कण्टकारीभ्यां सिद्धं सर्पिं प्रशस्यते ॥

Āṣṭāṅga Hr̥daya, Cikitsa, 8-116.

दन्त्रौ

शुष्कगोमयसंघृष्टामजीर्णप्रभवां बुधः ।
दुग्धिकायास्तु दुग्धेन दद्रुनाशार्थं लेपयेत् ॥

Gadanigraha, 2-36-134.

पालित्ये

भिषजा क्षीरपिष्टो वा दुग्धिका करवीरकौ ।
उत्पाट्य पलिते दैर्यान्ताबुमौ पलितापहौ ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā 26-266.

व्रणोरोपणार्थं दूर्वाद्य तैलं घृतञ्च

Cakadatta, Vranasotha Cikitsā, 441-91-92.

शीतपित्तादयाः शमनार्थं दूर्वादिलेपः

दूर्वा निशायुतोलेपः कच्छूपामाविनाशनः ।
क्रिमिदद्रुहरश्चैव शीतपित्तापहः स्मृतः ॥

Cakradatta, 50-6.

DŪRVĀ

Botanical Name : *Cynodon dactylon* (Linn.) Pers.

Family : Poaceae (Gramineae)

Classical Name : Dūrvā

Sanskrit Names

Dūrvā, Śataparvā, Golomī, Śatavīryā.

Regional Names

Dub, Dubarha (Hi.), Durva (Beng.), Dobda (Punj.), Arugampulla (Tam.), Harvali (Tel.), Usva (Arab.), Marg. (Pers.), Doob Grass.

Description

Perennial glabrous grass; stem slender, prostrate, widely creeping, forming matted tufts; with slender erect or ascending flowering branches 7.5-30 cm. high.

Leaves 2-10 cm. by 1.25-3 mm., narrowly linear or lanceolate, finely acute to pungent, more or less glaucous, soft, smooth, usually conspicuously distichous in the barren

shoots and at the base of stems; sheaths tight, glabrous or hairy, sometimes bearded at the mouth; ligule a very fine ciliate rim.

Spikes 2-6, radiating from the top of a slender peduncle, 2.5-5 cm. long, green or purplish; rachis slender, compressed or angled, scaberulous. Spikelets 1.8-2.5 mm. long; rachilla produced, very slender, equalling half the length of the spikelets.

Invoulcral glumes lanceolate, acute to sublate-mucronulate, the lower 1-1.6 mm. long, the upper slightly longer; floral glume obliquely oblong to semiovate, about 2 mm. long. Anthers oblong, 1 mm. long. Grains 1.05 mm. long.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Throughout the year.

Distribution

It is a cosmopolitan plant. Very commonly found grass; everywhere in country.

Chemical Composition

Plant contains glucose.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Madhura, Kaṣāya, Tikta.
Gūṇa	: Laghu, Snigdha.
Vīrya	: Śītā
Vipāka	: Madhura
Doṣakarma	: Tridoṣahara-kaphapittaśāmaka.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Prajāsthapana-garbhapoṣaka Raktastambhana, Raktaśodhaka Mūtrala Kuṣṭhaghna-tvacya-varṇya, Jivaniya Viṣaghna, Medhya-śāmaka Chardinigrahaṇa, Stambhana Tṛṣṇānigrahaṇa Grahabhūtavadhāhara, Tṛptida Śramahā, Dāhapraśamana Rucikara.
--------------	---

Roga

- a) **Ābhyantrā** : Yonivyapāda, Garbhasrāva-garbhapāta, Pradararoga
Mūtravikāra-mūtrakṛcchra
Raktapitta-raktasrāva-nāsāsra
Atisāra-pravāhikā, Arśa
Chardi-tṛṣṇā-dāha-mūrchā
Mastiṣka dourbalya-savedanā vikāra
Unmāda-apasmāra, Tvagdoṣa-kuṣṭha-
Dourbalya-kṣaya.
- b) **Bāhya** : Kṣata-vraṇa-arśa-dāha
Netrābhiṣyanda, Paittikaśiroroga
Visarpa, Śitapitta
Carma-Vraṇa vikāra-dadru-
kacchu-pānā
Jantu Vikāra, Vraṇa.

Therapeutic Use

The juice of the herb is astringent, and used as application to fresh cuts and wounds. It is diuretic, used in dropsy and anasarca; and it is given in hysteria, epilepsy, insanity and mental troubles. Juice is orally used as an astringent in diarrhoea and dysentery. The juice is useful in catarrhal ophthalmia.

The crushed roots are mixed with curds used in chronic gleet. Infusion of the roots is used for checking bleeding from piles.

The decoction of the roots is used in diarrhoea, dropsy and secondary syphilis.

The juice of the herb is put into nostrils (nasya or bindu pātana) in condition of epistaxis (nāsāgata raktapitta) which is an effective remedy.

The roots decoction is given in secondary syphilis. A cold infusion of herb is given in piles for checking the blood in haemorrhoids.

The herb is applied to parasitic affections. The plant or rhizome is applied to gout and rheumatic affections.

Part Used

Whole plant, leaves and roots.

Dose

Juice 12-24gms.; 10-20 ml., Powder 1-3 gms.,
Decoction 50-100 gms.

Formulations (yoga)

Dūrvādi Kvātha, Dūrvādyā ghr̥ta, Dūrvādyā taila,
Dūrvādi lapa.

Groups (gaṇa)

Prajāsthāpana, Varṇya (Caraka).

DŪRVĀ (दूर्वा)**नीलदूर्वा**

- क. नीलदूर्वारुहाऽऽनन्ता भार्गवी शतपर्विका ।
शष्यं सहस्रवीर्या च शतवल्लीं च कीर्तिता ॥
- ख. नीलदूर्वा हिमा तिक्ता मधुरा तुवरा हरेत् ।
कफपित्तास्रवीसर्प तृष्णा दाहत्वगामयान् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Guḍūcyādi Varga, 173.

श्वेतदूर्वा

- क. दूर्वाशुक्ला तु गोलमी शतवीर्या च कथ्यते ।
ख. श्वेता दूर्वा कषाया स्यात्स्वाद्धी व्रण्या च जीवनी ।
तिक्ता हिमा विसर्पास्रतृट् पित्तकफदाहहृत् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Guḍūcyādi Varga, 174.

दूर्वात्रय दूर्वा-नीलदूर्वा

- अ. हरिता शाद्वलं वृष्यं श्यामाङ्गी श्यामवल्ल्यपि ॥
नीलदूर्वा सहानन्ता भार्गवी शतपर्विका ।
शस्यं सहस्रवीर्या च शीतवल्ली च कीर्तिता ॥
- ब. नीलदूर्वा हिमा तिक्ता मधुरा तुवरा हरेत् ।
(शीतवीर्या नीलदूर्वा गोलोमी शतपर्विका ।
शतवीर्या नमस्कार्या शितवल्लियसिता मता ॥
दूर्वा स्वाद्धी हिमा तिक्ता कषाया जीवनी जयेत्) ।
कफपित्तास्रविसर्प तृषादाहत्वगामयान् ।

श्वेतदूर्वा

- अ. श्वेतदूर्वा श्वेतदण्डी श्वेतकाण्डा सिता लता ।

- सहस्रवीर्याऽनन्ता च दुष्करा भार्गवी रुहा ॥
 श्वेतदूर्वा च गोलोमी शतवीर्या च कथ्यन्ते ।
 ब. श्वेतदूर्वा कषाया स्यात् स्याद्गी वर्ण्या च जीवनी ।
 तिक्ता हिमा विसर्पास्त्रतृट्पित्तकफदाहजित् ॥
 (श्वेतदूर्वा हिमा स्वाद्गी कफवातास्रदाहहा ।) ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 1232-1233.

गण्डदूर्वा

- अ. मत्स्याक्षको मत्स्यगन्धा वाल्ही नाडी कलायकः ॥
 मत्स्यादनी तु गण्डाक्षी तथा गर्त कलंबुकः ॥
 ब. मत्स्याक्षास्तुवरस्तिक्तः कषायो मधुरो हिमः ॥
 कटुपाको लघुर्ग्राही लोहद्राव्यनिल प्रदः ।
 बलास पित्ततृष्णास्त्रकुष्ठदाह ज्वरापहः ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 1234-1236.

दूर्वा-नीलदूर्वा

- स्यात्रीलदूर्वा हरिता च शाम्भवी
 श्यामा च शान्ता शतपर्विकाऽमृता ।
 पूता शतग्रन्थिरनुष्ण वल्लिका
 शिवा शिवेष्टाऽपि च मङ्गला जया ॥
 सुभगा भूतहन्त्री च शतमूला महौषधी ।
 अमृता विजया गौरी शान्ता स्यादेकविंशतिः ॥

दूर्वा-नीलदूर्वागुणाः

- नीलदूर्वा तु मधुरा तिक्ता शिशिररोचनी ।
 रक्तपित्तातिसारघ्नी कफवातज्वरापहा ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Śalmalyādi Varga, 106-108.

गोलोमी-दूर्वाभेदः

- स्याद्गोलोमी श्वेतदूर्वा सिताख्या
 चण्डा भद्रा भार्गवी दुर्मरा च ।
 गौरी विघ्ने शानकान्ताऽप्यनन्ता
 सहस्रवीर्या च सहस्रकाण्डा
 सहस्रपर्वा सुरवल्लभा च ।

शुभा सुपर्वा च सितच्छदा च
स्वच्छा च कन्धान्तरुहाऽब्धिहस्ता ॥

गोलोमी गुणाः

श्वेतदूर्वा ऽतिशिशिरा मधुरा वान्तिपित्तजित् ।
आमातिसार कासघ्नी रुच्या दाहतृषापहा ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Śālmalyādi Varga, 109-111.

मालादूर्वा

मालादूर्वा वल्लिदूर्वाऽलिदूर्वा मालाग्रन्थिग्रन्थिलाग्रन्थिदूर्वा ।
मूलग्रन्थिर्वल्ली ग्रान्थिमूला रोहत्पर्वा पर्ववल्ली सिताख्या ॥

मालादूर्वा गुणाः

(मालादूर्वा) वल्लिदूर्वा सुमधुरा तिक्ता च शिशिरा च सा ।
पित्तदोषप्रशमनी कफवान्तिषापहा ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Śālmalyādi Varga, 112-113.

रक्तपित्ते दूर्वाऽऽद्य घृतम्

Bhāvaprakāśa, Raktapittādhikāra, 9-32/36.

कुष्ठे दूर्वाद्यलेपः

Cakradatta, 50-20.

दूर्वासाधारण गुणाः

दूर्वाः कषाया मधुराश्च शीताः पित्तातृषाऽरोचक वान्तिहन्ताः ।
सदाहमूर्च्छाग्रहभूतशान्ति श्लेष्ममध्वंसनतृप्तिदिश्वः ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Śālmalyādi Varga, 117.

DVĪPĀNĀRAVACĀ

Botanical Name

Smilax glabra Roxb.

Smilax china Linn.

Family : Liliaceae

Classical Name : Dvīpāntaravacā

Sanskrit Names

Dvīpāntaravacā, Copacīnī, Madhusnuhī.

Regional names

Harna Shukochina (Bengal), Chopchini, chobchini, Barichopchini (Hindi).

Description

Climbing shrub with slender branchlets, terete, smooth, unarmed.

Leaves rather than, 7.5-15 by 3.2-5.7 cm., elliptic or ovate, lanceolate, acuminate, 3-costate to the rounded or cuneate base, petiole 13-17 mm., narrowly sheathing, unarmed, sheath 8-17 mm. long, axillary; cirrhi very slender.

Ombals subsessile, many-flowered; peduncle ebracteate; pedicels 6-8 mm.; bracteoles subulate; flowers very small, white; buds depressed globose, deeply 6-lobed from the groove on the back of the obovate cucullate, coraceous sepals; petals minute; stamens very short; staminodes in female flowers.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Post-rains to Autumn.

Distribution

It is found in Assam, Lower Khasia hills and other regions in country.

Chemical Composition

Roots contain fat, sugar, glucoside, colouring matter saponin, gum and starch.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Tikta
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Tridoṣaśāmaka.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Raktaśodhaka-raktaprasādana Śothahara (Resagranthi-tvacā-snāyu prabhāvaka) Dīpana-Anulomana-sāraka
--------------	---

Vṛṣya-śukraśodhana
Mūtrala-mūtra viśodhini
Svedajanana-Kuṣṭhaghna
Kaṭupouṣṭika, Naḍībalya-vātahara.

Roga

: Raktavikara-raktāduṣṭi
Upadamśa-phiraṅga
Śothā gaṇḍamālā
Klaibya-śukavikāra
Agnimāndya-ādhmāna, Udaraśūla
Kṛmiroga, Mūtravikāra-pūyameha
Sandhivikāra-sandhiśotha-jādyā
Carmaroga-kuṣṭha, Dourbalya
Unmāda-apasmāra
Vātavyādhi-pakṣāghāta-āmavāta-
sandhivāta, Dourbalya.

Therapeutic Use

The decoction of fresh roots is used in venereal complaints and sores.

The roots are good remedy in venereal diseases specially in gonorrhoea; it is prescribed in second and third stage and also for other complications.

It is useful in gout, rheumatism, and other joints complaints. It is used in skin diseases, leprosy and blood impurities; it is useful in epilepsy, insanity, insomnia, fever and debility. It is a blood purifier drug and used in inflammatory affections of glands and goitre.

The roots are aphrodisiac; and the roots are boiled in milk and given in seminal and sexual diseases.

Part used

Roots- Rhizome.

Dose

Powder 3-6 gms. (preference for powder),
Decoction 20-40 gms.

Formulation (Yoga)

Copacīnī pāka (Yoga Ratnākara)
Madhusnuhī Rasāyana (Sahasrayoga).

DVĪPĀNṬARAVACĀ (द्वीपान्तरवचा)

- क. द्वीपान्तरवचा किञ्चित्कोष्णा वह्नि दीप्तिकृत् ।
विबन्धाध्मान शूलघ्नी शकृन्मूत्रविशोधिनी ॥
- ख. वातव्याधीनपस्मारमुन्मादं तनुवेदनाम् ।
व्यपोहति विशेषेण फिरङ्गामयनाशिनी ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Haritakyādi Varga, 107-108.

‘फिरङ्गदेशसम्भूता चीनदेशेऽथ विश्रुता ।
नामतश्चोपचीनी स्यादश्वगन्धासमा भवेत् ॥
अश्वगन्धासमं पत्रमौषधिः ग्रन्थिसंयुक्ता ।
वर्णतः पाटलाभा च ।’

Śivadatta.

फिरङ्ग रोगे

चोपचीनी भवं चूर्णं शाणमानं समाक्षिकम् ।
फिरङ्ग व्याधिनाशाय भक्षयेल्लवणं त्यजेत् ॥

Bhaiṣajya Ratnāvalī.

फिरङ्गोपचारार्थं चोपचीनी चूर्णमालवण प्रयोगः

[लवणं यदि वा त्यक्तुं न शक्नोति यदा जनः ।
सैन्धवं स हि भुञ्जीत मधुरं परमं हितम् ॥]

Bhāvaprakāśa, Phiraṅgādhikāra, 59-24.

रसायनार्थम्

चोपचीनी पाकः

Yoga Ratnākara, p. 334.

मधुस्तुही रसायनम्

Sahasrayoga, p. 239.

फिरङ्गरोगे

भूनिम्बादिक्वाथः ।

Sahasrayoga, p. 78.

सन्धिवाते (उपदंशजे)

उसब्धाचोपचीनीभ्यां क्वाथो माक्षिकमाक्षिकः ।
सन्धिवातं विशेषेण निःशेषयति पथ्यतः ॥

Siddhabhaiṣajya Maṇimālā, 4-477.

ELĀDVAYA**A. ELĀ—SŪKṢMAILĀ**

Botanical Name : *Eletharia cardamomum* Matom.

Family : Scitamineaceae

Classical name : Elā-sūkṣmailā-kṣudrailā

Sanskrit names

Elā, Tripuṭā-truṭi, Sūkṣmā, Drāviṇī, Upakuṅcikā, Sūkṣmai(e)lā-kṣudra (ai) lā.

Regional names

Choti Ilayachi (Hi.), Chot Elach (Beng.), Elachi (Guj.), Yelachi (Mar.), Illai (Tam., Tel.), Kakul (Arabic), Iloyachi Khurd Hilbak (Pers.), Lesser Cardamom (Eng.).

Description

Rootstock woody or fleshy, branching; stem 1.8-2.7 meters high, clothed below with spongy sheaths.

Leaves subsessile, 30-60 by 7-5 cm., oblong-lanceolate. Panicles several to one leafy stem, 30-60 cm. long; bracts linear-oblong, persistent, 3.3-5 cm. long. Calyx 13 mm. long. Lip of corolla white, streaked with violet.

Capsules subglobose or oblong, about 13 mm. long, marked with many fine vertical ribs.

Distribution

It is found in Malabar, on the Western Ghats, Cultivated in Southern India; wild or cultivated.

Chemical Composition

Seeds contain fixed oil 10 percent, volatile oil 5 percent, potassium salt 3 percent, mucilaginous matter 2 percent, yellow colouring matter, ash 5-10 percent (containing maganese).

Seeds contain essential oil; principal constituents of the oil are cineol, terpineol, terpinene, limonene, subinone and terpineol in the forms of formic and acetic acids.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa : Kaṭu

Guṇa : Madhura, Laghu, Rūkṣa.

Vīrya	: Śīta
Vipāka	: Madhura
Doṣakarma	: Tridoṣahara

Action and Properties

Karma	: Dāhapraśamana, Mukhaśodhana-durgandhanāśana Rocana-dīpana-pācana, Anulomana Chardinigrahaṇa, Tṛṣṇānigrahaṇa Hṛdya, Kaphaniḥsāraka, Mūtrajanana Dāhaśāmaka, Balya, Arśoghna.
Roga	: Dāha, Tṛṣṇā, Vamana-Hṛllāsa Truci- Mukha vairasya Agnimāndya-Udaraśūla-Ādhmāna Arśa, Mūtrakṛcchra, Dourbalya Kṣaya, Kāsa-śvāsa, Hṛddourbalya Vāta-pitta-kapha vikāra.

Therapeutic Uses

It is aromatic, cardiac, carminative, deodorant, digestive, diuretic, expectorant, purgative, stimulant, thirst reliever and tonic. It is useful in asthma, burning sensation, cold and cough, colic, debility and pthisis, diseases of the urinary bladder and kidney, flatulence, heart weakness, indigestion, scanty urine and piles.

The fruits are mainly used as refrigerent, carminative, expectorant and anodyne medicine in various ailments.

The fruits and seeds are commonly used as a major and valuable spice in food items and its oil is useful as aromatic oil utilised in certain purposes.

The fruits are put in water to prepare an infusion (or in other form) which is quite useful for countering the condition of thirst in excess, burning sensation, nausea, loss of appetite, flatulence, dyspepsia and other gastric trouble, it is general tonic antidotal cardiac and favourable to respiratory system and quite effective in urinary troubles.

Parts Used : Fruits-seeds.

Dose : 5-10 grains.

Formulations (yoga)

Elādi cūrṇa, Elādi Guṭikā, Elādvariṣṭa, Elādīmodaka, Elādīkvātha, Tālisādi cūrṇa, Sitopalādi cūrṇa, Candanādi vaṭī.

Groups (gaṇa)

Kaṭukaskandha, śvāsahara, Aṅgamardapraśamana, Śirovirecana (Caraka). Elādi (Suśruta).

B. BRHADELĀ

Botanical Name : *Amomum subulatum* Roxb.

Family : Scitamineaceae

Classical name : Bṛhadelā

Sanskrit Names

Bṛhadelā, Bhadrailā, Bahulā, Pṛthvikā, Sthulāsthulailā, Hareṇuka.

Regional Names

Bari Ilayachi (Hindi.), Bar elach, Nepali Elach (Beng.), Elam (Tam.), Elacha (Guj.), Pengayelakulu (Tel.), Kabule Kubar (Arab.) Hil kalan, Ilayachi surk (Pers.); Greater Cardamon (Eng.).

Description

Leafy stem 0.9-1.2 meters.

Leaves 30-60 by 7.5-10 cm. oblong-lanceolate, green, glabrous on both surfaces.

Spike globose, very dense, shortly peduncled, 5-7.5 cm.; bracts red-brown, obtuse, outer 2.5 cm., ovate, with a honey cusp, inner shorter. Calyx and corolla-tube, 2.5 cm.; segments subobtuse, shorter than the tube, upper, cuspidate. Lip obovate-cuneate, emarginate yellowish white, rather longer than the corolla segments. Filaments very short; anther crest, small, truncate, entire.

Capsule 2.5 cm., globose, red-brown, densely echinate.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Rainy season to autumn season.

Distribution

It is found in Eastern Himalayas, and also in other hilly regions.

Chemical Composition

Seeds yield an aromatic oil which contains high content of cineole. Seeds contain essential oil.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṭu, Tikta.
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa.
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Tridoṣaśāmaka

Action and Properties

Karma	: Dāhapraśamana Dourgandhyanāśāna Tvagdoṣahara-Kaṇḍūghna Vraṇaropaṇa, Śūlahara Rocana-dīpana-pācana Pittasāraka-Anulomana Hṛdayottejaka, Kaphaniḥsāraka Mūtrala, Jvaraghna, Kaṭupouṣṭika Viṣaghna, Vedanāsthāpana.
Roga	: Dāha, Śūla, Vedanāpradhāna Vātavyādhi, Kāsa-śvāsa, Mūtrakṛcchra Carmaroga-kaṇḍū, Jvara, Dourbalya Viṣa, Aruci-mukhavairasya, Hṛllāsa- vamaṇa, Tṛṣṇā, Agnimāndya Ādhmāna, Yakṛdvikāra, Arśa Mukharoga-dantaroga, Śiraḥśūla.

Therapeutic Uses

The seeds are aromatic and stomachic. They are useful in neuralgic, gonorrhoea, and seminal disorders, including sexual debility or impotency being an aphrodisiac. They are good aphrodisiac. They are also considered an antidote to snake-bite and scorpion-sting.

The oil obtained from the seeds are aromatic, stimulant and stomachic; and it is applied to eyelids for allaying inflammation.

The seeds are emmenagogue, Cooling, laxative, abortifacient and masticatory. They are useful in cough, bronchitis, asthma, strangury and diseases of liver, spleen, throat and rectum. They are useful in headache, toothache, scabies, earache, and inflammation. The seeds are administered in flatulence, gripping and colic. They are useful in nausea and vomiting.

The seeds infusion (cool) is given in excess thirst.

The fruits and seeds are highly valuable as aromatic condiment and spice among food items including culinary utility.

Parts Used : Fruits-seeds.

Dose : 10-20 grains.

ELA-ELADVAYA (एला-एलाद्वय)

एला-क्षुद्रैला-सूक्ष्मैला

सूक्ष्मैला मूत्रकृच्छ्रांशः श्वासकासकफापहा ।
(रसैस्तु कटुका शीता लघ्वी वातहरी मता ।)

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 1342.

एलासूक्ष्मा कफश्वासकासांशो मूत्रकृच्छ्रहत् ।
रसे तु कटुका शीता लघ्वी वातहरी मता ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Karpurādi Varga, 63.

बृहदेला-स्थूलैला-भद्रैला

भद्रैला कटुका पाके रसे पित्ताग्नि कृल्लघुः ॥
रूक्षोष्णा रोचनी कासकफवातास्रश्वासहा ।
हन्ति हल्लासतृट्कण्डू शिरोवस्त्यास्यरुग्वमी ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi, Varga, 1343-1344.

स्थूलैला कटुका पाके रसे चानलकृल्लघुः ॥
रूक्षोष्णा श्लेष्मपित्तास्रकण्डूरवासतृषाऽपहा ।
हल्लास विषवस्त्यास्यशिरोरुग्वमिकासंनुत् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Karpurādi Varga, 62.

एला द्वयं शीतलतिक्तमुक्तं सुगन्धि पित्तार्तिकफापहारि ।
करोति हृद्रोग मलार्तिं बस्ति शूलश्रमघ्नमत्र-स्थविरा गुणाढ्या ॥

Rāja Nighantu, Pippalyādi Varga, 87.

सूक्ष्मैला मूत्रकृच्छ्रघ्नी रवासकास क्षये हिता ।
सूक्ष्मैला शीतला स्वाद्वीं हृद्या रोचन दीपनी ॥

Dhanvantari Nighaṅṭu.

‘सूक्ष्मैला मूत्रकृच्छ्रार्शःश्वासकासक्षये हिता ।’
सूक्ष्मैलाममागधीमूलं प्रलीढं सर्पिष सह ।
नाशयत्याशु हृद्रोगं गुल्मानपि विशेषतः ॥

Śodhala.

दुःसाध्य मूत्रकृच्छ्रप्रतिकारार्थं एलादिचूर्णम्

एलाऽश्मभेदक शिलाजतुपिप्पलीनां चूर्णानि तण्डुलजलैर्लुलितानि पीत्वा ।
यद्वागुडेन सहितान्यवलिहय सम्यगासन्न मृत्युरपिजीवति मूत्रकृच्छ्री ॥

Cakradatta, 32-24.

मूत्राघाते मूत्रकृच्छ्रे च एलादि कषायः ।

Gadamigraha, 2-27-37.

‘एलादध्यम्भसा पीता मूत्रकृच्छ्रहरीमता ।’

Gadamigraha, 2-27-44.

एलादि गुटिका विधिः

क. एलापत्र त्वचोऽर्धाक्षाः पिप्पल्यर्धपलं तथा ।
सितामधुकखर्जूरमृद्धीकाश्च पलोन्मिताः ॥
संचूर्ण्य मधूना युक्ता गुटिकाः संप्रकल्पयेत् ।

सेवनम्

ख. अक्षमात्रां ततश्चैकां भक्षयेन्ना दिने दिने ॥

गुणाः

ग. कासंश्वासं ज्वरं हिक्कां छर्दिं मूच्छां मदं भ्रमम् ।
रक्तनिष्ठीवनं तृष्णां पार्श्वशूलमरोचकम् ।
शोषप्लीहाढ्यवातांश्च स्वरभेदं क्षतं क्षयम् ।
गुटिका तर्पणी वृष्या रक्तपित्तं च नाशयेत् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 26=249.

नेत्ररोगे एलाचूर्णाञ्जनम्

बस्तमूत्रे त्र्यहं स्थाप्यमेलाचूर्णं सुभावितम् ।
चूर्णाञ्जनं हि तैमिर्यं क्रिमिपिण्डमलापहम् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā 26-249.

हृद्रोगे

सूक्ष्मैलामागधीमूलं प्रलीढं सर्पिषा सह ।
नाशयत्याशु हृद्रोगं गुल्मानपि विशेषतः ॥

Baṅgasena, Hṛdroga, 28.

छर्दे एलादि चूर्णम्

Bhāvaprakāśa, Chhardyadhikāra, 17-22.

सोमरोगे

स एव सरुजः सोमः स्रवेन्मूत्रेण चेन्मुहुः ।
तत्रैलापत्रचूर्णेन पाययेद्धारुणीं सुराम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Somarogādihikāra, 69-9.

मूत्रकृच्छ्रे सूक्ष्मैला चूर्णम्

मूत्रेण सुरया वाऽपि कदली स्वरसेन वा ।
कफकृच्छ्रं विनाशाय श्लक्ष्णं पिष्ट्वा त्रुटिपिबेत् ॥

Cakradatta, Mūtrakṛcchra Cikitsā, 32-11.

शीतपित्तविकारे एलादि गणः (सुश्रुतोक्त)

‘तैलोद्धर्तनयोगेन योज्य एलादिको गणः ।’

Cakradatta, Udardkoṭhasītapitta Cikitsā, 50-11.

मूत्रदोषे शूकदोषे च

एलाहिङ्गयुतं क्षीरं सर्पिमिश्रं पिबेन्नरः ।
मूत्रदोषं विशुद्ध्यर्थं शूकदोषहरं च तत् ॥

Vṛndamādhava, 32-18.

मूत्रकृच्छ्रे

‘धात्रीफलरसेनैवं सूक्ष्मैलां च पिबेन्नरः ।’

Suśruta Samhitā, Uttara, 58-41.

रक्तप्रवर्तनार्थम्

‘अथ खल्वप्रवर्तमाने रक्ते एलाशीतशिव कुष्ठतगर

पाठा.....चूर्णीकृतैर्लवणतैलप्रगाढैर्ब्रणमुखमवर्षयेत्,
एवं सम्यक् प्रवर्त्तते ।'

Suśruta Samhitā, Sūtra 14-35.

बृहदेला (हरेणुका)

ज्वरे

अर्गुर्वाद्य तैले ।

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 3-267.

उन्मादे

महाकल्याणघृते ।

Suśruta Samhitā, Uttar, 62-25.

कासे

'हरेणुकां मागधिकां च तुल्यां दध्ना पिबेत्-कासगदाभिभूतः ।'

Suśruta Samhitā, Uttara, 52-19.

नेत्ररोगे (दिनरात्र्यन्धयोः)

आम्रजम्बूद्भवं पुष्पं तद्रसेन हरेणुकम् ।

पिष्ट्वा क्षौद्राज्यसंयुक्तं प्रयोज्यमथवाऽञ्जनम् ॥

Suśruta Samhitā, Uttara, 17-10.

सर्पविषे

व्योषं सातिविषं कुष्ठं गृहधूमं हरेणुका ।

तगरं कटुका क्षौद्रं हन्ति राजीमतां शिवाम् ॥

Suśruta Samhitā, Uttara, 62-25.

मूत्राघाते मूत्रकृच्छ्रे च

एलां वाऽप्यथ मद्येन क्षीरं वापि पिबेन्नरः ।

धात्रीफलानां स्वरसं सजलं वा पिबेत् त्र्यहम् ॥

Suśruta Samhitā, Uttara, 55-22.

पिबेच्चमद्येन सूक्ष्मेलामलकरसेन वा,

मधुयुतां वा कदलीरसेन कैडर्यकरसेन वा ।

Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha, Cikitsā, 13-5;

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Cikitsā, 11-10.

सौवर्चलाढ्यां मदिरां मूत्रे त्वभिहते पिबेत् ।

एलां वाऽप्यथ मद्येन क्षीत्वारि पिबेद् बुधः ॥

Vṛndamādhava, 28-14.

दाडिमाम्बुयुतं मुख्यमेलाबीजं सनागरम् ।
पीत्वा सुरां सलवणं मुखघाताद् विमुच्यते ॥

Vṛndamādhava, 33-7.

मूत्रेणसुरया वापि कदली स्वरसेन वा,
कफकृच्छ्रविनाशाय श्लक्ष्णं पिष्ट्वा त्रुटि पिबेत् ॥

Vṛndamādhava, 32-9.

ERANḌA

Botanical Name : *Ricinus communis* Linn.

Family : Euphorbiaceae

Classical Name : Eraṇḍa

Sanskrit Names

Eraṇḍa, Gandharvahasta, Pancāṅgula, Vardhamāna, Dīrghadaṇḍa, Vātāri, Citraka-citra, Uttānapatraka, Caṅcu, Urubūka, Vyāghrapuacha, Caṅcu, Vyadambaka.

Regional Names

Rendi, Erandi (Hind., Mar., Guj.), Bhaerand (Beng.), Amonakku (Tam.), Arandama, Amadam (Tel.), Ved Anjir (Pers.), Khirba (Arab.), Bherenj (Beng.), Erandi (Mar.), Eranda, Erandio, (Guj.), Chittamant (Tam.), Castor-oil plant (Eng.).

Description

A tall glabrous and glaucous annual, sometimes shrubby or tree like.

Leaves alternate, broad, palmately lobed; lobes 7 or more, serrate. Flowers monoecious, rather large, in terminal subpaniculate, racemes. Perianth simple and without any disk, the male flowers crowded in the upper portion of the inflorescences, the females below. Male flowers : calyx membranous, splitting valvately into 3-5 segments. Stamens very many; filaments connate and repeatedly branched; anthers with distinct distant subglobose divergent cells. Pistillode none. Female flowers : calyx spathaceous, caducous; ovary 3-celled; styles entire, 2-fid or 2-partite; ovules solitary in each cell.

Fruit a prickly capsule of these 2-valved cocci. Seeds oblong, testa crustaceous, albumen fleshy; cotyledons broad.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Autumn season to Spring season.

Distribution

It is widely cultivated in tropical regions, and naturalised near the inhabitations.

Varieties and Kinds

Besides the varieties prevalent in castor seeds farming with regional and oil-yield considerations. There are two (textual) varieties of the plant drug viz. red (raktairāṇḍa) and white (śuklairaṇḍa). The stem and leaves of former variety is of red colour, and the oil of red seeds is mostly used. The latter variety i.e. white contains two kinds of small and big; and the seeds, leaves, roots etc. of small type are considered useful in medicine. According to the age factor, the plants are two types viz. annual and perennial; and the quantity of oil is higher in bigger seeds.

Chemical Composition

Plant contains alkaloid ricinine, toxalbumin ricin and is fixed oil.

It contains fixed oil 45 percent, mansasara 20 percent, mucilaginous matter, sugar, white matter and alkaline 10 percent. In addition, seeds contain ricin. The oil is soluble in alcohol which contains chiefly ricin, oleate, palmitine and styrene.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Madhura, Kaṭu, Kaṣāya
Guṇa	: Guru, Snigdha, Tīkṣṇa, Sūkṣma
Virya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Madhura
Doṣakarman	: Kaphavātaśāmaka, Pitavardhaka Pittaśāmaka (taila-oil).

Action and Properties

Karma	: Vedanāsthāpana, Śūlahara Medhya, Aṅgamardapraśamana Dīpana, Bhedana
-------	---

Kṛmighna-kriminiḥsāraka
 Snehana, Hṛdya-śothahara
 Kaphaghna, Mūtraviśodhana
 Vṛṣya-stanyajanana
 Śukraśodhana, Garbhāśayaśodhana
 Balya, Vayaḥsthāpana, Viśaghna
 Svedopaga, Kuṣṭhaghna
 Svedajanana-jvaraghna
 Eraṇḍa-śuṅthīkvāth
 Eraṇḍamūlapalāśadi-yāpana basti
 Eraṇḍādi yoga
 Eraṇḍamūlādi kṣīrapāka
 Eraṇḍādi, Varti
 Eraṇḍa tailam, Eraṇḍapatrakṣāram
 Rubukādi Kvātha.

Roga

: Nāḍīśūla-pakṣāghāta-Ardita-
 kampavāta-Gṛdhrasī
 Āmavāta-katiśūla-pārśvaśūla-
 Sandhiśoṭha-vātarakla, Vātayādhi
 Nāḍīdaurbalya
 Śiraḥśūla-Aṅgamarda
 Udararoga-śūla-gulma, Agnimāndya
 Arśa, Kṛmiroga, Yakṛta-plihavikāra
 Hṛdayaśūla-śoṭharoga, Kāsa-śvāsa
 Mūtrakṛcchra-Bastiśūla-mūtravikāra
 Stanaśoṭha-kaṅṭhaśoṭha
 Kaphavātaroga-Vātavikāra-
 paittika vikāra, Jvara
 Śukrameha-śukravikāra
 Stanyadoṣa-yonivyāpat
 Vṛddhiroga, Kuṣṭha-Raktavikāra-
 Carmavikāra.

Therapeutic Uses

The seeds are purgative and counter-irritant; they are antidote to scorpion-sting and fish poison. The oil from the seeds is purgative. The leaves are applied to head for relieving headache and as a poultice applied to boils.

The leaf juice is given as an emetic in narcotic poisoning. A decoction of the leaves is a purgative, lactagogue and emmenagogue. A poultice of the leaves is applied to boils and swellings. The warm leaves, coated with some bland oil, are applied over the abdomen of children to relieve flatulence. The leaves are applied to pubic region of women to promote the menstrual flow.

The decoction of the roots alone or with the addition of other suitable ingredient drug (s) is given in various conditions of nervine, joints and muscular disorders. The root bark is powerful purgative. A paste of the roots is applied to toothache.

The juice of leaves is useful, being an emetic, in narcotic poisoning. The decoction of leaves is a purgative useful as lactagogue and emmenagogue in different ailments. A poultice of the leaves is applied to boils and swellings, after oleation as the leaves coated with an oil are warmed up and put on lesions. Similarly the leaves may be applied to swollen breasts during lactation to settle the mammary glands; and they are also applied over a guinea-worm sore for extracting the worms.

The seeds (containing ricinine, ricin and a potent vegetable toxin which remains in the oil cake after oil extracted) are used in various diseases. A paste of the seeds kernel (after eliminating embryo) is first boiled in milk and water and a recipe is prepared; it is given rheumatism, lumbago and sciatica and other similar diseases. Externally, the poultice of the seeds is applied to scrofulous sores boils and the swellings of gout and rheumatic disorders. The kernel of the seeds is purgative and useful against the diseases caused by vitiation of vāta and kapha humours (doṣa).

The oil extraction from the seeds (castor seeds), is of mainly two types, one is cold method and another, hot method (śīta tāila and uṣṇa tāila vidhi) firstly the seeds are expressed without heating or boiling-ordinarily to obtain oil which is colourless or light yellowish, odourless and slightly pungent and secondly, the seeds are boiled in water or little heat is given after expressing the seeds and the quantity of the oil obtained is higher. The castor oil (Eraṇḍa

bīja taila) is produced with developed techniques of extraction, collection, refining etc. and utilised commercial on scale and it is variously used in medicine and cosmetics.

The oil of the seeds is used as purgative and it is used as emulsion (with gum acacia) in dysentery (in old pharmaceuticals/dispensing). The oil is little warmed up and topically used for applying over swellings and pains of joints and body organs in different ailing conditions.

Various parts of the plant such as seeds, seeds-oil, roots, root-bark, flowers and leaves are used in different forms in treatment of several diseases; they also enter in a number of formulations or recipes prescribed in treatment of various ailments.

The herbal drug (source plant is one of the common oil yielding seed-plants) belongs to an important group of medicines and it is generally useful mainly in gout, rheumatism, arthritis, sciatica, neuralgia, paralysis, nerve complaints, headache, odema, heat troubles including angina, abdominal disorders, colic, haemorrhoids, worms, liver and splenic, disorders, vibandha (baddhakoṣṭha), cough, asthma, spermatorrhoea, seminal diseases, vaginal complaints, general debility, insect-bites poisoning, lactation disorders, skin diseases, throat affections, urinary and calculus complaints, ophthalmic troubles, earache, wounds and ulcers, obesity, fever, corn and warts, trauma and other ailing conditions and recommended in medical texts under suitable modes of administration.

Parts Used : Roots, Leaves, Seeds, Oil.

Dose

Roots 3-6 gms., Leaves 10-20 gms., Seeds 2-6, Oil 20-40 gms.

Formulations (yoga)

Eraṇḍapāka, Eraṇḍamūlādi Kvātha, Eraṇḍasaptaka Kvātha, Rāsnāpañcaka Kvātha, Vātarakla.

Groups (gaṇa)

Bhedanīya, Svedopaga, Aṅgamardapraśamana, madhuraskandha (Caraka.), Vidarigandhādi, Adhobhā-gahara, Vātasamśamana (Suśruta.).

ERANDA (एरण्ड)

क. (श्वेत) एरण्डम्

एरण्डो मधुरो वृष्यो गुरूष्णो मार्गशोधनः ।

कफपित्तनिलश्वासकासवध्माश्मनाशनः ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighanṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 115.

गुल्मप्लीहोदरानाहकटीबस्तिशिरोरुजि ।

मेहज्वरामवातास्रशूलशोफेषु शस्यते ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighanṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 116.

एरण्ड पत्रम्

एरण्डपत्रं वातघ्न कफक्रिमि विनाशनम् ।

रक्तपित्तप्रकोपि स्यात् मूत्रदोषं जयेदपि ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighanṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 117.

एरण्डपल्लवम्

गुल्मं च बस्तिशूलं च वृद्धिं सप्तविधां तथा ।

कफवातकृमींश्चापि हन्यादेरण्डपल्लवम् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighanṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 118.

एरण्डपुष्पम्

एरण्डपुष्पं वातघ्नं कफपित्तविनाशनम् ।

मूत्रदोषहरं ज्ञेयं रक्तपित्त प्रकोपणम् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighanṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 119.

एरण्डफलम्

एरण्डफलमत्युष्णं गुल्मशूलानिलापहम् ।

यकृत्प्लीहोदरार्शोन्नं कटुकं दीपनं परम् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighanṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 120.

एरण्डफलमज्जा

तद्वन्मज्जा च विड्भेदी वातश्लेष्मोदरापहः ।

Kaiyadeva Nighanṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 121.

ख. रक्तैरण्डम्

रक्तपञ्चाङ्गुलस्तिक कषायः कटुको रसे ।

वातश्लेष्मश्वासकासकस्पर्शोवध्मनाशनः ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighanṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 123.

शुक्लरक्तैरण्डौगुणाः

एरण्ड युगमं मधुरमुष्णं गुरु विनाशयेत् ॥
 शूल शोथकटीबस्ति शिरः पीडोदर ज्वरान् ।
 ब्रह्मशवासकफानाहकासकुष्ठामयारुतान् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Guḍūcyādi Varga, 62-63.

एरण्डपत्राग्रपत्रफलमज्जगुणाः

क. एरण्डपत्रं वातघ्नं कफक्रिमिविनाशनम् ।
 मूत्रकृच्छ्रहरं चापि पित्तरक्तप्रकोपणम् ।
 ख. वातार्यग्रदलं गुल्मबस्तिशूलहरं परम् ॥
 कफवातकृमीन्हन्ति वृद्धि सात विधामपि ।
 ग. एरण्डफलमत्युष्णं गुल्मशूलानिलापहम् ॥
 यकृत्प्लीहोदराशोभ्रं कटुकं दीपनं परम् ।
 घ. तद्वन्मज्जा च विद्भेदीवातश्लेष्मोदरापहः ।

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Guḍūcyādi Varga, 64-66.

श्वैतैरण्डः सकटुकरसास्तिक उष्णः कफार्ति-
 ध्वंसं धत्ते ज्वरहरमरुत्कासहारी रसार्हः ।
 रक्तैरण्डः श्वयथुपचनः वान्तिरक्तार्ति पाण्डु-
 भ्रान्ति श्वासज्वर कफहरोऽरोचकोघ्नो लघुश्च ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Śalmalyādi Varga, 58.

स्थूलैरण्डः

‘स्थूलैरण्डो गुणाढ्यः स्याद्रसवीर्यविपाकिषु ।’

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Śalmalyādi Varga, 59.

विरेचनार्थम्

क्षीरेणैरण्डतैलं वा प्रयोगेण पिबेन्नरः ।
 बहुदोषो विरेकार्थं जीर्णे क्षीरोदनाशनः ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 29-83.

कटिशूले

दशमूलकषायेण पिबेद्वा नागराम्भसा ।
 कटिशूलेषु सर्वेषु तैलमेरण्डसंभवम् ॥

*Vṛdamādhava, 22-63; Cakradatta,
 Bhāvaprakāśa Cikitsā. 26-55.*

आमवाते

आमवात गजेन्द्रस्य शरीरवनचारिणः ।
एक एव निहन्तायमेरण्डस्नेहकेसरीः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Cikitsā 26-50.

एरण्डबीज-मज्जा

निष्कुष्यैरण्डबीजानि कटुकं दीपनं परम् ।
तद्वन्मज्जा च विड्भेदी वातश्लेष्मोदरापहा ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa.

एरण्डमूल वातहराणां श्रेष्ठत्वम्

‘एरण्डमूलं वृष्यवातहराणाम् ।’

Caraka Samhitā, Sūtra. 25.

वृद्धिरोगे एरण्ड तैलपानम्

‘सक्षीरं वा पिबेत् तैलं मासमेरण्डसम्भवम् ।’

Cakradatta, 40-2.

गृध्रसी-कटिशूले एरण्ड फल पायसः

पिष्ट्वैरण्डफलंक्षीरे सविश्वं वा फलं रुबोः ।
पायसो भक्षितः सिद्धो गृध्रसीकटिशूलनुत् ॥

Cakradatta, Vātavyādhi Cikitsā, 22-47.

पैत्तिकशूल-गुल्मे एरण्डतैलप्रयोगः

तैलमेरण्डजं वाऽपि मधुक्वाथसंयुतम् ।
शूलं पित्तोद्धवं हन्याद् गुल्मं पैत्तिकमेव च ॥

Cakradatta, 26-32.

ज्वरे परिकर्तिका एरण्डमूलादि क्षीर पाक

एरण्डमूलोत्ववथितं ज्वरात् सपरिकर्तितात् ।
पयो विमुच्यते पीत्वा तद्विल्वशलाटुभिः ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā 3-235.

वातरक्ते मधुच्छिष्ट प्रलेपः

समूलाप्रच्छदैरण्डक्वाथे द्विप्रास्थिकं पृथक् ।
घृतं तैलं वसा मज्जा चानूपमृगपक्षिणाम् ॥
कल्कार्थे जीवनीयानि गव्यं क्षीरमयाजकम् ।
बिल्व..... दद्याच्छीतेऽवतारिते ॥

शूलनैषोऽर्दिताङ्गानां लेपः सन्धिगतेऽनिले ।
वातरक्तेच्युते भग्ने खञ्जे कुब्जे च शस्यते ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 29-141/144.

वातजवृद्धिविकारे एरण्डतैलम्
गुग्गुलुं रुबुतैलं वा गोमूत्रेण पिबेन्न नरः ।
वातवृद्धिं निहन्त्याशु चिरकालानुबन्धिनीम् ॥

Cakradatta, 40-1.

एरण्डमूलपलाशादि यापन बस्ति

Caraka, Siddhi, 12-16.

एरण्डादि योग

Caraka, Cikitsā, 21-816.

एरण्डादि वर्त्ति

Caraka, Cikitsā, 26-182.

आमवाते एरण्डबीजक्षीरम्

विशोध्यैरण्डबीजानि पिष्ट्वा क्षीरे विपाचयेद् ।
तत्पायसं कटीशूले गृध्रस्यां परमौषधम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Madhyakhande, 26-57.

शूल निवारणार्थं एरण्ड-शुण्ठी क्वाथम्

विश्वमेरण्डजं मूलं क्वाथयित्वा जलं पिबेत् ।
हिङ्गु सौवर्चलोपेतं सद्यः शूलनिवारणम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Madhyakhande, Śūlādhikāra, 30-36.

स्थौल्ये एरण्डपत्रक्षारम्

क्षारं वातारिपत्रस्य हिङ्गुयुक्तं पिबेन्नरः ।
मेदोवृद्धिविनाशाय भक्तं मण्डसमन्वितम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Sthoulyādhikāra, 39-21.

जीर्णवातजन्यवृद्धि रोगे

गुग्गुल्वेरण्डजं तैलं गोमूत्रेण पिबेन्नरः ।
वातवृद्धिं जयत्याशु चिरकालानुबन्धिनीम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Vṛddhibraghnādhikāra,

Madhya Khaṇḍa, 43-15.

शूल शान्त्यर्थं रुबुकादि क्वाथः

‘तद्बद्बुयव क्वाथो हिङ्गु सौवर्चलान्वितः ।’

Carakadatta, 26-11.

वातवृद्धौ पिबेत् स्निग्धं यथाप्राप्तं विरेचनम् ।
सक्षीरञ्ज पिबेतैलं मासमेरण्ड सम्भवम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Madhyakhaṇḍa, 43-16.

शूले एरण्डसप्तक क्वाथः

Cakradatta, 26-71.

‘लघु भिन्न शकृत्तित्तं लाङ्गक्युरबूकयो (शाकम्) ।’

Caraka Samhitā.

‘एरण्डतैलं मधुरमुष्णं तीक्ष्णं कटु कषायानुरसं सूक्ष्मं
स्रोतोतोविशोधनं त्वच्च्यं वृष्यं मधुरविपाकं वयःस्थापनं
योनिशुक्र-विशोधनं मारोग्यमेधाकान्तिस्मृतिबलकरं
वातकफहरमधोभागदोषहरं च ।’

Suśruta Samhitā, Sūtra, 45.

रक्तैरण्डः श्वयथु पवनश्चान्तिरक्तार्तिपाण्डु भ्रान्ति-
श्वासज्वर कफहरोऽरोचकघ्नो लघुश्च ।

Dhanvantari Nighaṇṭu.

एरण्डो हन्ति वृष्यो गुरुमधुरतरः शोधनः श्वासवर्धमान्,
गुल्मानाहोदरार्शःकसनकफमरुत्पित्तमेहामवातान् ।
हन्यात् पक्त्याख्यशूलकृमिपवनरुजान् गुल्म शूलोर्ध्व वातान् ॥

Śoḍhala.

श्वेतैरण्ड सकटुकशित्तः उष्णः ।
कफार्तिध्वंसं धते ज्वरहरमरुत्कासहारी रसार्हः ॥

Dhanvantari Nighaṇṭu.

विविध रोगाणां एरण्ड तैल (प्रयोग) पानम्

गुल्मोदरब्रणार्शःप्लीहोदावर्तयोनिशुक्रगदे ।
मेदःकफसंसृष्टे मारुतरक्तेऽवगाहे च ॥
गृध्रांसपक्षवधादिषु विरेचनार्हेषु वातरोगेषु ।
वाते विबद्धमार्गे मेदःकफपित्तरक्तन् ॥

पयसा मांसरसैर्वात्रिफला रसयूषमूत्रमदिराभिः ।
दोषानुबन्धयोगात् प्रशस्तमेरण्डजं तैलम् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 26-27/29.

एरण्डतैल गुणकर्माणि

तद्वातनुत्स्वभावात् संयोगवशाद्विरेचनाच्च भवेत् ।
मेदोऽसृक् पित्तकफोन्मिश्रानिलरोगजित्स्मात् ॥
बलकोष्ठव्याधिवशादापञ्चपला भवेन्मात्रा ।
मृदुकोष्ठाल्पबलानां सहभोज्यं तत्प्रयोज्यं स्यात् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 26-30/31.

वातगुल्मे एरण्डतैलम्

पिबेदेरण्डजं तैल वारुणीमण्डमिश्रितम् ।
तदेव तैलं पयसा वातगुल्मे पिबेन्नरः ।
श्लेष्मायनुबले पूर्वहितं पित्तानुगे परम् ॥

*Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 5-92/93;
Cakradatta, Gulma Cikitsā, 30-9.*

गृध्रसी-ऊरुस्तम्भ रोगे एरण्ड तैलम्

तैलमेरण्डजंवाऽपि गोमूत्रेण पिबेन्नरः ।
मासमेकं प्रभोगोऽयं गृध्रस्यूरुग्रहापहः ॥

Cakradatta, Vātavyādhi Cikitsā, 20-44.

साध्मानशूलसहित वृद्धिरोगे एरण्ड तैलम्

तैलमेरण्डजं पीत्वा बलासिद्धपयोऽन्वितम् ।
आध्मान शूलोपचितामन्त्रवृद्धि जयेन्नरः ॥

Cakradatta, 40-11.

मशकोपचारार्थं एरण्डनालक्षार प्रयोगः

‘रुबुनालस्य चूर्णेन घर्षो मशकनाशनः ।’

Cakradatta, Kṣudraroga, Cikitsā, 55-40.

अतिसारे

‘श्रुतमेरण्डमूलेन बालबिल्वेन वा पयः ।’

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā. 19-48.

यमकस्योपरिक्षीरं धारोष्णं वा प्रयोजयेत् ।

श्रुतमेण्णमूलेन बालबिल्वेन वापुनः ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Cikitsā 9-38.

अथैवरण्ड सिद्धेन पयसा केवलेन वा ।
यवागूर्विरेच्चास्य वातघ्ने दीपनैः कृता ॥

Suśruta Samhitā, Uttara, 40-131.

वातव्याधौ

‘एरण्डतैलं वर्चःस्थे ।’

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Cikitsā, 22-62.

गृध्रस्यूरुस्तम्भे

तैलमेरण्डजं वापि गोमूत्रेण पिबेन्नरः ।
मासमेकं प्रयोगोऽयं गृध्रस्यूरुग्रापहः ॥

Vṛndamādhava, 22-60.

अश्नाति यो नरः सिद्धामेरण्डफलमिश्रिताम् ।
यवागूं गृध्रसीखिन्न पूर्वामाप्रोत्वसी गतिम् ॥

Baṅgasena, Vāṭavyādhi, 588.

गृध्रसीकटिशूले

विशोध्यैरण्ड बीजानि पिष्ट्वा क्षीरं विपाचयेत् ।
तत् पायसं कटीशूले गृध्रस्यां परमौषधम् ॥

Vṛndamādhava, 22-50.

कटिशूले

एरण्डतैलं निर्गुण्डीस्वरसं च पृथक् समम् ।
पीत्वा कटीप्रदेशस्थं वातं जित्वा सुखी भवेत् ॥

Vaidyamanoramā, 12-8.

वातरक्तजन्यनेत्रविकारेषु

एरण्डमूलं सफलप्ररोहं.....क्षीरयुतं गवां च ।
स्याद् वातरक्त पहमुग्रेमेतदाश्च्योतनं सदभिषजांवदन्ति ॥

Gadanigraha, 3-3-126.

वातकण्टके

रक्तावसेचन कुर्याद्भीक्षणं वातकण्टके ।
पिबेदरेण्डेतैलं वा दहेत् सूचीभिरेव वा ॥

Vṛndamādhava, 12-8.

ज्वरे

एरण्डस्य तु पत्राणि लिप्तभूमौ निधायेत् ।

दाहादिज्वरिणो देहे तानि पत्राणि धारयेत् ।
तेन नश्यति दाहोऽस्य ज्वरशैवापशाम्यति ।
दाहे शान्ते यदा शैत्यं तच्च युक्त्या निवारयेत् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Cikitsā, 1-785/786.

शृतमेरण्ड मूलेन बालबिल्वेन वा ज्वरात् ।
धारोष्णं वा पयः पीत्वा विबद्धानिलवर्चसः ॥
सरक्तपिच्छातिसृतैः सतृट्शूलप्रवाहिकान् ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Cikitsā, 1-112.

नेत्रविकारे

क. तिमिरे

‘पयोविमिश्रं पवनोद्भवेहितं वदन्ति पञ्चाङ्गुलतैलमेव तु ।’

Suśruta Samhitā, Uttara, 17-29.

ख. वातभिष्यन्दे

एरण्डपल्लवेमूले त्वचि वाजं पयः शृतम् ।
कण्टकार्याश्च मूलेषु सुखोष्णं सेवने हितम् ॥

Suśruta Samhitā, Uttara, 9-99.

एरण्डदलमूलत्वकंशृतमाजं पयो हितम् ।
सुखोष्णं नेत्र्योः सिक्तं वाताभिष्यन्दनाशनम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Cikitsā, 63-141.

वाताभिष्यन्दशान्त्यर्थं स्निग्धोष्णा पिण्डिका भवेत् ।

एरण्डपत्र मूलत्वक्निर्मिता वातनाशिनी ॥

Śārṅgadhara Samhitā, 3-13-25.

तरुणसुरुबुकपत्रं मूलञ्च विभिद्य सिद्धमन्त्रेश्चिरे ।

वाताभिष्यन्दरुजं सद्यो विनिहन्ति सक्तुपिण्डिका चोष्णा ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Uttara, 16-10.

ग. नक्तांध्ये

घृतेसिद्धानि जीवन्त्याः पल्लवानि च भक्षेत् ।

तथातिमुक्तकैरण्ड शेफाल्यभिरुजानि च ॥

भृष्टं घृतं कुम्भयोनिः पत्रैः पाने च पूजितम् ।

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Uttara, 13-88/89.

आमवात रोगे

एरण्डतैलयुक्तां हरीतकीं भक्षयेन्नरो विधिवत् ।
आमानिलार्त्तियुक्तो गृध्रसिवृद्व्यर्दितो नित्यम् ॥

Vṛndamādhava, 25-11.

‘सेञ्चनामवातस्य रुबूकपयसाऽपि वा ।’

Bhāvaprakāśa, Cikitsā, 26-28.

आमवाते पीडायाम्

शुण्ठीकल्कं विनिक्षिप्य सरैरण्डमूलजैः ।
विपचेत् पुटपाकेन तद्रसः क्षौद्रसंयुतः ॥

Śārngadhara Saṁhitā, 2-1-40/41.

वृद्धौ

तैलमेरण्डजं पीत्वा बालसिद्धं पयोन्वितम् ।
आध्मान शूलोपचितमन्त्रवृद्धिं जयेन्नरः ॥

Vṛndamādhava, 40-12.

‘सक्षीरं वा पिबेत्तैलं मासमेरण्ड सम्भवम् ।’

Vṛndamādhava, 40-12.

त्रणेपत्रदानार्थम्

एरण्डभूर्जपूतीक हरिद्राणां तु वातजे ।
पत्रमाश्वबलं यच्च काश्मरीपत्रमेव च ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 1-113.

कर्णशूले

एरण्ड पत्रपुटपाकविपाचिताम्बु तुल्यार्द्रकस्य सलिलं मधुकेन मिश्रम् ।
पक्त्वा च तैललवणेन युतं सुखोष्णं कर्णेगजरुजं हरति तत् क्षणमेवदत्तम् ॥

Baṅgasena, Karṇaroga, 38.

एरण्डादितैलम् ।

Baṅgasena, Karṇaroga, 57-58.

पार्श्वशूले

एरण्डमूलं द्विपलं जलेऽष्टगुणिते पचेत् ।
तत्क्वाथो यावशूकाढ्यः पार्श्वहत् कफशूलहा ॥

Śārngadhara Saṁhitā, 2-2-101.

विबन्धे

एरण्डतैलं त्रिफलाक्वाथेन द्विगुणेन च ।
युक्तं पीतं पयोभिर्वा न चिरेण विरिच्यते ॥

Śārngadhara Saṁhitā, 3-4-20.

गुल्मे

‘एरण्डतैलमथवा मद्यमस्तुपयोरसैः ।’

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Uttara, 42-122.

जठरशूले

एरण्डमेथिकागुडनिर्यूहो हरतिजठरशूलानि ।

Siddhabhaiṣajya Maṇimālā, 4-507.

शोथे

एरण्डतैलं पयसा गवां मूत्रेण वा पिबेत् ।
तेनास्य दोष शेषश्च श्वयथुश्च निवर्तते ॥

Kāśyapa Saṁhitā, p. 342.

वातरक्ते

क्षीरणैरण्डतैलञ्च प्रयोगेण पिबेन्नरः ।
बहुदोषो विरेकार्थं जीर्णं क्षीरोदनाशनः ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hr̥daya, Cikitsā, 22-11.

क्षीरपिष्टमुगालेपमेरण्डस्यफलानि च ।
कुर्याच्छूलनिवृत्त्यर्थं शताह्वमनिलेऽधिके ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 29-140.

योनिशूले

क. योनिशूलहां नारी योन्यां प्रक्षिप्य धारयेत् ।
पिचुमेरण्डबीजं तु परिगृह्य विधानतः ॥

Gadanigraha, 6-6-8.

ख. एरण्डतैलेन परिप्लुता स्यात् कार्पासपिण्डी यदि योनिमध्ये ।
शूलं तदानीं शमयेत्तदीयं संभावकौ मुण्डितिकाकृतौ वा ॥

Gadanigraha, 6-6.16.

पार्श्वशूले

एरण्डमूलं द्विपलं जलेऽष्टगुणिते मचेत् ।

तत्क्वाथो यावशूकाढ्यः पार्श्वहृत्कफशूलहा ॥

Śāraṅgadhara Samhitā, 2-2-101.

अर्शांसि

वृषार्कैरण्ड बिल्वानां पत्रोत्सक्वाथश्च सेचयेत् ।

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 14-44.

एरण्डतैलं त्रिफला रसेन च विशोधनम् ।

विट्पित्तश्लेष्म वातानुलोमनाद् गुदजापहम् ॥

Gadanigraha, 2-4-103.

कोष्ठबद्धता निवारणार्थम्

एरण्डतैलं त्रिफलाक्वाथेन द्विगुणेन च ।

युक्तं पीतं पयोर्भिवा न चिरेण विरिच्यते ॥

Śāraṅgadhara Samhitā, 3-4-20.

चाग्रयमैरण्डं तु विरेचने ।

Caraka Samhitā, Sūtra, 13-12.

स्थौल्ये

यद्वोरुबुक मूलं मधुदिग्धं स्थाप्यते निशं सकलम् ।

तस्य सलिलस्य पानाज्जठरे वृद्धिः शमं याति ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Cikitsā, 39-25.

श्लीपदे

मासमेरण्डजं तैलं पिबेन् मूत्रेण संयुतम् ।

पयसौदनमशनीयात्रागर क्वथितेन च ॥

Suśruata Samhitā, Cikitsā, 19-53/54.

गर्भजनने

एरण्डस्य तु बीजानि मातुलुङ्गस्य चैव हि ।

सर्पिषा परिपिष्टानि पिबेद् गर्भप्रदानि च ॥

Gadanigraha, 6-5-4.

मषके

वातारिपत्रवृन्तप्रान्तेनादाय चूर्णकं बहुशः ।

निर्धृस्तेन मषः प्रस्त्रुतरुधिरः क्षयं याति ॥

Gadanigraha, 4-10-87.

ERANĀKARKAṬĪ

Botanical Name : *Carica papaya* Linn.

Family Name : Caricaceae (Passifloraceae)

Classical Name : Eraṇḍakarkaṭī

Sanskrit Names

Eraṇḍakarkaṭī.

Regional Names

Papita, Erandakakri, Erand Kharbuja (Hind.), Painpe (Beng.), Papana (Mar.), Popainyu (Guj.), Pappali (Tam.), Vappani (Tel.), Shaktulbatikh (Arab.), Darakhtkharpuja (Pers.); Papaw or papaya (Eng.).

Description

A small soft-wooded, fast-growing, short-lived tree, with large glabrous, palmatifid and palminerved leaves, 30-60 cm. across, on long hollow petioles, forming a round tuft at the top of the stem.

Flowers on axillary panicles, pale yellow, fragrant, generally, dioecious, but occasionally a few female flowers on a male plant. Male flowers in long drooping panicle. Female flowers in short clusters. Ovary 1-celled. Stigma sessile, 5-lobed, lacerated.

Fruit succulent, indehiscent, 1-celled. Seeds numerous, black, enclosed in sweet mucous pulp (when ripe the pulp generally becomes orange or yellowish) and covered with a loose hyaline skin or arillus; testa thick, brittle.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Different seasons; summers.

Distribution

It is cultivated throughout the country.

Chemical Constituents

The lakex or milky juice contains an albuminoid and a digestive or milk-curdling enzyme which is known as papain. The content of papain is chiefly in fruit and rich, and little in roots, leaves and seeds. The pulps of fresh fruit contains yellow resin, fat, albuminoid, sugar, pectin, citric acid,

tartaric acid, mallic acid, dentrine and other substances. Dry fruit contains 8.4 percent alkaline substance which consists of sodium, potassium and phosphoric acid.

Seeds have an unpleasant taste, hue and obourous oil, Papaya oil or caricin, few acid and resin. The leaves contain an alkaloid carpaine and a glucoside carposide.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṭu, Tikta.
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa, Tikṣṇa.
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphavātaśāmaka, Pittaśāmaka (pakva phala-ripe fruit).

Action and Properties

Karma	: Pācana, Vātānulomana Yakṛduttejaka, Kṛmighna Śothahara-raktaśodhaka Kaphaniḥsāraka, Mūtrala Ārtavajanana-stanyajanana Svedajanana, Kuṣṭhaghna Jvaraghna, Kaṭupouṣṭika Balya, Vedanāsthāpana-śothahara.
Roga	: Vātavikāra-pakṣāghāta-ālavāta Agnimāndya-ajirṇa-udaraśūla Grahaṇī, Yakṛtaplīhavṛddhi, Arśa Kṛmi, Hṛdroga-śoṭha, Raktavikāra Kāsa-śvāsa, Hṛddourbalyajanita Udararoga, Mūtrakṛcchra Rajorodha-kaṣṭārtava, Stanyavṛddhi Tvagdoṣa, Jvara, Viṣa Grahaṇījanya, dourbalya Carmavikāra-pāmā-dadru- kuṣṭha, Ślīpada Galarohiṇī-kaṇṭhaśālūka-galaroga.

Therapeutic Uses

The juice of the green fruits acts as an emmenagogue and in large doses as ecboic. Fresh milky juice is rubefacient.

Ripe fruit is digestive and alterative. The green fruit is a laxative and diuretic.

The milky juice of unripe fruits is used as a cosmetic to remove freckles and other blemishes from the skin for making the skin smooth and delicate. It is anthelmintic and it is particularly effective in the expulsion of lumbrici.

The ripe fruit is stomachic, carminative and diuretic. The seeds are vermifuge, emmenagogue, and used as thirst-quenching medicine.

The leaves are useful as anthelmintic and febrifuge. They are given in beri-beri; the leaves contain the alkaloid Carpaine which physiologically has the same effect as digitalis. It is a patent amoebicide and is very efficacious for the treatment of amoebic dysentery.

The leaves are slightly bruised and roasted and they are applied to breasts as a galactagogue for nursing mother. An application of leaves (duly warmed up) locally is useful to relieve pains. The poultice of the grounded leaves is applied for reducing elephantoid grovities. A paste is made with one ounce of leaves and 60 grains of opium and common salt is an effective local application for extracting guinea-worms. For dressing of the wounds, the fresh leaves are quite useful for foul wounds.

The ripe fruit is useful as alterative, stomachic, cholagogue, appetizer, digestive, antiscorbutic and carminative. It is orally used in piles, enlargement of liver and splenic enlargement. It is very useful as laxative in habitual constipation.

The unripe is a mild laxative and diuretic. The cooked unripe fruit is as a galactagogue. Unripe fruit is an abortifacient. The mature green fruit is given for relief of dyspepsia.

The roots are abortifacient; a vaginal douche of a mixture of the roots, salt and water can be abortifacient (but with precautionary measures).

The seeds (containing the glucoside caricin) are useful as anthelmintic, emmenagogue and carminative. The seeds are orally given for expelling round worms and for this purpose, the seeds powder may be given with honey.

The expressed juice is obtained from the seeds and the juice mixed with honey is given in dyspepsia, bleeding piles and enlargement of the liver and spleen. The pessaries made with the seeds juice can be applied (inter-vaginal) for causing abortion (but with precaution). A paste of the seeds is applied to skin diseases particularly ring worm, it is also applied to other skin affections in the form of juice or paste topically.

The milky juice of the unripe fruit (containing the digestive ferment papain) is useful in different ailments. Being a powerful anthelmintic against roundworms, a table spoonful fresh juice, mixed with honey, in warm water (3-4 tablespoonful water) may be given to an adult; the dose may be repeated two hours later and followed by a dose of castor oil, and this course of treatment can be repeated for two days depending upon the necessity. In case of the children, the doses in half or quarter quantity (according to age factor) may be given.

The oral or local (vaginal) use of milky juice of unripe fruit is contraindicated to pregnant females as it may harm to expectorant mothers. The milky juice of (unripe) fruit is irritant is applied to swellings for preventing suppuration. and it is locally applied to corns, warts, pimples, horny excrescences of the skin and other skin affections.

The latex or juice of the unripe (and of matured stage) is applied to membrane formed in throat in the diseases of diphtheria (galarohiṇī) in children; it is considered very effective for immediate removal or incision (lekhana or vidāraṇa) of membrane causing throat choking. This latex is also applied to other similar throat affections, (kaṇṭha-śālūka, galaroga. kaṇṭhrohiṇī etc.).

The milky juice (latex) of the fruit is useful to apply over tongue ulcers. Besides scabies, eczema, pruritis dermatosis and other skin complaints, the latex is topically applied to tumours, cysts and glandular affections. In the painful and swollen joints affections i.e. gout, rheumatism, arthritis and other allied complaints, the leaves slightly warmed up with oily lubrication are applied over affected joints.

The latex of the fruit is very effective for applying to poisonous bites e.g. insects bite, specially it is suggested to scorpion-sting for good relief.

The oil is prepared by boiling the seeds (siddha taila pāka) which is externally used for massage or application as liniment to nervine, rheumatic, paralytic diseases and also in skin affections. The seeds are externally useful as anodyne and antiphlogistic remedy.

The vegetable is prepared by cooking pieces of pulp from unripe fruit; it is useful for digestive system particularly disorders like dyspepsia, anorexia, sprue, chronic amoebiasis, colic, piles, worms, liver and spleen disorders and similar abdominal troubles.

The infusion of the leaves are given in oedema and heart troubles. The fruit and latex are used in blood impurities. Being an expectorant the fruit is useful in cough and asthma. An infusion of the leaves is used as diuretic in urinary complaints. The infusion is given in fevers. It is bitter tonic and useful in general debility.

The incision method is used to collect the milky juice from unripe fruits of mature stage; the latex is scrapped and collected later on; it becomes white after drying up, and this powdery material is kept in glass container.

The ripe fruit possessing good medicinal properties is popularly edible.

Parts Used : Fruit, Leaves, Pulp. (Milky juice-Latex), Seeds, Ripe fruit, pulp-edible.

Dose

Leaves Infusion, 40-80 gms., Latex 5-10 gms., Papain 250-500 mg.

ERANḌAKARKATĪ (एरण्डकर्कटी)

एरण्डचिर्भटा स्वाद्वी तथा कोषफला स्मृता ।

अपक्वा हरिता पीतफला स्वादुफला प्रिया ॥

सचिक्कणा श्यामबीजा तथा कुम्भफला शुभा ।

कासश्वासयकृत्प्लीहोदर रोगविनाशिनी ॥
मन्दाग्निस्त्रायुशोधघ्नी विषपत्रा प्रकीर्तिता ॥

Sa. Nir. Vanousadhi Śāstra.

- क. नालपर्णी समुद्रान्ता पीपिकाशकर्टी ।
क्षीरस्रवा शुक्लपुष्पी निःसारैण्डपत्रिका ॥
- ख. फलं पक्वमपक्वं वा भेदनं वातपित्तजित् ।
कफकृद् रुचिकृद् बल्यं सुपथ्यं सर्वरोगहत् ॥
यकृत्प्लीहार्षी रोगघ्नं पाचकं वह्निदीपनम् ।
- ग. क्षीणं क्षयकरं पाच्यं, विषल्यं मांसपाचनम् ॥
कण्ठशालूक्यनाशाय विशेषेणोपयुज्यते ॥

Āyrsveda Vijñāna.

ERVĀRU-KARKAṬĪ

Botanical Name

Cucumis melo var. utilissimus Duthie & Fuller.
Cucumis utilissimus Roxb.

Classical Name : Ervaru-Karkaṭī

Sanskrit Names

Ervāru, Karkaṭī, Ervaruka, Uṛvaruka, Gajadantaphalā, Lomaśī, Vyālapatrā, Bṛhatphalā, Mūtralā, Baluckam-Balukī (Karkaṭī, viśeṣah), Bahuphalā, Snigdha-phalā, Kṣatrankarkaṭī, Kṣetraruhā, Madhuraphalā, Śaradikā, Kṣudairvāru, Pītapuṣpikā.

Regional Names

Kakarhi, Kakarī, Kakrhi (Hind.), Kankirhi (Marathi, Guj.), Khissa (Arab.), Khiaz (Pess.), Cucumbar (English).

Description

An annual. Stems ereeping, angular, scabrous. Leaves about 7.5 cm. diam., orbicular-creniform in outline, 5-angled or lobed, scabrous on both surfaces and also often with soft hairs; lobes and deep nor acute; petiole 5 cm. Petals 1.6 mm. Female peduncle sometimes 5 cm.

Fruit varies in shape from shortly oval or cylindrical to elongate, often reaching a length of 0.9 meter. It varies in colour from dark green to nearly white, usually changing to a bright orange colour when ripe. Seeds are smaller than those of the melon.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Summer season. Sowing in spring season; farming season.

Distribution

It is cultivated in tropical regions and specially sandy soils.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Madhura
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa
Vīrya	: Śīta
Vipāka	: Madhura
Doṣakarma	: Pittaśāmaka, Vātakaphavardhaka.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Mūtrala, Sangrahi, Jvaraghna Dāhapraśamana, Tr̥ṣṇāśāmaka Viṣṭambhī, Pittaśāmaka, Balya.
Roga	: Mutrakracchra-mūtrāghāta, Aśmarī Mūtravikāra, Dāha, Tr̥ṣṇā, Jvara Daurbalya, Raktapitta, Kāmalā Anidrā, Śiraḥśūla, Garbhiṇīśūla Udāvarta (mūtrajanya).

Therapeutic Uses

The seeds are useful as diuretic, cooling and nutritive. They are used in painful micturition and suppression of urine.

The seeds powder is used with juice of grapes in dysuria and calculus. For similar complaints of biliary type, the seeds mixed with honey are given.

The milk cooked the root is recommended in pain during pregnancy.

The seeds are collected from the fruit and they are used in various forms as tonic.

Fruits are eaten specially during summers commonly. They are refrigerant and good for quenching thirst.

Parts used : Fruit, Seeds.

Dose

Powder 3-5 gms., Juice 20-50 gms., Fruit-edible.

ERVĀRU-KARKAṬĪ (एर्वारु-कर्कटी)

एर्वारुकम्

एर्वारुकद्वयं स्वादु रूक्षं तिक्तं हिमं गुरु।

रुच्यं संग्राहि कृच्छ्रं ज्वरवातकफप्रदम् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 544-545.

क. एर्वारुः कर्कटी प्रोक्ता कथ्यन्ते तद्गुणा अथ।

ख. कर्कटी शीतला रूक्षा ग्राहिणी मधुरा गुरुः।

रुच्या पित्तहरा सामा पक्वा तृष्णाऽग्नि पित्तकृत् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Śāka Varga, 60-61.

बालुकी-कर्कटी विशेषः

अ. अथबालुकी बहुफला स्निग्धफला क्षेत्रकर्कटी क्षेत्ररुहा।

मधुरफला शारदिका क्षुद्रेर्वारुश्च पीतपुष्पिका ॥

ब. बालुकी मधुरा शीताऽऽध्मानहच्च श्रमापहा।

पित्तास्रशमनी रुच्या कुरुते कासपीनसौ ॥

स. बालुकानि च सर्वाणि दुर्जराणि गुरूणि च।

मन्दानलं प्रकुर्वन्ति वातरक्तहराणि च ॥

द. स्वादु बालुकी शरदि वर्षजदोषकर्त्री

हेमन्तजा तु खलु पित्तहरा च रुच्या

क्षिप्रं करोति खलु पीनसमर्द्धपक्वा

पक्वा त्वतीव मधुरा कफकारिणी च ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Mūlakādi Varga, 209-212.

बालुकम् (कर्कटी विशेषः)

बालुकं मूत्रलं मूत्रफलं प्राण्डाम्बुकाण्डके ॥

अपरं तु विपाण्डु स्यान्मूत्र शोधनकं मतम्।

बालुकं मधुरं तिक्तं रुच्यं रूक्षं हिमं गुरु ॥

भेदि विष्टंभ्यभिष्यन्दि मूत्रलं रक्तपित्तजित् ।
पक्वं कफापहं हृद्यं सक्षारं दीपनं लघु ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 555-551.

एवार्कम्

क. कर्कटी लोमशी स्वाद्वी व्यालपत्रा बृहत्फला ।
गजदन्तफलैर्वारुमूत्रला तथा ॥

फलम्

ख. एवार्कफलं बालं रूक्षं स्वादु हिमं गुरु ।
रुच्यं संग्राहि कृच्छ्रघ्नं ज्वरवातकफप्रदम् ॥

पक्वफल पर्णाञ्च

ग. पक्वं पित्ताग्रिकार्भुष्णं दोषतृट् क्लमदाहजित् ।
एवार्कस्य पत्रं तु प्रसेक क्लेदनुत् परम् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 544-546.

अ. एवार्कः कर्कटी प्रोक्ता व्यालपत्रं च लोमशा ।
स्थूला तोयफला चैव हस्तिदन्त फला मुनिः ॥

ब. एवार्कं पित्तहरं सुशीतलं
मूत्रामयघ्नं मधुरं रुचिप्रदम् ।
सन्तापमूर्च्छाऽपहरं सुतृप्तिदं
वातप्रकोपाय घनं तु सेवितम् ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Mūlakādi Varga, 207-208.

त्रपुसाद्योत्तरगुणाः

त्रपुसैर्वारुकर्कारुकूष्माण्डालाबुचिर्भिटाः ।
मधुराः रूक्षणाः शीताः गौरवं तूत्तरोत्तम् ॥

Nighaṇṭu, Kaiyadeva, Oṣadhi Varga, 561.

गर्भिणीशूले

‘कर्कटीमूलसंसिद्धं क्षीरंशूलहरं परम् ।’

Vaidyamanoramā, 13-23.

मूत्रावरोधजन्योदावर्त्ते एवार्कबीजम्

‘एवार्क बीजं तोयेन पिबेद्वा लवणीकृतम् ।’

Bhāvaprakāśa, Śūlādhikāra, 31-25.

पित्तजनितमूत्रकृच्छ्रे एर्वारुबीजादि प्रयोगः

‘एर्वारुबीजं मधुकञ्च दार्वीन् पैत्ते पिबेत् तण्डुलधावनेन ।’

Cakradatta, Mūtrakṛcchra Cikitsā, 32-9.

मूत्राघाते एर्वारुबीजप्रयोगः

कल्कमेर्वारुबीजामक्षमात्रं ससैन्धवम् ।

धान्याम्लयुक्तं पीत्वै च मूत्राघाताद्विमुच्यते ॥

Cakradatta, Mūtrāghāta, Cikitsā, 33-2.

मूत्रजे उदावर्ते

‘एर्वारु बीजं तोयेन पिबेद् वाऽलवणीकृतम् ।’

Suśruta Samhitā, Uttara, 55-25.

अश्मर्या मूत्राघातेमूत्रकृच्छ्रे च

एर्वारुबीजंकल्कश्चश्लक्ष्ण पिष्टोऽक्षसंमितः ।

धान्याम्ललवणैः पेयो मूत्रकृच्छ्रे विनाशनः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Cikitsā, 35-37.

एर्वारुबीजयष्ट्याह्वदार्वीवां तण्डुलाम्बुना ।

तोयेनकल्कं द्राक्षायाः पिबेत् पर्युषितेन वा ॥

Aṣṭāṅga, Hṛdaya, Cikitsā, 11-8.

एर्वारु बीजं त्रपुषात् कुसुम्भात् सकुङ्कुमः स्याद् वृषकश्च पेयः ।

द्राक्षारसेनाश्मरिशर्करासु सर्वेषु कृच्छ्रेषु प्रशस्त एवः ॥

एर्वारुबीजं मधुकं सदारु पित्ते पिबेत्तण्डुलधावनेन ।

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 26-52/53.

GAMBHĀRĪ

Botanical Name : Gmelina arborea Roxb.

Family : Malvaceae

Classical Name : Gambhārī

Sanskrit Names

Gambhārī, Kāsmārī-Kāśmīrī, Śrīparnī, Madhu-
parṇikā, Pītarohiṇī.

Regional Names

Gambhar (Hind.), Gambhari (Punj.), Shivan (Mar.), Shivan, Savan (Guj.), Gamara (Beng.), Gumadi (Tam.), Padmagomaru (Tel.).

Description

A moderate sized unarmed tree deciduous tree, reaching 18 meters high; bark greyish yellow, rather corky, branchlets and young parts clothed with fine white mealy pubescens.

Leaves 10-20 by 7.5-15 cm. broadly ovate, acuminate, entire, glabrous above when mature, and lately fulvous-tomentose beneath, base cordate or sometimes truncate and shortly cuneate; petioles 5-7.5 cm. long, cylindrical, puberulous, glandular at the top.

Flowers appearing with or sometimes before the young leaves, usually in small cymes of about 3 flowers arranged along the branches of a densely fulvous-hairy panicle reaching 30 cm. long, buds clavate, angular; bracts 8 mm. long, linear-lanceolate. Calyx 5 mm. long, broadly campanulate, densely fulvous-hairy; teeth 5, small, triangular, acute. Corolla brownish yellow, densely hairy, outside, reaching 3.8 cm. long, 5-lobed, 2-lipped; upper lip rather more than 1 cm. long, deeply divided into 2 oblong, obtuse lobes; lower lip nearly 2.5 cm. long, 3-lobed, the middle lobe projecting forward, ovate, subobtuse, with irregularly crenulate margin, much longer and broader than the obovate rounded lateral lobes.

Drupe 2.5-.5 cm. long, ovoid or pyriform, smooth, orange-yellow when ripe.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Summers and onward season.

Distribution

It is found throughout India.

Chemical Composition

Roots contain yellow thick, oil, resin, an alkaloid and little benzoic acid. Fruits contain butyric and tartaric acids, sugar (saccharine substances) and little tannin.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Tikta, Kaṣāya, Madhura.
Guṇa	: Guru
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa, Śīta (phala-fruit)
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Tridoṣaśāmaka

Action and Properties

Karma	: Śothahara, Hṛdya-raktapittaśāmaka Sandhāniya-Balya, Mūtrajanana Garbhasthāpana-stanyajanana Vṛṣya, Jvaraghna-dāhapraśamana Kaṭupouṣṭika, Bṛñhaṇa, Rasāyana Viṣaghna, Śītala-snehana Vedanāsthāpana, Medhya Śrama-dāha-trṣāpraśamana, Keśya Dipana-pāchan-bhedana, Arśoghna.
--------------	---

Roga	: Dāha-trṣṇā Jvara-sīraḥśūla (dāha-pīḍā) Bhrama-mastiṣka dourbalya Vātavikāra Agnimāndya-vibandha-arśa Śoṭha-Hṛdroga-Raktapitta Uraḥkṣata-Kṣayaroga Mūtrakrcchra-pūyameha-bastiśoṭha Śukradourbalya-Garbhārāva Śūtikāroga-garbhāśayaśoṭha Dourbalya Sarpa-vṛścika damśa-viṣa.
-------------	--

Therapeutic uses

The juice of tender leaves or infusion of leaves is useful as demulcent. It is given in gonorrhoea, catarrh of the bladder, and cough etc. They are also used for cleaning ulcers.

The root is acrid, bitter, sweet, tonic, heating, stomachic, laxative and galactogogue, as a nerve tonic. It is used in insanity and epilepsy. Its decoction or infusion is given in fever, indigestion, anasarca and gonorrhoea and as a galactogogue.

The roots are useful in loss of appetite, thirst, piles, burning sensation, fevers, urinary discharges and tridoṣa disorders. They are useful against worms, and also given in constipation.

The flowers are sweet, cooling, bitter acrid, astringent and anti-dermatosis; they are useful in leprosy and blood diseases.

The fruits are acrid, sour, bitter, sweet, cooling, diuretic, tonic, aphrodisiac, alterative, astringent to the bowels. They are also useful to promote the growth of hairs; fruits are useful in vitiation of vāta, thirst, anaemia, leprosy, ulcers, consumption, strangury and vaginal discharges.

The juice of the leaves is used to remove foetid discharges and worms from ulcers to prescribe in combination with the plant is suggested with other drugs against snake-bite. A decoction is of the roots and bark is given orally in treatment of the snake-bite.

Parts Used : Roots-rootbark, Bark, Fruits, Leaves.

Dose

Root-bark juice 10-20 gms., Decoction 40-80 gms.

Formulations (yoga)

Śrīparṇyādi Kvātha, Śrīparṇī taila, Bṛhat Pañcamūlyādi Kvātha.

Groups (gaṇa) : Śōthahara.

GAMBHĀRĪ (गम्भारी)

श्रीपर्णी मधुरा तिक्ता वीर्योष्णा तुवरा गुरुः ।
दीपनी पाचनी मेध्या भेदिनी भ्रमशोषजित् ॥
दाषतृष्णामशूलाशी विषदाह ज्वरापहा ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi, Varga, 30-31.

गम्भारी पुष्पम्

तत्पुष्पं मधुरं शीतं तिक्तं संग्राहिवातलम् ॥
कषायं मधुरं पाके पित्तास्त्रासृग्दरोपहम् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 31-32.

गम्भारीफलम्

कफपित्तहरं तस्याः फलं स्निग्धं हिमं गुरु ॥
 स्वादुपाक रसं हृद्यं कषायाम्लं रसायनम् ।
 बृंहणं शुक्रलं केश्यं मेध्यं मूत्रविबन्धनुत् ॥
 हन्याद्वाततृषादाहपित्तरक्तक्षत क्षयान् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi, Varga, 32-34.

काश्मरी तुवरा तिक्ता वीर्योष्णा मधुरा गुरुः ॥
 दीपनी पाचनी मेध्या भेदिनी श्रमशोधजित् ।
 दोषतृष्णाध्मानशूलाशो विषदाहज्वरापहा ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Guḍūcyādi Varga, 15-16.

गम्भारी फलं गुणाः

स्वादेपाके हिमं स्निग्धं तुवराम्लं विशुद्धिकृत् ।
 हन्याद्वाहतृषावातरक्तपित्तवातक्षयाम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Guḍūcyādi, Varga, 18.

काश्मरी कटुका तिक्ताः गुरुष्णा कफशोफनुत् ।
 त्रिदोषविषदाहार्ति ज्वरतृष्णासदोषजित् ॥

Rāja, Nighaṅṭu, Prabhadrādi Varga, 38.

‘काश्मर्यफलं रक्तसांग्रहिकरक्तपित्तप्रशमनानाम् ।’

Caraka Saṁhitā, Sutra. 25.

‘काश्मर्यतैलानि मधुरकषायाणि कफपित्त प्रशमनानि ।’

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sutra. 45.

हृद्यं मूत्रविबन्धघ्नं पित्तासृग्वातनाशनम् ।
 केश्यं रसायनं मेध्यं काश्मर्यं फलमुच्यते ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sutra. 46.

वातज्वरे

द्राक्षादि क्वाथे ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Uttara. 39-173.

अपस्मारे काश्मरी घृतम्

कंसे क्षीरेक्षुरसयोः काश्मर्येऽष्टगुणे रसे ।
 कार्षिकैर्जीवनीयैश्च घृतप्रस्थं विपाचयेत् ॥

वातपित्तोद्भवं क्षिप्रपस्मारं नियच्छति ।

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā 10-29/30.

शोथे काश्मरी पत्र स्वेदम्

जलैश्च वासार्ककरञ्ज शिग्रुकाश्मर्यपत्रार्कजैश्च सिद्धैः ।

स्विन्नो मृदुष्णै रवितप्तोयैः स्नातश्च गन्धैरनुलेपनीयः ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā 12-67.

वातरक्ते काश्मर्यादि कषायः

काश्मर्यं त्रिवृतां द्राक्षां त्रिफलां सपरुषकान् ।

शृतं पिबेद्विरेकाय लवणक्षौद्र संयुतम् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 29-85.

वातज योनिरोगेषु काश्मर्यादिघृतम्

काश्मर्यं.....गुडूच्याश्चप्रस्थमक्षसमैर्घृतात् ।

साधितं योनिवातघ्नं गर्भदं परमं पिबेत् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 30-52-53.

रक्तार्शःषु अतिरक्तप्रवृत्तविरोधार्थे काश्मर्यादि योगः

काश्मर्यामलकानां सकर्बुदारान् फलाम्लैश्च ।

.....दघ्नः सरेण सिद्धान् दद्याद्रक्त प्रवृत्तेऽति ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 14-202-203.

योनिरोगेषु (रक्तयोनि, अरजस्का पुत्रघ्नी योनि)

काश्मर्यादिउत्तरबस्ति प्रयोगः

काश्मर्यं कटुजक्राथ सिद्धमुत्तर बस्तिना ॥

रक्तयोन्यरजस्कानां पुत्रघ्न्याश्च हितं घृतम् ।

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 30-100/101.

चिप्परोगे

काश्मर्याः सप्तभिः पत्रैः कोमलैः परिवेष्टितः ।

अङ्गुलीवेष्टकः पुंसां ध्रुवमाशु प्रशाम्यति ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Kṣudrarogādhikāra, 61-76.

हृद्रोगे (पित्तजनित) श्रीपर्णीमधुकजलम्

श्रीपर्णीमधुकक्षौद्रसितागुडजलैर्भवेत् ।

पित्तोपसृष्टे हृदये सेवेत मधुरैः शृतम् ॥

Cakradatta, Hṛdroga Cikitsā, 31-5.

पित्तज्वरे

‘.....काश्मर्यस्याथवा पुनः ।’

‘.....कषायैः शर्करायुतैः ।’

‘सुशीतैः शमयेतृष्णां प्रवृद्धां दाहमेव च ।’

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Uttara, 39-179/180.

अतिसारे

‘काश्मर्यफल्यूषो वा किञ्चिदाम्लः सशर्करः ।’

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 19-78;

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Cikitsā, 9-84.

रसायने

काश्मर्य-रसायनम् ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 27-9; Aṣṭāṅga Sangraha, 49-402.

रक्तार्शसि

‘काश्मर्यामलकानां.....कोविदारपुष्पाणाम् ।

दुग्धं सरेण सिद्धान् तद्यद् रक्ते प्रवृत्तेऽति ॥’

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 14-202/203.

शीतपित्ते

कालेन पाकं प्रतिपाद्य शुष्कं गव्येन-सिद्धं पयसोपयुक्तम् ।

काश्मर्यमाशु प्रतिहन्ति शीतपित्तं हिताहाररसेन रूढिम् ॥

Rājamārtaṇḍa, 8-12, Cakradatta, 59-12.

तृष्णायाम्

काश्मर्यादिपानकम् ।

Bhela Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 30-37/39.

लाजोदकं मधुयुतं, घृतं गुडमिश्रितम् ।

काश्मर्यं शर्करायुक्तं पिबेतृष्णार्दितो नरः ॥

Vṛndamādhava, 16-9.

अङ्गुलिवेष्टे

काश्मर्याः समभिः पत्रैः कोमलैः परिवेष्टितः ।

अङ्गुलिवेष्टकः पुंसां ध्रुवमाशु प्रशाम्यति ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, 61-77.

पलिते

काश्मर्यादितैलम् ।

Bhāvaprakāśa, Cikitsā, 61-4.

‘विभीतकनिम्बगम्भारी..... ।
एकैकतैलनस्येन पलितं नश्यति ध्रुवम् ॥’

Śārngadhara Samhitā, 3-8-46.

रक्तपित्ते

कोविदारस्य पुष्पाणि काश्मर्यस्याथ शाल्मलैः ।
अन्नपान विधौ शाकं यच्चान्यद् रक्तपित्तनुत् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 4-39.

पक्कोदुम्बर काश्मर्यपथ्यारवजूरगोस्तनाः ।
मधुना, घ्नन्ति संलीढा रक्तपित्तं पृथक् पृथक् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 4-39

पाण्डुरोगे

दन्तीपत्ररसे कोष्णे काश्मर्याञ्जलिमप्लुतम् ।
द्राक्षाञ्जलि वा मुदितं तत् पिबेत् पाण्डुरोगजित् ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Cikitsā, 16-6.

वातरक्ते

‘काश्मर्यमधुकतर्पणकल्को वा ।’

Suśruta Samhitā, Cikitsā, 5-12.

गुडूचीरसदुग्धाभ्यां तैलं द्राक्षारसेन वा ।
सिद्धं मधुक काश्मर्यरसैर्वा वातरक्तनुत् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 29-121.

पलिते

काश्मर्यमूलसारप्रसूनफलपत्रतः कषायेण ।
कल्केनमाक्षकतैलं पक्कं पलितापहं नस्यम् ॥

Gadanigraha, 3-1-96.

कुचोत्थापने

श्रीपर्णीरसकल्काभ्यां तैलं सिद्धं तिलोद्भवम् ।
ततैलं तूलके न्यस्य स्तनयोः परिधारयेत् ॥
पतितात्वुत्थितौ स्त्रीणां भवेयातां पयोधरौ ।
गजकुम्भसमाकारवुन्नतौ परिमण्डलौ ॥

Baṅgasena, Strīroga, 368-369.

गर्भशोषेबालशोषे च

गर्भ शुष्के तु वातेन बालानाञ्चपिशुष्यताम् ।
सिताकाशमर्यमधुकैः हितमुत्थापने पयः ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 28-95.

GĀNGERUKĪ

Botanical Name

Grewia populifolia Vahl.

Grewia tenax Fiori.

Family : Tiliaceae

Classical Name : Gāngerukī

Sanskrit Names : Gāngerukī.

Regional Names

Gangeran (Hind.), Gangetic (Guj.)

Description

A shrub, 0.6-1.8 meters high; stem and branches terete, slender.

Leaves up to 3.8 by 3.2 cm., Broadly ovate or suborbicular, sometimes obovate, acute at obtuse, coarsely dentate, glabrous or nearly 50 m, base rounded or cuneate; petioles 6-12 cm. very slender, stipules small, linear, caducous.

Flowers pure white, 1.9-2.5 cm. across; buds oblong, tomentose; peduncles usually solitary, leaf-opposed thickened near the top, bearing 1 (rarely 2 or 3 flowers) pedicel caducous, leaving a mark which has the appearance of a joint. Sepals 1.2-2 cm. long, linear-oblong, tomentose outside. Petals linear-oblong, usually notched, about two-thirds the length of the sepals attached along the back of the gland; gland broad, suborbicular or obscurely 3-lobed, the margin villous.

Torus about 2 mm. long, the portion glabrous, faintly ribbed, with 5 densely villous teeth at the top beneath the ovary. Ovary 4-lobed, glabrous (rarely pilose); style longer than the stamens stigma 4-5-lobed.

Drupes smooth, orange-yellow, about 12 mm. broad, usually of two separable valves, each half didymous; stones 1-4, muriculate, 1-2-celled.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Rainy/autumn season to winters.

Distribution

It is found in Punjab, desert of west Rajputana, Rajasthan, Uttar Pradesh, Central India, Madhya Pradesh and hotter regions including Cutch, Gujarat in India.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṣāya, Madhura.
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa.
Vīrya	: Śīta
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarman	: Kaphapittaśāmaka

Action and Properties

Karma	: Vraṇaśodhana, Vraṇaropaṇa Raktastambhana, Stambhana.
Roga	: Vraṇa, Sodyaḥkṣata, Raktapravāhikā Raktapitta.

Therapeutic Use

The mucilage of bark is used by women for cleaning the hairs of vermin. It has pesticidal properties and the plant is also used in the hilly areas in treatment of tuberculosis.

The crude alcoholic extracts of the stem-bark of plant showed a slight increase in intestinal motility. It is useful in blood dysentery, haemorrhage and lungs diseases.

The juice or decoction of roots and bark is applied to ulcers.

Parts Used : Bark Roots.

Dose : Juice 10-20 gms., Decoction 50-100 gms.

GĀNGERUKĪ (गाङ्गेरुकी)

‘गाङ्गेरुकं..... ।

मधुरं सकषायं च शीतं पित्तकफापहम् ॥’

Caraka Samhitā, Sutra, 27.

‘सकषायं हिमं स्वादु धान्वनं कफवातजित् ।
तद्वद् गाङ्गेरुकं विद्यात् ॥’

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra, 46.

‘खड्गादिच्छिन्नगात्रस्य तत्काल पूरितो व्रणः ।
गांगेरुकी मूलरसैर्जायते गतवेदनः ॥’

Śārṅgadhara Saṁhitā, 2-1-20.

गाङ्गेरुकी-नागबला

गांगेरुकी विश्वदेवा काला नागबला तथा ।
खरधन्वनिका घण्टा खण्डा पुष्पगवेधुका ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 1055.

गाङ्गेरुकी गुणाः

‘गांगेरुकं..... ।
मधुरं सकषायं च शीतं पित्तकफापहम् ।’

Caraka Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 27.

‘सकषायं हिमं स्वादु धान्वनं कफवातजित् ।
तद्वद् गांगेरुकं विद्यात् ।’

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 46.

हद्रोगे

‘मूलं नागबलायास्तु चूर्णं दुग्धेन पाययेत् ।
हद्रोगश्वासकासघ्नम् ॥’

Cakradatta.

सद्योव्रणे

खड्गादिच्छिन्नगात्रस्य तत्कालपूरितो व्रणः ।
गांगेरुकीमूलरसैः जायते गतवेदनः ॥

Śārṅgadhara Saṁhitā, 2-1-20.

क्षये

चूर्णं नागबलायास्तु घृतमाक्षिक मिश्रितम् ।
प्रलिह्यात् प्रातरुत्थाय क्षयव्याधिनिवारणम् ॥

Śoḍhala.

गाङ्गेरुकी मधुराम्ला कषायोष्णा गुरुस्तथा ।
कटुस्तिका च वातघ्नी व्रणपित्तविकारजित् ॥

मधुराम्ला नागबला कषायोष्णा गुरुस्तथा ।
कण्डूतिकुष्ठवातघ्नी व्रणपित्तविकारजित् ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu.

गाङ्गेरुकी फलम्

गाङ्गेरुकीफलं रूक्षं कषायं स्वादु वातलम् ।
लेखनं स्तम्भनं शीतं विबन्धाध्मामनकृद् गुरु ॥

Gada Nigraha.

गाङ्गेरुकी मधुराम्ला कषायोष्णा गुरुस्तथा ।
कटुस्तिक्ता च वातघ्नी व्रणपित्तविकारजित् ॥

Dhanwantari Nighaṇṭu.

GARJARA

Botanical Name

Daucas carota Linn.

Daucas carota Linn. var. *sativa* Dc.

Family : Apiaceae (Umbelliferae)

Classical Name : Garjara

Sanskrit Names : Garjara, Gājara, Nāraṅgavarṇaka.

Regional Names

Gajar (Hind., Beng., Mar.), Gorjar (Tam.), Pitakand (Tel.), Vazar (Arab), Gajarjard, (Pers.), Carrot (Eng.).

Description

A biennial plant, 1-1.5 meter high or sometimes somewhat more branching from the base, scabrous.

Leaves triangular to oblong in outline, 2-3-pinnatisect into oblong-lanceolate, incised-dentate segments those of the upper leaves linear-lanceolate; incised-dentate segments, those of the upper leaves linear-lanceolate.

Umbels with very numerous rays at length contracted into a nest-like front; heads of the involucre 3-fid or pinnate, of the involucre linear, white margined, entire or 2-3 fid; petals radiating; central flower sterile purple.

Fruit 4 mm. long, 3 mm. broad, including the prickles; prickles setaceous, as long as the diameter of the seed or longer with 1-3 recurved baths.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Autumn season and onwards.

Distribution

It is commonly cultivated in many parts of India.

Chemical Composition

Roots contain carotin, hydrocarotin, sugar, starch, pectin, malic acid, lignin, albumin, salts and a volatile oil. They also contain a terpene, cineole-like substance. It has rich content of iron. Seeds yields on yellow and intense odorous oil.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Madhura, Tikta.
Guṇa	: Laghu, Tikṣṇa.
Vīrya	: Snigdha, Uṣṇa.
Vipāka	: Madhura, Tikta.
Doṣakarma	: Tridoṣaśāmaka (kapha-vātahara).

Action and Properties

Karma	: Balya-Bṛṇhaṇa, Mastiṣka-nāḍībalya Dīpana-snehana-anulomana-grāhī Hṛdya-raktaśodhaka- raktapittaśāmaka-śothahara Kaphaniḥsāraka Garbhapātaka (seeds) Bājikaraṇa (bija or seeds) Kothapraśamana.
Roga	: Mastiṣka dourbalya Dhātukṣīṇatā-kṛśatā Ābhyantara Kotha Agnimāndya-Anāha- Udaravikāra-gulma, Krimiroga Grahaṇī-arśa, Hṛdroga-śoṭha Raktapitta-raktavikāra, Kāsa-śvāsa Śukṛadourbalya-dhvajabhaṅga Rajahkṛcchra-aśmarī-mūtradāha Vraṇa-śopha.

Therapeutic Uses

The roots of the plant are useful for good and beneficial effect on the kidneys, and used in dropsy; they prevent brisk-rust sediments sometimes formed in the urine. As antiseptic it prevents putrescent changes within the body. Seeds are used as aphrodisiac and nervine tonic. Roots are used for troubles caused by blood impurities as a good blood purifier. Seeds are aromatic, stimulant and carminative. Roots are refrigerant.

The roots are considered quite, favourable to the heart, brain, eyes, blood, genital organs and blood circulatory and nervous system. Roots are very helpful to preserve vitality, immunity and disease-resistance power. Carotene and other substances present in the roots are activating in human body. The roots, popularly known as carrot, are esteemed as edible item in raw as well as as delicious vegetable in cooked form; the roots are commonly employed to prepare sweet dish.

The seeds are aromatic, stimulant and carminative; and they are useful in diseases of the kidney and in dropsy; they are nervine tonic and aphrodisiac; and they are useful in uterine pains.

The seeds of the herbal drug are pasted over inflammation; and the powder prepared with seeds is dusted on ulcers.

The roots are given to heart patients as a vegetable or in other suitable form. The roots are used in the haemorrhage, blood diseases and oedema. In renal calculous, scanty urine and other similar urinary complaints, the roots are given.

Parts Used : Roots, seeds.

Dose : Juice, 20-40 gms., Seeds powders 3-6 gms.

GARJARA (गर्जर)

‘गृञ्जनो मूलकैस्तुल्यो रक्तकन्दो रसालु च।’

‘नारङ्गवर्णकश्चैव स्वादुमूलश्च स स्मृतः।’
 ‘बीजं चोष्णं मतं चास्य वृष्यं वै गर्भपातकृत्।’

Rāja Nighaṇṭu.

ग्राही गृञ्जनकस्तीक्ष्णो वातश्लेष्मारशांसां हितः।

Caraka Saṁhitā.

गाजरं मधुरं तीक्ष्णं तिक्तोष्णं दीपनं लघु।
 संग्राहि रक्तपित्ताशौग्रहणीकफवातजित्॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu.

गृञ्जनम्

- क. गृञ्जनं शिखिमूलञ्च यवनेष्टञ्च वर्तुलम्।
 ग्रन्थिमूलं शिखाकन्दं कन्दं डिण्डीर मोदकम्॥
- ख. गृञ्जनं कटुकोष्णञ्च कफवातरुजापहम्।
 रुच्यं च दीपनं हृद्यं दुर्गन्धं गुल्मनाशनम्॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Mūlakādi Varga, 19-20.

गृञ्जर-गृञ्जनभेदः

- गर्जरं पिङ्गमूलञ्च पीतकञ्च सुमूलकम्।
 स्वादुमूलं सुपीतञ्च नारङ्गं पीतमूलकम्॥
- गर्जरं मधुरं रुच्यं किञ्चित्कटु कफापहम्।
 आध्मानक्रिमि शूलघ्नं दाहपित्ततृषापहम्॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Mūlakādi Varga, 24-25.

GODHŪMA

Botanical Name : Triticum aestivum Linn.

Family : Gramineae

Classical Name : Gudhūma

Sanskrit Names

Gudhūma, Yavānakā, Madhūlikā, Nistusa, Sumana,
 Badhudugdā, Svāpūpa, Mlecchabhōjana, Ksiri, Rasāla.

Regional Names

Genhu, Gehu, Giun, Gehub, kanak (Hindi),

Gandhum, Gandham (Punj.) Burr. Hıntal (Arabic), Gahu; Ghawn, Kapale, Margham (Marathi), Marzuolo (Mal.), Godunari (Tamil), Godumulu (Telugu), Gehun (North-west provinces), Do, Dro, Kanak, Nis, Rozatt. To, Zud (Pub.), Wheat (English).

Description

Tufted annual grass. Culms tufted; sheaths striate; ligule a lacerated membranous ring.

Leaves glabrous or hairy on one or both surfaces.

Spike glabrous or hairy; awned or awnless; spikelets 2 ranked, compressed, parallel to the rhachis, closely or loosely imbricate. Glume I keeled unwarxs; glume II sometimes paleate; glumes III and IV paleate and hermaphrodite, larger than V and succeeding glumes when present. Stamens 3; stigmas short and never protruded; ovary truncate and hairy on top.

Grains in each spikelets, usually 3, the 2 lateral larger than the single terminal one (on invariably larger than the upper 2), in shape they are oblong, swollen more or less according to the quality, with a groove on one face, blunt on both ends or pointed surrounded by a hairy tuft.

Flowering and Fruting Time

Farming crop seasons. Spring to summer seasons.

Distribution

It is extensively cultivated in India as a major food crop.

Chemical Composition

Grains contain Mg. Min., Zn, Fe, Ca; fresh plant contains oxalic acid.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Madhura
Guṇa	: Snigdha, Guru
Vīrya	: Śīta
Vipāka	: Madhura
Doṣakarma	: Vātapittahara, Kaphavardhaka.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Balya, Śukrala-Vājikaraṇa
-------	-----------------------------

Br̥ṇhaṇa, Varṇya, Jivaniya-jivana
Ruciprada, Vraṇaropaṇa, Hṛḍya
Sandhāniya, Kaṇḍūghna-
Kuṣṭhaghna, Śūlapraśamana
Kāsaghna, Pathya.

Roga : Śūla, Kāsa, Hṛdroga, Vātarakta
Asthibhagna, Vraṇa, Prameha
Kuṣṭha, Annadravaśūla, Braghna.

Therapeutic Uses

The wheat bran is demulcent and emollient; and the bran bread is beneficial for dyspeptic and other patients.

A hot poultice of the bran is locally applied in acute congestion of the chest and abdomen premonitory symptoms of croups in children and severe local pains, spasmodic or inflammatory. An infusion or decoction of the bran is an excellent bath for the treatment of skin diseases. The wheat flour is an efficacious dusting powder for burns, scalds, erysepalas, itching, skin eruption etc. It also makes a useful yeast poultice, the paste made by boiling wheat flour with vinegar is useful for removing freckles.

The wheat meal is nutritive, restorative and demulcent. It is useful to check profuse menstruation and leucoderma, it is given as a gruel with sugar and milk. It is given in bleeding of the nose. It is used as an antidote as an antidote in case of mental and iodine poisoning, the meal of wheat is mixed with water.

The wheat is aphrodisiac, cardiac, anti-dermatosis and general tonic; and it is good for cough, heart diseases, debility, skin diseases, peptic colic and gout; its poultice is applied to boils.

The wheat flour is a major dietary article in different forms as a common food of fever etc. humans and the husk are good animal feed.

Parts Used : Wheat bran-seeds.

Dose

Wheat flour-Edible-food article (dietary component).

GODHŪMA (गोधूम)

गोधूम मधुरः शीतो वातपित्तहरो गुरुः ।
कफशुक्रप्रदो बल्यः स्निग्धसन्धानकृत्सरः ॥
जीवनो बृंहणो वर्ण्यो व्रण्यो रुच्यः स्थिरात्वकृत् ।

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Dhānya Varga, 32-34.

मधूलीनन्दीमुखयोगुणाः

मधूली शीतला स्निग्धा पित्तघ्नी मधुरा लघुः ।
शुक्रला बृंहणी पथ्या तद्वन्नन्दीमुखः स्मृतः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Dhānya Varga, 35.

गोधूमगुणाः

गोधूमको यवनकः सुमनश्चमडी मतः ॥
गोधूमो मधुरो वृष्यो गुरुः स्निग्धो हिमः सरः ।
जीवनो बृंहणो वर्ण्यो बल्योऽस्यंदी रुचिप्रदः ॥
स्थैर्यं संधानकृद् वातपित्तघ्नः कफकृन्न च ।

गोधूम भेदाः

मधूली स्वल्पगोधूमो मध्यदेशे पिशीतिका ॥
निःशूको दीर्घगोधूमः सूक्ष्मो नन्दीमुखी मता ॥
मधूलिका हिमा स्निग्धा पित्तघ्नी मधुरा लघुः ॥
शुक्रला बृंहणी पथ्या तद्वन्नन्दीमुखी मता ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Dhānya Varga, 42-43.

गोधूमः

अ. गोधूमो बहुदुग्धः स्वापूषोम्लेच्छभोजनः ।
यवनो निस्तुषः क्षीरी रसालः सुमनश्च सः ॥
गोधूमः स्निग्ध मधुरो वातघ्नः पित्तदाहकृत् ।
गुरुः श्लेष्मागदो बल्यो रुचिरो वीर्यवर्द्धनः ॥

लघुगोधूमः

ब. स्निग्धोऽन्यो लघुगोधूमो गुरुर्वण्णः कषायकः ।
आमदोषकरो बल्यो मधुरो वीर्यपुष्टिदः ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Śālyādi Varga, 66-68.

वातरक्ते

‘हितो गोधूमचूर्णश्चच्छाम क्षीरघृताप्लुतः ।

Bhāvaprakāśa, Vātaraktādhikāra, 29-32.

अन्नद्रवशूले गोधूम मण्डकम्

गोधूममण्डकं तत्र सर्पिषा गुडसंयुद्यम् ।

ससितं शीतदुग्धेन मुदितं क्वथितं हितम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Śūlādhikāra, 31-77.

ब्रघ्न शमनाय गोधूमकल्कः

अविक्षीरेण गोधूम-कल्कं कुन्दरुकस्य वा ।

प्रलेपेन सुखोष्णं स्याद् ब्रघ्न शूलहरं परम् ॥

Cakradatta, Vṛddhibraghna Cikitsā, 40-23.

Baṅgasena Vrahghna, 4.

व्रणे

कलायाश्च मसूराश्च गोधूमः सहरेणवः ।

कल्कीकृताः प्रशस्यन्ते निःस्नेहा व्रणपीडने ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 25-62.

कासे

चूर्णानि गोधूमयवोद्भवानिकाकोलिवर्गश्चकृतः सुसूक्ष्मः ।

कासेषु पेयास्त्रिषु कासवद्भिः क्षीरेण सक्षौद्रघृतेन वापि ॥

Suśruta Samhitā, Uttara, 52-36.

अस्थिभग्ने

संघृतेनमस्थिसंहारं लाक्षां गोधूममर्जुनम् ।

सन्धिश्लथेऽस्थिभग्ने च पिबेत् क्षीरेणमानवः ॥

Cakradatta, 6-49-8.

वातरक्ते

‘वाते स रक्ते सघृतं प्रदेहो गोधूमचूर्णं छगलीपयश्च ।’

Caraka Samhitā, Sūtra, 3-23.

हृद्रोगे

गोधूमककुभचूर्णं छागपेयोगव्यसर्पिषा पक्वम् ।

मधुशर्करासमेतं शमयति हृद्रोगमुद्धतं पुंसाम् ॥

Vṛndamādhava, 31-34.

तैलाज्यगुडविपक्वं चूर्णं गोधूमपार्थजं वापि ।
पिबतिपयोऽनु च स भवेज्जितसकलहृदामयः पुरुषः ॥

Vṛndamādhava, 31-13.

प्रमेहे

‘देयस्तथा वेणुयवा यवानां कल्पेन गोधूममयाश्च भक्ष्याः ।’

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 6-24.

‘तद्वच्च गोधूमान् ।’

Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha, Cikitsā, 14-14.

वाजीकरणे

क्षीरपक्वांस्तु गोधूमात्मगुप्ताफलैः सह ।

शीतान् घृतयुतान् खादेत्ततः पश्चात् पयः पिबेत् ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 26-30.

कुष्ठे

‘यथाविधानेन गोधूमवेणुयवानुपयुञ्जीतः ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 10-5.

कफजशूले

‘मधुना जीर्णगोधूमं कफशूले प्रयोजयेत् ।’

Bhāvaprakāśa, Cikitsā, 26-30.

GOJIHVĀ

Botanical Name : *Onosma bracteatum* Wall.

Family : Boraginaceae

Classical Name : Gojihvā

Sanskrit Names

Gojihvā, Koṣṭhaśūlikā, Gobhī, Dhenujihvā, Khara-
parṇinī, Kharapatrī, Gojī-Gojikā, Darvikā-Darvipatrī,
Bhūmikalikā, Adhomukhā, Pratanā.

Description

Onosma bracteatum Wall.

Hirsute herbs. Stems 38 cm., erect, stout, patntly,
hispid. Radical leaves 15 by 2.5 cm., petioled; cauline 5 by

1.7 cm., scuminate, upper surface hispid, with tubercular based hairs; lower leaves lanceolate, upper ovate-lanceolate; silky white beneath. Racemes capitate.

Flowers in dense wooly heads 5-7.5 cm. diam. Calyx-lobes in fruit 2.5 cm., linear-silky. Corolla-tube 1.3 cm. long. 4 mm. diam., at the mouth, hairy without, ring of hairs at the base within. Anthers included, filaments linear.

Nutlets ovoid, rough, 4 mm., acute.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Rainy season to Autumn season.

Distribution

It is found in the Himalayas, north-eastern regions, in alpine zones; 11,000 ft. elevation in inner ranges of Himalayas.

Chemical Composition

Leaves contain mucilaginous matter in rich quantity; and they also contain sodium 9.5, potassium 14.5, calcium 27, iron percent and magnesium salts.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Madhura, Tikta.
Guṇa	: Laghu, Snigdha
Vīrya	: Śīta
Vipāka	: Madhura
Doṣakarma	: Vātapittaśāmaka, Kaphaniḥsāraka.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Śleṣmahara, Mastiṣkabalya Dāhapraśamana, Vraṇaropaṇa Anulomana-mṛdivirecana Hṛdaya Sāmaka-hṛdya Raktaśodhaka, Śleṣmaḥara Mūtrajanana-snehana, Jvaraghna Balya.
Roga	: Kāsa-śvāsa-pratiśyāya-pārśva-śūla Urovikāra Unmāda-mānasika dourbalya Vibandha-udāvarta, Kāmalā Hṛddrava-Hṛddourbalya

Upadaṁśa, Āmavāta, Raktavikāra
 Jvara, Mukhapāka
 Vraṇaśoṭha-vraṇa
 Vātapaittika vikāra, Dourbalya.

Therapeutic Use

The plant is considered useful as tonic, alterative and demulcent; and in the diseases of bladder and stomach it is useful specially in the irritation of bladder and stomach and strangury.

The decoction is quite useful in rheumatism, syphilis and leprosy. It is good refrigerant and demulcent as the decoction or aqua (arka) is much used relieving excessive thirst and restlessness in febrile excitement, and also useful in relieving functional palpitation of the heart.

The leaves and flowers are medicinally useful in various diseases and frequently as an expectorant herbal drug ('varga gabjavan' 'gule gabjavan' are popularly named to leaves and flowers respectively specially in Ūnani Medicine). In the forms of the decoction (Kvātha) aqua (arka) and in other recipes as an ingredient, the plant drug is given in catarrhal, lungs, chest and throat affections; and it is used in coryza and influenza.

The decoction of the leaves is used in syphilis, gonorrhoea, gout, heart troubles, blood diseases, urinary complaints, fever, flatulence, jaundice, insanity, insomnia, general debility, psychic problems and dyspepsia.

Externally, the leaves powder or ash is applied to stomatitis and similar affections of vocal cavity. Powder dust is used for the ulcers.

Parts Used : Leaves, Flowers.

Dose : Leaves 4-6 gms., Flowers 3-6 gms.

Formulations (yoga)

Arka Gabagaban, Banafsādi Kvātha.

GOJHVA (गोजिह्वा)

- क. गोजिह्वा गोजिका गोभी दर्विका खरपर्णिनी ।
 ख. गोजिह्वा वातला शीता ग्राहिणी कफपित्तनुत् ॥

हृद्या प्रमेहकासास्त्रवणज्वरहरी लघुः ।
कोमला तुवरा तिक्ता स्वादुपाकरसः स्मृता ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Nighaṅṭu, Guḍūcyādi Varga, 297-298.

- अ. गोधूमिका दर्विपत्री दर्विका कोष्ठशूलिका ।
गोभी गोली च गोजिह्वा विज्ञेया भूमिकालिका ॥
- ब. गोजिह्वा तुवरा तिक्तास्वादुपाकरसाः हिमा ।
वातघ्न ग्राहिणी हृद्या कफपित्तहरा लघुः ॥
हन्यात् कासारुचिश्वास प्रमेहास्त्रज्वर व्रणान् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 733-735.

गोजिह्वा

गोजिह्वा खरपत्री स्यात् प्रतना दार्विका तथा ।
अधोमुखा धेनुजिह्वा अधःपुष्पी च सप्तधा ॥

गोजिह्वा गुणाः

गोजिह्वा कटुका तीव्रा शीतला पित्तनाशनी ।
व्रणसंरोपणी चैव सर्वदन्तविषार्तिजित् ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Śatāhvādi Varga, 86-87.

गोजिह्वापत्रम्-पत्रगुणाः (शाकम्)

‘गोजिह्वा कुष्ठमेहास्त्रकृच्छ्रज्वरहरी लघुः ।’

Bhāvaprakāśa, Nighaṅṭu, Sāka Varga, 39.

उपदंश चिकित्सायां गोजी तैलम्

गोजी विडङ्गन्यष्टीभिः सर्वगन्धैश्च संयुतम् ।
एतत्सर्वोपदंशेषु तैलं रोपणमिष्यते ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Madhyakhanda, 51-42.

दन्तचिकित्सायां गोजीपत्रे स्त्रावणम्

काकोदुम्बरिका गोजी पत्रैर्विस्त्रावयेद्द्रिषक् ।
क्षौद्रयुक्तैश्च लवणैः सव्योषैः प्रतिशोधयेत् ॥

Cakradatta, Mukharoga Cikitsā, 56-12.

GOKṢURA

Botanical Name : Tribulus terrestris Linn.

Family : Zygophyllaceae

Classical Name : Gokṣura

Sanskrit Names

Gokṣura-Gokṣuraka, Śvadanṣṭrā, Trikaṇṭaka, Caṇad-ruma, Vanaśṛṅgāṭa, Svādukaṇṭaka, Ikṣugandhika.

Regional Names

Gokhru, Hathchikar (Hind., Beng., Mar., Punj.), Sarate (Mar.), Betha gokhru, Mhana Gokhru (Guj.), Nerunje (Tam.), Palleru (Tel.), Kharakhasak (Pers.), Hasak (Arab.); Small Caltrops, Gokhru (Eng.).

Description

A. *Tribulus terrestris* Linn. : Gokṣura-kṣudra gokṣura

A procumbent herb; stems and branches pilose; young parts silky-villous.

Leaves opposite, abruptly pinnate, one of each pair usually smaller than the other; sometimes wanting; stipules lanceolate, hairy; leaflets 3-6 pairs, 6-12 mm. long, oblong, mucronate, sericeos-villous with appressed hairs beneath and more or less so on the upper surfaces, base rounded oblique; petiolules very short pilose.

Flowers axillary or leaf-opposed, solitary; pedicels 1.2-2 cm. long, slender, hairy. Sepals 6 mm., lanceolate, acute, hairy. Petals 1 cm., long, oblong-obovate; claw short, hairy. Ovary bristly; style short; stout; stigmatic lobes longer than the diameter of the style.

Fruit globose, consisting of (usually) 5 hairy or nearly glabrous, often muruculate, woody cocci, each with 2 pairs of hard sharp spines, one pairs longer than the other. Seeds several in each coccus, with transverse partitions between them.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Rainy to Autumn seasons and onwards.

Distribution

It is found throughout India, specially warm regions.

B. *Pedaliium murex* Linn. : Bṛhad gokṣura.

Family

Pedaliaceae

Description

A much-branched herb, 15-38 cm. high; stems and branches often slightly rough with scaly glands.

Leaves oppsite, pale glaucous-green, somewhat fleshy, 2.5-5 by 2-3.8 cm. broadly ovate-oblong, truncate or obtuse, coarsely crenate-serrate or sublobate, glabrous above, the lower side usually covered with minute scales, base acute; petioles 6-20 mm. long.

Flowers axillary, solitary; pedicels 4 mm. long. Calyx small, scarcely 3 mm. long; minutely scaly outside, divided rather more than half way down; lobes 5, linear-triangular, acute. Corolla 2.5 cm. long, about 2 cm. across the mouth, bright yellow; tube 2 cm; long, slender; lobes broad, rounded. Filaments glandular-hairy at the base.

Fruit 1.3-2 cm., long, narrowed at the base, pyramidal-ovoid above the spines, bluntly 4-angled, with stout sharp conical horizontal spines from the angles.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Rains to Autumn seasons and onwards.

Distribution

It is found in tropical regions in India; Konkan, Gujarat, Madhya pradesh, Uttar Pradesh, Deccan Peninsula and other areas in country.

Chemical composition

Fruit contains traces of an alkaloid, a fixed oil, a small quantity of essential oil, resins and nitrates.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Madhura
Guṇa	: Guṇu, Snigdha.
Vīrya	: Śīta
Vipāka	: Madhura
Doṣakarma	: Vātapittaśāmaka.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Mūtrala-aśmarīnāśana Vṛṣya-bājīkaraṇa Vedanāsthāpana-vātaśāmaka Hṛdya-raktapittaśāmaka, Śoṭhahara
--------------	--

Kaphanihsāraka, Garbhassthāpana
 Āmāśaya balya-anulomana-grāhī
 Kṛmighna.

Roga : Aśmari-mūtrakrcchra-mūtraghāta-
 bastiśoṭha, Prameha-roga
 Dhātukṣaya-śukra vikāra
 Napunsakatā-klaibya, Yonivyāpada
 Garbhasrāva-pāta, Kāsa-śvāsa
 Hṛdroga-Raktapitta-śoṭha
 Agnimāndya-dourbalya
 Saṅgrahaṇī-Arśa
 Udara-koṣṭha vikāra-vibandha
 Nāḍīdourbalya
 Vedanāyukta Vikāra-vātavyādi
 Śūlaroga.

Therapeutic Use

The medicinal properties of Bṛhad Gokṣura (*Pedali-um murex* Linn.) are almost the same as those of Laghu Gokṣura (*Tribulus terrestris* Linn.)

The fresh leaves and stems, briskly agitated in cold water, speedily convert it into a thick mucilage, nearly of the consistence of the white of a raw egg., inodorous and tasteless.

An infusion of fresh leaves and stems is used as an esteemed remedy for treating gonorrhoea and dysuria.

The fruits are considered demulcent and diuretic, antispasmodic and aphrodisiac. The juice is used in aphthae as a local application. The decoction is useful in irritation of the urinary organs; it is given as a remedy for spermatorrhoea, incontinence of urine and impotency.

The juice of the fruits is useful as an emmenagogue. It is employed in puerperal diseases, and to promote the local discharge. The leaves are used as a curry in splenic enlargements. The decoction of the roots is used as an antibilios remedy.

The fruits of Laghu Gokṣura (*Tribulus terrestris* Linn.) are useful as alterative, aphrodisiac, anthelmintic, anti-arthritic, cooling, tonic, demulcent, expectorant and

conceptive (root of white flower-variety). It is useful as calculous affections, kidney diseases, painful micturition and urinary discharges.

It is very useful drug in kidney and urinary troubles specially calculus and dysuria and their allied complications. The fruits are antispasmodic, aphrodisiac and emmenagogue; their decoction is used for the diseases for which the mucilaginous infusion of the leaves is suggested. The juice of the fruits is given in puerperal diseases, and for promoting lochial discharge. A pint of an infusion of the seeds is given daily in spermatorrhoea, impotence and incontinence of urine.

Parts Used

Fruits, Roots, Whole Plant.

Dose

Fruit powder 3-6 gms., Decoction 50-100 gms.

Formulations (yoga)

Gokṣurādi cūrṇa, Gokṣurādyavaleha, Gokṣurādi guggulu, Gokṣurādi Kvātha, Daśamūlāriṣṭa, Trikaṇṭakadya (Sādhita) Kṣīra, Trikaṇṭakādi Kvātha, Śvadanṣṭrā taila, Gokṣurādi modakaṃ, Śvadanṣṭrā ghṛtam, Abhayāriṣṭa, Śvadanṣṭrādi pāmakaṃ, Śvadanṣṭrādi Kaṣāyaṃ, Trikaṇṭakabīja cūrṇaṃ, Bṛhat Varuṇādi Kvātha. Mūtravirecanīya, Śothahara, Kṛmighna, Anuvāsanopaga (Caraka.), Vidārigandhādi, Vīratarvādi, Laghupancamūla, Kaṇṭakapancamūla, Vātāśmaribhedena (Suśruta.)

GOKṢURA (गोक्षुर)

गोक्षुरो मधुरो वृष्यो दीपनो बलपुष्टिकृत् ॥

शीतलो बस्तिवातघ्ने दोषत्रय निवर्हणम् ।

हृद्रोगमेह कृच्छ्राशमश्वासकासरुजाहरः ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 69-70.

गोक्षुरः शीतलः स्वादुर्बलकृद्बस्तिशोधनः ॥

मधुरो दीपनो वृष्यः पुष्टिदश्चाश्मरी हरः ।

प्रमेहश्वासकासार्षः कृच्छ्रहृद्रोग वातनुत् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Guḍūcyādi, Varga, 45-41.

गोक्षुरद्वय (क्षुद्रगोक्षुर-बृहत् गोक्षुर)

स्यातामुभौ गोक्षुरकी सुशीतलौ बलप्रदो तो मधुर बृहणी ।

कृच्छ्राश्मरीमेह विदाहनाशनी रसायनी तत्र बृहद्गुणोत्तरः ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Śatāhvādi Varga, 43.

गोक्षुरो मूत्रकृच्छ्रघ्नो वृष्यः स्वादुः समीरजित् ।

शूलहृद्रोगशमनो बृहणो मेहनाशनः ॥

Dhanvantari Nighaṇṭu.

रक्तपित्ते

‘.....श्वदंष्ट्रया शतावर्या रक्तपित्साधितं पयः ।’

Vṛnda, Raktapittādhikāra.

वाजीकरणे

श्वदंष्ट्रा पयसा सिद्धां पिबेदकाकिनी नरः ।

जरया पीतसारोऽपि युवेव चरति स्त्रियः ॥

Śoḍhala, Gadanigraha, 2-9-58.

शोथे

चूर्णं श्वदंष्ट्राफलवाजिर्गन्धा विनिर्मितं माक्षिक सम्प्रयुक्तम् ।

क्षीरेण सार्धं परिपीयमानं शोथं च कासं च निहन्ति पुंसाम् ॥

Rāja Mārtaṇḍa.

आमवाते

शुण्ठीगोक्षुरक्वाथः प्रातः प्रातनिषेवितः ।

सामे वाते कटीशूले पाचनं रुक्प्रणाशनम् ॥

Cakradatta. 25-9.

कफजमूत्रकृच्छ्रे श्वदंष्ट्रादिक्वाथः

‘श्वदंष्ट्राविश्वतोयं वा कफकृच्छ्रविनाशनम् ।’

Cakradatta, Mūtrakṛcchra Cikitsā, 32-13.

मूत्रकृच्छ्र चिकित्सायां गोक्षुर प्रयोगः

त्रिकण्टकादि क्वाथः

त्रिकण्टकाद्यं घृतम् ।

Cakradatta, 32/22. 28.

मूत्राघाते (मूत्रकच्छामये)

त्रिकण्टकाद्य साधितं क्षीरम्—

Cakradatta, 33-9.

अश्मरी चिकित्सायां गोक्षुर योगाः

श्वदंष्ट्रादि पानकम्

श्वदंष्ट्रादि कषाय

Cakratatta, Āsmari Cikitsā, 34/30-31.

शकृज्जे मूत्रकृच्छ्रे

क्वाथं गोक्षुरबीजस्य यवक्षारयुतं पिबेत् ।

मूत्रकृच्छ्रं शकृज्जञ्च पीतः शीघ्रं विनाशयेत् ॥

Vṛndamādhava, 32-16; Bhāvaprakāśa, Cikitsā, 35-33; Cakradatta.

अश्मर्याम्

घृतं श्वदंष्ट्रास्वरसेन सिद्धम् ।

क्षीरेण चैवाष्टगुणेन पेयम् ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 26-74.

मूत्रमार्गात् सरुजं प्रवृत्ते मूत्रे

‘गोक्षुरकैः शृतं वा ।’

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 26-74.

अश्मरीभेदनार्थम्

त्रिकण्टकस्य बीजानि चूर्णं माक्षिक संयुक्तम् ।

अविक्षीरेण सप्ताहमश्मरी भेदनं पिबेत् ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 7.

श्वदंष्ट्रातैलम्

श्वदंष्ट्रास्वरसप्रस्थौ द्वौ समौ पयसा सह ॥

षट्फलं शृङ्गवेरस्य गुडस्याष्टपलं तथा ॥

तैलप्रस्थं विपक्वं तैर्दद्यात् सर्वानिलार्तिषु ।

जीर्णेतैले च दुग्धेन पेया कल्पः प्रशस्यते ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 28=146/148.

मूत्रकृच्छ्रे

गोक्षुरुर्हितः कृच्छ्रे ।

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Uttara, 40-50.

अश्मरी रोगे

त्रिकण्टकस्य बीजानां चूर्णं माक्षिकसंयुतम् ।
अविक्षीरेण सप्ताहं पेयमश्मरि नाशनम् ॥

Bhāvaprākāśa, Aśmarirogādhikāra, 3-64.

रतिवर्द्धनार्थं गोक्षुरादि मोदकम्

Bhāvaprakāśa, Viājīkaraṇādhikāra, 72/25-28.

कुत्सितसंभोगजन्य नपुंसकत्वे

पयति गोक्षुरचूर्णं छागक्षीरेणसाधितं समधु ।
भुक्तं क्षपयति षाण्ढ्यं यज्जनितं कुप्रयोगेण ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Vājīkaraṇādhikāra, 72-49.

हृद्रोगादयः चिकित्सायां

Cakradatta, Hṛdroga Cikitsā, 31/27-30.

अश्मरी प्रतिकारार्थं त्रिकण्टकबीजचूर्णम्
श्वदंष्ट्राघृतम्

Cakradatta, Aśmarī Cikitsā, 34-34.

अश्मर्याम्

मूलं श्वदंष्ट्रेक्षुकोरुबुकान् क्षीरेण पिष्टं बृहतीद्वयाञ्च ।
आलोड्य दध्ना मधुरेण पेय विनन्ति समाश्मरि भेदनाय ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 26-62.

त्रिकण्टकस्य बीजानां चूर्णं माक्षिकसंयुतम् ।
अविक्षीरेण सप्ताहश्मरीभेदनं परम् ॥

Suśruta Samhitā, Cikitsā, 7-19; Vṛndamādhava, 34-28.

गोक्षुरकस्य बीजानां धातुमाक्षिक संयुतम् ।
चूर्णं महिषीदुग्धेन पानञ्चाश्मरिपातनम् ॥

Hārīta Samhitā, 3-31-13.

शोषरोगे

चूर्णं श्वदंष्ट्राफल वाजिगन्धानिर्मितं माक्षिकसंयुतम् ।
क्षीरेण सार्धं परिपीयमानं शोषं च कासं च निहन्तिपुंसाम् ॥

Rājamārtaṇḍa, 12-3.

आमवाते

शुण्ठीगोक्षुरकक्वाथः प्रातः प्रातर्निषेवितः ।

सामे वाते कटीशूले पाचनं रुक्प्रणाशनम् ॥

Cakradatta, 25-9.

रसायने

‘गोक्षुरक-रसायनम् ।’

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Uttara, 39-56/57.

चूर्णं श्वदंष्ट्रामलकामृतानां लिहन् ससर्पिर्मधुभागमिश्रम् ।

वृषः स्थिरः शान्तविकारदुःखः समाः शतं जीवतिकृष्णकेशः ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Uttara, 39-160.

मूत्रमार्गज्वरक्तस्त्रावे

शतावरीगोक्षुरकः श्रुतं वा पयो वाऽप्यथ पर्णिनीभिः ।

रक्तं निहन्त्याशु विशेषतस्तु यन् मूत्रमार्गात् सरुजं प्रयाति ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 4-85.

रक्तपित्ते

द्राक्षया पर्णिनीभिर्वा बलया मधुकेन वा ।

श्वदंष्ट्रयाशतावर्या रक्तजित् साधितं पयः ॥

Vṛndamādhava, 9-98.

मूत्रकृच्छ्रे

‘श्वदंष्ट्राकण्टकारीभ्यां मूत्रकृच्छ्रे सघाणितम् ।’

Caraka Samhitā, Sūtra, 2-22.

श्वदंष्ट्रास्वरसे तैलं सगुडक्षीरनागरम् ।

पक्त्वा तत् पूर्ववद् योज्यं तत्रानिलरुजापहम् ॥

Suśruta Samhitā, Uttara, 59-19.

क्वाथं गोक्षुरबीजस्य यवक्षारयुतं पिबेत् ।

मूत्रकृच्छ्रं शकृज्जं च पीतः शीघ्रं निवारयेत् ।

शर्कराश्मरीकृच्छ्रे च शर्कराश्मरिनाशनम् ॥

Vṛndamādhava, 32-16; Bhāvaprakāśa, Cikitsā, 35-63.

केशसंवर्धने

मोक्षुरस्तिल पुष्पाणि तुल्ये च मधुसर्पिषी ।

शिरःप्रलेपनं तु केशसंवर्धनं परम् ॥

Śārṅgadhara Samhitā, 3-11-22.

मूत्रकृच्छ्रे वेदनायाम्

क्वाथं सपत्रमूलस्य गोक्षुरस्य फलस्य च ।

पिबेन् मधुसितायुक्तं मूत्रकृच्छ्ररुजापहम् ॥

Baṅgasena, Mūtrāghāta, 30;

Bhāvaprakāśa, Cikitsā, 36-30.

मूत्रकृच्छ्रे

स्थलशृंगाटकफलैर्वा कल्कः केरीफलाम्बुना ।

कृच्छ्रं मूत्रस्य जयेत् क्लेशमिवेशो नमस्कारः ॥

Vaidya Manoramā, 7-3.

समूलगोक्षुरक्वाथः सितामाक्षिकसंयुतः ।

नाशयेन् मूत्रकृच्छ्राणि तथा चोष्णसमीरणम् ॥

Śārṅgadhara Saṁhitā, 2-2-109.

GUḌAYOGAPHALĀ

Botanical Name : Cucurbita maxima Duchesne.

Family : Cucurbitaceae

Classical Name : Guḍayogaphalā

Sanskrit Names

Daṅgāri-Daṅgārī, Dīrghavāru, Karkāru, Nāgaśuṅḍī, Gadantaphalā, Śarkarādaṅgara, Karkāru.

Regional Names

Sitaphal, Kaddu, Mithakaddu Kashiphal (Hindi), Pushimi Pooshani, (Tamil), Gummadi (Telugu), Gaddu (U.P. Hills), Melon Pumpkin, Red Guard, Squash Guard (English). Lal Bhopla (Marathi), Kumbal (Kan.), Chakkerakumpalan (Malayalam).

Description

Large climbing or creeping herb, hispid or hairy.

Leaves nearly orbicular, in outline and not pointed or much lobed, but with heap sinus at base.

Corolla prevailingly with soft obtuse more or less crinkly revolute or hanging lobes, the tube with parallel sides

on bulging at base; peduncle short, spongy; nearly cylindrical, not expanded at attachment to fruit.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Autumn season and onwards. Farming seasons.

Distribution

It is cultivated throughout India. Extensively cultivated for producing fruits.

Chemical Composition

Fruit pulp contains saponin, cucurbitin and lutein. The mixed fatty acids of seed oil fractionated by liquid solid countercurrent distribution with urea. The percentage of fatty and composition of oil is palmitic 21.5, stearic 8.4, oleic 27.9 and linoleic 43%.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Madhura
Guṇa	: Guru
Vīrya	: Sīta
Vipāka	: Madhura
Doṣakarma	: Vātapittaśāmaka

Action and Properties

Karma	: Rocana, Tarpaṇa, Balya, Śramehara Vīryavivardhana, Viṣṭambhī, Śoṣahr̥t.
Roga	: Śoṣa, Jāḍya, Bhrama, Galagaṇḍa Dāha, Raktapitta.

Therapeutic Uses

The fruit pulp is used as a poultice and applied to burns, inflammation boils. The oil is useful as nerve tonic. Seeds are anthelmintic and used as taenicide, diuretic and tonic.

The fruit is domestically used as vegetable which is among common edible and food articles; the fruit pieces are cooked for preparing vegetable.

The fruit has tonic and aphrodisiac properties and useful in debility, thirst, pain, burning sensation, vertigo and urinary troubles.

Parts Used

Fruit-pulp, Seeds, Fruit, Stalk, Oil.

Dose

Fruit pulp edible-vegetable.

GUDAYOGAPHALĀ (गुडयोगफला)

डङ्गरी डाङ्गरी चैव दीर्घेवारुश्च डङ्गरिः ।

डङ्गरी नागशुण्डी च गदन्तफला मुनिः ॥

डङ्गरी शीतला रुच्या वातपित्तास्रदोषजित् ।

शोषहृत्तर्पणी गौल्या जाड्यहा मूत्ररोधनुत् ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Mūlakādi Varga, 197-198.

क. डंगरी शीतला रुच्या तृप्तिकृन्मधुरा स्मृता ।

शोष जाड्यं मूत्ररोधं दाहं रक्तरुजं हरेत् ॥

ख. भवेद् बालफलं किञ्चित् शीतलं चाल्पमधुरम् ।

रुचिकृत् तर्पणं पुष्टिं बलवीर्यस्य कारकम् ॥

श्रमभ्रान्त्योः नाशकरमथ पक्वं गुरु स्मृतम् ।

मधुरं कफकृद्दाहरुकृत्तृड् विकारनुत् ॥

Nighaṅṭu Ratnākara.

शर्कराडंगरं बालं पिच्छिलं चाल्पमधुरम् ।

सुपक्वं मधुरं रुच्यं बलवीर्यं विवर्धनम् ॥

*Nighaṅṭu Saṅgraha.***कर्कारु**

गुड (रु) योगफलान्यारुः कर्कारुः राजकर्कटी ।

कर्कारु मधुरं स्वादु पाके रूक्षं हिमं गुरु ॥

रक्तपित्तहरं ग्राहि स्यन्दि विष्टम्भि दोषलम् ।

पक्वं पित्ताग्निरुचिकृत् सक्षारं कफवातहत् ॥

*Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 533-534.***गलगण्डे**

जीर्णकर्कारुकरसं विडसैन्धव संयुतम् ।

नस्थेन हन्ति तरुणं गलगण्डं न संशयः ॥

Vṛndamādhava, 41-6.

GUDŪCĪ

Botanical Name : *Tinaspora cordifolia* (Wild) Miers.

Family : Menispermaceae

Classical Name : Guḍūcī

Sanskrit Names

Guḍūcī, Chinnarūhā, Kuṇḍalinī, Madhuparṇī, Vatsādani, Cakralakṣaṇikā, Amṛtā, Tantrikā, Cakrāṅgī.

Regional Names

Giloya, Giloya Guruch, Galoya, (Hind.), Gulanch (Beng.), Gulvel (Mar.), Galo (Guj.), Shindil Kodi (Tam.), Tippatigo (Tel.), Gulanch (Arab.), Heart-leaved, Moonseed (Eng.)

Description

A large deciduous climber with succulent, corky, grooved stems; branches sending down slender pendulous fleshy roots, terete, striate, with tubercled, pale, sometimes shining or glaucous bark.

Leaves membranous, 7-9-nerved, 5-10 cm. or rarely 12 by 10 cm. roundish subdeltoid cordate with a broad sinus and large basal lobes, obtuse or more or less cuspidate, reticulately veined with microscopic glistening glands, beneath; petiole 2.5-6cm. long.

Racemes rather lax, 5 cm. long, elongating and finally often longer than the leaves, axillary, terminal or from the old wood.

Male flowers : clustered in the axils of small subulate bracts. Sepals the 3 outer very small, ovate-oblong, acute, the inner larger, membranous broadly elliptical concave, 3-4 mm., yellow. Petals 6, equal, about 2 mm. long, broadly spatulate, each loosely embracing a stamen when young, claw cuneate, lamina triquetrous or subtrilobed, reflexed at apex. Pistillode O. Female flowers : usually solitary, similar to male, but sepals green, margins not reflexed, staminodes, short, linear.

Carpels 1-3 widely separated on the short fleshy gynophore, dorsally convex, ventrally flat or nearly so, scarlet, size of a larger pea; style scar subterminal.

Stone broadly ellipsoid, with a slender dorsal ridge and a ventral depression, slightly muricate.

Stem

The fresh stem has a green succulent bark; covered by a thin brown epidermis, which peels off in flakes; it is studded with warty prominences here and there, gived of roots and branches bearing smooth, heart-shaped leaves and bunches of red berries; when dry it shrinks very much and the bark separates from the wood and becomes of a dull brown colour; the latter consists of a number of wedge-shaped bundles, the taste is very bitter; the odour not on any way peculiar.

The pieces of stem in dried state form raw material of market drugs.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Summer to winter season.

Distribution

It is found throughout tropical India. Large climbers on trees, shrubs and hedges occurring mostly in tropical regions.

Chemical Compostion

Plant contains berberine, bitter substance starch, another bitter principle, and a neutral substance. Fresh stems give crude gilon and gilonin. Stem contains other substances also.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Tikta, Kaṣāya
Guṇa	: Guru, Snigdha
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Madhura
Doṣakarma	: Tridoṣaśāmaka.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Rasāyana-vayaḥsthāpana-Dhātukṛt Kaṭupouṣṭika Jvaraghna-Dāhapraśamana Kuṣṭhaghna, Vedanāsthāpana
-------	--

Kaphaghna, Vṛṣya, Cakṣusya
 Medhya, Balya, Keśya-keśaropaṇa
 Bhramahara
 Hṛdya-raktaśodhaka-raktavardhaka
 Āmāśayasthāmlatā nirodhaka
 Tṛṣṇānigrahaṇa, Chardinigrahaṇa
 Pathya, Bhūtaghna
 Dīpana-pācana-sangrāhi
 Anulomana-pittasāraka, Kṛmighna
 Mūtrajanana-mūtravirajaniya
 Viśaghna.

Roga

: Jvara-jīrṇajvara-viśamajvara
 Dāha-tṛṣṇā-chardi-śrama
 Kṣaya-dourbalya-dhātukṣaya
 Vātarakta-Āmavāta, Raktavikāra-doṣa
 Mūtrakṛcchra-mūtradāha-pūyameha-
 prameha, Śukradourbalya
 Kāsa-śvāsa
 Kuṣṭha-visarpa-kaṇḍū-carmaroga
 Phiraṅga, Hṛddourbalya
 Pāṇḍu-kāmalā-halīmaka
 Agnimāndya-chardi, Śūla-Arśa-
 Amlapitta, Pravāhikā, Grahaṇī
 Kṛmiroga, Viṣa, Bhrama
 Netraroga-timira, Plīhodara
 Pradara, Stanyaśuddhi
 Keśaroga-balī-palita, Jarā vyādhi
 Bhūta-graha bādhā.

Therapeutic Uses

The herbal drug is alterative, anthelmintic, anti-arthritic, anti-periodic, anti-pyretic, aphrodisiac, bitter tonic, blood purifier, general tonic, nutritive and stomachic.

It is useful in bilious fever, chronic diseases of diarrhoea and dysentery, fever, rheumatism and gout, skin affections, general debility, malarial fever, seminal weakness, splenic effect and urinary affections.

The fresh stem is more efficacious than the dry one. It is recommended that the stem of this plant drug may

preferably be used always in green and fresh state; and if storage is desired, the stems should be properly collected during the rainy season and than stored (packing in suitable container) after drying in shade. This kind of raw drug material (dried stems) may be used in medicine till the dried of herbal drug remains medicinally potent since old raw material becomes inert.

The drug is commonly used in rheumatism, urinary diseases, dyspepsia, general debility, syphilis, fever skin diseases, biliousness, haemorrhoids, bronchitis, spermatorrhoea. impotency, jaundice and morbidity of liver.

An infusion of the plant is given in (one to three ounces twice or thrice a day) in fever, blood impurities, malarial and periodic fevers and various other ailments which are to be treated with this drug.

The expressed juice of the fresh plant is given (in doses of two or four drachmes) with long pepper and honey, in gonorrhoea, cough and chronic fever. The fresh juice of the green plant is administered with milk as a general tonic.

The roots are used in medicine in the same way as the stem. Leaves of the plant are also medicinally useful as they are useful in various diseases and especially their vegetable (guḍūcī patraśāka) is therapeutically recommended.

The watery extract (also known as Indian quinine) is very efficacious in common fever due to cold or indigestion. The facula prepared from the roots and stems, generally from the stems, is commonly known as Gilo sat or sat giloy (guḍūci satva), it is highly valued drug for intermittent fevers, chronic diarrhoea, chronic dysentery, burning sensation, secondary syphilis, chronic gonorrhoea, leucorrhoea, jaundice, rheumatism, urinary disorders and some other ailments.

A medicated garland of small pieces of the stem is usually worn in certain parts of country with the claim to effect against jaundice. In rural and tribal regions, the stems are used popularly as a folk medicine.

This herbal drug is one of the highly valuable and most common drugs in Indian system of medicine which

incorporates it is a potent classical drug; it is employed as an important ingredient in a number of formulations (yoga) under pharmaceuticals and herbal drug industry, being an efficacious herbal drug, with abundant and easy availability and recognition during source plants collection for genuine raw drug with good demand.

The drug possessing restorative and alterative properties is a significant rejuvenation (rasāyana) drug which is recommended in certain diseases under the group, as a preventive as well as curative herbal remedy.

The oil prepared with stem (guḍūcī siddhataila) is externally applied to leprosy, skin diseases and particularly gout. If the decoction and other forms of preparations of the drug are specifically prescribed in the diseases of gout and rheumatism and allied also ailments. The stems decoction, infusion and powder are used frequently in the spleen and liver disorder, anaemia, jaundice, biliary troubles, hyperacidity, colic, worms, phthisis, senile diseases, measles, poisoning, heart troubles, filariasis and various other diseases.

Parts Used : Stems.

Dose

Decoction 50-100 gms., Powder 1-3 gms., Fecula (Satva) 10-30 grains.

Formulations (yoga)

Guḍūcyādi cūrna, Guḍūcyādi Kvātha, Guḍūcīlouha, Guḍūcī taila, Guḍūcī śatva, Amṛtāriṣṭa.

Groups (gaṇa)

Vayaḥsthāpana, Dāhapraśamana, Tṛṣṇānigrahaṇa, Stanyaśodhana, Tṛptoghna (Caraka.), Guḍūcyādi, Paṭolādi, Āragvadhādi, Kākolyādi, Vallīpañcamūla (Suśruta.).

GUDŪCĪ (गुडूची)

ज्ञेया गुडूची गुरुरुष्णवीर्या तिक्ता ज्वरनाशिनी च ।

दाहार्ति तृष्णावमिरक्तवातप्रमेह पाण्डुभ्रमहारिणी ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Guḍūcyādi Varga, 17.

कन्दाह्वया गुडूची च कटुष्णा सन्निपातहाः ।
विषघ्नी ज्वरभूतघ्नी बलीपलितनाशिनी ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Guḍūcyādi Varga, 18.

गडूची मधुरापाके कषाया कटुका लघुः ।
तिक्ता सांग्राहिणी हृद्या बल्योष्णा वह्निकुष्ण जयेत् ॥
दोष कुष्ठकृमिच्छर्दि दाह वातास्र पाण्डुताः ।
ज्वरामयकामलाप्रमेह तृष्णा कासान् रसायनी ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 9-10.

पत्रशाकम्

त्रिदोषघ्नं स्वादु पथ्यं चक्षुष्यं दीपनं लघुः ।
वयसः स्थापनं मेध्यामसृता शाकमुच्यते ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 11.

गुडूची कटुका तिक्ता स्वादुपाका रसायनी ।
संग्राहिणी कषायोष्णा लघ्वी बल्याऽग्निदीपनी ॥
दोषत्रयामसृद्दाहमेहकासांश्च पाण्डुताम् ।
कामलाकुष्ठवातास्रज्वर क्रिमिवमीन्हरेत् ॥
(प्रमेहश्वासकासार्षः वृष्यहृद्रोग वातनुत्) ।

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Guḍūcyādi Varga, 9-10.

‘अमृता सांग्राहिक वातहर दीपनीयश्लेष्म शोणित विबन्धप्रशमनानाम् ।’

Caraka Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 25.

‘.....गुडूची तिक्ता पित्तकफापहा ।’

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra. 46.

‘पत्रं गुडूच्याः शाकार्थं ज्वरिताय प्रदापयेत् ।’

Cakradatta.

कन्दोद्भवागुडूची

कन्दोद्भवा गुडूची च कटूष्णा सन्निपातहा ।
विषघ्नी ज्वरभूतघ्नी बलीपलितनाशिनी ॥

Dhanvantari Nighaṅṭu.

बलाधानार्थम्

अमृतायाः शतं चूर्णं वाससा परिशोधितम् ।
पृथक् षोडश भागाः स्युः गुडमाक्षिक सर्पिषाम् ॥

यथाग्नि भक्षयेदेतन्नरो हितमिताशनः ।
नास्य कश्चिद् भवेद् व्याधिः न जरा पलितं न च ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Madhyamakhaṇḍa.

गुडूचीसत्त्वम्

गुडूचीसत्त्वं सुस्वादु पथ्यं लघु च दीपनम् ।
चक्षुष्यं धातुकृन्मेध्यं वयः स्थापनकारकम् ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu.

ज्वरिणः शाकार्थम्

‘पत्रं गुडूच्याः शाकार्थं ज्वरिताय प्रदापयेत् ।’

श्लीपदे

‘श्लीपदघ्नो रसोऽभ्यासात् गुडूच्यास्तैलसंयुतः ।’

Cakradatta.

पिल्लार्मतिमिरादिषु नेत्ररोगे

गुडूचीस्वरसः कर्षः क्षौद्रं स्यान्माषकोन्मितम् ।
सैन्धवं क्षौद्रतुल्यं स्यात्सर्वमेकत्र मर्दयेद् ॥
अञ्जयेन्नयनं तेन पिल्लार्म तिमिरं जयेत् ।
काचं कण्डूं लिङ्गनाशं शुक्लकृष्णातानादान् ॥

Śārṅgadhara Saṁhitā, Uttara Khaṇḍa, 13.

केशरोपणार्थं (खालित्ये) आदित्यपाकगुडूची तैलम्

Cakradatta, 55-107.

प्रमेहे

‘मधुयुतं गुडूच्या वारसम् ।’

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Cikitsā, 12.

हृदयस्थित वाते

हृदयानिलनाशाय गुडूचीं मरिचान्विताम् ।
पिबेत्प्रातः प्रयत्नेन सम्यगुष्णाम्भसा सह ॥

Baṅgasena.

कुष्ठे

छिन्नायाः स्वरसं वापि सेवमानो यथाबलम् ।
जीर्णे घृतेन भुञ्जीत् स्वल्पयूषोदकेन तु ॥
अपि पूतिशरीरोऽपि दिव्यरूपो भवेन्नरः ।

Cakradatta, 50-59, Sodhala, 359.

मसूरिका रोगे गुडूची योगाः

गुडूच्यादि क्वाथः अमृतादि क्वाथः (विसर्प चिकित्सोक्त)

Cakradatta, Masūrikā, Cikitsā, 54/27,31.

आमवाते अमृताऽऽद्यचूर्णम्

अमृता नागर गोक्षुरमुण्डितिकावरुणकैः ।

मस्त्वारनालपीतं सामानिलनाशनं ख्यातम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Āmavātādhikāra, 26-62.

वातरक्ते अमृता गुग्गुलुः

Cakradatta, 23/51-58.

विसर्परोगादयामृतादिक्वाथः

Cakradatta, 53-20.

विषजनितविसर्पे नवकषाय गुग्गुलुः

Cakradatta, 53-19.

रसायने गुडूची

‘रसो गुडूच्यास्तु..... ।’

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 1.

विषमज्वरे

‘.....गुडूच्या रसमेव वा ।’

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 3.

कामलायाम्

‘.....गुडूच्या वा रस..... ।

शीतं मधुयुतं प्रातः कामलार्त्तः पिबेन्नरः ।’

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 20.

पित्तात्मिकायां छद्याम्

‘.....गुडूच्या जलम्..... ।’

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 33.

वातरक्ते

‘गुडूची रसदुग्धाभ्यां तैलं.....वातरक्तनुत् ।’

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 29.

स्तन्यशुद्ध्यर्थम्

‘अमृता सप्तपर्णं त्वक्क्वाथञ्चैव सनागरम् ।’

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 30.

वातज्वरे

‘शृतशीतकषायं वा गुडूच्याः पेयमेव तु।’

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Uttara, 39.

पित्तप्रबले वातरक्ते

‘पित्तप्रबले.....गुडूचीकषायं वा।’

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 39.

अर्शःसु

‘एष एव.....गुडूचीषु तक्रकल्पः।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 6.

श्लीपदे गुडूची रस प्रयोगः

‘श्लीपदघ्नो रसोऽभ्यासाद् गुडूच्यास्तैलसंयुतः।’

Cakradatta, 42-16.

गुडूची पत्रम्

गुडूचीपत्रमाग्रेयं सर्वज्वरहरं लघु।
कषायं कटुतिक्तं च स्वादुपाकं रसायनम् ॥
बल्यमुष्णं च संग्राहि हन्यादोषात्रयं तृषाम्।
दाहप्रमेहवाता सूक्कामला कुष्ठपाण्डुताः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Śākavarga, 41-42.

वातरक्ते

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Śāhavarga, 41-42.

शतपाकमधुपर्णीतैलम्

मधुपर्ण्याः पलं पिष्ट्वा तैलप्रस्थं चतुर्गुणे।
क्षीरे साध्यं शतं कृत्वा तदेवं मधुकाच्छते ॥
सिद्धं देयं त्रिदोषे स्याद्वातघ्ने श्वासकासनुत्।
हृत्पाण्डुरोगवीसर्पकामला दाहनाशनम् ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 29-117/118.

वातरक्तचिकित्सायां गुडूची तैलम्

गुडूचीक्वाथ कल्काभ्यां पचेत् लिप्य च।
पयसां च समं पक्त्वा भिषङ्मन्देन वह्निना ॥
हन्ति वातं तथा रक्तं जयति दुस्तरम्।

त्वग्दोष व्रणवीसर्प कण्डूदद्भुविनाशनम् ॥

Cakradatta, 23/19-20.

अमृतलताऽऽदिघृतम्

अमृतलतारस कल्कं प्रसाधितं तुरगविद्विषः सर्पिः ।

क्षीरं चतुर्गुणमेतद्वितरेच्च हलीमकात्तेभ्यः ॥

मधुरैन्नपानेस्तं वातपित्तहरैरैरुत् ।

कामलापाण्डुरोगोक्तां क्रिया चात्रोपयोजयेत् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Pāṇḍurogādhikāra, 8-47/48.

प्लीहोदरे

‘पीतं भवेत्प्लीहा विनाशहेतु.....छिन्नरुहाजटा वा ।’

Rājamārtanḍa.

विपर्स रोगे कुण्डल्यादि क्वाथः

Cakradatta, 53-27.

हलीमके

गुड्चीस्वरसे सर्पिः सक्षीरं माहिषं शृतम् ।

चतुर्गुणेन पयसा पाययेत्तद्धलीमके ॥

Śoḍhala.

पैत्तिकप्रदरे रोगे

‘.....पैत्ते गुडूच्या रसमेव च ।’

Cakradatta, 58-2.

वातजन्यरक्तप्रदरे

वासकस्वरसं वाऽपि गुडूच्या रसमेव च ।

Śoḍhala.

जीर्णज्वरे

अमृताया हिमः पेयो जीर्णज्वरहरः स्मृतः ।

वासयाश्च हिमः कासं रक्तपित्तज्वराञ्जयेत् ॥

Śārāṅgadhara Saṁhitā, Madhyamakhaṇḍa, 4.

क्वाथो जीर्णज्वरं हान्ति गुडूच्याः पिप्पलीयुतः ।

Śārāṅgadhara Saṁhitā, Madhyamakhaṇḍa, 2.

पिप्पलीमधुसंयुक्तः क्वाथः छिन्नोद्भवोद्भवः ।

जीर्णज्वरकफध्वंसः ।

Bhāvaprakāśa, Jvara Cikitsā.

कामलायाम्

गुडूची पत्रकल्कं वा पिबेत्तक्रेण कामली ।

Bhāvaprakāśa, Madhyamakhaṇḍa.

वातरक्ते

अमृतैरण्डवासानां क्वाथ एरण्डतैलयुक् ।

पीतः सर्वाङ्गसन्धारि वातरक्तं जयेद् ध्रुवम् ॥

Śārṅgadhara Saṁhitā, Madhyamakhaṇḍa, 2.

सर्वप्रमेहेषु

‘अमृताया रसः क्षौद्रयुक्तः सर्वप्रमेहजित् ।’

Śārṅgadhara Saṁhitā, Madhyamakhaṇḍa, 1.

कामलायाम्

‘.....रसोऽथवा ।गुडूच्या वा पीतो जयति कामलाम् ।’

Śārṅgadhara Saṁhitā, Madhyamakhaṇḍa, 1.

वातशोणिते गुडूच्यादि तैलम्

गुडूची रसदुग्धाभ्यां तैलं द्राक्षारसेन वा ।

सिद्धं मधुकाश्मर्यरसैवां वातरक्तनुत् ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 29-121; Cakradatta, 23-35.

त्रिदोषजन्य वमने

गुडूच्या रचितं हन्ति हिमं मधु समन्वितम् ।

दुर्निवारामपि च्छर्दि त्रिदोषजनितां बलात् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Madhyakhaṇḍa, 16-21.

वातरक्ते गुडूच्याः विविध प्रयोगाः

अ. अमृता कफवातघ्नी कफमेदो विशोषिणी ।

वातरक्तप्रशमनी कण्डूवीसर्प नाशिनी ॥

गुडूच्याः स्वरसं कल्कं चूर्णं वा क्वाथमेव च ।

प्रभूतकालमासेव्य मुच्यते वातशोणितात् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Madhyakhaṇḍa, 29-39/41.

ब. घृतेन वातं सगुडा विबन्धं पित्तं सिताढ्या मधुना कफञ्च ।

वातासृगुग्रं रुबुतैलमिश्रा शुण्ठ्यामवातं शमयेद् गुडूचीं ॥

स. तिस्रोऽथ वा पञ्च गुडेन पथ्या जग्ध्वा पिबेच्छिन्नरुहाकषायम् ।

तद्वातरक्तं शमयत्युदीर्णं माजानुभिन्नं च्युतमप्यवश्यम् ॥

द. अमृतानागरधान्यक-कर्ष त्रितयेन पाचनं सिद्धम् ।
जयति सरक्तं वातं सामं कुष्ठान्यशेषाणि ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Madhyakhaṇḍe, 29-42, 44, 49.

ध. कोकिलाक्षामृताक्राथे पिबेत्कुष्णा यथाबलम् ।
पथ्यभोजी त्रिसप्ताहान्मुच्यते वातशोणितम् ॥

Bhāvaprākāśa, Madhyakhaṇḍe, 29-55

वातरक्तादीनां विकाराणां घृतयोगाः

वातरक्ते गुडूची घृतम्

गुडूची क्वाथकल्काभ्यां सपयस्कं घृतं शृतम् ।
हन्ति वातं तथा रक्तं कुष्ठं जयति दुस्तरम् ॥
क्षीरं स्नेह समं दद्याच्चतुर्भिश्च चतुर्गुणम् ।
एकं द्विविद्रवद्रव्यैः कुर्यात्स्नेहाच्चतुर्गुणम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Madhyakhaṇḍe, 29-95/96.

द्वितीय गुडूची घृतम्

अमृतायाः कषायेण कल्केन च महौषधात् ।
मृद्ग्रिना घृतं सिद्धं वातरक्तहरं परम् ॥
आमवाताढ्यवातादीन्कृमिकुष्ठं व्रणानपि ।
कामला पाण्डुरोगघ्नं यलीह कासज्वरापहम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Madhyakhaṇḍe, 29-97/98.

तृतीय गुडूची घृतम्

अमृतास्वरसविपक्वं सर्पिस्तत्कल्क साधितं पीतम् ।
अपहरति वातरक्तामुत्तानं चावगाहं च ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Madhyakhaṇḍam, Dvitiyabhāga,

Vātaraktādhikāra, 29-99.

चतुर्थ गुडूची घृतम्

अमृतायाः पलशतं जलद्रोणावशोषितम् ।
घृतप्रस्थं विपक्तव्यं कल्कादष्टौ पलानि च ॥
चतुर्गुणेन पयसा वातासृकुष्ठनाशनम् ।
कामलापाण्डुरोगघ्नं प्लीहकासज्वरापहम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Madhyakhaṇḍam, Dvitiyabhāgam, 29-100/101.

वातरक्ते बृहद् गुडूची तैलम्

Cakradatta, Vātarakta Cikitsā, 23/71-96.

व्रणचिकित्सायां अमृताद्य गुग्गुलुः

Bhāvaprakāśa, Vraṇāsothādhikāra, 47/98-99.

वातरक्ते अमृतादि क्वाथः

Cakradatta, Vātarakta Cikitsā, 23-3.

पञ्चम गुडूचीघृतम्

गुडूचीस्वरसे सर्पिर्जीवनीयैश्च साधितम् ।
कल्कैश्चतुर्गुणैः क्षीरैः सिद्धं वाऽप्यस्त्रवातनुत् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Vātaraktādhikāra, 29-109.

आमवाते अमृता घृतम्

अमृतायाः कषायेण कल्केन च महौषधात् ।
मृद्वग्निना घृतं प्रस्थं वातरक्तहरं परम् ॥
आमवात ताड्यवातादीन् क्रिमिदुष्टव्रणानि ।
अर्शांसि गुल्माँश्च तथा नाशयत्याशु कटीग्रहम् ॥

Cakradatta, 25/58-59.

वातरक्ते

अमृताद्य घृतम्
महागुडूची घृतम्
गुडूची तैलम्
अमृताह्वय तैलम्

Bhāvaprakāśa, Madhyakhaṇḍam, Dvītiyabhāga,

Vātaraktādhikāra, 29-102/108; 110/117; 138/144; 132/137.

कुष्ठे छिन्ना स्वरसः

छिन्नायाः स्वरसो वाऽपि सेव्यमानो यथाबलम् ।
जीर्णे घृतेन भुञ्जीत स्वल्पं यूषोदकेन वा ॥

Cakradatta, Kuṣṭhacikitsā, 50-59.

वमन चिकित्सायां गुडूची शीत कषायः

कृतं गुडूच्या विधिवत् कषायं हिमसंज्ञितम् ।
तिसृष्वपि भवेत् पथ्यं माक्षिकेण समायुतम् ॥

Cakradatta, Chardi Cikitsā, 15-16.

वातरक्ते वत्सादनी क्वाथः

वत्सादन्युद्भवः क्वाथः पीतो गुग्गुलु संयुतः ।

समीरण समायुक्तं शोणितं सम्प्रसाधयेत् ॥

Vātarakta Cakradatta, Cikitsā, 23-4.

गुडूच्याः षट् प्रयोगाः

घृतेन वातं सगुडा विबन्धं पित्तं सिताऽऽढ्यामधुना कफञ्च ।

वातासृगुग्रं रुबैतैलंमिश्रा शुण्ठ्याऽमवातं शमयेद् गुडूची ॥

Cakradatta, Vātarakta Cikitsā, 23-8.

वातरक्ते गुडूच्याश्चत्वारी योगाः

गुडूच्याः स्वरसं कल्कं चूर्णं वा क्वाथमेव वा ।

प्रभूताकालमासेव्य मुच्यते वातशोणितात् ॥

Cakradatta, Vātarakta Cikitsā, 23-9.

सवेदनावातज मूत्रकृच्छ्रे अमृतादि क्वाथः

Cakradatta, 32-2.

GUGGULU

Botanical Name

Commiphora mukul (Hook ex Stocks) Engl.

Family : Burseraceae

Classical Name : Guggulu

Sanskrit Names

(a) Guggulu, Kumbha,, Pura, Devadhūpa, Ulūkhala, Devadhūpa.

(b) Kumuda, Padmamah, Mahānila, Hiranya, Mahisākṣa.

Regional Names

Gugal, Guggal (Hind.).

Description

Shrubby, 1.2-1.3 meters high; young parts glandular-pubescent; branches knotty and crooked; divaricate usually ending in a sharp spine.

Leaves 1-3-folliolate; leaflets subsessile (the terminal up to 20 by 8 mm.), rhomboid-ovate, serrate-toothed in the upper part (the tapering base entire), smooth and shining the lateral leaflets when present less than half the size of the terminal base.

Flowers in fascicles of 2-5, triangular, as long as the tube. Petals brownish red; broadly linear, nearly thrice the length of the calyx, reflexed at the apex. Stamens 8-10, alternatively long and short, half of the length of petals. Disk 8-10-lobed, the alternate sinuses deeper and in these are inserted the shorter stamens. Ovary oblong-ovoid, attenuated into the style.

Drupes red when ripe, 6-8 mm. diam., ovoid, acute; epicarp 4-valved; pyrenes ovate, acute, readily splitting into 2.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Post-rains to autumn season.

Distribution

It is found in Rajsthan, Kathiawar, Gujarat, Rajputana desert, Mysore, Deccan and other warm regions in India.

Varieties and Kinds

The raw drug Guggulu has classically been grouped in five forms or categories based on colour and other characters viz.

Jati (kind)	Varṇa (colour)	Specific Indication (utility)
(a) Mahiṣākṣa	Kṛṣṇa	Human
(b) Mahānila	Nilā	Veterinary
(c) Kumuda	Kapiśa	-do-
(d) Padma	Rakta	-do-
(e) Kanaka	Pita	Human

Practically there are two types of Guggulu viz. Kanā gugal and Bhainsa gugal.

In Unāni medicine, several varieties of Mukelul or Jahudan (Gugal) are based on colour, material and regional factors, such as Mukle arjak, Mukla yahud, Mukle saklabi, Mukle Hindi and Mukle Arabi.

Chemical Composition

It contains a volatile oil, resinous gum and a bitter active principle.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Tikta, Kaṭu, Madhura, Kaṣāya.
Guṇa	: Laghu, Tikṣṇa, Snigdha, Picchila Sūkṣma, Sara.
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Tridoṣahara

Action and Properties

Karma	: Vedanāsthāpana-Nāḍībalya- Vātaśāmaka, Śothahara Vraṇaśodhaka-Vṛṇaropaṇa Jantugāna, Dīpana-pācana Yakṛduttejaka, Arśoghna Kṛmighna, Hṛdya Raktā-śveta-kaṇavardhaka- Raktaprasādana Kaphaniḥsāraka, Sandhāniya Dourgandhyahara-pūtihara Mūtrala-aśmaribhedana Kāmottejaka-Ārtavajanana Vīṣya-vandhyatvadoṣahara Kuṣthaghna, Varṇya-tvacya Śītapraśamana.
Roga	: Vāta vyādhi, Tvagvikāra-Kaṇḍū Galaroga, Hṛdroga, Vātarakta Sandhivāta, Gṛdhrasī, Kroṣṭukaśīrṣa Urustambha, Ardita-pakṣāghāta Nāḍīśūla,, Yonivyāpat, Śukravikāra Klaibya, Amlāpitta, Bhagandara Vraṇa, Nāḍivraṇa, Kuṣṭha, Śoṭha Medoroga-sthoulya, Kāsa-śvāsa Udararoga-ādhmāna, Karṇaroga Arśa, Yakṛdroga, Kṣaya, Rajaḥkṛcchra Mūtrakṛcchra, Aśmarī, Krimi, Gulma Prameha, Apacī

Bhagna-asthibhagna-sandhiviśleṣa
 Jvara, Galagaṇḍa-gaṇḍamāla
 Granthi-Piḍikā.

Therapeutic Use

It is alterative, antiseptic, aperient, aphrodisiac, carminative, detergent, demulcent, disinfectant, emmenagogue, expectorant, enricher of the blood and stimulant. It is used in amenorrhoea, worms affection, cough, dyspepsia, epilepsy, fever, hair falling, purulent ophthalmia, ulcer and sores and uterine affections.

The gum-resin in a very potent drug for rheumatic arthritis, gout and other joints troubles; it is prominent herbal drugs commonly prescribed in treatment of rheumatic complinets and allied deseases.

It is a powerful hypocholesterolemic drug. It has a promising antiheart trouble. The drug in doses of 15 to 25 grains may check sclerosis, coronary thrombosis and coronary artery troubles. It is action to reduce cholesterol includes activity on lipid metabolism obesity and artherosclerosis. It is recommended as an anti-cholesterol herbal drug.

The crude gum-resin is used in medicine after purification through the classical method (gugulu śodhana vidhi) usually in cow-urine (gomutra svedana).

Externally the gum-resin is applied to arthritis, rheumatism, goitre, glandular affections, dermatosis, piles and other similar ailments.

The drug is an oleo-gum-resin which is an exudate of stem/trunk of the plant when injured or incised. It is moist, viscid, fragrant and golden colour and also different colours; it burns in fire, melts in the sun, and forms a milky emulsion with hot water. The gum-resin consists of irregular roundish masses, varying in size-from small grains up to pieces as large as an egg, opaque reddish-brown, with dusty, dull surface, when broken exposes a rough or waxy fracture, having a moist unctuous appearance. It gives agreeable fragrans, acrid taste with bitterness.

The various informations regarding characteristics best quality drug (praśasta guggulu), habitat or origin

(udbhava), collection (sangrahaṇa) purification (śodhana), contra-indication (parihāra) and other aspects are incorporated in classical texts of materia medica and medicine.

Parts Used : Gum-resin

Dose : 12-24 grains.

Formulations (yoga)

Yogarāja guggulu, Mahāyogarāja guggulu, Kaiśora guggulu, Candraprabhāvaṭī, Ārogyavardhini, Navaka guggulu, Triphalā Guggulu, Guggulu Yogāḥ.

Groups (gaṇa) : Elādi (suśruta.)

GUGGULU (गुग्गुलु)

गुग्गुलु सृजनम्

दानवेन्द्रविजितान् पुरा सुराभ्रष्टकान्तिघतिवीर्यते जनः ।
वीक्ष्य विष्णुरमृतं किलासृजद् गुग्गुलुं बलपुर्जप्रदम् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi, Varga, 1407.

गुग्गुलु पादप प्राप्तिसंग्रहणञ्च

मरुभूमिषु जायन्ते प्रायशः पुरपादपाः ।
मानोर्मयूखैः संतप्ता ग्रीष्मे मुञ्चन्ति गुग्गुलम् ॥
हिमान्विताश्च हेमन्ते विधिना तं समाहरेत् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 1408-1409.

गुग्गुलु भेदाः

हिरण्यः कुमुदः पद्मो महानीलस्तश्चापरः ॥
पञ्चमो महिषाक्षश्च नामतः परिकीर्तितः ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 1409-1410.

गुग्गुलु जातयः लक्षणानि गुणाश्च

सुवर्णवर्णः प्रथमः कुमुदः कुमुदद्युतिः ॥
पद्मरागनिभः पद्मो महानीलश्च नागधृक् ।
भृङ्गाञ्जनसवर्णस्तु महिषाक्ष इति स्मृतः ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 1410-1411.

उत्तमगुग्गुलु स्वरूपः

आतपैस्ते विलीयन्ते क्षिप्राश्चाग्रौ ज्वलन्ति हि ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 1412.

गुग्गुलु भेदाः गुणानि

स्वभाव विशदाः स्निग्धाः स्वामोदा कण्ठशोधनाः ॥

सर्वे समानवीर्यास्ते सर्वेः रसगुणैः समाः ।

आस्वादे तिक्तकटुकाः कषायाः स्वादयः परम् ॥

महिषाक्षो गजेन्द्राणां महानीलश्च शस्यते ।

वाजिनां कुमुदः पद्मो नराणां कल्कः स्मृतः ॥

(कदाचिन्महिषाक्षस्तु गतः कैञ्चिन्नृणामपि ।)

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi, Varga, 1412-1414.

पुराण-नव गुग्गुलुयोर्भेदाः

‘स नवो बृंहणो वृष्यः पुरारस्त्वतिकर्षणः ।’

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi, Varga, 1415.

गुग्गुलुः गुणकर्माणि

गुग्गुलुर्मधुरस्तिक्तो कषायः कटुकः कटुः ॥

पाके रूक्षो लघुः सूक्ष्मः वीर्यष्णोष्णः सरस्तथा ।

दीपनः कफवातघ्नो वृष्यः बल्यो रसायनः ॥

भग्नसंधानकृत् स्वर्यो बृंहणो विनियच्छति ।

मेदोमेहाश्मवातास्र ग्रन्थिगण्डव्रणापचीः ॥

पिडकाक्लेदशोफाशौकण्डूकुष्ठवमि क्रिमीन् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 1417-1419.

गुग्गुलु दोषप्रभावः

माधुर्याच्छमयेद् वातं कषायात्वाच्च पित्तजित् ।

तिक्तत्वाच्छ्लेष्माहृद्यैव गुग्गुलुः सर्वदोषहाः ।

कृष्णः शोणितपित्ते च श्लेष्मपित्ते च पिङ्गलः ॥

वातपित्ते तथा श्वेतो गुग्गुलुः शस्यते तथा ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 1415-1416.

गुग्गुलु शाकम्

तच्छकं मधुरं रूक्षं कटुकं शिशिरं गुरु ॥

विष्टम्भि सृष्ट विष्मूत्रं कफमारुतकोपनम् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 1420-1421.

गुग्गुलुसेविनां त्याज्यान्याह

अम्लं तीक्ष्णमजीर्णञ्च व्यवायं भ्रममातपम् ।

मद्यं रोषं त्यजेत्सम्यग् गुणार्थी पुरसेवकः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Karpūrādi Varga, 44.

सामान्यतो गुग्गुलुगुणानाह

गुग्गुलुर्विशदस्तिक्तो वीर्योष्णाः पित्तलः सरः ।

कषायः कटुकः पाके कटु रूक्षो लघुः परः ॥

भग्नसन्धानकृद् वृष्यः सूक्ष्मः स्वर्यो रसायनः ।

दीपनः पिच्छिलो बल्यः कफवातव्रणापचीः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Karpūrādi Varga, 38-39.

मेदोमेहाश्मवातांश्च क्लेद कुष्ठाममारुतान् ।

पिडकाग्रन्थि शोफार्शो गण्डमालाकृमीञ्जयेत् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Karpūrādi Varga, 40.

रसदोषयोर्सम्बन्धः

माधुर्याच्छमयेद्वातं कषायत्वाच्च पित्तहा ।

तिक्तत्वाद् कफजित्तेन गुग्गुलुः सर्वदोषहा ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 41.

नवीनस्य प्राचीनस्य च गुग्गुलोर्लक्षणं गुणांश्चाह

स नवो बृंहणो वृष्यः पुराणस्त्वतिलेखनः ॥

स्निग्धो काञ्चनसंकाशः पक्वजम्बूफलोपमः ।

नूतनो गुग्गुलुः प्रोक्तः सुगन्धिर्यस्तु पिच्छिलः ।

शुष्को दुर्गन्धिकश्चैव व्यक्तप्रकृतिवर्णकः ।

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Karpūrādi Varga, 42-44.

अ. स्निग्धः काञ्चनसङ्कायः पक्वजम्बूफलोपमः ।

नूतनः गुग्गुलुः प्रोक्तः सुगन्धिर्यस्तु पिच्छिलः ॥

ब. शुष्को दुर्गन्धिकश्चैव वर्णान्यत्वमुपागतः ।

पुराणः स तु विज्ञेयो न स देवस्तु रोगिणे ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Vātaraktādhikāra, 29/191-192.

गुग्गुलु जातयः

महिषाक्षो महानीलः कुमुदः पद्म इत्यपि ।

हिरण्यः पञ्चमो ज्ञेयो गुग्गुलोः पञ्च जातयः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Karpūrādi Varga, 33.

गुग्गुलु गुणाः

गुग्गुलुः कटुतिक्तकोष्णः कफमारुतकासजित् ।

क्रिमिवातोदरप्लीह शोफार्शोघ्नो रसायनः ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Candanādi Varga, 105.

गन्धराज गुग्गुलु गुणाः

कणगुग्गुलु कटूष्णः सुरभिर्वातनाशनः ।

शूलगुल्मोदराध्मान कफघ्नश्च रसायनः ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Candanādi Varga, 107.

भूमिज गुग्गुलु गुणाः

गुग्गुलुभूमिजस्तिक्तः कटूष्णः कफवातजित् ।

उमाप्रियश्च भूतघ्नो मेध्यः सौरभ्यदः सदा ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Karpūrādi Varga, 109.

सुगन्धिः सुलघुः सूक्ष्मतीक्ष्णोष्णः कटुको रसः ।

कटुपाकः सरो हृद्यो गुग्गुलुः स्निग्धपिच्छिलः ॥

Suśruta Samhitā.

शोथचिकित्सायां गुग्गुल्वादिप्रयोगाः

पुरोमूत्रेण सेव्येत पिप्पली वा पयोऽन्विता ।

गुडेन वाऽभया तुल्या विश्वं वा शोथरोगिणाम् ॥

Cakradatta, Śoṭha Cikitsā, 39-15.

मेदोरोगे दशाङ्ग गुग्गुलु

व्योषाग्नित्रिफला मुस्तविडङ्गैर्गुग्गुलु समम् ।

खादन्सर्वाञ्जयेद् व्याधीन्मेदःश्लेष्मामवातजान् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Madhyakhaṇḍa, 39-30.

स 'नवो' बृंहणे वृष्यः 'पुराण' स्त्वपकर्षणः ।

तैक्ष्णोष्णात् कफवातघ्नः सरत्वात् मलपित्तनुत् ॥

सौगन्धात् पूतिकोष्ठघ्नः सौक्ष्म्यच्चानलदीपनः ॥

Suśruta Samhitā.

वातजवृद्धिरोगे

गुग्गुलुं रुबुतैलं वा गोमूत्रेण पिबन न्नरः ।
वातवृद्धिं निहन्याशु चिरेकालानुबन्धिनीम् ॥

Cakradatta, 40-1.

अम्लपित्ते

‘.....जयति ।अधिक कफम्लपित्तं प्रयोजितोगुग्गुलुः क्रमशः ॥’

Śoḍhala Nighaṅṭu.

नाडीव्रण चिकित्सायां समाङ्गगुग्गुलुः

Cakradatta, Nāḍīvraṇa Cikitsā, 45-15.

व्रणे

‘ये क्लेदपाकस्रुति गन्धवन्तो व्रणा महान्तः सरुजः सशोफाः ।
प्रयान्ति ते गुग्गुलुमिश्रितेन पीतेन शान्तित्रिफलारसेन् ॥’

Śoḍhala Nighaṅṭu.

भगन्दरे

‘क्वाथोदकेन मिलितस्त्रिफलोद्भवेन पीतः प्रणाशयति तत्खलु गुग्गुलुर्वा ।’

Śoḍhala Nighaṅṭu, Gadaniḡraha, 4-7-27.

‘नवकार्षिकगुग्गुलुः ।’

Gadaniḡraha, 4-7-25.

क्रोष्टुकशीर्षे

गुग्गुलुं क्रोष्टुकशीर्षे च गुडूचीत्रिफलाम्भसा ।
क्षीरेणरण्डतैलं वा पिबेद् वा वृद्धदारुकम् ॥

Vṛndamādhava, 22-47; Baṅgasena, Vātavyādhi, 137.

विद्रधौ

‘गुग्गुलुं मूत्रयुक्तं वा विद्रधौ कफसम्भवे ।’

Cakradatta, 43-11.

गृध्रस्याम्

‘रास्त्रायास्तु पलञ्चेकं कर्षान् पञ्च च गुग्गुलोः ।
सर्पिषा गुटिकां कृत्वा खादेद्वा गृध्रसीहराम् ॥

Cakradatta, Vātavyādhi Cikitsā, 22-50.

कुष्ठरोगचिकित्सायां गुग्गुलुयोगाः

स्वायम्भुव गुग्गुलु

कैशोर गुग्गुलु

एकविंशति गुग्गुलु

Bhāvaprakāśa, Madhyakhaṇḍa, 54.

कफजन्य विद्रधि चिकित्सायां विशुद्धगुग्गुलु प्रयोगः

त्रिफला शिग्रुवरुणदशमूलाम्भसा पिबेत् ।

गुग्गुलुं मूत्रयुक्तं वा विद्रधौ कफसम्भवे ॥

Cakradatta, 43-10.

भगन्दर चिकित्सायां नवकार्षिकं सप्तविंशतिश्च गुग्गुलु योगाः

Cakradatta, 46/12-19.

वातरक्तादि विकाराणां गुग्गुलु योगाः

समशर्कर गुग्गुलु

चन्द्रप्रभा गुटिका

पुनर्नवा गुग्गुलु

अमृता गुग्गुलु

कैशोर गुग्गुलु

कैशोर गुग्गुलु

सिंहनाद गुग्गुलु

Bhāvaprakāśa, Vātaraktādhikāra, 29/170-246.

ज्वरे

‘शिलाजतु विधानेने गुग्गुलुं वा प्रयोजयेत् ।’

Caraka Saṁhita, Cikitsā, 18.

कर्णदौर्गन्धे

‘गुग्गुलो कर्णदौर्गन्धे धूपनं श्रेष्ठमुच्यते ।’

Suśruta Saṁhita, Uttara, 21-53. Vṛndamādhava, 59-46.

शोथे

‘गुग्गुलु वा मूत्रेण ।’

Suśruta Saṁhita, Cikitsa, 23-12. Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha Cikitsa, 19.3.

ऊरुस्तम्भे

‘मूत्रैर्वा गुग्गुलु श्रेष्ठम् ।’

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Cikitsa, 5.

श्वसे

‘गुग्गुलुं वा..... ।घृतप्लुतम् ।’

Aṣṭāṅga Hr̥daya, Cikitsa, 4.

‘वह्नौ ज्वलन्ति तपने विलयं प्रयान्ति,
क्लिद्यन्ति कोष्ण सलिले पयसः समानाः ।
ग्राह्याः शुभाः परिहरेश्चिरकाल जाताः,
नङ्गारवर्णसमपूपयविगन्धवर्णाम् ॥’

प्रयोगामृतम् ।

विद्रधि चिकित्सायां गुग्गुलु प्रयोगः

पुनर्नवादारुविश्वदशमूलाभयाऽम्भसा ।
गुग्गुलुं रुबुतैलं च पिबेन्मारुत विद्रधौ ॥

Cakradatta, Vidradhi Cikitsā, 43-4.

वातरक्ते गुग्गुलु वटिका

गुग्गुल्वमृतवल्लीभिर्द्राक्षा (सुग) लुङ्गरसेन वा ।
त्रिफलाया रसैर्युक्त्या गुटिकाः कोलसम्मिताः ॥
भक्षयेन्मधुनाऽऽलोढ्य शृणु कुर्वन्ति यत्फलम् ।
पादस्फोटं महाघोरं स्फुटत्सर्वाङ्गसञ्चयम् ।
तत्सर्वं नाशयत्याशु साध्यञ्चैव सशोणितम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Vātaraktādhikāra, 29-45/46.

वातरक्ते गुडूच्यानुपानम्

वत्सादन्युद्भवः क्वाथः पीतो गुग्गुलुमिश्रितः ।
समीरण समायुक्तं शोणितं सम्प्रणाशयेत् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Madhyakhaṇḍa, 29-43.

शोथचिकित्सायां गुग्गुलु प्रयोगः

पुनर्नवादारु शुण्ठीक्वाथे मूत्रे च केवले ।
दशमूलरसे वाऽपि गुग्गुलुः शोथनाशनः ॥

Cakradatta, 39-12.

मेदोरोगे

सम्पिष्य गात्रलेपाद्धर्मविचर्ची शमं याति ॥
हस्तपादनुतौ योज्यो गुग्गुलुः पञ्चतित्तकः ।

अशक्तौ पञ्चतिकाख्यं घृतं खादेदतन्द्रितः ॥

Bhāvaprakāsa, Sthoulyādhikāra, 39/85-86.

स्थौल्ये

‘उत्पत्रे तु शिलाजतुगुग्गुलुगोमूत्रत्रिफलालाहेरजीर-
रसाञ्जनमधुयवमुद्गकोरदूषकश्यामाकोदालकादीनां
विरूक्षणच्छेदनीयानां च द्रव्याणां विधिवदुपयोगः ।’

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra, 15-32.

रसाञ्जनस्यमहतः पञ्चमूलस्य गुग्गुलोः ।

शिलाजतु प्रयोगश्च साग्निमन्थ रसोहितः ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Sūtra, 14-23.

व्रणे (कुष्ठ-नाडीव्रण-भगन्दर-गलगण्डादयाः)

फलत्रिक्वाथ युतो व्रणेषु कुष्ठेषु नाडीषुभगन्दरेषु ।

सकाञ्चनारत्रिफलोपकुलत्थः सगण्डमालागलगण्डरोगे ॥

Gadanigraha, 4-3-73/74.

शोथे रोगे

‘गुग्गुलुं वा मूत्रेण वर्षाभूकषायानुपानं वा ।’

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 23-12.

उदररोगे

शिलाजतुविधानेन गुग्गुलुं वा प्रयोजयेत् ।

शिलाजतूनां मूत्राणां गुग्गुलोस्त्रैफलस्य च ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 13-153.

वातव्याधौ

रसायनानां सर्वेषामुपयोगः प्रशस्यते ।

शैलस्य जतुनोऽत्यर्थं पयसा गुग्गुलोस्तथा ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 28-241.

‘मेदोऽनिलो गुग्गुलुः ।’

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Uttara, 40-48.

आमवाते

मूत्रैर्वा शीलयेत् पथ्यां गुग्गुलुं गिरिसम्भवम् ।

व्योषाग्निमुस्तत्रिफलाविडङ्गैर्गुग्गुलुं समम् ॥

खादन् सर्वान् जयेद् व्याधीन् मेदःश्लेष्मवातजान् ।

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Cikitsā, 21-48/49.

श्वासरोगे धूम्रपानार्थम्

‘शल्लकीं गुग्गुलुं लौहं पद्मकं वा घृतप्लुतम् ।’

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Cikitsā, 4-14.

शोथे

मूत्रेण वा शोफिषु गुग्गुलुः स्याद् गायत्रिसारक्वाथनेन कुष्ठे ।

मेदस्विनां चापिहितः कषाये बिल्वादिजे वा शिखिमन्थजे वा ॥

Cika, 3-12.

GUNJĀ

Botanical Name : *Abrus precatorius* Linn.

Family : Fabaceae (Papilionaceae)

Classical Name : Guñjā

Sanskrit Names

Guñjā, Raktikā, Kākaṇantika, Śikhaṇḍikā, Śītapākī, Sughaṭā, Cakraśalyā, Ciroṭikā, Cūḍāla, Kṛṣṇalā, Tantrikā, Bhillibhūṣaṇā.

Regional Names

Rotti, Ghunghachi, Chanoti (Hind.), Kunja (Beng.), Gunja (Mar.), Chamothi (Guj.), Cuncumani (Tam.), Muriminj (Tel.), Cashmaswaroksha (Pers.), Indian Liguoric Root, Crabes Eye, Wild Liquorice Root (Eng.).

Descriptions

A deciduous dextrose climber, with slender flexible and tough branches, the stem attaining 4.5 meters high and 1.2 cm. diam.

Leaves 5-10 cm. long, paripinnate; rhachis produced beyond the last pair of leaflets as a soft bristle. Leaflets 10-20 pairs, opposite, increasing slightly in size from the base, 7.5-23 by 3.8-6 mm., linear or linear-oblong, thinly membranous, entire, rounded at both ends, glabrous above when mature, thinly apressed-silky beneath.

Flowers 1-1.25 cm. long, pink, clustered on tubercles arranged along the rhachis of a one-sided, usually leaf-bearing, axillary, pedunculate raceme 5-10 cm. long.

Pod 2.5-4.3 by 1-1.25 cm., turgid, thinly pubescent, with a sharp deflexed beak. Seeds 3-6, ovoid, 7.5 cm. long, scarlet with a black spot at the hilum. polished.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Autumn to winters.

Distribution

It is found throughout the tropics; it is also planted.

Kinds and Varieties

There are three varieties of the drug specifically based on colour of the seeds viz.

- a) Śveta (white)
- b) Rakta (red)
- c) Kṛṣṇa (black)

Chemical Composition

Seeds contain toxic protein; abrusic acid, a glucoside; haemagglutannin, some urease, and glycine-like active abrin albuminoid. Seeds potency gets inerted when they are boiled.

Roots contain glycyrrhizin 15 percent and glycerol B percent.

Leaves contain glycyrrhizin 10 percent and abrin.

Seeds coat contains a red colouring substance.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Tikta, Kaṣāya.
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa, Tikṣṇa.
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
	Mūla-Roots; Madhura, Snigdha.
Doṣakarma	: Kaphavātaśāmaka (Bija-seeds)
	Traidoṣahara, (Patra-leaves;
	mūla-roots), Vātapittā śāmaka.

Action and Properties

Karma : Nāḍī Uttejaka-balya

Mādaka-viśākta
 (Mūtrādhikya-excess dose;
 aśuddha-impure)
 Garbhanirodhaka
 Snehana (patra-leaves)
 Hṛdayottajaka
 Snehana-kaphaniḥsāraka
 (patra-leaves, mūla-roots)
 Kuṣṭhaghna-Vedanāsthāpana
 Vraṇaropaṇa-śothahara
 Jvaraghna
 Viṣa (bīja-seeds, mūla-roots)
 Kaṭupouṣṭika, Keśya.

Roga

: Vātavyādhi-pakṣāghāta, urustambha
 Kāsa-svarabheda, Klaibya
 Mūtrakṛcchra, Kuṣṭha, Jvara
 Dourbalya, Arśa, Jirṇa Vraṇa
 Khālitya-Indralupt, Mukhapāka
 Śiraḥśūla, Vraṇaśotha-vraṇa
 Kaphaja-vātaja vikāra (bīja-seeds)
 Tridoṣaja Vikāra, (Patra-leaves,
 mūla-roots), Kaṇḍū, Nāḍivraṇa
 Arbuda, Apacī.

Therapeutic Use

The seeds are poisonous, purgative, emetic, tonic and aphrodisiac; and they are used in nervous disorders. They are poisoning to cattles. The poultice of the seeds if used as a suppository in vagina brings about abortion (which is a crude and unsafe-application).

The roots are emetic and alexiteric.

A paste of the seeds Gunjā (*Abrus precatorius* Linn.) and of the roots of Citraka (*Plumbago zeylanica* Linn.) is made up with water and it is used as stimulant, dressing when applied over leucoderma freckles.

The seeds, known as Jequitry (containing albrin and albric acid etc.), are used as a strong or drastic purgative and emetic drug only in small doses, but in large doses they become more poisonous than strychnine. The seeds are

claimed to be useful as an oral contraceptive (but in small or restricted doses).

The seeds powder (one to three grains) boiled in milk are a powerful tonic and aphrodisiac drug. A preserve of the decorticated powdered seeds is used as an anthelmintic drug.

The roots, also known as Indian as wild Liquorice, is useful drug as an emetic, antidote and demulcent. An extract of the root is given orally for relief of obstinate coughs, sore throat and rheumatism. The roots are chewed or taken in other form in cough and throat affections.

Groups (gaṇa)

Mūlaviṣa (Śuśruta.), Upaviṣa (Bhāvaprakāśa).

Parts Used : Seeds, Roots, Leaves.

Dose

Seeds powder 1-3 grains., Roots powder 10-20 grains., Leaves decoction 50-100 gms.

Formulations (yoga)

Gunjābhadrā Rasa.

GUNJĀ (गुञ्जा)

गुञ्जा-श्वेता रक्ता च

गुञ्जाद्वयन्तु केश्यं स्वाद्वातपित्तज्वरापहम् ॥

मुखशोषभ्रमश्वासतृष्णामदविनाशनः ।

नेत्रामयहरं वृष्यं बल्यं कण्डूं व्रणं हरेत् ॥

कृमीन्द्रलुप्तकुष्ठानि रक्ता च धवलाऽपि ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Guḍūcyādi, Varga, 126-128.

रक्तगुञ्जा

क. गुञ्जा चूडामणिस्ताम्रा रक्तिका काकणन्तिका ॥
शिखण्डिका शीतपाकी सुघटा कृष्णला रक्ती ।

श्वेतगुञ्जा

ख. अन्या श्वेता श्वेतपाकी चूडाला काकपीलुका ॥
दुर्मुखा चक्रिका चूडा च क्रशल्या चिरीटिका ।

गुञ्जा(द्वयो)गुणाः

ग. गुञ्जाऽनुष्णा रसेतिक्ता कषाया कफपित्ताहा ॥
 चक्षुष्या शुक्रला केश्या त्वच्या रुच्या बलप्रदा ।
 इन्द्रलुप्तहरा तीव्रा सविषा मदमोहकृत् ॥
 हन्ति रक्षोग्रहविषकण्डूकुष्ठव्रणकृमीन् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 793-996.

गुञ्जाभेदः

रक्तगुञ्जा

गुञ्जा चूडामणिः सौम्या शिखण्डी कृष्णलाऽरुणा ।
 तन्त्रिका शीतपाकी स्वादुच्चटा कृष्णचूडिका ॥
 रक्ता च रक्तिका चैव काम्भोजी भिल्लिभूषणा ।
 वन्धास्या मानचूडा च विज्ञेया षोडशाह्वया ॥

श्वेता गुञ्जा

द्वितीय श्वेतकामभोजी श्वेतगुञ्जा भिरिणिका ।
 काकादनी काकपीलुर्वक्रशल्या षडाह्वया ॥

गुञ्जा सामान्य गुणाः

गुञ्जाद्वयन्तु तिक्तोष्णं बीजं वान्तिकरी शिफा ।
 शूलघ्नं विषकृत् पत्रं वश्ये श्वेतश्च शस्यते ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Guḍūcyādi Varga, 115.

दारुण गण्डमालायां गुञ्जातैलम्

गुञ्जामूलफलैस्तैलं पिपक्वं द्विगुणाम्भसा ।
 हरेदभ्यङ्गनस्याभ्यां गण्डमालां सुदारुणान् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Madhyakhaṇḍa, 44-47.

सर्वापची-नाड़ीव्रणाशांबुद-व्रण चिकित्सायाम् गुञ्जाद्य तैलम्

Cakradatta, 41/37-38.

लिङ्गाशौ

शुभे तु चारटीमूलं वृषमूत्रेण पेषयेत् ।
 चर्मकीलान्निहन्त्याशु प्रलेपात्साधनोद्भवान् ॥

Bhāvarprakāśa, Lingārśādhikāra, 52-6.

विसर्पे

‘पित्तविसर्पे वा गुञ्जापत्रैस्तु लेपनम् ।’

Hārta Samhitā, 3-33-31.

इन्द्रलुप्त विकारेषु (शिरगत) गुञ्जाफलप्रलेपः

अवगाढपदञ्चैव प्रच्छयित्वा पुनः पुनः ।

गुञ्जाफलैश्चिरं लिम्पेत् केशभूमिं समन्ततः ॥

Cakradatta, Kṣudraroga, Cikitsā, 55-97.

कण्डूदारुणकपालकुष्ठ चिकित्सायां गुञ्जाद्य तैलम्

गुञ्जाफलैः शृतं तैलं भृङ्गराज रसेन तु ।

कण्डूदारुणहृत् कुष्ठकपाल व्याधिनाशनम् ॥

Cakradatta, Kṣudraroga Cikitsā, 55-92.

इन्द्रलुप्तोपयारार्थं गुञ्जाफलमूलयोगौ

बृहतीफलरसपिष्टं गुञ्जाफलमूलञ्चेन्द्रलुप्तस्य ।

कनकवृष्टस्य सतो दातव्यं प्रच्छित्तस्या सदा ॥

Cakradatta, Kṣudraroga Cikitsā, 55-100.

वाजीकरणार्थामोच्चटामूल चूर्णम्

'उच्चटाचूर्णमप्येवं क्षीरेणोत्तममुच्यते ।'

Cakradatta, Vṛṣyādhikāra, 66-7.

दारुणे

'सर्वस्मिन् वा शिरोरागे गुञ्जामूलस्य नावनम् ।'

Gadanigraha, 3-1-61.

अवबाहुकादौ

तक्षयित्वा क्षुरेणाङ्गं केवलानिलपीडितम् ।

तत्रप्रदेहं दद्याच्च पिष्टं गुञ्जाफलैः कृतम् ॥

तेनावबाहुजा पीडा विश्वाची गृध्रसी तथा ।

अन्यापि वातजा पीडा प्रशमं याति वेगतः ॥

Śārṅgadhara Samhitā, 3-11-101/2.

तिमिर(नेत्र)रोगे

गुञ्जामूलं बस्तमूत्रेण पिष्टमान्द्यं सद्यस्तैमिरं हन्ति पुंसाम् ।

.....अत्युद्गाढं

नेत्रयोरञ्जनेन ॥

Gadanigraha, 3-3-377.

कर्णपालीवर्धनार्थम्

गुञ्जाचूणेयुते जाते माहिषे क्षीर उद्गतम् ।

नवनीतं तदम्यङ्गत् कर्णपाली विवर्धनम् ॥

Cakradatta, 57-57.

क्रिमिदन्तजशूल

गुञ्जावराहकर्ण्योरन्यतरस्याः समुद्धृतं मूलम् ।

दन्तैश्चर्वितमार्त्तिं दशनघुणोत्थां विनाशयति ॥

Gadanigraha, 3-5-174, Rājamārtanḍa, 5-13.

HAIMAVATĪ VACĀ

Botanical Name

Iris vesicolor Thunb. *Iris germanica* Linn.

Family : Iridaceae

Classical name : Haimavatī-Haimavatī Vacā

Sanskrit Nams : Haimavatī, Pārasīkavacā.

Regional Names

Balbach (Hind.), Balvekhand (Mar.), Balvaj (Guj.), Majarposh, Majarmund (Can.), Irsa, Souran (Arab.); Oris Root (Eng.).

Description

Iris ensuta Thunb

A perennial herb. Rootstock stout, prostrate and creeping. Stems tufted, short or 45-60 cm. high, stout, slender.

Leaves 45 cm. by 68 mm., linear, right, grooved, greenish blue. Spathes 7.5-10 cm. long, 1-3-flowered.

Flowers lilac or white, sepals and petals of ten with purplish veins, stalked, Perianth-tube absent; blade of sepals rhomboid-ovate, blunt, entire, shorter than the claw, neither crested nor bearded, 3.8.5 by 1-3.2 cm. Petals oblongeolate, erect, 6 mm. broad. Stamens 3, at the base of the outer perianth-segments; filaments distinct; anthers linear. Ovary 3-celled, 2.5 cm. long, cylindrical; ovules many. Style linear style-arms 3.2 cm. long, linear, crests large, tip sharply bifid.

Capsule 3.8-7.5 by 1.3-1.7 cm., 6-ribbed, beaked, ribs rounded.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Post-spring to Autumn season.

Distribution

It is found in western Himalaya, within the elevation between 5,900 to 9,000 feet altitude.

Chemical Compostion

It contains a volatile oil, starch, resin and tannin.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṭu, Tikta.
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa, Tikṣṇa.
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphavātaśāmaka

Action and Properties

Karma	: Lekhana-karśaṇa, Viṣaghna Śothahara-vedanāsthāpana Vraṇaśodhana-lekhana Nāḍītantrōtṭejaka-vātaśāmaka Dīpana-pācana-pittasāraka Anulomana, Raktaśodhaka- śothahara, Kaphaniḥsāraka Mūtrala, Śītapraśamana Śūlapraśamana, Ārtavajanana Medohara, Keśya, Tvacya
Roga	: Medoroga, Viṣa-saviṣakīṭadamśa Pakṣāghāta-ardita-vātavikāra Agnimāndya-Udaraśūla Āmavāta-Raktavikāra Śōtha-gaṇḍamālā, Vṛṣaṇaśōtha Jīrṇavraṇa, Carmavikāra Yakṛtaplihavṛddhi Kāsa-śvāsa-pratiśyāya Phuphusaśōtha-pārśvaśūla Rajorodha-kaṣṭārtava Mūtrāghāta, Śītajvara Kaphavātajavikāra.

Therapeutic Uses

The roots and leaves of *Iris kumaonensis* Wall are useful in fever.

The roots of *Iris ensuta* Thunb. are chiefly used for their alterative properties; and they enter into many compositions of which are suggested to use for purifying the blood and against venereal diseases. It is also valuable medicine for liver complaints and dropsy. The roots of *Iris nepalensis* Don are considered to be deobstruent, aperient, diuretic, especially useful in removing biliousness and bilious obstructions. It is also used externally as an application to small sores and pimples.

Iridin, a toxic glucoside, is obtained from several species of *Iris* Linn. The rhizome of *Iris germanica* and *Iris vesicolor* Thunb are medicinally used. Roots are recommended for use as restorative drug; the root is ground with cow urine and pasted to skin complaint (Carmadala).

Parts Used : Roots

Dose : 10-20 grains.

Groups (gaṇa)

Lekhaniya, Mūlinī (Caraka.), Mustādi (Suśruta.).

HAIMAVATĪ VACĀ (हैमवती वचा)

पारसीक वचा शुकला प्रोक्ता हैमवतीति च ।

हैमवत्युदिता तद्द्वयांतं हन्ति विशेषतः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu.

चर्मदले

वचया श्वेतया नाशं याति चर्मदलं द्रुतम् ।

लेपादिद्भयवैर्वापि गोमूत्रपरिपेषितैः ॥

Baṅgasena, Kuṣṭha, 112.

रसायने

हैमवतीवचाकल्पः ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 28-7.

HAMSAPADĪ

Botanical Name : *Adiantum lunulatum* Burm.

Family : Fillices— Polypodiaceae.

Classical Name : Hamsapadi

Sanskrit Names

Hamsapadi, Raktapadi, Tripadikā, Kiṭamāri.

Regional Names

Hansraja, Samalpatti (Hindi.), Hansraj (Mar., Guj.), Kali jhant (Beng.), Parsiyabashan (Arab., Pers.); Maiden Hair (Eng.).

Description

Stipes 10-15 cm. long, tufted, wiry, naked, polished dark, chestnut-brown; fronds 15-30 cm. long and 7.5 cm. broad, simply pinnate, often elongated and rooting at the apex; pinnae subdimidiate, the lower edge nearly in a line or oblique with the periole, the upper edge rounded and like the bluntly rounded sides usually more or less lobed; petioles of the lower ones spreading 6-13 mm. long, textures herbaceous; the rhachis and both surfaces naked; sori in continuous lines along the edge.

Distribution

It is found throughout Northern India in moist places; and in southern India.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa : Madhura, Tikta, Kaṣāya.
 Guṇa : Guru, Snigdha
 Vīrya : Śīta
 Vipāka : Madhura
 Doṣakarman : Vātapittaśāmaka
 Kaphaghna (Kaphaniḥsāraka).

Action and Properties

Karma : Kaṇṭhya-kāśahara-Śvāsahara
 Raktaśodhaka-Raktapittaśāmaka
 Mūtrala, Balya, Grāhī-kṛmighna
 Dāhapraśamana, Viśaghna
 Vraṇaropaṇa
 Bhutavādhāhara-rakṣoghna
 Śoṭahara.

Roga : Kaṅthavikara-svarabheda
 Kāsa-svāsa-pratiśyāya-
 phuphphusaśoṭha, Mūtrakṛcchra
 Dourbalya, Atisāra, Kṛmiroga
 Agnirohini-plague Visarpa, Lūtāviṣa
 Vraṇa, Paittikaśoṭha.

Therapeutic Uses

The root is good for stangury and for fever due to elephantiasis. The plant is purgent, cooling, alterative, alexiteric and indigestible. It is useful in dysentery, diseases of the blood, ulcers, erysepelas, burning sensations and epileptic fits.

It is extensively used in the treatment of children for febrile affections. The leaves are rubbed with water and given with sugar. It is worked up with ochre and applied locally for erysepelalous inflammations.

Parts Used : Whole plant.

Dose

Juice 10-20 ml., Juice-syrup 6-12 gms., Powder 1-3 gms.

Formulations (yoga)

Kaṅthya, Madhuraskandha (Caraka), Vidārigandhādi (Suśruta.).

HAMSAPADĪ (हंसपदी)

- क. हंसपादी हंसपदी कीटमाता त्रिपादिका ।
 ख. हंसपादी गुरुः शीता हन्ति रक्त विष व्रणान् ।
 विसर्प दाहातीसारलूताभूताग्निरोहिणी ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Guḍūcyādi Varga, 256.

- अ. प्रह्लादनी विषग्रन्थिस्त्रिपादी त्रिपदीपदी ।
 हंसपादी हंसपादी रक्तपादी मधुस्रवा ॥
 कीटनामा कीटमारी घृतमण्डाल सेलका ।
 ब. हंसपादी हिमा गुर्वी रोपणी हन्ति शोणितम् ॥
 दाहातीसार विसर्पलूताभूत विषव्रणान् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 766-768.

वातरक्ते

मधुपर्ण्यादितैले ।

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 29-92.

वातिक स्वरभेदे

‘हंसपद्माश्च मूलेनगुडेन पक्कं नस्ते निषेचयेत् ।’

Aṣṭāṅga Hr̥daya, Cikitsā, 5-38.

नखदन्तविषे

सोमवल्कोऽश्वकर्णश्च गोजिह्वा हंसपद्मभिः ।

रजन्यो गैरिकं लेपो नखदन्तविषापहः ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 23-220.

गलगण्डे

तैलं पिबेच्चामृतवल्लीनिम्बहंसाह्वया वृक्षकपिप्पलीभिः ।

सिद्धं बलाभ्यां च सदेवदारु हिताय नित्यं गलगण्डरोगे ॥

Suśruta Samhitā, Cikitsā, 98-47.

HAPUṢĀ

Botanical Name : Juniperus communis Linn.

Family : Coniferae

Classical Name : Hapuṣā

Sanskrit Names

Hapuṣā, Vipuṣā, Visrā, Vigandhā, Kūlanāśinī, Dhvankṣanalikā, Matsyagandhā, Viṣaghni, Aśvatthaphalā, Kaṇḍūghna, Viṣḍuṣiṇī, Plihanantrī.

Regional names

Houber (Hind.), Abahal (Punj.), Abahal, habbul Arar (Arab.), Samaras rokohi (Pers.); Juniper (Eng.).

Description

A dense shrub more or less procumbent.

Leaves 5-13 mm. long, in whorls of 3, linear, sharply pointed, spreading nearly at right-angles from the branchlets, convex on the back, concave and glaucous bluish white on the upper surface, jointed at the base and

continued down the stem with a large gland on the decurrent portion.

Flower dioecious, axillary.

Fruits 7.5-10 mm. long, subglobose, blue black, glaucous, the tips of the scales visible at the apex. Seeds 1-3.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Post-rains to Autumn season.

Distribution

It is found in western Himalaya from Kumaon, westward, in the alpine regions in India.

Chemical Composition

Berries contain a volatile oil 1.2 percent, glucose 50 percent, resin 10 percent, a non-crystalline, principle juniperin, fat, wax, protease 4 percent, maleate, formic acid and acetic acid. Berries also contain oxalic acid.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṭu, Tikṣṇa
Guṇa	: Guru, Rūkṣa, Tikṣṇa.
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphavātaśāmaka

Action and Properties

Karma	: Mūtravirecanīya (Tīvra mūtrajanana) Lekhana-śothahara-uttejaka Vraṇaropaṇa, Nāḍītantrottejaka Dīpana-pācana, Grāhi (Kiñcit) Kṛmighna, Kaphaniḥsāraka Ārtavajanana-Garbhāśayaśothahara Garbhapātaka (mātrādhikya- excess dose)
--------------	---

Roga	: Jirṇa pūyameha-bastiśoṭha Kaṣṭārtava-rajrodha-pradara Kāsa-śvāsa, Hṛddourbalya Vātavyādhi-pakṣāghāta
-------------	---

Agnimāndya-Udaraśūla-gulma
 Grahaṇī, Arśa, Kṛmi, Śótha-vedanā
 Carmaroga-vraṇa, Dhvajabhaṅga
 Bādhirya.

Therapeutic Uses

The plant is bitter, pungent, acrid, heating, carminative, anthelmintic, alexipharmic and laxative. It is useful in diarrhoea, abdominal pains, strangury, diseases of the spleen and abdomen, ascites, tumours, piles, bronchitis, indigestion, constipation and vaginal discharges.

The nuts are available as market drug being among raw drug material. They are recommended as a diuretic and stimulant. The nuts are used in the treatment of gonorrhoea.

Juniper fruits and its oil possess carminative, stimulant and diuretic properties. They are useful in different forms of dropsies, either administered alone, or in combination with other diuretics. They are used in mucous discharges as gonorrhoea, gleet and leucorrhoea, and also in certain cutaneous affections.

The wood has been regarded as sudorific in its action, and has been substituted for Guaiacum and Sasafras.

The plant has bad odour and a sour, sweet, sharp taste; it is mild astringent to the bowels, antipyretic and tonic. The stem is bitter; purgative, alexipharmic, styptic, vulnerary, diuretic, emmenagogue, aphrodisiac, antidiaphoretic and tonic; it enriches blood and useful in stomatitis, bronchitis, chest troubles, liver complaints and splenic diseases. It is applied in hydrocele and prolapse of the rectum. The oil from fruit is emmenagogue, tonic, abortifacient, anthelmintic and analgesic; it is used in earache, toothache, piles and it is cooling for the brain.

Parts Used : Berries

Dose

Powder 3-5 gms., Oil 1-2 minims or drops (as stomachic) 4-6 minims (as diuretic).

HAPUṢĀ (हपुषा)

हपुषा द्वयम् (तन्मध्ये प्रथमं फलं मलय सदृशं विस्त्रगन्धं द्वितीय-
मश्वत्थफलसदृशं मत्स्यगन्धम्)

- क. हपुषा हवुषा-विस्त्रा पराऽश्वत्थफला मता ।
मत्स्यागंधाप्लीहहन्त्री विषघ्नी ध्वांक्षनाशिनी ॥
- ख. हपुषा दीपनी तिक्ता मृदूष्णा तुवरा गुरुः ।
पित्तोदर समीराशो ग्रहणी गुल्मशूलहत् ॥
पराऽप्येतदुणा प्रोक्ता रूपभेदो द्वयोरपि ।

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Harītakṛyādi Varga, 110.

- अ. हपुषा त्रिपुषा विस्त्रा विगंधा कूलनाशिनी ।
यकृद् वर्णाश्वत्थफला वपुषा ध्वांक्षनालिका ।
विस्त्रगन्धा मत्स्यगन्धा कण्डूघ्ना विषदूषणी ॥
- ब. हपुषा तुवरा तिक्ता कटूष्णा दीपनी गुरुः ।
ग्रहणी शूल गुल्माशोवातपित्तोदरापहा ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 1068=1070.

हपुषा

हपुषा विपुषा विस्त्रा विस्त्रगन्धा विगन्धिका ।
अन्या चासौ स्वल्पफला कच्छूघ्नी ध्वांक्षनाशिनी ॥
प्लीहशत्रुर्विषघ्नी च कफघ्नी चापराजिता ।
पूर्वा तु पञ्चनाम्नी स्यादपरा सप्तधाऽभिधा ॥

हपुषा गुणाः

हपुषा कटुतिक्तोष्णा गुरुः श्लेष्मबलासजित् ।
(प्रदर रोग) प्रदरोदरविड्बन्ध शूलगुल्मार्शसां हरा ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Śatāhvādi Varga, 113-115.

गुल्मे

हपुषाद्य घृतम् ।

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsa, 71-73.

यापनबस्तौ

‘हपुषार्धकुडवो द्विगुणार्थक्षुण्णयवःक्षीरोदकसिद्धःक्षीरशेषो-
मधुघृततैलंलवणयुक्तः सर्वाङ्गविसृतवातरक्तविण्मूत्र स्त्री-

खेदितहितोवातहरो

वृद्धिमेधाग्निबलजननश्च ।'

Caraka Samhitā, Siddhi, 12-15 (7).

HARIDRĀ

Botanical Name : *Curcuma longa* Linn.

Family : Scitaminaceae

Classical name : Haridrā

Sanskrit Names

Haridrā, Niśā, Varabarṇinī, Pīvarī, Kṛmighnā, Kāncanī, Yoṣitpriyā, Hattavilāsini.

Regional names

Haladi, Haldi, Haradi (Hind.), Hardakh (Punj.), Halud (Beng.), Halad (Mar.), Haldar (Guj.), Ladir (Can.), Makhal (Tam.), Pasupu (Tel.), Urukussaphar (Arab.), Jardachob (Pers.); Turmeric (Eng.).

Description

A tall herb. Rootstock large, ovoid, with sessile cylindrical tubers orange-coloured inside.

Leaves very large, in tufts up to 1.2 meters or more long, including the petiole which is about as long as the blade, oblong-lanceolate, tapering to the base.

Flowers in autumnal spikes, 10-15 cm. long; peduncle 15 cm. or more, concealed by the sheathing petiole; flowering bracts pale green; bracts of coma tinged with pink.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Farming seasons.

Distribution

It is cultivated throughout the tropical and other regions in India.

Chemical Composition

Rhizome contains a volatile oil 1 percent, an active principle curcumin, yellow colouring matter and turmeric oil (or Turmeriol) of specific odour and taste, and yellow colour.

The contain curcumin, alkaloid and an essential oil; a lactone and an alcohol obtained from the volatile distillate. Fresh rhizomes yield 0.24 percent oil, containing zingiberine.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Tikta, Kaṭu.
Guṇa	: Rūkṣa, Laghu.
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphavātaśāmaka, Pittarecaka-śāmaka

Action and Properties

Karma	: Varnya-Tvacya-mukhakāntikara- dehavarṇaprada Kuṣṭhaghna-kaṇḍūghna Kaphaghna, Vedanāsthāpana- śothahara Raktaprasādaṇa-raktavardhaka- raktastambhaka Vraṇaropaṇa-vraṇaśodhana-lekhana Mūtrasangrahaṇīya-mūtravirajānīya Garbhāśayaśodhana, Stanyaśodhana Śukraśodhana Hikkānigrahaṇa-śvāsahara, Viśaghna Āmapācana, Pittaśāmaka Kaṭupouṣṭhika, Rucivardhaka Anulomana, Arśoghna Tvagdoṣahara.
Roga	: Tvagvikāra-carmaroga-kaṇḍū-pāmā- dadru Raktadoṣa-raktavikāra-raktāśudhi- varṇavikāra Pāṇḍu- Raktasrāva-kāmalā Pramhea roga-kaphaja -meha Arśa-Bhagandara Vraṇa-kṣata-raktasrāva Medoroga-dehadourgandhya Visarpa-kaṇḍū, Śūkardaṅṣtra-Viṣa

Aśmari-mūtraśarkarāvikāra
 Cippa-kunakha, Arbuda-Apacī
 Ślīpada, Stanapīdā-stanyavikāra
 Deha-mukha vaivarṇya
 Aruci-Vibandha, Śukrameha
 Dourbalya, Kāsa-śvāsa-tamakaśvāsa-
 galasotha-svarabheda
 Udaravikāra-jalodara
 Abhighātaja vedanā-śoṭha, Kṛmi
 Sūtikāroga, Netrabhiṣyanda
 Mukha-dantaroga, Yakṛtphihareṛddhi.

Therapeutic Uses

The rhizome is pungent, bitter; and it is heating, laxative, anthelmintic, vulnerary, tonic, alexiteric, emollient. It is useful to improve the complexion. The rhizome is useful in kapha and vāta. It is used in diseases of the blood, leucoderma, scabies, urinary discharges, inflammations, anaemia, bad taste in the mouth, biliousness, dyspepsia, elephantiasis, snake-bite, small-pox, swellings, boils, bruises and sprains.

The rhizome is bitter and it is carminative, maturant and diuretic. It is good for affections of the liver and jaundice, urinary discharges, scabies and bruises.

The rhizome is used as a stimulant; and the rhizome is externally applied in pains and bruises. It is orally given in the blood diseases. Its use on external application in bruises, leech bites etc. which is frequently used medicine.

The fresh juice is considered to be anthelmintic. The decoction of the rhizome is applied to relieve catarrh and purulent ophthalmia. The turmeric rhizome are prescribed in treatment of affections of the liver and jaundice.

A decoction of the turmeric is applied in purulent conjunctivitis is very effectual in relieving the pain. The fumes of the burning turmeric directed into the nostrils cause a copious mucous discharge and relieve the congestion.

The turmeric powder or decoction is useful in diarrhoea which is troublesome and difficult to subdue in

atonic subjects. It is employed in intermittent fevers and dropsy. It contains much essential oil and starch; and it acts as a stimulant and aromatic tonic.

The roots, parched and powdered, is given in bronchitis; the fumes are used during hysteric fits.

The smoke produced by sprinkling powdered of turmeric rhizome over burnt charcoal with relieve scorpionsting when the part affected is exposed to the smoke for a few minutes. A paste made of fresh rhizome is applied on the head in case of vertigo.

The rhizome of turmeric and alum in the proportion of 1 to 20 is blown into the ear in chronic otorrhoea. A paste made of the flowers is used in ringworm and other parasitic skin diseases, and also in the treatment of gonorrhoea.

The rhizome is used externally for cutaneous affections, and internally given in colic, amenorrhoea and congestions. The leaves are considered useful as antipyretic.

The rhizome is used as a tonic, stimulant, aperient, carminative, cordial, emmenagogue, astringent, detergent, diuretic and maturant.

Turmeric rhizome and its powder are most commonly used of daily domestic needs; the powder is household cosmetic as well as common remedy which is very frequently used; domestically the rhizome powder is used in various ailments as a favourite popular household medicine.

The powder is applied to cuts, bruises, inclosed wounds and ulcers. In catarrhal cough, sore throat, throat affections and allied ailments, the decoction of rhizome is used as a gargle and for intake; and also the piece of rhizome is slightly burnt (bhr̥ṣṭa haridrā) and given for chewing.

The milk boiled with turmeric (can be added with sugar) in given in cold, diarrhoea, intermittent fevers, dropsy, jaundice, liver disorders, urinary diseases, worms, trauma and fracture.

The fresh juice is given and anthelmintic is used in bronchitis. The powder of the rhizome mixed with juice of Āmalā (dhātri) is used in diabetes and jaundice. The powder is given in flatulence and indigestion. The powder in also used as paste in dental and gums troubles.

The fresh juice is applied to skin affections as an antiparasitic agent. The rhizome is used as a blood purifier and externally applied to sprains and wounds.

The rhizome is employed as an important ingredient in various pharmaceutical preparations (yoga). The turmeric carries religious and cultural significance besides valuable domestic and medicinal importance.

Parts Used : Rhizome

Dose : Juice 10-20 gms., Powder 1-3 gms.

Formulations (yoga)

Haridrākhaṇḍa, Haridrāghṛtam, Haridrā Kvātha, Haridrādibasti, Rajanilepam, Haridrādilepa, Rajanyādilepa, Niśādyā tailam, Candraprabhā vaṭi, Sudarśana Cūrna, Laghu viṣagarbha Taila, Pippalyāsava, Punarnavā Maṇḍūra, Haridrā Kaṣāya.

Groups (gana)

Kuṣṭhaghna, Lekhaniya, Kaṇḍūghna, Viṣaghna, Tiktakandha, Śirovirecana (Caraka Saṁhitā), Haridrādi, Mustādi, Śleṣmaprasādana (Suśruta-saṁhitā).

HARIDRĀ (हरिद्रा)

निशा तित्ता कटुरूक्षा वर्ण्योष्णा कफपित्तहा ।

पाण्डुव्रणापचीमेहत्वग्दोषविषशोथजित् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 1115.

हरिद्रा कटुतिक्तोष्णा कफवातास्रकुष्ठनुत् ।

मेहकण्डू व्रणान् हन्ति देहवर्ण विधायिनी ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Pippalyādi Varga, 199.

हरिद्रा कटुका तित्ता रूक्षोष्णा कफपित्तनुत् ।

वर्ण्या त्वग्दोषमेहास्रशोषपाण्डु व्रणापहा ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu.

हरिद्रा तु रसे तित्ता रूक्षोष्णा विषकुष्ठनुत् ।

मेहकण्डूव्रणान् हन्ति देहवर्णविधायिनी ॥

विशोधनी कृमिहरा पीनसरुचिनाशनी ।

Dhanvantari Nighaṅṭu.

अर्शःसु रजनीलेपम्

लेपं रजनीचूर्णेन सुधादुग्धयुतेन च ।

अर्शोरोगनिवृत्यर्थं कारयेत्तु चिकित्सकः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Arśarogādihikāra, 5-55.

पाण्डुरोगे हरिद्राघृतम्

हरिद्रा त्रिफला निम्बबलामधुकसाधितम् ।

सक्षीरं माहिषं सर्पिः कामलाहरमुत्तमम् ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 16-53.

अर्शःषु हरिद्रा-सुहीप्रलेपनम्

हरिद्राचूर्णं संयुक्तं सुधाक्षीरं प्रलेपनम् ।

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 14-52.

प्रमेहरोगे हरिद्रायोग

क्षौद्रेण युक्तामथवा हरिद्रां पिबेद्रसेनामलकी फलानाम् ।

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 6-26.

कफजप्रमेहेहरिद्राकषाय

‘उभे हरिद्रे तगरं विडङ्ग्म्.... ।’

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 6-27.

मुखकान्तिकर हरिद्राद्य तैलम्

Cakradatta, 55/55-57.

हरिद्रादियोग

Caraka, Sūtra, 3-14; Caraka, Cikitsā, 17/77-78;

Caraka Cikitsā, 25-88.

हरिद्रादि बस्ति

Caraka, Siddhi, 10-23.

अर्शं हरिद्रादि लेपम्

हरिद्राजालिनी चूर्णं कटुतैलं समन्वितम् ।

एष लेपो वरः प्रोक्तो ह्यर्शसामन्तकारकः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Arśādihikāra, 5-57.

शर्करा (अश्मरी) विकारे मूत्ररोगे

यः पिबेद्रजनीं सम्यक् सगुडां तुषवारिणा ।

तस्याशु चिररूढाऽपि यात्यस्तं मेदृशर्करा ॥

Baṅgasena, Aśmari, 48.

Bhāvaprakāśa, Aśmarīrogādhikāra, 37-48.

देहदौर्गन्ध्ये (मेदोरोगे)

‘दग्धहरिद्रोद्धर्तनमचिराच्चिरदेहदौर्गन्ध्यम् ।’

Bhāvaprakāśa, Sthoulyadhikāra, 39-72.

भगन्दर चिकित्सायां निशाऽऽद्यतैलम्

Bhāvaprakāśa, Bhagandarādhikāra, 50-51;

Cakradatta, Bhagandara Cikitsā, 46-26.

चिष्प-कुनखे

‘स्वरसेन हरिद्रायाः पात्रे कृत्वाऽऽयसऽभयान् ।

घृष्ट्वा तज्जेन कल्केन लिम्पेच्चिष्पं पुनः पुनः ॥’

Vṛndamādhava, 27-18; Bhāvaprakāśa,

Kuṣudrarogādhikāra, 61-75.

स्तनपीडायाम्

‘निशाकनककल्काभ्यां लेपः प्रोक्तः स्तनार्तिहा ।’

Bhāvaprakāśa, Yonī (strī) rogādhikāra, 70-174.

पाण्डुचिकित्सायां रजनीघृत प्रयोगः

पिबेद् घृतं वा रजनीविपक्वं सत्रैफलं तैलकमेव चापि ।

विरेचनद्रव्यकृतान् पिबेद्वा योगांश्च वैरेचनिकान् घृतेन ॥

Cakradatta, Pāṇḍu Cikitsā, 8-2.

विसर्पशूकर द्रंष्ट्रकोपचरार्थं रजन्यादि लेपः

रजनीमार्कवमूलं पिष्टं शीतेन वारिणा तुल्यम् ।

हन्ति विसर्पं लेपाद् वराहदशनाह्वयं रोगान् ॥

Cakradatta, Kuṣudraroga, Cikitsā, 55-139;

Vṛndamādhava, 57-97.

अशांसि

हरिद्राचूर्णसंयुक्तं सुधाक्षीरं प्रलेपनम् ।

गोपित्तपिष्टाः पिप्पल्यः सहरिद्राः प्रलेपनम् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 14-52.

मेदजन्यार्बुद शमनाय हरिद्रादि लेपः

हरिद्रालोध्रपत्तङ्गगृहधूममनःशिलाः ।

मधुप्रगाढो लेपोऽयं मेदोऽर्बुदहरः परः ॥

Cakradatta, Galagaṇḍādi Cikitsā, 41-61.

चिर (एकवर्षजनित) श्लीपदे (सदद्भुकुष्ठ) रजनीगुड प्रयोगः

रजनीं गुडसंयुक्तां गोमूत्रेण पिबेन्नरः ।

वर्षोत्थं हन्ति दद्भुकुष्ठं विशेषतः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Cikitsā 45-14, Cakradatta,

Ślīpada Cikitsā, 42-12; Vṛndamādhava, 42-14.

कुष्ठचिकित्सायां-कच्छूपामाशमनार्थं-हरिद्राकल्क प्रयोगः

हरिद्राकल्कसंयुक्तं गोमूत्रस्य पलद्वयम् ।

पिबेन्नरः कामचारी कच्छूपामविनाशनम् ॥

Cakradatta, Kuṣṭha Cikitsā, 50-44.

कुष्ठचिकित्सायां-पामाऽदिचर्मविकारे-निशाद्युद्वर्तनम्

निशासुधाऽऽरग्वधकाकमाची पत्रैः सदावीप्रपुनाडबीजैः ।

तक्रेणपिष्टः कटुतैलमिश्रैः पामादिषूद्वर्तनमेतदिष्टम् ॥

Cakradatta, Kuṣṭha Cikitsā, 50-47.

देशपरिवर्तनजनिद्विकार प्रतिषेधार्थम्

कल्कतामारनालेन स्वच्छन्दं रजनीं पिबेत् ।

न तु देशान्तरगतां बाध्यते शीतकादिभिः ॥

Vaidyamanoramā, 1-16.

श्वसे

हरिद्रादिधूमवर्तिः ।

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 17-77.

व्यङ्गे

महिषीक्षीरसम्पिष्टं

रजनीरक्तचन्दनम् ।

कृतलेपं निहन्त्याशु श्यामिकां गण्डयोः स्थितम् ॥

Rasaratna Samuccaya, 24-45.

वातव्याधौ

तैलं लिप्त्वा वातरोगोपशान्त्यै यामदूर्ध्वं शर्बरीमूलसूक्ष्मचूर्णम् ।

लिप्तवोद्वर्त्योद्वृत्यं तैलं हरेद् प्राग् यामादूर्ध्वं तत् पुनर्हन्तिवातम् ॥

Vaidyamanoramā, 12-2-25.

श्वासकास-हिक्कापहारार्थम्

व्युषिता पटुपयसि निशा भ्रष्टभृष्टामुखाम्बुजे धार्या ।

हिक्काकासश्वासश्लेष्मविकारापहाराय ॥

Siddha Bhaisajya Maṇimālā, 375-376.

अर्धदग्धं हरिद्रां द्राक् पिद्धीत शरावतः ।

तत् कोकिलरजः क्षौद्रैर्द्विमाषं श्वासकासजित् ॥

Siddha Bhaisajya Maṇimālā, 4-375.

पाण्डुरोगे

‘लिहेद् हरिद्रां त्रिफलान्वितां वा ।

सर्पिर्मधुम्याम् ।’

Suśruta Samhitā, Uttara. 44-17.

कामलायाम्

हरिद्रादिघृतम् ।

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 16-53.

‘निशागैरिकधात्रीभिः कामलापहमञ्जनम् ।’

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Cikitsā, 16-44.

विषे

रजनीक्षौद्रसैन्धवसंयुक्तं घृतमुत्तमम् ।

पानं मूलविषार्तस्य दिग्धबिद्धस्य चेष्यते ॥

Vṛndamādhava, 68-98.

हरिद्रेतु हिते ख्याते ताभ्यांनास्ति समः क्वचित् ।

अगदस्तु विषार्तानां प्रलेपादि प्रयोजितः ॥

Gadanigraha, 6-3-11.

मसूरिकायाम्

‘निशाचिञ्चाच्छदे शीतवारिपीते तथैव तु ।’

Cakradatta, 54-9.

कच्छू रोगे

हरिद्राकल्क संयुक्तं गोमूत्रस्य पलद्वयम् ।

पिबेन्नर कामचारी कच्छूपामा विनाशनम् ॥

Vṛndamādhava, 51-41.

शूले

क्षपाऽक्षमाना यवसा समाना पटुस्त्रिमाषः कुरु चूर्णमेषाम् ।
पलप्रमाणेन घृतेन पक्त्वा कोष्णं महाशूलरुजासु देहि ॥

Siddha Bhaiṣajya Maṇimālā, 4-507.

कासे

सिंहास्यरससंसिद्धहरिद्राखण्ड चूर्णकम् ।
दुग्धसन्तानिकालीढं शुष्ककासनिर्बर्हणम् ॥

Siddha Bhaiṣajya Maṇimālā, 4-333.

कुष्ठे

गोमूत्रेणहरिद्रातु रसाञ्जनमथापि वा ।
प्रयोगेण पिबेत् कुष्ठी तथा रोगान् प्रमुच्यते ॥

Bhela Samhitā, Cikitsā, 6-56.

पीत्वा मासं वा पलाशं हरिद्रामूत्रेणान्त पापयोगस्य गच्छेत् ।
एवं पेयश्चित्रकः श्लक्ष्णपिष्टः पिप्पल्यो वा पूर्ववन् मूत्रयुक्ता ॥

Suśruta Samhitā, Cikitsā, 9-45.

कफज तृष्णायाम्

‘जलं पिबेत् रजन्या वा सिद्धं सक्षौद्रशर्करम् ।’

Aṣṭāṅga Sangraha, Cikitsā, 8-81;

Aṣṭāṅga Hr̥daya, Cikitsā, 6-42.

‘असाध्या नातिवर्तन्ते प्रमेहा रजनी यथा ।’

Suśruta Samhitā, Cikitsā, 6-17-20.

‘क्षौद्रेण युक्तामथवा हरिद्रां पिबेद् रसेनामलकीफलानाम् ।’

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 6-26.

‘पिष्टमेहिनं हरिद्रादारुहरिद्राकषायम् ।’

Suśruta Samhitā, Cikitsā, 11-9.

‘ततः शुद्धदेहमालकरसेन हरिद्रां मधुसंयुक्तां पाययेत् ।’

Suśruta Samhitā, Cikitsā, 11-8.

HARIDRU

Botanical Name : Adina cordifolia Benth. & Hooker.

Family : Rubiaceae

Classical name : Haridru

Sanskrit Names

Haridru, Pīṭadāru, Sakadambaka, Pītakāṣṭha, Śrīmāma, Sūdāruka, Mahāvṛkṣa, Vṛttadala, Kadambābhaphala.

Regional Names

Haldu (Hind.), Kelikadamb (Beng.), Dhulikadamb, Dakam (Beng.), Haldakha, Hed (Mar.), Haldakho (Guj.), Sajjkadami (Tam.), Lundhukadami (Tel.)

Description

A large deciduous tree with the stem often irregularly fluted and buttressed at the base and commonly reaching 6 meters girth and 35 meters high. Bark partly dark grey or blackish and partly pale ash or silvery white, rather rough, exfoliating in irregular woody scales.

Blaze 2.5-3.8 cm., soft, with copious shout fibre, pinkish brown but much paler towards the inside, the whole rapidly turning orange-brown on exposure, juice turning black on the blade of a knife.

Leaves opposite, 10-25 cm. diam. orbicular, shortly acuminate, base cordate, glabrescent above, pubescent beneath, with 3-5 pairs of lateral nerves. Petiole 3.8-10 cm. long, stout, pubescent. Stipules 1.3-1.8 cm. long, oblong or obovate.

Flowers yellow, in globose pedunculate heads, 1.8-2.5 cm. diam. Peduncles axillary, 1-4 together, 2.5-10 cm. long, each bearing a solitary head (rarely corolla 0 mm. long pubescent).

Capsule splitting into 2 dehiscent cocci seeds many, minute, winged.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Colder season to summers.

Distribution

It is found in the regions from Himalayas to central and southern India.

Chemical Composition

Bark contains bitter principle.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Tikta
Guṇa	: Laghu
Vīrya	: Rūkṣa, Śīta
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphapittaśāmaka.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Āmapācana-Dīpana-Pittasāraka Stambhana, Kṛmighna Śoṇitāsthāpana, Kuṣṭhaghna Jvaraghana, Dāhapraśamana Kaṭupouṣṭika, Kuṣṭhaghna-Tvacya Varṇya-aṅgakāntikara Vraṇaśodhana- vraṇaropaṇa Vāntijit, Maṅgalya, Balya.
Roga	: Agnimāndya-Ajīrṇa, Vamana-trṣṇā Yokṛdvikāra, Grahaṇī, Kṛmi Raktavikāra, Kuṣṭha, Jīrṇajvara-jvara- dāha, Varṇavikāra Dourbalya-Jvarottara dourbalya Vraṇa.

Therapeutic Uses

The bark is acrid, bitter and pungent; it is useful as tonic, vulnerary and aphrodisiac. It is used to treat inflammation, biliousness, diseases of the blood and skin affections.

The juice of the bark is used to kill worms in sores. The small buds, ground with round pepper, are snuffed into nose in severe headache.

The root is used as an astringent agent in treatment of dysentery. The decoction of the bark and mixed with śyonāka bark (*Oroxylum indicum*) alongwith candied sugar, is given in strangury.

Parts Used : Bark, Leaves.

Dose

Juice 10-20 gms., Decoction 50-100 gms., Powder 1-3 gms.

HARIDRU (हरिद्रु)

हरिद्रः शीतलस्तिको मङ्गल्यः पित्तवान्तिजित् ।
अङ्गकान्तिकरो बल्यो नानात्वग्दोषनाशनः ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu.

हरिद्रुको महावृक्षः कदम्बाभ फलो गिरौ ।
भवेत् वृत्तदलः पीतकाष्ठः श्रीमान् सुदारका ॥

Śivadatta.

हरिद्रुः पीतदारुः स्यात् पीतकाष्ठश्च पीतकः ।
कदम्बकः सुपुष्पश्च सुराह्वः पीतकद्रुमः ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Prabhadrādi Varga, 119-120.

HARĪTAKĪ

Botanical Name : Terminalia chebula Retz.

Family : Combretaceae

Classical Name : Harītakī

Sanskrit Names

Haritakī, Pathyā, Abhayā, Amṛtā, Avyathā, Kāyesthā,
Vayasthā, Haimavatī, Śivā.

Regional Names

Harre, harad (Hind.), Haritaki (Beng.), Hirda
(Mar.), Kandakai (Tam.), Karebi (Uri.), Kandakai (Tel.),
Hallilaj (Arab.), Halil (Pers.); Chebulic Myrobalan (Eng.).

Description

A moderate sized or large deciduous tree, attaining
25-30 meters in height. Leaf-buds branchlets and youngest
leaves with soft, shining, generally rust-coloured hairs.

Leaves 7-20 cm. by 4-8 cm., glabrous or nearly so when
mature, not clustered, distant, alternate or sub-opposite,
elliptic-oblong, acute, rounded or cordate at base,
penninerved, secondary nerves of 6-8 pairs, arching,
prominent; petioles 2-5 cm. long, pubescent, usually with
glands near the top.

Flowers all hermaphrodite, 4 mm. across sessile, dull-white or yellow, with an offensives small. Spikes sometimes simple, usually in short panicles, terminal and in the axils of the uppermost leaves; bracts exceeding the flowers, subulate or lanceolate, hairy, conspicuous among the buds but soon deciduous. Calyx companulate, 3 mm. long, flat at the base expanding a little towards the mouth; glabrous outside, hairy within; teeth 5 short, sometimes obscure.

Drupe pendulous, 2-4 cm. long, ellipsoid or obovoid from a broad base, glabrous, more or less, 5-ribbed, when dry yellowish green; acute oblong, bony, very thick, obscurely angled.

Bark: 6 mm. thick, dark brown with many generally shallow vertical cracks. Wood very hard, brownish grey with a greenish or yellowish ringe, with an irregular, small dark purple heartwood, close-grained.

Fruit : The mature mysrobalan is of an ovoid form, from 2.5 to 3.75 cm. long, sometimes tapering towards the lower extremity obscurely 5-ribbed, more or less furrowed longitudinally covered with an astringent pulp enclosing a large rough, bony one-called endocarp.

The unripe fruit are shrivalled black, ovoid, brittle bodies from 8 mm. to 15 mm. in length having a shining fracture and an astringent taste. The rudimentary of the nut can be distinguished through careful examination.

Varieties and Kinds

There are seven types of the drug fruits ('pathyāyāh sapta-jātayah') described in Indian medicine which are named as follow :

Type (jāti)	Characteristics/ shape-size (svarūpa)	Utility (prayoga)	Origin/Habitat (utpattisthala)
1. Vijauā	Alābūvṛtta	Sarvaroga	Vindhya
2. Rohiṇī	Vṛtta	Vraṇa	Vindhya
3. Pūtanā	Sūkṣma, asthimaya	Pralepa	Sindha
4. Amṛtā	Māmsala	Śodhana	Madhya- pradesh

5. Abhayā	Pancarekhāyukta	Netraroga	Chmparan
6. Jīvantī	Svarṇavarṇa	Sarvaroga	Saurāṣṭra
7. Cetakī	Trirekhāyukta	Recana	Himalāya

Commercially two or three types of the drug are prevalent in market and practice viz. lesser fruits-choṭī harre (halila syah) and greater fruits barī harre (halila kabuli) and another pilī herre (halila jard). Mostly the fruit's raw material in different stages (of maturity and collection) etc. may be considered and used in different forms, in addition to the fruits procured from source trees of regional occurrence for the raw drug.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Rains to summer season.

Distribution

It is found throughout greater part of India, central and Southern India, Burma and Ceylon, upto 5,000 ft. in the outer Himalaya and upto 6,000 ft. in Travancore. It occurs particularly in Northern India, Madhya Pradesh, West Bengal, Tamilnadu, Karnataka, Maharastra and other regions in country.

Chemical Composition

Fruit contains tannin upto 30 percent, chebulinic acid; and it also contains gallic acid, resin etc., and some purgative of the nature of anthraquinone. It contains tannic acid 45 percent, rich gallic acid, mucilaginous and colouring matter; its content chebulinic acid disintegrates into tannic and gallic acids on boiling in water.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṣāya pradhāna (predominance) pañcarasa lavaṇavarjita, (all the five i.e. Kaṣāya, Kaṭu, Tikṭa, amla madhura, except lavaṇa)
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Madhura
Doṣakarman	: Tridoṣahara, Vātaśāmaka.

Action and Properties

Karma

: Rasāyana-Vayahsthāpana-āyūṣya
 Sarvarogaprasāmanī-Pathya
 Dīpana-pācana-anulomana-
 mṛdurecana (sukhavirecana-
 śūlahara), Grāhī, Kṛmighna
 Yakṛduttejaka
 Balya-Bṛñhaṇa-pouṣṭikī
 Chardinigrahaṇa
 Mūtrajanana-aśmarināśana-
 mehahara, Arśoghna
 Hṛdya-sonitāsthāpana-śothahara
 Kaṇṭhya, Vṛṣya
 Prajāsthāpana-garbhāśayaśothahara
 Nāditandra balya-medhya-
 Buddhibalapradam-smṛtivaradhaka
 Indriyaśakti (cakṣvādi) Prada
 Vedanāsthāpana-śothahara
 Vraṇaśodhana-vṛṇaropaṇa
 Jvaraghna, Kaphaghna-svarya
 Varṇya-tvacya, Srotovibandhahara
 Vātaśāmaka, Santarpaṇa, Medo-
 dehadourgandhy, madahara, hara.

Roga

: Agnimāndya-ajīrṇa-śūla-Ānāha-
 ādhmāna-vibandha-chardi
 Udararoga-gulma-udāvarta-sarvaśūla
 Kṛmi, Grahaṇī, Arśa
 Hṛddourbalya-vātarakta-āmvāta-
 raktavikāra
 Yakṛta-plihā vikāra-pāṇḍu-kāmalā
 Kāsa-śvāsa-pratiśyāya-svaravikāra-
 kaṇṭhāmaya-hikkā
 Mūtrakṛcchra-mūtrāghāta-aśmarī-
 prameha, Tvagdoṣa-kuṣṭha-visarpa
 Jvara-viśamajvara-jīrṇajvara
 Nāḍrīdourbalya-mastiṣkadourbalya-
 indriyābala
 Garbhāśayadourbalya-śvetapradara-
 upadaṁśa

Prameha-śukrameha, Vātavyādhi
 Śoṭha vedanāyukta vikāra
 Netraroga-netrābhiṣyanda, Vraṇa
 Mukharoga-śīroroga-Nāsāroga
 Klaibya, Hṛdayaroga, Ślīpada
 Madātyaya-mada-mūrchā
 Tvagdoṣa-Kṣudraroga-cippa
 Medoroga-deha-kakṣīya
 dourgandhya-svedādhikya, Kuṣṭha
 Vṛghna-vṛddhi-liṅgārśa
 Raktapitta, Granthi.

Therapeutic Uses

The fruit is the prominent herbal drug which is a highly valuable, common and widely used medicine in Indian systems of medicine. It is one of the major drugs among alterative or rejuvenation (rasāyana) medicines and frequently employed in a large number of formulations. This is most popular drug which is used in very large number of the diseases.

The fruit is dry and heating, stomachic, tonic, carminative, expectorant, anthelmintic, antidyenteric and alterative. It is useful in asthma, sore throat, thirst, vomiting, hiccough, eye diseases, diseases of heart and the bladder, strangury, vesicular calculi, urinary discharges, ascites, biliousness, inflammations, tumours bleeding piles, typhoid fever, leucoderma, dyspnoea, itching pain, gout, constipation, anaemia, elephantiasis and delirium.

The unripe fruit is astringent and aperient, useful in dysentery and diarrhoea. The ripe fruit is purgative, tonic, carminative and it enriches the blood. It is useful in ophthalmia, diseases of the spleen, piles, cold in the head and paralysis; it strengthens the brain, eyes and gums.

The fruits are used in the sore throat. A fruit is finely powdered and used as a dentrifice medicine, it is useful in carious teeth, bleeding and ulcerative conditions of the gums.

A decoction of the fruits is a good astringent wash. A fruit, coarsely powdered and smoked in pipe, affords relief in a fit of asthma. A fine paste, obtained by rubbing the fruit

on a rough stone with little water, mixed with the oil (of pharmacopocia) and applied to burns and scalds, effects a more rapid cure than when carron oil alone is used.

The fruits pieces are kept in water for the night and this water is considered useful as cooling wash for the eyes and as a lotion for other ailments. The fruit is combination with other drugs is prescribed for snake-bite.

The bark is endowed with both diuretic and cardio-tonic properties. Fruits, being a rich source of tannin, are much used commercially for tanning purposes.

In condition of constipation, diseases with constipation symptom, patents with constipation tendency and habitual constipation, the fruit (pericarp) powder is taken in night with lukewarm water for mild purgative or laxative; it is safe, common and effective use of this herbal drug of familiarity.

The drug is pignificantly prescribed in therapeutic as well as preventive use and process of restorative or alterative indication (rasāyana karma), and it is classically recommended as Ṛtu Haritakī for using the drug during the course of different seasons viz.

Season (ṛtu)	Vehicle (anupāna)
Varṣa (rains)	Saindhava (rock salt)
Śarada (autumn)	Śarkarā (sugar)
Hemanta (cold/winter)	Śuṅṭhī (ginger)
Śīśra	Pippalī (pepper)
Vasanta (spring)	Madhu (honey)
Grīṣma (summer)	Gūḍa (jaggery)

Various medicinal properties of drug-fruit are specified in relation to its mode of use such as chewing (carvitā), powdering (peṣitā), boiling and frying (bhr̥ṣṭa) (svinnā) of fruit which is stomachic (agnivardhana), laxative (malaśodhana) and astringent (sangrāhī) and countering tri-humours (tridoṣaghna).

The drug is indicated for the diseases caused with vitiation of all three humours or doṣa (tridoṣa) in general (and countering the vitiation of vāta in particular) for which a common guide line is provided for enabling effective therapeutic usage, such as :

Doṣa	Anurpāna
Vāta	Ghṛta (butter)
Pitta	Śarkarā (sugar)
Kapha	Lavaṇa (salt)

The characteristics and test of the best quality of fruit for utilising an ideal, genuine and medicinal potent drug have been mentioned in classical texts, which incorporate the method of collection, storage, types, identification, origin (habitat), taste of different parts, wide ranging therapeutic indications (as a single drug, major or minor ingredient and component of formulations) and several other aspects and informations relevant to its medicinal potentiality pharmaco-logical efficacy and clinical utility by multi-administration of drug in preventive as well as curative purposes making it a highly esteemed and wide ranging poly-herbal drug.

Parts Used : Fruits

Dose

Fruit (greater) 3-6 gms. (as laxative), 1 gm. (as alterative), Fruit (lesser) 1-3 gms.

Formulations (yoga)

Abhayāmodoka, Abhayāriṣṭa, Pathyādi Vaṭi, Vyāghrī Harītakī, Citraka Harītakī, Citraka harītakī, Agastya Harītakī, Dantī Harītakī, Harītakī Khaṇḍa, Pathyādi Cūrṇa, Abhayāmodoka, Amṛtā, Harītakī, Vyāghrī Harītakī, Harītakyaḍi Kvātha, Pathyādi Kvātha, Panchasakāra curṇa, Daśamūla Harītakī, Triphalā, Pathyādi Varti, Harītakyaḍi Rasāyana, Pathyāvāleha, Harītakyaḍi cūrṇa, Abhayā lepa, Pathyātrikam etc.

Groups (gaṇa)

Triphalā, Āmalakyādi, Parūṣakādi, Trivṛtādi (Suśrata Saṁhitā), Prajāsthāpana, Jvaraghna, Kuṣṭhaghna, Kāsaghna, Arśoghna (Caraka Saṁhitā).

HARĪTAKĪ (हरीतकी)

अतश्चामृतकल्पानि विद्यात् कर्मभिरीदृशैः ।

हरीतकीनां शस्याभि भिषगामलकस्य च ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 1-1/37.

हरीतकीं पञ्चरसामुष्णामलवणां शिवाम् ।
 दोषानु लोमनीं लघ्वीं विद्यद्दीपन पाचनीम् ॥
 आयुष्यां पौष्टिकीं धन्यां वयसः स्थापनीं पराम् ।
 सर्वरोग प्रशमनीं बुद्धीन्द्रिय बलप्रदाम् ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 1-1/29-30.

कुष्ठं गुल्ममुदावर्तं शोषं पाण्डुवामयं मदम् ।
 अर्शासि ग्रहणीदोषं पुराणं विषमज्वरम् ॥
 हृद्रोगं सशिरोगमतीसार मरोचकम् ।
 कासं प्रमेहमानाहं प्लीहानमुदरं नवम् ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 1-1/31-32.

कफप्रसेकं वैस्वर्यं वैवर्ण्यं कामलां क्रिमीम् ।
 क्ष्वथुं तमकं छर्दिं क्लैव्यमङ्गावसादनम् ॥
 स्रोतोविबन्धान् विविधान् प्रलेपं हृदयो रसोः ।
 स्मृतिबुद्धि प्रमोहं च जयेच्छीघ्रं हरीतकी ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 1-1/33-34.

आमलकीसमगुणाः

तान् गुणांस्तानि कर्माणि विद्यादामलकीष्वपि ।
 यान्युक्तानि हरीतक्या वीर्यस्य तु विपर्ययः ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 1-1/36.

भल्लातकः कटुस्तिक्तः कषायोष्णः क्रिमीञ्जयेत् ।
 कफवातोदरानाह मेहदुनार्मनाशनः ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Āmrādi Varga, 68.

फलम्

भल्लातक फलं कषायमधुरं कोष्णं कफार्तिश्रम-
 श्वासानाहविबन्धशूलजठराध्मान क्रिमिध्वंसनम् ।

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Āmrādi Varga, 67.

मज्जा

‘तन्मज्जा च विशोषदाहशमनी पित्तापहा तर्पणी ।
 वातारोचकहारिदीप्ति जननी पित्तापहा ॥’

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Āmrādi Varga, 69.

हरीतकीसेवनायोग्यावस्था

अजीर्णिन रूक्षभुजः स्त्रीमद्याविषकर्षिताः ।
सेवेरन्नाभयामेते क्षुत्तृष्णोध्यार्दिताश्च ये ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 1-1/35.

हरीतकीभक्षणानर्हजनाः

अध्वातिखिन्नो बलवर्जितश्च रूक्षकृशो लङ्घनकर्षितश्च ।
पित्ताधिकौ गर्भवती च नारी विमुक्तरक्तस्त्वभयां च खादेत् ॥
तृष्णायां मुखशोषे च हनुस्तम्भे मलग्रहे ।
नवज्वरे तथा क्षीणे गर्भिण्यां न प्रशस्यते ॥
'हरीतकी पथ्यानाम् (श्रेष्ठम्)'

Caraka Samhitā, Sūtra.

अभया जातयः

विजया रोहिणी चैव पूतनां चाऽमृताऽभया ।
जीवन्ती चेतकी चेति पथ्यायाः सप्त जातयः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Harītakyaḍi Varga.

अभयापृथक् लक्षणानि

अलाबुवृत्ता विजया वृत्ता सा रोहिणी स्मृता ।
पूतनाऽस्थिमतीं सूक्ष्मा कथिता मांसलाऽमृता ॥
पञ्चरेखाऽभया प्रोक्ता जीवन्ती स्वर्णवर्णिनी ।
त्रिरेखा चेतकी ज्ञेया सप्तनामियमाकृतिः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Harītakyaḍi Varga, 8.

हरीतक्याः प्रयोगभेदेन फलभेदाः

क-ख. चर्विता वर्द्धयत्यग्निं पेषितं मलशोधिनी ।
ग-घ. स्वन्ना संग्राहिणी पथ्या भृष्टा प्रोक्ता त्रिदोषनुत् ।
ङ-च. उन्मीलिनी बुद्धि बलेन्द्रियाणां निर्मूलिनीपित्तकफानिलानाम् ।
छ. विसंसिनी मूत्रशकृन्मलानां हरीतकी स्यात् सहभोजनेन् ।

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Harītakyaḍi Varga, 30-31.

भोजनान्ते हरीतकी प्रयोग फलम्

अन्नपानकृतान्दोषान्वातपित्तकफोद्धवान् ।
हरीतकी हरत्याशु भुक्तस्योपरि योजिता ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Harītakyaḍi Varga, 32.

अनुपान भेदे .

लवणेन कफं हन्ति पित्तं हन्ति सशर्करा ।
घृतेन वातजान् रोगान्सर्वरोगान्गुडान्विता ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Harītakyaḍi Varga, 33.

रसायनगुणार्थिनां कृते हरीतकी प्रयोगविधिम्
सिन्धूत्थशर्करा शुण्ठीकणामधुगुडैः ।
वर्षादिष्वभया प्राश्या रसायनगुणाषिणा ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Harītakyaḍi, Varga, 34.

प्रथम रसायनाध्याये पञ्चमो हरीतकीयोगः

हरीतक्यादि रसायनम्

‘हरीतक्यामलकबिभीतक.....जराव्याधिपापाभिचारज्य-
पगतभयः शरीरेन्द्रियबुद्धिबलमतुलमुपलभ्याप्रतिहत-
सर्वारम्भः परमायुरवाप्नुयात् ।’

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 1-76.

लिङ्गार्शो पथ्याऽऽदिवर्तिः

महाबोधिप्रदेशस्य पथ्या कोषातकीरजः ।
कफेन लेपतो हन्ति लिङ्गवर्तिमसंशयम् ॥

Cakradatta, Arśacikitsā, 5-9.

श्लेष्मवातजवृद्धिरोगे

हरीतकीं मूत्रसिद्धां सतैलां लवणान्विताम् ।
प्रातः प्रातश्च सेवेत कफवातामयापहाम् ॥

Cakradatta, 40-12.

आमवातेपथ्यादि चूर्णम्

पथ्याविश्वयमानीभिस्तुल्याभिश्चूर्णितं ।
तक्रेणोष्णोदकेनापि अथवा काञ्जिकेन वा ॥
आमवातं निहन्त्याशु शोथं मन्दाग्रितामपि ॥

Cakradatta, 25-44.

श्लीपदे हरीतकी प्रयोगः

गन्धर्वतैलभृष्टां हरीतकीं गोजलेन यः पिबति ।
श्लीपदबन्धनमुक्तो भवत्यसौ सप्तरात्रेण ॥

Cakradatta, Ślīpada Cikitsā, 42-12.

सप्तजातेर्हरीतक्या उत्पत्तिस्थानानि

विन्ध्याद्रौ विजया हिमाचलभवा स्याच्चेतकी पूतना ।
सिन्धौ स्यादथ रोहिणीं निगदिता जाता प्रतिस्थानके ॥

(पाठान्तर)

चम्पायाममृताऽभया च जनिता देशे सुराष्ट्रह्वये ।
जीवन्तीति हरीतकी निगदिता सप्त प्रभेदा बुधैः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Harītakyaḍi Varga.

उत्तमहरीतक्या लक्षणानि

नवा स्निग्धा घना वृत्तागुर्वी क्षिप्ता च वाऽम्भसि ।
निमज्जेत्सा प्रशस्ता च कथिता ऽतिगुणप्रदा ॥
नवादिगुणयुक्तत्वं तथैवात्र द्विकर्षतः ।
हरीतक्याः फले यत्र द्वयं तच्छ्रेष्ठमुच्यते ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Harītakyaḍi Varga, 28-29.

हरीतक्याः प्रभावनिबन्धनं दोषान्तृत्वं न तु रसनिबन्धनम्

प्रश्न — स्वादुतिक्तकषायत्वात्पित्तहृत्कफहृत् सा ।
कटुतिक्तकषायत्वादम्लत्वाद्वातहृच्छिवा ॥
पित्तकृत्कटुकाम्लत्वाद्वातकृत्र कथं शिवा ।
उत्तर — प्रभावादोषाहन्तृत्वं सिद्धं यत्तत्प्रकाशयते ।
हेतुभिः शिष्य बोधार्थं नापूर्वं क्रियतेऽधुना ॥

सोदाहरण प्रभाव वैशिष्ट्यम्

कर्मन्यत्वं गुणैः साम्यं दृष्टमाश्रयभेदतः ।
यतस्ततो नेति चिन्त्यं धात्रीलकुचयोर्यथा ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Harītakyaḍi Varga, 23-26.

हरीतक्यां तद्रसादीनां स्थानानि

प्रश्न — पथ्याया मज्जनि स्वादुः स्नाय्वाम्लो व्यवस्थितः ।
वृत्ते तिक्तस्त्वचि कटुस्थिस्थस्तुवरो रसः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Nighaṇṭu, Harītakyaḍi Varga, 27.

उत्तर — प्रश्नमेतद्यथा पृष्टं भगवन्वक्तुमर्हसि ।
अश्विनीर्वचनं श्रुत्वा दक्षो वचनमब्रवीत् ॥
प्रपात बिन्दुर्भेदिन्यां शक्रस्य पिबतोऽमृतम् ।

ततो दिव्यात्समुत्पन्ना सप्तजातिर्हरीतकी ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Harītakṛyādi Varga, 4-5.

छर्दिचिकित्सा

हरीतकीनां चूर्णन्तु लिहयान्माक्षिक संयुतम् ।
अधोमार्गीकृते दोषे छर्दि शीघ्रं निवर्तते ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Madhyakhaṇḍe, 17-18.

स्वेदाधिक्ये शरीरदौर्गन्धै च (मेदरोगे)

सुरया समभयाफल चूर्णं मधुनाविलिह्य प्रत्यूषे ।
स्वेदान्हत्वा लभते पुरुषोऽप्यत्यन्तसौरभ्यम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Sthoulyādhikāra, 39-83.

स्वेदाधिक्य निवारणार्थे (मेदरोगे)

हरीतकीं तु सम्पिष्य गात्रमुद्धतचत्ररः ।
पश्चात्स्नानं प्रकुर्वीत देहस्वेद प्रशान्तये ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Madhyakhaṇḍa, 39-75.

कुक्षीयदुर्गन्धिनाशने (मेदविकारे)

बिल्बशिवा समभागा लेपाद् भुजमूलगन्धमपहरति ।
परिणत पिडिकाञ्चापि पूतीकरञ्जोत्थबीजं वा ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Sthoulyādhikāra, 39-71.

ब्रध्न चिकित्सायाम्

भृष्टश्चैरण्डतैलेन सम्यक्कल्कोऽभयाभवः ।
कृष्णासैन्धव संयुक्तो ब्रध्नरोगहरः परः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Vṛddhibraghnādhikāra, 43-34;

Cakradatta, 40-16.

श्लीपदे (एरण्डतैल सिद्ध) हरीतकी प्रयोगम्

गन्धर्वतैलसिद्धां हरीतकीं गोऽम्बुना पिबेत्रित्यम् ।
श्लीपद बन्धनमुक्तो भवत्यसौ सप्तरात्रेण ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Ślīpadadhikāra, 45-15.

उपदंश चिकित्सायां वराऽऽदि गुग्गुलु

Bhāvaprakāśa, Upadamśadhikāra, 51/36-37.

कुष्ठे पथ्याऽऽदि लेपम्

Bhāvaprakāśa, Kuṣṭharogādhikāra, 54-52.

हृदयरोग चिकित्सायां वल्लभ घृतम्

मुख्यं शतार्द्धञ्च हरीतकीनां सौवर्चलस्यापि पल्लद्वयञ्च ।
पक्त्वं घृतं वल्लभकेति नाम्ना हृच्छ्वासशूलोदरमारुतघ्नम् ॥

Cakradatta, 31-26.

रसायने हरीतक्यादि योगः

‘हरीतक्यामलकबिभीतक.....त्रिवर्षप्रयोगादस्य वर्षशतमजरं-
वयस्तिष्ठति, श्रुतमवतिष्ठते, सर्वाभयाः प्रशाम्यन्ति,
अधृष्यो भूतानां भवति ।’

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 1-1/77.

हरीतकी गुणाः

हरीतकी पञ्चरसाऽलवणा तुवरा परम् ।
रूक्षोष्णा दीपनी मेध्या स्वादुपाका रसायनी ॥
चक्षुष्या लघुरायुष्या बृंहणी चानुलोमिनी ।
श्वासकासप्रमेहार्शः कुष्ठशोथोदर क्रिमीन् ॥
वैस्वर्यग्रहणीरोगविबन्ध विषमज्वरान् ।
गुल्माध्मानतृषाछर्दि हिक्काकण्डू हृदामयान् ॥
कामलां गुल्मानाहं प्लीहानञ्च यकृत्तथा ।
अश्मरीं मूत्रकृच्छ्रञ्च मूत्राघातञ्च नाशयेत् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Harītakyaḍi Varga, 29-32.

हरीतक्या उत्पत्ति कथा

प्रश्न— दक्षं प्रजापतिं स्वस्थमश्विनौ वाक्यमूचतुः ।
कुतो हरीतकी जाता तस्यास्तु कति जातयः ॥
रसाः कति समाख्यातः कति चोपरसाः स्मृताः ।
नामानि कति चोक्तानि किं वा तासां च लक्षणम् ॥
के च वर्णा गुणाः के च का च कुत्र प्रयुज्यते ।
केन द्रव्येण संयुक्ता कांश्च रोगान्व्यपोहति ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Harītakyaḍi Varga, 1-3.

हरीतकी गुणाः

हरीतकी पञ्चरसा च रेचनी कोष्ठामयघ्नी लवणेन वर्जिता ।
रसायनी नेत्ररुजापहारिणी त्वगामयघ्नी किल योगवाहिनी ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Āmrādi Varga, 216.

अन्यच्च

बीजास्थितिका मधुरा तदन्तस्त्वग्मागतः सा कटुष्णवीर्या ।
मांसांशतश्चाम्लकषाययुक्ता हरीतकी पञ्चरसा स्मृतियम् ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Āmrādi Varga, 217.

हरते प्रशमं व्याधीन् भूयस्तरति यद्वपुः ।

हरीतकी तु सा प्रोक्ता तत्र कौर्दीसिवाचकः ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Āmrādi Varga, 228.

गुल्मे दन्ती हरीतकी योगः

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 5-154/160.

गोमूत्रहरीतकी

हरीतकी प्रयोगेण गोमूत्रेणाथवा पिबेत् ।

जीर्णे क्षीरेण भुञ्जीत रसेन मधुर्ण वा ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 16-68.

चिरकालीन वृद्धिरोगे रुबुतैलभृष्टहरीतकी प्रयोगः

गोमूत्रसिद्धां रुबुतैलभृष्टां हरीतकीं सैन्धवचूर्णयुक्ताम् ।

खादेन्नरः कोष्ठजलाम्बुपानां निहन्ति वृद्धि चिरजां प्रवृद्धाम् ॥

Cakradatta, Vṛddhibrahṅna Cikitsā, 40-13.

छर्दिरोगे

चूर्णानि लिहयान्मधुनाऽभयानां हृद्यानि वा यानि विरेचनानि ।

मद्यैः पयोभिश्च युतानि युक्त्या नयन्त्यधो दोषमुदीर्ण मूर्ध्यम् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 20-21.

ज्वरे (सदाह) पथ्याऽवलेहम्

‘पथ्यां तैलघृत क्षौद्रे लिहयादाहविनाशिनीम् ।’

Bhāvaprakāśa, Madhya Khaṇḍa, Jvarādhikārah, 1-670.

अर्शरोगे सगुडाभया योगः

पित्तश्लेष्मप्रशमनी कण्डूकुक्षिरुजाऽपहा ।

गुदजात्राशयत्याशु भक्षिता सगुडाऽभया ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Arsādhikāra, 5-95, Vṛndamādhava, 5-16.

रसायनार्थं ऋतुहरीतकी

सिन्धूत्थशर्करा शुण्ठीकणामधुगुडै क्रमात् ।

वर्षाऽऽदिष्वभया प्राश्या रसायनगुणैषिणा ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Rasāyanādihikāra, 73-8.

विविध प्रयोजनेषु हरीतकी प्रयोगाः

विजया सर्वरोगेषु रोहिणी व्रणरोहिणी ।
प्रलेपे पूतना योज्या शोधनार्थेऽमृता हिता ॥
अक्षिरोगेऽभया शस्ता जीवन्ती सर्वरोगहृत् ।
चूर्णार्थे चेतकी शस्ता यथायुक्तं प्रयोजयेत् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Harītakyaḍi Varga, 11-12.

चेतकी (हरीतकी) जातयः

चेतकी द्विविधा प्रोक्ता श्वेता कृष्णा च वर्णतः ।
षडङ्गुलायता शुक्ला कृष्णा त्वेकाङ्गुला स्मृता ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Harītakyaḍi Varga, 13.

विजया (हरीतकी) प्राधान्यम्

सप्तनामापि जातीनां प्रधानां विजया स्मृता ।
सुखप्रयोगा सुलभा सर्वरोगेषु शस्यते ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Harītakyaḍi Varga, 18.

प्रभावात् विरेचनम्

क. काचिदास्त्वादमात्रेण काचिद्वन्धेन भेदयेत् ।
काचित्स्पर्शेन दृष्ट्याऽन्या चतुर्द्धा भेदयेच्छिवा ॥
ख. चेतकी पादपच्छायामुपसर्पन्ति वे नराः ।
भिद्यन्ते तत्क्षणादेव पशुपक्षिमृगादयः ॥
चेतकी तु धृता हस्ते यावत्तिष्ठति देहिनः ।
तावद्भिद्येत वेगैस्तु प्रभावान्नात्र संशयः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Harītakyaḍi Varga, 15-16.

सुखविरेचनार्थे प्रशस्तम्

नृपाणां सुकुमाराणां कृशानां भेषजद्विषम् ।
चेतकी परम शस्ता हिता सुखविरेचनी ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Harītakyaḍi Varga, 17.

अग्निमांद्य चिकित्सायां अभया प्रयोगः

क. विदह्यते यस्य च भुक्तमात्रं दहयेत हृत्कोष्ठगलञ्च यस्य ।

द्राक्षासितामाक्षिक सम्प्रयुक्तां लीढ्वाऽभयां वै स सुखं लभेत् ॥

Cakradatta, Agnimāndya Cikitsā, 6-75.

ख. हरीतकी धान्यतुषोदकसिद्धा सपिप्पली सैन्धवहिङ्गुसंयुक्ता ।
सोद्गारधूमं भृशमप्यजीर्णं विक्षिप्य सद्यो जनयेद् क्षुधाञ्च ॥

Cakradatta, Agnimāndya Cikitsā, 6-76.

सगुडकणाऽभया प्रयोगः

‘सगुडां पिप्पलीयुक्तामभयां घृतभर्जिताम् ।’

Cakradatta, Arśa Cikitsā, 5-16.

रक्तपित्ते अभया प्रयोगः

अभयामधुसंयुक्ता पाचनी दीपनीमता ।
श्लेष्माणं रक्तपित्तञ्च हन्ति शूलातिसारनुत् ॥
वासकस्वरसे पथ्या सप्तधा परिभाविता ।
कृष्णा वा मधुना लीढा रक्तपित्तं द्रुतं जयेत् ॥

Cakradatta, Raktapitta Cikitsā, 26-27.

अभयाशुण्ठी प्रयोगः

भवेदजीर्णं प्रति यस्य शङ्का स्निग्धस्य जन्तोर्बलिनोऽन्नकाले ।
पूर्वं सशुण्ठी मभयामशङ्कः स प्राश्य भुञ्जीत हितं हिताशी ॥

Cakradatta, Agnimāndya Cikitsā, 7-83.

अग्निमांद्ये पथ्या त्रिकम्

पथ्यापिप्पलिसंयुक्तं चूर्णं सौवर्चलं पिबेत् ।
मस्तुनोष्णोदकेनाथ बुद्ध्वा दोषगतिं भिषक् ॥
चतुर्विधमजीर्णञ्च मन्दानलमथारुचिम् ।
आध्मानं वातगुल्मञ्च शूलञ्चाशु नियच्छति ॥

Cakradatta, Agnimāndya Cikitsā, 6/81-82.

छर्दिरोगे हरीतकी चूर्णम्

हरीतकीनां चूर्णन्तु लिहयान्नान्माक्षिक संयुतम् ।
अधोभागी कृते छर्दिः क्षिप्रं निवर्त्तये ॥

Cakradatta, Chardi Cikitsā, 15-9.

मदात्यय चिकित्सायां मद-मूर्च्छां प्रतिकारार्थम्

पथ्या क्वाथेन संसिद्धं घृतं धात्रीरसेन वा ।

सर्पिं कल्याणकं वाऽपि मदनमूर्च्छाहरं पिबेत् ॥

Cakradatta, Madatyaya Cikitsā, 18-16.

आमवाते हरीतकी प्रयोगः

एरण्डतैलसंयुक्तां हरीतकीं भक्षयेन्नरो विधिवत् ।

आमानिलार्त्तियुक्तो गृध्रसिवृद्धयर्दितो नित्यम् ॥

Cakradatta, Āmavāta Cikitsa, 25-11.

सर्वशूल शमनाय अभया प्रयोगः

मूत्रान्तः पाचितां शुष्कां लौहचूर्णसमन्वितान् ।

सगुडाभयामद्यात् सर्वशूलशान्तये ॥

Cakradatta, Śūlacikitsā, 26-81.

उदावर्त्त चिकित्सायां हरीतकी योगाः

हरीतक्यादि चूर्णम्, इत्यादयः ।

Cakradatta, Udāvarta Cikitsā, 28-7.

ग्रन्थिरोगे हरीतकी चूर्णम्-द्राक्षारसेन

कुष्ठघ्नाभ्यान्तर प्रयोगेषु गोमूत्रपक्व हरीतकी ।

द्राक्षारसेन शोथपाण्ड्वामयहरी गुल्ममेहकफापहा ।

कच्छूपामाहरी चैव पथ्या गोमूत्रसाधिता ॥

Cakradatta, 50-46.

नखगत चिप्पोपचारार्थं अभया लेपः

स्वरसेन हरिद्रायाः पात्रे कृष्णायसेऽभयाम् ।

घृष्ट्वा तज्जेन कल्केन लिम्पेक्षिप्यं पुनः पुनः ॥

Cakradatta, Kṣudraroga, Cikitsā, 55-20.

वातकफविकारे

‘अभयाऽनिलकफे ।’

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Uttara, 40-48.

ग्रहणीरोगे

तक्रेण वल्कलं पीतं स्निग्धं पथ्यातरुद्भवम् ।

ग्रहणीं नाशयेत् क्षिप्रमामरक्ताश्रितं ध्रुवम् ॥

Baṅgasena, Grahani, 168.

अर्शांसि

गोमूत्राव्युषितं दद्यात् सगुडां वा हरीतकीम् ।

हरीतकीं तक्रयुतं त्रिफलां वा प्रयोजयेत् ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 14-67.

सगुडां पिप्पलीयुक्तां घृतभृष्टां हरीतकीम् ।

त्रिवृद्धन्तीयुतां वापि भक्षयेदानुलोमिकीम् ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 14-119.

‘ब्रह्मचारी गोमूत्र द्रोणसिद्धं वा हरीतकीशतं प्रातर्यथाबलं क्षौद्रेण ।’

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 6-13.

‘सगुडां मभयां वापि प्राशयेत् पौर्वभक्तिकीम् ।’

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 14-65.

HIJJALA

Botanical Name : *Barringtonia acutangula* Gaertn.

Family : Myrtaceae

Classical name : Hijjala

Sanskrit Names

Hijjala, Samudraphala, Nicula, Vijula, Nadikānta-nadīja, Dirghapatraka, Ambuja.

Regional Names

Samudraphala (Hind., Guj.), Hijjal (Beng.), Satphal, Samudraphala (Mar.), Samudrapallam (Tam.), Kanami (Tel.).

Description

A glabrous tree 7.5-15 meters high; young branches slender, pale grey.

Leaves 6.3 by 3-2.8 cm., obovate-oblong or elliptic-cuneate, the apex rounded or subacute, the margins minutely denticulate or crenulate, base much narrowed into the petiole, main nerves 10-13 pairs, spreading; petioles 3-6 mm. long.

Flowers fragrant, dark scarlet, 8-13 mm. across in slender pendulous many-flowered racemes, 15-38 cm. long; pedicels 1.5-3 mm. long; bracteoles linear-lanceolate, as long as the lobes, lobes 4, oblong, rounded, ciliolate. Petals 5 mm. long. Filaments 1.9 cm. long.

Fruit 3.2-3.8 by 1.3-2 cm., bluntly quadrangular, broadest in the middle, slightly narrowed towards and truncate at each end, crowned by the small persistent calyx.

Flowering and Fruiting Season

Summer season.

Distribution

It is found throughout India; Madhya Bharat (Madhya Pradesh), West Bengal, Southern India, Himalayan, Trans-yamuna and sea-coastal regions.

Chemical Composition

Fruits contain glucoside, saponin, barrigtonin, starch, protein, cellulose, fat and alkaline salts. They also have an active principle like saponin which begins saponification in water.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Tikta, Kaṭu, Madhura.
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa, Tīkṣṇa.
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphapittasamsodhaka, Vātaśāmakā.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Vāmaka-vamanopaga Lekhana-śirovircana-vedanāsthāpana Vāmaka-recana (Phala-fruit) Kṛmighna, Grahi (patra-leaves) Raktaśodhaka, Kaphaniḥsāraka Mūtrala, Garbhāśayasaṅkocaka Kuṣṭhaghna Jvaraghna-nīyatakālikajavara- Prativandhaka (mūla-roots) Plihāvṛddhahara, Viśahara.
Roga	: Kaphaja roga (Vamanārtha) Pittaja roga (recanārtha) Kaphapaittika roga (Samśodhanārtha) Vātaroga (śamanārtha) Śīroroga (nasyārtha)

Netraroga (aṅjanārtha)
 Udararoga, Kṛmiroga, Raktavikāra
 Kāsa-śvāsa, Mutrakṛcchra-pūyameha
 Kaṣṭhāprasava-Rajorodha
 Jvara-viṣamaj vara-Jīrṇajvara
 Plīhāvṛdhi, Viṣāmaya, Kuṣṭha
 Galaganda, Netrasrāva
 Graha-bhūtavādha.

Therapeutic Uses

The fruit is astringent, tonic, emetic and expectorant. The root is an aperient, emetic and a good substitute for Cinchona. It is topically applied to colds.

The bark is astringent. It is used in diarrhoea and blemorrhoea. It is given in malaria as a febrifuge. The wood is given in menorrhagia, as wood is haemostatic.

The seeds are given with milk to children having enlarged abdomen; the seeds powder in doses of 2-3 grains may be given to children for this purpose. The seeds is dose of 2-5 grains are given in children for emetic purpose with fresh purpose; it helps as an expectorant against mucous to be expelled from pharynx. It is applied to chest of children in acute bronchial catarrh. The paste is also applied locally in colic and flatulence. The pulverized seeds are used as a snuff in headache.

Parts Used : Fruits, Roots, Leaves.

Dose

Fruit powder 3-6 gms. (for emesis), 10-20 grains (other therapeusis), Leaves juice 5-10 gms., Roots 10-20 grains.

Groups (gaṇa)

Vamanopaga, Virecana (Caraka Saṁhitā), Urdhva-bhāgahara, (Suśruta Saṁhitā).

HIJJALA (हिज्जल)

इज्जलो-हिज्जलश्चापि निचुलश्चाम्बुजस्तथा ।

जलवेतसद्वेद्यो हिज्जलोऽयं विषापहः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Guḍūcyādi Varga, 138.

हिज्जल-हिज्जुल

हिज्जलोऽथ नदीकान्तो जलजो दीर्घपत्रकः ।
 नदीजो निचुलो रक्तः कार्मुकःकथितश्च सः ॥
 हिज्जलः कटुरुष्णश्च पवित्रो भूतनाशनः ।
 वातामयहरो नाना-ग्रहञ्चार दोषजित् ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Prabhadrādi Varga, 154-155.

समुद्रफलम्

समुद्रनाम प्रथमं पश्चात् फलमुदाहरेत् ।
 समुद्रफलमित्यादि नाम वाच्यं भिषगवरैः ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Pippalyādi Varga, 216-217.

गुणाः

फलं समुद्रस्य कटूष्णकारि वातापहं भूतनिरोधकारि ।
 त्रिदोषदावानलदोषहारि कफामय भ्रान्तिविरोधकारि ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Pippalyādi Varga, 216-217.

जलेन घृष्ट्वा पीतं चेत् कृमिनाशकरं परम् ।
 तदेव चांजितं नेत्रे कामला नाशयेद् ध्रुवम् ॥

Nighaṅṭu, Ratnākara.

‘.....निचुलानि च । पक्वाशयगते दोषे विरेकार्थं प्रयोजयेत् ।’

Caraka Samhitā, Sūtra. 2.

‘हिज्जलः कफवातघ्नो रेचनो वामकस्था ।’

Suśruta Samhitā, Sūtra. 39.

गलगण्डे

‘निचुलः शिशुबीजानि..... ।
 प्रदेहोवातगण्डेषु सुखोष्णः सम्प्रदीयते ॥’

Śārṅgadhara Samhitā, 3-11-97.

चक्षुस्त्रावे

हिज्जलस्य फलं घृष्ट्वा पानीये नित्यमञ्जनम् ।
 चक्षुःस्त्रावे प्रशान्त्यर्थं कार्यमेतन्महौषधम् ॥

Baṅgasena, Śārṅgadhara Samhitā, 3-13-102.

आमातिसारे

‘दलोत्थः स्वरसः पेयोहिज्जलस्य समाक्षिकः ।

जयत्याममतीसारम्..... ॥'

Cakradatta, Atisāra, C.kitsā, Vṛndamādhava, 3-35.

A. HIMSRA B. VYĀGHRANAKHĪ

Botanical Name

Capparis sepiaria Linn.
Capparis zeylanica Linn.
Capparis horrida Linn. f.

Family : Capparidaceae

Classical Name

Himsrā-Ḡḍhranakhī, Vyāghranakhī.

Sanskrit Names

A. Himsrā, Ḡḍhranakhī, Ahimsra.
B. Vyāghranakhī, Vyāghranakha, Gāndhārī.

Regional Names

Kanthari, Heens (Hindi.), Kaliakara (Bengla),
Kanthar (Marathi), Hingarna (Punj.), karunjurai (Tamil),
Nallavuppi (Telugu).

Description

A. *Capparis sepiaria* Linn. : Himsrā

A much-branched, woody climber; young shoots more or less pubescent. Leaves 2-4 by 1.2-2.2 cm., oblong-elliptic or obovate, obtuse, emarginate, rarely acute; the younger more or less pubescent, the older glabrous; petioles 2.5-4 mm. long, pubescent; stipules spines hooked.

Flowers white, 6-9 mm., diam., dense, short-peduncled or sessile umbels; pedicels 1.2-2 cm., long, filiform. Gynophore 6-9 mm. long, filiform. Ovary ovoid, pointed glabrous or very minutely pubescent.

Fruit 6-9 mm. diam., globose, smooth, black when ripe.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

March-April. Spring to Summer seasons and onwards.

Distribution

It is found in dry parts of India.

B. *Capparis zeylanica* Linn. : *Gr̥dhranakhī*

A climbing shrub; branches terete; young parts clothed with rufous tomentum.

Leaves 2.3-7.5 by 1.85 cm., elliptic-oblong, obtuse, acute or retuse, with a long, stout mucro, narrowed at the base, reticulately veined, glabrous and shining above; petioles 6 mm. long, stipules spines hooked.

Flowers supra-axillary, solitary or 2-3, one above the other in a vertical line, the upper the longest. Sepals 9 mm. long, densely rufous-pubescent outside, very concave. Petals twice as long as the sepals, densely villous. Gynophore 3.2 cm. long. Ovary ellipsoid, apiculate.

Fruit subglobose, 3.2 cm. diam., on a greatly thickened stalk, obtusely 4-angled, red-brown. Seeds many.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

November-March. Autumn to spring seasons and onwards.

Distribution

It is found throughout the greater part of India.

Chemical Composition

Root-bark, stem, leaves and flowers of *Capparis sepiaria* Linn. contain alkaloids, glycosides, carbohydrates, anthocyanins, flavonoids and sterds. In the unsaponifiable matter of leaves, the presence of B-sitosterol; betulin and two new terpenoid alcohols are reported.

Another plant *Capparis zeylanica* Linn. contains an alkaloid, a phytosterol, a mucilaginous substance and water-soluble acid.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṭu, Tikta.
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa.
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphavātaśāma

Action and properties

Karma	: Śothahara, Vedanāsthāpana Rucivardhaka-dīpana, Hṛdayottejaka Raktaśodhaka, Jvaraghna.
Roga	: Śoṭha-vedanāyukta vikāra, Ślīpada Āmavāta, Vātavyādhi, Agnimāndya Hṛddourbalya, Raktavikāra, Jvara.

Therapeutic Uses

The roots of *Capparis zeylanica* Linn. are bitter, cooling and cholagogue and reduce kapha. Fruits are sweet and check tridoṣa. The bitter roots checks kapha and vāta in other opinion.

The root-bark is sedative, stomachic and antihidrotic. The leaves are used as a counter-irritant and as a cataplasm in boils, swellings and piles. The bark, along the native spirit (in Chota Nagpur) is stated to be given in cholera.

The plant *Capparis sepiaria* Linn. has a hot sharp taste; it is tonic, stomachic and it improves appetite; it checks vāta and kapha. It is useful to cure fever, blood troubles, tumours, inflammations, diseases of the muscles. The ground root is useful as errhine for cure in snake-bite (specific variety).

Parts used : Roots

Dose : Powder 1-2 gms.

A. HIMSRĀ (हिंस्त्रा)

नाडीव्रणे हिंस्त्राद्य तैलम्

हिंस्त्रां हरिद्रां कटुकां बलाञ्च गोजिह्विकाञ्चापिसबिल्वमूलाम् ।
संहृत्य तैलं विपचेद् व्रणस्य संशोधनं पूरणरोपणञ्च ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Nāḍīvraṇādhikāra, 49-10.

स्नायुक रोगे

अहिंस्त्रामूलकल्केन तोयपिष्टेन यत्नतः ।
लेपसम्बन्धनात्तन्तुभिनिःसरेञ्चैव संशयः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Snāyukarogādhikāra, 57-11.

हिक्काशवासे हिंस्त्राऽऽद्यघृतम्

Cakradatta, Hikkaśvāsa Cikitsā, 12/19-20.

वातज शोफे

‘अहिंस्त्रा चैव रास्त्रा च प्रलेपो वातशोथजित् ।’

Vṛndamādhava, 44-3.

वातिकयोनिव्यापदे

हिंस्त्राकल्कं तु वातहरं कोष्णामभ्यज्य धारयेत् ।

पञ्चवल्कलस्य पित्तापर्ता श्यामादीनां कफातुरा ॥

Caraka Saṃhitā, Cikitsā, 30-62.

B. VYĀGHRANAKHĪ (व्याघ्रनखी)

गान्धारी कटुतिकोष्णा कफवात निकृन्तनी ।

शोफघ्नी दीपनी रुच्या रक्तग्रन्थिरुजापहा ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu.

प्रदरे व्याघ्रनखीमूल कटिबन्धनम्

शुचिस्थाने व्याघ्रनख्या मूलमुत्तरदिग्भवम् ।

नीतमुत्तरफल्गुन्यां कटिबद्धं हरेदसृक् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Strīrogādhikāra, 68-12.

HINGU

Botanical Names

Ferula narthex Boiss.

Ferula foetida Regel.

Narthex asafoetida Fule.

Family : Apiaceae

Classical Name : Hingu

Sanskrit Names

Hingu, Jatuka, Bahlika, Rāmaṭha, Sahasravedhi.

Regional Names

Hing (Hind.), Hing (Punj.), Hing (Mar.), Hing, Bagharani (Guj.), Peruangayam (Tam.), Ingu (Tal.), Yang

(Can.), Angajad, Asafoetida (Eng.). Angoj (Pers.), Hietitil, Hillatil (Arabic).

Description

A tall perennial plant, having carrot-shaped rhizome
Stems 1.5-2.4 meters.

Leaves pubescent, at least when young; lower leaves 30-60 cm., ovate, cauline sheaths large, from which spring simple or scarcely compound umbels.

Secondary and tertiary primose decurrent, entire or very irregularly crenate-serrate. Terminal united large, compound leafless. Ovary glabrous.

Fruit 8 by 5 mm. Vitae manifest, broad, 1 (rarely 1-2) in the dorsal furrows, usually occupying by the whole furrow, and as long as the carpel; commissural usually 4, 2 slender sometimes added.

Kinds and Varieties

Ferula jaeschkeana Vatke. Occurring in Kashmir and Himachal Pradesh in India.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Autumn/Spring and other seasons.

Distribution

Persia and Afghanistan. It is found in Kashmir in India. Gum-resin collected during summers.

The drug material (commercial) is gum-resin which consists of tears or flat pieces yellowish in colour, fractures purely white, which on exposure becomes bright pink and finally dirty yellow; the asafoetida has an intense alliaceous like smell and bitter taste and acrid.

Chemical Composition

Gum-resin contains an essential oil, ferulic acid, sulphur compound. The essential oil contains kinene, organic disulphide and umbelliferone. The oleo-resin gum yields oil 6 to 17 percent which contains allyl persulphide; its oil is responsible for specific intense odour. Gum contains asaresinotannol 65 percent gum resin substance 25 percent, alkalines and salts 3-4 percent; and acetic acid, malic and valerianic acid, besides ferulic acid.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṭu
Guṇa	: Laghu, Snigdha, Tīkṣṇa, Sara
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphavātaśāmaka, Pittavardhaka.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Sanjñasthāpana Vedanāsthāpana-Uttejaka- Ākṣepahara Dipana-pācana-rocana Anulomana-śūlapraśamana Kṛmighna, Hṛdya Jantughna-Kaphaniḥsāraka-śvāsahara Mūtrajanana, Bājīkaraṇa Ārtavajanana, Kaṭupoustika-Balya Jvaraghna-Śītapraśamana, Cakṣuṣya Kaphaniḥsāraka (Chedana)- śvāsahara.
--------------	---

Roga	: Udaravikāra-śūla-ādhmāna-ānāha Agnimāndya-gulma-vibandha- Udāvarta, Kṛmiroga Vātajanya hṛdroga-hṛddrava- hṛcchūla, Kāsa-jīrṇa Kāsa- kukkurakāsa Śvāsa-phuphusaśoṭha Vātavikāra-pakṣāghāta-ardita Sanjñānāśa-mūrchā Vātavyādhi-gṛdhrasī Ākṣepaka-apatantraka Vātika mūtrāghāta-Bastīśūla Rajaḥkṛcchra-garbhaśayāśuddhi Klaibya, Kaṇḍū, Viṣamajvara- śītajvara-sannipātajvara, Kṛmidanta Kāmalā.
-------------	---

Therapeutic Uses

The gum is bitter, hot and pungent; it is digestible, stomachic, laxative, analgesic, anthelmintic and carminative.

It increases appetite; and it checks vitiation or increasement of kapha and vāta. It is prescribed to cure dyspepsia and good remedy in diseases of the heart; it is used in abdominal tumours, ascites, jaundice, caries of the teeth. It may increase biliousness (in excess use) due to nature of properties.

The gum-resin is a strong antispasmodic, expectorant and anthelmintic, it is nervine stimulant and a feeble laxative. It is useful in hysteria and hysterical affections, it is variously used in spasmodic affections, such as asthma, whooping cough, angina pectoris, flatulent colic and allied ailments. It is effective in pneumonia and bronchitis in children.

The gum-resin is used as a condiment being a common aromatic spice of resinous category. It is quite efficacious in flatulent colic. The gum-resin is locally applied to ringworm as a paste.

It is prescribed in treatment of snake-bite. The gum-resin is boiled in coconut milk and applied to snake-bite lesion. Edible-frying condiments culinary-spice.

Parts Used : Oleo-gum resin.

Dose : 2-8 grains Edible-spice.

Formulations (yoga)

Hiṅgvādi vaṭī, Hiṅgvāṣṭaka cūrṇa, Hiṅgukarpūra, Vatikā, Rajaḥpravartanī Vaṭī.

Groups

Sanjñāsthāpana, Dipaniya, Kaṭukaskandha (Caraka Saṁhitā), Pippalyādi, Uṣakādi (Suśruta Saṁhitā).

HINGU (हिङ्गु (हिङ्गु/हिङ्गु)

हिङ्गूष्णं तिक्तकटुकं रसे पाके च दीपनम् ॥

लघु वातकफानाहशूलगुल्माग्निमान्द्यजित् ।

पाचनं कृमाहिद्रोगकासश्वासोदरार्तिनुत् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 1210-1211.

हिङ्गूष्णं पाचनं बल्यं तीक्ष्णं वातबलासनुत् ।

शूलगुल्मोदरानाहकृमिघ्न पित्तवर्द्धनम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Harīṭakyādi Varga, 100.

हृद्यं हिङ्गु कटूष्णं च क्रिमिवातकफापहम् ।
विबन्धाध्मानशूलघ्नं चक्षुष्यं गुल्मनाशनम् ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Pippalyādi Varga, 74.

‘हिङ्गुनिर्यासश्छेदनीय दीपनीयानुलोमिकवातकफशमनानां श्रेष्ठः ।’

Caraka Saṁhitā, Sutra. 25.

वातश्लेष्मविबन्धघ्नं कटूष्णं दीपनं लघु ।
हिङ्गु शूलप्रशमनं विद्यात् पाचनं रोचकम् ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā.

हिङ्गवादि तैलम्

हिङ्गुतुम्बरु शुण्ठीभिस्तैलं तु सार्षपं पचेत् ॥
एतद्धि पूरणं श्रेष्ठं कर्णशूलनिवारणम् ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 26-222/223, Cakradatta, 6-2.

अग्निमांद्य चिकित्सायाम्

हिङ्गवष्टक चूर्णम् ।

कृमिदन्ते

‘हिङ्गु सोष्णं तु मतिमान् कृमिदन्तेषु प्रदापयेत् ।’

Cakradatta.

हिङ्गुना द्रोणपुष्पा वा रसेनाश्रित लोचनः ।
अचिरात् कामला व्याधि नरो विजयते ध्रुवम् ॥

Śoḍhala Nighaṅṭu.

आमवाते हिङ्गवादि चूर्णम्

Cakradatta, Āmavāta Cikitsā, 25-24.

उदावर्ते हिङ्गवादि फलवर्त्ति

हिङ्गुमाक्षिक सिन्धूत्थेःपिष्टैर्वर्त्ति विनिर्मिताम् ।
घृताभ्यक्तां गुदे न्यस्वेदुदावर्त्ति विनाशिनीम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Udāvartādhikāra, 31-37; Cakradatta, 28-12.

उदावर्ते हिङ्गवादि चूर्णम्

Bhāvaprakāśa, Udāvartādhikāra, 32/28-30.

शूल चिकित्सायां हिङ्गु योगाः

हिङ्गवष्टक चूर्णम्

हिङ्वादि वटी
हिङ्वादि चूर्णम्

Cakradatta, Śūla Cikitsā, 26/12, 18, 5.

प्लीहाजन्यशूले हिङ्वादि चूर्णम्

Cakradatta, 26-72.

उदावर्त चिकित्सायां हिङ्गु योगाः

हिङ्गुवाग्रगन्धादि चूर्णम्

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 26-22.

हिङ्वादि चूर्णम् इत्यादयः ।

Cakradatta, 28-8.

वातव्याधौ

हिङ्वादि गुटिका ।

Suśruta Samhitā, Cikitsā, 5-28.

हृद्रोग (हृच्छूल) चिकित्सायां हिङ्वादि चूर्णम्

Cakradatta, Hṛdroga Cikitsā, 31-37.

विषमज्वरे-चातुर्थक ज्वरे

‘चातुर्थको नश्यति रामठस्य घृतेन जीर्णेनयुतस्य नस्यम् ।’

Vaidya Jivana, 1-53.

गुल्मे

हिङ्गुवादि चूर्णम्, हिङ्गुवादि गुटिका च ।

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 5-79/84.

हिङ्गुत्रिगुण तैलम् ।

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Cikitsā, 14-32.

दन्तरोगे-क्रिमिदन्तेषु

‘हिङ्गु सोष्णं तु मतिमान् क्रिमिदन्ते प्रदापयेत् ।’

Vṛndamādhava, 58-37.

उन्मादे

‘हिङ्गुना हिङ्गुपर्ण्या च सकायस्थावयःस्थवा ।

सिद्धं सर्पिहितं तद्वद् वयःस्थाहिङ्गुचोरकैः ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 9-57.

मदात्यये

तद्वत् सौवर्चलं दद्याद् युक्तं मद्याम्ल कांजिकै ।
हिङ्गुषणसमायुक्तं यावत् संज्ञा प्रबोधनम् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Sūtra, 24-49.

शूले

हिङ्गुपुष्करमूलाभं हिङ्गुसौवर्चलः वा ।
विश्वैरण्डपत्रक्वाथः पीतः शूलनिवारणः ॥
तद्वद् रुबयवक्वाथो हिङ्गुसौवर्चलान्वितः ।

Vṛndamādhava, 26-8/9.

IKṢU

Botanical Name : Saccharum officinarum Linn.

Family : Poaceae

Classical Name : Ikṣu

Sanskrit Names

Ikṣu, Dīrghacchada, Bhūrirasa, Asipatra, Madhutṛṇa,
Gudamūla.

Regional Names

Ikha, Ganna (Hi.), Iksu khak (Beng.), Unsa (Mar.),
Sheradi (Guj.), Karumbu (Tam.), Cheruku (Tel.),
Kasabussakkar (Arab.), Naishkar (Pers.); Sugar-Cane (Eng.).

Description

Tall herb; stems up to 6 meters high, many-noded, glabrous or pubescent below the panicle, more or less, coated with wax below the nodes.

Leaf-sheaths tight, terete, smooth, glabrous except when young, ligules very short, membranous, ciliate; blades linear-lanceolate, up to 1.6 meters long and over 5 cm. broad, green above, glaucous below, more or less scabrid along the margins, midrib very stout, rounded on the back, more or less flat above.

Panicles pyramidal, up to 1 meter long, dense silvery; primary rachis glabrous except on the pubescent nodes;

more or less silky; primary branches verticillate or semi-verticillate, very slender, glabrous or hairy.

Racemes up to 10 cm. long, very fragile; joints and pedicels filiform, more or less ciliate or glabrous, the joints variable in length, the pedicels much shorter. Spikelets lanceolate, from towards the base, other wise subhyline. The lower acute, 2-nerved to sub-4 nerved glabrous, the upper very similar, 1-3 nerved, glabrous or ciliate.

Lower floral glume oblong, acute or subacute, hyaline, nerveless, ciliate, about 3.3 mm. long, upper floral glume subacute, ciliate as long as the lower or 0. Pale, if present, very minute, obovate, ciliate, codicules broad, cuneate, sparingly ciliolate from the top. Stigmas purplish, 2.1 mm. long.

Grain oblong, attenuated upwards, subterete, flesh-coloured; embryo 1.6 the length of the grain.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Farming seasons. Winter to spring seasons.

Distribution

It is grown everywhere in India under large cultivation of sugarcane on commercial scale.

Chemical Composition

It contains sugar, water, mucilage, resin, fat, albumin, guanin and calcium oxalate.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Madhura
Gūṇa	: Guru, Snigdha.
Vīrya	: Śīta
Vipāka	: madhura
Doṣakarma	: Vātapittaśāmaka, kaphavardhaka.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Mūtrala Santarpana-dāha praśamana-tṛṣāhara Raktapittaśāmaka-Hṛdya Balya-Bṛñhaṇa, Kṣayanāśaka Vṛṣya, Stanyajanana
-------	--

Śleṣmaniḥsāraka, Sāraka
Kṛmijanana (Krimikara).

Roga : Mūtrakṛcchra-mūtravikāra-vṛkkaroga
Śukradourbalya-stanyakṣaya,
Dourbalya-Kṛṣatā, Kāsa-śvāsa,
Kāmalā, Vibandha, Vātapaittikaroga.

Therapeutic uses

The sugar-cane is sweet, oleaginous, indigestible, diuretic, tonic, cooling, aphrodisiac; anaemia, erysipelas. It causes kapha, ulcer and inflammation. The sugar is sweet, oleaginous, aphrodisiac, diuretic and causes kapha, intestinal worms and also intoxication. The sugar-cane is laxative, fattening and it purifies the blood; it is good for the lungs and jaundice. The roots are considered cooling and a good diuretic; and the stem is a good bechic.

The sugar is used in medicine as a valuable item as it is considered a nutritous, pectoral and anthelmintic. Sugar is detergent and emollient; it is also attenuant and pectoral. It is also have virtues in calculous affections being a diuretic and other properties.

The sugar is considered heavy in properties; and it is tonic and aperient; it is useful in heating, delirium and disorders of the bile and wind. The sugar-cane enters into composition of remedies used for the treatment of ulcers of the skin and mucous membrane. A decoction of the stem is given in diarrhoea of childhood.

In cases of poisoning by copper, arsenic or corrosive sumblimates, the sugar has been found to be as antidote.

Parts used

Juice (stem), Roots, Sugar and other products.

Dose

Juice 24-48 gms., Roots decoction 50-100 gms.

Formulations (yoga)

Tṛṇapañcamūla Kvātha.

Group (gaṇa)

Tṛṇapañcamūla (Suśruta Saṁhitā).

IKṢU (इक्षु)

‘इक्षवो मधुरा मधुरविपाका गुरवः शीताः स्निग्धा बल्या
वृष्या मूत्रला रक्तपित्तप्रशमनाः कृमिकराश्चेति ।’

Suśruta Samhitā, Sutra. 45.

‘मत्स्यण्डिका-खण्ड-शर्करा विमलजाता उत्तरोत्तरं शीताः
स्निग्धा गुरुतरा मधुरतरा वृष्या रक्तपित्तप्रशमनास्तृष्णा प्रशमनाश्च ।’

Suśruta Samhitā, Sutra. 45.

- क. इक्षुर्दधिच्छदः प्रोक्तस्तथा भूरिरसोऽपि च ।
गुडमूलोऽसिपत्रश्च तथा मधुगुणा स्मृता ॥
- ख. इक्षवो रक्तपित्तघ्ना बल्या वृष्याः कफप्रदा ।
स्वादुपाकरसाः स्निग्धा गुरवो मूत्रला हिमाः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Ikṣu Varga, 1-2.

इक्षुभेदाः

- पौण्ड्रको भीरुकश्चापि वंशकः शतपोरकः ।
कान्तारतापसेक्षुश्च काण्डेक्षुः सूचिपत्रकः ॥
नैपालो दीर्घपत्रश्च नीलपोरऽथ कोशकृत् ।
मनोगुप्ता च इत्येता जातयस्तत्र कीर्तितः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Ikṣu Varga, 3-4.

- पौण्ड्रकः अपरः पौण्ड्रकः पौण्ड्रो रसालः सुकुमारकः ।
करङ्कशालिः अन्य करङ्कशालि स्यादिक्षुयोगीक्षुवालिका ।
नैपालः इक्षुगन्धेक्षुरो ज्ञेयो नैपालः कोकिलाक्षकः ।
वांशिकः शतपर्वा ह्रस्वपर्वा वांशिको नीलयष्टिका ।
कान्तारः कान्तारो दीर्घपर्वा स्यात्तेषां मूलं च मोरटम् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 145-147.

इक्षु जातयः तेषां गुणाः

श्वेत पौण्ड्रक-भीरकेक्षु

- कफपित्तप्रशमनो मधुरो रसपाकयोः ।
सुशीले बृंहणी बल्यः पौण्ड्रको भीरुकस्तथा ॥

कोशकारेक्षुः

- कोशकारो गुरुः शीतो रक्तपित्त क्षयापहः ।

कान्तारेक्षुः

कान्तारेक्षुर्गुरुर्वृष्यः श्लेष्मलो बृंहणः सरः ।

वंशकेक्षुः

दीर्घपोरः सुकठिनः सक्षारो वंशकः स्मृतः ।

शतपोरकेक्षुः

शतपर्वा भवेत्किञ्चित्तोशकारगुणान्वितः ।

विशेषात्किञ्चिदुष्णश्च सक्षारः पवनापहः ॥

तापतैक्षुः

तापसेक्षुर्भवेन्मृद्धी मधुरा श्लेष्मकोपनी ।

तर्पणी रुचिकृच्चापि वृष्या च बलकारिणी ॥

काण्डेक्षुः

एवं गुणैस्तु काण्डेक्षुः स तु वातप्रकोपणः ।

सूचीपत्रः नीलपोर-नैपाल-दीर्घपत्रकः

सूचीपत्रो नीलपोरो नैपालो दीर्घपत्रकः ।

वातलाः कफपित्तघ्नाः सकषाया विदाहिनः ।

मनोगुमेक्षुः

मनोगुप्ता वातहरी तृष्णाऽऽमय विनाशिनी ।

सुशीता मधुराऽतीव रक्तपित्तप्रणाशिनी ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Ikṣu Varga, 5-13.

बाल-तरुण-वृद्धेक्षु

बालः इक्षुः कफं कुर्याद्मेदोमेहकरश्च सः ।

युवा तु वातहत् स्वादुरीषत्तीक्ष्णश्च पित्तनुत् ॥

रक्तपित्तहरो वृद्धः वातहद् बलवीर्यं कृत् ।

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Ikṣu Varga, 14.

इक्षोरङ्गभेदेन गुणाः

मूले तु मधुरोऽत्यर्थन्मध्येऽपि मधुरः स्मृतः ।

अग्रे ग्रन्थिषु विज्ञेय इक्षुः पटुरसोजनैः ॥

चूषितेक्षु गुणाः

दन्तनिष्पीडितस्वेक्षो रसः पित्तास्रनाशनः ।

शर्करासमवीर्यः स्यादविदाही कफप्रदः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Ikṣu Varga, 15-16,

दन्तनिष्पीडितेक्षोः गुणाः

वृष्यो रक्तास्रपित्तश्रमशमन पटुः शीतलः श्लेष्मादोऽल्पः
स्निग्धो हृद्यश्चरुच्यो रुचयति च मुदं मूत्रशुद्धिं विधत्ते ।
कान्तिं देहस्य दत्ते वलमतिं कुरुते बृंहणं तृप्तिदायी
दन्तैर्निष्पीड्य काण्डं मृदुयतिरसितो मोहनयेक्षु दण्डः ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Pānīyādi Varga, 96.

पर्युषितेक्षु रस गुणाः

रसः पर्युषितो नेष्टो ह्यम्लो वातापहो गुरुः ।
कफपित्तकरः शोषी भेदनश्चातिमूत्रलः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Ikṣu Varga, 19.

पीयूषोपमितं त्रिदोषशमनं स्याद्दन्तनिष्पीडितं
तद्वचेद् गृहयन्त्रजं तदपरं श्लेष्मानिलघ्नं क्रियत् ।
एतद्वातहरन्तु वातजननं जाद्यप्रतिश्यायदं
प्रोक्तं पर्युषितं कफानिलकरं पानीयभित्तक्षद्भवम् ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Pānīyādi Varga, 97.

पक्वैक्षुरस गुणाः

पक्वो रसे गुरुः स्निग्धः सुतीक्ष्णः कफवातनुत् ।
गुल्मानाह प्रशमनः किञ्चित्पित्तकरः स्मृतः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Ikṣu Varga, 19.

इक्षुदण्डमूलमध्याग्रेषु रस विशेषाः

मूलादूर्द्धन्तु मधुरा मध्ये ऽतिमधुरास्तथा ।
इक्षवस्तेऽग्रभागेषु क्रमाल्लवणनीरसाः ॥

दिनस्य समय विशेषे भुक्तेक्षु गुणाः

अभुक्ते पित्तहाश्चैते भुक्ते वातप्रकोपणाः ।
भुक्तमध्ये गुरुतरा इतीक्षूणां गुणास्त्रयः ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Pānīyādi Varga, 94-95.

साधारण इक्षुः

इक्षुः कर्कटको वंशः कान्तारः सुकुमारकः ।
असिपत्रो मधुतृणो वृष्यो गुडतृणो नव ॥

पञ्चविधेक्षुभेदाः

इक्षवः पञ्चधा प्रोक्ता नानावर्णगुणान्विताः ।

सितः पुण्ड्रः करङ्गेशुः कृष्णो रक्तञ्च ते क्रमात् ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Pānīyādi Varga, 81-82.

इक्षुमूलम्

इक्षुमूलं त्विक्षुनेत्रं तच्च मोरटजं तथा ।

वंशनेत्रं वंशमूलं मोरटं वंशपूरकम् ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Pānīyādi Varga, 93.

यावनालशर रस गुणाः

मधुरं लवणक्षारं स्निग्धं सोष्णं रुचिप्रदम् ।

वृष्यं वातकफघ्नं च यावनाल शरात् रसम् ॥

पक्वेषु रस गुणाः

पक्वेषुरसः स्निग्धः स्यात् कफवातनाशनोऽतिगुरुः ।

अतिपाकेन विदाहं तनुते पित्तास्रदोषशोषांश्च ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Pānīyādi Varga, 98-99.

इक्षुरसनिर्मितपदार्थगुणाः

इक्षोर्विकारास्तृड्दाहमूर्च्छा पित्तास्रनाशनः ।

गुरुवो मधुरा बल्याः स्निग्धा वातहराः सराः ॥

वृष्या मोहहराः शीता बृंहणा विषहारिणः ।

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Ikṣu Varga, 20.

इक्षुविकाराः

मत्स्यण्डिका तु मीनाण्डी वल्लकः पलिकः सिता ।

अन्या खण्डसिता खण्डशर्करा पिण्डशर्करा ॥

अन्या श्वेता त्वाहिच्छत्रा सिकता च सितोपला ।

इक्षो रसस्य समलत्र्यांशद्भिन्नमलामला ॥

विकाराः फाणितगुडमत्स्याण्डी खण्डशर्करा ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 151-153.

अ.	मत्स्यण्डी	फाणितम्
	खण्डम्	गुड
	सितोपला	शर्करा
	मधुखण्डम्	मधुकफाणितम्
		पुष्पासिता

- ब. तवराज शर्करा
 मधुशर्करा
 गुडशर्करा
 पौण्ड्रजा शर्करा
 यास शर्करा
 यावनाली शर्करा

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Pānīyādi Varga, 100-113.
Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 153-172.
Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Ikṣu Varga, 21-33.

सर्वशोथे गुडादिवटिका

Bhāvaprakāśa, Śothādhikāra, 42-35.

शोथरोगे चिकित्सायां विविध गुडप्रयोगाः

गुडाद्रकं वा गुडनागरं वा गुडाभयां वा गुडपिप्पली वा ।
 कर्षाभिवृद्ध्या त्रिपलप्रमाणं खादेन्नरः पक्षमथापि मासम् ॥
 शोथप्रतिशयायगलास्यरोगान्सश्वासकासारुचिपीनसादीन् ।
 जीर्णज्वराशौग्रहणी विकारान्हन्यात्तथाऽन्यान्कफवातरोगान् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Madhyakhaṇḍa, Śothādhikāra, 42/31-32.

सर्वशोथहरी गुडादिवटिका

गुडात्पलत्रयं ग्राह्यं शृङ्गवेरपलत्रयम् ।
 शृङ्गवेरसमा कृष्णा लोहविट्तिलयोः पलम् ।
 चूर्णमेतत्समुद्दिष्टं सर्वश्वयथुनाशनम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Śothādhikāra, 42-35.

गर्भिणी मूलकटिबन्धनम्

क. गर्भवती सुखप्रसवार्थं इक्षुमूलम्—
 इक्षोरुत्तरमूलं निज्जलनुमानेन तन्तुना बद्ध्वा ।
 कटिविषये गर्भवती सुखेन सूतेऽविलम्बेन ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Yonirogādhikāra, 70-111.

गर्भवती सुखप्रसवार्थं तालमूलम्

ख. तालस्य चोत्तरं मूलं स्वप्रमाणेन तन्तुना ।
 बद्ध्वा कट्यान्तु नियतं सुखं नारी प्रसूयते ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Yonirogādhikāra, 70-112.

स्तन्य वर्द्धनार्थमेक्षुमूलं प्रयोगः

‘.....केक्षुणां मूलं सौवीरकेण वा।’

Cakradatta, Strirogādhikāra, 63-45.

कासे

‘पिबेद् घृतं चेशुरसे विपक्रम्।’

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Uttara, 52-35.

मुखवैरस्ये

कवलान् धारयेदिष्टान् क्षीरस्येशुरसस्य च।

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 8-140.

ग्रहणीरोगे

‘तद्वद् द्राक्षेशुखर्जूरस्वरसानासुतान् पिबेत्।’

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 15-151.

विसर्पे

‘कुर्यात्.....सशर्करौरिशुरसैश्च सेकान्।’

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 17-9.

हिक्कायाम्

‘सर्पिः कोष्णं क्षीरमिक्षो रसो वा नातिक्षीणं छर्दनं शान्तिहेतोः।’

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Uttara, 50-17.

रक्तपित्ते

‘द्राक्षारसस्येशुरसस्य नस्यम्।’

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 4-100.

आपोथ्य वा नवे कुम्भे प्लावयेदिक्षुगण्डिका।

स्थितं तद् गुप्तमाकाशे रात्रिं प्रातः शृतं जलम्॥

मधुमृद्धीकाजाम्भोजकृतोत्तंसञ्च तद्गुणम्॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Cikitsā, 2-33.

‘मधुकभ्येशुरसस्य नस्यम्।’

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 4-100.

ग्रहणीरोगे

‘तद्वद्द्राक्षेशुखर्जूरस्वरसानासुतात् पिबेत्।’

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 15-151.

तृष्णायाम्

‘नारीपयः सशर्करासुष्ट्रया अपि न स्यभिक्षुरसः ।’

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 22-33.

‘तृष्णोद्भवां हन्ति जलं सुशीतं सशर्करं सेक्षुरसं तथाम्भः ।’

Suśruta Samhitā, Uttara, 48-32.

रक्तपित्तशामनार्थम्

शुद्धेक्षुकाण्डमापोथ्य नवेकुम्भे हिमाम्भसा ।

योजयित्वा क्षिपेद् रात्रावाकाशे सोत्पलं तु तत् ॥

प्रातः सुतं क्षौद्रयुतं पिबेच्छोणित पित्तवान् ॥

Suśruta Samhitā, Uttara, 45-21/22.

पाण्डुरोगे

‘धात्रीफलानां रसभिक्षुजञ्च मन्थं पिबेत् क्षौद्रयुतं हिताशी ।’

Suśruta Samhitā, Uttara. 44-18.

अतिकाश्ये

इक्षवःशालयो माषा गोधूमागुडवैकृतम् ।

हत्वातिकाश्यमाधत्ते नृणामुचयं परम् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Sūtra 21-31/33.

IKṢVĀKU

Botanical Name : Lagenaria vulgaris Sier.

Family : Cucurbitaceae

Classical Name : Ikṣvāku-kaṭutumbī

Sanskrit Names

Ikṣvāku, Kaṭutumbī, Tiktālābū, Piṇḍaphalā.

Regional Names

Titalouki, Kasvi louki (Hi.), Titlau (Beng.), Kadu Bhopala (Mar.), Kadvi Tumbadi (Guj.), Soriai Kai (Tam.), Soskaya (Tel.), Karaumurr (Arab.), Bitter Gourd (Eng.).

Description

A large softly pubescent climbing or trailing herb, with stout 5-angled stems; tendrils 2-fid.

Leaves often 15 cm. diam., ovate or orbicular, cordate, dentate, 5-angular or 5-lobed, hairy on both surfaces; petiole long with 2 glands at the apex.

Flowers large, white, solitary, monoecious or dioecious the males long, the females short-peduncled. Male flowers : calyx-tube funnel-shaped, sub campanulate; teeth 5, narrow. Petals 5, free, obovate, 2.5-5 cm. long, crumpled, hairy on both sides. Stamens 3; anthers, connate, included one-celled, two 2-celled, cells conduplicate, rudiment of ovary O. Female flower : Calyx and corolla as in the male ovary oblong, softly pubescent; style short, with 3 bifid stigmatic lobes; ovules many, horizontal placenta 3, vertical.

Fruit large, usually bottle or dumb-bell-shaped, ultimately thick membranous or almost woody, indehiscent, polymorphous. Seeds many, 1.6-2cm. white, horizontal, compressed, with a marginal groove, smooth.

Kinds and Varieties

Sweet (madhura) and bitter (kaṭu) varieties; sweet variety is used for vegetable purpose.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Rainy season to autumn seasons and onwards. Farming seasons (sweet variety vegetable).

Distribution

It is found throughout India, wild (bitter) cultivated and (sweet variety).

Chemical Composition

Fresh fruit contains 90-96 percent water content. Dry fruit contains ether extract, albuminoid, carbohydrate, fibres, alkalies and saponin. Seeds contain a fixed oil.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Tikta, Kaṭu.
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa.
Vīrya	: Tikṣṇa, Śīta.
Vipāka:	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphapittasamśodhana-samśamana (Tridoṣahara)

Action and Properties

Karma	: Vāmaka (Tivra)-bhedana Raktaśodhaka-śothahara Kaphaniḥsāraka, Kuṣṭaghna Śothahara, Viṣaghna, Jvaraghna Śirovirecana, Jantughna-śothahara Vraṇaśodhana.
Roga	: Kāsa-śvāsa, Viṣa, Chardi, Jvara Mūrcchā Kaphapaittika roga (saṁśodhanārtha) Kaphapaittika roga (Vamana-virecanārtha) Raktavikāra-śoṭha, Kuṣṭha Jvara-kaphapittaja Jvara.

Therapeutic Uses

The pulp of the fruit of bitter variety is powerful emetic and purgative. It is also externally as a poultice. A decoction of the leaves mixed with sugar is given in jaundice. The seeds are prescribed in dropsy and they are also used as a tanticide. Fruits are prescribed in combination with these drugs for the treatment of scorpion-sting.

The bitter-fruit variety is specifically used in medicine for treatment of various diseases. Its leaves are diuretic, antibilious, and they are useful in leucorrhoea, vaginal and uterine complaints and earache. The fruits are bitter, hot, pungent, emetic, alexiteric, cooling, cardiotoxic, antibilious, and they are useful in asthma, vāta vitiation, bronchitis, inflammations, ulcers and pains.

The roots diminish inflammation. The flowers are cooling and they are good in ophthalmia and toothache and they can cause haemoptysis. The fruit is very bitter and good in bronchitis. The seeds are emetic. Roots are quite effective in oedema. Fruits are given against poisoning stage as an emetic drug. In various ailments caused with vitiation of vāta and pitta, the plant is administered in suitable forms.

The sweet variety fruits are popularly used in vegetables; it is wholesome diet.

Parts Used : Fruit, Seeds, Leaves.

Dose

Juice 8-12 gms., Seeds powder 1-3 gms.

Groups (gana)

Vamana, Phalinī (Caraka Samhitā), Urdhvabhā-gahara, (Suśruta Samhitā).

IKṢVĀKU (इक्ष्वाकु)**कटुतुम्बी**

इक्ष्वाकुः कटुतुम्बी स्यात्सा तुम्बी च महाफला ।

कटुतुम्बी हिमा हृद्या पित्तकास विषापहा ।

तिक्ता कटुविपाके च वातपित्तज्वरान्तकृत् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Nighaṇṭu, Sāka Vara, 59.

क. तुम्बी लम्बा पिण्डफला राजन्या प्रवरापरा ।

कटुतुम्बी तिक्तबीजा तिक्ता लाबुर्महाफला ॥

राजपुत्री पिण्डफला दुग्धीनीका च दुग्धिका ।

फलम्

ख. तुम्बी तिक्ता कटुः पाके'वामनी वातपित्तजित् ।

अहृद्या शीतला कासश्वासज्वरविषापहा ।

पत्रम्

ग. अलाबुपत्रं मधुरं पित्तघ्नं मूत्रशोधनम् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 541-543.

कटुतुम्बी

कटुतुम्बी कटुफलां तुम्बिनी कटुतुम्बिनी ।

बृहत्फला राजपुत्री तिक्तबीजा च तुम्बिका ॥

कटुतुम्बी कटुस्तीक्ष्णा वान्तिकृत् श्वासवातजित् ।

कासघ्नी शोधनी शोफ व्रणशूलविषापहा ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Guḍūcyādi Varga, 56-57.

इक्ष्वाकुः

लम्बाऽथ कटुकालाबूस्तुम्बी पिण्डफला तथा ।

इक्ष्वाकुः फलिनी चैव प्रोच्यते तस्य कल्पना ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Kalpa, 3-3/4.

इक्ष्वाकु प्रयोगः

कासश्वास विषच्छर्दिं ज्वरार्ते कफकर्षिते ॥
प्रताम्यति नरे चैव वमनार्थं तदिष्यते ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Kalpa, 8-4/5.

इक्ष्वाकु साधितक्षीरम्

अपुष्पस्य प्रवालानां मुष्टिं प्रादेशसंमितम् ॥
क्षीरप्रस्थे शृतं दद्यात् पित्तोद्विक्ते कफज्वरे ।

Caraka Samhitā, Kalpa, 3-5.

जीर्ण गलगण्डेन तुम्बीतैलम्

Cakradatta, 41/44-15.

अर्शो घोषाफलवर्त्तिः

‘अर्शोघ्नी गुदगा वर्त्तिगुडघोषा फलोद्भवा ।’

Cakradatta, 5-6.

इक्ष्वाकु अन्या योगाः

क. बिल्वमूलकषायेण तुम्बीबीजाञ्जलिं पचेत् ॥
पूतस्यास्य त्रयो भागश्चतुर्थः फाणितस्य तु ।
सघृतो बीजभागश्च पिष्टानर्धाशिकांस्तथा ।

Caraka Samhitā, Kalpa, 3-15/16.

ख. महाजालिनी जीमूतकृतवेधनवत्सकान ।
तं लेहं साधयेद्वर्षा घट्टयन्मृदुनाऽग्निना ॥
यावत् स्यात्तन्तुमत्तोये पतितं तु न शीर्यते ।
तं लिहन्मात्रया लेहं प्रमथ्यां च पिबेदनु ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Kalpa, 3-16/18.

इक्ष्वाकुक्षीरसाधित चतुर्योगाः (पञ्चमयोग सहित)

पुष्पादिषु च चत्वारः क्षीरे जीमूतके यथा ॥
योगा हरितपाण्डूनां सुरामण्डेन पञ्चमः ।

Caraka Samhitā, Kalpa, 3-6/7.

कफघ्न प्रयोगः

फलस्वरसम्भागं च त्रिगुणाक्षीरसाधितम् ॥
उरःस्थिते कफे दद्यात् स्वरभेदे च पीनसे ।

Caraka Samhitā, Kalpa, 3-7/8.

इक्ष्वाकुसाधित दधि प्रयोगः

जीर्णे मध्योद्धृते क्षीरं प्रक्षिपेत्तद्यदादधि ।
जातं स्यात् सकफे कासेश्वासे वम्यां च तत् पिबेत् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Kalpa, 3-8/9.

इक्ष्वाकु बीजप्रयोग

‘यष्टयाह्मकोविदाराद्यैर्मुष्टिमन्तर्नखं पिबेत् ।’

इक्ष्वाकवष्ट्र प्रयोगाः (मदनकल्पानुसारेण)

‘कषायैः कोविदाराद्यैर्मात्राश्च फलवत् स्मृताः ।’

Caraka Samhitā, Kalpa, 3-14/15.

इक्ष्वाकयुक्त सक्तुः प्रयोगः

शक्तुभिर्वा पिबेन्मन्थं तुम्बी स्वरसभावितैः ।
कफजेऽथ ज्वरे कासे कण्ठरोगेष्वरोचके ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Kalpa, 3-19/20.

सेक्ष्वाकु मांसरस प्रयोगः

गुल्मे मेहे प्रसेके च कल्कं मांसरसैः पिबेत् ।
नरः साधु वमत्येवं न च दौर्बल्यमश्रुते ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Kalpa, 3-20.

इक्ष्वाकुवर्धमानयोग

पञ्चादशवृद्धानि फलादिमां यथोत्तरम् ॥
पिबेद्विमृद्य बीजानि कषायेष्वाशतं पृथक् ।

Caraka Samhitā, Kalpa, 3-13/14.

इक्ष्वाकुस्त्रेह प्रयोगः

भक्षयेत् फलमध्यं वा गुडेन पललेन च ॥
इक्ष्वाकुफलतैलं वा सिद्धं वा पूर्ववद् घृतम् ।

Caraka Samhitā, Kalpa, 3-12/13.

इक्ष्वाकुपुष्पगन्धप्रयोग

तुम्ब्याः फलरसैः शुष्कैः सपुष्पैरवचूर्णितम् ॥
छर्दयेन्माल्यमाघ्राय गन्धसंपत्सुखोचितः ।

Caraka Samhitā, Kalpa, 3-11/12.

अर्शं तुम्बीबीजादि वर्तिका

तुम्बीबीजं सोद्भिदन्तु काञ्जीपिष्टं गुडीत्रयम् ।

अशोहरं गुदस्थं स्याद् दधि माहिषमश्नतः ॥

Cakradatta, 5-8.

प्रसूता योनिक्षते

तुम्बीपत्रं तथा लोध्रं समभागं सुपेषयेत् ।

तेन लेपो भगे कार्यः शीघ्रं स्याद्योनिरक्षता ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Yonirogādhikāra, 70-128.

रक्ताशो

‘ज्योत्स्निका मूलकल्केन लेपोरक्ताशसां हितः ।’

Cakradatta, 5-7.

INDRAVĀRUṆĪ

Botanical Name : *Citrullus colocynthis* Schard.

Family : Cucurbitaceae

Classical Name : Indravāruṇī

Sanskrit Names

Indravāreeni, Aindrī, Gavākṣī, Citra.

Regional Names

Indrayan (Hi.), Rakhalsasa (Beng.), Indavana (Guj.), Kaurtumba (Punj.), Tumartini (Tam.), Chitipapra (Tel.), Hanzal (Arab.), Kharbuj-etalk (Pers.); Colocynth, Bitter cucumber (Eng.).

Description

Perennial (root) herb; stems diffuse, creeping or trailing; monoecious, stem slender angled, branched, hirsute or scabrid. Tendrils simple or 2-fid, slender, hairy.

Leaves very variable, 1.8-6.3 by 2.5-5 cm. in the wild form (larger in the cultivated one), usually deltoid in outline, pale green above, ashy beneath, scabrid on both surfaces, 5-7-lobed or very commonly 3-lobed, the middle lobe the largest, each lobe deeply pinnatifid or sinuate-lobulate, the segments obtuse; petioles 1.3-2.5 cm. (longer in the cultivated form), densely hirsute.

Male flowers : Peduncles 6-13 mm. long, villous. Calyx hairy, companulate, 5 mm. long; teeth lanceolate, 2 mm. long, corolla 6 mm. long, pale yellow; segments obovate, apiculate. Female Flowers : Ovary ellipsoid, densely hairy.

Fruit globular, slightly depressed, 5-7.5 cm. diam., variegated green and white, glabrous when ripe, filled with a dry spongy very bitter pulp; epicarp thin. Seeds 4-6 mm. long, pale brown.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Summer season, May-June, Upper part of the plant comes out in the spring season and dries up by rains.

Distribution

It is found throughout India, particularly in sandy and dry tracts, waste lands, sometimes along sea-coasts to prevent sand drifts.

Chemical Composition

Fruits contains bitter substance, colocynthin, colocynthetin; roots contain a-eluterin, hentriacontane, and saponins; seeds contain fixed oil a phytosterotin, 2-phytosterols, 2-hydrocarbones, a saponin, a alkaloid, glycoside, tannic; pulp contains a-elaterin heatrincontane, a phytosterol and a mixture of fatty acids.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Tikta, Laghu
Guṇa	: Rūkṣa, Tikṣṇa
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphapittahara

Action and Properties

Karma	: Bhedana-recana (mūla-root, phala-fruit) Kṛmighna Tikṣṇa virecana (phalamajja-fruit pulp) Raktaśodhaka-śothahara Kaphaniḥsāraka Trīvragarbhāsaya saṅkocaka Śukrastambhaka-Bājikaraṇa
--------------	---

	Pramehaghna, Jvaraghna Kaṭupouṣṭika Kaphapaittikaroga (samśodhanārtha)
Roga	: Udararoga-gulma-Koṣṭhabaddhatā Plihodara, Kṛmi, Kāmalā Āmavāta-sandhivāta Āmātisāra-āntrakunthana-āmadoṣa Kāsa-śvāsa Rajorodha-kaṣṭhāprasava-mūḍhagarbha Prameha, Viṣa-Jaṅgamviṣa-garaviṣa jvara-J, Jvarottara dourbalya-pāṇḍu Granthi-gaṇḍa, Vraṇa, Ślīpada Vṛddhi, Keśaroga-indralupta-palita Tvagdoṣa-kṣudraroga-carmakīla Unmāda, Stanapīdā Klaibya (yoni dravaṇārtha).

Therapeutic Uses

The fruit is bitter, pungent and cooling; it is purgative, anthelmintic, antipyretic and carminative. It is recommended for use in tumours, ascites, leucoderma, ulcers, asthma, bronchitis, urinary discharges, jaundice, enlargement of the spleen, tuberculous glands of the neck, dyspepsia, constipation, anaemia, throat diseases and filaria. It is useful abnormal presentations of the foetus and in atrophy of the foetus. The seeds are purgative.

In addition to the similar properties of fruits, the roots have a beneficial action in inflammation of the breasts, pain in the joints; it is externally used in ophthalmia and in uterine pains.

The fruits and roots are rubbed into a paste with water and applied to boils and pimples. Equal parts of the root with long pepper are given in pills. A paste of the root is applied to the enlarged abdomen of children.

The fruit and roots are prescribed in the treatment of snake-bite.

Parts Used : Fruit, Roots.

Dose

Fruit powder 2-8 grains, Root juice 6-12 gms., Root powder 1-3 gms.

Formulations (yoga) : Nārāyana cūrṇa.

Groups (Gaṇa)

Virecana, Mūlinī (Caraka Saṁhitā), Adhobhāgahara, Śyāmādi (Suśruta Saṁhitā).

INDRAVĀRUNĪ (इन्द्रवारुणी)

इन्द्रवारुद्वयं तिक्तं कटु पाके रसे लघु ।
वीर्योष्णं कामलापित्तकफश्लीपदनानम् ॥

Dhanvantari Nighaṇṭu.

इन्द्रवारुणिकाऽत्युष्णां रेचनी कटुका तथा ।
कृमिश्लेष्मव्रणान् हन्ति सर्वोदराण्यपि ॥

Dhanvantari Nighaṇṭu.

ऐन्द्री तिक्ता कटुर्लघ्वी कटुपाका विरेचनी ॥
उष्णवीर्या हरेत् पित्तं कफमेहव्रण कृमीन् ।
श्वासकासापचीकुष्ठप्लीहानाहगरोदरम् ॥
कामलामूढगर्भाशमग्रन्थिगण्डामयं विषम् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Ośadhi Varga, 1027-1029.

इन्द्रवारुणीद्वयम्, इन्द्रवारुणी महेन्द्रवारुणी

गवाक्षीद्वयं तिक्तं पाके कटु सरं लघु ॥
वीर्योष्णं कामलापित्तकफप्लीहोदरापहम् ॥
श्वासकासापहं कुष्ठं गुल्म ग्रन्थि व्रणप्रणुत् ।
प्रमेह मूढगर्भमिगण्डामय विषापहम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Guḍūcyādi Varga, 204-206.

इन्द्रवारुणी

इन्द्रवारुणिका तिक्ता कटुशीता च रेचनी ।
गुल्मपित्तोदरश्लेष्म क्रिमिकुष्ठ ज्वरापहा ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Guḍūcyādi Varga, 72.

आन्त्रवृद्धि चिकित्सायम्

गन्धर्वहस्ततैलेन क्षीरेण विहितं शृतम् ।

विशालामूलजं चूर्णं वृद्धिं हन्ति न संशयः ॥

वृद्धिरोगे ऐन्द्रीमूलचूर्णम्

ऐन्द्री मूलभवं चूर्णं रुबुतैलेन मर्दितम् ।

त्रयहा त्रोपयसा पीतं सर्ववृद्धि निवारणम् ॥

Cakradatta, 40-18.

महेन्द्रवारुणी

महेन्द्रवारुणी ज्ञेया पूर्वोक्तगुणभागिनी ।

रसे वीर्ये च किञ्चिदेषा गुणाधिका ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Guḍūcyādi Varga, 75.

कुरण्डे

वातारितैल मृदितं सुरवारुणीजं मूलं नरः पिबति यो मसृणं विचूर्ण्यो ।

गर्व्ये निधाय पयसि त्रिदिनावसाने तस्य प्रणश्यति कुरण्डभवो विकारः ॥

Rājamārtaṇḍa, 17-5; Cakradatta, 40-19.

चर्मकीले

सुरेन्द्रवारुणीमूलं वृषमूत्रेण पेषितम् ।

चर्मकीलान्निहन्त्याशु प्रलेपात् साधनोद्भवान् ॥

Rāja Mārtaṇḍa, 17-2.

गवां व्रणात् कृमि पातनार्थम्

करद्वयप्रपीडितात् सुरेन्द्र वारुणीफला-

च्युतेन वारिणा शृतं व्रणं त्यजन्ति जन्तवः ॥

Rāja Mārtaṇḍa.

नेत्राभिष्यन्दे

विशालारससंसिक्तपेलप्रवणपाणिना ।

परामृशेदभिष्यन्द जातमधुं मुहर्मुहुः ॥

Vaidya Manoramā.

प्लीहोदरे

मूलं विदार्य सुरनायकवारुणीजं

नामाभिधाय यदि रोमवतौनरस्यं ।

प्रक्षिप्यतेऽति यदि दुरतरं तदानीं,
प्लीहोदरं क्षयमुपैत्यचिरेण तस्य ॥

Gada Nigraha.

इन्द्रलुमे

मूलं शक्रसुरायाः गोमूत्रेण सस्थितंत्र्यहं क्लिन्नम्,
शमयति सुरेशलुप्तं गोमय घृतप्रलेपेन ।

Gada Nigraha, 3-1-77.

वीर्यस्तम्भनकरौ वटी

इन्द्रवारुणिकामूलं पुष्ये नग्रः समुद्धरेत् ।
त्र्यूषणैश्च गवा क्षीरैः पिष्ट्वा कुर्यात् वटी दृढाम् ॥
छायाशुष्का स्थिता वक्त्रे वीर्यस्तम्भकरी नृणाम् ॥

Rasa Ratnākara, Rasāyanakhaṇḍa, Uttara, 7.

उन्मादे

‘ब्रह्मराक्षसजिन्नस्यं पक्वैन्द्रीफलमूत्रजम् ।’

Cakradatta.

वृद्धौ

ऐन्द्रीमूलभवं चूर्णरुबुतैलेन बर्हितम् ।
त्र्यहाद गोपयसा पीतं सर्ववृद्धिनिवारणम् ॥

Cakradatta.

अन्तःशल्यनिर्हरणार्थम्

‘गवाक्षीमूलतस्तथा ।’

Cakradatta.

शल्यापनयने

‘व्रणपर्यन्तालेपन् मूलं जलपिष्टं शक्रवारुण्या कर्षतिनष्टशल्यम् ।’

Rājamārtaṇḍa, 26-12.

गण्डमालायाम्

ऐन्द्रया वा..... मूलं गोमूत्रयोगतः ।
गण्डमालां हरेत् धीरां चिरकालोत्थितामपि ॥

Cakradatta, 41-21.

सद्यः प्रसवार्थम्

वारिभृष्टं विशालाथाः मूलभाज्येन संयुतम् ।

अधोमुखमधोनाभौ लिम्पेत् सद्यः प्रसूतिकृत् ॥

Vaidya Manoramā.

प्लीहोदरे इन्द्रवारुणी मूलिकोत्पाटनम्

यस्य गृहीत्वा संज्ञां पाटयित्येन्द्र वारुणीमूलम् ।
प्रक्षिप्यतेसुदूरे शाम्येत् प्लीहोदरं तस्य ॥

Cakradatta, 37-45.

स्तनोत्थितायां पीडायाम्

‘विशालामूललेपस्तु हन्ति पीडां स्तनोत्थिताम् ।’

Vrnda, Cakradatta, Strīrogādhikāra, 63-52.

सन्धिवाते

इन्द्रवारुणिकामूलं मागधी गुडसंयुतम् ।
भक्षयेत्कर्षमात्रं तु सन्धिवातं व्यपोहति ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Cikitsā, 24-259.

कामलायाम्

‘.....हिता गवाक्षी संगुडा च शुण्ठी ।

Suśruta Samhitā, Uttara, 44-30.

योनिद्रावणार्थम्

इन्द्रवारुणिकापत्ररसैः नृतं विमर्दयेत् ।
रक्तस्य करवीरस्य काष्ठेन च मुहुर्मुहुः ॥
तल्लितलिङ्गसंयोगाद् योनिद्रावोऽभिजायते ।

Śāraṅgadhara Samhitā, 3-11-16/17.

केशकृष्णीकरणार्थम्

‘इन्द्रवारुणिकाबीजतैलेनाभ्यङ्गमाचरेत् ।’

Śāraṅgadhara Samhita, Uttara Khaṇḍa, 11.

स्तनवेदनायाम्

‘लेपो विशालामूलेन हन्ति पीडां स्तनोत्थिताम् ।’

Bhāvaprakāśa, (Strīroga) Yonirogādhikāra, 70-174.

उन्मादे ऐन्द्रीफलनस्यम्

ब्रह्मराक्षसजिन्नस्यं पक्वैन्द्रीयफलमूत्रजम् ।
साज्यं भूतहरं नस्यं श्वेताज्येष्ठाम्बुनिर्मितम् ॥

Cakradatta, Unmāda Cikitsā, 20-50.

गर्भपातनार्थम्

मूलं गवाक्ष्याः स्मरमन्दिरस्थं पुष्पावरोधस्य वधं करोति ।

अभर्तुकानां व्यभिचारिणीनां योगोऽयमेव द्रुतगर्भपाते ॥

Vaidya Jivana, 3-36.

INGUDĪ

Botanical Name

Balanites aegyptiaca (Linn.) Delile.

Balanites roxburghii Planch.

Family : Simarubaceae

Classical Name : Ingudi

Sanskrit Names

Ingudi, Aṅgāravṛkṣa, Tiktaka, Tāpasadruma, Bhallaka, Tiktamajja, Pūtikarṇaka, Kaṅṭakīvṛkṣa.

Regional Names

Hingon, Hungen, Hingua, Ingua Hingot, Ingudi, Hingota (Hindi), Hingon (Bengal), Egorea (Gujarat), Hingan, Hingana (Marathi), Najundau (Tamil), Gara, Ingudi (Telugu), Ingudihala (Uriya), Nanjunta (Mal.); Eltheglyg (Arabic); Dattoer du desert (French).

Description

A shrub or small evergreen tree, rarely reaching 9 meters. Young parts pubescent or tomentose or glabrescent. Twigs armed with stout axillary or supraxillary spines, 1-6 cm. long which often bear leaves or flowers.

Leaves alternate, 2-foliolate; petioles 3-6 mm. long; leaflets elliptic or varying from ovate or obovate-elliptic or rotundate; obtuse or subacute or broadly pointed, 1-5 cm. long; petiolules up to 5 mm. long.

Flowers small, greenish white, fragrant, in axillary few or many flowered short-peduncled cymes or fascicles. Sepals 5, ovate 3 mm. long, pubescent outside, silky-villous or glabrous inside, very little longer than the sepals. Stamens 10, filaments subulate, glabrous; anthers dorsifixed, Disk

cupular, with a 10-lobed glandular margin, Ovary ovoid, silky, 5-celled; ovules solitary in each cells; style, short, conical.

Fruit an ovoid drupe, 2.5-6 cm. long, on a short thick stalk, faintly 5-grooved, pale yellow when ripe; pulp 5 mm. thick, with an offensive grassy smell; stone hard, fibrous. Seeds exalbuminous and a superior radicle.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Autumn to cold seasons.

Distribution

It is found in drier and warmer parts of India; specially in Rajasthan, Madhya Pradesh, Gujarat, Bihar, U.P. and other region.

Chemical Composition

Bark contains saponin. Fruit pulp contains detergent, acidious substance 1 percent, sugar and mucilaginous substance.

Seeds karnel contains tetra-glucoside of a sapogenin; acid hydrolysis gives nitrogenin; it is an active haematolytic agent; toxicity for tadpols similar to digitoxin.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Tikta, Kaṭu
Guṇa	: Laghu, Snigdha
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphavātaśāmaka

Action and Properties

Karma	: Krimighna-Jantughna, Keśya Vraṇaropaṇa Dīpana-pācana-kṛmighna Raktaśodhaka, Kaphaniḥsāraka Mūtrala, Śūkraghna Kuṣṭhaghna-Kaṇḍūghna Kaṭupouṣṭika, Viṣaghna Śūlapraśamana Bhūtagraha Vādhāhara Rasāyana, Kāntidā-varṇya.
--------------	---

Roga

- a) **Bāhya** : Agñidagdha, Vraṇa, Śīroroga
(External) Keśavikāra, Duṣṭavraṇa
Viṣa-mūṣikadaṁśa, Karṇapālī
Jantu-yūkalikṣā.
- b) **Ābhyantara** : Kṛmiroga, Vibandha, Agnimāndya
(Internal) Udaraśūla, Raktavikāra, Jirṇakāsa
Śvāsa, Mūtrakṛcchra, Kuṣṭha-śvitra
Carmaroga-vyṅga, Viṣa, Śūla
Bhūta-grahavādhā, Kuṣṭha
Mūṣika viṣa.

Therapeutic Uses

The flowers are sweet, smelling, bitter and heating; they cure vāta and kapha. The fruit is bitter sharp taste; they are digestive, alterative, anthelmintic, alexipharmic, analgesic, antidysenteric; and check vāta and they cure ulcers, skin diseases and rat bites. The oil obtained from the fruits is applied to cure ulcers.

The fruits are used for boils, leucoderma and skin-affections. The bark, unripe fruit, and leaves are pungent, bitter and purgative; they are considered to have anthelmintic properties.

The seeds are given in coughs. They are given in abdominal colic. The plant is prescribed in treatment of snake-bite. The pulp of the fruit is used as a detergent, and the bark is used as a fish-poison. The decoction of the root is used as an emetic. The oil of seeds is used as a remedy for sleeping sickness as an aperient.

Parts Used : Bark, Fruits, Seeds, Seeds oil.

Dose

Decoction 50-100 ml., Powder 3-6 gms., Seeds oil 5-10 drops, Fruit pulp 500-1000 mg., Seeds powder 500-1000 mg.

INGUDĪ (इङ्गुदी)

- क. इङ्गुदोऽङ्गारवृक्षश्च तित्तकस्तापसद्रुमः ।
ख. इङ्गुदः कुष्ठभूतादिग्रहव्रणाविषक्रिमीन् ।

हन्त्युष्णः श्वित्रशूलग्नस्तित्तकः कटुपाकवान् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Vaṭādi Varga, 41.

इङ्गुदः

- अ. इङ्गुदो भल्लकस्तित्तमज्जः स्यात् पूतिकर्णिकः ॥
कण्टकीर्णोऽङ्गारवृक्षो बिन्दुको व्यावहारिकः ।
तित्तकः कण्टकिवृक्षः कण्टकस्तापसद्रुमः ॥
- ब. इङ्गुदस्तित्तकः सोष्णः कटुपाको नियच्छति ।
कृमिकुष्ठविषश्वित्रशूलभूतग्रहव्रणान् ॥

इङ्गुदीफलम्

- स. तत्फलं मधुरं तित्तं स्निग्धोष्णं कफवातनुत् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 864-867.

इङ्गुदी

- इङ्गुदी हिङ्गुपत्रश्च विषकण्टोऽनिलान्तकः ।
गौरस्तूक्तः सुपत्रश्च शूलारिस्तापसद्रुमः ॥
तीक्ष्णकण्टकस्तैलफलः पूतिगन्धो विगन्धकः ।
ज्ञेयः क्रोष्टुफलश्चैवः वह्नीन्दुगणिताह्वयः ॥

इङ्गुदी गुणाः

- इङ्गुदी मदगन्धिः स्यात् कटूष्णा फेनिला लघुः ।
रसायनी हन्ति जन्तु वातामय कफव्रणान् ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Śālmalyādi Varga, 44-46.

इङ्गुदी तैलम्

- स्निग्धं स्यादिङ्गुदीतैलं मधुरं पित्तनाशनम् ।
शीतलं कान्तिदबल्यं श्लेष्मलं केशवर्द्धनम् ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Kṣīrādi Varga, 116.

‘इङ्गुदीतैलमेतेषु दृष्टि शुक्रबलापहम् ।’

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Taila Varga, 328.

‘ऐंगुदं स्वादु तित्तं च स्निग्धोष्णं श्लेष्मवातजित् ।’

इंगुद्या फलमज्जको जलयुतौ लेपो सुखे कान्तिदो ।

Śoḍhala, Vaidya Jivanam.

‘ऐंगुदं तित्तमधुरं स्निग्धोष्णं कफवातजित् ।’

Caraka Samhitā, Sūtra. 27-140.

व्यङ्गः

इङ्गुदीफलसमुद्भवमज्जा पेषिताऽतिशिशिरेण जलेन ।
एकविंशतिदिनप्रविलिप्ता व्यङ्गमाननभवं परिमष्टि ॥

Rāja Mārtaṇḍa.

कुष्ठेषु

‘.....तैलान्येथेङ्गुदीनाञ्च कुष्ठेषु हितान्याहुः ।

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 7-116.

मूषिक विषे

‘शिरीषेङ्गुदकल्कन्तु लिह्यात्तत्र समाक्षिकम् ।’

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Kalpa, 7-12.

दुष्टव्रणे

‘इङ्गुदीस्नेह.....दुष्ट व्रणेषुपयुज्यते ।’

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 31-5.

कर्ण (पाली) रोगे

‘करंजइङ्गुदीबीजैर्वा लेपः ।’

इङ्गुदी तैलसर्षपस्त्रेहो सकफे पूरणे हितौ ।’

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 25-22.

इङ्गुदीतैलं शीर्षाभ्यङ्गम्

‘प्रस्निग्धाः क्वाचिदिंगुलीफलभिद्यः सूच्यन्तः एवोपला ।’

मा कस्यापि तपस्विनः इङ्गुदीतैलमिश्रचिकणशीर्षस्य हस्ते पतिष्यति ।’

Kālidāsa, Abhijñana Śākuntalam.

IRIMEDA

Botanical Name : *Acacia farnesiana* Willd.

Family : Mimosae (Leguminosae)

Classical Name : Irimeda

Sanskrit Names

Arimeda, Irimeda, Arimedaka, Vitkhasira,
Kālaskandha, Sarpameda-Godha, Ripu-Rima, Ahimeda,
Putimeda, Ahimedaka.

Regional Names

Guyababul (Beng.), Deobabul Gukikar, Vilayati babul (Bombays, Gandhelokhair Jherihaval (Guj.), Durgandh-khair, Gandhabul, Gukikar, Pissibabul, Guhbalul, Vilayati Kikar-babul (Hind.), Gubabul (Marathi), Arimdamu (Telugio), Pivelam (Malayalam), kadivel (Tamil), Gudoyaboburo (Uriya), Cassie Flowers, Sponge Tree, Stinking Acacia (Eng.).

Description

A shrub or low tree; branches slender, zigzag, marked with grey or pale brown dots; spines stipular only.

Leaves 2-pinnate, 2.5-5 cm. long; main rhachis more or less pubescent; petioles usually furnished with a minute gland about the middle; stipules spinescent, 4-8 mm. long, hard and sharp, divaricate; pinnac 4-8 pairs, 2-2.5 cm. long. Leaflets 10-20 pairs, 4.5-6 by 1.25-1.5 mm., sessile, rigidly coriaceous, linear-oblong, acute, green, subglabrous, base oblique, rounded.

Flowers in globose heads, 6-8 mm. diam, fragrant, deep yellow; peduncles 2-2.5 cm. long, crowded on axillary nodes slender terete, pubescent, with a ring of small reflexed ciliate bracts at or near the apex; bracteole solitary, deltoid, on a long slender stalk, ciliolate.

Calyx 1.5 mm. long, membranous; teeth short, triangular, acute. Corolla 2.5 mm. long; lobes very short, obtuse. Ovary glabrous.

Pods 5-9 by 1.3 cm., subcylindric, turgid, slightly, curved, conspicuously striately veined glabrous, brown; mesocarp pulpy. Seeds biseriate.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Rainy to autumn seasons.

Distribution

It is cosmopolitan in the tropics; often planted. It is found throughout India, and often planted in the gardens.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Tikta, Kaṣāya
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa

Vīrya	: Śīta
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphapittaśāmaka.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Kuṣṭhaghna, Kaṇḍūghna-Tvacya Dantya, Rucivardhaka, Stambhana Kṛmighna, Śoṇitasthapana- raktaprasādana-stambhana-varadhana Śothahara, Mūtrasangrahaṇīya Śukraśoṣaṇa, Garbhaśayaśaithilyahara Jvaraghna Dhātuśoṣaṇa-medośoṣaṇa Plīhaśothaghna, Viśaghna Graha Vādhāhara.
Roga	: Kuṣṭha, Kaṇḍū, Tvagvikāra Vikāra, Rakta (aśuddhi) vikāra Raktasrāva Mukharoga-dantaroga, Bastiroga Kṛmiroga, Bhūtagrahavādha, Viṣa Śoṭha, Medoroga, Kāsa.

Therapeutic Uses

The bark is acrid and hot; it is alexiteric, astringent, demulcent, anthelmintic, and antidyenteric. It is useful in stomatitis, tooth carries, diseases of the blood, itching, skin, affections, leucoderma, ulcers, inflammations, and erysipelas.

The gum is sweetish, tonic and aphrodisiac. The tender leaves, bruised in a little water, are swallowed for the treatment of gonorrhoea. The being astringent is used in the form of a decoction in various ailments.

The decoction of the astringent stem bark is given for prolapsus-ani and leucoderma. The tender leaves are boiled and applied as a cataplasm in wounds and ulcers which have previously been washed with a decoction of the same leaves.

The plant is one of the ingredients in ksārāgada (prescribed in classical medical texts) which is a specific preparation recommended for the treatment of snake-bite.

Part Used : Bark, Wood-heartwood.

Dose : 50-100 ml.

IRIMEDA (इरिमेद)

- क. इरिमेदो विट्खदिरः कालस्कन्धोऽरिमेदकः ।
 ख. इरिमेदः कषायोष्णो मुखदन्तगदास्त्रजित् ।
 हन्ति कण्डूविषश्लेष्मकृमिकुष्ठविषव्रणान् ॥
Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Vatādi Varga, 34.
- अ. इरिमेदः सर्पमेदो गोधास्कन्धोऽरिमेदकः ।
 अरिमेदो विट्खदिरोऽरिमो मेदो रिपू रिमः ॥
 ब. रिमः कटु कषायोष्णास्तीक्ष्णो हन्ति कफं कृमीन् ।
 कण्डूरक्तग्रहान् बस्तिमुखदन्तगदानपि ॥
 स. तत्फलं तिक्तमधुरं स्निग्धोष्णं कफवातनुत् ।
Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 826-828.

इरिमेदः

इरिमेदोऽरिमेदश्च गोधास्कन्धोऽरिमेदकः ।
 अहिमेदोऽहिमारस्य पूतिमेदोऽहिमेदकः ॥

इरिमेद गुणाः

अरिमेदः कषायोष्णास्तिक्तो भूतविनाशकः ।
 शोफातिसार कासघ्नो विषवीसर्पनाशनः ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Śālmalyādi Varga, 41-42.

इरिमेदः कषायोष्णो मुखदन्तगदास्त्रनुत् ।
 हन्ति कण्डूविषश्लेष्मकृमिकुष्ठग्रहव्रणान् ॥

Madanapāla Nighaṅṭu.

रक्ताति प्रवृत्तौ

'.....अवपीडयेत्.....सालसर्जार्जुनारिमेदोमेषशृङ्गधव-
 धन्वन त्वग्मिव चूर्णिताभिः ।'

Suśruta Samhitā, Sūtra. 14-36.

विषे

'क्षारागदे दुन्दुभि स्वनीये ।'

Suśruta Samhitā, Kalpa, 6-33.

मुखरोगे

खादिरादि गुटिका तैलश्च ।

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 26-206/214.

पटोलनिम्बयष्ट्याह्वासाजात्यरिमेदसाम् ।

खादिरस्य वरायाश्च पृथगेवं प्रकल्पना ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Uttara, 22-106.

‘इरिमेदाद्य तैलम् ।’

Cakradatta, 56-106/11.

ĪṢADGOLA

Botanical Name : *Plantago ovata*; *Plantago major* Linn.

Family : Plantaginaceae

Classical Name : Īṣadgola

Sanskrit Names

Īṣadgola, Aśvakarṇa, Snigdhajiraka, Aśvgola.

Regional Names

Isabagola, Isaphul (Hindi), Isabgul (Bengla), Udhami jiru (Guj.), Bajvtuna (Arabic), Aspagol (Persian), Spogel Seeds (Eng.)

Description

An annual; stem wholly underground, covered with the hairs. Leaves filamentous, 3-8 in. long less than 1/4 in. wide, 3-nerved, entire or distantly toothed. Inflorescence arising from the root-stock. Flowers in ovoid or cylindrical spikes half to one and half inch long.

Seeds boat shaped, translucent, with a pinkish and faint, brown streak upon the convex-side; concavity covered with a thin white membrane.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Rainy season. Summers to Autumn season. Farming (cultivation) time.

Distribution

It is wild in Punjab plains and lower hills from the

Sutlej westwards, Sind and Baluchistan. It is cultivated in hot and dry places.

Chemical Composition

It contains (seeds coat particularly) mucilaginous substance. Seeds contain 0.168% insoluble holoside planteose. They contain fixed oil, albumen and a high content of mucilaginous matter (one part seeds mixture in water 20 parts becoming like jilly due to highly mucilaginous content.

They also contain fixed oil, albumen and also a glucoside Aucubin in low percentage.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Madhura
Guṇa	: Snigdha. guru, picchila
Vīrya	: Śīta
Vipāka	: Madhura
Doṣakarma	: Vātapittaśāmaka.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Snehopaga, Anulomana-śāmaka Dāhapraśamana-śothahara Snehana-kaphaniḥsāraka Mūtrajanana-Snehana Balya-Br̥nhaṇa, Dāhapraśamana Jvaraghna.
Roga	: Atisāra-pravāhikā Śīroroga-śoṭha-visarpavisphota- tvagdāha, Vibandha Arśa (sāraka), Kāsa (śuṣka) Jvara (paittika jvarasantāpa ṛṣṇā, dāha), Mūtrakrcchra-pūyameha Dourbalya-Kṛśatā.

Therapeutic Uses

The drug is aphrodisiac, cooling, demulcent, diuretic and expectorant. It is indicated in chronic diarrhoea, constipation, troubles of gastrointestinal and genito-urinal tracts, rheumatism and gout. Externally the paste is applied to painful and swollen joints.

The seeds are used as mild laxative, emolient, demulcent. They are used as a commonly known household remedy for constipation and diarrhoea and dysentery with different methods of uses. They are good medicine for inflammatory and functional derangements of the mucous membranes of gastro-intestinal and genito-urinary systems. They are also common remedy for catarrh, pharyngeal affections, blenorrhoea, gonorrhoea, piles and chronic spastic constipation.

The seeds are particularly useful for the specific type of constipation. One or two heaped tablespoonfuls, once or twice of a day, are necessary; A decoction of the seeds is refreshing drink in fevers, dysuria etc. A mixture of 150 grains each of the seeds and sugar candy, given two to four times a day, is an efficacious remedy for slimy dysentery.

In chronic diarrhoea, dysentery, gastric and duodenal ulcers and uro-genital disorders, the seeds are given either as a decoction or infusion of powder with sugar. The mucilaginous matter is wholly in the seeds coats, so it is not necessary to use the whole seeds.

The poultice is emollient; the seeds are employed to prepare a poultice with vinegar and oil; it is useful to apply in swellings rheumatism and gout.

The drug material seeds may be used generally in certain forms :

a) Seeds are put or soaked into adequate water and added with sugar; this liquid mixture is taken. (concentrated).

b) Seeds are soaked into little water and added with sugar; this jelly is given.

c) Seeds are boiled into adequate water and than it is taken at intervals.

d) Seeds coat husk material (tuṣa or bhūṣī coarse husk or powder) mixed either with water and sugar or curd (dadhi or dahī) is given.

Usually the seeds are used in chronic dysentery and diarrhoea and seed coat are given in primary stage of dysentery. The intake of drug acts on mucous membrane of

intestine and into its course of action the seeds when soaked in water it becomes coated with mucilage and taste and odour less.

Part Used : Seeds, Seed-coat (powder).

Dose : 6-12 gms.

ĪSADGOLA-AŚVAGOLA (ईषद्गोल-अश्वगोल)

- क. ईषद्गोलमश्वकर्णबीजं च स्निग्ध जीरकम् ।
 ख. ईषद्गोलं गुरुं स्वादु स्निग्धं शीतं च पिच्छिलम् ॥
 स्नेहनं मूत्रजननं श्लेष्मनिःसरणं परम् ।
 दाहतृष्णाहरं बल्यं ज्वरघ्नं चाथ शस्यते ॥
 प्रवाहिकातिसारामदाहतृष्णाज्वरादिषु ।
 वातपित्तामये कासे दौर्बल्ये मूत्रकृच्छ्रे ॥

Dravyaguṇa Vijñāna, 116.

ĪŚVARĪ

Botanical Name : Aristolochia indica Linn.

Family : Aristolochiaceae

Classical Name : Īśvarī

Sanskrit Names

Īśvarī, Nākulī.

Regional Names

Ishwarmula, Isarmul, Isrol (Hindi); Ishermul, (Beng.); Sansan (Marathi); Kahimul (Gujrati); Pirumarindu (Tamil), Dulagvela (Telugu); Indian Birthwort (English).

Description

A shrubby or herbaceous twiner with a woody root stock; stems grooved, slender.

Leaves linear to obovate, 2-4 in long, 1-2 in. broad, smooth margins entire.

Inflorescence in axillary racemes; bracts small, ovate, flowers greenish, white; perianth tube swollen and lobed at

the base; then bent at right angle and tapering upwards mouth trumpet shaped with a long narrow, purplish lip. oblong, grooved, Capsule 1.5-2 in. long, oblong, grooved, 6-grooved, 6-valved, seeds triangular, winged.

Flowering And Fruiting Time

Rainy season.

Chemical Composition

Roots contain a crystalline substance, probably in rabbits, skeletal muscle is stimulated by small and paralysed by large doses. Plant contains a glucoside, a micro crystalline bitter principle glucoside in nature named isoaristolochine; essential oil containing carbonyl compounds and small amount of an oil with the odour asovanilin; aristolochin causes cardiac and respiratory paralysis in frogs and mice, exerts some pressor action and increases rate of respiration; alkaloid aristolochine.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṭu, Tikta, Kaṣāya
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa, Tikṣṇa
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Tridoṣahara, Kaphavātaśāma.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Garbhāśāyasankocaka Dīpana-anulomana, Grāhī Śūlapraśamana, Viṣaghna Jvaraghna-Viṣamajvaraghna Kaṭupoustika, Vātaśāma Nadyuttejaka, Kṛmighna Hṛdayottejaka-śothahara Raktaśodhaka, Mūtrala, Svedajanana.
Roga	: Agnimāndya, Viṣṭambha, Udaraśūla Grahaṇī, Kṛmiroga, Viṣūcikā Dantodbheda (śīśu), Hṛddourbalya śoṭha, Pratiśyāya Vātavyādhi-sandhivāta-ālavāta Kāsa-pratiśyāya (śīśu)

Kaṣṭhaprasava, Mūtrakrachra
 Daṁśaja Viṣa-Sarpa-vṛścika-
 lūtā-mūṣaka.

Therapeutic Uses

The herbal drug is externally useful in snakebite, ulcers and painful and swollen ailing conditions like rheumatism and arthritis.

The fresh juice of the leaves or bark is given in scoup of children, cholera, bowel complaints and intermittent fevers in half to drachm doses. The juice with honey is applied to leucoderma patches.

The root and the stem are useful as alterative, aperient, stimulant tonic emmenagogue, diuretic, anthelmintic and febrifuge. The decoction of the roots or stems (in the dose of one or two ounces) are usually recommended with the addition of black pepper and ginger, the decoction is used as a carminative. The roots are given with honey for leucoderma. The root is used as an emetic in poisoning caused by metals and narcotic plants.

The juice of the leaves is used in snake-bite. The roots decoction mixed pippalimūla is prescribed in females after delivery. The decoction of root of the plant drug is given in painful or scanty menstruation and allied troublesome periods. The leaves juice is given against poisonous bites of rates etc. and scorpion-sting.

Parts Used : Roots, Leaves.

Dose : Roots powder, Leaves juice 1-3 gms.

ĪSVARĪ (ईश्वरी)

क. नाकुली तुवरा तिक्ता कटुकोष्णा नियच्छति ।
 भोगिलूता वृश्चिकाखु विषज्वर कृमिव्रणान् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Harītakṛyādi Varga, 166.

ख. नाकुली सुरसा नागसुगन्धा गन्धनाकुली ।
 नकुलेष्टा भुजङ्गाक्षी सर्पाङ्गी विषनाशिनी ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Harītakṛyādi Varga, 165.

करण्डे

ईश्वरीमूलमेरण्ड मूलं मूषिक चर्म च ।

प्रलेपः स्यात् कुरण्डानां रोग विच्छेदकारकः ॥

Gadamigraha, 2-35-54.

सर्पविषे

कृष्णसर्पेण दष्टस्य लिम्पेत् दंशंसुतेऽसृजि ।

चारटीनानाकुलीभ्यां वा तीक्ष्णमूलविशेण वा ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hr̥daya, Uttara. 36-58.

JALAKUMBHĪ-HAṬHAḤ

Botanical Name : *Pistia stratiotes* Linn.

Family : Araceae

Classical Name : Jalakumbhī-haṭhaḥ

Sanskrit Names

Jalakumbhū, Haṭhaḥ, Khamūlikā, Vāriparṇī, Kumbhikā, Vārimūlī.

Regional Names

Jalkumbhi, Jalkhumbi, Takapana (Hindi); Satara-ltayatas (Arabic); Koddapail (Malayalam); Agastamarai (Tamil); Akasatamara, Nirubuduki (Telugu); Bauikhan jhs (Uriya); Jalakumbhi (Urdu); Jalakhmbi (Gujarati); Water Lettuce Water Soldier (English).

Description

A floating stemless stoloniferous herb with a peculiar muriatic odour; roots of tufted simple white fibres clothed with Gibrillae.

Leaves 3.2-10 cm. long, variable in breadth, ovovate-cuneate, rounded or retuse at the apex, densely and closely pubescent on both surfaces; nerves few or many, flabellately arranged, converging within the margin.

Spathe about 13 mm. long, obliquely campanulate, white, gibbous, and closed below, contracted about the middle, dilated and nearly orbicular above.

करण्डे

ईश्वरीमूलमेरण्ड मूलं मूषिक चर्म च।

प्रलेपः स्यात् कुरण्डानां रोग विच्छेदकारकः ॥

Gadanigraha, 2-35-54.

सर्पविषे

कृष्णसर्पेण दष्टस्य लिम्पेत् दंशंसुतेऽसृजि।

चारटीनानाकुलीभ्यां वा तीक्ष्णमूलविशेषेण वा ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Uttara. 36-58.

JALAKUMBHĪ-HAṬHAḤ

Botanical Name : Pistia stratiotes Linn.

Family : Araceae

Classical Name : Jalakumbhī-haṭhaḥ

Sanskrit Names

Jalakumbhū, Haṭhaḥ, Khamūlikā, Vāriparṇī, Kumbhikā, Vārimūlī.

Regional Names

Jalkumbhi, Jalkhumbi, Takapana (Hindi); Satara-ltayatas (Arabic); Koddapail (Malayalam); Agastamarai (Tamil); Akasatamara, Nirubuduki (Telugu); Bauikhan jhs (Uriya); Jalakumbhi (Urdu); Jalakhmbi (Gujarati); Water Lettuce Water Soldier (English).

Description

A floating stemless stoloniferous herb with a peculiar muriatic odour; roots of tufted simple white fibres clothed with Gibrillae.

Leaves 3.2-10 cm. long, variable in breadth, ovovate-cuneate, rounded or retuse at the apex, densely and closely pubescent on both surfaces; nerves few or many, flabellately arranged, converging within the margin.

Spathe about 13 mm. long, obliquely campanulate, white, gibbous, and closed below, contracted about the middle, dilated and nearly orbicular above.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Post-rains/autumn season and onwards.

Distribution

It is found in tropical and other areas; in the tanks and other similar aquatic habitats (still and sweet water).

Chemical Composition

Plant contains sodium, potassium, magnesium, calcium, iron, aluminium and salicylic acid. Ash contain potassium, chloride and sulphate.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Tikta, Madhura
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa
Vīrya	: Śīta
Vipāka	: Madhura
Doṣakarma	: Tridoṣaśāmaka.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Raktastambhana, Dāhapraśamana Kuṣṭhaghna, Kṛmighna Anulomana-Mṛdurecana Śoṇitasthāpana, Śothahara, Mūtrala Kaphaniḥsāraka, Jvaraghna, Balya Arśoghna, Kaṇḍūghna.
Roga	: Bāhyakṛmi-Jantu upasarga Raktasrāva, Vraṇa, Dāha, Kaṇḍū Dadru-tvagvikāra, Kuṣṭha Vibandha, Raktapravāhikā Raktavikāra, Raktapitta, Galagaṇḍa Kāsa-śvāsa, Mūtrakṛcchra Jvara-dāha, Dourbalya, Śoṭha, Arśa.

Therapeutic Uses

The herb is demulcent and refrigerant; and it is given in dysuria. It is used to destroy bed bugs.

Roots are useful as emollient, laxative and diuretic. The leaves are useful to apply in the form as poultice to haemorrhoids; they are mixed with rose water and sugar given in asthma and cough. They are given with rice and cocoanut milk in dysentery.

Ashes are applied to ringworm of the scalp. The juice of the leaves is boiled coconut oil and the preparation used externally to the skin diseases.

The juice of the plant or leaves is applied to check haemorrhage as a haemostatic remedy. The paste of leaves is applied to the ulcers and local burning sensation. Ash of plant is applied to ringworm, itch, scabies and similar skin affections. Ash is given orally with cow-urine in treatment of goitre; and both internally and externally the herb is prescribed in goitre.

The herb is internally used in cough, asthma, blood impurities, fever, oedema, scanty urine, dysuria and general debility.

Parts Used : Whole plant, Leaves.

Dose : Powder 3-5 gms.

JALAKUMBHĪ-HATHAḤ (जल कुम्भी-हठः)

- क. वारिपर्णी कुम्भिका स्याद्वारिमूली खमूलिका ।
 ख. वारिपर्णी हिमातिका लघ्वी स्वाद्वी सराकटुः ।
 दोषत्रयहरी रूक्षा शोणितज्वर शोथकृत् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Puṣpa Varga, 19-20.

गलगण्डे

जलकुम्भीकजं भस्मं पक्वं गोमूत्रगालितम् ।
 पिबेत् कोद्रवतक्राशी गलगण्डोपशातये ॥

Vṛndamādhava, 47-7.

रक्षोघ्नतैलयुक्तेन जलकुम्भीकभस्मना ।
 लेपनं गलगण्डस्य चिरोत्थस्यापि शस्यते ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Cikitsā, 44-29.

लवणं जलकुम्भीञ्च कणाचूर्णेन संयुतम् ।
 प्रभाते नित्यमश्नीयाद् गलगण्ड प्रशान्तये ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Cikitsā, 44-35.

अर्शांसि

हठस्य कैडर्यदलस्य चापि रजः सुसूक्ष्मे मधुनाऽवलीढम् ।

गुदाङ्कुरोन्मूलविनाशनाय

पर्याममित्याहभिषग्वरिष्टः ॥

Vaidyamanoramā, 5-6.

कुष्ठे

हठं समूलं संचूर्ण्य प्रभाते मधुना पिबेत् ।

अष्टादशविधं कुष्ठं षण्मासाञ्जयति ध्रुवम् ॥

Vaidyamanoramā, 11-35.

JALAPIPPALĪ

Botanical Names : Lippia nodiflora Mich

Family : Verbenaceae

Classical Name : Jalapippalī

Sanskrit Names

Jalapippalī, Toyapippalī, Jalapippalikā, Śakulādinī, Śāradī, Matsyagandhā, Matsyādani, Lāngalī.

Regional Names

Bhuiokra, Jalapipal, Jalpipari (Hindi); Ratolia (Bomb.); Tan (Daccan); Ratoliya, Ratuliya (Guj.); Kattutippali (Mal.); Jalpimpali (Mar.); Podutalei (Tam.); Bokenaku, Bokkena (Tel.); Bukkan (Uriya); Bakan, Bukkan buti, Jalnim (Punj.)

Description

A creeping perennial herb; stems rooting at the nodes, much-branched, subquadrangular, more or less clothed with appressed, medifixed, white hairs, sometimes nearly glabrous.

Leavés opposite, subsessile, 2-3.2 by 1.2 cm., spathulate, cuneate at the base, rounded at the apex, deeply and sharply serrate in the upper part, appressedly hairy on both sides with medifixed white hairs.

Flower sessile, densnely packed in long-pedunculate axillary heads which are at first globose, afterwards elongate and becoming spicate and oblong in fruit; peduncles 2.5-7.5 cm. long, usually from the axil of one only of each pair

of leaves; bracts 2.5 mm. long, broadly elliptic or obovate with a somewhat cuneate base, mucronate, glabrous.

Calyx 2 mm. long, membranous, deeply 2-lobed, compressed, mitreshaped, pubescent on the back with basifixed hairs closely covering the fruit. The 2 acuminate lobes projecting beyond it. Corolla 2.5-3 mm. long, white or pale pink, pushed off as a calyptra by the ripening fruit. 2-lipped; upper lip erect, bifid; lower lip 3-lobed, the middle lobe the largest.

Fruit 1.5 mm. long, globose-oblong, dry, splitting into two 1-seeded plano-convex glabrous pyrenes.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Springs to autumn season.

Distribution

It is found throughout India; mostly tropical and sub-tropical regions.

Chemical Composition

It contains bitter substance isolated from the plant.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṭu, Tikta, Kaṣāya
Guṇa	: Laghu, Tikṣṇa
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphapittaśāmaka, Vātajanana.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Dāhapraśamana, Cakṣuṣya Raktapittahara, Dīpana, Rochan Sangrāhi, Vraṇaropaṇa, Kaṇḍūghna Śukrala, Mūtrajanana, Śothahara.
Roga	: Agnimāndya, Arocaka, Āmātisāra Udaravikāra, Raktadoṣa Kaṇḍū-Tvagvikāra, Vraṇa Netravikāra.

Therapeutic Uses

Whole plant is useful as febrifuge and diuretic. Herb is ground and made into a poultice used as maturant for boils.

An infusion of the leaves and tender stalks is given to children in indigestion and bowel complaints. It is also used in mothers after delivery.

Herb is used in blood impurities, eye complaints, urinary troubles, haemorrhage, burning sensation and skin affections.

JALAPIPPALĪ (जलपिप्पली)

- क. जलपिप्पल्यभिहिता शारदी शकुलादनी ।
मत्स्यादनी मत्स्यगन्धा लाङ्गलीत्यपि कीर्तिता ॥
- ख. जलपिप्पलिका हृद्य चक्षुष्या शुक्रला लघुः ॥
संग्राहिणी हिमारूक्षा रक्तदाहव्रणापहा ।
कटुपाक रसा रुच्या कषाया वह्निवर्धिनी ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Nighaṇṭu, Guḍūcyādi Varga, 295-296.

- क. तोयपिप्पलील्यभिहिता शारदी शकुलादनी ॥
(मत्स्यादनी मत्स्यगन्धा लाङ्गलीत्यपि कीर्तिता)
गण्डूपदी तोयवल्ली लाङ्गली कञ्चटं मतम् ।
- ख. कञ्चटं शीतलं तिक्तं कषायं वातलं लघु ॥
कटुपाकरसं रूक्षं हृद्यं रुच्याग्निवर्धनम् ।
तीक्ष्णं संग्राहि चक्षुष्यं दोषदाहव्रणास्रजित् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 730-732.

JAMBĪRA

Botanical Name

Citrus limon (L.) Burm.

Citrus medica var. limonum.

Family : Rutaceae

Classical Name : Jambīra

Sanskrit Names

Jambīra, Dantaśaṭha, Jambha-jambhīra-Jambhīla,
Jambhala, Rocanaka, Mukhaśodhī, Jantujit.

Regional Names

Jambiri Nibu, Jamiri (Hindi); Karmnebu (Bengla); Goddim limbu (Guj.); Gadlimbu (Marathi); The Lemon of India (English).

Description

Tree is almost similar to tree of Nimbuka (*Citrus medica* var. *acida*). Fruit pericarp thick.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Summers and onwards different seasons.

Distribution

It is found throughout India.

Chemical Composition

The fruit juice contain high content of citric acid; Juice 100 c.c. contains approximate 3.7 percent of acid. Pericarp of fruit yields yellowish volatile oil.

Kinds and Varieties

There are two varieties of the fruits based on shape and size such as Brhat (large fruit) and Laghu (small fruit) which is known as Svalpa Jumbīra or Jambīrikā. Madhujambīra is specifically described in classical text.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Amla
Guṇa	: Guru, Tikṣṇa
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Amla
Doṣakarma	: Kaphavātaśāmaka.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Rocana (hṛdya) Dīpana-pācana-anulomana Pittasāraka, Kṛmighna, Hṛdya Kaphaniḥsarak.
Roga	: Aruci-agnimāndya-ajīrṇa-vibandha Tṛṣṇā-vamana, Yakṛdvikāra Kṛmiroga, Hṛcchūla, Kāsa-śvāsa.

Therapeutic Uses

It is stomachic, carminative, cholagogue, anthelmintic, cardiac tonic and expectorant. It is useful in dyspepsia,

flatulence, thirst, vomiting, cardiac pain, liver complaints, biliousness, cough, asthma and worms. It is used in ear complaint (otorrhoea), measles and hyperacidity.

Parts Used

Fruit, Fruit pericarp, Leaves.

Dose

Juice 3-5 ml. , Decoction (Pericarp) 50-100 gms.

JAMBĪRA (जम्बीर)

- क. स्याज्जम्बीरो दन्तशठो जम्भजम्भीर जम्भलः ।
 ख. जम्बीरमुष्णं गुर्वम्लं वातश्लेष्म विबन्धनुत् ॥
 शूलकासकफोत्कलेशच्छर्दितृष्णाऽऽमदोषाजित् ॥
 आस्यवैरस्यहृत्पीडावह्निमांघ्रिक्रीन् हरेत् ॥
 ग. स्वल्पजम्बीरिका तद्वृष्णाच्छर्दि निवारिणी ।

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Āmrādiphala Varga, 134-135.

- अ. जम्बीरो जम्भलो जम्भो जम्भीलो दन्तहर्षणः ।
 द्विजकेतुर्दन्तशठो गम्भीरो रोचनो मतः ॥
 वक्त्रशोधी चारुफलो दन्तकेतुर्द्विजेन्द्रकः ।
 ब. जम्बीरमुष्णं गुर्वम्लं वातश्लेष्म विबन्धनुत् ॥
 शूलकासकफोत्कलेशच्छर्दि तृष्णामदोषजित् ।
 आस्यवैरस्यहृत्पीडाजन्तुघ्नं पित्तकोपनम् ॥

जम्बीर पत्रम्

- स. पत्रं जम्बीरजं तीक्ष्णं कृमिवातकफापहम् ।
 सुरभि दीपनं रुच्यं मुखवैशद्यकारकम् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Ośadhi Varga, 315-318.

जम्बीरः

जम्बीरो दन्तशठो जम्भो जम्भीर जम्भली चैव ।
 रोचनको मुखशोधी जाड्यारिर्जन्तुजिन्नवधा ॥

जम्बीर (फल) गुणः

जम्बीरस्य फलं रसेऽम्लमधुरं वातापहं पित्तकृत् ।
 पथ्यं पाचन रोचनं बलकरं वह्नेर्विवृद्धिप्रदम् ॥

पक्कश्चेन्मधुरं कफार्तिशमनं पित्तास्त्रदोषापनुत् ।
वर्ण्यं वीर्यं विवर्द्धनञ्च रुचिकृत्पुष्टिप्रदं तर्पणम् ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Āmrādi Varga, 175-176.

मधुजम्बीरः

अन्यो मधुजम्बीरो मधुजम्भो मधुरजम्भलश्चैव ।
शङ्खद्रावी शर्करकः पित्तद्रावी च षट्संज्ञः ॥

मधुजम्बीरगुणः

मधुरो मधुजम्बीरः शिशिरः कफपित्तनुत् ।
शोषघ्नस्तर्पणो वृष्यः श्रमघ्नः पुष्टिकारकः ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Āmrādi Varga, 177-178.

कर्णशूले

‘जम्बीरनीरशृततैलमपि प्रशस्तं कर्णे
सशूलिनि रहस्यपराङ्मुखे च ।’

Vaidyamanoramā, 16-61.

घृताजीर्णे

‘घृतस्य परिपाकाय जम्बीरस्य रसोहितः ।’

Bhāvaprakāśa, Cikitsā, 6-129.

मसूरिकायाम्

जम्बीरनीरपरिपीत गुडं नराणामारम्भकालसमयेषु मसूरिकार्तिम् ।
सद्यः शमं नयति गोपयसा प्रभाते ॥

Vaidyamanoramā, 11-19.

अम्लपित्ते

जम्बीरस्वरसः पीतः सायं हन्त्यम्लपित्तकम् ।

Cakradatta, 52-21.

JAMBŪ

Botanical Name

Syzygium cumini (Linn.) Skeels.

Eugenia jambolana Lam.

Family : Myrtaceae

Classical name : Jambū

Sanskrit Names

Jambū, Mahāphala, Phalendra, Surabhipatra, Nīlaphala, Śyāmalā.

Regional names

Jamun (Hindi.), Kala Jam (Beng.), Jamulu (Punj.), Jammul (Marathi), Jambu (Gujrati), Shambu (Tamil), Neredu (Telugu), Jambul, Black Berry, Black Plum, (English).

Description

A large evergreen glabrous tree up to 3.6 meters girth and 30 meters high. Bark pale yellow, slightly rough on old stems with shallow cracks and depressions exfoliating in woody scales.

Blaze 3.8 cm. fibrous, red or pinkish brown, the juice turning purplish black on the blade of a knife.

Leaves very variable, usually 7.5-1.5 by 3.8-6.3 cm. lanceolate elliptic-oblong or broadly ovate-elliptic, acute, acuminate or subobtuse, coriaceous, smooth and shining above, with numerous close parallel fine secondary nerves uniting to form an intramarginal vein. Petiole 8-25 mm. long, channelled.

Flowers 7.5-13 mm. across, whitish, fragrant, sessile, arranged mostly in threes in trichomatous panicles 3.8-10 cm. long which usually appear from the scars of fallen leaves, but sometimes in the leaf-axils. Calyx-tube 2.5-5 mm. long, turbinate; limb truncate; or obscurely 4. lobed Petals united into a thin membranous calyptra.

Fruit variable in size up to 2.5 cm. long, ellipsoid or oblong, crowned with the truncate calyx-limb, black with pink juicy pulp.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Spring to summers or pre-monsoon season.

Distribution

It is found throughout India; it is very often planted.

Kinds and Varieties

There are several kinds of Jambu. Classically speaking, some varieties of Jambu are mentioned in the texts such as :

- a) Mahat Jambū Phalam
- b) Rāja Jambū Phalam
- c) Jalajambuka
- d) Kākajambū-Nadījambū
- e) Bhūmijambū
- f) Kṣudrajambū

The types or varieties are generally based on habit and habitat, wild and cultivate state, and their fruits characteristics differ accordingly. Practically small fruits contain pulpy material in little quantity when big fruits are more pulpy and delicious which are marketed as a common edible fruits.

Chemical Composition

Flowers contain two triterpene acids, oleanolic acid and crategelic acid (maslinic acid).

Seeds contain a glucoside Jumboline, phenolic matter (Ellagic acid), yellowish aromatic essential oil, colourless substance, fat, resin, gallic acid, albumin and other substances.

Bark contains 12% and a gum.

Pharmacodynamics

- | | |
|-----------|---------------------------------|
| Raṣa | : Kaṣāya, madhura, amla |
| Guṇa | : Laghu, Rūkṣa |
| Vīrya | : Śīta |
| Vipāka | : Madhura |
| Doṣakarma | : Kaphapittaśāmaka, Vātajanana. |

Action and Properties

- | | |
|--------------|---|
| Karma | : Mūtrasangrahaṇīya, Madhumehāri
Stambhana, Dāhapraśamana
Tvagdoṣahara, Dipana-pācana-
Yakṛduttejaka, Chardigrahaṇa
Raktastambhana. |
| Roga | : Madhumeha-kṣoudrameha
Prameha-Ikṣumeha-udakameha
Mūtravikāra, Agnimāndya-ajirṇa
Śūla-udaravikāra
Pravāhikā-grahaṇī=atisāra, Vamana-
Raktapitta, Raktapradara-raktātisāra |

Upadaṁsa-phiraṅga, Dāha
 Vraṇa-raktasrāva
 Sannipātajvara-Santāpa
 Kaphapaittika vikāra.

Thrapeutic Uses

It is astringent, carminative, diuretic, febrifuge and stomachic. It is useful in burning sensation, diarrhoea of children, dysentery, indigestion, loss of appetite, colic, as gargle and washes; leucorrhoea, ringworm and skin diseases.

The bark is useful as astringent, used in the preparation of astringent decoction, gargles and washes; the fresh juice is given with goat milk in the infantile diarrhoea and bowel complaints.

The juice of the leaves is useful in dysentery. Juice of the fruits is made into a vinegar which is useful as stomachic, carminative and diuretic. Fruits are useful astringent in bilious diarrhoea, vinegar is useful in Prameha diseases.

It is an esteemed drug for diabetes insipidus as well as diabetes mellitus as the seeds are effective hypoglycaemic agent. Being an anti-diabetic herbal drug, the seeds powder is recommended in diabetes for oral use. Fruits and seeds are antidiabetic and specially the seeds are much used in treatment of diabetes and glycosuria. As a single drug the seeds are given in diabetes and the seeds enter into various compounds and anti-diabetic herbal formulations.

It is one of the important anti-diabetic drugs studied.

Seeds powder is useful to reduce blood and urine sugar in diabetes.

The bark of the powder is dusted over lesion of haemorrhage and. In condition of burning sensation, the vinegar of fruits is mixed with sesame oil and it is externally applied. At the stage of delirium, burning or heating sensation and other similar symptoms, the vinegar of fruits is applied to head and forehead (wet cloth piece). The oil prepared with leaves is locally to lesions of syphilis, gonorrhoea and skin affections. The bark reduced to ashes and mixed with oil, and it is applied to burns.

The bark is acrid and astringent to the bowels, anthelmintic, it useful in sore throat, bronchitis, asthma,

thirst, biliousness, dysentery, blood impurities and ulcers. The fruits are acrid and sweet, they are cooling, dry, astringent to the bowels, they increase vāta, remove bad smell from the mouth and biliousness. The seed is sweet, astringent to the bowels and useful in diabetes and glycosuria. The sprouts are refrigerant, dry, astringent and carminative.

The ash of the leaves is used for strengthening the teeth and the gums. The fruits are sour, acrid and sweet (when ripe); they are a general tonic and tonic to the liver, enrich the blood; they strengthen the teeth and the gums and useful in bilious diarrhoea as astringent and as gargle for sore throat.

An excess intake of the fruits may cause flatulence as fruits become indigestible. The ripe fruits are sweet, tasty astringent and eaten popularly.

The juice of the ripe fruits is used in enlargement of the spleen and liver disorders; it is given in scanty or suppressed urine. The juice of the leaves and fruits is useful in ear troubles. The plant is useful in foul smell of body, vomiting (bilious) and intestinal problems.

Parts used

Fruits, Fruit-seed (stone), Bark, Leaves.

Dose

Powder 1-3 gms., Juice 20-40 ml., Decoction 50-100 ml.

Formulations (yoga)

Jambvadya Taila, Pancapallava Yoga.

Groups (gana)

Mūtrasangrahaṇīya, Purīṣa virajāṇīya, Chardini-grahaṇa, (Caraka Saṁhitā), Nyagrodhadi (Suśruta Saṁhitā) Pancapallava.

JAMBŪ (जम्बू)

जम्बूफलम्

जाम्बवं मधुरं साम्लं कषायं गुरु शीतलम् ॥
संग्राहि रोचनं रूक्षं कण्ठ्यं कफपित्तजित् ॥

विष्टम्भि लेखनं वातविबन्धाऽध्मानकृद्भृशम् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 349-350.

महत्जम्बू फलम्

महत्तन्मधुरं स्निग्धं गुरु विष्टम्भि रोचनम् ।

शीता तिक्तरसा दाहाशमनी जलजम्बुका ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 351.

‘जम्बू रूक्षा कषायाम्ला कफपित्तातीसारजित् ।’

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 349.

राजजम्बूफलम्

‘राजजम्बूफलं स्वादु विष्टम्भि गुरु रोचनम् ।’

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Āmrādīphala, Varga, 69.

जलजम्बुकः

‘जम्बुः संग्राहिणी रूक्षा कफपित्तास्रदाहजित् ।’

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Āmrādīphala, Varga, 70.

जम्बूगुणाः

जम्बूः कषायमधुराश्रमपित्ताह-
कण्ठार्ति शोथशमनी क्रिमिदोषहन्त्री ।
श्वासातिसारकफकासविनाशिनी च
विष्टम्भिनी भवति रोचन पाचनी च ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Āmrādi Varga, 25.

काकजम्बू गुणाः

काकजम्बूः कषायाम्ला पाके तु मधुरा गुरुः ।

दाहश्रमातिसारघ्नी वीर्यपुष्टिबलप्रदा ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Āmrādi Varga, 29.

भूमिजम्बू गुणाः

भूमिजम्बूः कषायाः च मधुरा श्लेष्मपित्तनुत् ।

हृद्य संग्राहिहृत्कण्ठ-दोषघ्नी वीर्यपुष्टिदा ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Āmrādi Varga, 31.

जम्बूफलमज्जा गुणाः

‘तन्मज्जा तुवरो ग्राही विशेषान्मधुमेहहा ।’

Nighaṇṭu Ratnākara.

‘जाम्बवं कफपित्तन्नं ग्राहि वातकरं परम् ।’

Carak Samhitā, Sūtra. 27-134.

‘अत्यर्थं वातलं ग्राहि जाम्बवं कफपित्तजित् ।’

Suśruta Samhitā, Sūtra. 46-165.

जाम्बवं वातलं ग्राहि स्वाद्वम्लं कफवातजित् ।

हृत्कण्ठघर्षणं चान्यत् कषायं क्षुद्रजाम्बवम् ॥

Dhanvantari Nighaṅṭu.

अतिसारे

शोणितस्रुतिवारणार्थम्

शल्लकीबदरीजम्बू.....त्वचः ।

पीताः क्षीरेण मध्वाढ्या पृथक् शोणित नाशनाः ॥

Cakradatta, 3-69.

बालग्रहण्याम्

‘तद्वदजाक्षीरसमो जम्बूत्वगुद्भवो रसः ।’

Cakradatta, Bālarogacikitsāyām, 64-46.

देहदौर्गन्ध्ये

‘ऐषोऽङ्गरागः कथितोऽङ्गनानां जम्ब्याः कषायस्तु नराधिपानाम् ।’

Bhāvaprakāśa, Sthoulyādhikāra, 39-76,

कृमिकर्णके

जम्बूपत्रं फलं पक्वं तद्रसेनाति पूरितात् ।

पतन्ति कृमयः कर्णात् दुर्विनीता इवाषदि ॥

Śoḍhala, karṇarogādhikāra. Gadanigraha, 3-2-66.

प्रदरे

‘काकजम्बूकमूलं वा..... ।

पाण्डुप्रदरशान्त्यर्थं पाययेत्तण्डुलाम्बुना ।’

Śoḍhala, Pradarādhikāra.

पित्तजे वमने

जम्ब्वाम्रयोः पल्लवजं कषायम् ।

पिबेत् सुशीतं मधुसंयुतं वा ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 26-28.

व्रणरोपणार्थम्

‘.....लोध्रजाम्बवकट्फलैः ।
त्वचमाश्वेव गृह्णन्ति त्वकचूर्णेश्चूर्णिताः व्रणाः ।’

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 25-113.

कुकूणके वर्त्मनः प्रक्षालन परिषेकार्थम्

‘जाम्बवाभ्रधात्र्यणु दलैः परिधावनार्थम्’
कार्यकषायमवसेचनेमेव चापि ।’

Suśruta Samhitā, Uttara. 19-13.

रक्तपित्ते

‘पिबेच्छीतकषायं वा जम्बवाभ्राजुनसम्भवम् ।’

Suśruta Samhitā, Uttara. 45-23.

उपदंश चिकित्सायां जम्बवादि तैलम्

Bhāvaprakāśa, Madhyakhaṇḍa, 51/43-46.

रक्तातिसारे

जम्बवाभ्रामलकीनान्तु पल्लवा नथ कुट्टयेत् ।
संगृह्य स्वरसं तेषामजाक्षीरेण योजयेत् ॥
तं पिबेत् मधुनां युक्तं रक्तातीसारनाशनम् ॥

Cakradatta, 3-68.

छर्द्याम्

‘जम्बवाभ्रयोः पल्लवजं कषायं पिबेत्
सुशीतं मधुसंयुतं वा ।’

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 20-30.

जम्बवाभ्रपल्लवशृतं शौद्रं दत्त्वा सुशीतलं तोयम् ।
लाजैरवचूर्ण्यं पिबेच्छर्द्यतिसारे परं सिद्धम् ॥

Vṛndamādhava, 15-24.

अग्निमान्द्ये

‘जम्बूरसः, जाम्बवशुक्तम् ।’

Siddha Bhaiṣajya Maṇimālā, 4-267/71.

व्यङ्गे

जम्बवाभ्रपल्लवाः मस्तु हरिद्रे द्वे नवोगुडः ।

लेपः सवर्णकृत् पिष्टं स्वरसेन च तिन्दुकम् ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Uttara, 32-22.

JAPĀ

Botanical Name : *Hibiscus rosa-sinensis* Linn.

Family : Malvaceae

Classical Name : Japā

Sanskrit Names

Arkapriya, Aruṇā, Harivallabha, Trisandhyā, Prātikā, Raktapuṣpī, Oṇḍrapuṣpa-oḍrapuṣpa-odraka, Javā-japā, Javāpuṣpa-Japāpuṣpa, Piṇḍapuspā.

Regional Names

Gudahal, Gurahal, Java, Odahul (Hindi); Java (Beng.).

Description

Arborescent; stem without prickles.

Leaves short-petioled, ovate or ovate-lanceolate, more or less acuminate, irregularly and coarsely serrate towards the top, entire near the base, glabrous on both sides or with a few minute stellate hairs on the nerves beneath; stipules lanceolate-subulate, glabrous. Pedicels axillary, solitary, very long, as long as, or longer than the leaves, jointed above the middle.

Involucral bracts 5-7, about half as long as the calyx, lanceolate, glabrous. Calyx-divided almost to the middle, puberulous with very minute stellate hairs, lobes 2 cm. long, lanceolate. Corolla 7.5 cm. diam., tubular below, red; petals thrice as long as the calyx. Staminal tube exerted far beyond the petals.

Flowers colour, size and appearance specially colour with variation in an extremely variable species (among two cultivated species of the genus *Hibiscus* and *Hibiscus rosasinensis* Linn. is distinguishing basically with corolla 7.3 cm. diam. and red colour generally, when *Hibiscus mutabilis* Linn. with corolla 7.5-10 cm. diam. and flower in white or

pink colour), since they are single or double forms as to colour the flowers may be orange, yellow, crimson, bright red, magenta, and parti-coloured.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Different seasons. Winter to autumn season.

Distribution

It is commonly cultivated in the gardens in India as an ornamental plant for showy flowers.

Kinds and Varietis

There are certain varieties based on flower-colour viz. rakta (red), nīla (blue), pīta (yellow) and śveta (white).

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṣāya, Madhura
Guṇa	: Laghu, Snigdha
Vīrya	: Śīta
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphapittaśāmaka.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Raktastambhana-śoṇitāsthāpana Stambhana-sangrāhi Soumanasyajanana-mastiṣkabalya Hṛdya, Vṛṣya, Mūtrajanana, Jvaraghna Raktarodhaka, Keśya, Viṣaghna Garbhanirodhaka, Ārtavajanana Dhātuvivardhana, Dāhapraśamana.
--------------	--

Roga	: Khālitya-pālitya-keśavikāra Kṣata, Śīroroga, Mastiṣkadourbalya Unmāda, Raktātisāra, Raktārśa Hṛdroga, Raktapitta, Raktavikāra Śukradourbalya, Pūyameha- prameha, Pradara-asṛgadara, Jvara Rajaḥkṛchra.
-------------	--

Therapeutic Uses

The flowers are ground in cow-urine and the paste is applied over head in loss of hairs and condition of grey hairs.

Flowers are frequently employed to prepare hair oils. The oil prepared with the flowers is applied to diseases of head.

The flowers are used in treatment of heart troubles, haemorrhage, leucorrhoea, spermatorrhoea, haemorrhoids, blood dysentery, seminal abnormality, urinary disorders, insomnia, insanity, mental weakness and scanty and painful menstruation.

The flowers are considered useful for oral use in females desiring contraception; various recipes are suggested as the anti-fertility drug, since certain formulae are mentioned in classical texts.

JAPĀ (जपा)

- क. जपाख्या ओङ्काख्या च रक्तपुष्पी जवा च सा ।
अर्कप्रिया रक्तपुष्पी प्रातिका हरिवल्लभा ॥
- ख. जपा तु कटुरुष्णा स्यादिन्द्रलुप्तनाशकृत् ।
विच्छर्दिजन्तुजननी सूर्याराधनसाधनी ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Karavirādi Varga, 121-122.

जपापुष्पं जवापुष्पं मोण्डपुष्पं जवा जपा ॥
पिण्डपुष्पं हेमपुष्पं त्रिसंध्या त्वरुणासिता ।
त्रिसंध्या शीतला तिक्ता विषपित्तकफापहा ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 1521-1522.

‘जपा संग्राहिणी केश्या त्रिसंध्या कफवातजित् ।’
हृद्या संग्राहिणी केश्या कफमारुतजिज्जपा ।

Bhāvaprakāśa, Siddha Bhaiṣajya Maṅimālā.

जपा

जपा शीता च मधुरा स्निग्धा पुष्टिप्रदा मता ।
गर्भवृद्धिकरी ग्राही केश्या जन्तुप्रदा मता ॥
वातजन्तुकरा दाहप्रमेहार्शोविनाशिनी ।
धातुरुकप्रदरं चेन्द्रलुप्तं चैव विनाशयेत् ॥

जपापुष्पम्

जपापुष्पं लघु ग्राहि तिक्तं केशविवर्धनम् ।

Nighaṅṭu Ratnākara.

इन्द्रलुप्तै

कृष्णगवीमूत्रयुतैः पिष्टैरालेपितैः जपाकुसुमैः ।
शतमखलुप्तं नश्यति भवन्ति केशाश्च तत्र घनाः ॥

Rāja Mārtaṇḍa.

प्रदरे

कलिकाः क्षीरसंपिष्टा जपा विटपजाः पिबेत् ।
दश द्वादश वानारी प्रदरार्ता पयोऽशिनी ॥

Śodhala, Gadanigraha, 6-1-43.

केशानां कृष्णीकरणे

भृङ्गपुष्पं जपा पुष्पं मेषीदुग्धप्रपेषितम् ।
तेनैवालोडितं लोहपात्रस्थं भूम्यधःकृतम् ॥
ससाहादुद्धृतं पश्चाद्भृङ्गराजरसेन तु ।
प्रातस्तु स्वखालनं कार्यमेवं स्यान्मूर्धरञ्जनम् ॥

गर्भनिरोधे-गर्भानास्थापकयोगः

आरनालपरिपेषितं त्र्यहं या जपाकुसुमर्तिं पुष्पिणी ।
सत्पुराणगुडमुष्टिसेविनी सन्दधाति न हि गर्भमङ्गना ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Yonirogādhikāra, 70-34.

नष्ट-कृच्छ्रात्तविकारेषु रजःस्रावार्थं भृष्टजवापुष्पसेवनम्

‘सकाञ्जिकं जवापुष्पं भृष्टं..... ।
सम्प्राश्य न चिरादेव वनितात्वार्त्तवं लभेत् ॥’

Cakradatta, Yonivyapaccikitsā, 62-22.

पालित्ये

लोहमलामलामलकल्कैः सजपापुष्पैर्नरः सदास्नायी ।
पलितानीह न पश्यति गङ्गास्नायीव नरकाणि ॥

Vṛndamādhava, 57-91.

पूयमेहे

जलं जपागोक्षुरयोः सपर्णया विलोलवेदन्यतरस्यशाखया ।
यदा भवेन् मन्दधीव तच्छूलथं तदा निपीतंस्मृतमुष्णवातनुत् ॥

Siddabhaisajya Maṇimālā, 4-813.

JATĀMĀṢĪ

Botanical Name : *Nardostachys jatamansi* Dc.

Family : Valerianaceae

Classical Name : Jaṭāmāṣī

Sanskrit Names

Jaṭāmāṣī, Māṣī, Jaṭilā, Surabhi, Tapasvinī, Sulomaśā, Naladā, Bhūtajatā.

Regional Names

Balchhad, jatamansi (Hindi.); Jatamansi (Guj. Marathi), Bhujata (camarese); Sumbulutik, Sumbule Hindi (Arabic); Narad Hindi (Persian); Indian Valerian, Indian Spikenard; Jatamansi (Eng.).

Description

Herb with woody rootstock, long, stout, covered with fibres from the petioles of withered leaves. Stem 10-60 cm., more or less pubescent upwards, often glabrate below, subscapose.

Radical leaves 15-20 by 2.5 cm., longitudinally nerved, glabrous or slightly pubescent, narrowed into the petiole; cauline 1 or 2 parts, 2.5-7.5 cm. long, sessile, oblong or subovate.

Flower-heads usually 1, 3 or 5; bracts 6 mm. oblong, usually pubescent. Corolla-tube 6 mm. long somewhat hairy within, or filaments below.

Fruit 4 mm. long, covered with ascending white hairs, crowned by the ovate, acute, often dentate calyx teeth.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Rainy season to autumn season.

Distribution

It is found in the alpine regions of Himalayas, ascending eastwards Kumaon to Sikkim regions.

Chemical Composition

Roots contain a crystalline acid and Jatamansic acid. A new oxide, hydrocarbons, a polyoxygenated crystalline solid together with A-endesmol, B-eudesmol, ethenol,

angelicin, 4-hydroxythymol dimethyl ether. Roots yield an essential oil, which has weak anti-bacterial and anti-protzoal activities.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Tikta, Kaṣāya, Madhura
Guṇa	: Laghu, Snigdha, Tikṣṇa
Vīrya	: Śīta
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphapittaśāmaka, Tridoṣahara.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Bhūtaghna (mānāsadoṣahara) Sajañāsthāpana, Varṇya, Balya Vedanāsthāpana, Uttjaka Dāhapraśamana, Varṇya Dīpana-pācana-anulomana Yakṛduttejaka-pittasāraka Hṛdya-Hṛdayottejaka Raktavāhinīsamkocaka Raktastambhana, Śoṭhahara Kaphaniḥsāraka, Mūtrajanana Vājikaraṇa, Ārtavajanana Keśya-keśavardhana.
Roga	: Unmāda-apasmāra, Apatantraka Mūrchā, Smṛtihrāsa Mastiṣkadourbalya, Śiraḥśūla Agnimāndya-anāha-udaraśūla Bhūtābhiṣaṅga Hṛdvikāra-hṛddrava-hṛtsāithilya Raktavikāra, Keśa-varṇavikāra Sarvāṅgaśoṭha, Mūtrakṛchra-bastiśoṭha Kāsa-śvāsa, Klaihya-ārtavajanana Rajaḥkṛchra-garbhāśayaśoṭha Kuṣṭhaghna-Carmaroga, Visarpa Dourbalya, Sannipāta jvara Śoṭha-śūla-dāha.

Therapeutic Uses

It is antiseptic, appetizer, aromatic, carminative, deobstruent, diuretic, emmenagogue, expectorant, nervine,

tonic, sedative to spinal cord, stimulant, tonic, tranquilizer and vermifuge.

It is useful in high blood pressure, cold and cough, colic, diabetes insipidus, diarrhoea, digestive and respiratory disorders, distribution of the flow of blood, dysmenorrhoea, epilepsy, erysipelas, flatulence, headache, nervousness, hysterical convulsions, leprosy, nervous excitement, palpitation of heart and ailing or abnormalities of the hairs.

It is a good promotive, protective and restorative herbal material much used as a hair tonic in preparation of the hair oils which are of both preventive and curative utility considered quite useful for hair, health, based on ethnobotanical as well as classical sources, since in the local hilly areas (where it naturally grows) the herb is frequently employed to prepare hair oil, and it is utilised in pharmaceuticals and cosmetics in formulating hair oils, hair washes as well as skin health.

As a cosmetic herbal drug, it is used to promote and protect skin health to make it lustrous and full of complexion; the paste, oil and other, suitable formulations used as skin cosmetics, this herb is employed.

The rhizome of the herb is an esteemed, efficacious and potent drug in mental derangement, loss of memory, headache, hysteria, nervous and convulsive disorders, certain disturbances caused or related with menopause, psychological problems, excitement, psychic and imbalance, (milder forms of) delirium. It is quite effective and palliatives, to help maintain tranquility of the mind and mental normalcy. This herbal drug is employed in various herbal formulations used in medical practice for treatment of mental and nervous disorders (including Cardio-vascular system).

It is used in cholera, dysmenorrhoea, flatulence, jaundice, palpitation of heart, bronchitis, disorders of digestive system, worms, constipation, worms affections (specially thread worms), chronic headache, insomnia, impotency, general debility, nervine complaints, liver disorders, poisoning, calculous and insanity.

Parts Used : Rhizome

Dose : 1-3 gms.

Group (gāṇa)

Sajñāsthāpana (Caraka Saṁhitā).

Formulations (yoga)

Māṁsyādighṛta, Rakṣoghna ghṛta, Bhūtaghna dhūpa.

JATĀMĀMSĪ (जटामांसी)

मांसी स्वाद्वी हिमा तिक्ता तुवरा बलकान्तिदा ॥

त्रिदोषविषवीसर्पदाह लोहित कुष्ठनुत् ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 1364-1365.

मांसी तिक्ता कषाया च मेध्या कान्ति बलप्रदा ।

स्वाद्वी हिमा त्रिदोषास्रदाहवीसर्पकुष्ठनुत् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Karṣṭūrādi Varga, 89.

जटामांसी-मांसी (जटिला)

सुरभिस्तु जटामांसी कषाया कटुशीतला ।

कफश्चद्रूतदाहघ्नी पित्तघ्नी मोदकान्तिकृत् ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Candanādi Varga, 95.

गन्धमांसी

गन्धमांसी तिक्तशीता कफकण्ठामयापहा ।

रक्तपित्तहरा वर्ण्या विषभूत ज्वरापहा ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Candanādi Varga, 97.

गन्धमांसी

अभ्र मांसी हिमा शोफ व्रणनाडीरुजापहा ।

लूतागर्दभजालादि-हरिणी वर्णकारिणी ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Candanādi Varga, 99.

जटामांसी तु तुवरा शीतला कान्तिकारका ।

बल्या कट्वी स्वादुतिक्ता कफान्तर्दाहपित्तहा ॥

विसर्पकुष्ठत्वग्दोषभूतबाधाज्वरापहा ।

दाहं त्रिदोषं वातं च रक्तदोषं विषं हरेत् ॥

Nighaṅṭu, Sangraha.

मांस्यादि कण्डूहर योगः

Cakradatta, Kuṣṭha Cikitsā, 50-49.

कुमाररसायने

‘क्षीराहारासभ.....मांसी.....शिशोर्भवन्ति ।’

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Śārīra, 10-45.

हिक्काश्वासयोः

धूमवर्ती

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 17-78.

कुष्ठे

‘मांसी.....कुष्ठहरलेपः ॥’

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 7-87.

अर्शासि

हीवेरादिघृते ।

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 14-230/231.

चाङ्गेरीघृते ।

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Cikitsā, 8-131/133.

वातिकशोथे

बहिःपरिमार्जने ।

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 12-65.

कासे

‘.....मांसी.....पिबेत् ।

धूमं तस्यानु च क्षीरं सुखोष्णं सगुडं पिबेत् ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 18-61.

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Uttara, 52-22.

उन्मादे

महापैशाचिक घृतम् ।

Caraka Saṁhitā, 9-45/48.

अपस्मारे

अभ्यञ्जनतैलम् ।

Caraka Saṁhitā, 10-34/36.

नेत्ररोगे

वक्राद्यञ्जने ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Uttara, 18-98/99.

मांस्याद्यञ्जने

Aṣṭāṅga Hr̥daya, Uttara, 13-23/24.

कुलत्थादि घृतम्

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Uttara, 61-28.

भग्ने

गन्धतैले ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 3-55/66.

भूतप्रतिषेधे

भूतघ्नधूपे ।

Aṣṭāṅga, Hr̥daya Uttara, 5-18.

मुखरोगे

खदिरादिगुटिका तैलञ्च ।

Caraka Saṁhitā, 26-206/214.

सैहिक धूमे ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 22-69.

विषे

महासुगन्ध्यगदे ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Kalpa, 6-14/27.

मृतसञ्जीवनागदे ।

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 23-54.

ऋषभागदे ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Kalpa, 5-68/72.

क्षारागदे ।

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 23-102.

दूषीविषार्यगदे ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Kalpa, 2-51/52.

वातरक्ते

मधुपर्ण्यादि तैले ।

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 26-92.

महापद्मतैले ।

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsa, 29-112.

वातव्याधौ

बला तैले ।

अमृताद्य तैले ।

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā. 28-153, 158.

अश्मर्याम्

त्रुट्यादि योगे ।

Caraka Samhitā, Cikitsā, 26-65.

केशवर्धनार्थम्

‘मांसी.....

नीलमुत्पलम् ।

क्षौद्रञ्च क्षीरपिष्टानि केशसंवर्धनं परम् ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Uttara, 24-46.

JĀTĪ

Botanical Name

Jasminum officinale Linn.

forma *grandiflora* (Linn.)

Kobuski

Jasminum grandiflorum Linn.

Family : Oleaceae

Classical Name : Jātī

Sanskrit Names

Jātī-jāti, Sumanā, Mālatī, Rājaputrikā, Cetikā, Hṛdyagandhā.

Regional Names

Chameli, Chambeli (Hindi); Chambeli (Urdu); Jaji, Mālti (Telugu); Champeli (Uriya); Kodimallagai, Pichi (Tamil); Ajjige, Ajuge (Canarese); Jati (Bengala); Catalonian Jasmine, Spanish jasmine (English).

Description

A large twining nearly glabrous shrub, often seen suberect, branches striate.

Leaves opposite, imparipinnate, 5-12.5 cm. long, petiole and rachis margined. Leaflets 7-11, the terminal 2.5-3.8 by 1.3-1.8 cm. larger than the rest but not very markedly so, rhomboid-ovate or lanceolate, acute or acuminate; the lateral ovate, usually obtuse, mucronate, the distal pair with broad connate bases often confluent with the terminal, the proximal pair shortly petiolulate, the intermediate sessile.

Flowers 3-3.8 cm. across, white, often tinged (or streaked) with pink outside, in lax, axillary and terminal cymes longer than the leaves; pedicels 1.3-2.5 cm. long; bracts, the lower often large, ovate to spatulate-oblong, foliaceous, the upper small, linear. Calyx 5-10 mm. long, glabrous, tube 2.5 mm. long or less; lobes 5, subulate, 2-8 times long as the tube. Corolla-tube 1.8-2.5 cm. long; lobes 5; elliptic or obovate. Fls. very fragrant Carpels 2.

Kinds and Varieties

There are two varieties based on the flower colour viz. Jātī (with white flower) and Svarṇajātī (with yellow flower).

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Spring season and onwards.

Distribution

It is found in sub-tropical North-West Himalayas, Kumaon, hilly parts of Rajasthan, Central India and other regions. It is often planted in the gardens.

Chemical Composition

Leaves contain resin, salicylic acid, an alkaloid jasmnine and some tannin substances. Flowers yield in aromatic essential oil. Benzyl acetate is the chief constituent of the oil from the flowers which also contains methyl anthranilate and l-linalool.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Tikta, Kaṣāya
Guṇa	: Laghu, Snigdha, Mṛdu
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Tridoṣahara.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Kuṣṭhaghna, Kaṇḍūghna Vraṇaropaṇa-vraṇaśodhana Ārtavajanana, Raktaprasādaṇa Vājikaraṇa, Soumanasyajanana Viṣaghna, Vedanāsthāpana Anulomana, Medhya, Varṇya Vātaśāmaka.
Roga	: Vraṇa-nāḍīvraṇa-vraṇaśoṭha Varṇavikāra Mukharoga-mukhapāka Kuṣṭha-kaṇḍū, Tvagvikāra Śiraḥśūla Vātavikāra-ardita-pakṣāghāta Bhrama-mūrchā-mānasa dourbalya Karṇa roga-śūla-srāva-pūtikarṇa Netravikāra Mūtrāghāta-mūtrakṛchra-aśmarī Rajorodha, Udāvarta-anāha-chardi Raktadoṣa-vikāra, Klaibya, Viṣa Dantaroga-dantaśūla, Dantanāḍī Dehadourgandhya Dāruṇaka-Indralupta.

Therapeutic Uses

The flower is acrid, bitter, with a sharp taste; heating, emetic, alexiteric, vulnerary; it is useful in stomatitis and diseases of the mouth, the head, the teeth and the eyes; it is very good in toothache, suppurations and earache; it is given in diseases of the blood, leprosy, ulcers, biliousness.

The plant is deobstruent, anthelmintic, diuretic, emmenagogue. The roots are purgative, expectorant, anthelmintic, sporofic, intoxicating. It cures headache, biliousness, paralysis and rheumatism. The flowers are bitter and with bad taste; they are tonic, purgative, alexiteric, aphrodisiac. They are useful in headache, asthma, caries of the teeth and stomatitis. The oil is bitter and good for old people; it lessens inflammation, softens the skin, tonic to the brain, aphrodisiac, anthelmintic, and they are useful for pains in the joints and the ear, and scabies.

The essential oil is considered cooling. The fresh juice of the leaves is applied to soft corns between the toes. In ulcerations or eruptions, in the mucous membrane of the mouth, the leaves are recommended to be chewed. An oil prepared with the juice of the leaves is poured into the ear in otorrhoea.

The flowers and their essence are used as an application in skin diseases, headache and weak eyes; the leaves are used in toothache. The flowers are considered bechic. The flowers are recommended for use in the treatment of snake-bite and scorpion-sting.

The flowers are favourite for garlands and other common uses of flowers, and making perfumery articles. The oil is of perfumery utility.

Parts Used : Leaves, Flowers, Roots.

Dose : Powder 3-5 gms., Decoction 50-100 ml.

Groups (gaṇa) : Kuṣṭhaghna

Formulations (yoga)

Jātyādi taila, Jātyādya ghr̥ta, jātyādi Varti.

JĀTĪ (जाती)

मालती स्वर्णजाती च

- क. जातिर्जाती च सुमना मालती राजपुत्रिका ।
चेतिका हृद्यगन्धा च सा पीता स्वर्णजातिका ॥
- ख. जातीयुगं तिक्तमुष्णं तुवरं लघु दोषजित् ।
शिरोऽक्षिमुखदन्तार्तिविषकुष्ठनिलास्रजित् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Puṣpa Varga, 27-28.

- अ. मालती सुमना जाती हृद्यगन्धा प्रियम्बदा ।
राजपुत्री रात्रिपुष्पी चेतिका तैलभाविनी ॥
- ब. मालती तुवरा तिक्ता कटूष्णा दोषनाशिनी ।
शिरोऽक्षिमुखदन्तार्ति विषकुष्ठव्रणास्रजित् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 1473-1474.

जाती

जाती सुरभिगन्धा स्यात् सुमना तु सुरप्रिया ।
चेतकी सुकुमारा तु सन्ध्यापुष्पी मनोहरा ॥
राजपुत्री मनोज्ञा च मालती तैलभाविनी ।
जनेष्टा हृद्यगन्धा च नामान्यस्याच्चतुर्दशः ॥

जातीगुणाः

मालती शीततिक्ता स्यात् कफघ्नी मुखपाकनुत् ।
कुद्वलं नेत्ररोगघ्नं व्रणविस्फोट कुष्ठनुत् ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Karavīrādi Varga, 74-76.

चम्बेली तुवरा तिक्ता व्रणकुष्ठविषास्रजित् ।
शिरोऽक्षिमुखदन्तार्तिहरा त्वग्दोषनाशिनी ॥

Nighaṅṭu Ratnākara.

चक्षुष्यं मुकुलं तस्यास्तत्पुष्पं कफपित्तजित् ।
ससुगन्धि मनोज्ञं च सर्वश्रेष्ठतमं मतम् ॥

Dhanvrtari Nighaṅṭu.

नाडीव्रण चिकित्सायां जात्यादि वर्तिका

Cakradatta, Nādivaraṇa Cikitsā, 45-8.

वराङ्गगन्धनाशार्थम्

संयोजितं चम्पक वल्कलेन जातिप्रसूनैर्मधुकाचितैश्च ।
सूर्याशुतसं घृतमङ्गनानामभ्यङ्गतो हन्ति वराङ्गगन्धम् ॥

Śodhala.

कर्णयोः शूलपूतिनाशाय

जातीपत्रयुतं पक्वं गोमूत्रं वस्त्रगालितम् ।
ईषदुष्णं भृतं कर्णे शूलपूतिविनाशनम् ॥

Śodhala.

व्रणशोधने

पक्वायां च विभिन्नायां तैलं शोधनमिष्यते ।
सुमनारुष्कराङ्कोट सप्तपर्णेषु साधितम् ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 19-14.

पूतिकर्णे

जातीपत्र रसे तैलं विपक्वं पूतिकर्णजित् ।

Cakradatta, 57-44.

मुखपाके

कार्यञ्च बहुधा नित्यं जातिपत्रस्य चर्वणम् ।

Bhāvaprakāśa.

सदाहमूत्रोष्णवेदनाशमनार्थम्

अजाक्षीरेण संमिश्रं जातिमूलं प्रपेषितम् ।

पिबेत्सदाहमूत्रोष्णवेदनाशमनं यतः ॥

Hārīta Saṁhitā.

व्रणचिकित्सायां जात्यादि घृतं तैलञ्च

Bhāvaprakāśa, Vṛnasoṭhādhikāra, 47/88-95.

दन्तनाडी चिकित्सायां जात्यादि तैलम्

Bhāvaprakāśa, Mukharogādhikāra, 66/60-62.

सामान्य मुखरोगाणां हितार्थम्

‘कार्यञ्च बहुधा नित्यं जातीपत्रस्य चर्वणम् ।’

Bhāvaprakāśa, Mukharogādhikāra, 66-58.

व्रणशोथचिकित्सायां जातिक्राद्य घृतम्

Cakradatta, Vṛnasoṭha Cikitsā, 44-74.

दारुणकेन्द्रलुमे मालत्यादि तैलम्

मालतीकरवीरानिनक्तमाल विपाचितम् ।

तैलमभ्यञ्जने शस्तमिन्द्रलुसापहं परम् ।

इदं हि त्वरितं हन्ति दारुणं नियतं नृणाम् ॥

Cakradatta, Kṣudraroga, Cikitsā, 55-94.

दन्तनाडी चिकित्सायां

जात्यादि क्वाथ गण्डूष धारणम्

‘कषायं जातीमदनकटुकास्वादुकण्टकैः ।’

Cakradatta, Mukharoga Cikitsā, 56-22.

पूतिकर्णस्त्रावहरमालती प्रयोगः

मालतिदलरसमधुना पूरितमथवा गत्रामूत्रैः ।

पूरेण मुच्यते च श्रवणयुगलं पूतिरोगेण ॥

Cakradatta, Karṇaroga Cikitsā, 57-32.

व्रणशोधने

पक्वायां च विभिन्नायां तैलं शोधनमिष्यते ।

सुमनारुष्कराङ्कोटं सप्तपर्णेषु साधितम् ॥

Suśruta Samhitā, Cikitsā, 19-14.

पूतिकर्णोपचारार्थम्

‘जातीपत्ररसे तैलं विपक्वं पूतिकर्णजित् ।’

Vṛndamādhava, 51-41; Bangasena, Karṇaroga, 90.

Gaḍanigraha, 3-2-63

छर्द्याम्

जात्याः रसः कपित्थस्य पिप्पलीमरिचान्वितः ।

क्षौद्रेण युक्तो लेहोऽयं निहन्तिच्छर्दिमुल्बणम् ॥

Vṛndamādhava, 15-17.

अश्मर्या मूत्रकृच्छे च

ग्रीष्मोत्खातं मालतीमूलमाजे क्षीरं सिद्धं शर्कराचूर्णं मिश्रम् ।

पीतं सद्यो मूत्रसंरोधजातां हन्याद् पीडां पातयेदश्मरीञ्च ॥

Rājamārtanḍa, 16-5.

कर्णरोग-पूतिकर्ण-चिकित्सायाम्

जातीदलप्रसवपीडनजेन पूर्णः कर्णो रसोनसुरभी सलिलेन वापि ।

पूत्यामयं त्यजति तत्क्षणसंप्रनष्ट तीव्रव्यथा परिचय प्रतिपत्र सौख्यः ॥

Gaḍanigraha, 6-2-61/66.

JĀTĪPHALA

Botanical Name : *Myristica fragrans* Houtt.

Family : Myristicaceae

Classical Name : Jātīphala

Sanskrit Names

Jātīphala, Mālatīphala, Jātikoś(s)a.

Regional Names

Jaiphāl (Hind.); Jati, Jaticka (Mal.), Gauzibuya (Pers.); jaipholo, (Uriya); Adipalam (Tamil); jaji (Telugu); Common Nutmeg, Falsa Aril, Fragrant Nut-tree, Mace tree, Nutmeg, True Nutmeg (English).

Description

A lofty-tree, branches slender.

Leaves coriaceous, 7.5-8.8 cm., elliptic-oblong or lanceolate, acuminate, sometimes oblanceolate, and tip caudate, abse acute, pale yellow-brown, paler with red-brown nerves beneath, nerves about 8 pairs, slender; petiole 6-13 mm.

Male flower racemes 2.5-5 cm. flowers bracteolate, 6 mm. long, ellipsoid or urceolate, nodding; males in lax slender supraaxillary racemes; bracteoles a scale under the glabrate perianth; anthers 9-12, connate in a cylndric stiptate column.

Fruit ovoid, subglobose or pyriform, 3.8-5 cm. long; fruit pulp or kernel yellowish and thick. Seed solitary, stony, about 1.5 inch long.

Seed is known as Jātiphala (jaiphal) and its aril (seed-coat) is Jātipatri (Jāvitri) which are used as Nutmeg and Mace respectively.

Kinds and Varieties

Another variety (odourless), known as Rāmpatri (seeds) and Rāmphal (fruit) obtained from botanical source *Myristica malabarica* Lam. which occurs in evergreen forests of Konkan Ghāts, Kanara, and Malabār (up to 1,000 ft.) in Southern India.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Post-rainy season.

Distribution

It is native of the Eastern Moluccas and cultivated in Malay Peninsula.

It is cultivated in Southern India as a spicuous tree in certain localities (where the climate is sufficiently hot and moist); in Malay Islands, Penang and Ceylon.

Chemical Compostion

It contains an essential oil, saponin. Dry ripe seeds contain 5 to 15% of a volatile oil and 25 to 40% of a fixed oil. Dry leaves contain 1.56% essential oil consisting of 80% a-pinene and 10% myristicin.

Seeds (nutmeg) yield 2.08% volatile oil, fixed oil, protene, fat, starch, mucilaginous matter and alkalines.

Seed-coat (mace), alike seed (nutmeg), yields volatile oil, 8-17% fixed oil, resin, fat, sugar and mucilaginous matter.

Fixed oil extracted from the seeds is named 'Butter of Nutmeg' that contains myristin, myristic acid, and an aromatic oil.

Aromatic oil (component of Nutmeg Butter) contains myristicin and myristicol.

Seeds-coat also yields an yellowish aromatic oil (smelling like seed-coat itself) which contains a chemical substance macene.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṭu, Tikta, Kaṣāya
Guṇa	: Laghu, snigdha, Tīkṣṇa
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kapha vāta śāmaka.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Grāhī, Rocana-pācana-dīpana Vātānulomana Mukhdurgandhahara-vaktravaiśadya- janana-āsyavairasyahara Pittasāraka-yakṛduttejaka Uttejaka-hṛdya Kaphaniḥsāraka-kaphaghna-Svarya Vṛṣya-ārtavajana, Kuṣṭhaghna Jvaraghna, Kaṭupouṣṭika Kaṇḍūghna, Tvacya-Varṇya Kṛmighna, Tṛṣṇanigrahaṇa Vedanāsthāpana, Ākṣepahara Vātahara, Nidrājanana Mādaka (excess dose).
--------------	--

Roga	: Atisāra-grahaṇī, Viṣūcika Tṛṣṇā-vamana, Agnimāndya-ajīrṇa Mukavairasya, Viṣṭambha Yakṛdvikāra, Anidrā-śula- vātika-nāḍivikāra Hṛdroga-hṛdruja Pīnasa-kāsa-śvāsa-hikkā-yakṣmā
-------------	--

Rajorodha-kaṣṭārtava
 Klaibya-kāmaśaitya-Dhvajabhanga
 Jvara-jvarātisāra
 Carmaroga-vyaṅga-varṇavikāra
 Vipādikā, Āmavāta, Kṛmiroga
 Viṣa, Prameha.

Therapeutic Uses

The seeds are carminative, stomachic and they are useful in flatulency, nausea and vomiting. The oil obtained from dried kernels are useful as aperient and carminative.

It is aphrodisiac, anodyne, anthelmintic, astringent, cardiac, carminative, deodorant, digestive, emmenagogue, expectorant, febrifuge, narcotic, ophthalmic, stimulant, stomachic and tonic.

It is useful in cough, cold, asthma, rhinitis, pthisis, cholera, thirst, vomiting, nausea, diarrhoea, impotency, sexual frigidity, eyesight weakness (visionary abnormalcy), flatulence, loss of appetite, indigestion, insomnia, spleen and liver obstruction, nervous disorders, headache, skin and pigmentary ailments and worms.

The medicinal properties and utility of another raw drug Mace (jātipatrī or jātikośa) are almost similar to that of main drug nutmeg (jātiphala), but it is specifically stomachic appetizer, anodyne or analgesic and promotor to skin health (pigmentation) and to check foul smell of mouth; and it has lesser action on intestinal tract (as astringent in comparison to nutmeg).

Jātiphala is an esteemed herbal drug for diseases of gastro-intestinal tract, particularly diarrhoea and its allied complaints including dyspepsia, loss of appetite, flatulence, colic, diarrhoeal chronicity, overthirst, vomiting, choleric diarrhoea and also worms affections, a powder of the seeds is given as a single drug, and it is in combination with other drugs is used in other forms; some formulations of the drug are frequently prescribed and important in treatment of diarrhoeal complaints.

In the diseases of children, the seeds is rubbed on stone-slate or its paste (in proper dose) is (mixed with water,

lukewarm water, mother's latex etc. suitably) is orally in infantile diarrhoea, diarrhoeal and bowel complaint with fever, cough, cold and chest complaints and other infantile (including belching) troubles, since it is a household remedy for infantile ailments.

The seeds paste is topically applied to headache, joints pain, skin affections, abdominal troubles (e.g. on umbilicus region in case of diarrhoea and colic) and other ailments. The oil prepared with seeds is externally applied to male genital organ (as an aphrodisiac for promoting erectability) and other parts as stimulant, joints rheumatic complaints and various other diseases. Externally the seed powder or in any other suitable form, it is used in various formulations suggested for skin affections maintaining skin health (specially face complexion).

Seeds powder is dusted over foul ulcers.

Parts Used

Seed (Jātīphala), Aril (Jātikośa-Jātīpatrī) oil.

Dose

Powder 1-2 gms., Oil 1-3 minims.

Formulations (yoga)

Jātīphalādi Cūrṇa, Jātīphalādi vaṭī, Jātīphalādi, Kvātha.

JĀTĪPHALA (जातीफल)

जातीफलं रसे तिक्तं तीक्ष्णोष्णं रोचनं लघु ।

कटुकं दीपनं हृद्यं स्वर्यं श्लेष्मानिलापहम् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Ośadhi Varga, 1327.

निहन्ति मुखवैरस्यमल दौर्गन्ध्यकृष्णता ।

कृमिकासवमिश्रासशोथपीनसहद्भुजः ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Ośadhi, Varga, 1328.

जातीपत्री

(जातीफलस्य त्वक् प्रोक्ता जातीपत्री भिषग्वरैः)

जातीपत्री कटुस्तिका लघूष्णा रुचिवर्णकृत् ।

कफकासवमिश्वासतृष्णाकृमिविषापहः ॥

—Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 1329.

जातीपत्री लघुः स्वादुः कटुष्णाः रुचिवर्णकृत् ।

कफकासवमिश्वासतृष्णाकृमिविषापहा ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Karpūrādi Varga, 57.

जातीपत्री कटुस्तिक्ता सुरभिः कफनाशनी ।

वक्त्रवैशद्यजननी जाड्यदोषविकृन्तनी ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Candanādi, Varga, 76.

जातीफल

जातीफलं रसे तिक्तं तीक्ष्णोष्णं रोचनं लघुः ।

कटुकं दीपनं ग्राहि स्वयं श्लेष्मानिलापहम् ॥

निहन्ति मुखवैरस्यं मलदौर्गन्ध्य कृष्णतः ।

कृमिकासवमिश्वास शोषपीनसहद्रुजः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Karpūrādi Varga, 54-55.

जातीफलं कषायोष्णं कटुकण्ठामयार्त्तिजित् ।

वातातिसार मेहघ्नं लघु वृष्यं च दीपनम् ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Candanādi Varga, 78.

जातीफलतैलम्

तैलं जातिफलोद्भूतं समुत्तेजनमग्निदम् ।

जीर्णातिसार शमनामाध्मानाक्षेपशूलनुत् ॥

आमवातहरं बल्यं दन्तवेष्ट्रणार्त्तिनुत् ।

Āyurveda Sangrahaḥ.

जातीकोशोऽथ कर्पूरं जातीकटुकयोः फलम् ।

.....तिक्तं कटु कफापहम् ॥

लघु तृष्णापहं वक्त्रकलेददौर्गन्ध्यनानम् ।

Suśruta Samhitā, Sutra. 46.

व्यङ्ग रोगे

‘जातीफलस्य लेपस्तु हरेद्वयङ्गञ्च नीलिकाम् ।’

Bhāvaprakāśa, Kṣudrarogādihikāra, 61-42.

राजयक्ष्मारोगे जातीफलाद्य चूर्णम्

Bhāvaprakāśa, Rājayakṣmādhikāra, 11/50-83.

क्षुद्ररोगान्तर्गतं मुखनीली व्यङ्गशमनार्थं जातीफलकल्क लेपः

‘जातीफलकल्कलेपो नीली व्यङ्गादि नाशनः ।’

Cakradatta, Kṣudraroga, Cikitsā, 55-50.

अतिसारे

जातीफलं सविश्वं जलघृष्टं शीतमेव दातव्यम् ।

वध्नाति पथ्ययुक्त्या मलं द्रवीभूतमह्नाय ॥

Siddabhaiṣajya Maṇimālā, 4-141.

तथा जातीफलं पिष्ट्वा नाभौ दद्यात् प्रलेपनम् ।

दुर्निवारमतीसारं वारयत्यनिवारितम् ॥

Bhaiṣajya Ratnāvalī, Atisāra, 30.

अतिसार चिकित्सायां लवङ्गचतुःसमःयोगे

जातीफलं त्रिदशपुष्पसमन्वितञ्च जीरञ्च टङ्कणायुतं मुनिभिः प्रणीतम् ।

एतानिमाक्षिकसित्तासाहितानि लीढ्वाः सामातिसारमखिलं गुरुमाशु हन्ति ॥

Bhaiṣajya Ratnāvalī, Atisāra, 35.

विपादिकायाम्

पिष्ट्वा जातीफलं लेपाद् विनिहन्ति विपादिकाम् ।

तद्वत् सर्जरसः क्षौद्रतिलतैलसमन्वितः ॥

Baṅgasena, Kuṣṭha, 118.

व्यङ्गे

‘जातीफलस्य लेपस्तु हरेत् व्यङ्गञ्च नीलिकाम् ।’

Bhāvaprakāśa, Cikitsā, 61-42.

‘व्यङ्गेमुखे जातीफलस्य बाह्यत्वचाऽथवा सन्ततमेव लिप्तम् ।’

Rājamārtanḍa, 5-16, Bhāvaprakāśa, Cikitsā, 61-42.

JAYANTĪ

Botanical Name

Sesbania aegyptiaca Poir.

Sesbania sesban (Linn.) Miere.

Family : Fabaceae (Papilionaceae-Leguminoseae)

Classical Name : Jayantī

Sanskrit Names

Jayantī, Jayā, Vijayā, Haritā, Sūksmamūlā, Balāmoṭā, Sūkṣmapatrā, Aparājītā, Vikrāntā.

Regional Names

Jait, jayanti, Uhencha, Jhijan, Rasin, Dhandiain, Jhijham (Hindi); Joyontri (Uriya); Jalugu, Sominta, Lingashimma, Mallasominta (Telugu); Asnaparni (Tamil); Kitannu (Malayalam); Jayat (Marathi); Rayasingani (Gujarati); Jait (Bombay); Saisaban (Arabic); Sisiban (Persian).

Description

A small soft-wooded tree of rapid growth and brief duration reaching 4.5 meters height and 15 cm. diam., young shoots striate, green, canescent.

Leaves 7.5-10 cm. long, paripinnate; rhachis shortly produced above the last pair of leaflets, not spinescent; stipules 3.8 mm. long, linear, acute, caducous. Leaflets 9-14 pairs, opposite, 1.8-2.5cm. by 3.8-6 mm., linear-oblong, entire, obtuse, often faintly apiculate, puberulous when young. minute, petiolculate.

Flowers 1.2-1.5 cm. long, yellow, in lax, slender, few-flowered; axillary racemes buds striate; pedicels filiform, 5-10 cm. long; bracts less than 2.5 mm. long; lanceolate, scarious, bracteoles setaceous, both fugacious.

Calyx 5 mm. long, campanulate, 5-nerved; teeth deltoid, subequal, shorter than the tubes. Standard orbicular, spotted with purple on the back, furnished at the base with 2 keel-like appendages which are free and falcate above, running down wing-like into the claw; keel straight, obtuse, its petals with a small recurved auricle above the claw. Stamens diadelphous; anthers uniform. Ovary stipitate; style incurved, glabrous; stigma capitate.

Pod 15-23 cm. long by 2.5-3.8 mm., pendulous, twisted, flexible, slightly torulose, sharply beaked, sutures not much thickened, septate between the seeds. Seeds 20-30.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Rains to autumn season.

Distribution

It is found throughout the tropical regions; planted in hedges and boundary of fields/farms.

Chemical Composition

Seeds yield oleous substance 2.8 percent, and they contain albuminoid 33.7 percent, Carbohydrate 18.2 percent, Celulose 28.3 percent and alkaline matter 4.8 percent.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṭu, Tikta
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarṃa	: Kaphapittaśāmaka, Tridoṣahara.

Action and Properties

Karma : Kaṇḍūghna, Kuṣṭhaghna, Jantughna
Keśya, Śōthahara, Vedenāsthāpana
Vrṇapācana, Viśaghna
Jvaraghna-svedajanana, Mehaghna
Raktaśodhana, Garbhanivāraṇa
Balya, Ārtavajanana-uttejaka
Kaṇṭhya-kaphaghna.

Roga : Tvagvikāra-kaṇḍū
Kuṣṭharoga-Śvitra
Vidrādhi-aṇḍavṛddhi-śōtha
Sandhiśōtha
Jāngama viśa-damśa-vṛścikadamśa
Keśya-khālitya-pālitya
Raktavikāra-galagaṇḍa
Prameha-Ikṣumeha-bahumūtra
Plihāroga-vṛddhi, Jvara-masūrikā
Ślaiṣmika Vikāra-svarabheda-
Pratiśyāya
Kaṣṭārtava-rajorodha
Agnimāndya-atisāra, Kṛmi.

Therapeutic Uses

The bark is astringent. Seeds are useful in diarrhoea, excessive menstrual flow. Seeds powder mixed with flour

applied to itching of the skin and other skin affections. Plant is considered useful to wounds. The paste of the leaves is slightly warmed up and the same is applied to abscess, hydrocele, inflammation of testicles, joints pain and inflammation, glandular affections and goitre. A decoction is used as a wash or lotion to ulcers. Paste of leaves is applied to head for treating hair diseases and decoction of leaves is also utilised as a hair wash.

The seeds or root are ground in water (or any other suitable liquid) and the paste is applied to poisonous insect bites or stings specially scorpion-sting. It is considered a folk remedy against the case of scorpion-sting; it is claimed that the fresh root of the plant is kept in the hand and scorpion-sting effect goes down. Alike root of Sahadevi, the roots or flowers are put on head and the fever (temperature) shows down fall, it is also claimed.

The powder of the seeds or the juice of bark is internally given in dyspepsia and diarrhoea. The decoction of bark is orally given to blood diseases and goitre. The decoction of the leaves is used in hoarseness, throat affections, cold, coryza and cough ailments. In case of relapsing coryzal tendency or chronic coryza, the leaves are cooked to vegetable which is given to patient.

In the urinary ailments specially glycosuria, diabetes inspidus and polyuria, the decoction of leaves is used. The leaves are ground and mixed with flour for preparing bread which is taken in these ailments.

The flowers are orally recommended as an antiferility herbal remedy which carries classical base in textual sources. Seeds are prescribed to treat scanty or painful menstruation.

The roots are used with milk in treatment of leprosy, leucoderma and similar affections. The seeds (20-25) are macerated with cow-butter (goughṛta) and given orally as a preventive treatment of the measles.

The roots are useful in general debility. Decoction of the roots or bark is given to counter poisons.

Parts Used

Root, Bark, Leaves, Flowers, Fruit (pod)-seeds.

Dose

Powder 2-6 gms., Juice 12-24 gms., Decoction 50-100 gms.

Formulations (yoga)

Jayāvaṭī.

JAYANTI (जयन्ती)

- क. बला मोटा सूक्ष्ममूला जयन्ती विजया जया ।
हरिता चैव विज्ञेया सूक्ष्मपत्रापराजिता ॥
- ख. बलामोटा कटुस्तिका लघुः पित्तकफापहा ।
मूत्रकृच्छ्रं विषहन्ति विवादे कुरुते जयम् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu.

श्वेतजयन्तीमूलं पीतं पिष्टञ्चपयसैव ।
श्वित्रं निहन्ति नियतं रविवारे वैद्यनाथाज्ञा ॥

Bhaiṣajya Ratnāvalī.

जयन्ती

जयन्ती तु बलामोटा हरिता च जया तथा ।
विजया सूक्ष्म मूला च विक्रान्ता चापराजिता ॥

जयन्ती गुणाः

ज्ञेया जयन्ती गलगण्डहारी तिक्ता कटूष्णाऽनिलनाशनी च ।
भूतापहा कण्ठविशोधनी च कृष्णा तु सा तत्र रसायनी स्यात् ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Śatāhvādi Varga, 131-132.

‘विषघ्नीतिक्तकटुका कफपित्तसमीरजित् ।’

Dhanvantari Nighaṅṭu.

जयन्ती कफपित्तघ्नी क्रिमिशोथव्रणप्रणुत् ।
मदगन्धवती तिक्ता कटूष्णा कण्ठशोधनी ॥

Dhāvantari Nighaṅṭu.

गर्भधारणवारणार्थम्

आरण्यालपरिपेषितं त्र्यहं या जयाकुसुमत्ति पुष्पिनी ।
सहपुराणगुडमुष्टिसेविनी संदधाति न हि गर्भमङ्गना ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Vandhyā Cikitsā.

प्रतिश्याये

‘पुटपक्वं जयापत्रं सिन्धुतैलं समन्वितम् ।
प्रतिश्यायेषु सर्वेषु शीलितं परमौषधम् ॥’

Cakradatta.

ज्वरे

मूलं जयन्त्याः शिरसा घृतं सर्वज्वरापहम् ।

Cakradatta.

श्वित्रे

श्वेतजयन्तीमूलं पीतञ्च गव्यपयसैव ।
श्वित्रं निहन्ति नियतं रविवारे वैद्यनाथाज्ञा ॥

Cakradatta.

मसूरिकायाः प्रथमदर्शने

‘पीतं बीजं जयायाः सघृतं..... !

Cakradatta.

मेढ्रपाके

‘जयाजात्यश्वमारार्क.....दलैः पृथक् ।’

Cakradatta.

इक्षुमेहे

‘पारिजातजया..... ।
.....मेहान् क्रमादध्वनि चाष्टौ क्वाथाः समाशिकाः ॥’

Cakradatta.

मसूरीहर जयन्ती मूल प्रयोगः

‘पीतं बीजं जयायाः सघृतमुषितवाः पीतमङ्घ्रिशिकट्याः’

Cakradatta, 54-5.

कुष्ठचिकित्सायां श्वेतजयन्तीमूलकल्क प्रयोगः

Cakradatta, Kuṣṭha, Cikitsā, 50-73.

JAYAPĀLA

Botanical Name : *Croton tiglium* Linn.

Family : Euphorbiaceae

Classical Name : Jayapāla, Dravanti.

Sanskrit Names

Āyapāla, Jēpāla, Dantībīja, Dravantī (jāyapāla).

Regional Names

Jamalgota (Hindi); Nepal (Gujrati); Jamalgota, Jēpal (marathi); Lapchebis (nepalese); Nepalamu, Nepalavemu (Telugu); jāipalo, jāyopalo (Uriya); Kattukuttai, Nagnam (Tamil); Dantibijam, Katalavanakku (Malayalam); Batu, Dand, Datum (Arabic); Habbekhatai, Bedanjirekhatai (Persian); Prging Cotton (English).

Description

An evergreen tree, the young shoots sprinkled with stellate hairs; bark smooth, ash-coloured.

Leaves oblong to ovate-lanceolate, on a slender glabrous petiole 2.5-5 cm. long, obtuse or rounded at the 2-glanded base, 5-10 cm. long, minutely and remotely repand-toothed, acuminate, membranous, yellowish, green, adult glabrous.

Flowers small, the males on slender glabrous pedicels, solitary or by 2 or 3; the female larger, on short, thick, densely stellate-pubescent pedicels about 2-3 mm. long, solitary, both sexes forming, terminal glabrous or almost glabrous racemes at the end of the branchlets; male calyx glabrous or nearly so, the female sprinkled with stellate hairs; petals of males white, villous; filaments 15-20 woolly at the base; ovary tawny-stellate-tomentose.

Capsules oblong and obtusely, 3-lobed, 3-cocccous, 17 to nearly 25 mm. long, almost glabrous. Seeds smooth, about 13 mm. long of longer, purgate.

Capsule and Seeds

The dorsal and ventral surfaces are arched, the former more prominently than the latter. Capsule long and ovocid, 3-gonous. Testa of seeds in thick, but covered for the most part by a thin cinnamon-coloured membranous, it is thin and brittle and contains an abundant only albumen, enclosed in a delicate white membrane. Between the two halves of the albumen are two foliaceous cotyledons and a short thick radicle.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Summer to winters.

Distribution

It is found in Bengal, Assam and other regions in India. Naturalised or cultivated tree.

Chemical Composition

Seeds kernel contain 55-57 percent croton oil; the poison occurs to the extent of 2-5 percent in the fatty acids; purgative effect may also follow the application of oil on the skin; oil contains a toxic resin. In addition to the vesicant and purgative principle which pass into the oil, the seed kernels contain 2 toxic proteins, croton, globulin and croton albumin, sucrose and a glycoside and a glycoside and crotonoside.

Seeds yield a fixed oil, tiglic acid, crotonic or tiglinic acid, crotonic or quartenylic acid and croton oil.

Major contents of croton oil include croton-oleic acid, mainly activating principle; tiglic acid or methyle crotonic acid; crotonol, non-purgative but corrosive for skin; some volatile oil and fatty acids.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṭu
Guṇa	: Guru, Snigdha, Tikṣṇa
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphavātahara.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Virecana, Lekhana-vidāhī-svedajana Dipāna-kṛmighna, Śothahara Jvaraghna, Viṣaghna.
Roga	: Jīrṇa Vibandha, Agnimāndya, Kṛmi Jalodara Mastiṣkagata raktasrāva-sanyāsa Sarvāngaśoṭha, Jvara Jāngama viṣa-sarpaviṣa.

Therapeutic Uses

Unmitigated seeds when eaten cause nausea and

eructation, followed by flatulent distention of the abdomen, colic and diarrhoea. Volatile oil causes irritation and redness of skin.

It is a drastic purgative drug; its strong cathartic action begins with irritation in stomach, gripping in intestines, irritation in intestinal mucous membrane and results in watery motions repeatedly. The seeds and the oil extracted from them are drastic purgatives, they contain dangerous toxic and purgative properties, and therefore they can be used internally only after extracting the poison. This is done by first removing the testa and the embryo from the seed and then boiling the kernel two or three times in milk. There is proper method of purification (Jaipāla bīja śodhana vidhi) is described and followed in Indian medicine (svedana, bhāvana and śuṣkikaraṇa).

It is strong purgative, detergent, diaphoretic, irritant, rubefacient, vermifuge and vesicant. It is useful in ascites and anasarca, cough, cold, constipation, calculus, dropsy, fever, enlargement of the abdominal viscera, Plant drug possess drastic (more or less) purgative properties particularly seeds.

The wood medicinally known as *lignum pavanae* is, in small quantities, diuretic, mildly emetic and strongly diaphoretic. The pulverized root is a drastic purgative; it is given in dropsy in 10 to 30 grains; it is also used as an abortifacient.

The seeds (specially treated or purified) are given in apoplexy, insanity, convulsions, obstinate constipation, intestinal worms, ascites, dropsy, enlargement of the abdominal viscera, tympanitis, colic, calculus affections and gout. In very minute dose, the seed with an infusion of ginger may be used in children suffering from whooping cough.

The seeds are irritant and rubefacient; their paste mixed with honey is applied over tumours and obstinate buboes.

The oil of the seeds (extracted oil) is drastic hydrogogue purgative. It is particularly given when a rapid and efficient is desired and the dose needs to minimise, as in apoplexy, tetanus, insanity, paralysis of the throat,

unconsciousness, strangulated hernia, diseases of nervous centre, dropy and lead poisoning. The oil is not advised to use generally and it is contraindicated in inflammatory conditions of the intestines. The dose of the oil for internal administration is restricted one or two drops (minims) on a lump of sugar. In case of side (ill) effects or complications such as gripping, vomiting, excessive purging and other toxic symptoms, the countering medicines should be administered; and the repeated intake of lime juice, proves to be an excellent antidote against the effect of croton seed-oil. The sweet, cold, milk (cow's milk), curd, lime juice, lemon, acidic edible items are useful in condition of croton seed poisoning condition.

The oil of seeds is externally applied as a stimulant, powerful irritant and rufefacient; it is used as liniment and a good stimulant in various ailments of infantile as well as adult patients.

Precaution

The drug material consisting seeds must be used in therapeusis after proper purification (śodhana) and with posological consideration. Sometimes its disuse, if any, may be avoided. In case of complications and toxic signs and symptoms, the countering measures should be taken up for treatment.

Parts Used : Seeds, Seeds oil.

Dose

Seed 30-60 mg.

Seed oil 1/2-1 drop (minim).

Formulations (yoga)

Icchābhedī Rasa, Jalodarāri Rasa, Jvaramurāri Rasa.

JAYAPĀLA (जयपाल)

जयपालो दन्तिबीजं विख्यातं तित्तिडीफलम् ।

जयपालो गुरुस्तीक्ष्णो रेची पित्तकफापहा ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu.

जैपालः कटुरुष्णश्च कृमिहारी विरेचनः ।
दीपनः कफवातघ्नो जलोदर विनाशनः ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu.

सर्पविषे-जयपालाञ्जनम्

जयपालभवां मज्जां भावयेन्निम्बुकद्रवैः ।
एकविंशतिवेलं तु ततो वर्त्ति प्रकल्पयेत् ॥
मनुष्यलालया घृष्ट्वा ततोनेवे तथाऽऽञ्जयेत् ।
सर्पदष्ट विषं जित्वा संजीवयति मानवम् ॥

Sārṅgadhara Saṁhitā, 3-13-121/122.

नागदन्ती

नागदन्ती कटुस्तिका रूक्षा वातकफापहा ।
मेधाकृत् विषदोषघ्नी पाचनी शुभदायिनी ॥
गुल्मशूलोदर व्याधि कठदोषनिकृन्तनी ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu.

व्रणशोधने

द्रवन्ती चिरबिल्वश्च.....कल्काः संशोधनस्तथा ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 2-89/92.

उदरे

‘दन्तीद्रवन्ती फलजं तैलं पानञ्चशस्यते ।’

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Cikitsā, 15-77.

JHAṆḌŪ-SAHAŚRASUMA

Botanical Name : Tagetes erecta Linn.

Family : Asteraceae (Compositae)

Classical Name : Jhaṇḍu-Sahasrasuma

Sanskrit Names : Jhaṇḍū, Jhaṇḍu.

Regional Names

Genda (Hindi); Genda (Beng.); Jhendu (Marathi);
Jalgota (Guj.); Banti (Tamil); Guljajri (Bomb), Gulhazara
(Pers.).

Description

A hardy annual, growing about 60 cm. high, erect, branched.

Leaves very strong, scented, pinnately, divided, segments, lanceolate-serrate.

Flowers of one solid colour the typical colour being lemon-yellow but it ranges from a light sulphur-yellow to a deep orange. Rays sometimes rather 2-lipped and in one of the garden forms they are quilled.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Winter season. Different seasons.

Kinds and Varieties

There are several varieties of the herb based on colour, shape and size of the flowers.

Distribution

It is grown in gardens and planted in pots in India, as an ornamental plant.

Chemical Composition

Flowers contain essential oil, colouring matter. Indian flowers contain the pigment quercetagenin. Whole plant yields 0.01% essential oil. Quercetagenin, a glucoside of quercetagenin isolated from the dried petals of flowers.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Tikta, Kaṣāya
Gūṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa
Vīrya	: Śīta
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphapittaśāma.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Raktastambhana, Raktaśodhana Śothahara, Raktarodhaka, Arśoghna Rakṣoghna-bhūtagrahāpahā Jvaraghna, Vraṇaropana, Śulahara.
Roga	: Kṣata-vraṇa, Vṛanaśoṭha, Karṇaroga- śūla, Netraroga, Raktaśrava Raktapitta-raktavikāra

Arśa-raktārśa, Pradara-aśṛgadara
Bhūtagrahabādhā, Jvara, Pūyameha.

Therapeutic Uses

The flowers are used in diseases of the eyes, unhealthy ulcers and wounds. Internally the flowers are considered useful to purify the blood, the juice of the flowers is orally given in haemorrhoids or bleeding piles.

The leaves are employed as an application for the boils and carbuncles. The juice of leaves is obtained and lukewarm juice drops are useful in earache.

The flowers juice or paste of the flowers in fried in butter (ghṛta) and given in various blood diseases such as haemorrhage, haemoptysis, bleeding piles and bloody leucorrhoea or vaginal discharge. The paste of the leaves is applied to inflammation, ulcers and cuts.

Parts Used : Flowers, Leaves.

Dose : Paste 5-10 gms., Juice 25-50 gms.

JHANDŪ (झण्डू)

‘झण्डुः स्यात् स्थूलपुष्पा तु झण्डुकी झेण्डुकस्तथा ।

झण्डुः कटुकषाया स्याज्वरभूतग्रहापहा ॥’

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Parpaṭādi Varga, 141.

पूयमेहे

सहस्रद्रुच्छदान्नव्यान् पिष्ट्वा विरल वेल्लजान् ।

पिबन्तु लुलितानदधिः सौजाकरुधिराशंसोः ॥

Siddhabhaiṣajyamaṇimālā, 4-812.

रक्ताशांसि

कल्कं निम्बमहानिम्बसहस्रसुमपत्रजम् ।

पलोन्मितं गिलेदर्शः सवदस्त्रनिवृत्तये ॥

Siddhabhaiṣajya maṇimālā, 4-229.

JĪMŪTAKA

Botanical Name : *Luffa echinata* Roxb.

Family : Cucurbitaceae

Classical Name : Jimūta-Jimūtaka, Devadālī.

Sanskrit Names

Jimūta, Jimūtaka, Devadālī, Veṇī, Karkaṭī, Garagarī, Vṛttakoṣa, Pīta, Kharasparśā, Viṣaghni-Garanāśinī, Devatā (ṇ)ḍa, Kośaphalā, Sāramūṣikā, Lomaśapatrikā, Tarkarī, Turaṅjikā.

Regional Names

Vandal, Bandal, Ghagharbel, Ghusaren, Sonariya, Bidali (Hindi); Deyatada (Bengala); Devadali, Devadangari, Kukadvel (Marathi); Jangthori (Sind); Panibira (Telugu); Kukrabel (Urdu); Devadangar (Canarese); Kukarvel (Gujarati); Bristly Luffa (English).

Description

Climbing herb but not extensively; stem slender, branched, furrowed, glabrous. Tendrils 2-fid.

Leaves 3.8-6.3 cm. long, usually a little broader than long, reniform-suborbicular in outline, broadly cordate, at the base, obscurely 5-angled or more or less deeply 5-lobed, the lobes rounded or rarely subacute at the apex, the margins minutely denticulate; petioles 2.5-5cm. long, striate, puberulous or sometimes slightly scabrid.

Flowers usually dioecious. Male flowers : Peduncles 7.5-15 cm. long, usually in pairs, one 1-flowered, the other with a raceme of 5-12 flowers at the apex; pedicels 1-2 cm. long, bracteate near the base. Calyx hairy 6 mm. long; tube very short; lobes ovatelanceolate, acute. Petals white, spreading, obovate, twice as long as the calyx, veined. Stamens 3, two with 2-called anthers. Female flowers : Peduncles 1.3-5 cm. long.

Fruit broadly ellipsoid, 2.5-3.8 by 1.3-2 cm. and ribbed, clothed with ciliate bristles, 4-6 mm. long; operculum conical, without bristles. Seeds numerous, 4.5 by 3 mm., not winged, slightly verrucose.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Post-rainy season and onwards.

Kinds and Varieties

There are two varieties of Devadālī which includes another yellow-flowered known as Pīta Devadālī.

Chemical Composition

Fruits contain amorphous bitter, substance. Seeds yield an oil. Plant contains a bitter substance similar to colocyntin (which is purgative as well as emetic).

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṭu, Tikta
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa, Tikṣṇa
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphapittahara-Tridoṣahara.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Saṁśodhana-ubhayatobhāgahara Yakṛduttejaka, Dīpana-pācana Pittasāraka, Vāmaka-recaka Kṛmighna, Raktaśodhaka, Śothahara Kuṣthaghna, Jvaraghna Kaṭupouṣṭika (small dose) Saṁśodhana-viṣaghna (higher dose) Mūtrala, Kaphaniḥsāraka, Arśoghna.
Roga	: Yakṛdvikāra, Kāmalā-pāṇḍu, Arśa Agnimāndya-aruci, Jalodara-Gulma Raktavikāra-śoṭha, Vraṇa, Pīnasa Śīroroga (Kaphaja), Apasmāra Kāsa-śvāsa-hikkā, Mūtrakṛcchra Rajaḥkṛcchra (Kaṣṭārtava) Kaṣṭaprasava, Jvara, Kuṣṭha, Viṣa.

Therapeutic Uses

The plant is bitter and hot; it is alexiteric, emetic, and anthelmintic; it is used for curing anal diseases, inflammation, fever, bronchitis, jaundice, asthma, anaemia, consumption, piles, hiccough. It is useful for countering rat-bite, poisoning and for destroying foul taste of mouth.

The root is laxative, anthelmintic and analgesic; it cures tumours, bronchitis, piles, vaginal discharges, jaundice and vitiation of vāta. The anthers are administered (by mouth) orally to facilitate delivery.

The root strengthens the muscles of the neck; it is tonic to the hairs. The fruit has a bad taste; it is used to cure chronic bronchitis and lung complaints.

In cases of cholera, a few grains of the bitter fibrous contents of the fruit are given in the form of infusion (after each stool). In putrid fever, the infusion is applied to the whole body. In jaundice, it is applied to the whole body. In jaundice, it is applied to the head and also given internally. The infusion is also used as a good remedy for colic. The fruits are considered a powerful remedy dropsy. Every part of the plant, either alone or in combination, is prescribed for the treatment of snake-bite.

It is an affective and popular remedy for jaundice. The infusion (cold) of the fruits is used as a snuff (by putting a few drops into nostrils, of jaundice patient) which causes dropletting of yellow watery discharge from the nose. In other diseases like epilepsy and ailments of head. The snuff is given.

Externally the fruits-juice is applied to ulcers. The paste of the fruits is applied to haemorrhoids. In smaller dose, the fruit is given in dyspepsia, liver complaints and piles; when in larger dose it is used in dropsy, anaemia, poisoning and worms for the purpose of purification (saṁśodhana).

Parts Used

Fruits, Flowers.

Dose

Powder 3-6 gms., 500 gr. 1 gm. (bitter tonic); 2-3 or more (emesis-purgation).

Groups (gaṇa)

Vamana, Phalinī (Caraka Saṁhitā), Ubhayatobhā-gahara, Ūrdhvabhāgahara (Suśruta Saṁhitā).

JĪMŪTAKA-DEVADALĪ (जीमूतक-देवदाली)

देवदाली पीतदेवदाली च— खेखसावत्फलव्रततिः

- क. देवदाली तु वेणी स्यात्कर्कटी च गरागरी ।
देवताडो वृत्तकोशस्तथा जीमूत इत्यपि ॥
पीता परा खरस्पर्शा विषघ्नी गरनाशिनी ।
- ख. देवदाली रसे तिक्ता कफार्शःशोफपाण्डुता ।
नाशयेद्दामनी तीक्ष्णा क्षयहिक्का कृमिज्वरान् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Guḍūcyādi Varga, 291-292.

जीमूतक-देवदाली फलम्

- देवदाली फलं तिक्तं कृमिश्लेष्मविनाशनम् ।
संसनं गुल्म शूलघ्नमर्शोग्नं वातजित्परम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Guḍūcyādi Varga, 293.

जीमूतकः

- अ. जीमूतकः कण्टफला गरागरी
वेणी सहा कोशफला च कटुफला ।
घोरा कदम्बा विषहा च कर्कटी
स्याद्देवदाली खलु सारमूषिका ॥
वृत्तकोशा विषघ्नी च दाली लोमशपत्रिका ।
तुरङ्गिका च तर्कारी नाम्नामेकोनविंशतिः ॥
- ब. देवदाली तु तिक्तोष्णा कटुः पाण्डु कफापहा ।
दुर्नामश्वासकासघ्नी कामलाभूतनाशिनी ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Guḍūcyādi Varga, 58-60.

देवदाली-जीमूतः

- क. जीमूतो जालिनी वेणी देवदाली गरागरी ॥
वृत्तकोषो देवताण्डः कर्कोट्याखुविषापहा ।
- ख. देवदाली रसे पाके तिक्ता तीक्ष्णा विषापहा ॥
वामनी हन्ति गुदजकफशोफामकामलाः ।
ज्वरकासारुचिश्वास हिध्मापाण्डुक्षयकृमीन् ।

जीमूतकफलम्

- ग. देवदाली फलं तिक्तं कृमिश्लेष्म विनाशनम् ।

संसनं गुल्मशूलघ्नमर्शोग्नं वातजित् परम् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 800.

जीमूतकः

कल्पं जीमूतकस्येमं फलपुष्पाश्रयं श्रणु ।

गरागरी च वेणी च तथा स्याद्देवताङ्कः ॥

Caraka Saṃhitā, Kalpa, 2-3.

वमनार्थम् (त्रिदोषनाशकत्वम्)

जीमूतकं त्रिदोषघ्नं यथास्वौषधकल्पितम् ।

प्रयोक्तव्यं ज्वरश्वासहिक्काद्येष्वामयेषु च ॥

Caraka Saṃhitā, Kalpa, 2-4.

जीमूतक सुरामण्ड प्रयोगः

आसुत्य च सुरामण्डे मृदित्वा प्रस्तुतं पिबेत् ।

कफजेऽरोचके कासे पाण्डुरोगे सयक्ष्माणि ॥

Caraka Saṃhitā, Kalpa, 2-8.

जीमूतकं पञ्चयोगाः

यथोक्तगुणयुक्तानां देशजानां यथाविधि ।

पयः पुष्पेऽस्य, निर्वृत्तेफले पेया पयस्कृता ॥

लोमशे क्षीरसंतानं, दध्युत्तरमलोमशे ।

शृते पयसि दध्यम्लं जातं हरित पाण्डुके ॥

Caraka Saṃhitā, Kalpa, 2-5/6.

जीमूतक मात्रा

जीर्णानां सुशुष्काणां न्यस्तानां भाजने शुचौ ।

चूर्णस्य शुक्तिवातपित्तार्दितः पिबेत् ॥

Caraka Saṃhitā, Kalpa, 2-7.

ज्वरे जीमूतकं प्रयोगाः

जीवकर्षभकेक्षुणां शतावर्या रसेन वा ।

पित्तश्लेष्मज्वरे दद्याद्वातपित्तज्वरेऽथवा ॥

Caraka Saṃhitā, Kalpa, 2-12.

जीमूतक साधितक्षीर घृत प्रयोगः

तथा जीमूतकक्षीरान् समुत्पन्नं पचेद् घृतम् ।

फलादीनां कषायेण श्रेष्ठं तद्वनं मतम् ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Kalpa, 2-13.

जीमूतक प्रयोग विविध साधन

द्वे चापोध्याथवा त्रीणि गुडूच्या मधुकस्य वा ।
कोविदारादिकानां वा निम्बस्य कुटजस्य वा ॥
कषायेष्वासुतं पूत्वा तेनैव विधिना पिबेत् ।
अथवाऽऽरग्वधादीनां सप्तानां पूर्ववत् पिबेत् ॥
एकेर्कस्य कषायेण पित्तश्लेष्मज्वरार्दितः ।

Caraka Samhitā, Kalpa, 2-9/10.

जीमूतकाष्टमात्रायोगाः

‘मात्राः स्युः फलवच्चाष्टौ कोलमात्रास्तु ता मताः ॥’

Caraka Samhitā, Kalpa, 2-11.

कामलायाम्

जीमूतकेन सहितं निशि स्थितं वारि कामला हन्ति ।
शिशिरजलपिष्टमथवा नस्येन कुमारिकामूलम् ॥

Rājamārtanḍa, 3-19.

‘देवदालीफलफलरसो नस्यतो हन्ति कामलाम् ।’

Vaidyājīvanam, 3-28.

अंकोलमूलमथवाऽर्कजटा प्रपिष्टा स्वच्छेन तण्डुलजलेन समं प्रयत्नात् ।
स्यात् कामलामयहरी कृतनावनानामाघ्रातमात्रमपिजालिनिकाफलं वा ॥

Rājamārtanḍa, 3-18.

ज्वरे

जीवकर्षभेक्षूणां शतावर्यां रसेन वा ।
पित्तश्लेष्मज्वरे यद्वाद् वातपित्तज्वरेऽथवा ॥

Caraka Samhitā, Kalpa, 2-12.

सुखप्रसवार्थम्

क्षीरपिष्टमबलाऽक्षकं पिबेद् देवदालिकुसुमोद्भवं रजः ।
शीघ्रमेव सुखसूतिमावहेत्रास्त्यतः परतरं तदौषधम् ॥

Vaidyamārtanḍa, 13-24.

विषे

देवदालीफलञ्चैव दध्ना पीत्वा विषं वमेत् ।

सर्वमूषिक दष्टानामेवयोगः सुखावहः ॥

Suśruta Samhitā, Kalpa, 7-35.

JINGINĪ

Botanical Name

Lannea grandis Engl.

Odina woodier Roxb.

Family : Anacardiaceae

Classical Name : Jingiṇī

Sanskrit Names

Jingiṇī, Modakī, Jhonjhiṇī, Jhallī, Gudamanjarī, Jaiasara, Kaluṣī, Kālamanjari, Madanamanjari, Parvatiya, Suniryāsa.

Regional Names

Jhingan, Jingan, Kiamil, Jingan, Ginyan (Hindi); Batrin, Dila (Punjabi); Mavedi, Modol, Moledu (Gujarati); Bhumpari (Cabarese); Appiriyada, Dhumpari (Telugu); Anaikkari (Tamil); Moi, Moja (Marathi); Anakkaram (Malayalam).

Description

A large tree 12-15 meters high; trunk thick; bark ash-coloured, smooth, exfoliating; young parts more or less stellately puebrulous.

Leaves crowded about the ends of the branches, 25-45 cm. long; leaflets membranous, green above, brown beneath (when dry), 3-5 pairs and an oil one, 7.5-15 by 2.5-5 cm., ovate-oblong, acuminate, glabrous, shining tinged with pink when young, base acute or rounded, often oblique; main nerves 6-8 pairs; petiolules of the lateral leaflets 0.3 mm. long, those of the terminal leaflets much longer.

Flowers purplish, appearing when the tree is bare of leaves, crowded in cymose fascicles; the male racemes compound; the female simple; pedicels very short, fulvous-pubescent; bracts ovate, acute, pubescent, flowers equalling the petals. Ovary in the female ovoid-oblong, in the male rudimentary, 4-lobed.

Drupes reniform, compressed, red.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Spring to autumn season.

Distribution

It is found common in deciduous forests throughout India, specially in sub-Himalayan tract extending to the Indus, ascending to 4,000 ft. in the outer hills.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṭu, Kaṣāya, Madhura.
Guṇa	: Snigdha, Tikṣna.
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Vātakaphahara.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Vr̥ṇaropaṇa-śodhana Vedanāsthāpana, Grāhī, Hṛdya Mukhadourgandhyahara Tṛṣṇānigrahaṇa, Yoniśodhana.
Roga	: Vr̥ṇa, Tṛṣṇā, Āsyavairasya Hṛdroga-hṛdruja, Yonivikāra Atisāra, Ślīpada Avabāhuka-skandhabāhuruḷā.

Therapeutic Uses

The bark is astringent and used as a lotion in impetiginous eruptions, leprous ulcers and obstinate ulcers. The leaves are boiled and applied for local swellings and pains of body. Decoction of bark is used for toothache.

The gum exuding from the trunk is given as an astringent in asthma, and as a gargle in nursing mothers. Its solution is a useful multi-purpose wash and a lotion for skin diseases, specially skin eruptions. An emulsion made with alcohol or with coconut milk is an efficacious application for sprains and bruises.

The juice of the green branches or twigs is given as an emetic (in four ounce dose) with two ounces of tamarind in coma, caused by overdose or excess use of narcotics.

The poultice of the leaves made with black pepper, is an efficacious application of rheumatic pains; the leaves boiled in oil are applied to sprains, bruises, swellings and bodyache.

The snuffing of exudation is recommended in the pains of arms and shoulders; and the leaves pounded with vinegar and the paste is prescribed to apply locally in filaria.

Parts Used

Exudation Leaves, Bark, Green/tender branches.

Dose

Exudation 1-3 gms., Juice 6-10 gms.

JINGINĪ [जिङ्गिणी (नी)]

क. जिङ्गिणी जिङ्गिणी झिङ्गी सुनिर्यासा प्रमोदनी ।

ख. जिङ्गिणी मधुरा सोष्णा कषाया व्रणशोधनी ।

कटुका व्रणहृद्रोगवातातीसारहृत् पटुः ॥

ग. निर्यासोऽस्या हरेत्सम्यक् रुजं स्कंधांसबाहुल्यम् ।

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Vatādi Varga, 42-43.

जिङ्गिणी मुखदौर्गन्ध्यतृष्णा वातकफापहा ।

कटुपाका जयेद् वातव्रणातीसारहृद्भुजः ॥

Śoḍhala.

जिङ्गिणी-गुडमञ्जरी

अ. जिङ्गिणी जिङ्गिणी झल्ली मोदकी गुडमञ्जरी ।

जातसारा च कलुषीमञ्जरी कालमञ्जरी ॥

पार्वतीया सुनिर्यासा तथा मदनमञ्जरी ।

ब. मोदकी मधुरा सोष्णा कषाया योनिशोधनी ॥

कटुपाका जयेद् वातव्रणातीसारहृद्भुजः ।

निर्यासोऽस्या हरेन्नास्याद्रुजं स्कन्धांसबाहुजम् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 858-860.

गुडमञ्जरी जिङ्गिणीपादपः

जिङ्गिणी पादपः तीक्ष्णः समिद्धान् मोक्षकच्छदो ।

अपुष्पः कोलफलकः तथा च गुडमञ्जरी ॥

Śivadatta.

स्कन्धांसबाहुरुजायाम्

‘गुडमञ्जर्याः खपुरो नस्यात् स्कन्धांसबाहुरुजाम् ।’

Aṣṭāṅga Hr̥daya, Agraya, Adhyāya.

श्लीपदे

‘जिंगिण्यास्तु दलैः सम्यक् तुषाम्बुपरिपेषितै ।

लेपः श्लीपदनाशाय कर्त्तव्यः सम्प्रजानता ॥’

Śodhala, Gadanigraha, 4-2-36; Baṅgasena, Ślīpada, 34.

अवबाहुके

गुडमञ्जर्याः खपुरो नस्यात् स्कन्धांसबाहुरुजम् ।

Aṣṭāṅga Hr̥daya, Uttara, 40-52.

परमौषधमपबाहुकमन्यास्तमोर्ध्वजत्रुगतरोगे ।

शीतलजलेन नस्यं तदुपशमं जिङ्गिणीखपुरः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Cikitsā, 24-82.

नस्येन शीतपयसा शुकशिंभीमूलजिङ्गिणी पिष्टा ।

अपबाहुककन्धरपीडामचिराद् विनाशयेद् योगमिम ॥

Gadanigraha, 2-19-117; Baṅgasena, Vātavyādhi, 120.

A. JĪRAKA

Botanical Name : Cuminum cyminum Linn.

Family : Apiaceae (Umbelliferae)

Classical Name : Jiraka

Sanskrit Names

Jiraka, Śveta Jiraka, jarana, Ajājī, Dīrghajiraka.

Regional Names

Jira, Safed Jira (Hindi); Jire (Bengla, Marathi, Gujarati); Chirkam (Tamil); Jikori (Telugu); Jirkam (Malayalam); Kamuna (Arabic); Zira (Persian); Cumin (English).

Description

A slender annual, glabrous except the fruit.

Leaves twice or thrice 3-partite segments filiform.

Umbels compound, rays few; bracts and bracteoles several, linear. Calyx-teeth small, subulate, unequal. Petals oblong or obovate, emarginate, white, often unequal.

Fruit cylindrical, tip narrowed, primary ridges, filiform, distinct, secondary usually hispidulous; vitae large, solitary under each secondary ridge; carpophore, 2-partite or 2-fid. Seeds somewhat dorsally compressed, Convex-concave.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Post-winters. Farming season.

Distribution

It is widely cultivated in India as a spice-crop.

Chemical Composition

Seeds yield essential oil which contains cuminol. Its volatile oil, thyamene 3.2-5.2 percent is responsible for taste and odour; its contain carvone consisting 5.6 percent cuminol or cumic aldehyde. Seeds also contain fixed oil, resin, mucilaginous matter, potein compounds and other substances. Seeds are rich source of thymol.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṭu
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphavātaśāmaka, Pittavardhaka.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Dipana-pācana-vātānulomana Śūlapraśamana, Grāhī, Kṛmighna Uttejaka-raktośodhaka, Mūtrala Styanyajanana, Jvaraghna Kaṭupouṣṭika, Vṛṣya Lekhana-śothahara Vedanāsthāpana Tvagdoṣahara-kuṣṭhaghna Garbhāśaya viśuddhikara, Balya Viśaghna, Cakṣuṣya Chardinigrahaṇa.
-------	---

Roga	: Agnimāndya-ajirṇa-ādhmāna Udararoga-udaraśūla Amlapitta-jāṭharaśūla, Arśoghna Kṛmighna Atisāra-āmātisāra-grahaṇī Hṛdroga-raktavikāra Mūtrāghāta-pūyameha-aśmarī Śvetapradara Sūtikaroga-garbhāśayavikāra Stanyavikāra-stanyakṣaya Carmavikāra-varṇadoṣa Jvara-navyapurāṇa-vātikajvara Dourbalya, Viṣa-Vṛścikadamśa Kuṣṭha-kaṇḍū-pāmā Netravikāra.
-------------	---

Therapeutic Uses

It is anthelmintic, aphrodisiac, astringent, carminative, cooling, digestive, diuretic, febrifuge, ophthalmic, stimulant, stomachic and tonic.

It is useful in irritation and pain in stomache, chronic diarrhoea and dyspepsia, eye-troubles, skin diseases and worms.

It is an important spice commonly used as condiment in cookery.

They are also given veterinary medicine.

Fruits (seeds) are given in dyspepsia, diarrhoea and hoarseness of voice. They are recommended to pregnant woman for checking bilious nausea and promoting secretion of milk; the cumin seeds are also suggested to give mother shortly after delivery. Seeds are mixed with butter (ghee) and smoked through a pipe in hiccup. A poultice of the seeds is applied as a resolvent of swelling of breast and testicles.

In case of the acute diarrhoea in adults and similar infantile bowel complaints, the seeds (half quantity fried and half unfried or fully fried) duly mixed with sugar, are powdered and the same powder is given thrice in day with water. Cumin seeds water, being carminative, is repeatedly

orally given in condition of flatulence, gripping and other gastro-intestinal troubles.

Seeds are useful in snake-bite. A paste of the seeds mixed with ghee and rock salt applied warm to remove pain of scorpion-sting.

The seeds mixed with other suitable drugs and vehicles are given in malarial fever, vātakapha fever (Jvara), vomiting and acid gastritis.

The oils prepared with the seeds and other suitable drugs are applied externally to scabies and other skin affections.

Parts Used : Seeds

Dose : Seeds 1-3 gms., 3-6 gms.

Groups (gūṇa)

Śūlapraśamana, Śirovirecana (Caraka Saṁhitā), Pippalyādi (Suśruta Saṁhitā).

Formulations (yogāh)

Jīrakādi modaka, Jīrakādyā cūrṇa, Jīrakādyā taila, Jīrakādyariṣṭa, Jīrakādyā ghr̥ta, Pancajīraka pāka.

B. KṚṢṆA JĪRAKA-KĀRAVĪ

Botanical Name : *Carum carvi* Linn.

Family : Umbelliferae (Apiaceae)

Classical Name

Kṛṣṇa Jīraka-kāravī

Sanskrit Names

Kṛṣṇa Jīraka, Kāravī, Jaraṇā, Kāśmīra Jīraka.

Regional Names

Syahjira (Hindi); Sa-jira (Beng.); Sahajiri (Marathi); Simai-sargam (Tam.); Sima-jitar (Telugu); Karum-aswad (Arabic); Jiryā-riza (Pers.); Black Cumin, Indian Careway (English).

Description

A biennial forming a tap-root, and perhaps

occasionally a perennial stock. Stem erect, branched 35-60 cm. high.

Leaves with a rather long sheathing footstalk, pinnate, with several pairs of segments which are sessile, but once or twice pinnate, with short linear lobes; in a leaf of 6 or 8 cm., the lowest or next to the lowest segments are about 3/4 of a cm. long, the others diminishing gradually to the top. Upper leaves smaller and less divided.

Umbels of about 8 or 10 rays, either without involucre, or with 1 or 2 small linear bracts.

Carpels (commonly called Caraway seeds) about 5 mm. long linear-oblong, and usually curved, with the ribs prominent.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Rainy season to autumn and cold season. Winter season crop.

Distribution

It is found in the hilly regions in India; it is often cultivated.

Chemical Composition

Seeds yield a volatile oil which is responsible for its intense odour. Essential oil contains 45-65% carvone, a mixture of ketone carvone, a terpene and traces of carvacrol.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṭu
Guṇa	: Laghu, Rūkṣa
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Kaphavātaśāmaka.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Dīpana-pācana-rocana Durgandhanāśana, Vātānulomana Grāhī, Chardinigrahaṇa, Hṛdya Śothahara Garbhāśayaśodhana-stanyajanana Jvaraghna, Cakṣuṣya, Balya, Vṛṣya Medhya, Kāphavātavikāra.
--------------	--

Roga : Agnimāndya-ajīrṇa-ādhmāna
 Mukhdourgandhya-āsyavairasya
 Sangrahaṇī, Vamana
 Hṛddourbalya-śoṭha, Prasūtivikāra
 Garbhāśaya vikāra, Stanyavikāra
 Jīrṇajvara-viṣamajvara.

Therapeutic Uses

The fruits are useful as stomachic, carminative and lactagogue. It is abortifacient, anthelmintic, aromatic, astringent, cardiac, febrifuge, lactagogue, purgative, stimulant, stomachic and tonic.

They are useful in amenorrhoea, blood vomiting with bile, general debility and dyspepsia; it is useful as eye-wash for strengthening vision (sight weakness). It is given in intermittent fever, painful swellings and protruding piles; it is used in rheumatism and worms.

It is a flavouring agent; it is one of the important ingredients in curry powder; they have powerful odour and flavour.

The seeds with sugar and jaggery, mixed with a bit of marica, are given in malarial fever. The seeds mixed with other suitable drugs and vehicles are given to check all types of anorexia.

Parts Used : Seeds

Dose : Powder 1-3 gms.

JĪRAKA (जीरक)

जीरक त्रयोर्गुणा

जीरकं कटुतिक्तोष्णं रूक्षं पाकोषणं लघु ।
 रुच्यं संग्राहि चक्षुष्यं गर्भाशयविशोधनम् ॥
 पित्तलं दीपनं मेध्यं हृद्यं वातकफापहम् ।
 सुगन्धि पाचनं छर्दिगुल्माध्मानातिसारजित् ॥

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 1187-1188.

जीरकत्रितयम्-शुक्लकृष्णजीरके कारवी च

जीरकत्रितयं रूक्षं कटूष्णं दीपनं लघु ।
संग्राही पित्तलं मेध्यं गर्भाशयविशुद्धिकृत् ॥
ज्वरघ्नं पाचनं वृष्यं कफापहम् ।
चक्षुष्यं पवनाध्मानगुल्मच्छर्द्यतिसारहृत् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṅṭu, Harītakṛyādi Varga, 84-85.

क. जीरक

जीरकः कटुरुष्णश्च वातकृद्दीपनः परः ।
गुल्माध्मानातिसारघ्नो ग्रहणी क्रिमिहृत्परः ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Pippalyādi Varga, 57.

ख. श्वेतजीरक

गौराजाजी हिमा रुच्या कटुर्मधुरदीपनी ।
क्रिमिघ्नी विषहन्त्री च चक्षुष्याध्माननाशिनी ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Pippalyādi Varga, 59.

ग. कृष्णजीरक

जरणा कटुरुष्णा च कफशोफनिकृन्तनी ।
रुच्या जीर्णज्वरघ्नी च चक्षुष्या ग्रहणीहरा ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Pippalyādi Varga, 62.

सूतिका रोगे पञ्चजीरकपाकम्

Bhāvaprakāśa, Yonirogādhikāra, 70/58-162.

अम्लपित्त चिकित्सायां-कफपित्तारुचिनाशार्थम् जीरकाद्यघृतम्

पिष्ट्वाऽऽजाजीं सधन्याकं घृतप्रस्थं विपाचयेत् ॥
कफपित्तारुचिहरं मन्दानलवमी जयेत् ॥

Amlapitta, Cikitsā, 52-54; Cakradatta.

वृश्चिकदंश विषे

जीरकस्य कृतः कल्को घृतसैन्धव संयुतः ।
सुखोष्णो मधुना लेपो वृश्चिकस्य विषं हरेत् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Viśādhikāra, 67-90.

जीरकत्रय गुणकर्माणि

जीरकं कटुरूक्षं च वातहृद्दीपनं परम् ।
गुल्माध्मानातिसारघ्नं ग्रहणीकृमिहृत्परम् ॥

गौराजाजी हिमा रुच्या कटुर्मधुरः दीपनीः ।
कृमिघ्ना विषहन्त्री च चक्षुष्याऽऽध्माननाशिनी ॥

Dhanvantari Nighaṅṭu.

‘कालाजाजी तु सगुडा विषमज्वरनाशिनी ।’
‘अजाजी..... ।’

Bhāvaprakāśa, Cikitsā, 1-753.

रोचनं दीपनं वातकफदौर्गन्ध्यनाशनम् ।

Caraka Saṁhitā, Sūtra, 27.

तीक्ष्णोष्णं कटुकं पाके रुच्यं पित्ताग्निवर्धनम् ।
कटुः श्लेष्मानिलहरं गन्धाढ्यं जीरकद्वयम् ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtra, 46.

पामाचिकित्सायां जीरकाद्य तैलम्

जीरकस्य पलं पिष्टं सिन्दूरार्द्धपलं तथा ।
कटुतैलं पचेदाभ्यां सर्वपामाहरं परम् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa, Kuṣṭharogādhikāra, 54-133.

छर्द्याम्

सौवर्चलमजाजी च शर्करा मरिचानि च ।
युक्तोऽयं मधुना सट लेहः श्रेष्ठच्छर्दिनिबर्हणः ॥

Vṛndamādhava, 15-18.

अम्लपित्ते

पिष्ट्वाऽजाजी सधान्यकं घृतप्रस्थं विपाचयेत् ।
कफपित्तारुचिहरं मन्दानलवमि जयेत् ॥

Cakradatta, Vṛndamādhava, 52-51.

वातश्लेष्मज्वरे

‘अजाजी सगुडां खादेत् कल्कं वा मधुना पिबेत् ।
.....तक्रं चानुपिबेज्ज्वरी ॥’
तत्पीत्वा चात पेतिष्टेद् यावत्स्वेदागमो भवेत् ।
कफमारुतजान् क्षिरप्रं ज्वरादेवं प्रमुच्यते ॥

Śoḍhala, Gadamigraha, 2-1-246/247.

स्नायुक रोगे

‘मूल सुषव्यां हिमवारिपिष्टं पानादिदं तन्तुरोवामुग्रम् ।’

Bhāvaprakāśa, Snāyakarogādhikāra, 57-8.

वृश्चिकदंशे

जीरकस्य कृतः कल्को घृतसैन्धवसंयुतः ।
सुखोष्णो वृश्चिकार्ताणां सुखलेपो व्यथापहः ॥

Cakradatta, 65-23; Viṣa Cikitsā, 23.

विषमज्वरे

अजाजी गुडसंयुक्ता विषमज्वरनाशिनी ।
अग्रिसादं जयेत्सम्यक् वातरोगांश्च नाशयेत् ॥

Cakradatta, Vṛndamādhava, 1-228.

शुभ्रजीरं कटु ग्राहि पाचकं दीपनं लघु ।
किञ्चिदुष्णं च मधुरं चक्षुष्यं रुचिकृन्मतम् ॥
गर्भाशयशुद्धिकर रूक्षं बल्यं सुगन्धिकम् ।

Nighaṅṭu Ratnākara.

JĪVANTĪ

Botanical Name : *Leptadenia reticulata* Wight & Arn.

Family : Asclepiadaceae

Classical Name : Jīvantī

Sanskrit Names

Jīvantī, Sākaṣreṣṭhā, Payasvinī, Mangalya, Doḍi-
doḍikā.

Regional Names

Dodi, Dori, Dodisag (Hindi); Dodhi, Palakuda, Rayadodi, Shinguti (Bombay); Dodi, Khirkhodi, Raidodi (Marathi); Kharkhodi, Nabanidodi (Gujarati).

Description

A twining shrub; stems with corky deeply cracked bark; branches numerous, the younger ones terete, glabrous or hoary-puberulous.

Leaves thinly coraceous, 3.8-7.5 cm., ovate, acute, glabrous above, more or less finely pubescent (especially on the nerves) beneath, base rounded or subcordate (rarely subacute); petioles 6-20. long, puberulous.

Flowers greenish-yellow, in lateral or sub-axillary many-flowered hoary-puberulous globose cymes; peduncles arising from between the leaves or sub-axillary, sometimes in pairs puberulous; pedicels 3-4 mm. long, puberulous.

Calyx pubescent outside, divided to about the middle; segments 1.25 mm. long, ovate-oblong, subacute. Corolla 5 mm. long (about 8 mm. across when expanded); tube very short, glabrous; lobes of the limb thick, 2.5 mm. long, ovate-oblong, subobtuse, with revolute margins, pubescent on both surfaces, often with a small hairy process on the inner face near the tip; conoline corona minute, annular, close to the staminal column.

Anthers without membranous appendages, incumbent on the style-apex; pollen-masses ovoid, large-waxy, pellucid at the apex, attached to the minute pollen-carriers by moderately long caudicles.

Follicles subwoody, 6.3-9cm. long, turgid, tapering into an obtuse shortly curved beak. Seeds 6 mm. long, narrowly ovate-oblong, acute; coma 3.2-3.8 cm. long.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Post-rainy season and onwards.

Distribution

It is found in Central India and West Peninsular regions; Rajasthan, Madhya Pradesh, Punjab and Uttar Pradesh in warm regions.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Madhura
Guṇa	: Laghu, Snigdha
Vīrya	: Śīta
Vipāka	: Madhura
Doṣakarma	: Vātapittaśāmaka, Tridoṣahara.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Jīvanīya, Balya, Rasāyana, Vṛṣya Kaphaniḥsāraka, Mūtrala Jvaraghna, Dāhapraśamana Hṛdya, Snehana, Anulomana Grāhī, Cakṣuṣya.
--------------	--

Roga : Paittika śoṭha, Viṣṭambha
 Koṣṭhagata roukṣya, Grahaṇī
 Dourbalya, Raktapitta, Kāsa
 Śukrameha
 Mūtrakṛcchra-mūtradāha-pūyameha
 Jvara, Dāha, Kṣaya-śoṣa-yakṣmā
 Dṛṣṭimāndya, Hṛddourbalya.

Therapeutic Uses

Plant drug is stimulant and tonic. Roots are tasteful and sweet. It is astringent, demulcent, emollient, expectorant, lactogogue, ophthalmic, restorative and tonic. It is useful in burning sensation, constipation, cough, diarrhoea, eye complaints, heart weakness and pthisis.

It is much used for cattles. It is used as a vegetable (for humans) which is mentioned and as Jīvantisāka, in classical texts. Raw or unripe follicles (Jīvantī Phala or Ḍoḍī) are used for preparing vegetable since Jīvantī or Ḍoḍīśāka is considered best among the edible vegetables as classically esteemed.

It is externally applied to bilious inflammation. It is used in spermatorrhoea, visionary defect (weak sight), heart troubles, vocal cavity complaints, night blindness, poison, ulcer, cough, piles, haemorrhage and sexual debility. It is used as a restorative drug.

Parts Used : Root, Fruit.

Dose

Powder 1-3 gm./3-5 gms., Decoction 50-100 ml.

Groups (gaṇa)

Jīvaniya, Madhuraskandha (Caraka, Saṁhitā),
 Kākolyādi (Suśruta Saṁhitā).

Formulations (yoga)

Jīvantiyādi ghṛta, Jīvaniyādi taila.

JĪVANTĪ (जीवन्ती)

जीवन्ती शीतला स्त्रादुः विबन्धा दोषत्रयापहा ।

रसायनी बलकरी चक्षुष्या ग्राहिणी लघुः ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Guḍūcyādi, Varga, 51.

डोडिका

क. डोडिका विषमुष्टिश्च डोडित्यपि सुमुष्टिका ।

ख. डोडिका पुष्टिदा वृष्या बल्या वह्निप्रदा लघुः ।
हन्ति पित्तकफार्शांसि कृमिगुल्मविषामयान् ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Śāka Varga, 87.

जीवन्ती

अ. जीवन्ति स्याज्जीवनी जीवनीया
जीवा जीव्या जीवदा जीवदात्री ।
शाकश्रेष्ठा जीवभद्रा च भद्रा
मङ्गल्या च क्षुद्रजीवा यशस्या ॥

शृङ्गाटी जीवपृष्ठा च काञ्जिका शशशिम्बिका ।
सुपिङ्गलेति जीवन्ती ज्ञेया चाष्टादशाभिधा ॥

ब. जीवन्ती मधुरा शीता रक्तपित्तानिलापहा ।
क्षय दाहज्वरान हन्ति कफवीर्यं विवर्द्धिनी ॥

स. 'जीवन्ती सर्वदोषघ्नी जीवन्ती-

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Guḍūcyādi Varga, 38-39.

मधुरा हिमा । शाकानां प्रवरा ।'

Dhanvantari Nighaṇṭu.

बृहज्जीवन्ती

जीवन्त्यन्या बृहत्पूर्वा पुत्रभद्रा प्रियङ्करी ।

मधुरा जीवपृष्ठा च बृहज्जीवा यशस्करी ॥

एवमेव बृहत्पूर्वा रसवीर्यबलान्विता ।

भूत विद्रावणी ज्ञेया वेगाद्रसनियामिका ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Guḍūcyādi Varga, 40-41.

स्वर्णजीवन्ती

अ. हेमा हेमवती सौम्या तृणग्रन्थिर्हिमाश्रया ।

स्वर्णपर्णी सुजीवन्ती स्वर्णजीवा सुवर्णिका ॥

हेमपुष्पी स्वर्णलता स्वर्णजीवन्तिका च सा ।

हेमवती हेमलता नामान्यस्याश्चतुर्दशः ॥

ब. स्वर्णजीवन्तिका वृष्या चक्षुष्या मधुरा तथा ।
शिशिरा वातपित्तास्रग्दाहजिद्वलवर्धनी ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Guḍūcyādi Varga, 42-44.

डोडी

अन्या डोडी तु जीवन्ती शाकश्रेष्ठा सुखालुका ।
बहुपर्णी दीर्घपत्रा सूक्ष्मपत्रा च जीवनी ॥
डोडी तु कटुतिकोष्णा दीपनी कफवातजित् ।
कण्ठामयहरा रुच्या रक्तपित्तार्ति दाहनुत् ॥

Rāja Nighaṅṭu, Śatāhvādhi Varga, 184-185.

जीवन्ती

जीवन्ती जीवनी जीवा कुल्या भ्रदा मधुस्रवा ।
मधुश्वासा जीवपृष्ठा शाकश्रेष्ठा यशस्करी ॥
नामधेया जीवभद्रा पुत्रभद्रा सुखंकरी ।
जीवनीया देवपृष्ठा मङ्गल्या भृङ्गरीटिका ॥

जीवन्ती गुणाः

जीवन्ती मधुरा शीता सुस्निग्धा ग्राहिणी लघुः ।
चक्षुष्या सर्वदोषघ्नी बल्यायुष्या रसायनी ॥

जीवन्ती फलम्

जीवन्तीफलमत्यर्थं मधुरं बृंहणं गुरु ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṅṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 99-101.

जीवन्ती शाकम्

‘जीवन्ती शाकं शाकानाम् ।’

Caraka Samhitā, Sūtra, 25.

पार्श्वेशूल शमनार्थं जीवन्तीमूल लेपः

‘जीवन्ती मूलकल्को वा सतैलः पार्श्वेशूल(हा)नुत् ।’

Cakradatta, Śula Cikitsā, 26-22.

व्रणे

जीवन्तीकल्कस्य सारं संपेष्य लेपयेत् त्रिदिनम् ।
पिच्छिलभावात् गुडं संपीड्य शमयेद् व्रणं नियतम् ॥

Vaidyamanoramā, 16-123.

दाहज्वरे

जीवन्तीमूलनिर्यूहः मधुनो दाहजूर्तिजित् ।
तद्वन्यग्रोधपादस्य बदरी पल्लवस्य वा ॥

Vaidyamanoramā, 1-20.

विषे

तण्डुलीयकजीवन्तीवार्ताकुसुनिषण्णकाः ।
चुञ्चूर्मण्डूकपर्णी च शाकञ्च कुलकं हितम् ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 23-225.

नेत्ररोगे-तिमिरे

जीवन्ती शाकं सुनिषण्णकं च सतण्डुलीयं वरवास्तुकं च ।
चिल्ली तथा मूलकपोतिकः च दृष्टेर्हितं शाकुन जाङ्गलञ्च ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, Uttara, 17-50; Vṛndamādhava, 61-115.

निशान्धे (नक्तान्धे) रात्र्यन्धत्व निवारणार्थम्

घृते सिद्धानि जीवन्त्याः पल्लवानि च भक्षयेत् ।
तथातिमुक्तकैरण्डशैफाल्यभिरुजानि च ॥
भृष्टं घृतं कुम्भयोनिः पत्रैः पाने च पूजितम् ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Uttara, 13-88/89.

कासे

जीवन्त्यादि लेहः ।

Caraka Saṁhitā Cikitsa. 18-176/179.

मुखरोगे

जीवन्तिकल्कं पयसा समांश तैलं विपक्वं मधुना विमिश्रम् ।
ओष्ठास्ययोः सर्जरसमष्टभागं व्रणं निहन्यात् सकृदेव लेपात् ॥

Baṅgasena, Mukharoga, 23.

JYOTIṢMATĪ

Botanical Name : *Celastrus paniculata* Linn.

Family : Celastraceae

Classical Name : Jyotiṣmatī

Sanskrit Names

Jyotiṣmatī, Pītatailā, Vegā, Kaṅguṇikā, Kākāṇḍakī, Pārāvatapadī.

Regional Names

Malkangani, Malkai, malkamni (Hindi).

Description

A large decidus climber with stems up to 23 cm. diam. and 18 meters high, sometimes twining dextrosely but more often rambling. Twigs fairly smooth, reddish brown, densely covered with small elongate whitish lenticels. Bark pale brown, rough with hollow cracks, exfoliating in small soft scales.

Blaze 7-5-10 mm., not fibrous, pink finely streaked with red or reddish brown, the juice turning blue on the blade of a knife.

Leaves 6.3-10 by 3.8-7.5 c., broadly elliptic ovate or obovate, abruptly short-acuminate, crenate-serrate, rather coriaceous, glabrous, lateral nerves arching. Petiole 7.5-15 mm. long.

Flowers 3.8 mm. diam., in terminal drooping, panicles 5-20 cm. long.

Capsules 1-1.3 cm. diam, depressed-globose, 3-lobed, bright-yellow, 3-6-seeds. Seeds completely enclosed in an orange-red aril.

Flowering and Fruiting Time

Summers to autumn season and onwards.

Distribution

It is found in Sub-Himalayan tracts and upto 6,000 ft.; in Central India and provinces in India.

Chemical Composition

Oil contains colouring matter; fat contains formic, acetic and benzoic acid. Fleshy aril yields a fat. Alkaloid clastrine, panicalatine. Stimulant action of celastrine is especially manifested in the brain and is not followed by a secondary depression.

Seeds yield brownish oil (52.2%) with unpleasant taste. Oil is extracted from seeds by two methods which yield black oil-oleum nigrum and oil containing creozote.

Pharmacodynamics

Rasa	: Kaṭu, Tikta
Guṇa	: Tikṣṇa, Snigdha, Sara
Vīrya	: Uṣṇa
Vipāka	: Kaṭu
Doṣakarma	: Vātakaphaśāmaka.

Action and Properties

Karma	: Medhya-buddhi smṛtījanana Vātahara-vedanāsthāpana Uttejaka, Dīpana-anulomana Hṛdayo'tejaka, Śirovirecana Vṛkkottejaka-mūtrajanana Nāḍībalya, Vājīkaraṇa Kuṣṭhaghna-svedajanana-kaṇḍūghna Āmapācana, Śothahara, Varṇya Cakṣuṣya, Ārtavajanana Vraṇaśodhana, Vāmanī.
Roga	: Mastiṣka-nāḍīvikāra, Smṛtīhrāsa Vātavyādhi-vātavikāra Pakṣāghāta-ardita-gr̥dhrasī- Kaṭiśūla-sandhivāta Dhvajabhaṅga-klaibya Granthi-gaṇḍamālā Agnimāndya-gulma-udararoga Hṛdroga-Śoṭha Tvagvikāra-kuṣṭha-kaṇḍū Ārtavavikāra-rajorodha Jvara, Mūtrakṛcchra Kāsa-śvāsa, Varṇavikāra.

Therapeutic Uses

It is brain-tonic, memory promotor, nervine tonic, anodyne, aphrodisiac, diaphoretic, diuretic, emmenagogue, expectorant, febrifuge, stimulant, heart tonic (stimulant), stomachic, antiphlogistic, anti-dermatosis and carminative.

It is one of the esteemed brain tonic herbal drugs.

It is useful in mental disorders, loss of memory, brain and nerve complaints, sciatica, paralysis, gout, joints pain and inflammation, epilepsy, insanity, dermatosis, skin affections, ulcers, abdominal diseases, complexion (skin pigmentation) disorders, ulcers, scrofula, constipation, beriberi, colic, asthma, menstrual troubles (scanty or painful periods) and fever.

The powder of seeds is orally used for promoting memory and treating disorders of brain and nerve system as a tonic; it is given in epilepsy and insanity. Seeds powder is internally given in various diseases; it is used in heart troubles (weakness), respiratory diseases, menstrual disorders and sexual debility (loss of erectibility of genital organ-male).

Leaves of the plant drug are also used in certain diseases. Expressed juice of the leaves is orally given to opiate subject (person addicted for opium use). Leaves are fried and used (or in form of decoction or juice) to the females suffering from the menstrual troubles.

The oil extracted from the seeds is externally as well as internally used in treatment of several ailments.

Seeds-oil is locally applied to joints pain and swelling, backache, sciatica, paralysis and various other nerve and muscular complaints. Oil is externally applied to skin affections, dermatosis, itchy affections and skin complexion complaints; it is topically applied to glandular affections. It is applied to genital organ (male) for stimulation or sexual excitement in organic impotency.

The oil of seeds is a specific medicine (black oil esteemed remedy against beriberi) for treatment of beriberi). The oil is orally given in fever for diaphoretic action. Seeds-oil is internally used as a brain tonic and medicine for other nerve as well as mental disorders; the dose of the oil for this purpose differs (lesser quantity).

Parts Used

Seeds, Oil (seeds-oil), Leaves.

Dose

Powder 1-3 gms., Oil 5-10 drops (minims), 2-10 drops
10-30 drops (brain tonic) (diaphoretic).

Groups (gaṇa)

Śirovirecana (Caraka Saṁhitā), Adhobhāgahara,
Śirovirecana (Suśruta Saṁhitā).

Formulations (yoga)

Jyotiṣmati tailam.

JYOTIṢMATĪ (ज्योतिष्मती)**ज्योतिष्मती मेध्या**

दीप्ता च मेध्या मतिदा च दुर्जरा
सरस्वती स्यादसृताकं सङ्घृयया ।

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Guḍūcyādi Varga, 82.

ज्योतिष्मतीगुणकर्माणि

ज्योतिष्मती तु सुस्निग्धा तिक्तोष्णा कटुका सरा ।
कषाया वामनी तीक्ष्णा मोहमेधाक्षिवर्णदा ॥
कफानिलहरा हन्ति व्रण वीसर्प पाण्डुताः ।

Kaiyadeva Nighaṇṭu, Oṣadhi Varga, 716-717.

ज्योतिष्मती कटुस्तिका सरा कफसमीरजित् ।
अत्युष्या वामनी तीक्ष्णा वह्निबुद्धि स्मृतिप्रदा ॥

Bhāvaprakāśa Nighaṇṭu, Harītakādi Varga, 172.

ज्योतिष्मती तैलम्

कटुज्योतिष्मती तैलं तिक्तोष्णं वातनाशनम् ।
पित्तसंतापनं मेधा प्रज्ञाबुद्धि विवर्धनम् ॥

Rāja Nighaṇṭu, Kṣīrādi Varga, 120.

रजःविकारे

सकाञ्जिकं भृष्टं ज्योतिष्मतीदलम् ।
प्राश्य वनितात्वार्तवं लभेत् ।

ज्योतिष्मतीगुणाः

कटुभी कटु तीक्ष्णोष्णा कफजित् च विरेचनी ।
 मेधाकरी वर्णकरी व्रण्या जठरनाशिनी ॥
 ज्योतिष्मती कटुस्तिका सरा कफसमीरजित् ।
 अत्युष्णा वमनी तीक्ष्णा वह्निबुद्धिस्मृतिप्रदा ॥

Dhanvantari Nighaṅṭu.

ज्योतिष्मती तिक्तरसा च रूक्षा ।
 किञ्चित् कटु वातकफापहा च ॥
 दाहप्रदा दीपनकृच्च मेध्या,
 प्रज्ञाञ्च पुष्णाति तथा द्वितीया ।

Rāja Nighaṅṭu.

उदररोगे

ज्योतिष्कफलतैलं वा क्षीरेण स्वर्जिकाहिङ्गुमिश्रं पिबेत् ।

*Suśruta Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 14-10;
 Baṅgasena, Udara Cikitsā, 56.*

सन्निपातोदरे

ज्योतिष्मत्याः पिबेत् तैलं पयसा वा दिनाष्टकम् ।

Baṅgasena, Udara Cikitsā.

ज्योतिष्मतीगुणाः

मेध्या ज्योतिष्मती तीक्ष्णा व्रणविस्फोयट नाशनी ।

Rāja Mārtaṅḍa.

अपस्मारे ज्योतिष्मती नावनम्

ज्योतिष्मती नागदन्ती पादोक्ता मूत्रषेविता ॥

योगास्रयोऽतः षड् बिन्दून् पञ्च वा नावयेद्भिषक् ।

Caraka Saṁhitā, Cikitsā, 10-42/43.

रजोराधेषु आर्तवजननार्थं भृष्ट ज्योतिष्मतीपत्र प्रयोगः

‘.....भृष्टं ज्योतिष्मती दलम् ।

सम्प्राश्य न चिरादेव वनितात्वार्तवं लभेत् ॥

Cakradatta, 62-25; Yonivyaptcikitsā, 22.

बाला नामक हरो योगः

‘दत्त्वा रजनीचूर्णं दत्ते नश्येदनामाख्यः ।’

Cakradatta, Bālaroya Cikitsā, 63-12.

व्रणशोधने

ज्योतिष्मती लांगलकी श्यामा दन्ती त्रिवृत्तिलाः ।
 कुष्ठं शताह्वा गोलोमी तिल्वको गिरिकर्णिका ॥
 कासीसं काञ्चनक्षीर्यो वर्गः शोधन इष्यते ।

Suśruta Samhitā, Cikitsā, 8-39.

ज्वरे तन्द्रायाम्

ज्योतिष्मत्त्वास्तथा तैलं मूलं पिण्डारकस्य वा ।
 तन्द्राविनाशनं श्रेष्ठं नस्यकर्मणि योजितम् ॥

Baṅgasena, Jvara. 490.

सिध्ने

मयूरकक्षारजले सारकृत्वः परिस्तुते ।
 सिद्धं ज्योतिष्मतीतैलमभ्यंगात् सिध्मनाशनम् ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hr̥daya, Cikitsā, 19-75.



PHARMACOLOGICAL ACTION OF DRUGS

Medhya

Brāhmī
Jyotiṣmatī
Kūṣmāṇḍa

Madakāri

Ahiphena
Dhattūra

Sajñāsthāpana

Jaṭāmārsī
Kaṭphala
Hiṅgu

Nidrājanana

Alābū

Vedanāsthāpana

Guggulu
Eraṇḍa
Aṅkola
Devadāru

Ākṣepaśamana

Bhūrjapatra

Cakṣuṣya

Cakṣusyā

Svedāpanayana

Uśīra

Keśya

Bhr̥ṅgarāja

Vidāhī

Ajagandha

Snehopaga

Drākṣā

Kaṇḍūghna

Āragvadha

Bhallātaka

Bākucī

Cakramarda

Hṛdya

Arjuna

Āruka

Śothahara (Hṛdayottejaka)

Bilva

Agnimantha

Gambhārī

Adhaḥpuṣpī

Chedana (śleṣmahara)

Bibhītaka

Gojihvā

Bola

Kāсахara

Agastya

Śvāsahara

Bhārṅgī

Tṛṣṇānigrahaṇa

Dhṅvayāsa

Dhānyaka

Tṛptighna

Ādraka-śuṅṭhī

Cavya

Dantya

Bakula

Rocana

Āmrātaka

Amlavetasa

Dāḍima

Bhavya

Ciñcā	Madhurakaśamana
Cāṅgerī	Bimbī
Cukra	Arśoghna
Dīpana	Bhallātaka
Ativiśā	Cāṅgerī
Citraka	Citraka
Jiraka	Apāmārga
Pācana	Bilva
Eraṇḍakarkaṭī	Dantī
Vāmaka	Prajāsthāpana
Ikṣvāku	Dūrvā
Ariṣṭaka	Garbhāśayasāṅkocaka
Vamanopaga	Īśvarī
Hijjala	Ārtavaśāmana
Recana	Aśoka
Atasī	Mūtravirecanīya
Indravāruṇī	Gokṣura
Arka	Īkṣu
Dugdhikā	Mūtrasaṅgrahaṇīya
Dantī	Jambū
Jayapāla	Āmra
Grāhī	Udumbara
Jātīphala	Aśvattha
Stambhana	Bijaka
Dhātakī	Asana
Babbūla	Dhava
Āvartanī	Āmapācana
Ākāśavallī	Ciciṅḍa
Śūlapraśamana	Jvarapratibandhaka
Ajamodā	Droṇapuṣpī
Candraśūra	Dāhapraśamana
Kṛmighna	Candana
Iṅgudī	Elā
Pittasāraka	Bṛhadelā
Dāruharidrā	Rakta-candana
Apāmārga	Campaka
Dugdhaphenī	Śītapraśamana
Damanaka	Aguru

Vraṇaśodhana

Gāṅgerukī

Jīvanīya

Jīvantī

Balya

Balā

Atibalā

Bhūmibalā

Akṣoṭa

Garjara

Rasāyana

Harītakī

Āmalakī

Guḍūcī

Aśvagandhā

Upaviṣa

Guñjā

Viśaghna

Chilahiṅṭa

Raktastambhana

Japā

Jhaṅḍū

Bṛṃhana

Chatraka

Lekhana-karśaṇa

Cirabilva

Sandhānīya

Asthiśṛṅkhalā



THERAPEUTIC INDICATION OF DRUGS

Abortifacient

Indravāruṇī
Guñjā

Abscess

Atasī
Citṛaka
Daśamūla
Guggula

Agnimāndya Deficient- digestion

Ajamodā
Āmalakī
Ārdraka
Arka
Haritakī
Jambū

Alcoholism

Amlavetasa
Bhārṅgī
Dāḍima
Drākṣā
Hiṅgu
Hribera

Alopecia (Baldness)

Bhallātaka
Bṛhatī
Dhattura
Gokṣura
Guñjā
Indravāruṇī

Āmavāta-Rheumatic Arthritis

Ajamoda
Ārgvadha

Daśamūla

Dhānyaka

Eraṇḍa

Gokṣura

Guggulu

Gudūcī

Haritakī

Amlapitta-Acid gastritis (hyperacidity)

Bhṛṅgarāja

Gudūcī

Guggulu

Haritakī

Jambīra

Jīraka

Anaemia

Āmalakī

Asana

Citṛaka

Dāḍima

Dantī

Dāruharidrā

Daśamūla

Haridrā

Haritakī

Īkṣu

Gambhārī

Anorexia

Āmlikā

Āmra

Ārdraka

Bṛhatī

Apaci-scrofula

Bhallātaka
Bhr̥ṅgarāja
Girikarṇikā

Aphrodisiac

Āmalakī
Aṅkoṭa
Aśvattha
Bhallātaka
Godhūma
Gokṣura

Arthritis

Indravāruṇī
Guggulu

Asthma-Śvāsa

Aguru
Aṅkoṭa
Ādraka
Arka
Aśvagandhā
Bibhītaka
Bhārṅgī
Bhr̥ṅgarāja
Bṛhatī
Coraka
Daśamūla
Devadāru
Guggulu
Haridrā

Bhasmaka-Excessive Digestion

Apāmārga

Boils

Arka
Dhattūra

Burn

Aśvattha

Burning sensation

Āmalakī
Badarī

Caṇaka**Calculus-Aśmarī**

Amlavetasa
Apāmārga
Bibhītaka
Darbha
Ervāru
Gokṣura
Harīdra
Harītakī
Jātī

Gravels-Śarkarā

Ajamodā
Apāmārga
Darbha

Chest-pain

Balā
Eraṇḍa
Jīvantī

Colic-śūla

Agastya Ajamodā
Āmalakī
Amlavetasa
Apāmārga
Aśvattha
Babbūla
Dhanvana
Eraṇḍa
Godhūma
Haridrā
Hiṅgu
Jiraka

Constipation

Eraṇḍa
Drākṣā
Harītakī

Consumption-Śoṣa

Arjuna
Aśvagandhā

Aśvattha	Citraka
Balā	Daśamūla
Daśamūla	Devadāru
Drākṣā	Drākṣā
Gokṣura	Eraṇḍa
Contraceptive	Godhūma
Japā	Guḍūcī
Candraśūra	Hapuṣā
Haridrā	Hareṇuka
Coryza-Pratiśyāya	Haridrā
Amlikā	Harītakī
Ārdraka	Jīvantī
Citraka	Cyst-Tumour
Coraka	Dantī
Dāruharidrā	Drākṣā
Dhattūra	Depilatory
Harītakī	Bhallātaka
Jayā	Diarrhoea
Cosmetic	Ahiphena
Jātī	Ajamodā
Harīdrā	Amlikā
Japā	Āmra
Āmalakī	Arka
Bhṛṅgarāja	Arjuna
Cough	Ativiṣā
Abhiṣuka	Babbūla
Agastya	Badarī
Aguru	Bibhītaka
Ahiphena	Bilva
Ajagandhā	Cāṅgerī
Āmalakī	Cavya
Amlikā	Citraka
Ārdraka	Dāḍima
Arka	Daśamūla
Badarī	Dhānyaka
Bhāringī	Dhātakī
Bhṛṅgarāja	Durālabhā
Bibhītaka	Eraṇḍa
Bṛhatī	Gajapippalī

Hapuṣā
Harītakī
Hrīvera
Jambū
Jātīphala
Jivantī

Diarrhoea with blood

Badarī
Candana
Jambū

Diseases of Mouth

Arimeda
Dāruharidrā
Drākṣā
Jivantī
Bakula

Inflammation of Lip**Rohiṇī**

Eraṇḍakarkaṭī

Stomatitis

Āmara
Aśvattha
Jātī

Diseases of Nose

Devadāru

Diseases of Teeth

Babbūla
Bakula
Dugdhikā

Dental Caries

Arka
Bākucī
Guñjā
Hiṅgu

Loose Mouth

Daśamūla

Toothache

Girikarṇika
Bakula

Diseases of Throat

Arka
Eraṇḍakarkaṭī
Badarī
Harītakī

Diseases of Women

Daśamūla
Aśoka

Amenorrhoea

Indravāruṇī
Japā

Leucorrhoea

Dāruharidrā
Dhātakī

Mastitis

Dhattūra

Menorrhagia

Alābū
Āmalakī
Apāmārga
Āruka
Atibalā
Badarī
Balā
Bhūmyāmalakī
Candana
Dāruharidrā
Guḍūcī
Japā

Puerperal Disorders**Sūtika Roga**

Daśamūla

Somaroga

Āmalakī
Amlikā

Sterility

Asthisamhāra
Aśvagandhā
Bākucī

Bṛhatī (śveta)	Ear Diseases
Dhātakī	Amlikā
Eraṇḍa	Apāmārga
Disorders of Vaginal Organ- female Genital Tract	Arka
Arka	Bhūrja
Himsrā	Bṛhatī
Jivaniya gaṇa	Catuṣparṇa
Slimy and Lax Vagina	Deafness
Āmra	Apāmārga
Bhaṅgā	Bākucī
Vaginal pain	Bilva
Apāmārga	Daśamūla
Bhṛṅgarāja	Earache
Eraṇḍa	Amlikā
Disorders of Vaginal-Organic Change or Displacement	Apāmārga
Ārdraka	Arka
Harītakī	Bhūrja
Disorders of Semen	Bṛhatī
Haritakī	Ārdraka
Drowsiness	Aśvattha
Jyotiṣmatī	Devadāru
Dysentery	Drākṣā
Ajamoda	Eraṇḍa
Bākucī	Hingu
Bhṛṅgarāja	Jambīra
Dāruharidrā	Jhaṅḍū
Dugdḥikā	Foetid Ear
Dysuria	Guggulu
Atibalā	Jātī
Apāmārga	Krimikarṇa
Darbha	Jambū
Elā	Otorrhoea
Ervāru	Dhava
Gokṣura	Apāmārga
Hapuṣā	Bilva
Jātī	Emaciation
	Aśvagandhā
	Ikṣu

Emetic

Jimūta

Epilepsy

Agastya

Brāhmī

Coraka

Daśamūla

Jyotiṣmatī

Eruptive Boils-Visphoṭaka

Dugdhikā

Guducī

Erysepalas-Visarpa

Agnimantha

Āmalakī

Āragvadhā

Ārtagala

Aśvagandhā

Balā

Bhūrja

Candana

Dāḍima

Dāruharidrā

Dhava

Dūrvā

Gunjā

Hrīdrā

Hribera

Ikṣu

Granthi-Visarpa

Bibhītaka

Daśamūla

Eye Diseases

Ārtagala

Āmalakī

Amlikā

Apāmārga

Arka

Babbūla

Bhṛṅgarāja

Bibhītaka

Bilva

Cakṣuṣyā

Candana

Dāruharidrā

Darbha

Devadāru

Droṇapuṣpī

Eraṇḍa

Girikarṇikā

Guḍūcī

Hareṇukā

Harītakī

Bibhītaka

Āmalakī

Jīvantī

Conjunctivitis

Dantī

Dhātakī

Eraṇḍa

Visionary defects-Timira

Daśamūla

Elā

Eraṇḍa

Gunjā

Harītakī

Jīvantī

Asana

Cakṣuṣyā

Night-Blindness

Agastya

Bhṛṅgarāja

Eraṇḍa

Jīvantī

Eye Pain

Bhūmyāmalakī

Eyelids affection-Pakṣmakopa

Harītakī

Piṣṭaka-Netravikāra

Bṛhatī

Fainting

Āmalakī

Ārdraka

Harītakī

Fever

Agastya

Āmalakī

Āmra

Āragvadha

Ārdraka

Bilva

Bṛhatī

Dāḍima

Darbha

Daśamūla

Devadāru

Dhanvana

Dhānyaka

Dhattūra

Drākṣā

Eraṇḍa

Guḍūcī

Hareṇukā

Harītakī

Hribera

Jīmūita

Jiraka

Jivantī

Chronic Fever

Guḍūcī

Daśamūla

Malarial Fever

Ajagandhā

Bhallātāka

Bhārṅgī

Bhūstrṇa

Coraka

Droṇapuspi

Guḍūcī

Harītakī

Hiṅgu

Jiraka-śveta

Jiraka-kṛṣṇa

Filaria

Arka

Asana

Bākucī

Balā

Citrika

Devadāru

Dhattūra

Eraṇḍa

Guḍūcī

Haridrā

Harītakī

Jingiṇī

Fistula-in-ano

Guggulu

Haridrā

Jātī

Flatulence

Ajamodā

Harītakī

Hiṅgu

Jiraka

Foul smell in Body

Campaka

Candana

Hilamocikā

Jātī

Fracture

Amlikā

Arjuna

Asthisamhāra

Aśvattha

Dhātakī
 Godhūma
Fumigation
 Coraka
 Jaṭāmāmsī
Galacto-depurant
(Stanyaśodhana)
 Ajamoda
 Daśamūla
 Guḍūcī
 Harītakī
 Jivakādyagaṇa
Galactogogue
(Stanyaajanana)
 Darbha
Gaṇḍamāla (Cervical adenitis)
 Āragvadha
 Arka
 Girikarṇikā
 Arka
 Godhūma
 Guñjā
 Indravāruṇī
Giddiness
 Durālabhā
 Drākṣā
Goitre
 Ajagandhā
 Balā
 Bhārṅgī
 Devadāru
 Girikarṇika
 Hamsapadī
 Hastikarṇa
 Jalakumbhī
Gonorrhoea
 Āmra
 Arjuna
 Dāḍima

japā
 Jhaṇḍū
Grahaṇi-roga
 Aṅkoṭa
 Arjuna
 Ativiṣā
 Bhārṅgī
 Bilva
 Bṛhatī
 Candana
 Cāṅgerī
 Coraka
 Daśamūla
 Drākṣā
 Duralabhā
 Hariakī
 Ikṣu
Hair Greying-Pālitya
 Āmalakī
 Bhṛṅgarāja
 Dugdrikā
 Indravāruṇī
 Japā
Gulma
 Ajagandhā
 Amlavetasa
 Amlikā
 Arka
 Bhallātaka
 Dhānyaka
 Drākṣā
 Eraṇḍa
 Hapuṣā
 Harītakī
 Hingu
Haematuria
 Gokṣura
Haemorrhage
 Arimeda

Bhūmyāmalakī	Devadāru
Dhanvana	Harītakī
Dūrvā	Ikṣu
Head-diseases	Hoarseness of Voice
Abhiśūka	Ajamodā
Akṣoṭa	Āmalakī
Apāmārga	Ārtagala
Headache	Balā
Badarī	Citraka
Coraka	Badarī
Suryāvarta	Haṁsapadī
Bhṛṅgarāja	Haridrā
Heart-diseases	Incontinence of Urine
Āmalakī	Campaka
Arjuna	Indigestion
Āruka	Ajamodā
Aśvagandhā	Āmra
Bibhitaka	Dhānyaka
Daśamūla	Jambīra
Dāḍima	Harītakī
Godhūma	Inflammation
Drākṣā	Agnimantha
Elā	Atasī
Candana	Aśvattha
Headache	Insanity
Badarī	Brāhmī
Coraka	Cāṅgerī
Hernia	Coraka
Bhārṅgī	Daśamūla
Godhūma	Dhattūra
Harītakī	hareṇukā
Hiccough	Hingu
Aguru	Indravāruṇī
Āmalakī	Jaṭāmārsī
Amlavetasa	Jyotiṣmatī
Arka	Insomnia
Candana	Apāmārga
Candraśūra	Aśvagandhā
Coraka	Bhārṅgī

Jaundice

Āmalakī
 Aṅkoṭa
 Apāmārga
 Āragvadha
 Arka
 Bhūmyamalakī
 Bilva
 Dantī
 Dāruharidrā
 Droṇapuṣpī
 Guḍūcī
 Haridrā
 Harītakī
 Indravāruṇī
 Jimūṭaka

Halīmaka

Guḍūcī

Kṣataksīna

(Wasting with chest-wound)

Abhiṣūka
 Akṣoṭaka
 Balā
 Jivakādyagaṇa

Kṣudraroga

Bākucī
 Bhaṅgā
 Haridrā
 Harītakī

Cracks in Feet

Dhattūra
 Jātī

Dandruff

Ahiphena
 Āmra
 Guñjā
 Harītakī

Head-boils

Arka

Jālakagardabha

Āmalakī

Mole

Eraṇḍa

Psoriasis

Haimavatī vacā

Ringworm

Amlikā
 Dugdhikā

Vārāhadanṣtra

Bhṛṅgarāja

Vyaṅga

(Freckles and Shade Face)

Agnimantha
 Āmalakī
 Amlikā
 Dāḍima
 Haridrā
 Inḡudī
 Jambū
 Jātī

Wart

Indravāruṇī

Whitlow

Haridrā
 Harītakī

Kuṣṭha

Adhopuṣpī
 Āmalakī
 Amlavetasa
 Āragvadha
 Arka
 Arjuna
 Asana
 Bākucī
 Bhallātaka
 Bhārṅgī
 Bhūrja
 Cakramarda

Citraka	Atibalā
Dantī	Balā
Dāruharidrā	Bhūrja
Devadāru	Hastening Delivery
Dhātakī	Godhūma
Dhava	Jīmūta
Godhūma	Expelling placenta
Guḍūci	Kikkisa
Guñjā	Āragvadha
Harīdra	Pain during Pregnancy
Harītakī	Balā
Iṅgudī	Drākṣā
Jalakumbhī	Erāvāru
Jīmūta	Stabilising Foetus
Sidhma	Bhrṅgarāja
Apāmarga	Oedema
Jyotiṣmatī	Agurū
Liver enlargement	Agnimantha
Harītakī	Alābu
Mental disorders	Amlikā
Girikarṇikā	Āmra
Nacrosis	Ārdraka
Haritakī	Bibhītaka
Obesity	Bilva
Agnimantha	Caṇḍā
Asana	Citraka
Atimuktaka	Daśamūla
Babbūla	Devadāru
Badarī	Eraṇḍa
Bilva	Girikarṇikā
Citraka	Guggulu
Eraṇḍa	Harītakī
Gavedhukā	Paediatric Disorders
Guggulu	Āmalakī
Harītakī	Ativiṣā
Obstetric disorders	Ārdraka
Abortion	Bhūrja
Difficult labour	Bilva
Apāmarga	Brahmī

Bṛhatī	Eraṇḍa
Coraka	Guḍūcī
Hribera	Hapuṣā
Ahiputanaka	Haridrā
Badarī	Harītakī
Asthma	Hribera
Asthma	Jalakumbhī
Dhānyaka	Bleeding Piles
Bālagraha	Amlikā
Ajagandhā	Balā
Aralu	Candana
Āsphotā	Cukrikā
Bālaśoṣa	Dāḍima
Aśvagandhā	Dugdrikā
Neo-natal conjunctivitis	Dūrvā
Jambū	Jhaṇḍu
Cough	Poisoning
Dhānyaka	Ajagandhā
Inflammation of Umbilicus	Aṅkoṭa
Candana	Aralu
Piles	Arimeda
Adhaḥpuṣpī	Arka
Agnimantha	Aśvattha
Alābū	Ativiṣā
Āmalakī	Bākucī
Amlavetasa	Bandhūka
Apāmārga	Bhallātaka
Ārdraka	Bhārngī
Arjuna	Bhūrja
Arka	Candana
Asphotā	Carmakaṣā
Bhallātaka	Coraka
Bhārngī	Dāruharidrā
Bilva	Hamsapadī
Bṛhatī	Haridrā
Cāṅgerī	Jātī
Citraka	Jīmūtaka
Dantī	Jīvantī
Dhānyaka	

Rabies

Dhattūra
Jalavetasa

Rat-poisoning

Āsphotā
Īngudī

Scorpion-sting

Apāmārga
Jayantī

Snake-poison

Amlikā
Dravanti
Girikarṇikā
Hareṇukā

Spider-poisoning

Arkaparṇī
Hribera

Pox

Āmalakī
Amlikā
Badarī
Candana
Dāḍima
Gavedhukā
Haridrā
Hilamocikā
Jambīra
Jayā

Prameha

Aguru
Agnimantha
Āmalakī
Āragvadha
Asana
Aśvattha
Atasī
Bhūmyāmalakī
Candana
Citraka

Dāruharidrā

Dhanvana

Godhūma

Guḍūcī

Haridrā

Haritakī

Ikṣumeha

Jayā

Madhumeha-Kṣoudrameha

(Diabetes)

Kadara

Jambū

Bilva

Bimbī

Diabetic boil**Śukrameha**

Arjuna

Prolapse of Rectum

Amlikā

Cāṅgerī

Purgative

Arka

Dantī

Raktapitta

(Intrinsic haemorrhage)

Āmalakī

Āmra

Añjīra

Arjuna

Asana

Atimuktaka

Balā

Candana

Dāḍima

Drākṣā

Duralabhā

Dūrvā

Gokṣura

Haritakī

Hrībera	Durālabhā
Ikṣu	Harītakī
Īngudī	Scrotal Enlargement
Jambū	Arka
Rasāyana	Balā
Aguru	Dāruharidrā
Āmalakī	Eraṇḍa
Aṅkoṭa	Guggulu
Asana	Harītakī
Aśvagandhādi gaṇa	Indravaruṇī
Atibalā	Jayā
Bākucī	Skin diseases
Balā	Aguru
Bhallātaka	Āmra-Ārgvadha
Bhaṅgā	Arjuna
Bhṛṅgarāja	Arka
Bilva	Dhattura
Brāhmī	Dūsrva
Citraka	Cakramarda
Copacīnī-dvīpāntaravacā	Bākucī
Darbha	Splenomegaly
Dhava	Amlavetasa
Gokṣura	Āmra
Haimavatī vacā	Arka
Harītakī	Badarī
Hapuṣā	Guḍūcī
Hastikarṇa	Sun-stroke
Medhya-rasāyana	Ādhakī
(Intellect Promoting)	Āmalakī
Āmalakī	Āmra
Brāhmī	Ciñcā
Guḍūcī	Suppression of Urine
Jyotiṣmatī	Āmalakī
Re-pigmentation	Āragvadha
Bākucī	Elā
Bhallātaka	Syphilis
Retention of Urine	Copacīnī
Darbha	Ākarakarabha
Drākṣā	

Thirst

Āmalakī
 Āmra
 Balā
 Aśvattha
 Daḍima
 Dhānyaka
 Drākṣā
 Guḍūcī
 Harītakī
 Haridrā
 Ikṣu

Udararoga

Ajagandhā
 Āragvadha
 Ārdraka
 Aśvagandhā
 Babbūla
 Bilva
 Caṇaka
 Caviḥ
 Citraka
 Jyotiṣmatī
 Dantī
 Devadāru
 Dravantī
 Eraṇḍa
 Guggulu
 Hapuṣā
 Harītakī

Urticaria

Agnimantha
 Āmalakī
 Ārdraka
 Candana

Urustambha

Agnimantha
 Ajagandhā
 Āragvadha

Arka

Aśvagandhā
 Bhallātaka
 Guggulu
 Haritakī

Uṣṇavāta

Candana

Vātarakta

Abhiṣuka
 Adhaḥpuṣpī
 Āḍhakī
 Agastya
 Akṣoṭa
 Āmalakī
 Aśvattha
 Atasī
 Balā
 Candana
 Daśamūla
 Dhānyaka
 Eraṇḍa
 Godhūma
 Guḍūcī
 Guggulu
 Hamsapadi
 Haridrā
 Harītakī
 Jivakādyagaṇa

Vātavyādhi

Ajagandhā
 Amlikā
 Ārdraka
 Aśoka
 Asthisamhāra
 Aśvagandhā
 Balā
 Bhallātaka
 Daśamūla
 Devadāru

Eraṇḍa	Bibhītaka
Godhūma	Citraka
Hapuṣā	Girikarnikā
Haridrā	Hribera
Haritakī	Vomiting (Chardi)
Hiṅgu	Āmra
Apastambha	Āmalakī
Amlavetasa	Badarī
Avabāhuka	Bhustrṇa
Balā	Bilva
Guñjā	Candaṇī
Iṅgudi	Dhānyaka
Gr̥dhrasī (Sciatica)	Drākṣā
Guggulu	Duralabhā
Kroṣṭuśirṣa	Dūrvā
(Chronic arthritis)	Elā
Guggulu	Gavedhukā
Hanugraha (Lock-Jaw)	Guḍūcī
Bimbī	Haritakī
Veneral Diseases	Hribera
Upadaṃśa (Soft-Chancere)	Jambīra
Āragvadha	Jambū
Bābbūla	Jātī
Bhṛṅgarāja	Jīraka
Dāḍima	Wasting (Kārśya)
Dāruharidrā	Agastya
Haritakī	Balā
Viṣūcikā	Worms (Helminthiasis)
(Gastro-enteritis)	Āmalakī
Apāmārga	Bhallātaka
Arka	Bhūstrṇa
Jīraka	Bimbī
Ela	Devadāru
Vitiligo-leucoderma	Gunieaworm
(Śvitra)	Babbūla
Asana	Bhallātaka
Bākucī	Wound
Bhallātaka	Aguru
Bhṛṅgarāja	Ajagandhā

Amlikā
 Āpāmārga
 Āragvadha
 Arjuna
 Arka
 Āsphoṭa
 Aśvagandhā
 Aśvattha
 Atasī
 Bākucī
 Balā
 Bhārṅgī
 Bhṛṅgarāja
 Bhūrja
 Dantī

Daruharidrā
 Devadāru
 Dhāttūra
 Dravantī
 Dūrvā
 Eraṇḍa
 Gāṅgerukī
 Godhūma
 Guggulu
 Indravāruṇī
 Īngudī
 Jambū
 Jātī
 Jīvantī
 Jyotiṣmatī



TECHNICAL-MEDICAL TERMINOLOGY

- Abhiṣyanda** : Conjunctivitis, a kind of eye-diseases.
- Ādhmānakara(ī)** : Causing flatulence, abdominal abnormal condition.
- Ādhmāna** : A disorder in which there is an excessive collection of gas in the stomach; gas in the digestive tract due to fermentation or decomposition, vitiation-aggravation of Vāta.
- Ānāha, Āṭopa** : Different stages or ailing conditions of Ādhmāna and related disorders of gastro-intestinal tract. Condition characterized in hardness in abdomen caused by wind in excess in bowels.
- Adhimāṃsa** : Swelling, big and painful, in molar teeth causing salivation.
- Ahipūtanaka** : Scabies in anus.
- Ajakājāta** : Staphylooma, a kind of eye-diseases.
- Āmavāta** : Rheumatic arthritis.
- Amla** : Sour, acidic.
- Amlapitta** : Acid gastritis, or known as Hyper acidity characterized by hyperacidity, burning sensation, abnormal feeling of stomach, abdominal pain, biliary nausea and other symptoms.
- Anyatovāta** : A disease of eye having intense pain in eye-brows or eye-ball due to aggravated Vāta.
- Apacī** : Scrofula; glandular enlargement.
- Apatantraka** : A vātic-disorder characterized by fits of convulsions with loss of consciousness.
- Arjuna** : Subconjunctival haemorrhage, a kind of eye-diseases.
- Arma** : Pterygium; a kind of eye-diseases.

- Avabāhuka** : Pain in arms caused by aggravation of Vāta in shoulder joint.
- Ākhuviṣa** : Rat-poisoning
- Āmadoṣa** : It broadly refers to food intoxication usually associated with faulty digestion (and impaired metabolism).
- Atisāra** : Diarrhoea; diarrhoeal complains.
- Āyuṣskara** : Promotion of life.
- Agnidīpana** : Stimulating the factor of gastro-intestinal digestion.
- Agnidagdha** : Burn
- Aguru** : Light (not heavy).
- Anuṣṇa** : Not hot or less (little) hot.
- Ajūrṇa** : Indigestion
- Anulomana** : Regulating the bowel movement or function, intestinal function (e.g. Vātānulomana as carminative), helping in putting or sending in right direction.
- Apsmāra** : Epilepsy, Epileptic.
- Arśa** : Piles; haemorrhoids or haemorrhoidal.
- Āyuvardhana** : Promoting Life, longevity.
- Aruci** : Anorexia, anorectic.
- Asthibhagna** : Bone fracture.
- Asthisandhānīya** : Promoting healing of bone fractures.
- Aparāpātana (niṣkramaṇa)** : Expulsion of placenta (delivery of foetus); obstetries.
- Alarka, śvāna-kukkura daṃṣṭra- Viṣa** : Dog-bite, rabies.
- Asra-rakta** : Blood.
- Aśmarī** : Calculus, stone; various kinds of Mūtrāśmarī-urinary organs and Pittāśmarī-gall bladder.
- Atisāra-Āmātisāra** : Diarrhoea, dysentery; gastro-enteritis.
- Āsyavairasya-muskhavirasatā** : Tastelessness of mouth; Tasteless state

of Vocal Cavity (mouth orific-tongue taste sense).

- Agnimāndya** : Achylla, Dyspepsia (Mandāgni).
Āntrasūla : Intestinal colic.
Āntraśoṭha : Enteritis (Grahani).
Arbuda : Tumour
Anśughāta : Sun-stroke.
Atyagni, Tivrāgni : Excessive hunger.
Adhimantha : Glucoma
Apathya : Unwholesome, Unsuitable, Unfavourable (harmful).
Bālagraha : Seizures in children causing various syndromes (Grahavādhā, Bhūtavādhā).
Bhaṣmaka : Excessive hunger and digestion causing loss of dhātus, imaciation and debility.
Bālaroga, Bālāmaya,
Bālavikāra : Children diseases; Paediatrics.
Baddhamūtra : Anurea.
Balya : Promoting, body strength, muscular strength, resistance to diseases tonic, decay and degeneration; combating the virulence of the disease and capacity to inhibit or neutralise the cause of the diseases.
Bandhyātva : Sterility.
Bhagandara : Fistula-in-ano.
Bhedana : Purgation, purgative.
Bhrama : Giddiness, mental confusion and *delusion*.
Bṛiḥaṇa : Promoting body buck.
Bodhana : Awakening or arousing.
Buddhiprada : Promoting intellectual faculties.
Bhūtavādhā : Demnological effects to cause ailing condition.
Bhagaśoṭha : Vulvitis.
Carmadala : Psoriasis; the skin disease.
Cakṣuṣya : Benefecial to the eyes.
Chardi : Vomiting

Carmoroga	: Skin diseases.
Chedana	: Expectorant
Cirapākī	: Taking a long time to get digested.
Caturthika/ Viṣama jvara	: Malarial periodic/quartan fever.
Caladanta	: Loose teeth.
Dhūpana	: Fumigation.
Duṣṭavraṇa	: Indolent, foul and sloughy ulcers.
Dāhahara, Dāhprasāmana	: Refrigerant, relieving burning sensation.
Dadru	: Ringworm; scaly and exudative affections of the skin.
Dantaroga	: Dental diseases.
Dantya	: Dentrifice, promoting teeth or dental health, curing dental ailments.
Dīpāna-pācana	: Gastro-stimulant and digestive.
Dīpana, Dīpanya	: Gastro-stimulant, improving digestion.
Dhātupuṣṭikara	
Dhātuvardhaka	: Nourishing improving and promoting body tissues; nutrient tissue homologues nourishing the tissue.
Drṣṭiprasādana	: Capable or potent for improving and protecting vision.
Carmadala	: Psoriasis, the tedious skin diseases; common chronic inflammation of the skin, marked by rounded reddened patches which are covered with dry silvery scales.
Galagaṇḍa	: Goitre; a disease of thyroid gland.
Gaṇḍamāla	: Cervical adenitis causing a chain of swollen gland in neck.
Grahaṇīroga	: A kind of disorders of intestineal or digestive tract particularly Grahaṇī (organ), the seat of agni, causing loss of appetite, indigestion, constipation attenuating with diarrhoea and malabsorption. Malabsorption,

syndrome/chronic, amoebiasis/
colitis.

- Granthi visarpa** : A type of erysepalas causing inflammation of gland with high fever, pain and other associated signs and symptomes.
- Gulma** : Abdominal lump caused by accumulation of wind and other causes.
- Garbhāśayaśodhana,**
Garbhāśayaśamsodhana : Indicated to clense the uterus.
- Garbhāśayaśaithilya**
(śīthilitā) : Uterine Inertia.
- Garbhapātana** : Inducing abortion.
- Garbhapātakara** : Abortifacient.
- Garbhasthāpana** : Promoting conception (pregnancy).
- Grahavādhā** : Psychiatric involvement and its bad effects behind anomalies of abnormalcy (bodilty, psychosmatic or psychic).
- Granthiroga** : Glandular enlargement, swelling and other symptomes.
- Grāhī** : Astringent property.
- Galaroga-śoṭha** : Throat affections (also tonsilitis, pharyngitis.)
- Gudaroga** : Rectal ailments; proctological disorders.
- Gṛdhrasī** : Sciaticā.
- Guṇa** : Properties, physical qualities of substances.
- Hikkā** : Hiccough
- Hṛdroga** : Heart-diseases; heart trouble.
- Hṛdrujā** : Heart pain; angina-pectoris.
- Hṛdya** : Cardial, Cardiac or Cardiac Tonic.
- Hṛdyāvāsādaka** : Cardiac depressant.
- Hṛllāsa** : Nausea (Utkleśa).
- Halimaka** : Advanced stage or case of Jaundice.
- Ikṣumeha** : Glycosuria
- Indralupta** : Baldness

- Jālakagardabha** : A syndrome like erysepelas causing fever and swelling.
- Jalodara** : Ascites (Dakodara).
- Jantughna,**
jantunāśana : Anthelmintic, vermifuge, also referring anti-microbial, antiprotozol, anti-bacterial, antiparasitic, disinfectant etc. and other similar actions (kṛmighna).
- Jaraṇa** : Digestive
- Jirṇajvara** : Chronic fever
- Jvaraghna** : Antipyretic, antiperiodic or febrifuge
- Jihvājādyā** : Stiffness (palsy) of tongue.
- Jivānīya** : Promoting life.
- Kikkisa** : Stria gravidarum.
- Kiṭibha** : A skin disease causing darkness, roughening and hardness of skin.
- Kṣataksīṇa** : Wasting condition of body in general due to chest-wound.
- Kukkurakāsa** : Whooping cough.
- Kukūṇaka** : Ophthalmia neonatorum, a kind of eye diseases, characterized by inflammation of eye in new born child.
- Kunakha** : Onychia (Cippa)
- Kuṣṭha** : Generally disease of skin and particularly leprosy (the former known as kṣudrakuṣṭha) and the latter as mahākuṣṭha.
- Kuṣṭhaghna** : Anti-leprotic.
- Kāmalā** : Jaundice, also related to hepatitis.
- Kadara** : Corns.
- Kaṇḍū** : Skin condition(s) associated with itching; scabies.
- Kaṇḍūghna** : Anti-pruritic; indicated in skin affections e.g. scabies, itchy troubles and other similar complaints.
- Kaṇṭhya,**
kaṇḍhṭaviśodhana
(śodhana) : Curing, cleaning and improving throat disorders for function. Soothing to the

throat (Svarya-soothing to/in the throat and voice).

- Kāsa** : Cough, bronchitis.
Kṣāra : Alkaline, alkalis, ash.
Kīṭaviṣa : Insect poison.
Kapha : Primal constituent of living body; generally known as phlegm; a component of Tridoṣa, tri-humours (Vāta and Pitta and Kapha).
Karṇanāda : Tinnitus; a kind of ear diseases.
Karṇasūla,
Karṇapīdā
(Karṇārti) : Earache, a symptom or type of ear disorders.
Karṇapīdi(a)kā : Furuncles in the ear.
Karṇabādhirya : Deafness; Ear disease.
Karṇapūya,
Karṇasrāva : Otorrhoea; bleeding, pus formation an the ear; a kind of ear diseases.
Kaśāya : Astringent.
Klaibya, Klibatā : Impotence.
Karṣaśna : Promoting slimming of the body.
Karkaṭārbuda : Cancer.
Kaṭu : Pungent, in taste.
Kaṣṭārtava : Dysmenorrhoea.
Kīṭamāraka : Insecticidal, anthelmintic, vermifuge. (Krmighna and jantughna).
Kṣaya, Yakṣmā-
rājayakṣmā : Pthisis, consumption (Tuberculosis, pulmonary tuberculosis).
Krmighna,
Krimghna : Anthelmintic.
Keśya : Promoting the growth of hairs.
Kuṣṣisūla : Abdominal colic.
Kṣudaśamanī : Hunger.
Mukhaśodhana : Indicated or useful to cleanse the mouth.
Mukhapāka : Stomatitis, Aphthas.
Makkala : Post-partuni pain.

- Marutaparyaya** : A disease of eye causing pain in eye-lids, brow and-eye ball alternately.
- Maṣaka** : Mole
- Madakārī, Mādini, Mādaka** : An intoxicating effect; Intoxication, toxicating; exhilarating.
- Madhura** : Sweet.
- Madhumeha** : Diabetes; diabetes mellitus. Hypoglycaemia.
- Madātyaya** : Alcoholism; effect of excessive use of alcohol.
- Madhumehaghna, Madhumehahara** : Hypoglycaemic action.
- Mada** : Necrosis.
- Medhya, Medhājana, Medhyakara, Medhākara** : Promoting memory and intellect.
- Mādaka** : Narcotic.
- Maṣṭiṣkabalya** : Brain tonic; promoting, strengthening faculties, function and organ (brain in general).
- Masūrīkā** : Variola; Measles, Pox.
- Mūtrakṛchrahara** : Indicated in dysuria.
- Mūdhagarbha** : Difficult and delayed labour. Abnormal posture of foetus.
- Mukhaśodhana** : Indicated or useful to cleanse the mouth
- Mūrchā** : Spells of fainting.
- Mūtradoṣahara** : Indicated to cleanse the urine.
- Mūtravirecanīya** : Promoting increased micturition.
- Mṛdivirecaka, Mṛdurecaka** : Laxative, mild-purgative.
- Mukhargha** : Diseases of the oral cavity; ailments of (under E.N.T. diseases) mouth.
- Laghu** : Light; easy to digest.
- Lūtāhara** : Indicated, useful in and countering spider-bite poisoning effect.
- Lavaṇa** : Salt, salty; saline.

- Lekhana** : Aids in reducing corpulency; act of scraping, reduction of body eight.
- Netra roga,**
Cakṣuroga,
Nayanaroga,
Locanavikāra : Diseases of the eye; ophthalmic diseases (ophthalmology).
- Netrya** : Beneficial to the structure, function and preventive (also hygiene) of eyes and their ailments (also curative).
- Naktāndhya** : Night blindness.
- Nidranāśana,**
Nidrājanana : Causing insomnia.
- Nāsāroga** : Nasal diseases (E.N.T.)
- Nāḍivr̥ṇa** : Sinus or Fistula.
- Naṣṭārtava** : Amenorrhoea.
- Phakkaroga** : Rickets (Bālaroga).
- Pothakī** : Trachoma.
- Pitta** : Primal constituent of the living body, a component of Tridoṣa, tri-humours (vāta-pitta-kapha); generally known as bite.
- Phiraṅga** : Syphilis; the venereal disease (S.T.D.).
- Plīhodara** : Splenomegaly.
- Pravāhikā** : Sprue (Grahaṇī).
- Padminikaṇṭaka** : Pale spots in skin surrounded by thorny structures.
- Pakṣmakopa** : Entropion.
- Pariṇāmasūla** : Abdoninal pain during digestion or on empty stomach.
- Pilla** : Chronic eye diseases resulting in watering and itching of eye and blurred vision.
- Piṣṭaka** : A disease of the characterized by elevated white spot in conjunctiva.
- Pūyameha** : Gonorrhoea.
- Pradara** : Excessive discharge of menstrual blood menorrhagia.

- Prameha** : A group of diseases kinds or syndromes of anomalies of urine mainly or commonly with increased frequency and turbidity of urine; characterised by specific symptoms (in different types of Prameha).
- Punsavana** : Measures prescribed for reversal of sex in foetus during the pregnancy period.
- Pācana** : Digestive
- Pancamahābhuta** : Five-elemental theory of structural and functional (basic constituents) composing all the substances-universe.
- Pāṇḍuroga** : Anaemia
- Pathya** : Wholesome, suitable.
- Pāṇḍuhara,**
Pāṇḍughna : Anti-anaemic; indicated in treatment of anaemia (Pāṇḍuroga).
- Paramavṛṣya** : Promoting optimum virility.
- Pinasa** : Chronic rhinitis.
- Pināsāhara,**
Pinasaghna,
Pinasanāśinī : Indicated in the treatment of chronic rhinitis.
- Picchila** : Sticky, gummy.
- Pārśvaśūla** : Chestpain.
- Pipāsāśamana** : Relieving polydypsia.
- Piḍikā** : Boil.
- Pittasāmaka** : Anti-bilious.
- Pittavircana** : Cholagogue (Pittasāraka)
- Pradara,**
śvetapradara : Leucorrhoea.
- Pliharogahara,**
Plihodara : Indicated in splenomegaly.
- Prasekaśamana** : Palliative of excessive salivation.
- Pratiṣa** : Antidote to poison.
- Prabhāva** : Specific and characteristic action.
- Raktagulma** : A lump formed in uterus due to accumulation of menstrual blood in females (other types of gulma)

- Rasāyana** : Alterative, restorative, rejuvenation.
- Raktapitta** : Intrinsic haemorrhage due to vitiation of rakta (blood) and pitta (bile).
- Raktameha** : Bilharzia.
- Rasa** : Taste.
- Rohiṇī** : Diphtheria; a disease (infections), diseases of the throat and the air passage which becomes inflamed and swollen and are coated with a fibrinous exudate.
- Rucya, Rucikara, Rocana** : Appetizer, increasing appetite.
- Śankhaka** : Severe encephalitis causing intense headache particularly in temples (often fatal).
- Sidhma** : A type of Kuṣṭha characterized by white or coppery circular spots like flowers of bottle-gourd often in chest leaving dust or rubbing.
- Snehana** : Uncation.
- Sirāharṣa** : Advanced stage of śirotpāta (paninus).
- Śitapitta** : Urticaria, an allergic disease of systemic origin marked by rashes, redness painful and itching elevations of the skin.
- Stanotthāpana** : Elevation of breasts.
- Somaroga** : A woman's disease causing increased flow of urine with incontinence and consequent dehydration and debility. (variously interpreted as gynaecological, hormonal and/or metabolic disease).
- Śukra** : Corneal opacity (avrana śukra) and corneal ulcer (savraṇa śukra); the eye-diseases (of cornea).
- Śūla** : Colic, ache, pain; disease or symptom.
- Sūryāvartta** : A type of headache beginning with sunrise and increasing gradually with the

	movements of the sun and subsiding at sunset.
Śuṣkākṣipāka	: Blepharospasm.
Śrama	: Exertion (Klānta).
Stambhaka (rakta)	: Haemostatic, styptic; anti-haemorrhagic.
Soumya, saumya	: Promoting steady state equilibrium (of doṣās-sārīra and mānāsa).
Sandhivīślesa	: Dislocation of joint(s).
Sarpaviṣa,	
sarpadaṁśā	: Snake-bite poison; venom.
Sarvakaṇḍū	: Pruritis of multiple etiology.
Śarkarānīśūdana	: Hypoglycaemic (madhuraka-śamana).
Sarkarāśmarī	: Urinary gravel.
Śīroroga	: Cranial diseases; ailments of headache.
Śuklameha	: Albuminuria.
Śiraḥśūla	: Headache.
Śodhana	: Purification, radical elimination of morbid substances.
Śvayathu-śoṭha	: Inflammation (śoṭha).
Śvitra	: Leucoderma (vitiligo).
Śvāsa	: Asthmā; dyspnoea, bronchial asthma.
Stanārbuda	: Breast tumour.
Śukrakṛta	: Spermatogenetic
Śvāsahara	: Anti-tussive, anti-asthmatic.
Stanaśoṭha	: Inflammation of breast.
Stanyajanana	: Galactagogue
Svedajanana	: Diaphoretic; promoting perspiration or diaphoresis.
Śukra-retas-vīrya	: Semen
Śukravikāra	: Seminal diseases.
Śoṭha	: Oedema; General Anasarca
Sarvāṅga-śoṭha	: Ekāṅgaśoṭha-Localised inflammation, oedema swelling.
Timira	: Defects of vision. Cataract.
Tikta	: Bitter.
Tṛṣṇānigrahaṇa	: Relieving thirst.
Tūṇī	: Colicky pain occurring in the iliac or pelvic region of the abdomen.

Tvagvikāra	: Cutaneous affections; skin diseases.
Tvacya	: Promoting the skin health; palliative for skin diseases, preventive and curative.
Tridoṣa	: Doctorine of Tridoṣa consisting Vāta, Pitta and Kapha; the tri-humoral theory
	of Ayurveda. Three basic factors in the living body responsible for health and disease (equilibrium or balance maintaining health and disturbance in equilibrium or imbalance causes disease in body).
Tr̥ṭ(d)	: Thirst.
Udara	: Abdominal enlargement.
Udāvartta	: Upward movement of vāyu.
Unmantha	: Swelling with itching in earpinnae.
Upadaṁśa	: Soft-chancres; a venereal disease.
Upakuśa	: Inflamed gums with haemorrhage and foul smell.
Urustambha	: Paraplegia.
Uṣṇavāta	: Dysuria associated with burning sensation yellow urine or haematuria.
Unmatta	: Inducing psychotropic effects (i.e.) stimulating the central nervous system.)
Udaraśūla	: Abdominal colic.
Udarda	: Śītapitta, Koṭha-Udarda; allied to urticaria and advanced or severe stage patches on skin.
Uṣṇa	: Hot, heat.
Unmāda	: Insanity, mental disease.
Utkleśa	: Nausea, retching (Hṛllāsa).
Ubhayatobhāgahara	: Purification-Saṁśodhana (Adhobhāgahara-Urdhvaḥbāgahara : Purgation-Emesis).
Udgāra	: Eructation.
Vātaghna	: Anti-vāta; indicated in diseases of nervous system.

- Varāhadamstra** : A syndrome causing inflammation in skin with burning : redness, intense pain, itching and fever.
- Vātarakta** : A disease caused by vitiation of vāta and rakta, and characterized by rashes, anaesthetic patches and pain in joint, Gout.
- Vātavyādhi** : A group of diseases caused specifically by aggravated vāta such as pain, Convulsion, paralysis and other several symptoms.
- Vertigo** : Bhrama.
- Vidārikā** : Inflammation of lymphatic glands in axilla and groin.
- Vṛddhi** : Scrotal enlargement.
- Viṣūcikā** : Gastro-enteritis with piercing pain.
- Viśalya** : Extracting foreign body.
- Vyaṅga** : Dark shade on face caused by stress and excessive exercise.
- Vīrya** : Potency, energy, power.
- Vājīkarana** : Aphrodisiac; sexual tonic.
- Vāta** : A principal, prime and dominant component of Tridoṣa, tri-humours (the causative factors of normalcy as well as abnormalcy of body). general known as wind or gas.
- Vamanopaga** : Emetic, aid to emetics or emesis.
- Varṅgya** : Useful in promoting complexion of the skin (pigmentation).
- Vastiroga** : Diseases of urinary system, particularly urinary bladder.
- Vaṅkṣaṇagranthi** : Inguinal glands.
- Vayasthāpana** : Promoting longevity.
- Vedanāsthāpana** : Analgesic, anodyne, local anaesthetic.
- Vipāka** : Digestion and metabolism.
- Vibandha** : Constipation
- Vidāhī** : Causing burning sensation.
- Vikāsi** : Spreading rapidly in body.

Virecana	: Purgative, cathartic, purging, purgation.
Vraṇaropana	: Wounds-healer.
Viṣa	: Poison
Viṣaghna	: Anti-dote.
Yakṛdroga	: Liver disorders
Yonivyāpat	: Disorders of female genital tract.
Yoniviśodhana	: Useful to cleanse the uterus.
Yoṣidvikāra	: Gynaecological disorders.
Yonidoṣa	: Vaginal/uterine disorders.
Yoniśoṭha	: Vaginitis.
Yonidrāvāṇa (drāvāṇārtham)	: Inducing vaginal secretion (relevant to sexual intercourse-hastening vaginal discharge); Vājikaraṇa.
Yonigādhīkaraṇa (gādhīārtham)	: Useful to check slackness of vagina.



General Suffix Terms

(Pharmacological and therapeutical aspects/terms in texts)

A. Śama, śamana, śāmaka Hara, hāraka, hṛt Nāśaka, nāśana, vināśana Ghna, nut, praṇut. Jit, Apath Arī.	Curing, anti, eradicating, alleviation, reducing, destroying, palliative, indicated, useful
B. Janana, janaka, ja Kara, kāri(ī) Prada.	Promoting; helping, producing, inducing

